THE
AGNI-PURĀNA

PART I

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS PUBLISHERS
PRIVATE LIMITED • DELHI
## CONTENTS

### PART I

### CHAPTERS

1. Introductory ........................................ 1  
2. Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Fish .................. 3  
3. Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Tortoise ............ 5  
4. Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Boar ................. 7  
5. Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Rāma ............... 9  
6. Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Rāma ............... 11  
7. Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Rāma ............... 15  
8. Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Rāma ............... 17  
9. Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Rāma ............... 19  
10. Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Rāma .............. 21  
11. Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Rāma .............. 24  
12. Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Kṛṣṇa ............... 25  
13. Origin of Kauravas and Pândavas .............. 31  
14. Story of the Mahābhārata .................... 34  
15. Ascendance of Pândavas to heaven ............ 36  
16. Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Buddha and Kalki 38  
17. Creation .......................................... 39  
18. Genealogy of Svāyambhuva Manu ............... 41  
19. Secondary Creation: the progeny of Kaśyapa 45  
20. Primary Creation .................................. 48  
21. Method of worshipping Viṣṇu and other gods 50  
22. Bath prior to a religious rite .................. 53  
23. Mode of performing worship ................. 54  
24. Mode of constructing the sacrificial pit and the oblations unto fire .......................... 56  
25. Mode of worshipping Vāsudeva, Saṅkarṣaṇa Pradyumna and Aniruddha ................. 62  
26. Positions of fingers in Worship .......... 66  
27. Initiation rite .................................. 67  
28. Mode of anointment for the preceptor .... 74
29. Mode of Worshipping Hari in Sarvatobhadra 75
30. Mode of worshipping gods in lotus figures 79
31. Mode of cleansing oneself and others 82
32. Purificatory rites 85
33. Investiture of the sacred thread for the deity and the installation of the deity 87
34. Mode of performing oblation 92
35. Mode of consecration of an image 96
36. Mode of performing the investiture of sacred thread 98
37. Mode of investiture of sacred thread for all gods 100
38. Benefits of constructing temples 101
39. Preparations of ground for constructing temples 106
40. Mode of making the respectful offering to the god 107
41. Mode of performing Consecration 110
42. Construction of a temple 113
43. Installation of deities in temples 116
44. Characteristics of the image of Vāsudeva 118
45. Characteristics of pedestals and details relating to images 123
46. Characteristics of different Śalagrama stones 124
47. Mode of worshipping Śalagrāma 126
48. Adoration of twentyfour forms of Viṣṇu 127
49. Characteristics of forms of Fish etc of Viṣṇu 129
50. Characteristics of an image of the goddess 132
51. Characteristics of images of Sun and other planets 136
52. Characteristics of images of different forms of goddesses 138
53. Characteristics of Liṅga (parabolic representation of Śiva) 139
54. The dimensions of different varieties of Liṅga 141
55. Characteristics of the pedestal 146
56. Five divisions of installation 147
57. Consecration of pitchers 149
58. Consecration of the idol 152
59. Preliminary consecration of an image 155
60. Mode of installation of image of Vāsudeva 161
61. Consecration of the door of the temple and the erection of banner 164
Contents

62. Mode of installation of image of Goddess Lakṣmi 169
63. Mode of installation of other gods and Goddesses, the Sudarśana disc and the writing of books and their installations 171
64. Mode of consecration of tanks and ponds 173
65. Building pavilions in front of temples 178
66. Mode of consecration of other gods 180
67. Renovation of decayed images 184
68. Mode of taking out a procession and celebration of festivals after fixing the new image 184
69. Mode of conducting the bathing festival 186
70. Mode of planting trees 188
71. Mode of Worshipping Gaṇeṣa 186
72. Mode of bathing and daily worship 190
73. Mode of worshipping Sun 195
74. Mode of worshipping Śiva 197
75. Mode of installation of fire 205
76. Mode of Worshipping Caṇḍa (attendant of Śiva) 211
77. Mode of Worshipping Kapilā 212
78. Mode of investiture of the sacred thread for the deity 215
79. Investiture of the Sacred thread 221
80. Mode of investiture with the fibres of Damanaka 225
81. Mode of spiritual initiation 226
82. Mode of performing purificatory initiation 235
83. Mode of spiritual Initiation that removes one's bondage 238
84. Mode of Initiation for Emancipation 243
85. Mode of purifying the Beatific principle of establishment 248
86. Mode of purification of Scriptural knowledge 252
87. Mode of purification of the principle of peace 254
88. Mode of initiation for attaining liberation 257
89. Initiation of principles 262
90. Anointing the disciple after worshipping Śiva 263
91. Mantras for worshipping gods 265
Contents

92. Mode of installing the image of Śiva 266
93. Mode of worshipping the presiding deity of a ground 272
94. Mode of placing the stone slabs 276
95. Mode of installation of Liṅga 278
96. Mode of initial consecration of an image 283
97. Mode of installation of lord Śiva 294
98. Mode of installation of the image of goddess Gaurī 302
99. Mode of installation of the image of sun-god 303
100. Rites of Consecration of doors of a temple 304
CHAPTER ONE

Introductory

1. I bow to (goddesses) Śrī (Lakṣmi), Sarasvatī, Gaurī (Pārvati) and gods Gaṇeśa, Skanda, Īśvara (Śiva), Brahmā, Vahni, Indra and other celestials and Vāsudeva (Krṣṇa).

2. Śaunaka and other sages (staying at the sacred forest) of Naimiṣa, conducting a sacrifice devoted to Hari (Viṣṇu), welcomed Sūta (the reciter of ancient lores) on his arrival there after a pilgrimage.

The sages said:

3. O Sūta! You are adored by us. Tell us the quintessence of all things, by knowing which alone one gets omniscience.

Sūta said:

4. The illustrious Viṣṇu (who is) the Supreme Being (and) the Creator, is the quintessence. By knowing that 'I am Brahmā', one gets omniscience.

5. Two Brahmans are to be known, the Śabdabrahman (the Vedas) and Parabrahman (the Supreme Spirit). The Ātharvaṇī Śruti (Munḍakopanisad) refers to this as the two (kinds of) knowledge to be learnt.

6. Myself, (sage) Śuka (son of sage Vyāsa), (sage) Paila (disciple of sage Vyāsa) and others bowed Vyāsa having resorted to the hermitage at (holy) Badarikāśrama. He imparted to us the quintessence (of all things).

Vyāsa said:

7. O sūta, listen in the company of Śuka and others what Vasiṣṭha has said to me about the excellent quintessence of the Brahmā, when he was requested by the sages.

Vasiṣṭha said:

8. O Vyāsa, Listen, in entirety, to the two (kinds of) knowl-
edge, which (god) Agni narrated to me in the company of the sages and the celestials.

9. The excellent Purāṇa (known as) the Āgneya (or Agni) and the two (kinds of) knowledge, Parā (the superior) and Aparā (the inferior) signifying respectively the knowledge about the Brahman and the knowledge about the Rgveda and so on, which satisfies all the celestials (will be narrated to you).

10. The Purāṇa spoken by Agni and designated as the Āgneya by Brahmā and which gives bhukti (enjoyment) and mukti (release from mundane existence) for those who read it or hear it (will be narrated to you).

11. Being requested by the sages (I will also describe) (god) Viṣṇu in the form of the destructive Fire at the end of the world (who is) the effulgent Brahman (and) the most Supreme Being (who is) worshipped by means of knowledge and action (religious rites and so on).

*Vasiṣṭha said:*

12. O Brahman (Agni), point out to me the masterly way of crossing the ocean of mundane existence, by knowing the quintessence of which knowledge one becomes omniscient.

*Agni said:*

13. Viṣṇu is the destructive Fire at the end of the world (in the form of) Rudra (Śiva). I shall tell you the essence of knowledge (in the form of) this Purāṇa, which represents all learning and is the cause of all things.

14. (Lord) Viṣṇu, who assumes the form of a fish, a tortoise (and other beings), is the cause of the primary creation, the secondary creation, the genealogy of the sages, the cycles of Manu-periods and the genealogy of the kings.

15-17. O Twice-born! (Lord) Viṣṇu (is the cause of) the two kinds of knowledge Parā (the superior) and Aparā (the inferior). Here the Aparā is represented by the Rgveda, Yajurveda, Sāmaveda, Atharvaveda, the six supplementary texts, (namely)—Śikṣā (phonetics), Kalpa (rules governing rituals), Vyākaraṇa (grammar), Nirukta (etymological science), (the science dealing with) the movement of the luminary bodies, Chandovidhāna (metrics), Mimāṃsā (investigation of the interpretation of the ritual of the Vedas), Dharmaśāstra (law-books), Purāṇas (18 in
number), \textit{Nyāya} (logical philosophical system), \textit{Vaidya} (medical science), \textit{Gāndharva} (science of music), and \textit{Arthaśāstra} (polity). The \textit{Parā-Śāstra} (superior knowledge) is that through which the \textit{Brahman} is known.

18. I shall narrate to you (that \textit{Purāṇa}) which was told to me by \textit{Viṣṇu} and the celestials by Brahmā and which deals with that invisible, incomprehensible, not having a cause for itself and eternal (form of \textit{Viṣṇu}) which is the cause of the forms such as the fish and others.

CHAPTER TWO

\textit{Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Fish}

\textit{Vasiṣṭha said}:

1. O Brahmā! Describe unto me the manifestations of \textit{Viṣṇu}, such as the Fish etc., which are the cause of creation. Also narrate to me the \textit{Agni Purāṇa} as heard from \textit{Viṣṇu} in the days of yore.

\textit{Agni said}:

2. O \textit{Vasiṣṭha}! I shall describe to you the manifestation of Hari as a Fish. Listen. The manifestations are for the destruction of the wicked and for the protection of the pious.

3. At the end of the past \textit{kalpa} (of 432 million years), there was a periodical dissolution. Brahmā was its instrumental cause. \textit{O sage}! the earth and the people were submerged under the rising water.

4-5. \textit{Vaivasvata Manu} was practising penance for gaining objects of enjoyment and for release from mundane existence.

Once when he was offering waters of libation in the (river) \textit{Kṛtamāla}, a small fish came in the waters in his folded palms. As he desired to throw it into the waters, it said "\textit{O excellent man!} do not throw me away."

6. Now I have fear from the crocodiles (and others)."

Having heard this (\textit{Vaivasvata Manu}) put it into a vessel. When
it had grown there in size, it requested him, “Get me a bigger vessel”.

7. Having heard these words, the king put the fish in a bigger vessel. Growing there again in size it requested the king, “O Manu! Get me a bigger place”.

8. When it was put into a tank, it soon grew in size as big as it (the tank) and said, “Get me to a bigger place”. Then (Manu) put it into the ocean.

9. In a moment, it grew in size extending to a lakh of yojanas (one yojana 8 or 9 miles). Seeing that wonderful fish, Manu got surprised and said:

10. “Who are you, but Viṣṇu? O Nārāyaṇa (Viṣṇu) I salute you. Why do you stupefy me with your illusory power, O Janārdana (Viṣṇu)”.

11. Having heard the words of Manu, the Fish replied Manu who had been engaged in the protection (of the world), “I have manifested for the protection of this universe and for the destruction of the wicked.”

12-13. On the seventh day, the ocean would flood the earth. Having put the seeds (of creation) etc. in the boat that would approach you, you would spend the night (of 1000 mortal years) of Brahmā on it being encircled by the seven sages. (You) bind this boat to my horn with the big serpent.”

14. Saying thus, the fish disappeared. Manu, who was waiting for the appointed hour, boarded the boat as the ocean commenced to swell.

15. The fish now appeared with a single golden horn of one million yojanas in length. He tied the boat to its horn.

16-17. After having praised it with adoration, he heard from the fish the Purāṇa known as the Matsya which is capable of destroying the sins. Keśava (Viṣṇu) killed the demon Hayagrīva, the destroyer of the Vedas of Brahman and thus protected the vedic mantras. And when the Varāhkalpa (one of the periods of time) set in, Hari (Viṣṇu) assumed the form of a tortoise.

1. Hayagrīva was the name of a powerful demon, who carried away the Vedas during Deluge. He was killed by Viṣṇu manifesting as a fish and the Vedas were rescued. Bhāg, P. VIII. xxiv. 8 and 57 P. Index III. p. 742.
CHAPTER THREE

Manifestation of Viṣṇu as a Tortoise

Agni said:

1. I shall describe unto you (now) about the manifestation (of Viṣṇu) as a tortoise, by hearing which one’s sins will be destroyed. In days of yore the celestial gods were defeated by the demons in a battle between them.

2. On account of the curse of sage Durvāsas,¹ the celestials were deprived of all their prosperity. Then they praised Viṣṇu who was (reclining) in the milky ocean and said, “Protect us from the demons”.

3. Hari said to Brahmā and others, “You make a treaty of peace with the demons for churning the ocean for securing ambrosia.

4. In the interest of an important work even the enemies should be sought for union. I will make you get the ambrosia and not the demons.

5. Making the (Mount) Mandara as the churning rod and (the serpent) Vāsuki as the rope, you vigilantly churn the milky ocean with my help”.

6. Concluding an agreement with the demons as suggested by Viṣṇu, (the celestials) came to the milky ocean. The celestials began to churn the ocean (from that side) where the tail of the serpent was.

7. The celestials who were afflicted by the sighs of the serpent, were comforted by Hari (Viṣṇu). As the ocean was being churned the mountain being unsupported entered into the water.

8. Then Viṣṇu assumed the form of a tortoise and supported the (Mount) Mandara. From the milky ocean which was being churned, first came out the poison known as Hālāhala.

9. That poison being retained by Hara (Śiva) in his neck, Śiva became (known to be) Nilakaṇṭha (blue-necked). Then the goddess Vāruṇi (The female energy of the celestial god

---

¹ Name of an irascible sage, son of Sage Atri and Anasāyā. Once he met a Vidyādhara maid with a garland. He took that garland and presented it to Indra. Indra put it on his elephant, which in turn threw it on the ground and trampled upon it. Enraged at this the sage cursed him that he would lose all his fortune. See Vi.P. I. ix. 1 ff.; P. Index II. p. 106.
Varuṇa), the Pārījāta (tree) and the Kaustubha (gem) came out of the ocean.

10. Then came out the (celestial) kine and the nymphs. Then came out Lakṣmī, who became the consort of Hari (Viṣṇu). Beholding her and adoring her all the celestials regained their lost prosperity.

11. Then Dhanvantari, (a form of Viṣṇu) and founder of the (science of) Āyurveda rose up holding a water-pot full of ambrosia.

12. Taking the ambrosia from his hands the demons Jambha and others having given half of it to the celestials went away with the other half. Then Viṣṇu assumed the form of beautiful damsel.

13. Having seen that beautiful form, the demons became fascinated and said, “O fair-faced one! Be our wife, take this ambrosia and make us drink it.”

14-15. Hari (Viṣṇu) said, “Let it be so”, and took it from them and made the celestials drink it. As Rāhu assumed the form of the Moon and drank a portion, he was detected by the Sun and the Moon and was brought to the notice of (Viṣṇu). His head was severed by his enemy Hari (Viṣṇu). That severed head of Rāhu then said to Hari, the bestower of gifts (by whose grace) it had attained immortality.

16. “When the intoxicated Rāhu would seize the Sun and the Moon, may the charities made on that occasion be imperishable.”

17. Viṣṇu in the company of all the immortals said, “Be it so” and cast off his female form. He was then requested by Hara to show that form (again).

18. (Lord) Hari (Viṣṇu) showed the feminine form to Rudra (Śiva). Śambhu (Śiva) being captivated by the illusory power, renouncing Gauri (Pārvatī) sought that feminine form.

19. Becoming nude and behaving like a mad man, he held the damsel by her hair. She got herself freed and ran away. He too followed her.

20. Wherever the seminal fluid of Hara dropped, there came into being sacred places of liṅgas and gold.

21. Then knowing her as illusory, Hara (Śiva) assumed his original form. Then Hari (Viṣṇu) told Śiva, “O Rudra (Śiva) My illusory power has been conquered by you.
22-23. There is no other male on the earth besides you, who is capable of conquering this illusory power of mine.” Then the demons, who had not got the ambrosia were defeated by the celestials in battle. The celestials got back to their celestial home. One who reads this account goes to the celestial region.

CHAPTER FOUR

Manifestations of Viṣṇu as the Boar

1. I describe (unto thee) the manifestation as a Boar (which) removes (one’s) sins. Hiraṇyākṣaṇa was a demon chief. He conquered the celestials and got established in the heavens.

2. Viṣṇu being praised by the celestials (who had) gone (to him), (he) assumed the form as Yajñavarāha (boar). Having killed that demon along with the (other) demons (he made the earth) devoid of thorns (difficulties).

3-4. (That) Hari, the protector of righteousness and the celestials (then) disappeared. Then (the demon) Hiraṇyakaśipu, brother of Hiraṇyākṣaṇa after conquering the celestials (was grabbing a share of the offerings) exercised control over all the celestials. (Viṣṇu) assumed the form of Narasiṁha (human body with lion’s face) (and) killed him along with the (other) demons.

1. Hiraṇyākṣaṇa, a demon, was one of the sons of Kaśyapa and Diti. He waxed eloquent and entered the underworld in search of Viṣṇu. Viṣṇu assumed the form of a boar and after severe combat slew the demon. See P. Index III. C. 774.

2. Hiraṇyakaśipu, a demon, was the other son of Kaśyapa and Diti. He had got a boon that he could not be killed either by a man or by a beast or during the day or the night or inside or outside the house. He conquered the celestials. His son Prahlāda was a devotee of Viṣṇu. All the attempts of Hiraṇyakaśipu to wean Prahlāda from his devotion to Viṣṇu were of no avail. Hiraṇyakaśipu subjected Prahlāda to many ordeals. Prahlāda emerged unscathed. The desperate Hiraṇyakaśipu challenged Prahlāda whether that Viṣṇu would be present everywhere and Prahlāda could show him in the pillar in front of them and kicked the pillar. Viṣṇu manifested in the form of a man with lion’s face from that pillar and killed Hiraṇyakaśipu placing him on his lap and at the thresh-hold during the twilight. See P. Index III. pp. 769-70.
5-7. (He) re-established the celestials in their original places and was praised by the celestials. Once in the battle between the celestials and the demons, the celestials were defeated by (demon) Bali and other demons (and) were driven away from the heaven (and) sought refuge in Hari (Viṣṇu). Having given refuge to the devas he being praised by Aditi (wife of the latter) (and mother of the celestials) and Kaśyapa (a sage) became a Dwarf (as a son) of Aditi (and) went to the sacrifice (performed by Bali) (and) recited the Vedas at the royal gates of Bali the sacrificer.

8-9. Having heard him reciting the Vedas, the bestower of the wanted things (Bali) said to the Dwarf in spite of being obstructed by Śukra (the preceptor of the demons), “Whatever (you) desire I shall give (you)”. The Dwarf asked Bali, “Get (me) three feet of space for the sake of the preceptor. (Bali) said to him, “I shall give (you)”.

10-11. When the water was poured on the hand the Dwarf became a Giant (and) measured the worlds of Bhūḥ, Bhuvah and Svār with the three strides and (sent) Bali to Sutala (a nether world) and (then) Hari (Viṣṇu) gave the worlds to Śakra (Indra). Śakra (Indra) praised Hari (Viṣṇu) along with the celestials (and) remained happy as the ruler of the world.

12-13. “I shall describe (unto you) the manifestation as Paraśurāma.” “Hear, O twice-born”! Considering the kṣatriyas (ruling clan) as haughty, Hari (Viṣṇu), the protector of the celestials and the brahmins manifested as Bhārgava, son of Jamadagni and Reṇukā and proficient in arms for removing the pressure on the earth and for the sake of peace. [Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Paraśurāma]

14. Kārtavirya became a king by the grace of Dattātreya (considered as a manifestation of the Trinity as son of Atri and Anasūyā). He had thousand arms. He was the lord of the entire world. (Once) he went for hunting.

1. Bali was a powerful demon. He was a son of Virocana and grandson of Prahlāda. Being oppressed by him, the celestials sought refuge in Viṣṇu. In deference to their wishes, Viṣṇu assumed the form of a dwarf and approached Bali and requested him to give as much earth as he could cover in three steps. Bali readily conceded to his request. The dwarf soon grew into a mighty form, covered the earth and heaven in two strides and as the third stride placed his foot on the head of Bali and subdued him. See Rām. I. xxvii.; P. Index II. pp. 469-70
15. (He) being tired, was invited by the sage Jamadagni. The king was fed along with his retinue (by the sage) by the grace of the Kāmadhenu (divine cow).

16-20. (The king) sought for the Kāmadhenu. When he (the sage) did not give (the cow) the king took it away. Then Rāma (Paraśurāma) cut off (the king's) head with his axe in the battle. The cow returned to the hermitage. Jamadagni was killed by the sons of Kārtavīrya on account of revenge, when (Paraśu) Rāma had gone to the forest. Seeing his father slain (and) getting angry on account of the loss of his father the great man made the earth devoid of the warrior clan for 21 generations. Making out five pits (kūnda) at Kurukṣetra and satisfying his manes, having given the earth to Kaśyapa, (he) stationed himself at the Mahendra mountains. (One) who hears (the story of) the manifestations as a Fish, a Boar, a Lion and Rāma (Paraśurāma) goes to the celestial regions.

CHAPTER FIVE

Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Rāma:

Agni said:

1. I shall describe (unto you) the (story of) Rāmāyaṇa, as it (was) once described by Nārada to Vālmiki (and which) if read in that manner yields enjoyment and release (from mundane existence).

Nārada said:

2. Brahmā (was born) from the lotus in the navel of Viṣṇu. (Sage) Marici (was) the son of Brahmā. (Sage) Kaśyapa (was) then (born) from Marici. The Sun (god) (and) Vaivasvata Manu (were born successively in the line).

3. Then from him (Vaivasvata Manu), Ikṣvāku (was born). Kakutsthā (was born) in his line. Raghu (was the son) of Kakutsthā. Aja (was born) to him. Then Daśaratha (was born).
4-7. Hari (Viṣṇu) manifested himself in the four (forms) for the sake of the annihilation of Rāvana and others. Rāma was born from Daśaratha to Kausalyā, Bharata to Kaikeyī and Lakṣmana and Śatrughna to Sumitrā simultaneously from partaking of the sweet gruel obtained from (the performance) of the sacrifice of the father. The king being requested by (the sage) Viśvāmitra for the annihilation of those who impede (the performance) of the sacrifices sent Rāma and Lakṣmana along with the sage. Rāma who had gone (with the sage) (and) was taught in the use of the weapons (astra¹ and śastra²) (became) the killer of (the demoness) Tāṭakā.³

8. (Rāma) made (demon) Mārica⁴ stupefied by the missile (known as) Mānava and led him far away. The valiant killed also (the demon) Subāhu, the destroyer of sacrifices along with his army.

9. Residing at the (place) Siddhāśrama⁵ along with (the sages) Viśvāmitra and others, (Rāma) went along with his brother to see the sacrifice (test for prowess) of Maithila (King Janaka).

10-12. At the instance of (the sage) Śatānanda⁶ and on account of the glory of Viśvāmitra, that sage being shown due respects by the king at the sacrifice and Rāma being informed sportively pulled the bow and broke it. (King) Janaka gave Śitā, the girl not born of the womb, and associated with a prize bid, to Rāma. And when the parents had come, Rāma also

1-2. The word astra denotes a weapon discharged along with the repetition of the mystic syllables, whereas ‘śastra’ is any ordinary missile.

3. Tāṭakā was a female fiend, daughter of Suketu. She was the wife of Sunda and mother of Mārica. She had been changed into a fiend by the sage Agastyā when she had disturbed his austerities.

Although Rāma was at first reluctant to raise his bow against a woman, she was later killed by him, at the instance of Viśvāmitra, when she disturbed the sacrificial performances of Viśvāmitra. See Rām. I.xxxv-xxvi.

4. Mārica was a demon, son of Sunda and Tāṭakā. He was the uncle of Rāvana. Rām. I.xxv. 26-27

5. Siddhāśrama was the place where Viṣṇu manifested as the Dwarf to subdue the demon Bali, and also where the aspirants realized their ambitions. See Rām. I. xxix.

6. Śatānanda was the son of sage Gautama and Ahalyā and was the family priest of Janaka. See Rām. I.ii.1.
married that Jānaki (Sitā). In the same way Lakṣmaṇa (also married) Urmilā.

13-14. Then Śatrughna and Bharata married Śrutakīrti and Māṇḍavī, the two daughters of the brother of Janaka. Rāma after conquering Jāmadagni (Paraśurāma, son of Jamadagni) went to Ayodhyā with (sage) Vasiṣṭha and others and Bharata with Śatrughna went towards (the country of) Yudhājīt (uncle of Bharata).

CHAPTER SIX

_Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Rāma (continued) :

_Nārada said :

1-2. After Bharata had gone, Rāma saluted the parents and others. King Daśaratha said to Rāma, "Rāghava (Rāma)! listen to me, you have been anointed mentally by the people as ruler on account of (your) qualities. I shall make you the heir-apparent (next) morning."

3-4. "In the night you observe (the necessary) rites (vows) along with Sitā." And the eight ministers1 of the king—Srṣṭi, Jayanta, Vijaya, Siddhārtha, Rāṣṭravardhana, Aśoka, Dharmapāla and Sumantra and also Vasiṣṭha spoke.

5. After hearing the words of the father and others, Rāghava said that he will do accordingly. He worshipped the gods and informed the news to Kauśalyā.

6. The king told Vasiṣṭha and others to gather the materials required for the coronation of Rāma and went to Kaikeyī.

7. After seeing the decoration of the city of Ayodhyā and knowing that the coronation of Rāma is to take place, Mantharā informed her friend Kaikeyī (accordingly).

8. Having been pulled by Rāma by the foot by mistake, on account of that enmity she desired of Rāma’s sojourn to the forest.

1. Some of the names of the ministers are little different from those found in the _Rāmdyana_. Instead of the name Drṣṭi, Arthasādhaka and Mantrapāla in the _Rāmdyana_ we have Srṣṭi, Rāṣṭravardhana and Dharmapāla here. See _Rām._ I. vii.3.
9. "O! Kaikeyī! you get up (and see) the anointment of Rāma. There is no doubt (that it is) death (itself) for your son, to me and to you" (said Mantharā).

10-11. She (Kaikeyī) heard the words of the kubjā (hunch-backed) (Mantharā) and gave her an ornament. She said "Just as Rāma is (my son) so also Bharata is my son. I do not find any plan, by which Bharata may get the kingdom." The angry Mantharā after rejecting the ornament (given by Kaikeyī) said to Kaikeyī:

12. "O! stupid girl you protect Bharata, yourself and me from Rāghava. Rāghava will be the king in future and then his son."

13-15. O Kaikeyī, "The royal lineage will be taken away from Bharata. Once when the people were persecuted by Śambara1 at the time of the battle between the gods and demons, when the king went there for (rendering help), you protected him by your art and skill. Then the king gave you two boons. (You) ask for them now from the king. (The boons are) the stay of Rāma in the forest for fourteen years and the conferment of the heir-apparentship on Bharata. These (the king) will give."

16. She (Kaikeyī) being encouraged by the deformed lady (Mantharā), who saw meaning in the worthless thing, said (to her), "(Tell) me a good plan which would make it work."

17-18. (Kaikeyī) having entered the anger apartment (remained) in a swoon fallen to the ground. Then the king Daśaratha having honoured the twice-borns (came there and) saw the angry Kaikeyī (and) said, "How (is) she such? Is she sick or agitated by fear," (and said) "I shall do as you wish."

19. "Without which Rāma, I cannot live (even) a moment, I swear by him that I will do as you wish O beautiful woman!"

20-22. "Speak the truth", said she to the king (and added), "The two boons (you) granted me formerly, you give me (now) (as you swear) by truth, O King! Let Rāma live in the forest for fourteen years being self-controlled (and) with these prepa-

---

1. Śambara was a demon chief, son of Kaśyapa and Danu. At the time of the battle between the celestials and the demons Śambara was harassing the people. Indra sought help from Daśaratha. Daśaratha who lost his consciousness in the battle was safely charioted back by Kaikeyī. See Rām. I. ix. 11 ff.
do not grant (these boons) O King! I shall die (after) drinking poison." Having heard these (words) the (king) fell into a swoon on the earth as if struck by a mace.

23-25. After a moment he regained his consciousness and said, "What (harm) was done to you by Rāma or by me, O lady, determined to do sins! What you tell me in this manner is unpleasant to all the people. By merely doing (something) pleasing to you, I will be censured. What a kind of wife (you are) like the night of destruction\(^1\) at the end of the world. Bharata is not such a kind of son. (You) rule the kingdom as a widower after I have died and the son has gone."

26-29. Being bound by the noose of truth, (he) called Rāma and said (to him), "O! Rāma, I have been cheated by Kaikeyī; restraining me (you) rule the kingdom. You have to live in the forest and Bharata, (the son of) Kaikeyī (is to be) the king." Having saluted his father and Kaikeyī, after doing a circumambulation, and bowing down to Kauśalyā and having consoled her and with Lakṣmaṇa, with (his) wife Sītā and with Sumantra in the chariot and having made the gifts for the brahmins, poor and destitutes, he left the city with the mothers, brahmins and others stricken with grief.

30. Having spent the night on the banks of the (river) Tamasā (he went away) leaving the people. Not finding him in the morning they all returned to Ayodhya again.

31. The lamenting king also went to the apartments of Kauśalyā extremely grief-stricken. Being separated from the king all the citizens and women wept.

32. Rāma, being seated in the chariot and wearing the bark-garments went to Śrūgaberapura. Being entertained by Guha\(^2\) there, he resorted to the foot of the Indgudi (tree).

33-34. And during the nights Lakṣmaṇa and Guha kept awake. Leaving Sumantra together with the chariot in the morning, Rāma, Lakṣmaṇa and Sītā crossed the river Jāhnāvi (Ganges) by boat and reached Prayāga. (They) paid their obeisance to (the sage) Bharadvāja (and then) reached the Citrakūṭa mountain.

1. *Kālarātri*, the night of destruction at the end of the world is identified with the Goddess Durgā.

2. Guha, a hunter chief was reigning at Śrūgaberapura. He was an admirer of Rāma. See *Rām. II.1.33.*
35. Then (they) having performed the Vāstuṣṭa (propitiatory rites at the house site), stayed on the banks of the Mandākini (Ganges). And (then) Rāghava showed the Citrakūṭa (mountain) to Sītā.

36. With an arrow (Rāma) plucked one of the eyes of the crow which was tearing her (Sītā) with (its) nails. Then the crow sought refuge in the celestials.

37-40. On the sixth day after Rāma had gone to the forest, the king told Kauśalyā in the night the past story of how in (his) youth he had killed unknowingly with (his) Īśadabha (weapon) the ascetic youth Yajñadatta as (he was filling) the pot raising asound. Lamenting his father cursed (Dāsāratha). His mother felt grief-stricken and wept again and again and the (two) said, “We will die without the son. You will also die of grief.” “O Kauśalyā! without the son and remembering (the past) my death (will come off now) on account of grief.” After narrating this story and uttering (the words) “Alas! Rāma!”, the king passed away.

41-42. Thinking that the king was sleeping, Kauśalyā also slept on account of pangs of grief. Early in the morning the singers and bards such as the sūtas, māgadhas, the awakener attempted to wake him up. He did not wake up and was dead. Knowing him as dead, Kauśalyā said, “O I have been ruined.”

43. The men and women then wept. Then Bharata along with Śatrughna was hurriedly brought to the city from the royal palace by Vasiṣṭha and others.

44. Having seen the grief-stricken Kaikeyi he reproached (her) out of grief. “(You) have made censure fall on the head” and praised Kauśalyā.

45-46. Having done the funeral rites of his father (whose body was kept preserved) in oil in oval vessel on the banks of the river Sarayū, when (he) was asked by Vasiṣṭha and others to rule the kingdom, he said, “I go now to bring back Rāma. Rāma is the king stronger than myself”. (He went) to Śṛṅgavera and to Prayāga where he was entertained by Bharadvājā.

47-48. Having saluted Bharadvāja, (Bharata) came to

1. Īśadabha was a missile capable of reaching a mark merely by the sound associated with the mark, the object itself not being perceived.
Rāma and Laksmana (and said), “O Rāma! Our father has reached the heaven. You become the king of Ayodhya. I will go to the forest adhering to your command.” Having heard this, Rāma (after) giving him water asked him to go (back) taking the sandals.

49. (Bharata said), “I will not go to the city. I swear, I will be remaining with matted locks.” On being urged by Rāma, Bharata returned to Nandigrāma and stationed there with his army, leaving the sandal at Ayodhya and worshipping it ruled over the kingdom.

CHAPTER SEVEN

Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Rāma (continued):

Nārada said:

1-2. Rāma bowed to Vasiṣṭha, the mothers, (sage) Atri and his wife Anasūyā, (sages) Śarabhaṅga1 and Sūtikṣṇa, the brother of Agastyā and Agastya and reached the Daṇḍaka forest having obtained the bow and sword by the grace of (Agastya).

3. He was staying at Pañcavaṭī in the Janasthāna on the banks of the (river) Godāvari. The awful (demoness) Śūrpaṇakhā2 came there to devour them all.

4-5. Seeing the beautiful form of Rāma, that lustful (woman) said to him, “Who are you? Whence have you come? You become my husband being entreated by me. I shall eat these two.” So saying to him she approached them. On the words of Rāma, Laksmana cut off her nose and ears.

6-7. She returned to her brother Khara with blood oozing out (and) said, “I shall die without a nose. I would live, O Khara! only when you would make me drink the hot blood of Sitā, the wife of Rāma and Laksmana, his brother.

8. Khara said to her that he will do so and went there with

1. Śarabhaṅga was a sage who entered the fire in the presence of Rāma and ascended heavens with a glowing body by the merits of his austerities. On his advice Rāma met another sage Sūtikṣṇa. Rām. III. v. and vii.

2. Śūrpaṇakhā was the sister of Rāvana, the king of Lankā and of Khara, the ruler of Janasthāna.
Dūṣaṇa, Triśiras and 14000 demons in order to fight (with Rāma).

9-10. Rāma also fought well and killed the demons with his arrows and led the army consisting of the elephants, cavalry, chariots and infantry together with the fighting Triśiras, Khara and Dūṣaṇa to death. Śūrpanakhā went to Laṅkā and fell down on the earth in front of Rāvaṇa.

11-13. (And) said to Rāvaṇa angrily, “You are neither a king, nor a protector. You abduct Sītā, the wife of Rāma, the killer of Khara and others. I will live only after drinking the blood of Rāma and Lakṣmaṇa and not by anything else.” Having heard her Rāvaṇa also said yes and said to Mārica, “You move in front of Sītā in the form of a golden deer drawing Rāma and Lakṣmaṇa away. I will carry her away. Otherwise you will be dead.”

14-15. Mārica said to Rāvaṇa, “Rāma with his bow is verily the god of death himself.” “Either I have to die at the hands of Rāvaṇa or at the hands of Rāghava (Rāma). If I have to die, it is better (to die at the hands of) Rāma than Rāvaṇa. Having thought so (Mārica) became a deer and roamed in front of Sītā again and again.

16. Being entreated by Sītā, Rāma (ran after that deer and) then killed that with an arrow. As it was dying, the deer said “O Sītā and O Lakṣmaṇa.”

17-20. Then Saumitri (Lakṣmaṇa) being told inconsistent (words) by Sītā went (in search) of Rāma. Rāvaṇa also abducted Sītā, having wounded the vulture Jaṭāyu, and being wounded by Jaṭāyu, carrying Sītā on the lap reached Laṅkā, kept (her) guarded in the Aśoka (grove) and said (to her), “You become my wife. You will be kept as the foremost.” Having killed Mārica, Rāma saw Lakṣmaṇa and said (to him), “O Saumitri! this is a phantom deer. By the time you had come here, Sītā

1. Dūṣaṇa and Triśiras were the commanders of Khara.
2. Mārica remembered his past miserable experience at the sacrificial site of Viśvāmitra. See V. 8 above.
3. Mārica imitated the voice of Rāma while crying aloud.
4. Jaṭāyu, the vulture was an intimate friend of king Daśaratha. He obstructed the path of Rāvaṇa on hearing the wails of Sītā, and was fatally wounded and died after being seen by Rāma and Lakṣmaṇa.
would have been taken away certainly." Then he did not find her as he returned (to that place).

21. He lamented with grief (and said), "Where have you (Sītā) gone discarding me?" Being comforted by Laksmaṇa, Rāma began to search for Jānakī (Sītā).

22. Having seen him, Jaṭāyu told that Rāvana had carried her away. He (Jaṭāyu) then died. (Rāma) performed his obsequies. He then killed (the demon) Kabandha.\(^1\) Getting free from a curse, he (Kabandha) said to Rāma, "You go to Sugrīva."

CHAPTER EIGHT

*Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Rāma (continued)*

Nārada said:

1. Having gone to the lake of Pampā, Rāma stayed there (that) night thinking (of what to do). Then he was (met and) taken to Sugrīva by Hanūmat. Rāma made friendship (with Sugrīva).

2. After having pierced the seven Tāla trees with a single arrow and (even as others) were seeing, threw away the body of Dundubhi\(^2\) by his foot to a distance of ten yojanas.

3-4. Having killed Vālin,\(^3\) his (Sugrīva's) enemy, who had been the cause of enmity, he bestowed on him the monkey-kingdom of Kīṣkindhā (as well as) Rumā and Tārā on the Rṣya-

---

1. Kabandha was a heavenly being at first and was later cursed by the sage Sthūlaśiras and Indra to become an ugly-shaped demon as he tormented the other ascetics and was told that he would regain his original form after he met Rāma and died at his hands. See Rām. III. lxxii-16.

2. Dundubhi was a powerful demon slain by Vālin, the brother of Sugrīva. When Sugrīva showed to Rāma the skeleton of this demon to show how powerful Vālin was, Rāma gently kicked it and threw it many miles away. See Rām. IV. xi. 24 ff.

3. When Māyāvin, the eldest son of Dundubhi, a demon, challenged Vālin, Vālin chased him. Māyāvin entered a cave and Vālin also followed suit. Sugrīva, who had gone with his brother and was asked by his brother to
mūka (mountains). That ruler of Kiṣkindhā (Sugrīva) told (Rāma), “I will do in such a way, O Rāma! by which you will be getting back Sitā”.

5-7. Having heard that, he (Rāma) spent the four months on the Mālyavat (mountain). As Sugrīva had not come to Kiṣkindhā to see (Rāma), Lakṣmaṇa (met him and) spoke to him the words of Rāma, “(You) go to Rāghava. The way in which Vālin was killed is not yet closed. O Sugrīva! You stand by at this juncture. Do not take to the course of Vālin.” Sugrīva said, “I did not realize the elapse of time on account of my preoccupation.”

8-9. Saying so, he (Lakṣmaṇa) went away. The lord of the monkeys (Sugrīva) (approached) Rāma, bowed and said, “All the monkeys have been brought in order to search for Sitā. As desired by you, I shall send them. Let them search for Jānakī in the (direction of) east etc. Let them return in a month. (If they come) after a month I will kill them.”

10. So saying (he sent monkeys in all directions). The monkeys sent towards the eastern, western and northern routes came (back) to Rāma and Sugrīva not finding Jānakī.

11. Having taken the signet ring of Rāma, Hanūmat together with other monkeys searched in the south in the caves of Suprabhā (mountain).

12-16. And being engaged for more than a month and not being able to find Jānakī, they said, “We will die in vain. Jāṭāyu is fortunate. For the sake of Sitā, he gave his life being wounded by Rāvana in the battle.” Having heard this, (the eagle) Sampāti, abandoning (his intention of) eating the monkeys (said), “This brother of mine, Jāṭāyu, was protected by me from the heat of the Sun as he was flying in the solar region. Hence, I had my wings burnt as I was flying in the clouds. On account of hearing the story of Rāma, the wings have grown again. I see Jānakī

guard at the entrance to the cave, took his brother to have been slain when he had not returned even after a long time. Sugrīva closed the entrance to the cave with stones, returned to Kiṣkindhā and assumed charge. As Vālin returned, the entreaties of Sugrīva were of no avail. Sugrīva retreated to Rṣya-mūka mountains to escape the wrath of Vālin as Vālin dreaded to enter that region on account of a curse. Tārā, the wife of Sugrīva, was also taken away by Vālin, but was restored to her husband after Vālin was slain by Rāma. See Rām. IV. ix.x
gone to *Āsoka* grove in Laṅkā in the Trikūṭaka (mountain) in (the middle of) the salt ocean of an extent of hundred yojanas. Knowing this let the monkeys tell Rāma and Sugrīva.”

CHAPTER NINE

*The Story of Rāma (continued)*:

*Nārada said*:

1. Having heard the words of Sampāti, Hanūmat, Aṅgada, (son of Vālin) and others having seen the ocean said, “Who may cross the ocean and make us live?”

2. For the survival of monkeys and accomplishing the task of Rāma, that Māruti (Hanūmat) crossed the ocean extending to hundred yojanas.

3-5. Having seen the rise of Maināka (mountain), having killed (the demon) Śimhikā and having seen Laṅkā and searching the houses of the demons and those of the women and the houses of the tenheaded (Rāvaṇa), Kumbha, Kumbhakaṇṇa, Vibhīṣaṇa, Indrajit, and other demons, he did not find (Sītā) (also) in the place for drinking wine. Becoming anxious and having gone to the *Āsoka* grove he found Sītā at the foot of the Śimśapā tree.

6. Remaining on the Śimśapā tree he saw Sītā being guarded by the demonesses, (and) Rāvaṇa asking her to become his wife and Sītā replying him that she could not.

7-9. The monkey (also saw) the demonesses asking Sītā to become the wife of Rāvaṇa. After Rāvaṇa had gone he said, “Daśaratha was a king. His sons Rāma and Lakṣmaṇa, the two excellent brothers came to the forest. You, Jānakī, the wife of Rāma were forcibly taken away by Rāvaṇa. Rāma became a friend of Sugrīva, sent me to search for you, (and) (you) take this signet ring of identification given by Rāma.”

10-12. Sītā received the ring. Having seen Māruti seated on the tree and again in front of her, (she asked) him, “If (he) lives, how Rāma does not take me away?” The monkey said to her who was doubtful, “O Sītā! Rāma does not know. Know-
ing now he will take you away after killing Rāvana along with his army. O Devī (queen)! Do not worry. You get me an identity.” Sitā gave the crest jewel to the monkey.

13. (And) said, “You do in such a way that Rāma would take me away quickly. O dispeller of grief! You retell him the story of the removal of the eye of the crow.”

14-15. Getting the jewel and (listening to) the story, Hanumāt said, “The Lord will be taking you away. Otherwise, if you feel some hurry, O auspicious one! You get on to my back. I shall show you Sugrīva and Rāghava today.” Sitā said to Hanumāt, “Let Rāghava take me away.”

16-18. Then Hanumāt made a stratagem in order to see Daśagrīva (Rāvana). He destroyed the grove, having killed the guards (of the grove) with his teeth and nails, and all the attendants, the sons of seven ministers, prince Akṣa. Śakrisān (Indrajit) (son of Rāvana) bound him with the Nāgapāsa and took him to the red-eyed Rāvana.

19. Rāvana asked him, “Who you are”. Māruti (Hanumāt) said to Rāvana, “I am the messenger of Rāma. You return Sitā to him. Otherwise you will certainly die along with the other demons in Laṅkā being hit by the arrows of Rāma.”

20-25. (Hearing these words) Rāvana was intent on killing (Hanumāt) but was prevented by Vibhiṣāṇa. He (Rāvana) made his (Hanumāt’s) tail set fire to. Having burnt Laṅkā and the demons with the blazing flames Māruti, met Sitā again and saluted her. He crossed the ocean and informed Aṅgada and others that he had seen Sitā. Having drunk honey in the honey-garden along with Aṅgada and others, overpowering Dadhimukha and other guards, they met Rāma and told him that Sitā was seen. Rāma also being happy asked Māruti, “How Sitā was seen by you? And what (message) did she send for me? Sprinkle me who am tormented by the fire of passion, with the nectar of the story of Sitā. Hanumāt said to Rāma (how) he had come after crossing the ocean and seeing Sitā, burning the city (of Laṅkā) and taking jewel from Sitā. “O Rāma! Do not worry. You will get back Sitā after having killed Rāvana.”

26-28. Receiving that jewel Rāma being grief-stricken wept and said, “Having seen this jewel (I feel) I have seen my Jānakī. (Sitā)! (You) take me (there). I cannot live without her.”
Being consoled by Sugrīva and others (Rāma) reached the banks of ocean. Vibhiśaṇa who was forsaken by his wicked brother Rāvaṇa for having advised him to return Sītā to Rāma, came there alone to Rāma.

29-31. Rāma anointed his friend Vibhiśaṇa as the ruler of Laṅkā. He requested ocean for (making) a way. When he had not come, then he split the (ocean) with an arrow. And the (king of the) ocean who had appeared before Rāma, said, “by building a bridge in the ocean by Nala you reach Laṅkā. I have been made great by you in the past.” Rāma also reached the other banks of the mighty ocean by means of the bridge constructed by Nala with trees and rocks. Along with the monkeys he saw Laṅkā, himself remaining on the Suvela mountain.

CHAPTER TEN

Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Rāma (continued):

Nārada said:

1. Being asked by Rāma, Aṅgada went to Rāvaṇa (and) said, “Let Jānakī be returned to Rāghava immediately, otherwise you will die.”

2. Rāvaṇa was intent on killing (Aṅgada). The ten-headed demon who was ready to fight sent words to Rāma that war was the only way thought of.

3-5. After hearing these words, Rāma came to Laṅkā with the monkeys for the sake of battle. The monkeys were Hanūmat, Mainda, Dvīvīda, Jāmbavat, Nala, Nila, Tāra, Aṅgada, Dhūmra, Suṣeṣa, Keśari, Gaya, Panasa, Vinata, Rambha, Śarabha, Krathana the strong, Gavākṣa, Dadhivakra, Gandhamadana and others and Sugrīva. With these and other innumerable monkeys (Rāma came to Laṅkā).

6. There was a disorderly battle between the demons and monkeys. The demons killed the monkeys with arrows, spears and mace.”
7. The monkeys killed demons with nails, teeth and stones. The force of the demons consisting of elephants cavalry, chariots and infantry was destroyed.

8. Hanûmat killed the enemy Dhûmrâkṣa with a big rock. Nila killed the fighting Akampana and Prahasta.

9. Râma and Lakshmâna fainted on account of the arrow discharged by Indrajit. Regaining their consciousness after perceiving Târksya (the chief of the eagles), they killed the forces of demons.

10. Râma made Râvana shattered in the battle by means of arrows. And the grief-stricken Râvana woke up Kumbhakarṇa.

11-12. Then being awakened, Kumbhakarṇa, drinking thousands of pots of wine, and having eaten buffaloes and other (animals), said to Râvana, “You have done the sin of abducting Sitâ and because (you are) my master, I shall go now for the war and kill Râma along with the monkeys.”

13. So saying, Kumbhakarṇa crushed all the monkeys. Being seized by him, Sugriva cut off his ears and nose.

14. Having lost ears and nose he was eating the monkeys. then Râma cut off the arms of Kumbhakarṇa with the arrows.

15-17. Then having cut off the feet, (Râma) made (his) head fall on the earth. And then the demons Kumbha, Nikumbha, Makarâkṣa, Mahodara and Mahâpârśva, the arrogant, Praghasa, Bhâsakarṇa, Virûpâkṣa, Devântaka, Narântaka, Triśiras, Atikâya (were killed) in battle by Râma, Lakshmâna and the monkeys in the company of Vibhiṣâna.

18-21. And other demons, as they were fighting were made to fall down. Fighting by conceit, Indrajit bound Râma and others with the Nâgâstra got as a gift. After they were made secure and free from wounds when Mâruti had brought the mountain. Hanûmat bore him (Lakshmâna) to that place where (Indrajit) was doing homa and offering âhuti-s unto the fire at Nikumbila. Lakshmâna killed the valiant Indrajit in battle. Being burnt by grief, Râvana was intent on killing Sitâ.

22. The king although obstructed by the women, went (to fight) seated on a chariot and accompanied by the army. Being directed by Indra, Mâtali¹ made Râma seated on a chariot.

1. Mâtali is the charioteer of Indra.
23. The fight between Rāma and Rāvana was none the second. Rāvana attacked monkeys and Māruti and others attacked Rāvana.

24-26. Just as a cloud, Rāma showered on him (Rāvana) arrows and weapons. He cut off his flagstaff along with his chariot, horses and charioteer as well as the bow, arms and heads. The cut-off heads grew again (on his body). Rāvana was made to fall down to the ground by Rāma by piercing (his) heart with the Brahmāstra (weapon of the Pitāmaha). The (rākṣasa) women wept along with other demons. After consoling them, Vibhīṣaṇa cremated him as directed by Rāma.

27-28. Rāma made the pure Sitā to be brought (to him) by Hanūmat. He accepted her who was (declared) pure by her entry into the fire and (he) was praised by Indra, Brahmā, Daśaratha and others as, "You are Viṣṇu, the killer of the demon." Indra being propitiated, revived the monkeys by a shower of nectar.

29-30. They all (Brahmā and o hers) being worshipped by Rāma returned to heavens after witnessing the battle. Rāma entrusted Laṅkā to Vibhīṣaṇa. Having honoured the monkeys, being seated in the (aerial chariot) Puṣpaka in the company of Sitā, Rāma returned by the same route by which he had gone (to Laṅkā) showing the forests and mountains to Sitā and having a happy mind.

31. Having paid obeisance to Bharadvāja, he reached Nandigrāma. Being revered by Bharata there, he reached Ayodhyā and settled there.

32. Having saluted Vasiṣṭha and other sages, Kauśalyā, Kaikeyī and Sumitrā and having obtained the kingdom he honoured the twice-born.

33. He worshipped Vāsudeva (Viṣṇu), his own self, with the Ṛtuvedha (sacrifice). He conferred gifts on the deserving men. He protected (the welfare) of his subjects.

34. (He protected) dharma (righteousness), kāma (desire for worldly enjoyments) etc. just as his sons. (He) was bent on subduing the wicked. The world was abound with all righteous activities. The earth was abound with all grains. As Rāma was ruling, there was no premature death.
CHAPTER ELEVEN

Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Rāma (continued):

Nārada said:

1. The well-honoured sages Agastya and others went to Rāghava, who was ruling the country (and said), “You are fortunate and are victorious because you have killed Indrajit.

2. Pulastya was the son of Brahmā. Viṣravas was (the son of Pulastya). Kaikasi (was his wife). (His) first (wife) was Puśpotkaṭā.¹ The lord of wealth (Kubera) was her son.

3. Rāvaṇa was born to Kaikasi (possessing) 20 arms and 10 faces. By means of (his) penance he got a boon from Brahmā and conquered celestials.

4. Kumbhakarna was always sleeping, Vibhiṣaṇa became deep-rooted in dharma. Their sister (was) Śūrpanakhā, Meghnāda (was born) from Rāvaṇa.

5. Having conquered Indra, he became Indrajit. He was stronger than Rāvaṇa. Desirous of welfare of the celestials, (he) was killed by you (and) Lakṣmanā”.

6-7. Having told (thus) those sages Agastya and others had gone after being prostrated by (Rāma). Śatrughna directed by Rāma as per desires of celestials, became the killer of Lavaṇa at some place (known as) Mathurā. Being directed by Rāma, Bharata killed three crores of sons of Śailūṣa with sharp arrows.

8-9. (Having killed) Śailūṣa, the wicked Gandharva, a resident on the banks of (the river) Sindhu and having established his sons Takṣa and Puṣkara in those countries, Bharata went to Rāghava along with Lakṣmaṇa and remained worshipping him after having killed the wicked in the battle and protected the pious.

10. The two sons Kuṣa and Lava, the excellent brothers were born in the hermitage of Vālmiki to Sītā abandoned on

1. The name of the first wife of Viṣravas is given as Devavarminī, daughter of Bharadvāja. See Rām. VII.ii.

Viṣravas blessed Kaikasi, the daughter of Sumālin, when she had come to him desirous of progeny. But the progeny would be dreadful as she had come to him at twilight, said the sage. When she again entreated him, he blessed her that her next son would be like himself pursuing righteous life. See Rām. VII. ix.
account of rumour among the people; and were known from the hearing of (their) good episode.

11. After having been anointed in the kingdom and being bent on contemplation with (the attitude of) "I am brahman", (and then) the son of Sītā after having ruled for 11,000 years and after performing sacrifices went to heaven along with the citizens and (his) brother, and being attended to by the people and honoured by the celestials.

Agni said:

12. Vālmīki composed the Rāmāyana in elaborate (form) after hearing from Nārada. One who hears this will go to heaven.

CHAPTER TWELVE

Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Kṛṣṇa

Agni said:

1. I shall describe the genealogy of Hari (Kṛṣṇa). Brahmā (was born) from the lotus in the navel of Viṣṇu. (Sage) Atri (was born) from Brahmā. Then Soma (was born). Purūravas was born from Soma.

2. Ayu was (born) from him (Purūravas). From him (was born) Nahuṣa and then Yayāti. From whom Devayānī gave birth to Yadu and Turvasu.

3. Sarmiṣṭhā, the daughter of Vṛṣaparvan (gave birth to) Druhyu, Anu and Puru (through Yayāti). The Yādavas (came) in the race of Yadu. Vasudeva was the foremost among these.

---

1. Devayānī was the daughter of Śukra, the preceptor of demons. When her love for Kaca, the pupil of her father was not reciprocated by him, she cursed him and he in turn cursed her that she would become the wife of a warrior. Once when Devayānī and her companion Sarmiṣṭhā were bathing, their dresses got exchanged, and the irate Sarmiṣṭhā slapped Devayānī and threw her into the well. Devayānī was later rescued from the well by Yayāti, who married her with the consent of her father. As cursed by Devayānī, Sarmiṣṭhā became her servant. See Apts SD. and MBh.-Nam. p. 151.
4-7. From Vasudeva through Devaki (was born Krṣṇa) in order to remove oppression on the earth. Once the sons of Hiraṇyakaśipu (became) the six embryos in the womb of Devaki being led by the meditative-sleep cast by Viṣṇu. The seventh child in the womb of Devaki that was strong was transferred to (the womb of) Rohini and (was born) as the son of Rohini.¹ Then Hari the four-armed (manifested) in the sky on the eighth day of the dark fortnight and being adored by Devaki and Vasudeva (was born) as a child with two arms. Vasudeva took (the child) to the couch of Yasodā, being afraid of Kaṁsa.

8-10. Yasodā carried the daughter (born to her) and left it at the couch of Devaki. Having heard the cries of the child, Kaṁsa (came there and carried the child) and smashed it on the stone slab in spite of being obstructed by Devaki. Having heard the voice in the heavens that, “My eighth birth would be your death”, and being infuriated all the children born were killed (by him) after they were left with him by Devaki as promised (by Vasudeva) at the time of their marriage. The girl who was thrown (on the slab) (bounced) to the sky and said:

11. “O Kaṁsa! What is the use of throwing me (to kill me). One who would kill you, that lord of all the celestials had born (already) for the removal of oppression on the earth.”

12-13. Having told so she (disappeared). And she having killed Śumbha² and other demons and being praised by Indra (was known differently as) the Āryā, Durgā, the source of the Vedas, Ambikā (the mother), Bhadrakāli (beneficent Kāli), the beneficent, Kṣemā (bestower of peace), propitious, (and) multi-armed. I bow unto her. Whoever reads these names at the three twilights will get all cherished desires fulfilled.

¹ Vasudeva had two wives—Devaki and Rohini. The six sons born of yogic sleep were carried off by Hiraṇyakaśipu’s yogic power. They were again born to Devaki and were killed by Kaṁsa. The seventh child in the womb of Devaki was transferred to the womb of Rohini, hence was known as Śaṅkarśanā alias Balarāma. See Bhāg. P. X.lxxxv. 46-49; Vi.P.V. i. 70; P. Index III. p. 769.

² Śumbha and his brother Niśumbha, the two demons, propitiates Brahmā and requested him that they should have no death. When Brahmā declined to grant their request as impossible, they again requested that they should not die at the hands of mortals, celestials, animals or birds. They excluded women, as they thought that women are not so much powerful to fear death at their hands. When they oppressed all beings, the goddess killed them. See Devi Bh. P. V. xxi. xxx. xxxi.
14-15. Kaṁsa also sent Pūtanā and others in order to kill the boy. (Bala) Rāma and Krṣṇa, being entrusted by Vasudeva to the custody of Nanda, the husband of Yaśodā, for their protection from the fear of Kaṁsa and others, were living at Gokula with the cows and shepherds.

16. They (two), the protectors of the entire world became the protectors of cows. (Once the boy) Krṣṇa was tied to the mortar with a rope by the bewildered Yaśodā (to contain his sportive mischiefs).

17-20. He went in between the two Arjuna-trees¹ and uprooted them. And the cart² was made to roll away by a kick of the foot. Pūtanā, who was intent on killing (him) was killed by that seeker of the breast (milk) by sucking her breast. Krṣṇa, who had gone to Vṛndāvana (grove of holy basil), drew out the (serpent) Kāliya, resident in the waters, from the waters of (the river) Yamunā and conquered it and was praised by (his brother) Bala. (He) made the Tālavana (palmyra grove) secure after killing (the demon) Dhenuka (in the form of) an ass (and) after having killed (the demons) Ariṣṭa (in the form of) a bull (and) Keśi in the form of a horse. Abandoning the festivity for Śakra (Indra), the ritual of protecting the cows was made to be observed.

21. The mountain was borne and the rain (caused to fall) by Indra, was warded off. (Then) Govinda (Krṣṇa) was saluted by Indra and offered with the peacock (plumes).

22. Festivities for Indra were again caused to be done by Krṣṇa, after being pleased. Riding a chariot he went to Māthurā and was praised by Akrūra, as directed by Kaṁsa.

23. Being attended to by the devoted and sportive shepherd women, he having killed the washerman who did not get (the clothes), seized the clothes.

24-26. Wearing the garland along with Rāma (Balarāma) he blessed the garland-maker. He made upright the hunch-backed woman who had given him unguent. He killed the demon Kuvalayāpiḍa (in the form of) an intoxicated elephant. Even as Kaṁsa and others were looking on, he entered the (wrestling) court and fought with those (wrestlers) on the dais.

1. Arjuna trees, later personified as two demons.
2. The name of a demon, who assumed the form of a cart.
Much strength was shown by the wrestler Cāṇūra and Muṣṭika. The wrestlers Cāṇūra and Muṣṭika and others were killed by them.

27-28. Having killed Kaṁsa, the ruler of Mathurā, Hari (Krṣṇa) made his father as the ruler of Yādavas. Asti and Prāpti, the wives of Kaṁsa were the two daughters of Jarāsandha. Being entreated by them Jarāsandha besieged Mathurā and fought with the Yādavas with arrows.

29-31. (Bala) Rāma and Krṣṇa came to Gomantaka leaving Mathurā. After conquering Jarāsandha, the despiser of Vāsudeva (Krṣṇa) and of Pauṇḍraka, he made Dvārakā as his capital and stayed there being surrounded by Yādavas. Having killed (the demon) Naraka, the son of the Earth, he (Krṣṇa) brought 16000 daughters of the celestials, gandharvas and yakṣas (kinds of semi-divine beings) and married them, as well as the eight (girls) Rukmiṇī and others.

32-34. (Then) the killer of Naraka, (seated) on the (bird) Garuḍa, in the company of Satyabhāmā and with the jewell store and other jewels after having conquered Indra in the heavens and brought the (divine tree) Pārijāta planted (it) in the house of Satyabhāmā. Having learnt the (science of) astra and āstātra (use of weapons) from Sāndīpanī (rescued) his son and brought him (to him) after conquering the demon Paṅcagajana and was well-worshipped by Yama (the god of death). He killed (the demon) Kālayavana (by a ruse) and was worshipped by (the king) Mucukunda.

35. He worshipped Vāsudeva and Devakī the devotees and

1. Pauṇḍraka was the King of Kāśi and the son of Vāsudeva and Sutanu, the daughter of Kāśīrāja. When he became the king, he asserted that he was the real Vāsudeva. Krṣṇa invaded Kāśi and killed him. See Vi.P. V. xxxiv. 4-28; Bhāg. P. X lxi. 1-23; P. Index. II. p. 393.

2. Kālayavana was a king of the Yavanas. He was an enemy of Krṣṇa and an invincible foe of the Yādavas. Krṣṇa found it impossible to vanquish him. He cunningly decoyed him to the cave where Mucukunda was sleeping. Mucukunda's sleep being disturbed, he burnt him down.

3. King Mucukunda, son of Māndhātṛ, assisted celestials in their war against demons and got as a boon a long and unbroken sleep and that whoever dared to disturb his sleep would be burnt to ashes. Accordingly when Kālayavana disturbed his sleep, he was burnt to ashes. See note 2 above and Apte SD.
brahmins. Nīśātha and Ulmuka were born to Revati through Balabhadora.

36. Samba (was born) through Jāmbavatī and other sons were (born) through other (wives) to Kṛṣṇa.

37-39. Pradyumna was born through Rukmini (to Kṛṣṇa) and was forcibly taken away on the sixth day by Śambara and thrown into the ocean. A fish seized him. A fisherman (caught) that fish and brought it to Śambara and ġave it to Māyāvatī (the maid). Māyāvatī having found her husband inside the fish, nourished him with respect. She also said to him, "I am Rati. You are my husband. You are Kāma (cupid) and made bodiless by Śambhu (Śiva). I was forcibly taken a (captive). I am not his wife. You (are) knower of magic. You kill Śambara."

40. Having heard that Pradyumna killed Śambara and went to Kṛṣṇa along with (his) wife Māyāvatī. Then Rukmini was happy.

41-42. From Pradyumna Aniruddha was born, who was the husband of Uṣā and was highly intelligent. Bāṇa (was) the son of Bali (and) his daughter (was) Uṣā. (His city was known) as Śoṇitapura. By (his) penance (he) was (treated as) son of Śiva. "Bāṇa! You will be waging a war (as indicated) by the fall of flagstaff," said Śiva to Bāṇa, becoming pleased.

43-44. Having seen Gaurī (Pārvatī) sporting with Śiva, Uṣā was desirous of (getting) a husband. Gaurī said to her, "The person seen by you in your dream on the twelfth day in the month of Vaiśākha (the second month in the Hindu new year) will become you husband". Uṣā becoming happy on these words of Gaurī, saw him (that person) (in dream) while she slept in her house.

1. Śambara was a companion of Karuṣa. He took away the child Pradyumna a couple of days after the birth of the child, knowing that it would be his slayer and threw him into the ocean. A giant fish swallowed it. When the fishermen caught the fish and brought to Śambara, the fish was sent to the kitchen. When the cooks cut the fish and found the beautiful child, they informed Māyāvatī, the mistress of Šambara's household. Māyāvatī knew that she was none other than Rati and Kāma was reborn as Pradyumna. She nourished and brought up Pradyumna. After he grew up she revealed the truth to him. The two got married. Atlast Šambara was killed by Pradyumna after a severe battle. See Bhāg. P. X. xxxvi. 36 and lv. 3-24.
45-46. Knowing (that person) united with herself, she (identified) Aniruddha from the drawn portraits (of princes) through (the assistance of) her friend Citralekhā (and) brought that grandson of Krśṇa from Dvārakā (to her place) by the daughter of Kumbhāṇḍa, the minister of Bāṇa. Aniruddha went and made marry with Uṣā.

47-48. (Bāṇa was) informed (of this) by his mobile guards. Aniruddha had a fierce fight with Bāṇa.1 Having heard this from Nārada, Krśṇa (went along) with Pradyumna (and) Balabhadra (and) remaining on the Garuḍa (vehicle of Viṣṇu) conquered the fires and the fever related to Maheśvara (Śiva).

49. There was a fight between Hari and Śaṅkara (Śiva) with arrows. Nandi, Vināyaka, Skanda and others were conquered by Tārkṣya (Garuḍa) and others.

50. When Śaṅkara (Śiva) yawned, Viṣṇu (employed) the missile Jṛmbhaṇa and cut the thousand arms (of Śaṅkara). Protection was sought by Rudra (Śiva).

51-53. Bāṇa was animated by Viṣṇu. The two-armed (Viṣṇu) said to Śiva, “What protection was offered by you to Bāṇa (is identical with) that (offered) by me. There is no difference between us and one who (thinks of) any difference goes to hell. Viṣṇu was propitiated by Śiva and others. Aniruddha in the company of Uṣā and others, having gone to Dvārakā, amused himself along with Ugrasena and other Yādavas. Vajra (was) the son of Aniruddha. He learnt all knowledge from Mārkaṇḍeya.

54-55. Balarāma was the killer of (the demon) Pralamba2 (by whom) there was the dragging of the river Yamunā. The destroyer of the monkey Dvividā3 and the destroyer of the pride

1. As Bāṇa was a devotee of Śiva, the forces of Śiva came to assist him in the war. See verse 42 above. See Bhāg. P. X. lxiii. 23.

2. Pralamba, an asura friend of Kṛṣṇa went in the guise of a cowherd to the place where Kṛṣṇa and Balarāma were playing with their companions. Being admitted to the games, while carrying Balarāma on his back, he grew into a huge form and was killed by Balarāma. See Bhāg. P. X. xviii. 17-29; M. Bh.-Nam. p. 209b; Vi. P. V. ix. 1-38.

3. Dvividā, a counsellor of Sugriva and brother of Mainda, was also a friend of the demon Naraka. In order to avenge the death of his friend, he burnt the cities and villages and caused much havoc. He was finally killed by Balarāma after a hard combat. See Bhāg. P. X. lxvii; Vi. P. V. xxxvi. 1-23 and P Index II. p. 150.
of Kauravas, Lord Hari amused himself in many forms along with Rukmiṇī and others. He produced many sons and innumerable Yādavas. Whoever reads the account of the lineage of Hari, that person would have his desires fulfilled and attain Hari.

CHAPTER THIRTEEN

Origin of the Kauravas and Pāṇḍavas:

Agni said:

1. I shall narrate the (story of) Bhārata (which has) the description of the greatness of Kṛṣṇa. Viṣṇu removed heavy oppression on the earth having Pāṇḍavas as the instrumental cause.

2. Brahmā was born of the lotus in the navel of Viṣṇu. (Sage) Atri was the son of Brahmā. From Atri was born Soma. From Soma, Budha was born. From him (Budha) was born Aila—Pūruvāras.

3-4. Āyu (was born) from him. King Nahuṣa was then (born). Then Yayāti, then Puru (were born successively). In his race (was born) Bharata. Then king Kuru (was born). In that race (was born) Śantanu. From him (was born) Bhīṣma (as) the son of the Ganges. (His) brothers Citrāṅgada and Vicitira (vīrya) were born to Śantanu through Satyavatī.

5-8. After Śantanu’s death, Bhīṣma who had no wife, (governed and) protected his brother’s kingdom. The young Citrāṅgada was killed by the Gandharva Citrāṅgada. The two daughters of Kāśirāja, Ambikā and Ambālikā brought (as captives) by Bhīṣma, the conqueror of the foes, (became) the wives of Vicitavīrya,. He (Vicitavīrya) died on account of consumption. With the consent of Satyavatī, from Vyāsa, King Dhrたらśtra was (born) through Ambikā and Pāṇḍu through Ambālikā as sons. From Dhrたらśtra through Gandhārī hundred sons (were born) with Duryodhana as the first.
9. By the curse of a sage\(^1\) then he (Pāṇḍu) died on account of union with his wife at the hermitage of Śataśrīga, then Yudhiṣṭhira (was born) to Pāṇḍu through Kunti from Dharma (Yama).

10. (Similarly) Bhima from Vāta (God of wind), Arjuna from Śakra (were born) and through Mādrī, Nakula and Sahadeva from the Aśvinī kumāra. Pāṇḍu died when (he was) in union with Mādrī.\(^1\)

11. Karṇa, born to Kunti, when she was a virgin, became a dependent of Duryodhana. By destiny there was enmity between the Kuruṣ (Kauravas) and Pāṇḍavas.

12. The wicked Duryodhana burnt the Pāṇḍavas in the lac house. The Pāṇḍavas escaped from the burnt house along with their mother as the sixth.

13. Then at (the place) Ekacakra, in the house of a brahmin, they all remained in the attire of an ascetic after killing the demon Baka.\(^2\)

14. They went to the fair at Pāṇcāla and in the svayamvara (self-choice) of Draupadī. The well adorned Draupadī was obtained by the five Pāṇḍavas.

15. Then (they) were known to have got half of the kingdom by Duryodhana and others. The divine bow Gāṇḍīva and the excellent chariot were obtained from the Fire god.

16. And in the battle, Arjuna got Kṛṣṇa as the charioteer and inexhaustible arrows and similarly the missiles (known as) Brahmā and other weapons (were obtained) from Droṇa. All were proficient in (the use of) arms.

17-18. (Acting on the words of) Kṛṣṇa, Arjuna put out the fire at the Khāṇḍava forest. And the Pāṇḍava (Arjuna) having obstructed rains (caused by Indra) with the shower of arrows, conquered the countries in different directions. Yudhiṣṭhira ruled the country along with the (other) Pāṇḍavas. (He per-

---

1. The sage Kindama, who was sporting with his wife, both assuming the form of a deer, was hit along with his wife by the arrows of Pāṇḍu, who had gone there for hunting. The sage cursed Pāṇḍu that he would also die while copulating with his wife. See _M. Bh._ I. cxvii. 5-31.

2. Baka was a demon living in the city Ekacakra. Under an agreement the residents were supplying his daily food consisting of a buffalo, a man etc. from each family in turn. When the five Pāṇḍavas were staying in that place disguised as ascetics, Bhima killed the demon to relieve a poor brahmin resident, who was lamenting his fate as it was his turn that day. _M. Bh._ I. clxvi ff.
formed) the Rājasūya (sacrifice) (spending) plenty of gold. Suyodhana (Duryodhana) could not bear that.

19-20. Being directed by brother Duḥśāsana and by Karaṇa who had been enriched by him, he won over Yudhiṣṭhira in dice, (being assisted) by Śakuni in playing the dice. His kingdom was also won by conceit. Those in the court laughed at him. Yudhiṣṭhira being won, went to the forest along with the brothers.

21-24. He spent twelve years in the forest as promised (by him) along with (the sage) Dhaumya and Draupadī as the sixth, feeding 88000 twice-borns as before. Then (he) went to the King of Virāṭa, with the other names, the king (Yudhiṣṭhira) unrecognised as the brahmin Kaṅka, Bhīma as the cook, Arjuna as Bṛhannalā, (their) wife (Draupadī) as Sairandhri and the twins. And Bhimasena killed Kīcaka² in the night as he was desirous of winning over Draupadī. And Arjuna conquered the Kurus, who were engaged in seizing and lifting the cows. (Hence) they were recognised as Pāṇḍavas (by the Kurus).

25-28. (Then) Subhadra, the sister of Kṛṣṇa, gave birth to Abhimanyu, from Arjuna. And (King) Virāṭa gave his daughter Uttarā to him. Dharmanāja (Yudhiṣṭhira), the master of seven aksauhiṇī³, was (ready) for the war. That Kṛṣṇa, the messenger, having gone to the intolerant Duryodhana said to that lord of eleven aksauhiṇī, “Give half the kingdom or five villages to Yudhiṣṭhira. Or else (you) fight (with him).” Hearing (these) words, Suyodhana (Duryodhana) said to Kṛṣṇa, “I will not give land (even of the size) of a needle tip. I will fight engaged in seizing it.”

Agni said:

29. Having shown the invincible omnipresent form (and) being honoured by Vidura, (Kṛṣṇa) returned to Yudhiṣṭhira and said to Yudhiṣṭhira, “Fight with this Suyodhana (Duryodhana).”

1. Kīcaka was the commander-in-chief and brother-in-law of King of Virāṭa. M. Bh.—Nam. pp. 68-69
2. The army consisted of 21,870 chariots, as many elephants, 65,610 horses and 109,350 foot-soldiers. Apte SD.
CHAPTER FOURTEEN

Story of the Mahābhārata

_Agni said:_

1-3. The armies of Yudhiṣṭhira and Duryodhana went to Kurukṣetra. Having seen Bhīṣma, Droṇa and others, (Arjuna said) that he would not fight with his preceptors. The Lord (Krṣṇa) said to Pārtha (Arjuna), "You need not worry about Bhīṣma and prominent men. The bodies are perishable. But the soul does not perish. This soul is the supreme Brahman. You know that (by realizing that), 'I am Brahman.' Being neutral towards success and defeat and as a yogin you protect the duties of a king."

4-6. Being told thus by Krṣṇa, Arjuna fought (the battle). He sounded drums remaining in the chariot. Bhīṣma was the first commander for the army of Duryodhana. And Śīkhaṇḍi (was the commander) for the Pāṇḍavas. There was a fight between these two armies. (The armies) of the son of Dhṛtarāṣṭra along with Bhīṣma killed the armies of Pāṇḍavas. The Pāṇḍavas in the company of Śīkhaṇḍi¹ and others killed (the army) of the sons of Dhṛtarāṣṭra. The battle between the armies of Kurus and Pāṇḍavas was similar (to the battle) between devas and asuras.

7-10. It was (a cause) for the growth of delight of the devas in the heavens who were watching it. For ten days Bhīṣma destroyed the army of Pāṇḍavas with astras. On the tenth day Arjuna showered arrows on the valiant Bhīṣma. On the words of Drupada, Śīkhaṇḍi² showered astras just as a cloud would do. The elephants, horses, chariots and infantry were brought down by the astras (of the two armies) mutually. Bhīṣma, able to die at his own will, after having shown the mode of war and being told by the Vasus (a class of deities), was remaining in the bed of arrows awaiting to reach Vasuloka, and for the (com-

---

¹ Śīkhaṇḍi, son of Drupada, was at first a woman known as Śīkhaṇḍiṁ and was later transformed into a man and was known as Śīkhaṇḍin. M.Bh. V. xci.

² Bhīṣma had pledged not to fight against eunuchs. As Arjuna had Śīkhaṇḍi as his charioteer, it was easy for him to kill Bhīṣma as Bhīṣma would not fight against Śīkhaṇḍi, a woman transformed into a man.
mencement of the) summer solstice all the while remaining contemplating on Viṣṇu and praising Him.

11. As Duryodhana was grief-stricken, Droṇa became the Commander. As the army of Pāṇḍavas was jubilant, Dhṛṣṭadyumna (was made) the Commander.

12. There was a fierce battle between the two which made the domain of Yama (the god of death) extensive. Virāṭa, Drupada and others were drowned in the ocean of (arrows of) Droṇa.

13. The huge army of Duryodhana (consisted of) elephant, horse, chariot and infantry. Droṇa became just like Kāla (death himself) for the (army) headed by Dhṛṣṭadyumna.

14-15. When it was proclaimed that Aśvathāman was killed, Droṇa abandoned his astras. Overcome by the arrow of Dhṛṣṭadyumna he fell on the earth on the fifth day, (himself being) unassailable and after having killed many warriors. As Duryodhana was grief-stricken, Kṛṣṇa became the commander.

16. And Arjuna (became the commander) of the Pāṇḍava forces. There was combat between them, between weapons and weapons, very fierce and resembling a war between devas and asuras.

17. In the war known as the Kṛṣṇārjuna, Kṛṣṇa killed the enemies with his arrows. On the second day, Kṛṣṇa was killed by Arjuna.

18. Śalya fought for a day and Yudhiṣṭhira killed him. Suyodhana (Duryodhana), whose army had been destroyed, fought with Bhīmasena.

19. Having killed many men (in their army) (he) challenged Bhīmasena. Bhīmasena killed him, who was attacking with the mace.

20-21. (Bhīmasena) killed his brothers with his mace. On that eighteenth day, in the night, the very strong Aśvathāman killed the sleeping army of Pāṇḍavas of the extent of an akṣauḥpiṇī, the Pāṇcālas and the sons of Draupadī. He also killed Dhṛṣṭadyumna.

22. Then Arjuna seized his crest-jewel with an arrow (and gave it) to that Draupadī who had lost her sons and was lamenting.
23. Hari (Krṣṇa) revived (all of them) who were burnt by the arrows of Aśvatthāman. That embryo of Uttarā became a king (known as) Parīkṣit.

24. Kṛtavarma, Kṛpa and Drauṇi (son of Droṇa) (Aśvatthāman) survived in the battle. The five Pāṇḍavas, Sātyaki and Kṛṣṇa survived and none else.

25-26. Then that Yudhiṣṭhira having pacified the grief-stricken women, in the company of Bhīma and others, having done the obsequies for the killed warriors and having offered waters and money and after having heard the peace-yielding dharma, the royal duties, dharma relating to final emancipation, dharma relating to charity, became a king.

27. The destroyer of his enemy (Yudhiṣṭhira) gave away charities to the brahmans at the Aśvamedha (sacrifice). Having heard about the destruction of Yādavas¹ caused by the club and having installed Parīkṣit in the kingdom, (he) reached heavens along with the brothers.

CHAPTER FIFTEEN

Ascendance of Pāṇḍavas to heaven:

Agni said:

1. O Brahmin! When Yudhiṣṭhira was ruling the kingdom, Dhṛtarāṣṭra went to the forest along with Gāndhārī and Pṛthā (Kuntī) and passed from one stage of life to another.

2-5. Vidura was burnt by the forest fire and ascended heavens. Thus, Viṣṇu removed the oppression of demons and others on the earth, for the sake of dharma and for the destruc-

¹ This alludes to the curse of sages when the Yādava boys dressed up Sāmba, son of Jāmbavatī, as a woman and requested sages to tell what kind of child would be born to her. The sages cursed that an iron mace would be born. When it happened accordingly, the mace was powdered and thrown into the sea. They were washed ashore and later grew into reeds. The Yādavas under the influence of liquor quarrelled with each other and destroyed themselves by beating with the uprooted reeds. See Vi.P.V. xxvii. 9-10; M. Bh. XVI. i. 15-22.
tion of adharma and having the Pāṇḍavas as an apparent cause. Having the curse of a brahmin, as a pretext, he destroyed with the club, the race of Yādavas who were oppressing (the world). Then (he) installed Vajra (son of Aniruddha) in the kingdom. On the directive of celestials, Hari himself having discarded his body at Prabhāsa, is being worshipped by the residents of heavens at the worlds of Indra and Brahmā. Balabhadra, (who was) a form of Ananta, reached heavens in the nether world.

6. Hari, the imperishable lord, is always to be contemplated upon by those who meditate (on him). Without him (at Dvārakā), the ocean flooded the city of Dvārakā.

7-8. Pārtha (Arjuna), having performed the obsquies of Yādavas, and having offered the waters of oblation and money, felt grief-stricken when the women, who were the wives of Viṣṇu (Krṣṇa), were carried away by the shepherds (using) the clubs as weapons and defeating Arjuna on account of the curse of Aṣṭāvakra.1

9-12. Being consoled by Vyāsa, he thought, “My strength remains only in the presence of Krṣṇa.” Having come to Hastināpura, Pārtha then informed Yudhiṣṭhira, his brothers and the guards of the people. That bow, those weapons and the chariot and those horses were lost in the absence of Krṣṇa, just as a charity made to a person not well learned (would be lost). Having heard that (news), the intelligent Dharmacāja (Yudhiṣṭhira), having established Parīkṣit in the kingdom, set out on his final journey to relinquish this world along with Draupadi and his brothers, after having realized the transitory nature of the mundane existence and repeating 108 (names) of Hari.

13. Draupadī, Sahadeva, Nakula, Phālguna2 (Arjuna), Bhīma had fallen on the way (of their march). The king was grief-stricken.

1. Once when a brahmin Aṣṭāvakra was doing penance standing in neck-deep water, the heavenly nymphs who happened to pass that way bowed to him and sought his blessings to get a good husband. Being pleased he blessed them that they would become the wives of the Lord when he manifested as Krṣṇa. Later, when they began to mock at him, on seeing his crooked form as he came out of waters, he got enraged and cursed them that they would be forcibly taken away by thieves. See Vi.P. V. xxxviii. 71-82.

2. On account of his birth on the Himalayan peaks as the moon was in asterism Uttarā Phalguni, Arjuna was known by this name.
14. Mounting the chariot brought by Indra he reached heavens along with his brothers, having seen Duryodhana and others and Vāsudeva and becoming happy. This is (the story of) Bhārata told to you. Whoever reads this, goes to heaven.

CHAPTER SIXTEEN

Manifestation of Viṣṇu as Buddha and Kalki:

Agni said:

1. I am describing the manifestation (of Viṣṇu) as Buddha, by reading and hearing which one gets wealth. Once in the battle between devas and asuras, devas were defeated by the daityas (demons, sons of Diti).

2. They sought refuge in the lord saying, “Protect us! Protect us!” He (Viṣṇu), who is of the form of illusory delusion became the son of Śuddhodana.

3-4. He deluded those demons. Those, who had abandoned the path laid down in the Veda, became the Baudhas and from them others who had abandoned the Veda. He then became the Arhat (Jaina). He then made others as Arhats. Thus the heretics came into being devoid of vedic dharmas.

5-6. They did such a work deserving hell (as reward). They would receive even from the vile. All of them became mixed Dasyus and devoid of good conduct at the end of Kaliyuga. Of the Vajasaneyaka veda (Śuklayajurveda) only fifteen sections will be existing.

7. Non-aryans in the form of kings would devour men who wear the costumes of righteousness and have a taste for unrighteous thing.

8-9. Kalki, as the son of Viṣṇuyaṣas, (and having) Yājñavalkya as the priest would destroy the non-Aryans, holding the

Continued from previous page

उत्तराम्यां फलगुनीयां नक्षत्राम्यामहुः विषा।
जातो हिमवतः पृथ्वे तेन सा फालगुनं विषुः॥

M. Bh. IV. xliv. 16.
_Astra_ and having a weapon. He would establish moral law in four-fold _vārṇas_ in the suitable manner. The people (would be) in the path of righteousness in all the stages of life.

10. Hari, after discarding the form of Kalki, would go to heaven. Then would come the _Kṛtayuga_ as before.

11-13. O Most virtuous person! Men would remain devoted to their respective duties of castes and stages of life. Thus, in all the _Kalpa_ and _Manvantaras_ the manifestations (of Viṣṇu) are innumerable, some already past and some yet to come off. Whoever reads or hears the stories of the manifestations of Viṣṇu would get all desired things, become pure, and attain heaven along with his race. In this way, Hari settles the righteousness and unrighteousness. Hari is the cause of creation etc. and after manifesting (in different forms) he has returned.

CHAPTER SEVENTEEN

_Description of Creation:

_Agni_ said:

1. I shall describe now the creation of the universe, which is the sport of Viṣṇu. He who creates heaven etc. is the beginning of the creation and is endowed with qualities and is without qualities.

2. Brahmā, the unmanifest, was the existent being. There was no sky, neither the day nor the night etc. Viṣṇu having entered the nature (_Prakṛti_) and the soul (_Puruṣa_), then agitated them.

1. _Kalpa_ is a day of Brahmā or thousand (_catur_ _Yugas_ being a period of 432 million years of mortals and measuring the duration of the world.

2. _Manvantara_ is the age or the period of _Manu_, being equivalent to 1/14th of a day of Brahmā or 71 _catur_yugas.

3. According to the Sāṅkhya system of philosophy the involuntary union of soul and nature causes creation, while others hold creation as due to the sport of Brahmā.
3. At the time of creation, the intellect (Mahat) (emanated first). The ego (Ahaṅkāra) came into being then, and then the evolutes (Vaikārikas),¹ the lustre (taiṣa), the elements etc. and the darkness (tāmasa).²

4. Then emanated the ether, the sound-principle from the ego. Then the wind, the principle of feeling and the fire, the colour-principle came into being from it.

5. The water, the taste-principle (came into being) from this. The earth is known as the smell-principle. From the darkness (born of) ego, the senses (came into being) (which) are lustrous.

6. The evolutes are the ten celestials and the mind, the eleventh sense. Then the lord Svayambhū³ Brahma became desirous of creating different types of beings.

7. He created waters first. The waters are referred to as nārāḥ because they are the creation of the Supreme spirit.

8. Since his motion was first in them, he is known as Nārāyaṇa. That egg lying in the water was golden in colour.

9-10. From that, Brahma was born of his own accord, whom we know as the self-born (Svayambhū). Having lived (in it) for one full year, the Hiraṇyagarbha,⁴ made that egg into two, the heaven and the earth. Between those two pieces, the lord created the sky.

11-13. The ten directions supported the earth floating on the waters. Then the lord of the beings (Prajāpati) desirous of creation, created time, mind, speech, desire, anger, attachment and other counter-parts. From the lightning he created thunder and clouds, the rain-bow and birds. He first created Parjanya (Indra). Then he created the Rk hymns (Ṛcaḥ), Yajur hymns (Yajūṃsi) and the Sāman hymns (Sāmāṇi) for accomplishing the sacrifice.

14. Those who want to accomplish, worship devas with these (hymns). The higher and lower beings (were created) from the arms. He created Sanatkumāra and Rudra, born of anger.

¹ Vaikārikas are the first creation from the natural state.
² Tāmasa is the creation of ignorance.
³ Brahma is known as Svayambhū, as he was self-born. See verses 9-10 below.
⁴ Hiranyagarbha denotes Brahma, as he was born from the golden egg.
15. He then created the sages Marīci, Atri, Aṅgirasa, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Vasiṣṭha, who are regarded as the seven mind-born sons of Brahmā.

16. O! Excellent one! these seven (sages) procreated (many) beings and the Rudras. Having divided his body into two, he became a male with one half and a female with another. Then Brahmā procreated children through her (the female half).

CHAPTER EIGHTEEN

Genealogy of Svāyambhuva Manu

Agni said:

1. Śatarūpā of ascetic disposition (becoming) desirous gave birth to two sons Priyavrata and Uttānapāda and a beautiful daughter from Svāyambhuva Manu.

2-3 From (Devahūti) the wife of Kardama, (were born) (two daughters) Samrāṭ and Kukiṣi.

Uttama was born as the son of Uttānapāda through Suruci. And Dhruva* was born as the son (of Uttānapāda) through Suniti. O Sage! Dhruva did penance for three thousand celestial years for gaining fame.

4. Becoming pleased (with him) Hari conferred on him a firm position above the sages. Having seen his progress Uśanas recited the (following) verse:

1. An epithet of the first Manu was Svāyambhuva Manu, as he was a son of Brahmā.

2. The Bhāg. P. specifies the name of the daughter of Svāyambhuva Manu as Devahūti and describes in detail her marriage with Kardama. See ibid. III. xxi-xxii.

* For a detailed account of the story of Dhruva see Vi.P. I. Chs. 11-12.

3. The young boy Dhruva was one day contemptuously treated by his step-mother as he tried to sit on his father's lap. On the advice of his mother he retired to the forest and did penance steadfastly devoted to Viṣṇu. At last he was raised to the status of a pole-star. See Vi. P. I. xi-xii.

4. Uśanas also known as Śukrācārya or Kāvya was the preceptor of Asuras.
5. O what a strength his penance had! How well-heard of! What a wonderful thing that the seven sages\(^1\) are situated, placing Dhrūva in front of them.

6-7. Śambhu gave birth to Śiṣṭi and Bhavya from Dhrūva. Succhāyā bore five blemishless sons from Śiṣṭi, (namely), Ripu, Ripuṇjaya, Ripra, Vṛkala, Vṛkatejas. Brhati bore the brilliant Cākṣuṣa from Ripu.

8. Cākṣuṣa begot Manu through Puṣkarinī (also known as Vīrini) (daughter of Vīraṇa Prajāpati). Ten excellent sons were born to Manu through Nāḍvala.

9. (They were) Ūru,\(^2\) Puru, Śatadyumna, Tapasvin, Satyavāk,\(^3\) Kavi,\(^4\) Āgnīṣṭu,\(^5\) Atirātra, Sudyumna, and Abhimanyu.

10. Āgneyī bore six great sons to Ūru—Āṅga, Sumanas, Khyāti, Kratu, Āṅgiras, (and) Gaya.\(^6\)

11. Sunīṭhā bore only Vena\(^7\) from Āṅga. He, who was not a protector, and was delighted in doing sins was killed by the sages with their kuṣa grass.

12. Then for the sake of progeny, the sages churned his right hand. When the hand of Vena was churned King Pṛthu came into being.

13. Having seen him, the sages said, “This person will make the subjects happy and will attain great valour and fame.

14. He was born with a bow and an armour as if consuming (everything) by his lustre. Pṛthu, the son of Vena, the predecessor of the kṣatriyas, protected the subjects.

15. That lord of the earth is the first among those coronated after the Rājasūya (sacrifice). From that (ceremony) were born the clever (singers) sūta and māgadha.

---

1. The seven sages are Marici, Atri, Āṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu and Vasiṣṭha.
2. Kuni, see Vi. P. I. xiii.5.
3. Satyavat, see ibid.
4. Śuci, see ibid.
5. Āgnīṣṭoma, see ibid.
6. Śibi, see Vi. P. I. xiii.7.
7. Vena born to Sunīṭhā, the daughter of Mṛtyu was of wicked nature since childhood. When he became the king he proclaimed himself as the lord of sacrifices and did not allow sages to propitiate Viṣṇu by doing sacrifices. Their entreaties being of no avail they killed him by employing kuṣa grass purified by the chant of mystic syllables. Vi.P. I. xiii. 11 ff.
16-17. The two heroes praised him. He became a king by pleasing the people. For the sake of (getting) grains and for the existence of the subjects, the cow (earth) was milked by him along with the celestials, sages, *gandharvas*, nymphs, manes, demons, snakes, plants, mountains and people.

18. The earth being milked in their respective vessels gave milk as much as (they) wished. (All) sustained their lives with that.

19. Antardhāna and Pālita, the two righteous sons were born to Pṛthu. From Antardhāna, Sikhaṇḍinī begot Havirdhāna.

20. Dhiṣanā, of the family of Agni gave birth to the six sons—Prācinabarhiṣṭa, Śukra, Gaya, Kṛṣṇa, Vraja and Ajina from Havirdhāna.

21. (He was known as Prācinabarhis) because the *kusa* grass were facing the east as he was praying on the earth. The lord Prācinabarhis was a great progenitor.

22. Savarṇa, the daughter of Samundra (the lord of the ocean) bore ten Prācinabarhis. All of them were known as Pracetās and were proficient in archery.

23. Practising the same religious austerities, they all did severe penance, remaining in the waters of the ocean for ten thousand years.

24. Having got the status of a progenitor and pleased Viṣṇu, they came out (of waters) (and found) that the earth and the sky were overspread with trees. They burnt them down.

25. Beholding the destruction of trees by the fire and wind produced from their mouths, Soma, the king (of plants) approached these progenitors and said:

26-27. "Renounce (your) anger, I will get you this most excellent maiden Māriṣā, (born to) (the nymph) Pramlocā and the ascetic sage Kaṇḍu (who was nourished) by me. Having known the future (I have) created (her). Let (she) be your wife, capable of multiplying the family. Dakṣa will be born to her who will multiply progeny."

28-30. The Pracetās married her and Dakṣa was born through her. That Dakṣa, having mentally created the

---

1. Vādi, see Vi.P. I. xiv. 1
2. i.e., the sacrifices were performed all over the earth.
ables, movables, bi-footed beings and the quadrupeds, then cre-ated the (sixty) daughters (of whom) he gave\(^1\) ten to Dharma, thirteen to Kaśyapa, twenty-seven to Soma, four to Ariṣṭanemin, two to Bahuputra, two to Aṅgiras.

31. By mental intercourse the celestials, serpents and others (were born) to them in the past. I shall describe (you) the crea-tion of Dharma through his ten wives.

32. The Viśvedevas (were born) to Viśvā, Sādhyā gave birth to the Sādhyas. The Maruts came into being from the Marut and the Vasus from Vasu.

33. The Bhāṇus (were) the sons of Bhānu and the Muhūrtas (were born) to Muhūrtā. Ghoṣa (was born) to Dharma through Lambā. Nāgavīthī was born of Yāmī.

34. All that belonged to the earth were born of Arundhatī. Saṅkalpā (was born) from Saṅkalpā. The stars were the sons of moon.

35. The eight Vasus\(^8\) are known by the names—Āpa, Dhruva Soma, Dhara\(^8\), Anila, Anala, Pratyūṣa and Prabhāsa.

36. Vaitaṇḍya, Śrama, Śānta, and Muni\(^4\) (were) the sons of Āpa. Kāla, the destroyer of the Universe (was the son) of Dhruva. Varcā was the son of Soma.

37. Dhara had the sons Dravīṇa, Hutahavyavāha, Śiśira, Praṇa and Ramaṇa through Manoharā.

38. Purojava\(^6\) was (the son) of Anila and Avijñāta of Anala. Kumāra, the son of Agni, was born in a clump of reeds.

39. Śākha, Viśākha and Naigameya were his younger bro-thers. (He was known as) Kārttikeya (as he was the son) of Kṛttīkā. (He is also known as) the ascetic Sanatkumāra.

40. Devala was born from Pratyūṣa. Viśvakarman (was born) from Prabhā, and was the architect of thousands of sculptures and the architect of celestials.

41. Men earn their livelihood by this art of architecture and of (making) ornaments. Surabhi begot eleven Rudras\(^6\) from Kaśyapa.

---

1. For a detailed account see Vi.P. I. xv. 103b ff.
2. Vasus are a class of semi-divine beings.
3. Dharma, see Vi.P. I.xv. 111a.
4. Dhvani, see Vi.P. I. xv. 112a.
5. Manojaya, see Vi.P. I. xv. 114b.
6. Following the Brahmāṇḍa P. narration, Rudras are given here as sons of Surabhi and Kaśyapa.
42. O Most pious man! By the favour of Mahâdeva (Śiva) (who was) thought of (by her) in her ascetic observances Satî gave birth to Ajâkapâd, Ahirbudhnya, Tvaṣṭr and Rudra.

43-44. Viśvarûpa, the great illustrious and fortunate (was) the son of Tvaṣṭr. Hara, Bahurûpa, Tryambaka, Aparâjita, Vṛśâkapî, Śambhu, Kapardin, Raivata, Mṛgavyâdha, Sarpa and Kapâlin were the eleven forms by which the entire world, both movable and immovable were pervaded by hundreds and thousands of Rudras.¹

CHAPTER NINETEEN

Description of secondary creation: the progeny of Kaśyapa

Agni said:

1-3. O Sage! I describe the creation (made) by Kaśyapa through Aditi and others. Those devas who were (known) as Tuṣita in the Câkṣusa manvantara, again became (the sons) of Kaśyapa through Aditi in the Vaivasvata manvantara as the twelve Ādityas (with the names) Viṣṇu, Śakra, Tvaṣṭr, Dhâtr, Aryaman, Pûṣan, Vivasvat, Savîtr, Mitra, Varuṇa, Bhaga, and Amîśu. The progeny of the wives of Ariṣṭanemi were sixteen.

4. The four lightnings were the daughters of the learned Bahuputra. Those born of Aṅgiras were excellent. (The progeny) of Kṛśâva were the celestial weapons.²

5. Just as the sun rises and sets, similarly these (do) in every yuga. From Kaśyapa, Hiraṇyakaśipu and Hiraṇyākṣa (were born) through Diti.

6. Simhikâ was also their daughter, who was married by Vipracitti. Râhu and others born to her were known as Saimhikeyas.

1. The names of Eleven Rudras are not the same in the enumerations in different Purânas. On the Eleven Rudras see Annals of Ori. Res. XXIV. Pt. II

2. According to the science of Jyotiṣa, these four lightnings are kapilâ, atulohitâ, pitâ and asitâ indicating respectively wind, heat, rain and famine.
7-8. The four sons of Hiranyakashipu (were) very effulgent. (They were) Anuhrāda, Hrāda, Prahrāda a stauneh devotee of Viṣṇu; and Samhrāda was the fourth (son). Hrada (was) the son of Hrāda. Āyuṣmat, Śibi, and Bāskala (were) the sons of Hrada.

9. Virocana (was) the son of Prahrāda. Bali was born to Virocana. Bali had hundred sons. Bāṇa was the foremost among them, O great sage!

10. Having propitiated the consort of Umā (Śiva) in the past kalpa, a boon was obtained by Bāṇa from the lord that he would always wander by the side (of the lord).

11. The sons of Hiranyākṣa were five. Śambara, Śakuni, Dvimūrdhāna, Śaṅkurārya were (the prominent among) the hundred sons of Danu.

12. Suprabhā was the daughter of Svarbhānu (a son of Danu). Śacī was known as the daughter of Pulomān (a son of Danu). Upadānāvi, Hayaśīrā, and Śarmiṣṭhā (were) the daughters of Vṛṣaparvan (a son of Danu).

13. Pulomā and Kālakā were the two daughters of Vaiśvānara. They both married Kaśyapa and they had crores of sons.

14-16. In the family of Prahrāda (were born) four crores (of sons) (known as) the nivātakavaca (protected by armour). Tāmrā had six daughters—Kāki, Śyenī, Bhāśī, Grdhrikā, Śuci and Sugrīvā. The crows and (other birds) were born from them. The horses and camels (were born in the line) of Tāmrā. Aruṇa and Gurudā (were born) from Vinatā. Thousands of serpents (were) born of Surasā. Thousands of serpents (such as) Śeṣa, Vāsuki, Takṣaka and others were born of Kadrū.

17. Animals having tusks, other earthly beings and the aquatic birds were born to Kroḍhā. The cows, buffaloes and other animals (were born) from Surabhī. The grass and other things were the production of Irā.

1. They are Utkura, Śakuni, Bhūtasantāpana, Mahānābha, Mahābāhu and Kālaṇābha. See V1.P. I. xxi. 1-3.
2. Given as the son of Hiranyākṣa. See ibid.
3. Śaṅkuśīrāḥ. See ibid.

The reading given in the text here mixes the progeny of Hiranyākṣa and that of Danu.
18. The Yakṣas (semi-divine beings) and the demons (were born) of Khasā. The nymphs came into being from Muni. The Gandharvas (a class of semi-divine beings) (were born) to Ariṣṭā. Thus the stationary as well as the movable are born of Kaśyapa.

19-21. Innumerable are the offspring of these. The Dānavas (the progeny of Danu) (the demons) were conquered by the celestials. Diti, who had lost her offspring, propitiated Kaśyapa, desirous of (getting) a son capable of destroying Indra. (She) achieved (her object) from Kaśyapa. Indra, seeking to find a fault (found out that she) had slept without washing her feet and destroyed (cut off) the embryo. They became celestials (known as) Maruts, fifty one (in number) radiant with lustre and the allies of Śakra (Indra).

22. All these (are) forms of Hari. Having installed Prthu as the ruler, Hari duly set apart kingdoms for others.

23. The moon (was made the king) of the twice-born and the plants, Varuṇa (as) the king of waters, Vaiśravaṇa (Kubera) (as) the king of kings, Viṣṇu (as) the lord of Suns.

24. Pāvaka (fire) as the king of Vasus; Vāsava (Indra) (as) the lord of Maruts and then Dakṣa (as the king) of Prajāpatis (patriarchs), Prahlāda (as) the ruler of demons.

25. Yama (was made) the king of manes, Hara (Śiva) (as) the lord of goblins, Himavat (as the ruler) of mountains, the ocean (as) the lord of rivers.

26. Citraratha (was made the ruler) of Gandharvas, and then Vāsuki (as the ruler) of Nāgas, Takṣaka (as) the king of serpents, and then Garuḍa, among the birds.

27. The Airāvata (was made the ruler) among the lords of elephants, bull of the kine and the tiger, of the animals, (and) Plakṣa (the Indian fig-tree) (as) the lord of trees.

28. And Uccaiḥśravas (was made the ruler) among the horses. Sudhanvan (son of Vairāja Prajāpati) became the regent of the east, Śaṅkhapāḍ (the son of Kardama Prajāpati) (the

---

1. Failure to observe the necessary hygiene deprived her desire to get a varquisher of Indra. For a detailed account of this episode see Vi.P. I. xxi. 30-41; P. Index II. pp. 87-88.
regent) of the south, Ketumat (son of Rajas) as the protector of the waters (on the west), Hiranyaromaka (son of Parjanya Prajāpati) on the Saumya (the north).

CHAPTER TWENTY

Primary creation

Agni said:

1. The intellect (mahat) is the first creation of Brahmā. The second (creation) is that of the subtle principles (tanmātṛas), known as the bhūtasarga (creation of elements).

2. The third is the creation of evolutes (vaikārikas) known as the sense-organs. These are the primary creation (prākṛtasarga) produced out of the intellect.

3. The fourth, is the main creation (mukhyasarga). The immobile things are known as the main (creation). That (creation) which is spoken as (the creation of) the lower order (tiryakṣrotsas) is known as that of the sub-human beings (animals, birds etc.).

4. Then the sixth creation is that of the higher orders (ūrdhvasrotsas), known as the creation of the celestials. Then the seventh creation is that of the middle orders (arvāksrotsas), the man.

5-6. The eighth is the creation (known as) the anugraha (compassionate divinities), composed of the qualities (sāttvika and tāmasa. These (latter) five are known as the Vaikṛtasarga (creation subject to transformation). The ninth creation is the Kau-māra (the creation of Sanatkumāra etc.) These are the nine creations of Brahmā which are the main cause for the universe.

7-8. Bhṛgu and others married Khyāti and other daughters of Dakṣa. Creation has been described as three-fold by the people. They are usual (nitya), subject to some cause (naimittika), (and)

1. The tanmātṛas or the subtle principles are related to the sense-organs.
daily (dainandini). The creation after the intermediate dissolution is known as the daily (dainandini). The constant creation that takes place everyday is considered as nitya.

9. From Bhṛgu, Khyāti gave birth to the celestials Dhātr and Vidhātr. Śrī (Lakṣmī) (was) the consort of Viṣṇu, and was praised by Śakra (Indra) for multiplying the progeny.

10. The sons of Dhātr and Vidhātr were Prāṇa and Mṛkaṇḍuka successively. Vedaśirā gave birth to Mārkaṇḍeya from Mṛkaṇḍu.

11-12. A son (by name) Paurṇamāsa was born to Marīci through Sambhūti. Sinīvāli, Kuhū, Rākā and Anumati were the sons of Aṅgiras through Smṛti. With Atri, Anasūyā gave birth to Soma, Durvāsas, and Dattātreyā yogin.

13. A son (by name) Dattoli was born to Priti, the wife of Pulastya. Sahiṣṇu and Kramapādika were born to Kṣamā from Pulaha.

14. The highly radiant Bālakhilyas were born to Sannati from Kratu. They, who were 60000, were of the size of a joint of the thumb.

15. To Urjā from Vasiṣṭha (were born) Raja, Gātra, Urdhvakāhu, Savana, Alaghu, Śukra and Sutapāh, the seven sages.

16. Pāvaka, Pavamāna and Śuci were born of Agni and Svāhā. The manes Agniśvattāḥ, devoid of fire and Barhiṣada, with fire (were born) from aja (Brahmā, the unborn).

17. Menā and Dhārinī were the daughters of the manes through Svadhā. Himā was the wife of Adharma. Then Anṛta was born to them.

18. Nikṛti (was their) daughter. Bhaya and Naraka (were born) from them, who had Māya and Vedanā as their wives.

19. Of those two, Māya gave birth to Mṛtyu, the destroyer of living beings. And also Vedanā gave birth to a son Duḥkhā from Raurava (Naraka).

20. Vyādhi, Jarā, Śoka, Trṣṇā and Krodha were born from Mṛtyu. (Rudra) was born wailing from Brahmā and (was known as) Rudra by name on account of the wailing.

1. The minor dissolution of the world after 15 years of Brahmā's life is known as the dainandina pralaya. MW. p. 497b.
2. Vi.P. I. x. 10 reads Kardama and Urvarūpa.
21. O twice-born! the grandfather (Brahmā) said to (him) (called him as) Bhava, Śarva, Īśāna, Paśupati, Bhīma, Ugra (and) Mahādeva.

22. His wife Sati gave up her life on account of the wrath of Dakṣa and having become the daughter of Himavat again became the wife of Śambhu (Śiva).

23. (I will now describe) the methods of worship of Viṣṇu etc., preceded by bathing and other (rites) and yielding enjoyment and emancipation, by doing which Svāyambhuva (Manu) (had the benefit), as told by Nārada and others to the sages.

CHAPTER TWENTYONE

Method of worshipping Viṣṇu and other gods

Nārada said:

1. I will (now) describe the general method of worshipping Viṣṇu and others as well as the mantras (mystic formulae) which yield good to all. One has to worship (him by saying) “Salutations to Acyuta (Viṣṇu) and to (his) entire family (of gods).

2-4. (Salutation to) Dhāṭṛ, Vidhāṭṛ,1 Gaṅgā, Yamunā, the two nidhis (treasures), the fortune of Dvāra (kā), the Vāstu-deity (the presiding deity of the housesite), Śakti (female divinity), Kūrma (tortoise), Ananta (the serpent), the Earth, righteous knowledge, detachment from the world, the omnipotence (of the lord), the unrighteousness etc. the root, stalk, filament and pericarp of the lotus, Rgveda and other (Vedas), Kṛta and other (yugas), sattva and other (qualities), the solar and other regions, the pure and elevating union of knowledge and action. One has to worship these.

5. Joy, truth, the goddess benevolently placed, Durgā (Pārvatī), speech, goblins, field and Vāsudeva and others are worshipped.

1. Dhāṭṛ and Vidhāṭṛ are the two sons of Brahmā.
6. The heart, head, coat of mail, eye and weapons, conch, disc, mace, lotus, Śrīvatsa (sacred mark on Lord Kṛṣṇa's chest) and the Kaustubha gem are worshipped.

7. The garland of wood-flowers (worn by Kṛṣṇa), Śrī (Lakṣmī), Puṣṭī (nourishment), Gāruḍa (vehicle of Viṣṇu), and the preceptor are worshipped. Indra, Agni, Yama, Rakṣa (Nārāyaṇa), water, wind, lord of wealth (Kubera) (are also worshipped).

8. That Īśāna, the unborn, and weapons, vehicles, Kumuda and others (are worshipped next). By the worship of Viṣṇu (all-pervasive) (Viṣṇu) in a circle first, one gets his desires accomplished.

9. Then the general worship of Śiva (is described). One has to worship Nandin at first. (Then) Mahākāla (Śiva), Gāṅgā, Yamunā, Gaṅgas, and others (are worshipped).

10-11. (Then) the speech, the goddess of prosperity, the preceptor, the Vāstu (deity), the different female energies and Dharma (the lord of death) and other gods (are worshipped). (The female energies) Vāmā, Jyeṣṭhā, Raudrī, Kālī, Kalavikariṇī, Balavikariṇī, Balapramathinī, Sarvabhūtadamanī, Manomani and Śivā (are worshipped) in the due order.

12. (Saying) Hām, Hum, Ham (salutation) to the form of Śiva, Śiva is worshipped along with his limbs and mouth. Haum, (salutation) to Śiva, Haum and Hām (salutations) to Īśāna (one of the Pañcabrahman forms of Śiva) and other faced (forms of Śiva).

13. Hṛim (salutation) to Gaurī (Pārvatī), Gam (salutation) to Gaṇa, face of Śakra (Indra), Caṇḍa, heart and others. The mystic syllables in the worship of the sun (are described now). The tawny-coloured Daṇḍin is to be worshipped.

14. One should adore Uccaiḥśravas (the horse of Indra), the very much pure Aruṇa (younger brother of the Sun-god). The moon and the twilight, the other faces and Skanda (progeny of Śiva) in the middle are worshipped.

15. Then (the female divinities) Dīptā, Sūkṣmā, Jayā, Bhadrā, Vībhūti, Vimalā, Amoghā, Vidyutā and Sarvatomukhi are worshipped.

16. Then the mantra Ham, Kham, Kham for the firebrand (is used for the worship) of the seat of the sun and (his) form. Hrām, Hṛim, salutation to the sun, Ām, salutation to the heart.
17. (Salutation) to the (rays of the) sun, to his head, and similarly to the flames reaching up the regions of demons, wind, earth, ether, and heavens. Hum is remembered as the mystic amulet.

18-19. (Salutations are made) to the lustre, eye, Hraḥ, to the weapons of Sun, Rāji, Śakti, and Niṣkubha. Then Soma (Moon), Angāraka (Mars), Budha (Mercury), Jiva (Jupiter), Śukra (Venus) and Śani (Saturn) as well as Rāhu, Ketu, tejas, Canda are worshipped in order in brief. Then the worshipper (should worship) the seat of the image (of the deity) and the heart etc.

20. (The mantra) for the seat of Viṣṇu for the image of Viṣṇu (is) "Rām, Śrīm, Śrīm, Śrīdhara, Hari." Hrīm (is) the mystic syllable for the images (of all deities) which is capable of captivating the three worlds.

21. Hrīm, Hṛṣikeśa (master of the senses) (Viṣṇu), Klim, Viṣṇu. With long vowels (one should adore) the heart and other things. (The performance) of worship on the fifth day (pañcamī) with all these (mystic syllables) yields victory in battles.

22-23. Worship of the disc, mace, conch, pestle, sword, Śārṅga (the bow), noose, goad, Śrīvatsa (mark on the chest of the lord), with the garland of wood-flowers and with the mantra Śrīm, worship of Śrī, Mahālakṣmi, Tarkṣya (vehicle of Viṣṇu), the preceptor, Indra etc. (are made) in order. With the (mystic) syllable Aum, Hrīm, Devī (goddess) Sarasvatī (one has to worship) the seat of (Goddess) Sarasvatī.

24. The Hṛt etc., Lakṣmī, Medhā, Kalā, Tuṣṭi, Puṣṭikā, Gaurī, Prabhāvatī, (and) Durgā (the different female divinities), goblins, preceptor and the presiding deity of the field (are worshipped).

25. Then (one has to say) Gaṅ, (salutation) to the lord of the gaṇas, Hrīm to Gaurī, Śrīm to Śrī, Hrīm to Tvaritā, Aim, Klim, Saum to Tripurā using the fourth declensional endings and ending with salutations.

26. All the mystic syllables are pronounced preceded by the Praṇava (syllable Om), adding bindu (the nasal sound marked by a dot), either while offering adorations or the performance of repetition.

27. By the offer of a homa (offer unto the fire) with sesamum and ghee and other things, (these mantras) become bestowers of
\textit{dharma, kāma, artha} and \textit{mokṣa} (four principal objects of human life). Whoever reads these syllables of adoration reaches heaven after enjoying pleasures.

\section*{CHAPTER TWENTYTW0}

\textit{Procedure for bathing prior to a religious rite}

\textit{Nārada said:}

1. I will (now) describe the (mode of) bathing preceding (any religious) act. Having taken a clod of earth accompanied by (meditation on) the man-lion form (of Viṣṇu), and making it into two parts, (one has to do) mental bathing with one part of it.

2. Having immersed (one's body in waters) and having partaken (three drops of) water and assigning (on the body) with the lion (man-lion) one has to get himself protected. Then one has to do bathing as laid down, being preceded by the control of the breath.

3. Meditating on Lord Hari in one's heart with the eight-syllabled \textit{mantra} (Om namo Vāsudevāya, Om namo Nārāyaṇāya or Om namo Narasimhāya), the clod of earth (is made) into three parts on the palm and protection in (all) the quarters (is achieved) with the recitation of (the mantra) for the lion (man-lion).

4-7. With the recitation (of the \textit{mantra}) of Vāsudeva, having mentally resolved the sacred water and having rubbed the body with \textit{vedic mantras} and having adored the image of deity and having remembered the \textit{aghamarṣaṇa} (sūkta) which destroys sins) and putting on a cloth, perform the (following) rite. Putting water on the palm, accompanied by \textit{mantras} and wiping off waters on the palm, controlling with the Nārāyaṇa (\textit{mantra}), the air is inhaled and water is let off. Then contemplating on Hari, offering waters (of oblation) and reciting the twelve-syllabled (mantra), appeasing all others with devotion commencing in order with the seat of meditation, the \textit{mantras} upto all the guardian deities of the quarters, the
sages, clans of manes, men, all beings and ending with the mobile (beings) are placed.

8. Then having assigned limbs (for the different deities), withdrawing the mantras one has to go to the house for performing rites. In this way, one has to bathe with the mūlamantra¹.

CHAPTER TWENTYTHREE

Mode of performing worship

Nārada said:

1-2. I will now describe the mode of worship, O brahmins! by doing which one gets all (objects of life). Having washed feet, sipping waters, and controlling his speech and having guarded (himself like this), facing the east, and having seated in the svastika or padmāsana or other posture (one has to meditate) on (the syllable) yam at the centre of the navel, having tawny colour and of the form of terrible wind.

3. Then meditating on the syllable kṣaum of abundant lustre at the centre of the heart, burn down all impurities from the body.

4-5. One has to burn the impurities with the flames surging upwards and downwards. One has to meditate on the (mantra) of the shape of the moon situated in the sky. An intelligent person has to sprinkle his own body with the nectar-like waters pervading the lotus in the heart through (the artery) sūṣumṇā and passing through the nerves.

6. Having purified materials (for worship) one has to assign (them). Then (one has) to purify hands as well as implements. Commencing with the thumb of the right hand, (the fingers) of the two hands are made to rest on the principal limbs.

7-8. (Then) with sixtytwo mantras (sacred syllables) one has to assign to the body the twelve limbs—heart, head, tuft of hair, armour, weapons, eyes, belly, hinder part, arms, thighs, knees and feet. Having offered the mudrā (special posture of the

¹. mūlamantra is the basic subtle mystic syllable.
arms and body), one has to meditate on Viṣṇu, and having repeated (his name) one hundred and eight times, one has to worship him.

9. Having placed the water-jar on the left and the materials for worship on the right and having washed (them) with the implements and water offerings, they are placed together with flowers and scents.

10-11. Having sprinkled the radiant (form) of consciousness and omnipresence with waters (purified) by the repetition (of the mantra of the lord) eight times (and) having sprinkled the hand with mantra ending with phat and then having meditated on Hari, with his face directed towards the (south-east) direction (presided over by) Agni, (one has to pray) for virtue, knowledge, detachment, (and) supremacy. (Facing) the east (and other directions), (one has to get rid) of his sins and physical impurities remaining in yogic postures.

12. (Remaining) in Kūrma (tortoise) posture, one should adore Ananta, Yama, the solar and other luminous regions and other planets (occupying) the filament and pericarp (of the lotus).

13-14. Having first meditated (on them) in one’s heart and having invoked and worshipped in a circle, (offerings) of waters of respect, waters for washing feet, waters for rinsing, madhuparka\(^1\) (respectful offering), bath, cloth, sacred thread, scents, flowers, incense, lamp and eatables (are made) (along) with the formula (known as) Puṇḍarikākṣa.

15. First, one has to worship the limbs and then Brahmā at the doorway in the eastern (direction), the disc and the club in the southern (direction); the conch, and the bow have to be assigned in the corner (governed by) the moon.

16. One should assign the quiver and sword to the left and right side of the deity, the armour and nourishment on the left, and the prosperity on the right in front.

17. One has to worship with respective sacred syllables, the garland of wild-flowers, (the mark) śrivatsa, (the gem) kaustubha and the presiding deities of the quarters outside and all (the attendant gods) of Viṣṇu as well either partially or wholly.

18-19. One has to worship with the limbs with the sacred

\(^1\) It consists of curd, clarified butter, water, honey and sandal-paste.
sylables partially or wholly. After having repeated (the sacred syllables), doing circumambulation and adoration and offering waters of adoration and the offerings, one has to assign in the heart and after having meditated, “I am the brahman and Hari”, (one has to repeat the words) ‘come’ used in (the ceremony of) invocation and “forgive me” in dismissal (at the conclusion).

20. Having worshipped in this manner with the mantra of eight letters (one becomes eligible) to get liberation. The (mode of) worship of one form (of a deity) has been described. Listen to the (mode of) worship in the structure of nine (apartments).

21-23. Having assigned Vâsudeva, Balarâma) and others to the two thumbs and then at first to the fingers, then to the body, head, forehead, face, heart, navel, organ of generation, knees, (and) between the feet, one has to worship in order, single seat of the deity consisting of nine parts and then the nine seats and of the nine forms consisting of nine parts in nine lotuses as before. Then in the midst of the lotus one has to worship Vâsudeva.

CHAPTER TWENTYFOUR

Mode of constructing the sacrificial pit and the oblations unto fire

Nârada said:

1-2. I shall describe the mode of oblation to fire, by which (one) gets all his desires fulfilled. One has to dig a square pit after having measured out with a thread, four times, twenty-four thumbs in length. Leaving a space of the breadth of two thumbs a girdle is to be made (around) the pit.

3. (One seat) of twelve thumbs in length, and eight, two and four thumbs respectively in extent (should be made) in the east.

4. (One) beautiful (seat) of ten, six and four thumbs in extent and with a mouth, two thumbs in width and tapering gradually should be made in the west.

5. It should be of the form of a leaf of the holy fig tree and
should enter a little into the pit. A drain, quarter of a thumb in breadth and fifteen thumbs in length (should then be dug).

6. The base (of the drain) at the seat (will be) three thumbs and the fore part six. (This is) the characteristic (of a pit) of one cubit (hand). (The characteristic of a pit) of two cubits is twice (this).

7. I have thus described to you (about) the pit surrounded by three altars. I will now describe (about) the circular pit. A thread is to be fixed in half of the pit, the remaining portion being fixed at an intermediate point.

8-9. Having placed half the rope in the pit, if (the rope) is moved around it would be a circle. After having marked out the centre, (if one makes) a crescent-shaped pit east-west, and away from the northern direction, half (the size) of the pit and half the angular portion, it indicates auspiciousness.

10. (In pits of) circular (shape) the girdles would be of the shape of the petals of a lotus. The ladle for the sake of oblation is to be made of the size of an arm.

11. Then one has to make (ready) a site (of the length) of thirteen thumbs and four (in breadth). A pit of three-fourths (of the site) is dug and a beautiful circle (is made).

12-13. One has to purify (the space) outside the pit evenly, horizontally and upwards (to the extent of) half a thumb (and) one-fourth of a thumb. A beautiful boundary line is to be made with the remaining (space) (around) the pit.

14-15. Or it may be half a thumb more. The mouth would be at the front (having) a width of four or five thumbs. Its central part might be three times two thumbs and beautiful. The extent (on all sides) (might be) of equal (measurement) (and) its central portion is lowered.

16. There must be a hole at the neck portion (of such a size) that the little finger would enter. The other pit should be beautifully made according to one's liking.

17. The (sacrificial) ladle should have a handle of the length of one hand. A beautiful spoon (having) circumference of two thumbs has to be made.

18-19. Just as the cow's foot (would) sink in a little mud, so also after having drawn a line (of the length) of a thumb (known as) vajrāndikā, (one has to draw) first a line with a fine
tip, (then) two lines between it and the east (and) then three lines in the middle from the south onwards in order.

20. Having drawn (the lines), (and) consecrating, with the syllable Om, one who knows the mantras, has to make a seat in which the energy of Viṣṇu rests.

21-22. Having adorned the incarnate form (of energy), one has to throw fire after having remembered Hari. Having offered twigs of the size of a span (between the thumb and the fore-finger) and having sprinkled water and having spread around on the three sides in the east etc. with the darbha grass, the fire from the fuel as well as the ladle for pouring clarified butter, (sruk) and sacrificial ladle (sruva) are to be placed on the ground.

23-26. (One should then place) vessels (for keeping) clarified butter, (and) (caru) (oblation of rice, barley and pulse boiled together), kuṣa grass and clarified butter. The proksani vessel being sprinkled with water with the pranitā vessel, (and) taken up and filled with water (and) that water being enclosed in the hand with the paviitra (darbha grass) placed in between and having taken the proksani vessel towards the east and having placed it in front of the radiant fire (and) having sprinkled (all the vessels) thrice with water and having placed the fuel in front, (and) having meditated on Viṣṇu in the pranitā vessel containing a flower and having then filled vessel for (keeping) clarified butter with clarified butter and having placed it in front, the purification of the clarified butter is made by straining and sprinkling clarified butter on the fire.

27. One should take up two kuṣa grass with unbroken tips, not being filled in, and of the measure of a span (between the thumb and the fore-finger) with the thumb and the nameless finger (ring-finger) of the palm facing upwards.

28-30. Having taken with them the clarified butter twice and having carried them, (they) must be cast downwards thrice. And again having taken the ladles (sruk and sruva) (and) having sprinkled them with water with them (the kuṣa grass) and having heated and wiped them with the darbhas and again having sprinkled (water) and burnt and having placed along with the syllable

1. Small vessel used at the time of religious rites.
2. Small vessel used at the time of religious rites.
Om, the aspirant must perform fire oblation commencing with the syllable Om and ending with salutation. (One has to perform) garbhādhāna and other rites as much as it is laid down.

31. One has to do up to the naming ceremony, the undertaking of a vowed observance, observance marking the conclusion of study of the student, (and) investiture of authority in due manner.

32. The aspirant must everywhere do the worship with the syllable Om. One has to do offering unto fire with the auxiliaries befitting one's means.

33-34. Garbhādhāna is the first one. Then puṁsavana is remembered. Then the simantonnyayana, jātakarma, nāma (karaṇa), annaprāśana, cūḍākṛti, vratabandha, and many more are the vedic observances. One who has the right to do these rites should perform these in the company of his wife.

35. Having contemplated (on the deity) in the heart and other limbs and worshipping him, one has to offer sixty-four oblations for every one of the rites again.

36. The worshipper has to offer the final oblation with the sacrificial ladle, chanting loudly with sweet intonation the mystic formula ending with the word vañṣat.

37. After having purified the fire of Viṣṇu, the food intended for Viṣṇu has to be boiled. After having worshipped Viṣṇu in the altar and remembering the mystic formulae one has to seek his protection.

38-39. Having worshipped in order his seat and other things along with the enclosures with fragrant flowers and contemplating on the most excellent lord of all deities, and placing the fuel and then the support, the oblations of clarified butter

1. One of the purificatory rites performed to ensure conception.
2. One of the purificatory rites performed to get a male child when the embryo has not yet begun to move.
3. The parting of hair, another purificatory rite performed on the eighth month after conception.
4. rite performed soon after the birth of a child.
5. rite performed to name the child.
6. first partaking of food by a child.
7. tonsure at the age of three.
8. Undertaking a religious observance.
(should be poured) in order (on fires) placed in the south-east, north-east, north-west and south-west.

40. Then having poured portions of the clarified butter in the south and north, one has to offer oblation in the middle reciting the mystic formulae in the order of worship.

41-42. One has to offer oblation with clarified butter to the deity and a tenth part to the limbs. (Having offered) oblations of clarified butter and other things hundred times or thousand times, or of the twigs or of the sesamum, and concluding the worship ending with the oblation and calling the disciples who are pure, and placing the fed beasts in front, (they are) sacrificed by means of weapons.

43-45. Having united the disciples with one's own self with the fetters of knowledge and action and the consciousness which follows the liṅga and which is protected along with the liṅga, having been consecrated by means of contemplation, (they) have to be purified by the syllables of Vāyu. Then the creation of the whole egg (the universe), consumed by the fire (and) reduced into a heap of fire is contemplated upon with the syllables of the Fire god. (Then one should sprinkle ashes on the water and meditate on the world.

46. Then one has to assign the creative power which is known as the seed of the earth and which is enveloped by all the subtle principles.

47. Then one has to meditate on the egg produced out of it, (which) is its base and identical with the self. Then one has to meditate on the form of the purusa (the Supreme Being) identical with the pranava (the syllable Om) at its centre (centre of the egg).

48. The liṅga, situated in one's self, (and) (which) has been purified earlier, is then to be transferred. Then the positions of the different important organs are to be thought of.

49. Then, having remained for one year, the egg is split. The heaven and earth (are placed) in a part. Prajāpati (the creator) (is placed) in between the parts.

50. Having meditated on his form and again having consecrated that child with the pranava (syllable Om) and having made his body made up of the mystic for-

1. Situated in one's own self, representing the Supreme Being
mulae, (one has to do) the assignment (of limbs to different deities) as described before.

51-52. Then having placed the hand of Viṣṇu on the head and contemplated on one or many (forms) of Viṣṇu in this way, (and) having muttered mantras (remaining) in meditative posture, (and) seizing the hands with the basic mystic formula, one who knows the mystic formula having covered the eyes with a cloth (has to sprinkle) water with a new cloth.

53. After having performed worship, the preceptor, who knows perfectly well the nature of the god of gods, should make his disciples sit facing the east and with folded palms holding flowers.

54-55. Having been instructed by the preceptor in this way, they (the disciples) also must adore Hari. Having offered the handful of flowers there (and) then having offered worship with flowers without (the recitation of) any mystic formula and saluted the feet of the preceptor, (the disciples) must give (him) the fee, either all his possession or half of them.

56. The preceptor has to instruct the disciples thoroughly. Hari must be worshipped by them by (the recitation of his) names. The Lord Viṣvaksena¹ (whose powers go everywhere), who bears the conch, disc and mace has to be worshipped.

57. (Then that deity) stationed in a circular altar, (and who is frightening) (is worshipped) with the fore-finger and is requested to leave.

58-59. The entire remnants of offerings to Viṣṇu, must be offered to Viṣvaksena. Then having bowed down and sprinkled (with waters), (their own persons), (the disciples) having placed the fire of the pit on their own person, Viṣvaksena is permitted to leave. One who is desirous of enjoyment gets all things. One who is desirous of release from mundane existence gets merged in Hari.

---

¹ A form of that deity to whom the fragments of a sacrifice are offered; also used as an attribute of Viṣṇu. MW. p. 998. col. 1
CHAPTER TWENTYFIVE

The formulae and mode of worship relating to Vāsudeva, Saṅkarṣaṇa, Pradyumna and Aniruddha

Nārada said:

1. I shall now describe to you the characteristics of the adorable formulae related to Vāsudeva and others. Vāsudeva, Saṅkarṣaṇa, Pradyumna and Aniruddha (are the four forms).

2. (The words) salutations to the lord (are said) at first along with the mystical letters a, ā, am, ah. (Then) beginning with the syllable ‘Om’ (and) ending with (the word) salutations and then (the words) salutations to Nārāyaṇa (are uttered).

3. Om, salutations to the eternal Brahmā, Om, salutations to Viṣṇu, Om, Kṣaum, Om, salutations to the Lord Narasiṁha (are uttered).

4-6. Om, bhūḥ, salutations to lord Varāha. The lords of men having the colour of japā (flower) (red), brown, yellow, blue, black, red, the colour of a cloud, fire, honey, (and) tawny, (are) the nine lords of vowels (and) mystical letters. The heart and the different limbs are resolved in order along with their respective names being well divided by those proficient in the tantras (branch of literature dealing with the magical and mystical worship of different deities). The characteristics of those mystical letters which are consonants are different.

7. They are divided by long vowels ending with (the word) ‘salutation’. The limbs situated in between yoked with short (vowels) are described as minor limbs.

8. The mystic syllable situated at the end of the last letter of the name which is divided is excellent. The principal and minor limbs (are composed)of long and short vowels in order.

9-10. This is the method (of use) of consonants for arrangement in the heart (and) other (limbs). One has to repeat according to his accomplishment (the mystic formula) divided into the mystic basic syllable and their ending names (along with) the names of limbs, after having resolved the yoked twelve (limbs) beginning with the heart etc.

11. The heart, head, tuft, armour, eye, weapons (are)

1. The mystical syllable representing the earth.
the six limbs of the mystic basic syllables of the basic (mystic formula) constituting twelve parts.

12. One should then assign in order to (the limbs)—the heart, head, tuft, hands, eyes, belly, back, arms, thighs, knees, shank, (and) feet, (the following syllables and gods).

13. (The letters) kam, ōam, pam, ūam are for Vainateya¹. (The letters) kham, ōham, pham, ūam (are) for the brother of mace-bearer (Kṛṣṇa). (The letters) gam, ēam, vam, ūam (form) the mystic formula for the nourishment. Gham, ēham, bham, ham salutations to Śrī (Goddess of wealth).

14. (One has to worship) Pāñcajanya², (with the mystic letters) vam, ūam, mam, kṣam. (The mystic letters) cham, ōam, pam (are for the worship of) Kaustubha (gem worn by Viṣṇu on his head), jam, kham, vam for the Sudarśana (the disc in the hands of Viṣṇu), ūam, vam, ēam, cam, lam for Śrīvatsa (the mark on the chest of Viṣṇu).

15. Om, dham, vam salutations to the garland of wild flowers (worn by Viṣṇu) and to the great Ananta.³ The limbs are set forth with the words of the mystic formula consisting of words without the mystic letters.

16. Along with the names ending with the caste (names), the heart and other (limbs) (are set forth). The prāṇava (letter Om) (is repeated) five times. Then the heart and other (limbs) are mentioned five times.

17. With the prāṇava (one should adore) the heart first. (With the word) ‘for the supreme’, the head (and) the tuft and with one’s name, the armour (are adored). The end of the name would be (to worship) the weapon.

18. Om, the supreme weapon is the first. (Then) one’s own name ending in the fourth case (is to be said). Then (the word) ‘salutations’ (comes) at the end. This consists of one to twentysix parts.

19. One should worship prakṛti (nature) at the tips of the little and other fingers of the arms in (one’s) body. (That one) consisting of prakṛti (nature) is the second form of the supreme being consisting of puruṣa (soul).

¹. Garuḍa, the eagle vehicle of Viṣṇu; born to Vināṭa and sage Kaśyapa.
². The name of the couch of Kṛṣṇa.
³. Without end; may denote Lord Viṣṇu as well as Śeṣa Nāga.
20-21. Om (salutation) to the supreme being, the foremost or the first soul. The air and the sun (are his) two forms. The fire the third form having been assigned to pervade hands and the body, wind and the sun in the fingers of hand, this is embodied in the three parts in the two arms, left and the other arm, in the heart, in the body forming the fourth state.

22. The Ṛgveda (is made) to pervade hand. The Ṛṣīṣu (-Yajurveda) is assigned to fingers. The form of Atharva (is assigned) to two palms. Thus (assignments are made) in (different limbs) head, heart, upto the feet.

23. As before having assigned the extensive sky to his arm and body, wind and other (elements), to fingers, head, heart, generative organ and the feet.

24. The wind, fire, water, earth (and sky or ether) are spoken as his five forms. The mind, ear, skin, eye, tongue (and) nose are said to be the six forms.

25-28. The extensive mind is assigned from the thumb onwards to the head, mouth, generative organ and the organ of excretion. The prime form is said to be consisting of compassion. It is known as the jīva (life) (which is) all pervasive. The seven (words), earth, ether, heaven, mahas, jana, tapa and satya\(^1\) are assigned duly to hands and the body beginning with thumb. The Lord of the world, the seventh one and existing in the palm (is taken) gradually to the body, head, forehead, mouth, heart, generative organ and feet. This is said to be the Agniṣṭoma.\(^2\) (Next follows the description of) the Vāja-pēya\(^3\) (and) the Śodarśa\(^4\) rites.

29-32. Atīrātra\(^5\) and Aptoryāma\(^6\) (rites will also be described). The soul of the sacrifice which has seven forms extending to the intellect, ego, mind, sound, touch, colour, taste, smell, comprehension, should be assigned duly to the fingers and the body. A person has to assign it to the teeth, palms, head, forehead,

---

1. The seven worlds earth etc. are situated one above the other successively.
2. A sacrificial rite lasting for several days in spring forming part of the Jyotisṭoma, a soma sacrifice.
3. One of the soma sacrifices performed by kings or by a brahmin aspiring for higher position.
4. A rite forming part of the soma sacrifice.
5. An optional part of the Jyotisṭoma sacrifice.
6. A particular way of offering the soma sacrifice.
face, heart, navel, the generative organ and the feet. These are remembered as the eight *Vyūhas* (parts). The life which consists of nine parts—life, intellect, ego, mind, sound, quality, wind, colour, and taste, is assigned to two thumbs. They (are placed) in order on the left hand by means of the forefinger and other fingers.

33. Indra remains pervading the ten (limbs) consisting of body, head, forehead, mouth, heart, navel, the generative organ, two knees and feet.

34-35. The fire (is assigned) to two thumbs. Mind consisting of eleven parts—ear, skin, eye, tongue, smell, speech, hand, foot, anus is assigned to head, forehead, face, heart, navel, the generative organ, two knees and feet with the forefinger.

36. The mind is made to pervade the male organ. The two thumbs (are made to pervade) the ear. Commencing with the fore-finger in order, the eight fingers (are assigned). The (two fingers) left over are assigned to palm.

37. The head, forehead, month, heart, navel (are assigned) in order to generative organ, two thighs, shanks, ankles and feet.

38-39. Viṣṇu, Madhuhara (killer of the demon Madhu), Trivikrama, Vāmana, Śrīdhara, Hṛṣikeśa, Padmanābha, Dāmodara, Keśava, Nārāyaṇa, Mādhava, Govinda (are the names of Viṣṇu). Viṣṇu is made to pervade.

40. The thumb (and other fingers), palms, feet, two knees, waist are assigned to head, crown of head, waist, knees and feet.

41-43. There are twelve, twentyfive or twentysix parts—the supreme being, intellect, ego, mind, thinking, touch, taste, colour, smell, ears, skin, eyes, tongue, nose, speech, hand, feet, anus, generative organ, earth, water, light, wind and sky. The pervasive Supreme Being is assigned and then in the thumbs and other fingers.

44-46. The remnant are assigned in the palm, head, or forehead and then face, heart, navel, generative organ, thigh, knee, and feet are assigned to feet, knee, thing, generative organ, heart and head in order. A wise man has to meditate upon the great soul of the Supreme Being in these twentysix things.
as before and then the nature has to be worshipped in a circular (altar). The heart and other (limbs) have to be worshipped in the east, south, west and north.

47. As before the weapons (of Viṣṇu, Vainateya (the vehicle bird of Viṣṇu) (are adored) in the corners of south-east etc. (One should adore) the guardian deities of the quarters also. In (the worship of) three parts, the fire (will be) at the centre.

48. The directions east etc. are decorated with the strength, abode and kingdom.

49-50. The omnipresent form (of Viṣṇu), endowed with all parts and the five constituents Garuḍa etc. as well as Indra and others, should be adored (by one) for conquering kingdoms and for firmness of all (objects). One may get all desires (fulfilled). Viṣvakṣena (an epithet of Viṣṇu) is worshipped by (his) name, the mystic letter being placed in the ether.

CHAPTER TWENTYSIX

A description of different positions of fingers in worship

1. (I now) describe the characteristic of (the different) positions of fingers (mudrā) (which) bring (the worshipper) nearer (to the object of worship). Āḷjāli (folding of hands) is the first mudrā. (The second) is the Vandani (fingers interlocked) to be placed near the heart.

2. With the left fist folded and the thumb erect, the right thumb interwoven with the erect left thumb is said to be (the third one).

3. (These are) the three common formations. The (following are) not common. By the unyoking of the smallest and other fingers eight positions (are formed) in order.

4. The first eight basic syllables are repeated in order. One has to bend the three fingers commencing with the little finger, with the thumb.

5. One has to raise up the hand to the face for the ninth
mystic syllable. Then the left hand is raised up and bent half slowly.

6. These are the mudrās of the limbs of Varāha\(^1\) in order. Then the left fist having been kept closed, the fingers are released one by one.

7. The same position is held by the right hand also and the previous position is bent down. The left fist (is held) with the thumb erect. This results in the accomplishment of the mudrā.

CHAPTER TWENTYSEVEN

*Mode of performing the initiation rite:*

*Nārada said:*

1-2. I shall describe the initiation rite, which yields everything. Hari should be worshipped in the lotus in a circle. Having gathered the articles (required) for the sacrifice on the tenth (lunar) day, assigning and consecrating hundred times with the (basic syllables) of the man-lion (Narasimha) (form), one should scatter on all sides the mustard seeds, destructive of demons, ending (the act) with the syllable phat.

3. The female energy, contained in every being, in the form of grace is assigned there. Having collected all the herbs and spread, they are consecrated.

4. A worshipper has to accomplish the five products\(^2\) of the cow hundred times in pure vessels by means of the five basic forms.

5. Having sprinkled the earth (with the basic syllable) ending with (the word) Nārāyaṇa, with the tips of kusa (grass), those scattered (things) are thrown with the raised hand with the (basic syllable of) Vāsudeva.

---

1. If the two palms are placed together so as to form a cavity it represents the Varāha Mudrā.

2. Milk, curd, butter and the solid and liquid excreta.
6. Then standing with the face facing the east one has to meditate on Viṣṇu in the heart. One has to worship Viṣṇu in the waterpot along with the vardhani¹.

7. Having recited hundred times the sacred syllables for the weapon and having sprinkled the Vardhani (vessel) with a continuous shower (of water) it should be taken to the north-east quarter.

8. Taking the jar on his back one has to place it on the scattered (mustard seeds). Then having gathered them by means of the Kuṣa (grass) one has to adore the presiding deity of the jar and the karkari².

9. One has to worship Hari adorned with clothes (and) five jewels, on a piece of ground (made ready), offering oblations to fire (for his sake) and reciting the sacred syllables, as before.

10. Sprinkling with a lotus and anointing with unguents the worshipper has to fill the boiling vessel with clarified butter and cow’s milk.

11. Having looked at it with the Vāsudeva and the Saṅgharśaṇa (basic syllables), rice mixed with clarified butter should be thrown into milk well-cooked.

12. After stirring it with the (basic syllable of) Pradyumna the worshipper has to mix it slowly with the ladle and then the cooked food is lifted with the (basic syllable of) Aniruddha.

13. Having washed him and besmearing (with sandāls), the vertical mark is made on the forehead with the ashes. The food thus prepared well is placed by the side with the (basic syllable of) Nārāyaṇa.

14. A part of it has to be offered to the deity, the second part to the jar, and with the third part he should offer three oblations.

15-17. The preceptor has to partake of the fourth part in the company of his disciples for the sake of purification. Having consecrated seven times (the stick) got from the milky tree, the piece of wood for cleaning the tree being made use of and discarded and being conscious of one’s sins and having offered oblations to the hundred auspicious and most excellent lions lying in

¹ A water-jar of a particular shape.
² A water-jar with small holes at the bottom as in a sieve.
the north, northeast, east and southeast, having done the acamana
and having entered the chamber of worship, the knower of the
mystic syllables should assign Viṣṇu in the east and do circum-
ambulation.

18. You are, alone, O Lord! the refuge of the beings im-
ersed in the ocean of mundane existence, for the release from the
fetters. You are always kind towards your worshippers.

19. "O Lord of Lords! (you) permit (me). (I will) free
these beings by your grace from their earlier fetters by which they
are bound."

20-21. Having submitted thus to the lord of the celestials
and having made the animals enter (the place), (they) have to
be purified then by holding them as before and to be consecrated
with the fire. Having yoked them with the deity their eyes should
be closed. Their eyes are covered. Handful of flowers are offered
there and their names are added.

22. Worship is made duly as before without reciting any
basic syllable (mantra). That particular name of the idol on
which the flower falls that is pointed out.

23. One should then take up a red thread spun by a maiden
and measure it six times from the tuft of the hair to the toe and
again multiply it three times.

24. Then one should meditate on the Prakṛti in which the
universe lies and from which the universe is born, as being pre-
sent there.

25. Having tied the nooses of Prakṛti proportional to the
number of principles, that thread is placed on an earthen vessel
near the pit.

26. Then having meditated upon the principles commen-
cing with the Prakṛti to the earth, following the order of creation,
the spiritual teacher should assign them to the body of the dis-
ciple.

27. Those (principles), one, five, ten or twelve² may be
tied individually and given by those who devote their thought
on the principles.

1. Acamana consists of sipping three drops of water, followed by touching
different parts of body reciting the different names of Viṣṇu.

2. Prakṛti is represented by one, the subtle principles by five, the organs
of perception and action by ten, and these ten together with Prakṛti and mind
by twelve.
28-29. With the five organs of action (one has to create) the entire universe in the order of evolution. Having drawn the subtle principles into one’s self and (having placed) the rope of illusion on the animal, the nature is taken as the creative power, the intellect or the mind as the agent, the five subtle principles as born of intellect and the five elements from the organs of action.

30-31. One has to meditate on these twelve principles in the rope as well as in the body according to his desire. Having made oblations with the residue of offerings according to the order of creation, and hundred oblations to each and every (principle) and then the final oblation, the earthen vessel is covered and is dedicated to the presiding deity of the pot.

32-33. Having duly performed the initial consecration, the devoted disciple is initiated. Then in a place where the wind blows, an arrow of a particular shape and a knife made either of silver or iron as well as all necessary materials are placed; and touched with the principal mystic syllable he should perform the initial consecration ceremony.

34. He should then say “Salutations,. (I offer) the food to the goblins on the kuśa grass”. Then having contemplated upon Hari, the sacrificial yard is adorned with multitudes of vessels of sweet meats.

35. Viṣṇu is then worshipped in a circular altar. Then after offering oblations to the fire, the pupils who are seated in the Padmāsana posture are called upon and are initiated.

36-37. Having sprinkled water on Viṣṇu, and touching the head gradually, all the principles from the primordial down to the transformations as well as their presiding deities, the entire divine creation is conceived in the heart and all the subtle principles which have become one with the soul are absorbed gradually.

38-40. Then the preceptor has to pray the presiding deity of the pitcher and draw the thread. Then having come near the fire and placing it (the thread) by the side of the fire, he (should offer) hundred oblations to the passive Lord of creation with the principal mystic syllable. Then the preceptor having reached

1. Sitting with crossed legs, the feet placed over the thigh of the opposite leg.
him, and having offered the final oblation, has to collect the white
dust and strike the heart with that sanctified by the basic mystic
syllable and ending with the syllables hum and phaṭ.

41. Then oblations are separately offered in order to the
earth and other principles with mystic syllables made up by
subtracting syllables.

42. When Hari has been uttered unto the fire which is the
abode of all principles, the wiseman has to remember the
method that is being followed there.

43. Separating by means of beating and collecting (them)
one has to remain quiet. Then after collecting by the Prim-
ordial, an offering is made into the fire as instructed.

44. After offering eight oblations each (in favour) of (Garbā-
dhāna, Jātakarma, enjoyment and dissolution, he should offer
them for purification.

45. The preceptor should take up pure materials and bring
together the two excellent principles in order in such a way they
are not broken.

46. Then the soul, freed from fetters is immersed in the
supreme soul in the supreme undecaying position.

47. A learned person has to think of the peaceful, supreme,
blissful, pure intellect and offer the completing oblation. Thus
ends the (rite of) initiation.

48. I shall describe the mystic syllables for the application
with which the oblation (relating to) the initiation is
closely associated:

Om, Yam, the goblins, the pure hum, phaṭ. By this one should
strike and separate the two.

49. Om, yan, I destroy the goblins. After having seized this
(syllable) (you) hear (the mode of) yoking it with the nature.
Om, am, the goblins and the males. I shall describe the mystic
syllable for the oblation as well as the final oblation.

50. Om, destroy the goblins; oblations. Om, am, Om, salu-
tations to the Lord Vāsudeva, vaṣṭa. After the final oblation the
disciple has to be accomplished. In this way the wiseman has
to purify the principles.

1. The rite performed for facilitating conception.
2. The ceremony performed at the birth of a child.
51. Ending with (the word) salutation and with the basic syllable *sva* and preceded by beating (one has to say) *Om, vām*, the organs of action, *Om, dem*, the organs of intellect (sense). With the syllable *yam* similar beating etc. are done.

52. *Om, sum*, to the principle of smell, separate, *hum, phat*. *Om*, protect, *hā*. *Om, svam, svam*, unite with the primordial. *Om, sum, hum*, to the principle of smell, destroy oblations. Then the final oblation is to be applied in the northern direction as follows: *Om, rām*, to the principle of taste. *Om, bhem*, to the principle of colour. *Om, ram*, the principle of touch. *Om, em*, to the principle of sound. *Om, bham*, salutations. *Om, som, egoism*. *Om, nam*, to intellect. *Om, Om*, to the primordial. This method of initiation has been described in brief in the case of the deity of a single form. The procedure for the nine-vyūhas etc. are also remembered to be of the same kind.

53. A person after having consumed (all the things) should consign the primordial thing to eternal bliss. Then a person has to consign the primordial thing to the Lord devoid of transformation.

54. Then having purified the elements, one has to purify the instruments of action, the intellect, the principles, mind, knowledge and egoism.

55-56. After having purified the soul of the body, he should again purify the primordial principle at the end. The supreme being and the pure primordial principle stationed in the Lord (which is) held under control and has been rendered an abode after being freed from bondage is contemplated upon and the final oblation is offered. This is the (mode of) initiation for a person (who is) fit.

57-58. Having worshipped with the constituents of the mystic syllables, the principles are uniformly carried and gradually purified. Having meditated (on the Lord) endowed with all accomplishments, the final oblation is made. This is the (mode of) initiation for an aspirant in case if there is no abundance of articles and no capacity for a person.

59. Having worshipped the lord as before endowed with all the materials, the excellent preceptor has to initiate (the disciple) on the *dvādaśī* (the 12th day) from the beginning of the rite.
60. The disciple must be devoted, humble, endowed with all physical qualities, not very rich. Such a person is initiated after the worship of the deity in the altar.

61-62. Having contemplated the entire path, divine, pertaining to the elements or to the self, in the order of their creation in the body of the disciple, the preceptor, desirous of creation, having offered first sixteen oblations to Vāsudeva and other (gods) who are radiant, with their respective mystic syllables, (they are) allowed to go.

63-65. Then purification is made by oblation in the order of destruction. Having released all the fetters of deeds, the preceptor, has to purify the principles, having drawn them in order from the body of the disciple. Having dissolved in the fire, the primordial Viṣṇu and the Supreme Spirit, the pure principle is accomplished by (offering) final oblation with impure principle. After the disciple had attained his natural state, he has to consume all the qualities of the primordial being.

66. The preceptor has to release or bind the children. Or the preceptor remaining in his natural state has to perform a different kind of initiation (called) Śaktidikṣā.

67-69. Having worshipped Viṣṇu placed nearby with the lad in an altar and (who) is being adored with the devotion of ascetics and mendicants, the pupil remains facing the deity, the self (preceptor) facing obliquely. After having contemplated upon the entire course which has been resolved by him (the preceptor) according to the phases of the moon, (the preceptor) has to think deeply with contemplation on the Lord, the supreme spirit, stationed in the body of the disciple.

70. As before all the principles have to be purified gradually by beating etc. on the altar of Hari. Then (he) who is bent on the inquiry of the self has to set them aside after having taken them, and beating.

71. He should purify them befitting their nature and unite them with the deity. They are then collected with pure mental disposition and yoked in order.

72-73. By means of contemplative mood and the pose of knowledge (jñānamudrā) (they) are all purified. When all the

1. Initiation rite relating to the female energy or goddess.
principles have been thus purified and the Supreme lord remains as the main, the principles have to be burnt and (the fire) extinguished and the disciples have to be engaged in the service of the Lord. Then the excellent preceptor should conduct the aspirant on the path of accomplishment.

74. In the same manner, a householder becomes qualified by remaining vigilant in (the performance of) the rites. One has to remain purifying his self until there is dissipation of anger.

75. After having known himself as shorn of anger and purified from sins, a self-controlled person should confer the right on (his) son or the disciple.

76. After having burnt the noose composed of illusion, renouncing and remaining in (the contemplation) of the self, he, who possesses the unmanifest form, should remain waiting for the decay of his body.

CHAPTER TWENTYEIGHT

Mode of anointment for the preceptor

1-2. I shall describe the anointment of the preceptor as the son would do and by which an aspirant would become accomplished and a diseased would get rid of the disease, the king (would get his) kingdom, a woman would get a child and also destruction of impurity. Pictures made of earth and endowed with gems are to be placed in the middle, the east etc.

3. Thousands or hundreds (of them are placed) in a circular form and Viṣṇu in the east and north-east at an elevated place in an altar.

4. Having placed all of them the aspirant (should assign) his son in parts. After having worshipped well the anointment should be performed preceded by songs etc.

5. Men should offer yogic seats etc. requesting his favour. The preceptor also should announce the terms and the pupil (initiated) into the secrets then becomes the recipient of all (that he wants).
CHAPTER TWENTY-NINE

Mode of worshipping Hari in the figure called Sarvatobhadra

Nārada said:

1. The aspirant has to accomplish the mystic syllable in the temple of the deity after having worshipped the Lord Hari in a circular figure in a purified ground.

2. One has to draw circles etc. in a square piece of ground, the Sarvatobhadra\(^1\) is drawn in the compartments of rasa, bāna and aksi.

3. A lotus seat containing thirty-six apartments should be outside in a row. Among these two (squares are set apart) for the path-way and two for the doors in the quarters.

4. A lotus figure is drawn in front outside and a circle is drawn around it. Half of the lotus is divided into twelve compartments.

5. Having thus divided it one should draw four circles, one around the other. The first one is that of the pericarp and the second, that of the filaments.

6-7. The third (is) that of the joints of the petals and the fourth, that of the tips of the petals. The joints of the petals are marked by stretching the threads from the angular points upto the middle of the side facing the angle and placing them on the tips of the filaments. Then the threads are made to lie (fall) and then an eight-petalled lotus is drawn.

8. Having allowed a measure (equal to) the space between the joints of the petals, the tops of the petals are drawn in front of it and afterwards.

9. Having allowed in the middle a measure of space (equal to that) of the interstices between the petals, two filaments are drawn in between every two petals.

10. This is the ordinary lotus circle said to be of twelve petals. Circles are drawn in order in the east of the measure of half the pericarp.

11. By this drawing there will be six circles on its side. In this way there will be twelve fish and twelve petals.

---

\(^1\) It is so called because it brings about all round happiness.
12. Having drawn a fish with five petals of a lotus for the sake of success, the skyline (is made) outside the seat (altar). The compartments are (cleanly) swept.

13. Four other places for the feet (are made ready) in the angular points. Besmeared vessels are kept in the four quarters.

14. Two rows are marked in the quarters for the sake of pathway. Doors are made in all the four quarters.

15. A wise man has to make eight ornaments of graceful expressions by the side of the doors. An equal number of ornaments are also to be made by their side.

16. Then corners of ornaments should be made. In each one of the middle compartments in all the four directions, two figures are drawn.

17. The four outer compartments are cleansed, as well as one on each side. Three figures are drawn on each side of the petal for beautifying it.

18. Similarly, three ornaments are to be drawn on the opposite direction inside the angular point as well as outside without any difference between the two.

19. In this way, sixteen compartments are formed and in the same manner another circle is formed. In the (figure having) twelve compartments a lotus figure with thirty-six petals (is drawn).

20. As before one line is drawn at each door for beautification. In the circular altar of one cubit a lotus should be drawn (having) twelve finger-breadth.

21. A door should be drawn of the measure of two cubits by one cubit. The altar should be a square. The disc of the lotus should be of two cubits.

22. Half the lotus is drawn with nine (finger breadth), the navel with three, the radius with eight (breadth), the circumference with four.

23. Having divided the ground into three parts, an inner figure is marked with two (breadth). For the sake of accomplishing (one's object) one has to mark the five vowels inside and the radii.

24. Then according to his desire, one has to draw figures of the petals of lotus or citron leaves or of the shape of lotus leaves.
25. Having fixed at the junction of the radius and having moved around the outer circumference and having stationed in the middle link line one has to move upto the root of the radius.

26. The middle fire-producing stick is moved equally stationing in the middle of the radius. Some more figures resembling citron leaves are drawn in this way for the sake of accomplishment.

27-29. Then the ground should be divided into seven parts each of them measuring equally of fourteen cubits. There should be two hundred and ninety-six apartments. (The word) Bhadra (welfare is written in four (compartments) in the middle. All around that (space) is set apart for pathway. Then lotus (figures) are drawn in all directions. Having swept clean around the pathway, four central quarters in all directions are set apart (providing) the neck.

30. Four (apartments) are set apart outside and then three in each row. By the side of the neck there should be (an apartment) outside known as the ornament.

31-32. Among the outer angles leaving off seven, (the rest) and three inside are sprinkled (with water). An altar of nine divisions is formed in this way consisting of nine parts. (This is) the circular (altar) of twenty-five compartments (in which) the universal form of Hari is worshipped. Thirty-two cubits of ground should be equally divided into thirty-two (compartments).

33-34. When it is done in this way, there would be one thousand and twenty-four compartments. Having written the (word) bhadraka (welfare) in the sixteen middle squares and having sprinkled water on the adjacent rows (of compartments), the eight bhadrakas are written in sixteen apartments in all directions.

35. Then having sprinkled the rows (of compartments) and writing sixteen bhadrakas the rows all around are sprinkled and allotment is made.

36-38. Twelve doors (are drawn) in the usual order in each quarter. Having omitted the six (compartments) inside and having sprinkled for beautification the four at the centre, the four on the sides and two inside and outside, and having cleansed three inside and five outside for accomplishing additional doors.
as before beautification is made. Seven of the corners outside and three apartments inside are cleansed.

39. The supreme brahman is to be worshipped in the auspicious twenty-five (compartment) formation. Then in the lotus (drawn) in the middle commencing with east, Vāsudeva and other deities are worshipped in order.

40. Having worshipped the boar-form in the lotus in the east the formation is worshipped in order until the thirty-six (forms are finished).

41. With the effort that it has to be worshipped, (one has to worship) all formations in the order in the single lotus as described. The progenitor is regarded as the sacrifice.

42. Acyuta divided into many forms is regarded as 'truth'. Forty cubits of the ground in the north has to be divided in order.

43-44. Each one (of these divisions) are again (first) divided into seven parts and then into two. Then of one thousand seven hundred and sixty-four apartments we will have a bhadraka (figure) (formed) by the central sixteen apartments. There will be a pathway on the side, then eight bhadra apartments and a pathway.

45-46. Then sixteen (figures) of lotuses and twenty-four lotuses for the rows and thirty-two for the pathway and forty rows and a passage with the remaining three rows (are drawn). The doors are provided with ornaments and minor beautifications in the directions, omitting the centre.

47. For accomplishing, two, four and six doors (space) is cut off in the four directions and five, three and one outside (are set apart) for accomplishing the adornment of the doors.

48. In the same manner, six or four (compartments) are omitted outside the door and four inside. There will be six minor adornments.

49-50. There should be four doors on one side or three doors specifically in each direction. One has to draw five apartments at the angular points (as well as) in the rows in order. An auspicious altar dear to a mortal has to be (drawn) in this manner.
CHAPTER THIRTY

Mode of worship of different gods in specially drawn lotus figures

Nārada said:

1. One has to worship Brahmā in the lotus at the centre, the lotus-navelled (Viṣṇu) with all his retinue in the east, the nature (primordial matter) in the lotus in the south-east and the supreme spirit in the lotus in the south.

2. (One has to worship) the fire-god (in the lotus) at the south of the supreme spirit, the wind-god in the south-west and west, the sun in the lotus of the moon, the Rg- (Veda) and Yajur- (Veda) in the lotus of the lord.

3-4. Indra and other gods are to be worshipped in the sixteen (lotuses) in the second (row) then, (along with) the Śama- (veda), Atharva (veda), sky, wind, lustre, water, earth, mind, ear, skin, (and) eye. One should also worship the tongue, nose, (the worlds) Bhū, (and) Bhuva.

5-7. Having worshipped (the worlds) Mahas, Janas, Tapas (and) Satya and (also the sacrifices) Agniṣṭoma, Atyagniṣṭoma, Uktha, Śoḍaṣi, Vājapeya, Atirātra, one has to worship Aptr- yāma, mind, intellect, ego, sound, touch, colour, taste, (and) smell in order in twenty-four lotuses. (One has to worship) the soul, ego, the lord of the mind, (and) the sound principle of the primordial matter.

8-9. (One should then worship) the images of Vāsudeva and others, having worshipped the (following) ten—the soul, mind, ear, skin, eye, tongue, nose, speech, hand, (and) foot in thirty-two lotuses. One has to worship these in the fourth enclosure along with their attendants and retinue.

10. Having worshipped the anus and penis one has to worship the lords of the twelve months as well as the twentysix forms commencing with Puruṣottama in the external enclosure.

11. Among these the Lords of the months are to be worshipped in the lotus of the disc. Then the eight, six, five or four (total twentythree) principles of the primordial matter (are to be worshipped) in another (lotus).

12-13. Then one has to dust in a drawn circular altar. (You) hear. The pericarp should be of yellow colour, and all the lines
equal and white. (They) should be two cubits long and one thumb in breadth. Half the length are white. The joints (should be coloured) white, black or dark-blue.

14. The filaments should be red and yellow-coloured. The corners should be filled with red. The yogic seat should be bedecked with any of the colours according to one’s own desire.

15. The pathway is decorated with canopy of creepers and leaves. The entrance to the altar (should be painted) white, bright-red and yellow.

16. Ornamentation of all the white corners (is done) with blue (colour). It has been said that the altar bhadraka should be filled (with the colours) and in this way the other (altars) are filled.

17. The three corners should be decorated with pale, red and black, the two corners with red and yellow (and) the centre of the circle by black.

18. The black (coloured) radii (should be decorated) by yellow and red, the circumference with red, the lines outside (being drawn) in white, brown, red, black and yellow.

19. The powder of rice (is) white. The dust of saffron is red. It (becomes) yellow with turmeric. From burnt grains (we get) black (colour).

20. (It becomes) black with ūnī leaves and other (leaves). By the repetition of the basic mystic letters lakh times and of the basic syllables four lakh times, a lakh of mystic learning is accomplished.

21. Ten thousand times of the science of intellect and thousand times of the hymns (are repeated). The purification of the self by means of a lakh of the basic syllables is done prior to this.

22. Then with another lakh, the basic syllable would get established. It has been well advocated that oblation of the mystic letters is similar to the prior service.

23. The prior service has been advocated to be performed with a tenth part of the mystic syllables. The monthly austerity has to be performed with the preparatory mystic syllable.

24. The left foot should be placed on the ground and the donation should not be accepted. In this way by the repetition, twice or thrice (one gets) mediocre and excellent accomplishments.
25. I shall describe the (mode of) contemplation of the mystic syllable, by which (one gets) the benefits got from the basic syllable. The gross form is composed of sound and is laid down as the outward deity.

26. The subtle form composed of lustre becomes the mental (figure) made up of thoughts in the heart. That (form) which is beyond thinking, is declared as the supreme.

27. The potential of the bear, lion and other forms are principally gross. The form of Vāsudeva is declared as that beyond the reach of thought.

28. The other forms are remembered always as existing in the thoughts of the heart. The gross (form) is said to be vairāja (belonging to Brahman) and the subtle form would be marked.

29-32. The form beyond thought is declared as that of Īśvara (the lord). One has to contemplate on the lustrous, undecaying consciousness residing in the lotus of the heart, (namely) the basic letter, the soul of the basic letter of the shape of a kadamba flower. Just a lamp lies obstructed inside the pitcher, so also the lord of the mystic syllable lies restrained in the heart. There are many holes in the pitcher. The beams of the light come out through them. In the same way the beams of the mystic letters come out through the tubular organs. Then uniting themselves with the power of the deity they exist in the body.

33. The tubular organs, having come out from the heart, come within the ken of the sense of sight. Among those (tubular organs) the two tubular organs Agni and Soma are (those which) remain at the tip of the nose.

34. Then having conquered the wind in the body the reciter of the basic syllable engaged in the repetition and contemplation enjoys the benefits of the basic syllable.

35. With the gross elements and subtle principles purified, contented (and) practising yoga, (one) gets aṇimā etc. (Remaining) detached and depending on the lord of the soul one gets free from the gross elements and subtle principles and seizure of the organs.

1. The first among the eight kinds of superhuman powers by which one is able to become very minute.
CHAPTER THIRTYONE

Mode of cleansing oneself and others

_Agni_ said:

1. I will now describe (the rite) known as the cleansing for the protection of one's self and others, by which a man would become freed of miseries and get happiness.

2-3. _Om_, salutations to the greatest object, the soul, the great soul, the formless and many-formed, the all-pervading, supreme soul, blemishless, pure and (person) engaged in meditative contemplation. Having saluted I shall expound. May my words prove true.

4. (Salutations) to the Boar, Man-lion and Dwarf (forms of Viṣṇu), the great sage. Having saluted I shall expound. May my words prove true.

5. (Salutations) to Trivikrama (a form of Viṣṇu, as he measured the three steps and removed the pride of the demon Bali), Rāma, Vaikuṇṭha (abode of Viṣṇu), the (Supreme) man. Having saluted I shall expound. May my words become true.

6. O Boar, Lord as Man-lion, Lord as Dwarf, Trivikrama, Hayagrīva (Lord as Horse-necked), Lord of all beings, Ṣrī-keṣa (Viṣṇu) (the Lord of all senses) destroy my impurity.

7. With these four most excellent weapons, the ever victorious disc and others of unbroken power, you become destroyer of all wicked things.

8. You remove the calamity of such a person and do (him) all good and also (remove) the fear of distress due to fetters of death which is the fruit of sins.

9. (You) destroy the magical incantations set up by others with meditation for working evils, causing diseases and decrepitude.

10. _Om_, salutations to Vāsudeva, Kṛṣṇa, bearer of sword. Salutations to lotus-eyed, Keśava(and) the first holder of the disc.

11. Salutations to the wearer of clean dress made yellow by the filaments of lotuses (and) the disc (of Viṣṇu) hurled on the shoulders of the enemies at the great battle, (and) the wielder of the same.
12. Salutations to the one who lifted the earth on his tusks\(^1\), who has the three forms embodied in him, the great Yajña-varāha,\(^2\) and the one who reclines on the hood of (the serpent) Śeṣa.

13. Salutations to you, the divine lion having manes of the hue of molten gold, eyes bright like the burning fire, (and) claws (harder) than thunder-bolt to touch.

14. Salutations again and again to you, Kāśyapa, the shortest statured, adorned with the Rg, Yajur and Sāma (veda) (and) the Dwarf form which covered the earth.

15. O Boar, One with huge tusks, you crush all evils completely, their effects and also the effects of sins.

16. O Man-lion, having a dreadful face (and) the burning fire in between the teeth, the destroyer of distress, you break down all evils by your cry.

17. May Janārdana (Viṣṇu), the one who assumed the form of a Dwarf, dispel all grief of this person by words embedded with the Rg, Yajur and Sāma (veda).

18-19. O Govinda! (You) destroy quickly this person’s sufferings. Destroy fevers—quotidian occurring on alternate days, tertian, quartan and also the terrible satata, those arising out of derangement (of humours), the sannipāta (caused by the derangement of three humours), as well as accidental.

20-24. The diseases of the eye, the afflictions of the head, diseases pertaining to the stomach, (difficulty) in breathing in, excessive breathing, burning (sensation) in the body along with trembling, diseases in the anus, nose, feet, leprosy as well as consumption, and diseases like jaundice and very dreadful urinary disease, fistula, all kinds of dysentry, diseases of the mouth, chest (diseases), stone in the bladder, strangury, and other dreadful diseases, diseases caused by wind, biles and phlegm and others like sannipāta, accidentally afflicting diseases, (poison due to) spiders and boils etc.

25. May all these be destroyed by the recitation of (the name of) Viṣṇu. Being struck down by the disc of Hari, may all these (ailments) be completely destroyed.

1. This refers to the lifting of earth from waters assuming the form of a boar by Viṣṇu.

2. The boar-form of Viṣṇu.
26. I am uttering verily the truth. Being scared by the recitation of the names Acyuta (undecaying), Ananta (unending), Govinda (cowherd) (all are synonyms of Viṣṇu), all the diseases are destroyed.

27-28. On his (name) being recited, may Janārdana destroy the poisons of animate and inanimate objects, as well as artificially made, those caused by teeth, by nails and those arising from the sky as well as those caused by (insects like) spider and others which cause grief.

29-31. May the life of boyhood of Viṣṇu (Krṣṇa) destroy the evil forces which afflict mothers and children, such as, planets, evil spirits, female goblins, vampires, ghosts, gandharvas, yakṣas, demons, the impeding forces such as Śakuni Pūtanā and others, (the female forces such as) Mukhamanḍi, Revati and the terrible Vṛddharaṇī, and the fierce forces known as Vṛddhaka.

32. May these evil forces which afflict at the old age, and the children and the youth be scorched by the looks of the Man-lion.

33. May the dreadful face of the Man-lion of enormous strength destroy these evil forces completely for the welfare of the world.

34. O Man-lion, O Great lion, possessor of garland of flames, Fiery-mouthed, Possessor of fiery eyes, Lord of all, devour the evil forces completely.

35-37. May the Lord of all (beings), Supreme Lord, Janārdana destroy diseases, great portents, poisons, great evil forces, the fierce beings, the afflictions due to the planets whichever is cruel, the injuries caused by weapons, and jvālāgardodbhaka¹ etc., assuming any one of the forms of Vāsudeva and hurling the Sudarśana disc which is dreadful like a garland of fire. O Acyuta, the foremost among gods (you) destroy the evil forces.

38. O Sudarśana, the huge fire and great sound (you) destroy (all evils). O Vibhīṣaṇa (one who frightens) ! may all the evil demons get destroyed.

1. a kind of disease in which pimples appear on the body. See MW. 420a.
39. May the Man-lion (deity), the soul of all beings, possessing terriﬁc roars protect me in the east, west, south and north.

40. May Lord Janârdana of manifold forms protect me in heavens, on the earth, in the sky, behind me, on the sides and in front of me.

41. As Viṣṇu (protects) the entire universe (consisting of) the celestials, demons and mortals, may the evils of this person be put down by that truth.

42. As the sins get destroyed at once by the remembrance of Viṣṇu, may all evil of this person get destroyed by that truth.

43. As the Supreme Lord Viṣṇu has been extolled in the vedânta (the philosophical inquiry is known as it forms the concluding portion of the Vedas) may all the evils of this person get destroyed by that truth.

44. As Viṣṇu, the lord of sacrifices is exolled among the celestials, may what all has been uttered by me become so by that truth.

45-46. May there be peace. May there be good. May the evil of this man get destroyed, being agitated by me with the kusa (grass) originating from the body of Vâsudeva. May Govinda, the Nara-Nârâyana cleanse me. May there be removal of all miseries by the chant (of the names) of Hari in the same manner.

47. This is the weapon which cleans and which wards off all diseases. I am Hari. The kusa grass is Viṣṇu. Your diseases have been destroyed by me.

CHAPTER THIRTYTWO

Narration about the purificatory rites

Agni said:

1. An intelligent man has to do forty-eight purificatory

1. Form of Kṛṣṇa; originally conceived as identical; spoken as representing Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna in later epics and kâyyas. See Apta SD. p. 281.
rites among the initiatory rites for attaining liberation. You hear them, by which one may become a celestial.

2. One has to perform garbhādhāna as soon as the conception takes place, then the pūṁsavāna rite, the simantonnayana, the jātakarma, and the naming ceremony.

3. (One has to perform the rites of) giving food (to the new born child), then the tonsure, and the brahmacarya (the life of celibacy practised by a boy while studying the Vedas). (One has to perform) the four (rites)—the vaiśṇavi, pārthi, bhaṭṭikī and śrauti, and making a gift of cows, entering the life of a householder after completing one’s vedic studies.

4-7. The seven kinds of Pākayajñas are aṣṭakā, pārvanāśṛaddha śrāvaṇi, āgrayaṇi, caitri and ēśvarīyā. The Haviryaṇiṇa are seven. (You) hear them. (They) are (agni) ādhāna, agnihotra, darśa-pūṛṇamāsa, cāturāṣya, paśubandha, and sautrāmaṇi. (You) hear the seven kinds of Somasamsthāna agniṣṭoma the excellent sacrifice atyagniṣṭoma, uktha, soḍati, vājapeya, atirātra and aptoryāma. These are of thousand kinds.

8-9. They are hiranyāṅghri, hiranyākṣa, hiranyamitra, hiranyapāṇi, hemākṣa, hemāṅga, hemaśūraka, hiranyāśya, hiranyāṅga, hemajihva, and hiranyavat. The aśvamedha is the excellent among them. Now you hear the eight virtues.

10-11. They are—compassion towards all beings, forbearance, sincerity, purity, ease, wishing the welfare of all, liberality and freedom from avarice. A hundred oblations are to be offered with the basic mystic syllable. The same procedure is to be followed in the initiation (ceremony) related to Saura, Śakti (the female deity) and Viṣṇu.

1. The purificatory rites are referred to as twelve. See Manu 2.27.
2. The rite performed after the conception of a child to ensure the birth of a son.
3. The rite of parting the hair performed on the fourth, sixth and eighth month of pregnancy.
4. The rite performed soon after the birth of a child.
5. These are special rites performed as a mark of respect to the four sages who are like the guardian deities for the different kāṇḍas of the Vedas.
6. This is a simple or domestic sacrifice. The text has omitted the sthālīṭḥa and names only six.
7. Sacrifices in which oblations of clarified butter are offered.
8. Sacrifices in which soma is pressed for oblation.
12. Being purified by these purificatory rites, one may get enjoyment, release (from bondage). Such a man becoming free from diseases remains like a god. By the recitation (of the names of god), by offering oblations and by worship and meditation on the deity one gets his cherished desire.

CHAPTER THIRTYTHREE

Mode of investiture of the sacred thread for the deity and the installation of the deity

Agni said:

1. I shall describe the (mode of) installation of Hari and the benefits of worship for a year. The first day (of the lunar fortnight) at the commencement of (the month of) āśādha and the concluding part (of the month) of Kārttika yields riches.

2-3. Commencing with the second day (of the lunar fortnight) (the installation) of Śrī, Gaurī, Gaṇeśa, Sarasvatī, Guha (son of Śiva), Mārtanḍa (Sun), the divine mothers, Durgā, Śiva and Brahmā are performed in order. To which deity one is devoted, the lunar day of that deity is sacred to him.

4-5. The mode of installation is the same (for all the deities). Only the sacred syllables are different. A thread spun by a brahmin woman (made of ) gold, silver, copper, silk or cotton etc. or in its absence a purified one is made into nine folds. The investiture is done with that.

6-7. It is excellent if it is longer than one hundred and eight (finger-length) or half of it. “Whatever has been prescribed by you, O Lord, for the warding off of the discontinuance of the rite, that is being done by me O Lord. May there be no impediment here in the pavitraka rite. O Lord of undiminishing success ! Grant me this”.

8-10. Having prayed (in this way), one has to tie it to the circular altar at first with the Gāyatrī1 Om nārāyanāya vidmahe

1. The Gāyatrī is a vedic metre consisting of 24 letters. Sacred syllables consisting of 24 letters in the form of a Gāyatrī and addressed to a particular deity is known as the Gāyatrī of that deity and 24 such Gāyatrīmantras are reckoned.
vāsudevāyā dhimahi tanno viśnūḥ praco dayāt. A garland made of one thousand and eight wood-flowers is consecrated to the Lord of lords extending upto the feet and the pavitraka (sacred thread) upto the knees, thighs, and navel of the idol befitting him. The garland should be made thirty-two fingers length.

11. In the circular lotus of one finger (breadth) the pericarp, filament, leaf, the first basic syllable and the outer circumference of the circle are consecrated.

12-13. By the measure of one’s fingers the threads for the preceptors (are consecrated) on the models of the parents on the ground. Twelve knots made fragrant are consecrated to the end of the navel. Then two garlands are made ready at first containing one hundred and eight flowers.

14. O twice born one! Otherwise twenty-four or thirty-six garlands should be consecrated to the sun with the ring and middle fingers by those who desire for a daughter.

15. There may be twelve knots in the sacred thread for the pot of the Sun, and the fire as in the case of Viṣṇu.

16. According to one’s ability the knots of the sacred thread should be placed in the midst of the articles for the worship of Viṣṇu on the altar in the pit encircled by a girdle.

17-18. One who has bathed and performed the twilight worship should dye the seventeen strings divided into three parts, with rocana (yellow pigment), agallochum, camphor, turmeric, saffron or sandal. Then one has to worship Hari on the eleventh lunar day at the sacrificial yard.

19. One has to offer food to all the subordinate deities at the altar. Kṣauṃ, to the guardian deity at the end of the door. And (one should then worship) Śrī on the garland.

20. (Adorations) to Dhātā, Vidhātā (names of Brahmā), (the rivers) Ganges, Yamunā. And after having worshipped the two nidhis¹ sankha and padma at the middle, the vāstu² is removed. (Adorations) to sārīga (the bow of Viṣṇu). Then one has to perform the purificatory rites for the elements remaining standing.

1. The nine treasures of Kuber, the lord of wealth.
2. Evidently the vāstu puruṣa governing the site of a dwelling place.
Om, hrūm, haḥ, phat, hrūm, I absorb the subtle principle of smell. Salutations. Om, hrūm, haḥ, phat, hrūm. I absorb the subtle principle of taste. Salutations. Om, hrūm, haḥ, phat, hrūm I absorb the subtle principle of touch. Salutations. Om, hrūm, haḥ, phat, hrūm I absorb the subtle principle of sound. Salutations.

21-22. With the five incantations (as above) one has to meditate on the yellow-coloured, hard quadrangle of earth of the form of subtle principle of smell and governed by Indra with the mark of holding the thunder-bolt in between his feet. Then the worshipper has to spread the pure subtle principle of taste and absorb the subtle principles of taste and colour in this way.

Om, hrīm, haḥ, phat, hrūm, I absorb the subtle principle of taste. Salutations. Om, hrīm, haḥ, phat, hrūm, I absorb the subtle principle of colour. Salutations. Om, hrīm, haḥ, phat, hrūm, I absorb the subtle principle of touch. Salutations. Om, hrīm, haḥ, phat, hrūm I absorb the subtle principle of sound. Salutations.

23. One has to meditate on the presiding deity Varuṇa placed in between the two thighs, holding a white lotus jar, white-hued and crescent-shaped.

24. With the four incantations (as above) one has to absorb the pure subtle principle of taste in the subtle principle of colour. The subtle principle of colour is absorbed.

Om, hrūm, haḥ, phat, hrūm. I absorb the subtle principle of colour. Salutations. Om, hrūm, haḥ, phat, hrūm. I absorb the subtle principle of touch. Salutations. Om, hrūm, haḥ, phat, hrūm I absorb the subtle principle of sound. Salutations.

25. Having meditated on the Fire, the presiding deity which is red triangular fire-column pervading the space between the navel and neck and having the mark of a svastika, that pure (sound principle) is absorbed in the principle of touch with these three incantations.

Om, hrīm, haḥ, phat, hrūm I absorb the subtle principle of touch. Salutations. Om, hrīm, haḥ, phat, hrūm I absorb the subtle principle of sound. Salutations.

26-27. One has to meditate on the grey-coloured circular column of air pervading the space between the neck and nose, and bearing the mark of the pure moon with the two incantations
(as above). The subtle principle of touch has to be absorbed in the principle of sound by meditative yuga.

28. Om, hrim, haḥ, ṇhaṭ, hrūm I absorb the subtle sound principle. Salutations, with the single incantation one has to absorb the ethereal space of the colour of pure crystal and pervading the space in between the nose and tuft.

29. One has to perform purification of the body by desiccation etc. Then the dry body from the foot to the tuft has to be meditated upon.

30-31. After having meditated upon the drop which has come out of the cavity of brain with the syllable ram and on the body covered by a garland of flames with the syllables yam and vam, one has to besmear the body with the ambrosia of ashes. Then with the syllable lam, it should be converted into a sacred body.

32. Having made the nyāsa1 on the hand and body one has to do mental worship. Viṣṇu is adored with his retinue in the heart-lotus with mental flowers.

33. The lord of lords who yields enjoyment and liberation has to be worshipped with the principal mystic syllable. “O lord of gods, welcome to you. O Keśava! be present here.”

34. “Accept my excellent mental adoration properly.” Then the Tortoise, the supporting power, then Ananta and then the earth have to be worshipped.

35-36. The righteousness, un-righteousness etc. (have to be worshipped) in the middle of fire etc., the lotus in the middle of sattva (goodness) etc., the principle of time, the solar and other regions and the king of birds, in māyā (illusion) and avidyā (ignorance). Then (the deities) of the quarters commencing with north-west and ending with north-east as well as the line of preceptors.

37. The attendant gods, Sarasvatī, Nārada (sage), Nalakūbara (son of Kubera), the preceptor, the sandals of the preceptor’s preceptor and of the preceptor have to be worshipped.

38-39. The perfections already accomplished and the later perfections, the female energies—Lakṣmī, Sarasvatī, Pṛti, Kirti

1. The assignment of fingers on the different parts of the body by touching them.
Śānti, Kānti, Puṣṭi, Tuṣṭi, Mahendrā etc. have to be worshipped in the middle. Hari, Dhṛti, Śrī, Rati, and Krānti etc. have to be invoked in the middle. Acyuta is established with the principal mystic syllable.

40. Having prayed by saying "Om, have (your) face towards me and come near me," and having placed the articles of worship and offered scents etc. one has to worship with the principal (mystic syllable).

41. Om (you) frighten, (you) frighten. Again terrorise the heart and head. (You) pound the tuft, commencing with the flames and from the āstra to the astra.

42. (You) protect. (You) destroy. Salutations to the armour. Om, hrūm, phat. Salutations to the missile. (One should worship) the parts of the body with the principal mystic letter.

43-44. At first one should worship different forms of idols in the east, south, west and north. Vāsudeva, Saṅkarṣaṇa, Pradyumna, Aniruddha, Agni, Śrī, Dhṛti, Rati and Kānti (are) the forms of Hari. The conch, disc, mace, lotus and Agni (should be worshipped) in the east.

45. The bow, club, sword, and garland of wild flowers (should be worshipped) outside it. Indra and others as well as Ananta, and Varuṇa (should be worshipped) in the south-west.

46-48. Brahmā and Indra (should be worshipped) in the north-east and their hosts of weapons on the outside. The Airāvata (the elephant of Indra), goat, buffalo, monkey, fish, deer, hare, bull, tortoise, and hamsa (should be worshipped) and Kṛṣṇa on the outside. The gate-keepers Kumuda and others (should be worshipped) in pairs from the east to the north. After saluting Hari, the food (is offered) outside. Salutations to the attendants of Viṣṇu. The offering should be made on the altar.

49. One should worship the Universal Being, the All-pervading on the north-east. The protective thread should be tied on the right arm of the lord.

1. An ordinary missile.
2. Any missile discharged after the repetition of appropriate mystic syllables.
50. (One should say), "Om salutations to the one who confers full benefits of worship done through the whole year. You wear this thread for the purpose of installation."

51. One should observe the vow of fasting etc. in the presence of the deity (saying), "I am pleasing the deity by observing fasting etc."

52. "May not lust, anger, and all other (qualities) reside in me ever. O lord of gods from this day onwards it is the last of them."

53. If the worshipper is unable (to do as described), he should observe the vow eating only in the night. Having made oblations, the visarjana (dismissal) is done, after laudation. This is the (mode of) daily worship which yields riches. Om, hrim, śrim, salutations to Śrīdhara the enchanter of the three worlds.

CHAPTER THIRTYFOUR

Mode of performing oblation

Agni said:

1-2. One has to enter the sacrificial ground with the following mystic syllable and adorn it. "Salutations to the brahman, the lord, Śrīdhara (and) undecaying self, the form of Rg, Yajur and Sāma (veda), (possessing) a body (composed) of sound (and) Viṣṇu. Having drawn the circular altar in the evening, one has to bring materials for the sacrifice.

3. Having washed hands and feet and made assignment, and taken the arghya (respectful offering) in the hands one should sprinkle the arghya on the head and the gate-way.

4. He should then begin sacrifice at the gateway. He should worship the presiding deity of the arch. The asvattha¹, udumbara², vata³ and plakṣa⁴ are the trees of the east.

¹. Ficus religiosa (fig. tree).
². Ficus glomerata.
³. Ficus indica (banyan tree).
⁴. Ficus infectoria (a large tree with small white fruit).
5. The Ṛg (veda) is the ornament of Indra on the west. The Yajur (veda) is auspicious for Yama. The Sāma (veda) is of the water-god and is known as Sudhanvan. The Atharva (veda) is of Soma (and is called) Suhotraka.

6. The edges of the gate, flags, (gate-keepers) Kumuda etc. and two pitchers should be adored at every door by their respective names, as well as a pitcher full of water in the east.

7. Then one should worship the guards of the doors — Ānanda, Nandana, Dakṣa, Virasena, Suṣeṇaka, Sambhava and Prabhava in the north (Saumya)¹.

8. One should enter after having removed obstacles by throwing flowers and the repetition of names of weapons. Having performed purificatory rites of the elements and the assignment (of limbs) one should show the posture of hands.

9-10. Having recited the mystic syllable ending with phat one should scatter mustard seeds in different directions. (One should sanctify) the cow’s urine with Vāsudeva, cow’s dung with Saṅkarṣaṇa, the milk with Pradyumna and the curd got from it with Nārāyaṇa. The ghee should be one part and the others respectively one part more.

11. When these are mixed in a vessel of ghee it is known as the paṅcagavya² (the five products got from a cow). A part of it is for the sprinkling of the temple building and the other for eating.

12. One should worship Indra and other guardian deities of the world in ten pitchers which have been brought. Having worshipped them one has to make them hear command. They must be installed by the command of Hari.

13. Having kept the articles of sacrifice well-protected, one must scatter those which must be scattered. Having recited the basic mystic syllable eight hundred times one should take kūta grass.

14. Then one should place there a pitcher and (the vessel) vardhani at the north-east. Having worshipped Hari along with

---

1. Soma means Kubera, the regent of the north.
2. These are—the dung, urine, milk, curd and ghee.
the attendant gods in the pitcher one should worship weapons in the (vessel) _vardhani._

15. (Having made) a circumambulation of the sacrificial place, water is sprinkled in broken streams by the _vardhani._ Then the pitcher should be taken and worshipped at a fixed place.

16. Hari should be worshipped with perfumes etc. in the pitcher adorned with five gems and cloth and the weapons (should be worshipped) at the left in the _Vardhani in which gold has been placed.

17. One should worship the goddess of the building and the presiding deity of obstacles near it. In the same way, one should arrange for the consecration of Viṣṇu on the days of movement (of the sun from one stellar place to another), and other days (of importance).

18. Nine dentless jars full of water should be placed in the nine corners. One should offer water for washing the feet, _ārghya_ for rinsing the mouth and the _pañcagavya._

19. The five sweet things, water etc. (are placed) in the east, north-east etc. The curd, milk, honey and hot water are the four constituents for the worship of the feet.

20. The lotus, _śyāmāka_ (a kind of grain), _dūrva_ (grass) and the consort of Viṣṇu are for the worship of the feet. Together with barley seeds, perfumes, fruits and unbroken rice, this is spoken as constituting the eight articles for the worship of the feet.

21. The _kuśa_ (grass), flowers of white mustard, sesamum (are) the articles (used) for adoration. One should offer waters for rinsing the mouth together with cloves and _kaṭkola_ (berries).

22. One should bathe the deity with the five sweet materials along with (the recitation of) the principal mystic syllable. One should pour pure water on the head of the deity from the central pot.

23. The worshipper should touch water poured from the pitcher and the tip of the _kūrcha_ (bunch of _kuśa_ grass). One should offer pure water for washing the feet and _ārghya_ for sipping.

24. After having wiped the body with a cloth, the deity (adorned) with a cloth should be taken to the altar. Having worshipped him there, one should offer oblations in the sacrificial pit after having controlled breath.
25. Having washed hands, three lines running towards the east from the south to the north and three running towards the north are drawn.

26. Having sprinkled them with the waters of arghya, one has to show yonimudrā.\(^1\) Having meditated on the fire of the form of the self in the yoni one should throw it in the pit.

27. Then one should place vessels together with darbha grass and wooden ladles. The twigs and saw (should be) at arm’s distance.

28. (Then one must bring) vessels pranitā, proksani and sthāli for (holding) the clarified butter (and offering) ghee etc. Two prasthas\(^2\) of rice (are spread) evenly with face downwards.

29-30. The kuśa (grass) with its tip (facing) eastwards should be placed in the pranitā and proksani vessels. Having filled pranitā (vessel) with water and having meditated on the deity and worshipping, the pranitā (vessel) should be placed in the midst of materials in front. Having filled the proksani (vessel) with water and worshipping it, it should be placed on the right side.

31. The oblation should be consigned to the fire. Brahmā should be assigned to the south. Having spread the kuśa (grass) in the east etc. the (line of) enclosure should be drawn.

32. Rites relating to Viṣṇu should be done with (the rites) such as garbhādhāna etc. The garbhādhāna, pumśavana, simanton-nayana, and (the rite performed after) the birth (are the rites).

33. Eight offerings to the fire are made commencing with naming (ceremony) and ending with samāvarta (rite performed on the completion of one’s studies). The final oblation is made with the sacrificial ladles for each act.

34. The oblation is made after having meditated on the lustrous (goddess) Lakṣmi at the middle of the pit. (She) is known as Kuṇḍalakṣmi (Lakṣmi of the sacrificial pit), the source of the material world composed of the three qualities.

35. She is the source of all beings as well as mystic learning and collection of mystic syllables. The fire is the cause of liberation. The supreme soul (Viṣṇu) is the conferer of emancipation.

---

\(^1\) On this mudrā and other mudrās see Kāli. P. 70.36-56. This is one of ten mudrās in the worship of the goddess. See Brahmāṇḍa P. IV. 36.62; 42.1-19.

\(^2\) A measure equivalent to 32 palas.
36. (His) head is spoken as at the east, the two arms are situated at the corners north-east and south-east, the two thighs at the north-western and south-western corners.

37-38. The belly is called (the sacrificial) pit. The organ of generation is said to be the source. The three qualities are the girdle. Having meditated thus fifteen twigs should be placed in the fire (after reciting) Om by showing muṣṭi mudrā. Oblations should be made again to the vessels and worship is offered (to the vessels) on the north-west to south-east.

39. Parts of oblations are offered (for the directions) upto the north-east with the basic mystic syllable. (Oblations are made) in the north with (the syllables) (forming) the end (of the) twelve syllables and with the middle (of the mystic syllable) in the south.

40. The consecrated fire of Viṣṇu, possessing seven tongues and having the radiance of crores of sums and having the moon as its face and sun as the eye and situated in the middle of the lotus should be meditated upon with the vyāhṛtis. Then one should offer one hundred and eight oblations (to this form). Then fiftyeight oblations (should be offered) and a tenth of it for the limbs.

CHAPTER THIRTYFIVE

Mode of consecration of an image

Agni said:

1. Having sprinkled with the residual offering one should perform consecration of the sacred, subtle, and chanted mystic formulae of the manlion form.

2-3. Consecration of the vessels covered by the clothes should be done with mystic syllables. The vessels on which water is sprinkled once or twice with bel (leaves), should be placed

1. This is formed by holding a clenched fist.
2. Om nama bhagavate Nārāyaneva.
3. The basic syllables forming part of the Gāyatrī-mantra.
near the pitcher. Having pronounced the protective spell the priest should place stick for (cleansing) the teeth and myrabolan on the east with (the recitation of syllable for) Saṅkarṣaṇa.

4. The ashes, sesamum, and cowdung-mixed earth (should be consecrated) on the south with (syllable for) Pradyumna, in the west with (that of) Aniruddha and in the north with that of Nārāyaṇa.

5. Then the waters along with the kuśa grass (should be assigned) to the south-east with the heart, the saffron and pigment on the north-east with the head, the incense on the south-west with the tuft.

6. Then the principal beautiful flowers (should be assigned) to the north-west with the armour. The sandal, water, unbroken rice, curd, and dūroā (grass) are placed in small cups (made of leaves).

7-8. The chamber having been encircled by three threads, the articles kept ready should be thrown again. Then in one’s own order of adoration one should offer perfumes and (other) articles, at the foot of the gate or at the pitcher of Viṣṇu with sacred syllables. One should then worship the radiant, beautiful form of Viṣṇu capable of destroying all sins.

9. “I conceive on thy limbs, the deity who grants all coveted things”. After having worshipped him by (showing) the incense, lamp etc., one should approach the gate-way.

10. One should offer pavitra along with perfumes, flowers and unbroken grains. The radiant pavitra of Viṣṇu (is capable) of destroying all sins.

11. I hold on my limbs (the pavitra) for the accomplishment of virtue, desire and worldly benefits. The pavitra is offered to the other attendant deities and to the preceptor (seated) on a seat.

12. After having worshipped well with perfumes, one has to offer to Hari along with perfumes, flowers etc. and saying, “May these become the energy of Viṣṇu”.

13-14. Having offered to the deity stationed in the fire one should pray to the deity (saying), “O lord couched on the great

1. It means the sanctified articles. It also means the twining of the darbha grass in a particular shape so that it could be worn on the finger.
serpent in the milky ocean. I shall worship you in the morning. You (please) be present here O Keśava.” Then having-offered offerings to Indra and others one should dedicate them to the attendants of Viṣṇu.

15. Then one should place a pitcher covered by two cloths and filled with water mixed with perfumes, rocana, camphor and saffron in front of the deity.

16-18. Having adorned the deity with perfumes and flowers, one should worship him with the mystic formula. Having come out of the hall one should place in three circular enclosures the five products obtained from the cow, the sacrificial offering (caru) and wood for cleansing the teeth. One should read purānas and recite hymns and along with servants, a women and children remain awake. Then the consecration rite should be performed immediately without sacred perfumes.

CHAPTER THIRTY-SIX

Mode of performing the investiture of sacred thread

Agni said:

1. Having bathed in the morning and worshipping the guardian deities, (the worshipper) should enter the secret chamber and gather (articles) and place.

2. The articles (are) the dress, ornaments and perfumes which were offered in the consecration ceremony earlier. Having discarded the remnants (of articles for worship), the deity should be well-installed and worshipped.

3. One should offer the pañcāṃrta (five sweet articles), the unguents, pure and perfumed waters as well as dress, perfumes and flowers.

4. Having offered unto the fire as done everyday one should pray to the deity and bow down. Having submitted one’s actions to the deity one should perform the naimittika (periodical) ceremony.
5. One should worship the gate-keeper, the pitcher of Viṣṇu and the varddhant (vessel) and Hari. The pitcher (should be consecrated) with the sacred syllable ‘ato deva’ (and the following).

6. “O Kṛṣṇa! Salutations to you. You accept this sacred thread for the sake of purifying all and which yields fruits of a year’s worship.

7. You purify sins that had been committed by me. O God! the lord of celestials I will be purified by your grace.”

8. Having sprinkled mentally the sacred thread and the self, and having sprinkled the pitcher of Viṣṇu, one should go near the deity.

9-10. One should offer a sacred thread to the self, after having discarded the protective thread (tied on the hand). O Lord! Accept the sacred thread that has been made ready by me, for the sake of accomplishing rites so that there may not be any fault on me. The sacred thread (should be offered) to the gate-keepers, the seat and to the chief preceptors.

11. The garlands of forest flowers (should be offered) to the gods of inferior order with the basic formula. The articles should be offered to the heart etc. and ending with Viṣvaksena (an epithet of Viṣṇu).

12. Having offered to the fire the oblations placed near the fire for Viṣṇu and other (gods), and having worshipped, the final oblation should (then) be made with the basic formula for the expiation (of one’s sins).

13-16. O Lord! having Garuḍa as your emblem! Let this be your annual adoration with one hundred and eight or five Upaniṣads¹ (and) with garlands of gems and corals, the flowers mandāra and others.

“O Lord! Just as the garland of wild flowers and the kaustubha gem (are) (worn) always on the chest, so also bear the sacred thread and the worship on the chest. Whatever has been done wantonly or unwantonly in the regulations of the worship let it become complete by the rite shorn of impediments.” Having worshipped, bowing down, and requesting them the purified article should be placed on one’s own head.

---

¹ The mystical writings ascertaining the meaning of the Vedas.
17. Having made offering to Viṣṇu the preceptor should be satisfied by (giving) the fees. The brahmins should be satisfied by (giving) food, clothes and other things either for a day or for a fortnight.

18. At the time of bathing, having gone down into the waters, the sacred thread should be offered. Without any restriction, food and other things should be given (to others) and then one has to eat.

19-22. Having worshipped fire at the (rite of) dismissal the threads are removed. (One should then say) “Having thus duly accomplished my annual adoration O thread ! you now go to the world of Viṣṇu having been permitted by me. Having worshipped Someśa and Viṣvaksena at the centre and having worshipped the sacred threads one should dedicate them to the brahmins. As many knots as there are in that thread (one will) live gloriously for so many thousands of years in the world of Viṣṇu. One will get release (from bondage) after having redeemed hundreds of his ancestors the ten preceding and the ten succeeding and having established them in the world of Viṣṇu.

CHAPTER THIRTYSEVEN

The investiture of sacred thread for all gods

Agni said:

1. Listen to (the description of the mode of) investiture for all deities. The thread is the primary characteristic as well as its yellow orpiment.

2. O the cause of the universe ! come here along with the attendant gods. I invite you in the morning and offer this sacred thread.

3. O the creator of the universe. Salutations to you ! Accept this sacred thread for the sake of purification (and which) conveys the fruits of the annual worship.

4. O God Śiva ! Salutations to you ! Accept this sacred
thread along with garlands of gems and corals and mandūra flowers.

5-6. O lord of the learned in the Vedas! Let this be your annual worship. After having accomplished this annual worship of mine according to the rules, O articles of worship! go to heavens after being discarded by me. O lord Sun! Salutations to you. Accept this article of worship.

7. O Lord Śiva! Salutations to you. Accept this article of worship which is capable of yielding fruits of annual worship for the sake of purification.

8. O lord of gaṇas! Salutations to you. Accept this article of worship which is capable of yielding fruits of annual worship for the sake of purification.

9. O goddess Śakti! Salutations to you. Accept this article of worship which is capable of yielding fruits of annual worship for the sake of purification.

10-14. I dedicate unto you this excellent thread verily the same as (lord) Nārāyaṇa and (lord) Aniruddha and which is capable of yielding fruits of annual worship for the sake of purification and which yields wealth, grains and health. I dedicate unto you this excellent thread verily the same as Kāmadeva and Saṅkarṣaṇa, which yields learning, progeny and welfare. I dedicate unto you this thread verily the same as Vāsudeva, which yields dharma, artha, kāma, and mokṣa and which is the cause for transport over the ocean of mundane existence. This thread verily the universal form is the donor of all things, the destroyer of sins and elevates past and future lineage. I offer in order to the four younger deities with the mystic syllables.

CHAPTER THIRTYEIGHT

Benefits of constructing temples

Agni said:

1. I will now describe the benefits of erecting the

1. These are the four objects of human life, namely, righteousness, pleasures, desires and release from bondage.
temples of Vāsudeva and others. One who is desirous of constructing the temples of gods gets freed from sins incurred in thousand births.

2-5. Those who conceive of building a temple get the sins accrued in hundreds of births destroyed. Those who approve the building of a temple for lord Kṛṣṇa, also become free from their sins and go to the world of Acyuta (Viṣṇu). Having built a temple for Hari, a man immediately conveys a lakh of his ancestors both past and future to the world of Viṣṇu. The manes of a person who builds a temple for Viṣṇu having seen it remain in the world of Viṣṇu well-honoured and relieved of their sufferings in hells. The erection of the abode for the deity destroys sins such as the killing of a brahmin.

6. Whichever benefit could not be obtained by doing sacrificial rites, could be got by the erection of an abode (for the god). He who erects an abode for the god reaps fruits of bathing in all holy waters.

7. Even the making of a temple by perfidy with dust one would reach heaven. It gets more benefits than those (got) being slain in the battle.

8. One who builds one temple goes to heaven. One who builds three temples goes to the world of Brahmā. The builder of five abodes reaches the world of Śambhu (Śiva). By building eight abodes one remains in the world of Hari.

9-17. One who builds sixteen abodes gets enjoyment and emancipation. Having built a small, medium or excellent temple for Hari one gets heaven or the world of Viṣṇu or emancipation respectively in order. Which merits a rich man would get by erecting an excellent temple of Viṣṇu, a poor man would get by (erecting) a small temple itself. Having acquired riches and built a temple for Hari even with a small portion of it one would get excellent and enormous merits. By erecting a temple of Hari with a lakh or thousand or hundred or fifty (units of money) one would reach the place of that person who has the eagle in his banner. Those who play in their childhood with (the building of) abodes of Hari with earth also go to the world of Vāsudeva. The building of temples of Viṣṇu at holy places, within temples, accomplished place or hermitage (yields) threefold benefit than those already described. Those who decorate
(the temple) of Viṣṇu with the bandhūka flowers and an oint with fragrant paste, also reach the place of the lord. (Having erected the temple of Hari), a person obtains two-fold merits after having elevated the fallen, the falling and half-fallen. He who brings about the fall of a man is the protector of one fallen.

18-19. By (erecting) a temple of Viṣṇu one reaches his region. As long as the bricks remain in the temple of Hari, the founder of that family is honoured in the world of Viṣṇu. He becomes pious and adorable in this world as well as the next.

20. He who builds a temple for Kṛṣṇa, the son of Vasudeva is born as a man of good deeds and his family gets purified.

21. He who builds an abode for Viṣṇu, Rudra, Sun or the goddess etc. acquires fame. What is the use of the hoarded riches for an ignorant person?

22-23. If one does not cause an abode for Kṛṣṇa to be built (with wealth) acquired by hard (work) (and) if one’s wealth could not be enjoyed by manes, brahmins, celestials and relatives, his acquisition of wealth is useless. As death is certain for a man so also the destruction of wealth.

24. One who does not spend his riches for charities or for enjoyments is stupid and is being bound even while alive, while the riches are flickery.

25. Is there any merit in being the lord of wealth acquired either accidentally or by one’s effort, if it is not spent for acquiring fame or for philanthropy?

26-31. One may give to the foremost brahmins and also do (such acts) which would glorify him. More than the charities and more than the acts which would glorify him, one has to build the temples of Viṣṇu and other gods. The temple of Hari being set up by devoted great men, the three worlds, the movable and immovable things and the entire objects get established. All the things beginning with Brahmā to the Pillar, that has already born, that is being born, that is to be born, the gross, the minute and the other things are born of Viṣṇu. Having set up an abode for that lord of lords, the omnipresent, the great Viṣṇu, one is not born again in this world. By building temples for the celestials, Śiva, Brahmā, Sun, Vighnēśa (lord of impediments), Caṇḍi (Pārvatī), Lākṣmī and others (a man) reaps the same benefit as he would get for building an abode for Viṣṇu. Greater merit (is acquired) by installing images of gods.
32. In the rites (relating to) installation of an idol there is no limit for the fruits (gained). An image made of wood gives greater merit than that made of clay. One made of bricks yields greater merit than that made of wood.

33. One made of stones gives (greater merit) than that made of bricks. (Images made) of gold and other metals yield more benefits. Sins committed in seven births get destroyed even at the very commencement of installation.

34. One who builds a temple goes to heaven and never goes to hell. Having elevated a hundred of his ancestors he conveys them to the world of Viṣṇu.

35. Yama (god of death) said to his emissaries:

Yama said:

"Those men who build temples of gods and adore the idols are not to be brought to hell.

36. Bring them to my view who have not built temples and other things. Move around in the befitting way and execute my directive.

37. Except those who have resorted to Ananta, the father of the universe, no other beings would at any time disregard the command.

38. Those who are devotees of Viṣṇu and have their mind fixed on him have to be avoided by you. They are not to live here.

39-49. Those who always adore Viṣṇu should be avoided by you from a distance. Those who sing the glories of Govinda while standing or sleeping or walking or standing behind or stumbling or remaining (at a place) are to be avoided by you from a distance. Those who worship Janārdana with obligatory and occasional rites are not to be beheld by you. Those who follow this course attain good position. Those who worship (the god) with flowers, incense, raiments, favourite ornaments, (and) those who have gone to the abode of Kṛṣṇa are not to be seized by you. Those who besmear with unguents, and those who are engaged in sprinkling his body, their children and their descendants should be left in the temple of Kṛṣṇa. Hundreds of men born in the family of one who has built the temple of Viṣṇu should not be seen by you with evil mind. Who-
ever builds a temple of Viṣṇu with wood or stone or earth gets free from all sins. One who builds the temple of Viṣṇu gets that great benefit which (one would acquire) by doing sacrificial rites everyday. By building a temple for Viṣṇu (one) conveys hundreds of his descendants and hundreds of his ancestors to the world of Acyuta. Viṣṇu is identical with the seven worlds. One who builds a house for him saves the endless worlds and also obtains endlessness. One who builds (a temple) for him, lives for so many years in heaven as the number of years the set up bricks would remain. The maker of the idol (would reach) the world of Viṣṇu. One who consecrates it would get absorbed in Hari.

One who builds a temple, makes an idol and installs it goes within his range.

Agni said:

“I have not brought one who has installed Hari as told by Yama”. Hayaśiras told Brahmā for the installation of gods.

CHAPTER THIRTYNINE

Preparations of ground for constructing temples

Hayagrīva said:

1. O Brahman! Listen to me speaking about the installation of (images of) Viṣṇu and others. (The principles of) Pañcarātra and Saptarātra have (already) been described by me.

2-5. They have been divided by the sages into twenty-five (books) in this world. Hayaśiṣa tantra is the first one. Trailokya-

1. The word rātra means knowledge and the Pañcarātra means the collective knowledge of five kinds according to the Nar. Sam. I.1.

However the Aḥir. Sam. the earliest text of this class of literature would take it to mean the fivefold manifestation of Lord Vāsudeva, viz. Para, nyūha, vibhava, araṇa and antaryāmin.
mohana, Vaibhava, Pauśkara, Prahlāda, Gṛgya, Gālava, Nāradya, Śṛṭaraṇa, Śāṇḍilya, Aśvara, spoken by Satya, Śaunaka, Vāsiṣṭha, Jñānasāgara, Śudrāmabhava, Kāpila, Tāraka, Nārāyaṇyaka, Ātreya, Nārasimha, Ananda, Aruṇa, Baudhāyana, and the one spoken by Viṣva as the quintessence of that (the preceding), having eight parts (or the other books).

6-7. A brāhmaṇ born in the middle country may perform installation (rite). Those who were born in Kaccha (Cutch), (in the regions of the river) Kāverī, Koṅkaṇa, Kāmarūpa, Kaliṅga, Kānci, Kāśmīra, Kosala should not (do installation). The sky, wind, radiance, water, and earth are the pañcarātra.

8. Those other than the pañcarātra are inanimate and engulfed in darkness. He is the preceptor who has the knowledge “I am brahman and stainless Viṣṇu”.

9. Even though deficient in all characteristics he who is a master of the tantra is (to be looked upon as) the preceptor. The image of the deity should be placed facing the city and never turned backwards.

10. At Kurukṣetra, Gayā and other places and near the rivers, (the image of) Brahmā at the centre of the city and (the image of) Indra on the east are auspicious.

11-12. (The images) of Agni, mothers, goblins, and Yama (should be placed) in the south-east. (The images) of Caṇḍikā (should be placed) in the south and those of the manes and demons in the south-west. The temples of Varuṇa and others should be built in the west. (The images) of Vāyu and Nāga (serpent) (should be) on the north-west and those of Yakṣa and Guha (Kārṇtikeya) on the north.

13-15. (Those) of Caṇḍisā (the lord of Caṇḍī), the great lord and Viṣṇu (are) always (placed) in the north-east. One should not knowingly construct a temple of a reduced size or equal in size or bigger in size than another temple already constructed so as to encroach upon it. A wise-man would leave between them a space measuring twice the elevation and erect a new temple without affecting both the temples. After having examined the ground one has to take possession of it.

16. The offerings to the (presiding) goblins should be offered up to the outer enclosing wall (with a mixture of) black
gram, turmeric powder, fried grains, curd and flour.

17-18. Having dropped the flour in all directions along with (the recitation of) eight syllables: (one has to say), "The demons and goblins who remain on this ground may go away. I am making a place for Hari." Having cleaved the earth with the plough one should cleave it with oxen.

19. Eight Paramāṇus make one rathāṇu. Eight rathāṇus are said to make one trasareṇu. Eight times that (makes) one bālāgra and eight times that is known as likhyā. Eight times that is known as yūka. Eight times that is a yavamadhyama. Eight times yava (makes) one aṅgula. Twenty-four aṅgulas (make) one kara. Four aṅgulas make one padmahastaka.

CHAPTER FORTY

The mode of making the respectful offering to the god

The Lord said:

1. In days of yore that material principle was dreadful among all principles. It being placed on the earth it was known to be the lord of that place.

2. At a place (divided) into sixty-four compartments, Īśa occupying a half of the corner square is worshipped with ghee and unbroken rice. Then the (god) Parjanya (the rain god) occupying a square (is worshipped).

3. The god Jayanta, who occupies two squares (is worshipped) with lotus (flowers) and water, and the lord Mahendra, who remains in one square (is worshipped) with a banner. The Sun god (is worshipped) in a square with all red things.

4. The (god of) truth occupying half a square at the bottom is worshipped with canopy and profuse offering of ghee. The lord of the sky occupying half the angular square (is propitiated) with the bird's flesh.

5. The fire-god in half a square (is worshipped) with the

1. The mantra of eight syllables: Om nome nārāyaṇya.
sacrificial ladle and the god Pūṣan in a square with fried grains, the lord of untruth in two squares with gold, churning rod and unbroken rice in the house.

6. The lord Dharmeśa stationed in two squares is worshipped) with meat and cooked food, the Gandharva in two squares with incense and the tongue of a bird.

7. Mrga occupying one upper (square) (is) then (worshipped) with blue cloth. The manes (are worshipped) with a dish composed of milk, sesamum and rice in half a square and sticks of tooth-brush in another square.

8. The (two) door-keepers Sugrīva and Puṣpadanta occupying two squares (are worshipped) with barley grains and a clump of grass respectively, and Varuṇa with lotus flowers in a square.

9. The asura (demon) in two squares (is propitiated) with wine, (the serpent) Śeṣa in a square with ghee and water, the sin in half a square with barley grains, the disease in half a square with manḍaka (a kind of baked flour).

10. The Nāga (serpent) (is worshipped) in a square with the nāga flowers and the chief serpent in two squares with edibles The Bhallāṭa (a kind of superhuman being) (is worshipped) in a single square with rice mixed with kidney-bean, and the moon (with the same offering) in the next square.

11. The sage placed in two squares (is worshipped) with honey, sweat gruel and nutmeg, Diti in a square with anointments and Aditi in one and a half squares.

12. Āpas (is propitiated) in a square below in the north-east with milk and cake and then Apavatsa remaining in a square below with curd.

13. Marici (is propitiated) in four squares in the east with balls of sweet-meat and for (the god) Savitṛ, the red flowers (are placed) in the lower angular square.

14. In the square below that, water along with kuṭa grass is offered to Savitṛ, red sandal paste is offered to Aruṇa in four squares.

15. Respectful offering along with turmeric (is made) to Indra in the lower square in the south-west and rice mixed with ghee (is offered) in the corner square below Indrajaya.

16. Sweet gruel (mixed) with jaggery (is offered) to Indra
in four squares and cooked meat (is offered) to Rudra in the corner square in the north-west.

17. In the corner square below that wet fruit (is offered) to Yakṣa, rice meat and black-gram (are offered) to Mahīdhara in four squares.

18. Rice and sesamum should be placed in the central square for Brahmā. Caraki (is worshipped) with black-gram and clarified butter and Skanda with a dish composed of milk, sesamum and rice and a garland.

19. Vidārī (a demoness) (is worshipped) with red lotuses, Kandarpa (god of love) with cooked rice and meat, Pūtanā (a demoness) with meat and bile and Jambaka (a demon) with meat and blood.

20. The Iṣa (is appeased) with bile, blood and bones, Pilipiṇḍa (a demon) with a garland and blood. Other deities are worshipped with blood and meat and in their absence with unbroken rice.

21. Sacrificial offerings are made to demons, divine mothers, manes and guardian deities of the ground in due order.

22. One should not build temples and other things without offering to these (deities) or appeasing them. Hari, Lakṣmī, Gaṇa (the attendant deity of Śiva) should be worshipped at the place (set apart) for Brahmā.

23-24. The final offering is then made to Brahmā in the central pitcher and to Brahmā and other deities as well as Maheśvara, the presiding deity of the ground with a pitcher together with a small vessel. After having made benediction, and holding well the water-jar with small holes at the bottom an auspicious circumambulation is made.

25. O Brahman! the drop of water is rotated (to fall) in a line. As before in the same line seven kinds of seeds are sown.

26. The excavation should begin in the same way. Then a hole of the measure of a hand should be dug at the centre.

27. Then having made (the pit) smooth to a depth of four fingers’ breadth and having contemplated on the four-armed Viṣṇu (waters of adoration) should be offered from the pitcher.

28. Then the hole is filled (with water) from the water-jar having holes at the bottom, white flowers are placed. The excellent conch-shell (known as the) Dakṣiṇāvarta (curved to the
right) has to be filled with seeds and earth.

29. After having performed the offering of water, one should present the preceptor of cows, clothes and other things and honour the sculptor, and the vaiṣṇavas who know the proper time.

30. One should then dig carefully till water is found. The substance lying below the presiding deity under the building would not have any benefial influence.

31. The bone or substance below if broken, the broken thing forebodes baneful influence for the inmate. Whatever kind of sound one would hear, (it is to be known) as due to the substance lying below.

CHAPTER FORTYONE

Mode of performing consecration

The Lord said:

1. I shall narrate the mode of consecration of the foundation and (the rites relating to) the laying down of the foundation stone. A shed is erected at first and four (sacrificial) pits (are made).

2. The placing of pitchers (of water) and bricks, the erection of the doors and pillars (are finished). The dug up pit is filled to a quarter (of its depth) and the presiding deity is worshipped at the same time.

3. The bricks should be of twelve fingers in length, with a breadth and width of four fingers respectively, and well-burnt.

4-8. Stones measuring a cubit (in length) would be best in the case of stone slabs. Nine copper pitchers and bricks should be placed. The pitchers (should be filled) with water, (substance known as pañcakāṣṭīya), waters of all herbs and fragrant waters.

1. A decoction from the fruits of five plants jambū, salmali, vatiya, bakula and badara (MW. p. 575).
Then with the pitchers filled well with waters (and containing gold and rice and anointed by fragrant sandal, and having placed the stones along with (the recitation of) the mystic syllables —the three-footed āpo hi śāhā, sanno devi, tarat sa māndiḥ, pāvamānī, uduttamam varuṇa, kayā nāḥ, varuṇasa, hamsāḥ sūciṣā, śrisūkta) 9. Hari should be worshipped in a bed in the shed in the eastern part of the (drawn) diagram. Then having kindled the fire twelve twigs should be offered (as oblation).

10. The primary offering and the offering with clarified butter should be done with the syllable om. Then subsequently eight offerings and again eight offerings with clarified butter (should be offered) with the syllables (known as) vyāhṛtis duly.

11. After that offer oblation (in the fire) to the gods, Agni, Soma and Puruṣottama separately with vyāhṛtis.

12-13. The preceptor (officiating at the rite) should do the expiatory rite facing the eastern quarter offering to the image, meat, and sesamum along with ghee separately in the pitchers with the vedic syllables or the mystic formula of twelve syllables. Having scattered (sesamum) in the eight directions a stone and a pitcher should be placed at the centre and the following divinities (should be invoked) in order.

14. Padma, mahāpadma, makara, kacchapa, kumuda, nanda, padma, saṅkha and padmini (are the divinities).

15. The pitchers should not be moved. Eight bricks should be placed in them duly beginning with the eastern direction and ending with the north-east.

16. The female energies Vimalā and others, the presiding deities of these bricks, should be invoked in their proper pitchers.

1. RV. 10.9.1a.
2. RV. 10.9.4a.
4. G. Dh. 19.12.
5. RV. 1.24.15a.
6. RV. 4.31.1a.
7. One of the many hymns beginning with this word See Ved. Con.
8. RV. 4.40.5a.
9. This is the sūkta, ‘hiranyasvarapam hariṁtin’, RV Kh. 5.87.1a.
10. The three syllables bhūr, bhuvas, svar. Manu 2.76.
11. This and the following are the different treasures. See Purāṇa XVII. 2 p. 160. The text here omits nila and repeats Padma.
The energy Anugraha should be invoked at the central pitcher.

17. "O perfect, unbroken, full-bodied brick, the daughter of the sage An¿giras, I am establishing you. You grant me the desired thing."

18-20. The preceptor, having placed the brick with this mystic syllable should do garbhådhåna. Having invoked the goddess Padmin¿ at the central pitcher, earth, flowers, minerals, gems, and iron pieces as well as the weapons of deities of quarters (should be placed) in the hole of twelve fingers' width and four fingers' depth.

21-22. The goddess earth should be worshipped in a copper vessel of the shape of a lotus. "O the exclusive mistress of all beings, abound with the summits of mountains as the seats, one surrounded by oceans, O goddess! You resort to this hole. O rejoicer! born of sage Vasi¿tha! you rejoice with the Vasus and the progeny.

23. O Victorious! related to Bhårgava (Para¿uråma) Maker of thine subjects victorious! the perfect! the relative of An¿giras! fulfil all my desires.

24. O Auspicious one! related to sage Kå¿yapa! Make my intellect good. One who is accomplished with all seeds! One who possesses all gems and herbs!

25. May you be victorious! O beautiful one! O rejoicer! Related to Vasi¿tha! The daughter of the creator! O Goddess! O handsome one! Stay on here in bliss—O majestic one!

26. Stay thou in this house! O beautiful and brilliant one! the daughter of Ka¿yapa! The honoured, most wonderful and bedecked with scents and garlands!

27. O Goddess! Stay in bliss in this room! O Bhårgavi (daughter of ¿ukra)! Bestower of worldly prosperities! Possessed by the gods, kings, and masters of the house!

28. May you become the multiplier of animals for the happiness of men and others. Having said in this way one should then sprinkle cow's urine on the pit.

29. Having done so, one should place in the pit (such that) the impregnation would take place in the night. One should

1. Impregnation at the pit.
give away cows and clothes to the preceptor (the officiating priest), and food to other people.

30. Having filled the hole and placing the bricks in the hole, the hole is completely filled. Then one should construct the base of the deity proportionate to the edifice of the deity.

31. An excellent base is that where it is more than half the breadth of the edifice, while a quarter lesser than that would be mediocre and that which is half of the excellent base (aforesaid) would be the lowest (in merit).

32. After completing the base, the rite for the presiding deity (of the ground) should be done again. One who performs the consecration of the base would enjoy in heavens free from sin.

33. One who would mentally think that “I am going to build a temple”, the sins which had stuck to his body would get destroyed that day itself.

34-35. No need to speak (about the merits) of one who has built a temple in the prescribed manner. It is impossible for anyone to describe the merits one would accrue by building a temple with eight bricks alone. One should indeed infer from this the (proportionate) fruits (accrued) (from the building) of temples of greater dimensions.

36. The door of the temple at the centre of the village or on the eastern part should face the west, while in other directions the door should be facing the west and in the southern, northern and western parts (the door) should face the east.

CHAPTER FORTYTW0

Construction of a temple

Hayagrtva said :

1. Listen to me describing the construction of a temple in general. A wise man should divide a square ground into sixteen parts.

2. One should make the four central squares endowed with wealth. The other sixteen parts are left for the walls.
3. The pedestal should extend over four squares. The length of the cornice should be double that of the pedestal.

4. The path of circumambulation should be a quarter of (the length) of the cornice. Two equal openings having the same width as the latter, should be left on the two sides for projections.

5. The extent of the ground should be made at first equal to the length of the tower or twice that such as it may be beautiful.

6-7. One should construct the pavilion in front of the sanctum on the lines running parallel through the sides of its inner chamber, adorned with pillars and being of the same length or longer than the principal temple sanctum by a quarter of its length. The anti-chamber should then be constructed at 81 steps.

8. The deities at the end of the base should be worshipped before placing the parrots at the front door. In the same manner the thirty-two gods at the end should be worshipped when the outer wall is raised.

9. This is the characteristic of a temple in general. Listen to the description (of raising) a temple proportionate to the (size of the) image.

10. The base (of the deity) should be of the same size as the image. The adytum (of the temple) should be half the size of the base and the walls proportionate to the adytum.

11. The height (of the walls) should be equal to the length of the walls. The pinnacle should be made equal to twice the height of the wall.

12. The path around the temple should be a quarter of the extent of the pinnacle. The entrance chamber in the front should be a quarter of the extent of the pinnacle.

13. The projections of the arches should be one-eighth of the extent of the adytum. The arches should be made proportionate to the circumference.

14. The projections of arches should otherwise be made as one-third of it. Always there should be three projections on the left on the three arches.

15-16. Four upward lines should be marked for (the construction of) the pinnacle. A downward line is marked to fall above the key-stone which is located at the middle part of the
pinnacle. A lion is built at the middle part of the pinnacle in a line with the key-stone.

17. Two such lines should be marked on the sides. There should be a small platform above that.

18. (The lion) should not be in a dropping posture or fierce-looking. The conical shaped structure is placed above, proportional to the small platform.

19. A beautiful opening should be made twice the length of the platform. Two globes should be placed above that with beautiful (ornamental) branches.

20-21. (Forms of) Canḍa and Pracaṇḍa should be carved on the door-frame occupying a fourth (of its space), (possessing) a staff like that of Viṣvaksena (Viṣṇu) and at the threshold of the branch beautiful (Goddess) Śrī (Lakṣmī) (should be carved) as being bathed by the elephants of the quarters with (waters from) the pitchers. The height of enclosing wall should be one-fourth of that of the temple.

22. The height of the tower should be a quarter lesser than that of the temple. The pedestal (of the image) of the deity of five cubits should be of a cubit.

23. A shed known as the Garuḍamaṇḍapa and shed for Bhauma (Mars) and other (planets) (should be made). In the eight directions above (the chamber housing) one should make (the images as follows):

24-25. (The images of) Varāha (boar) in the east, Nyṛsiṁha (man-lion) in the south, Śrīdhara (a form of Viṣṇu) in the west, Hayagrīva (horse-necked form of Viṣṇu) in the north, Jāmadagnyaka (Parasurāma, a manifestation of Viṣṇu) in the south-east, Rāma in the south-west, Vāmana (the short-statured manifestation of Viṣṇu) in the north-west (and) Vāsudeva in the north-east. The temple should be decorated with gems all around. Leaving out one-eighth of the door if that is done, it is not defective.
CHAPTER FORTYTHREE

Installation of deities in the temples

_The Lord said:_

1. O Brahman! Listen to my description (of the mode) of installation (of images) of deities in the temples. (Image of Vāsudeva should be placed at the middle of the five divine) edifices.

2. (The images of) the dwarf-form, man-lion form, horse-headed form, (and) boar form (of Viṣṇu) should be placed in the south-east, south-west, north-west and north-east (respectively).

3-5. (The image of) Nārāyaṇa should be placed in the middle. (The images of) the goddess, sun, Brahmā and the _linga_ (symbolic representation of Śiva) or of Rudra (Śiva) should be placed in the south-east, south-west, north-west and north-east (respectively). Otherwise, (image of) Vāsudeva should be placed at the centre of the nine chambers and beautiful (images of Indra and the guardian deities of the world (should be placed) in the east and other directions. Otherwise, one should make five chambers and worship Puruṣottama (Viṣṇu) in the centre.

6. (The images of) Lakṣmi and Vaiśravaṇī (Kubera) should be placed in the east, the divine mothers in the south, Skanda, Gaṇeśa, Īśāna (a form of Śiva) and the sun and other planets in the west.

7-8. Otherwise, having installed (the images of) the manifestations (of Viṣṇu) such as the Fish etc., in the north, Caṇḍikā (a form of Goddess Pārvatī) in the south-east, Ambikā in the south-west, Sarasvatī in the north-west, Padmā (Lakṣmi) in the north-east and Vāsudeva or also Nārāyaṇa in the centre. The omni-present form of Hari should be placed in the centre in (the construction of) the thirteen chambers.

9-11. (Images of) Keśava and others (should be placed) in the east and other directions or (the images) of Hari himself in all chambers. The images are of seven kinds—earthen, wooden, metallic, made of gems, made of stones, made of sandal and made of flowers. The images made of flowers, sandal and earth yield all desired fruits when they are worshipped at
that moment. I shall describe the stone image (where such practice) prevails.

12. In the absence of hills, the stone lying buried in the earth should be taken out. Among the colours, white, red, yellow, and black are extolled.

13. When stones of the above-mentioned colours are not available (the desired) colour is brought about by the (cerem-
mony known as) simhavidya.1

14. After (the performance of) the simhahoma (a piece of) stone (which becomes) tinged with white colour or black colour or produces sound like a bell-metal or emits sparks of fire (is deemed) as male.

15. The female one is that in which these characteristics are present in a lesser degree. If they are devoid of colours they are neuter. (The stones) in which the sign of a circle is found are to be taken as impregnated and should be rejected.

16. One should go to the forest and perform the forest rites for the sake of an image. After having bathed and plastering a shed Hari should be worshipped there.

17. After having made the offering of the victim, the (stone-
cutter's) chisel used for the work should be worshipped. Having offered homa (pouring of clarified butter into the fire), water mixed with rice should be sprinkled over the image with the implement (chisel).

18. Having made the protective spell it should be worshipped with basic sacred syllable of lord Nṛsiṁha. After having made the offering to fire the final oblation should be made. Then offerings to the goblins should be given by the preceptor.

19. Having worshipped the good (spirits), the demons, guhyakas (a class of attendant-gods of Kubera), and accomplished souls and others who may be residing there, should be requested to forgive.

20. (They should be addressed as follows). "This journey (has been undertaken) by us for the image of Viṣṇu by the com-
mand of Keśava. Any work done for the sake of Viṣṇu, should also be your (concern)."

1. Only Hayadṛṣṭasahhitā of the Pañcarātrāgama texts mentions this. The present text does not explain this. See Vaiṣṇava Iconography, p. 40.
21. "Being always pleased with this offering (you) repair quickly to some other place quitting this place for good".

22. Being informed thus (these beings) go to another place in good cheer and satisfied. Having eaten the sacrificial porridge along with the sculptors, he should repeat in the night the following sacred syllables (inducing) sleep.

23. "Om! salutations to (Lord) Viṣṇu, the omnipresent, Prabhaviṣṇu (Viṣṇu) (strong), the universe, and Salutations to the lord of dreams."

24. "O Lord of lords! I have slept by your side. (Instruct me) in my dreams (how to execute) all the works I have in my mind."

25. "Om! hrūm phat viṣṇave svāhā! When the dream (is) good, everything (will also be) good. If it is bad, it becomes good by the performance of the simhahoma\(^1\). Having offered reverential waters to the stone in the morning, the implements should be worshipped with (the sacred syllables) (for the worship of) implements.

26. The sādās and chisels should have their edges besmeared with honey and clarified butter. (The priest) should think himself as Viṣṇu and the sculptor as Viśvakarman (the divine architect).

27-28. The implement which is of the form of Viṣṇu should be given (to the sculptor) and its face and back should be shown. Having cut a square block of the stone with controlled senses and holding a chisel, the sculptor should make a smaller one for the purpose of the pedestal. Having placed (them) in a chariot and brought to the workspot together with the cloth (one who) makes the image after having worshipped (the form conceived), is a sculptor.

CHAPTER FORTYFOUR

Characteristics of the image of Viṣṇudeva

The Lord said:

1-2. I shall describe to you the characteristics of the image

1. See VV. 13 and 17 above.
of Vāsudeva and other gods. Having placed the stone to the north of the temple facing either the east or the north and worshipped it, the sculptor should divide the stone into nine parts along the central line after making the offering.

3. In the twelve divisions (of the line) a division is said to be an angula (a finger breadth). Two angulas are known to be a golaka. It is also said to be a kālanetra.

4. Having divided one of the nine divisions into three, (with one part) the region of the calves should be made. In the same way a part is to be used for the knees and part for the neck.

5. The crown should be of a measure of a tāla (12 angulas). In the same way the face (should be) of the measure of a tāla. The neck and heart should also be a tāla each.

6. The navel and the genital part should be a tāla apart. (The length) of the thighs should be two tālas. (The length) of the part from the ankle to the knee should be two tālas. Listen now to (the description) (of the drawing) of lines (on the body).

7. Two lines should be drawn on the foot, and (two) more in between the calves (and knees). Two lines about the knees and two more in between the thighs and the knees should be drawn.

8. One line should be drawn over the genital part, and one more about the waist. Another (line) (should) then (be drawn) above the navel for accomplishing the girdle.

9. Then (a line) should be drawn on the heart and two lines on the neck. One such line should be drawn on the forehead and one more on the head.

10. One more line should be drawn on the crown by the learned. O Brahman! seven vertical lines should be drawn.

11. Six lines should be laid in between the armpits and the lower part of the spine. These lines alone should be marked clearly omitting the central line.

12. The forehead, the nose and the mouth should be made (to measure) four angulas. The neck and the two ears should be made (to measure) four angulas long.

13. The cheeks so also the chin should be made (to measure) two angulas broad. The forehead is said to be eight angulas broad.

14. Over that the temples (sides of the forehead) should
be made two aṅgulas endowed with curbs. The intervening space between the eyes and ears is said to be four aṅgulas.

15. The ears should be two aṅgulas wide. (The inter-space between) the ears and the ends of eye-lashes (should be) two and a half units. The cavity in the ear is spoken to be in the same line as the eyebrows.

16. A pierced ear (should be) six aṅgulas and an unpierced (ear) (should be) four aṅgulas equal to the chin. (Or it should be) six aṅgulas whether it is pierced or not pierced.

17. Then the external auditory passage with its membranes etc. should be made. The lower lip should be of two aṅgulas and the upper lip should be half of it.

18. Then the (breadth) of an eye (should be) half an aṅgula and the mouth (should be) four aṅgulas. The measurement of its depth is spoken to be one and a half aṅgulas.

19-20. The unopened mouth should be in this way. The opened mouth should be three aṅgulas. The base of the bridge of the nose should be one aṅgula high. From its tip it should be two aṅgulas similar to the karavira (flower) (oleander). The intervening space between the two eyes should be made to measure four aṅgulas.

21. The corners of the eyes (should be) two aṅgulas. The space between them (should be) two aṅgulas. The pupil (should be) one third of the eye and the iris (should be) one fifth (of it).

22. The breadth of the eye (should be) three aṅgulas. The cavity (of the eye) is considered to be half an aṅgula. The lengths of the eyebrows are considered to be equal and are proportional to the eye-brows.

23. The middle of the eye-brow should be two aṅgulas and its length (should be) four aṅgulas. The measure round the head (should be) thirty-six aṅgulas.

24. The measurement around the heads of the images of Keśava and other gods should be thirty-six (aṅgulas). The head-measure of all those (images) which are short-necked (should be) ten (aṅgulas).

25. The inter-space between the neck and the chest should be three times the length of the neck and should be thrice as much broad plus eight aṅgulas.

26. The shoulders (should) be made (to measure) eight
-āṅgulas and the two beautiful shoulder regions (should be) three times those. The arms should measure seven times (the length of) the eyes. The forearms (should be) sixteen aṅgulas.

27. The arms should be three kalās in breadth and the forearms should also be equal to that. The upper arm should have a circumference of nine kalās.

28. It should be seventeen aṅgulas at the middle and sixteen aṅgulas above the elbow-joint. O Brahman! the circumference of elbow should be three times that.

29. The circumference of the middle of the forearm is said to be sixteen aṅgulas. The circumference of the fore-part of the arm is said to be twelve aṅgulas.

30. The palm of the hand is said to be six aṅgulas in breadth. The length should be seven aṅgulas. The middle (finger) should be five aṅgulas (long).

31. The index finger and the ring finger (should be) half an aṅgula less than that. The little finger and the thumb should be made to measure four aṅgulas each.

32. The thumb should be made to have two parvans (joints). The other fingers (should have) three joints. The measure of the nail is laid down as half (the size of the joints) on the respective fingers.

33. The extent of the belly is same as that of the chest. The navel should be an aṅgula (in breadth) and proportionally deep.

34. Then the inter-space between the generative organ and the intestines should be made to measure a tāla. The girth around the navel (should be) forty-two aṅgulas.

35. The inter-space between the breasts should be made to measure a tāla in breadth. The nipples should be of the measure of a yava (barley grain). The circular space around them should be two pādās (two feet).

36. The circumference of the chest should be made sixty-four aṅgulas clearly. The girth of the lower portion (of the chest) is said to be four mukhas (one tāla).

---

1. Equal to two aṅgulas. Also called Golaka.
2. One eighth of an aṅgula.
3. Seems to be a corrupt form for mukhya equal to one tāla or twelve aṅgulas.
37. The circumference of the waist should be fifty-four aṅgulas. The breadth of the base of the thigh is said to be twelve aṅgulas.

38. It is somewhat greater at the middle (of the thigh) and gradually less (broad) below. The knee-joint (should be) eight aṅgulas in breadth and thrice that in its girth.

39. The middle of the leg from the ankle to the knee is said to be seven aṅgulas broad. The girth of it (should be) three times that. The top of the leg (should be) five aṅgulas broad.

40. The girth of that (the leg) (should be) thrice its breadth. The feet (should) measure a tāla. The extent of elevation of the feet (should be) four aṅgulas.

41. The front (part) of the ankles should be four aṅgulas. The extent of the feet should be three kalās. The generative organ should be three aṅgulas.

42. Its girth (should be) five aṅgulas. The fore-finger (should be) of same length. The other fingers are duly lesser by one part of eighth.

43. The height of the toe is said to be one and a half aṅgulas. The nail of the two should be made twice that.

44. (Those of other fingers) should be gradually made half aṅgula less than the previous. The scrotum should be three aṅgulas (long). The generative organ (should be) four fingers (long).

45. The girth of the upper part of the pouch should be made (to be) four aṅgulas. The girth of the scrotum is said to be six aṅgulas.

46. The image should be adorned with ornaments. This is the exact description of details. The features (of the deities) should be made in this world, as described.

47. A disc on the (upper) right hand, and a lotus on the lower (right hand), the conch on the (upper) left hand, the mace on the lower (left hand) are to be placed according to the characteristic of Vāsudeva.

48-49. (The images of) Śrī and Puṣṭi should be made carrying a lotus and a harp respectively in their hands, (their images) reaching upto the thighs (of that of Vāsudeva). Then the two Vidyādhāras (a class of semi-divine beings) holding the garlands (in their hands) should be made in the halo of the prin-
cipal image). The halo (should also) be decked with the (images) of (celestial) elephants. The pedestal should be radiant like a lotus on which the images (should be worshipped) as follows.

CHAPTER FORTYFIVE

Characteristics of pedestals and details relating to images

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the characteristics of the pedestal. The length is the same as that of the image. The height (should be) half of it. It should have sixty-four folds.

2. Leaving two rows at the bottom, the other parts should be polished on either side as also inside.

3. Leaving two rows at the top, the other parts are polished evenly on either side and inside.

4. The rectangular space in between these should then be polished. The first two rows should be divided into four parts by a wise man.

5-6. The girdle should be equal to one such part. The indent should be half that. Leaving one such part evenly on either side a wise man should leave on the exterior a breadth of a foot. The water drains should be at the top of each one of the three parts.

7. This auspicious and excellent pedestal (has been described) relating to its manifold ways (of construction). The (images of the) goddess Lakṣmī and other feminine forms should be made (to measure) eight (tālas in length).

8. The eye brows should be more than a ṣvava (in length). The nose (should be) less than a ṣvava (in length). The mouth (should measure) more than a small ball well distributed above and below.

9. The eye should be made long (measuring) three parts of a ṣvava less than three ṣvavas. The breadth of the eyes should be made half of it.
10. The beautiful ears should be made to be in a line with the corners of the mouth. Then the two shoulders should be made sloping by less than a kalā.

11-12. The neck should be one and a half kalās long and made beautiful by a proportionate width. The thighs, knee-joints, the pedestal, should be broad. The feet, the hinder part, the bullocks and the hips should be made as prescribed. The fingers should measure less than the seventh part of the above and should be long and not crooked.

13. The shank, thigh and the hip would be one netra less in length. The middle part and the sides should have the same roundness. The two breasts (should be) fully developed and plump.

14-15. The beasts should be made to measure a tāla. The waist should be one and a half kalās. The other marks should be the same as before. A lotus (should be placed) on the right hand and a bilva (fruit) on the left (hand). (There should be) two maidens on the sides holding chowries in their hands. (The image of) Garuḍa should have a long nose. I shall then describe those which bear the marks of a disc.

CHAPTER FORTYSIX

Characteristics of different śālagramā stones

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe (the characteristics of) the śālagramā mūrti (the different gods represented by different kinds of śālagramā stones) which yield enjoyment and emancipation. (The stone called) Vāsudeva is black (coloured) around its mouth and has (marks) of two discs on it.

2. The Saṅkarṣaṇa (stone) is red (in colour) and has marks

---

1. The measurement indicated by this word is not quite clear. Probably equal to two angulas.

2. The śālagramā stones obtained from the beds of Gaṅgākī river in Nepal are associated with the worship of Viṣṇu. The different stones bearing different marks are taken to represent different forms of Viṣṇu.
of two discs (and is considered as) excellent. The Pradymuna (stone) has many holes, elongated and is blue (coloured).

3. The Aniruddha (stone) is yellow (in colour) and has the mark of a lotus. It is circular (in shape) and has two or three rays. The Nārāyaṇa (stone) is black (in colour) with an elevated and deep hole.

4. The Paramēṣṭi (stone) (has the marks of) the lotus and disc. It is perforated at the back and has dots on the surface. The Viṣṇu (stone) has a big disc (mark). It is black (in colour). It has a line in the middle part. It is of the shape of a mace.

5-6. The Nṛsiṁha (stone) is tawny. It has (the mark of) a big disc and five dots. The Varāha (stone) is of the shape of the female divinity. It has unequal discs. It is of the colour of sapphire. It is large with the marks of three lines and is good. The Kūrma (stone) has an elevated hinder part with circular lines and is black (in colour).

7. The Hayagriva (stone) has a line of the shape of a good. It is blue (coloured) and is dotted. The Vaikunṭha (stone) has (the mark of) a disc and lotus. It has the radiance of a gem. It has tail-shaped lines.

8. The Matsya stone is long and has three dots. It is crystal-line-coloured and is well formed. The Śrīdhara (stone) has a garland of wild flowers and five lines and is circular.

9. The Vāmana (stone) is circular and is very short. It is blue (coloured) and has a dot. The Trivikrama (stone) is black (coloured). It has a line on the right and a dot on the left side.

10. The Ananta (stone) has the mark of the hood of a serpent, it has variegated colours and manifold forms. The Dāmodara (stone) is big and has a disc in the middle part with two-minute dots.

11. The Sudarśana (stone) has (the mark of) a disc. The Lakṣmīnārāyaṇa (stone) (is that which has the marks of) two discs. The Acyuta (stone) (has the marks of) three discs. Or the Trivikrama (stone) may have (the marks of) three discs.

12. The Janārđuna (stone) has (the marks of) four discs. The Vaśudeva (stone) has (the marks of) five discs. The Pradymna (stone) has (the marks of) six discs. The Sāṅkarṣaṇa (stone) has (the marks of) seven discs.
13. The Puruṣottama (stone) has (the marks) of eight discs. The Navarūpa form has the marks of nine discs. (The stone representing) the ten manifestations (of Viṣṇu) (is marked) with ten (discs). The Aniruddha form (is marked) with eleven (discs). The Dvādaśatman (class of tālāgrāma) (is marked) by twelve (discs). (One is deemed to be) the Ananta (class of tālāgrāma) (if it has) more (discs) than these.

CHAPTER FORTYSEVEN

Mode of worshipping Šālagrama

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the mode of worshipping the šālagrama marked with discs for (the sake of) accomplishment. The worship of Hari (in the šālagrama) is of three kinds—
   (i) kāmyā performed for gaining particular benefit
   (ii) akāmyā performed with disinterestedness about the benefits
   (iii) subhayātmiṅka, that is of the nature of both of them.

2. (The worship) of the five (manifestations of Viṣṇu) (such as) the Fish, etc., is, either kāmyā or ubhayātmiṅka. (The worship of the manifestations) of the Boar Man-lion and Dwarf forms (of Viṣṇu is) for emancipation.

3-6. Listen to the three-fold worship of the šālagrama endowed with discs. The excellent worship is that performed without desiring for the fruits. The worship with desire for the fruits is the last (in the rank). The worship of an image is mediocre. In a circular lotus placed on a rectangular seat, having assigned the praṇava (the syllable Om) to the heart and having assigned (the sacred syllables) to the parts of the body and having shown three mudrās (positions of fingers in the practice of worship), the preceptor should be worshipped outside the circle. The attendant gods (gaṇas) should be worshipped on the west. Dhātṛ on the north-west, Vidhātṛ on the south-west, the Kartā and Hartā on the south and north, Viśvaksena (Viṣṇu) should be worships-

1. The text does not specify the names of other manifestations.
ed in the north-east, and Kṣetrapālaka (the guardian deity) on the south-east.

7. The Vedas, Rgveda etc. (should be worshipped) in the east etc. (The serpent) Ananta (which is) the support of the earth, the seat of worship, the lotus, the three orbs—sun, moon and fires (should be worshipped).

8. The seat (should consist) of twelve letters¹ (forming the mystic formula of the God). Having placed (the God) there, the stone should be worshipped with the individual syllables and the whole of the sacred syllable in order.

9-10. Then one should worship with the vedic sacred syllables accomplished by the syllables such as the gāyatri, etc. and pranava on the east and other directions. Then the three mudrās of the Viṣvaksena (Viṣṇu), the disc and the Kṣetrapāla should be shown. This is the first variety of the worship of śālagrāma. Then I shall describe the one with no merits.

11. One should draw a circle as before with sixteen radii and with a lotus. One should then worship the preceptor and others with a conch, disc, mace and sword.

12. The bow and the arrows (should be placed) in the east and the north. The seat should be placed with the vedic (syllables). The stone should be placed with the (sacred) twelve syllables² of the lord. Listen to the third variety of worship.

13. One should draw a lotus having eight radii and worship the preceptor and others as before. Having offered the seat with the eight sacred letters³ one should place the stone with the same (formula). One should worship ten times with that (formula). It is then accomplished by gāyatri etc.

CHAPTER FORTYEIGHT

Adoration of twentyfour forms of Viṣṇu

The Lord said :

1. Keśava of the form of (syllable) Om bears the lotus,

1. Om namaḥ bhagavate vāsudevaḥ.  
2. See the previous note.  
3. Om namaḥ vāsudevaḥ.
conch, disc and mace. Narāyaṇa (bears) the conch, lotus, mace and disc. Circumambulation to Him.

2. Then I salute Mādhava, who bears the mace, disc, conch and lotus. Govinda wields the disc, the Kaumodakī (name of a mace), lotus and conch.

3. Viṣṇu, the bearer of the disc, the mace, lotus and conch is the bestower of emancipation. I salute Madhusūḍana, who bears the conch, disc, lotus and mace.

4. (I prostrate) with devotion (at the feet of) Trivikrama who bears the lotus, mace, disc and conch. May Vāmana, the bearer of the conch, disc, mace and lotus protect me always.

5. Śrīdhara who holds a lotus, disc, bow and also the conch yields emancipation. Hṛṣikeśa wields the mace, disc, lotus and conch. May He protect us.

6. And Padmanābha (is one) who yields boons and who holds the conch, lotus, disc and mace, (I salute him). Dāmodara (is one) who holds a lotus, conch, mace and disc. I salute him.

7. May Vāsudeva, who wields a mace, conch, disc and lotus (protect) the universe. May Saṅkarṣaṇa, who holds a mace, conch, lotus and disc protect us.

8. Lord Pradyumna is one who holds a mace, disc, conch and mace as well as a lotus. May Aniruddha, who wields the disc, mace, conch and lotus protect us.

9. May Puruṣottama, the Lord of celestials, who holds disc, lotus, conch and mace (protect you). May Adhokṣaja who wields lotus, mace, conch and disc protect you.

10. I salute that Lord Nṛsiṁha, who wields disc, lotus, mace and conch. May Acyuta, who holds mace, lotus, disc and conch, protect you all.

11. So also (may) Upendra, who is of the form of a child and (who holds) the disc and lotus, (protect you). And (may) Janārđana, who wields lotus, disc, conch and mace (protect you).

12. May Hari, who holds conch, lotus, disc as well as (mace) kaumodakī yield me enjoyment and emancipation. May Kṛṣṇa, who holds conch, mace, lotus and disc give enjoyment and emancipation.
13. The first manifestation was that of Vāsudeva. Then Saṅkarṣaṇa manifested. Pradyumna manifested from Saṅkarṣaṇa. Aniruddha appeared from Pradyumna.

14. Each one of the (above) forms was divided into three forms such as Keśava and others. One who reads or hears this hymn consisting of twelve letters on the twenty-four forms gets free from impurity and gets all things.

CHAPTER FORTY-NINE

*Characteristics of forms of ‘Fish’ etc. of Viṣṇu*

*The Lord said:*

1. I shall describe to you the characteristics of the ten manifestations (of Viṣṇu) beginning with the Fish. The Fish (form of Viṣṇu) should resemble a fish. The Tortoise (form) should resemble a tortoise.

2. The terrestrial boar (manifestation) should have a human body and as carrying a mace and other (weapons) in the right hand, and the conch, (the goddess) Lakṣmī or a lotus in the left.

3. Or (the goddess) (is represented) as resting on the left elbow and the earth and (the serpent) Ananta at the feet. The installation of the figure secures for a person a kingdom and (such a person) gets across the ocean of mundane existence.

4. The Man-lion image (should be represented) as having a wide open mouth and having the killed demon (Hiraṇya-kaśipu) on the left thigh. His chest should wear a garland and (his arms) should hold disc and mace.

5. The Dwarf-form may hold an umbrella and a stick or have four arms. The figure of Paraśurāma may hold the bow and arrow, a sword and an axe.

6. (The figure of) Rāma should have the bow, arrow, sword, conch or two hands or may have four arms holding a mace and plough.

7. The plough may be provided on the left half (upper arm) and the auspicious conch on the lower arm. The mace may be
provided on the right half (upper arm) and the auspicious disc on the lower arm.

8. The figure of Buddha (should be made) as calm, having long ears, white complexion, wearing a cloth, and seated on a lotus with its petals upwards and as conferring favour and protection.

9. (The figure of) Kalki is (to be represented as) a twice-born endowed with a bow and quiver and as destroying the foreigners. Or (he should be represented as) seated on the horse and endowed with a sword, conch, disc and arrow.

10. I shall describe the characteristics of nine forms of Viṣṇu commencing with Vāsudeva. The mace (is placed) on the right half (upper arm) and the excellent disc on the left half (upper arm).

11. The image of Vāsudeva may be made as before or as having four hands or two hands, one holding a conch and the other as conferring boons and having Brahmā and Iśa (Śiva) always on either side.

12. (The figure of) Balarāma (is represented) as holding a plough, mace, club and lotus. (The image of) Pradyumna (is represented as having) thunderbolt and conch on the right arm and the bow in the left arm.

13. Or Pradyumna (is represented) as having the mace resting on the navel with pleasure or holding the bow and arrow. Aniruddha may be (represented as) having four arms. In the same way Lord Nārāyaṇa (may also be represented).

14. (The image of) Brahmā is (represented as having) four faces, four hands, big belly, long beards, matted hair, and (having) swan as the vehicle in front (of him).

15. (There should be) a rosary and a ladle on the right hand and a water-pot and vessel to hold the sacrificial clarified butter. Sarasvatī and Sāvitṛ (consorts of Brahmā) (should be placed) on the left and right sides.

16. (The image of) Viṣṇu (is represented) as having eight hands, Garuḍa (the vehicle), (holding) a sword, mace, and arrow in the right hand and as conferring gifts and (holding) the bow and mace in the left hand.

17. (The figure of) Narasiṁha (is represented) (as having) four hands holding the conch and disc and piercing (the body) of the mighty demon (Hiraṇyakaśiptu).
18-22. (The figure of) Varāha (is endowed with) four arms holding the (serpent) Śeṣa in (one of) the hands and the earth in the left (hand) and (his consort) Kamalā (Lakṣmī). The earth should be made as resting at the feet and (goddess) Lakṣmī as seated at the feet. Trailokyamohana (one who stupefies the three worlds) (should be represented as riding) the Tārkhya (the eagle-vehicle) and possess eight hands, holding the sword, mace and goad in the right hand and the conch, bow, mace and the noose in the left hand. (Images of) Lakṣmī and Sarasvatī should be endowed with lotus and lute (respectively). Then (the form of) Viśvarūpa (of Viṣṇu) (should be endowed) with the club, noose, spear and arrow in the right hand and conch, bow, mace, noose, tomara (javelin), plough, axe, staff, sword and leather sling in the left hand.

23-24. The Harihara (Śiva and Viṣṇu) form of Viṣṇu (should be placed) on the right or left (side), (being endowed with) twenty hands, four faces and three eyes. He should either be lying on his left or reclining on the water. (He should further be represented) as his leg being held by the goddess Śrī (Lakṣmī). He should also be shown as being attended to by (the female divinities) Vimalā and others. He should also have the four-faced (Brahmā) in the navel-lotus.

25. The form of Viṣṇu bearing the marks of Rudra and Keśava should hold a spear and sword in the right hand and the mace and disc in the other and be in the company of Gaurī and Lakṣmī (the consorts of Śiva and Viṣṇu).

26. The Hayaśiras (horse-headed) form of Viṣṇu (should be represented) as holding the conch, disc, mace and the Vedas. The left foot should rest on (the serpent) Śeṣa and the right on the back of tortoise.

27. The form of Dattātreya may have two arms, the goddess Śrī (Lakṣmī) being seated on the left lap. The Viśvaksena form of Viṣṇu (may hold) a disc, mace, plough and conch.
CHAPTER FIFTY

Characteristics of an image of the goddess

The Lord said:

1-5. (The image of) Caṇḍī may have twenty hands and may hold the spear, sword, dart, disc, noose, club, đamaru (a small drum) and spike in the left hands and also (show) protective posture (and) the snake as the noose, club, axe, goad, bow, bell, banner, mace, mirror, and iron mace in the (right) hands. Or (the figure of) Caṇḍī is made to have ten hands, with the buffalo placed below with its head fully severed and the demon as issuing forth from (its) neck with rage and brandishing his weapon, holding spike in the hand, vomitting blood, his hairs (stained) with blood and blood dripping out from the eyes (forming) a garland (on the chest), being devoured by the lion and well-bound by the noose in the neck. (The goddess is represented as) resting her right foot on the lion and the left foot on the demon underneath.

6-12. This form of Caṇḍikā, the destroyer of enemies (is made as) having three eyes and endowed with weapons. (This) Durgā is to be worshipped with the nine elements in order in a diagram of nine lotuses from her own form at the beginning, centre and the eastern and other (directions). (The image should be made as) possessing eighteen arms (carrying) a human head, club, mirror, tarjant (a kind of weapon), bow, banner and a little drum in the right hand and the noose, spear, mace, trident, thunderbolt, sword, goad and dart in the left hand. The others (Rudracaṇḍā and other goddesses) should be endowed with the same weapons in their sixteen hands except the little drum and tarjani (a kind of weapon).

The nine (goddesses) commencing with Rudracaṇḍā are Rudracaṇḍā, Pracaṇḍā, Caṇḍogrā, Caṇḍanāyikā, Caṇḍā, Caṇḍavatī, Caṇḍarūpā, Aticaṇḍikā and Ugracaṇḍā stationed at the centre. (They are made to be) coloured as the rocanā (yellow pigment), red, black, blue, white, purple, yellow and white and as riding the lion. Then the buffalo as a human (form) should be held by the hair by the nine (forms) of Durgā holding weapons.
13. They are in the ālīḍha posture. They have to be established for the increase of progeny; as also (the forms) Gaurī, Caṇḍikā and others (as well as the forms) Kuṇḍī, Akṣara-rādā (and) Agnidhrīk.

14-15. She is the same as Rambhā. (She is) accomplished and devoid of fire. (She is) also Lalitā. (She) holds the severed head along with the neck in the left (hand) and a mirror in the second hand.

(The image of) Saubhāgyā (is made) as holding fruits in the folded palms on the right side. (The image of) Lakṣmī holds the lotus in the right hand and the triphala (bilva fruit) in the left.

16. (The image of) Sarasvatī (should be made as holding) a book, rosary and lute in the hands. (The image of) Jāhnavī (the river Ganges) (is represented) as holding a pot and flower in the hand (and standing) on the crocodile and of white complexion.

17. (The image of the river) Yamunā is worshipped as mounted on the tortoise and as holding a pot in the hand and of dark complexion. (The image of) Tumburu is represented as white (in colour), holding a lute and trident and riding a bull.

18-19. The four-faced Brāhma (the female-energy of Brahmā) (is represented) as of fair complexion, riding a swan and as carrying a rosary, different vessels such as surā and kuṇḍa in the left hand. Śāṅkarī is represented as white, (seated) on a bull holding the bow and arrow in the right hand and the disc and the bow in the left hand. Kaumārī (is represented) as red in colour, riding the peacock and having two arms, holding the spears.

20. (The form of) Lakṣmī should hold the disc, and conch in the right (hand) (and) the mace and lotus in the left (hand). (The form of) Vārāhi should be mounted on the buffalo and hold the stick, conch, sword and goad.

21-25. (The image of) Aindrī conferring success should be represented as having thousand eyes and holding the thunder-bolt in the left hand.

1. The posture in shooting, in which the right knee is advanced and the left leg is held back.
Cāmuṇḍā may have three eyes deeply sunken, a skeleton form devoid of flesh, erectly standing hair, emaciated belly, clad in tigerskin and holding a skull and spear in the left hand and a trident and scissor in the right standing on the dead body of a man and wearing a garland of bones. (The image of) Vināyaka should have a human body, big belly, elephant face, big trunk and sacred thread. The mouth measuring 7 kalās in breadth while the trunk should measure 36 finger-breadths in length. The neck should be 12 kalās in girth and 10 kalās in height. The throat-region should be 36 finger (in length). The space about the region of anus should have the breadth of half a finger.

26. (The region of) the navel and thigh should be of twelve (fingers) as also the leg from the ankle to the knee and the feet. He should be represented as holding his own tusk made into an axe in the right hand and the ladduṇa (a ball of sweet) and lotus flower in the left.

27. (The image of) Skanda, the lord (of the universe) also known as Śākha and Viśākha, (is represented) as a boy possessing two arms and riding a peacock (with the images of) Sumukhi and Vidālākṣī.

28-29. The god may be represented as having a single face or six faces, six hands or twelve hands carrying the spear and a cock in the right hand. In the village or the forest (it should have) two arms. (He should bear) the spear, arrow, noose, nistriṃśa (sword), goad and tarjani (a kind of weapon) in the six right hands and the spear in the left hand.

30-31. (The image of) Rudracarcikā (the manifestation of) the goddess may have a bow adorned by the plume of peacock, club, banner, protective posture, cock, skull, scissors, trident and noose in the right and left hands. (She should also be) clad in the elephant hide, with her leg raised up and the little drum placed on the head.

32. Hence she (is known as) Rudrāmuṇḍā, the goddess of dancing and one who is dancing. This (goddess herself), having four faces and in the sitting posture (is known as) Mahālakṣīmi.

1. The consorts of Skanda. The two names mean good-faced and cat-eyed respectively.
33-34. (The goddess) having ten hands and three eyes (holding) (different) weapons, sword and damaru (little drum) in the right hand and the bell, club, staff with a skull at one end and trident in the left (hand) and eating men, horses, buffaloes and elephants held in the hand is called Siddhacāmuṇḍā.

35. That goddess accomplishes everything and is (known as) Siddhayogesvarī. She is also represented in another form endowed with the noose and goad and red (in complexion).

36. (The goddess) Bhairavī who has an embodiment of beauty is endowed with twelve arms. These are (all) (spoken as) fierce (forms) arising from the cremation ground. The above are remembered as the eight forms of the goddess.

37. (The goddess) Kṣamā (Forbearance) (should be) surrounded by jackals, old, having two arms, and widely opened mouth. (The goddess) Kṣemaṅkarī (Benevolent) may have protruding teeth and be resting her knees on the ground.

38. The wives of semi-gods should be made to have long and motionless eyes. The Śākinīs (female attendants on Goddess Durgā) should be made to have oblique vision. The Maḥāramyas should have yellow eyes. The (images of) nymphs should always be made beautiful.

39. (The form of) Nandiśa the bull, the door-keeper (of the goddess), should carry a rosary and a trident. (The image of) Maḥākāla (a form of Śiva as the destroyer) may have a sword, human skull, trident and club.

40. (The form of) Bhṛīgin (an attendant of Śiva) should have an emaciated body. Kuśmāṇḍa (another attendant of Śiva) should have a stout and dwarf form dancing. Vīrabhadra and other attendants (of Śiva) should have ears and faces of elephants, cows, etc.

41. Ghanṭākarna (an attendant of Śiva) form should have eighteen hands crushing the accrued sin, (holding weapons) thunderbolt, sword, club, disc, arrow, mace, goad and hammer in the right hand and tarjant (a weapon), club, dart, human skull, noose, bow, bell and axe on the left and a trident in the (remaining) two hands and wearing a garland of bells and crushing the eruptive diseases.
CHAPTER FIFTYONE

Characteristics of the images of the Sun and other planets

The Lord said:

1. (The image of) the Sun (should be made) to ride a chariot having one wheel and seven horses. (He must) hold two lotuses, ink-stand, pen and a staff in his right hand.

2. Piṅgala, an attendant and gate-keeper of the Sun (should be placed) on the left with the mace in his hand. (Sun-god) should have female attendants bearing chowries (fly-flappers) and the pale-looking consort by his side.

3. Or (the image of) the Sun should be made as riding a horse alone. The guardian deities of different quarters should duly be endowed with weapons, holding two lotuses (in hands) and bestowing boons.

4. (The images of) Agni and other gods bearing the club, trident, disc and lotus should be placed in different directions (around). (The images of) the forms of Sun, commencing with Aryamā are represented as possessing four arms and placed in a diagram of twelve petals.

5-6. Varuṇa, Śūrya, Sahasrāṃśu (one who has thousand rays), Dhātr, Ṭapana, Śāviṭr, Gabhastika, Ravi, Parjanya, Tvaṣṭṛ, Mitra (and) Viṣṇu are his different names as he moves over the zodiacal signs commencing with the Aries in the course of months commencing with Mārgaśīrṣa and ending with Kārttika.¹

7-9. Their female energies known by the names—Idā, Suṣumna, Viśvārcis, Indu, Pramardinī, Praharṣaṇī, Mahākāli, Kapilā, Prabodhanī, Nilāmbarā, Ghanāntasthā and Amṛtā, and placed at the ends of petals are of black, red, pale red, yellow, pale yellow, white, brown, yellow, green, white, grey and blue.

10. Similar colours are given to Varuṇa and others placed at the tips of petals. The form of Tejas (effulgence) should be represented as fierce, extremely crooked, possessing two arms holding a lotus and sword.

¹ These two correspond to the months December-January and November-December.
11. The form of Moon should be represented as holding a sacrificial pitcher and rosary. (The image of) Mars should be holding a spear and rosary. (The figure of) Mercury (should be) holding the bow and rosary in his hands. (The form of) Jupiter (should be) holding the sacrificial pitcher and rosary.

12. (The image of) Venus may be holding the sacrificial pitcher and rosary. (That of) Saturn should be endowed with a girdle of bells. (While that of) Rāhu (the ascending node of the moon considered as a planet) (is represented as) holding half of the lunar disc, (that of) Ketu (the descending node of the moon considered as a planet) (is represented as) holding the sword and lamp.

13. (The serpents) Ananta, Takṣaka, Karka, Padma, Mahābja and Śaṅkha are all (represented as) having hooded heads with great radiance.

14. (The image of) Indra is endowed with thunder-bolt and as seated on an elephant, (that of) Agni as riding a goat and holding a spear, (that of) Yama as on a buffalo and carrying a club and (that of) Nirṛti as holding a sword.

15. (The image of) Varuṇa (ocean god) is made as seated on a crocodile and as holding a noose, (that of) Vāyu (wind god) (as riding) an antelope and holding a banner, (that of) Kubera (god of wealth) as seated on a sheep and bearing a mace, and (that of) Īśāna (as seated) on a bull and having a matted hair.

16. (The images) of the guardian deities of the quarters of the world are endowed with two arms. (The celestial architect) Viśvakarman (should be represented) as holding a rosary. (The figure of) Hanūmat (monkey, devoted to Rāma) may be holding the thunderbolt in his hand and pounding the earth with his feet.

17. (The semi-divine beings) Kinnaras may be (represented) as holding lutes in their arms and the Vidyādharas (semi-divine beings) as having garlands (and moving) in the sky. The goblins may be (represented) as having emaciated bodies and the vampires as deformed faces, the Guardians of the sites as having the tridents and the spirits of the dead people as lean and big-bellied.
CHAPTER FIFTY TWO

Characteristics of images of different forms of goddesses

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe (the characteristics) of the eight Yoginis (female attendants on Durgā) respectively residents of (the eight quarters) east to north-east. (The Yoginis) Akṣobhīyā, Rūkṣakarṇī, Rākṣasī, Kṛpanā and Akṣayā (reside in the east).


3. (The Yoginis) Hūtāśā, Viśālākṣī, Huṅkārā, Vaḍavāmukhī, Mahākrūrā, Krodhanā, Bhayaṅkarī and Mahānānā (are the residents of the south).

4. (The Yoginis) Sarvajñā, Taralā, Tārā, Rgvedā, Hayānanā, Sārā (khyā), Rudrāsaṅgrāhī, Śambarā and Tālajāṅghikā (occupy the south (-west).

5. Raktākṣī, Suprasiddhā, Vidyujjihvā, Karaṅkini, Mehanādā, Pracaṅdogrā, Kālakarṇī and Varapradā (are the inmates of the west).

6. Candrā, Candrāvali, Prapaṅcā, Pralayāntikā, Śiṣuvakatrā, Piśācī, Piśitāśā and Lolupā (dwell in the north-west).

7. Dhamanī, Tāpanī, Rāgni, Vikrātanā, Vāyuvegā, Bṛhatkukṣi, Vikrā and Viśvarūpikā (govern the north).

8. Yamajihvā, Jayanti, Durjayā, Jayantikā, Viḍālā, Revati, Pūtanā and Vijayāntikā (hold sway over the north-east).

9. (These Yoginis should be represented) as having eight arms (or) four arms, wielding weapons of their choice and yielding all benefits (on their votaries). (Lord) Bhairava may hold the arka plant (Calotropis Gigantea) in the hand and have the face like the knee or elbow bearing the matted hair and the Moon.

10. Kṛttivāsas (should be represented) as holding on one side the sword, goad, axe and arrow and offering protection to the universe and a bow, trident, club with a skull at the top and noose on the other.

11. Or he shall be having five faces and be wearing the elephant’s hide and adorned by the serpents. He shall be seated on the dead body. He must be worshipped in the midst of the
mother goddesses.¹

12. One has to worship him being endowed with the letters of the alphabet up to the letter 'ra' and with (his mantra) having six constituents and the eight long vowel mantras.

13. (He is also to be contemplated upon) as established in the wicks of the flame in the house as endowed with golden ornaments and the nāda, bindu and indu² and making the body of the divine mother and the lord radiant.

14. Vīrabhadra (attendant of Śiva) (is represented) as having four faces, seated on a bull in front of the mother (goddesses). (Goddess) Gaurī (consort of Śiva) (is represented) as having two arms and three eyes as endowed with a spear and mirror.

15. (Goddess) Lalitā (a form of Durgā) (should be represented) as having four arms (holding) a spear, a small pitcher, (and another) pitcher (in the hands) and showing boon-conferring hands. (She should) be seated on the lotus. (She should also) be endowed with a mirror, a small stick for applying collyrium and Skanda and Gaṇa (Gaṇeśa).

16. (Goddess) Caṇḍikā may (be represented) as having ten hands having a sword, spear, disc (and) dart in the right (hand) and the magical noose, shield, pike, axe, and bow in the left (hand). (She must) be riding a lion with the buffalo (demon) having been slain with (her) spear in front of her.

CHAPTER FIFTYTHREE

Characteristics of the liṅga (parabolic representation of Śiva)

The Lord said:

1-2. O Lotus-born (Brahman) I shall describe to you the characteristics of the liṅga and other things. Listen. Having marked a rectangular (block of stone) as divided into two parts

1. They are Brāhma, Māheśvari, Caṇḍi, Vārāhi, Vaśāvari, Kaumāri, Cāmuṇḍā and Garciā.

2. These are the sound, dot and crescent, making up the Praṇava or Om.
lengthwise, the lower part again being divided into eight parts and three parts of these divisions being left out, the remaining (block) formed by five parts should be divided breadthwise into three parts and the three (gods) should be assigned therein.

3. This is spoken as representing the forms of Brahma, Visṇu and Śiva (among) which (the last one) is larger (than the other two parts). Half of the figure is marked at the angular points in the square.

4. An octagonal (block) known as the part of Visṇu is certainly obtained (thus). Then a polygon of sixteen sides is made and then a polygon of thirty-two sides.

5. Having made a polygon of sixty-four sides, the circular shape is accomplished. Then the excellent spiritual teacher should chisel the head portion of the emblem.

6. The breadth of the liṅga may be divided into eight parts. An umbrella-shaped top portion (of the liṅga) is got by discarding half of this length.

7. A liṅga which has a breadth equal to three-fourth of its length bestows all the desired benefits.

8. The pillar (part of the emblem) should be a quarter of the length (of the emblem) in the case of those worshipped by the celestials. Listen now (the narration) of the characteristics of all liṅgas.

9. The wiseman should divide the liṅga measuring 16 aṅgulas into 6 parts through the central line up to the Brahman and Rudra parts.

10. The spaces in between two such lines of division should measure eight yavas each in the first two cases, each latter measuring a yava less than the preceding one.

11. Having divided the lower part into three parts, one part should be left out. Having divided the (remaining) two parts into eight parts, the three upper ones (of these divisions) should be left aside.

12. Those (three sections) above the five divisions should be rotated and the markings lengthened. Having left out one part their union should be brought about.

13. These are the general characteristics of the liṅga described by me. I shall (now) describe the most general (characteristics) of the pedestals.
14. After having known the commencing portion of the linga and height, the part (belonging) to Brahman should be well placed by the learned person on the stone (pedestal).

15. Then having known the height (of the linga) the different dimensions of the pedestal should be made. The base (of the linga) should be twice the height and length commensurate with that of the linga.

16. The central part of the pedestal should be hewn and divided into three parts. Its breadth should be one-sixth part of its length.

17. The girth should measure one-third part of its breadth and the depth (of cavity) should be equal to that of the girth. It should be sloping gradually.

18. Or the depth (of the cavity) should be one sixteenth part of that of the girth. The height of the base should be deviated.

19. One part of the base should remain imbedded in the ground. One part of it will be (the height of) the stool proper. Three such parts (will be the height) of the neck portion. The first step should be one such part.

20. The second step should be of two such parts in height while the remaining steps should have a height of such a single part until one reaches the neck portion step by step.

21. Outlets to the breadth of such a part should be set apart on each one of the steps till the last one. They should be cut into three parts by the three outlets.

22. It should measure a tip of the finger in breadth at the base and one-sixth (of a finger) at their ends. Their beds should be a little inclined towards the eastern side. These are considered to be the general characteristics of the linga along with the pedestal.

CHAPTER FIFTYFOUR

The dimensions of different varieties of the linga

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the measurement of the linga in a different way. Listen, I shall (now) speak about the lingas
made of salt, (and) ghee (which when worshipped) increases (one's) intellect.

2. A linga made of cloth (is worshipped) for the sake of wealth. It is known as temporal. The one made of earth is either burnt or half burnt of which the former is better.

3. Then, one made of wood is meritorious. One made of stone is more meritorious than that made of wood. (The linga) made of pearl is more meritorious than that of stone. Then (relatively merit-worthy) are the lingas made of iron, and gold.

4. The lingas made of silver, copper and brass yield enjoyment and release from bondage. The lingas made of red lead and mercury are excellent and confer enjoyment and release from bondage.

5. The installation of a linga on the earth made of mercury and iron etc or studded with gems increases one's glory and grants success as desired.

6. If desired one can build temples and bases to these (emblems) on the left side. One may worship the image of the sun cast on the mirror.

7. Hara should be worshipped everywhere. The worship gets completed only (by the worship) of the linga. A linga made of stone or wood should be of a cubit length.

8. The movable linga should be of the size of a finger and encircled by the adytum. The linga worshipped in the house should be of the size of one to fifteen fingers.

9. The lingas are classified into three groups according to the measure of the doorway or into nine groups according to the measure of the adytum. These lingas should be worshipped in one's residence.

10. Thus there are thirty-six lingas in the first class, thirty-six in the second class and thirty-six in the third class.

11. Thus totally there would be one hundred and eight lingas. The lingas (measuring) one to five fingers (known as) the short are said to be movable.

12. The movable lingas measuring six to ten fingers are known as middle. Those measuring eleven to fifteen fingers are known as the best.

13. (Those made) of excellent gems (should measure) six fingers. (Those made) of other gems (should measure)
nine fingers. The golden ones (should be) twelve (fingers). The rest of the līṅgas (should be) fifteen (fingers).

14. The four sets of corners from the top should be successively cut into four or sixteen equal sides, and those again into thirtytwo and sixty-four (in turn so as to make it a polygon of sixty-four equal sides).

15. The two sides being thus lopped off, the neck of a solid līṅga should be twentysix parts from the rectangular space at its foot.

16. (The face of the līṅga) should gradually be decreasing by four, six and eight parts from its base (and similarly) the middle part of the līṅga should be gradually less than the height at its beginning by a foot.

17. That which is equal to half (the size of) the adytum is (said to be) the lowest (variety of) līṅga. That which is fifteen (fingers in length) is the excellent. Seven equal lines should be drawn in the central portion of these līṅgas.

18. In this way there would be nine lines. The middle (variety of līṅga) would have five lines. The length of the līṅgas should be nine fingers. The opposite side (should be) separated by two intermediate links.

19. The līṅga is measured out cubit by cubit till it would be nine hands (length). The līṅga is of three kinds—inferior, mediocre and superior.

20-22. A wiseman should mark three līṅgas at the centre of every līṅga foot by foot at fourteen (places) by a fixed measure of length of the door or the adytum. Four līṅgas representing Śiva, Viṣṇu, Bṛhaspati proportionately should be marked by the breadth. The līṅga should be (shaped) long to represent the three forms.

23. The līṅga should have a circumference of four, eight, eight (inches) representing the three qualities. One should make the līṅgas of such lengths as one desires.

24. One should divide the figure (marked) by the banners, celestial gods, elements or cocks. One should know the good or bad from the inches left over.

25. The banners etc., the crows, lions, elephants and goats are excellent. The others are auspicious. Among the primary notes of Indian gamut, the first one, second one and the fifth one confer good.
26-27. Among the elements, the earth is auspicious. Among the fires, the consecrated fire (from the household’s perpetual fire) is auspicious. Half of the said length having been divided in order into seven, eight, five, nine and five parts there would be symmetrical representation of Siva, Vishnu and Brahman.

28. The fifth one is known as the Vardhamana. There would be two kinds based on the increase of breadth and length. Many kinds are described according to Visvakarma (the divine architect).

29. The adhya class would be of three kinds on account of the size. Measured by the barley grains it would be eight parts, by the arm it would be three parts. The last one endowed equally is known as jina.

30-31. (There would be) twenty-five līṅgas in the first (variety) which are worshipped by the celestials. Then being divided into thirty-five there would be 14000 and 1400 varieties. Thus (we have) the eight aṅgula’s extent from the nine cubit adytum.

32. One has to mark the angular points by means of threads placed at the angular and middle of angular points. Having made the expansion from the middle, three parts should be fixed from the middle.

33. There would be eight angular parts above the division. Two angular parts represent the part of Siva. From the foot to the knee portion (of the līṅga) is Brahmā. (From the knee) to the navel is Vishnu.

34. (From the navel) upto the head is the part of Siva. Similarly, it is in the case of distinct and indistinct forms. In the līṅga of five parts, the head part is said to be circular.

35. The images (may be) of the shape of an umbrella, cock or crescent moon. I shall describe the merits of the four varieties in each (class) differing on account of one’s option.

36. The head portion (of the līṅga) should be divided into eight parts. The first part of the longitudinal portion should be divided into four parts.

37-39. There (should be) four lines successively drawn in order to divide into parts. We have by one part the lotus, the one called viśāla by cutting off, the śrivatsa by thinning out and the satrukti by elision of the fourth part. In the sarvasama class the
top portion is the excellent and the cock-shaped in the sura class among the liṅga of four parts. The top portion of the anḍdi has been described. You listen to (the characteristics of) the crescent of the top.

40. At a corner of a part (there should be) the charming axis (represented) by four parts deficient by one part. By the elision of two, three and four parts in order, (one gets) the full, crescent moon and lotus shape.

41. Listen then to (the description of forms having) four or three faces or one face and mukhaliṅga. The part to be worshipped is to be made set with nine parts.

42-43. Having left out twelve parts for the arms and eyes, as before, the head, forehead, nose, face, chin, neck are then to be made. Having covered by the hands, the arms and eyes (are made) with four parts proportionate to the measurement of image.

44. The face should be made equal to one-eighth part of the breadth. I have described the four-faced form. Listen! The three-faced form is described now.

45. The ear and feet are made. One has to mark the forehead etc. for that. Then the arms should be made with four parts quite strong.

46. The projection of the frontispiece (should be) one-eighth of the breadth. One face has to be made such as to have beautiful eye on the eastern side.

47. It should be made round at the forehead, nose, face and neck. By one-fifth from the arm one should make it round less by one’s arm length.

48. It is good to have the projections in the frontispiece as one-sixth of the breadth for all the mukhaliṅgas whether it is trapuṣa or kukkuṭa (?)
CHAPTER FIFTYFIVE

*The characteristics of the pedestal*

_The Lord said:_

1. I shall describe (the characteristics of) the pedestal of images. They have the same length as (the height) of the image and have breadth half (the height) of (the image).

2. Or the breadth should be half or one-third of the measure of the height. The girdle should be equal to one-third of its breadth.

3. The cavity should be of the same measure and should be inclined towards the posterior part. A quarter of the breadth (should be left out) for the canal as outlet.

4. (The width) of the forepart (of the channel) should be half of the breadth of the base. The water-course should be one-third of the breadth (of the base).

5. Or else the length of the *liṅga* is said to be equal to half (the length) of the base or equal to the length (of the base).

6. The height (of the pedestal) should be divided into sixteen parts as before. The lower six divisions should be made to comprise two parts. The neck should be three parts.

7. The foundation, projections, joint, seat and other remaining parts should each comprise one part. This will hold good in the case of ordinary images.

8. The door-way (leading) to the image is said to be proportionate to the door-way of the temple. The canopy over the image should be endowed with elephants and tigers.

9. The pedestal of (the image of) Hari also should always be made beautiful. The measures (laid down) for the images of Viṣṇu shall apply to (the images of) all gods. Those measures set forth for the image of Lakṣmī shall apply to all (images of) the goddesses.
CHAPTER FIFTYSIX

Five divisions of installation:

The Lord said:

1. I shall now describe the five divisions of an installation. The image is the embodiment of the supreme being, the real principle, the pedestal is the symbol of nature or the Goddess Lakṣmī. The installation is the union of the two.

2-3. Hence, the installation is done by men who desire to have their wishes fulfilled. The officiating priest (has to arrange) sheds (measuring) eight, sixteen or twenty (cubits) in front of the temple for bathing, the pitchers, and things required for the sacrifice by extending the side lines of the adytum.

4. The auspicious sacrificial platform should be made ready with one third (or) half (of the above space). It should be decked with pitchers big and small and canopies etc.

5. All the materials (to be used in the rite) should be cleansed with pañcagavya (the five things extracted from a cow). The priest should adorn (himself with ornaments). Having contemplated his own self as (lord) Viṣṇu, he should begin worship.

6. The expert idol-worshippers should be established in front of each pit (intended for the rite). (They should be endowed) with rings, bracelets and other things.

7. Logs of the pippala, udumbara, vata trees (should be planted) at the doorways of the place for the sake of arches. The place may be quadrangular, semi-circular, circular or lotus-shaped.

8. Log of the fig tree should adorn the east, of the subhadra the south, of the sukarma and suhotra the northern and western doorways respectively.

9. The pitchers having young sprouts of mango trees should be placed five cubits apart at the foot of each one of the supporting columns of the arches and be worshipped with the sacred syllables syomā pṛthivī.

10. The sudarsana (disc of Viṣṇu) should be placed at the top. A wise man has to make the banner five cubits long.

1. RV. 1.22.15.
11-12. It should be made sixteen fingers broad. O excellent among the celestials! the height should be seventeen cubits in the alternative. The pit should be duly reddish, flame-coloured, black, white, yellow, deep red, white and (again) white.

13-15. The presiding deities of the banners (hoisted) in the (quarters) east etc., such as Kumuda, Kumudākṣa, Puṇḍarīka, Vāmana, Saṅkarṣaṇa, Sarvanetra, Sumukha and Supra-tiṣṭhita, who are endowed with countless (divine) qualities should be worshipped. One hundred and eight pitchers resembling the ripe bimba fruit (in colour), not having black spots and having been filled with water and gold and having pieces of cloth around their necks should be placed outside the arches.

16. Pitchers should be placed at the east and other directions. Four pitchers should be placed at the corners of the sacrificial altar with the sacred syllable ājighra.

17. After having invoked Indra and others in the pitchers in the east etc. one should worship (Indra). O Indra, the lord of celestials, the wielder of thunderbolt, seated on the elephant you come.

18. (You) protect the eastern door in the company of celestials. May salutations be to you. After having worshipped (Indra) with the sacred syllable tṛālāram indraḥ, the wise man should invoke him.

19. O Agni! endowed with a trident, seated on a goat and possessing strength (you) come and accept my worship. You protect the south-east in the company of celestials. Salutations to you.

20-21. One should worship Agni with the sacred syllable agnir mūrddhāḥ. Salutations to Agni. O Yama! seated on the buffalo, wielding the mace, and possessing great strength (you) come. You protect the southern gate. O Yama! salutations to you. Yama should be propitiated with the sacred syllable vaivasvatam saṅgamanam.3

22-24. O Nairṛta! carrying a sword accompanied by an army and riding an animal, (you) come. Here is the offering and water for washing the feet. You guard the south-western

1. RV. 6.47.11.
2. RV. 8.44.16.
direction. Men should worship with the sacred syllable ēṣa te nirpte\(^1\) and with offerings. O Varuṇa! riding the crocodile, holding the noose and possessing great strength (you) come and protect the western doorway. Salutations to you. The preceptor should worship with (the sacred syllable) urumhi rājā varuṇam and offerings.

25-27. O Vāyu! endowed with strength, holding the banner, together with a vehicle you come. You guard the north-western direction in the company of celestials and Maruts (groups of celestial gods). Salutations to you. He should be worshipped with (the sacred syllables) vāla\(^2\) etc. or with 'Om! Salutations to Vāyu'. O Soma! you come with strength, wielding the mace and riding the vehicle. You protect the northern gate along with Kubera. Salutations to you. One should worship with (the sacred syllable) somam rājānam or 'Salutations to Soma'.

28-30. O Īśāna! (you) come along! possessor of strength, riding the bull. You guard the north-eastern direction of the ritual pavilion. Salutations to you. He should be worshipped with (the sacred syllable). īśīnarmasya\(^3\) or 'Salutations to Īśāna'. O Brahman! (you) come. Seated on a swan! Carrying the sacrificial vessel and ladle! You defend the direction above the sacrificial place, O unborn! Salutations to you. (One) should worship with (the sacred syllable) hiranya-garbha or 'Salutations to Brahman'.

31. O Ananta! you come. Endowed with the disc! Seated on the tortoise! Lord of the gaṇas. You protect the bottom (of the sacrificial place). O Lord Ananta! Salutations to you. One should worship with (the sacred syllable) 'Salutations to serpent' or 'Salutations to Ananta'.

CHAPTER FIFTYSEVEN

Consecration of pitchers

The Lord said:

1. One should do (the ceremony) of taking possession of

1. VS. 9.35.
2. RV. 10.186.1.
3. RV. 7.32.22.
the ground. One should scatter grains and mustard seeds uttering (the sacred syllable) ‘Nārasiṁha’ which destroys demons. One should sprinkle pañcagavya (the five things got from a cow).

2. Having worshipped the earth in the pitcher containing gems as well as Hari and his retinue, worship the eighteen pitchers therein with the sacred syllable of weapons.

3. The rice grains should be purified by an incessant shower (of water) and scattered around. The pitcher should be placed in their midst.

4-5. Lord Acyuta and (his consort) Śrī should again be worshipped in the pitcher (provided with) a cloth. The bed as well as the mattress should be spread on the kuta grass on a drawn circle with (the recitation of) the sacred syllable yoge yoge.¹ Lord Viṣṇu, the slayer of (the demon) Madhu and the lord of the three (divisions of the universe) and also the different lords of learning are worshipped on the bed.

6-7. Having worshipped Vāmana, Śrīdhara, Hṛṣikeśa, Padmanābha (different forms of Viṣṇu) in the north-west and other (corners) of the bathing place and the Dāmodara (form of Viṣṇu) in the north-east and having brought all the materials to the bathing pavilion they should be deposited in the four pitchers and the altar in the north-east.

8. These pitchers should be consecrated in the four quarters with the pitchers containing water for the consecration. The pitchers should be placed with due regard for the purpose of consecration.

9-11. The young sprouts from the vata udumbara, aśvattha, campaka, aśoka, śrīdruma, pālāśa, arjuna, plakṣa, kadamba, bakula and mango trees should be brought and put in the eastern pitcher. The lotus, rocana (a kind of yellow pigment), dūrvā grass, darbha grass, piṅjala (yellow orpiment), the flowers jāti and kunda, (pieces of) sandal wood, red sandal, white mustard, tagara (a kind of herb), and rice should be put on the southern one.

12-14. Silver and gold and earth from the two banks of rivers flowing into the ocean especially the earth from the (river) Jāhnavī (Ganges), the urine of a cow, barley grains, paddy and sesamum should be placed in another pitcher. The viśṇuparīti śyāmalatā, bhṛgārāja, satāvari, sahadevi, mahādevi, balā and yā-

¹. RV. 1.30.7.
ghni (?), the auspicious things are put in the other pitcher in the north-east.

15. The earth from an ant-hill obtained from seven (different places should be put in another pitcher. The sand from the Ganges and its water should be put in another pitcher.

16. The earth loosened by the boars, bulls, and elephants with their horns and tusks as well as earth from the root of the lotus and the kuśa grass should be placed in another pitcher.

17. One should put in another pitcher earth got from sacred places and hills. The flowers of nāgakeśara and kāśmira should be put in another pitcher.

18-19. Flowers together with the sandal wood, agallochum and camphor should be placed in another pitcher. (The gems) lapis lazuli, coral, pearl, crystal, and diamond should be put earlier in one pitcher and placed firmly by the holy priests. Another pitcher should be filled with the waters of the rivers and tanks.

20. Another (set of) pitchers filled with perfumes etc. should be placed at eightyone places and consecrated with the śrisākta.

21. Barley grains, white mustard, perfumes, tips of kuśa grass, unbroken rice, sesameum, fruits and flowers should be first placed for the sake of worship.

22. The lotus, (the creeper called) śvāmalāta, dūrva grass, leaf of holy basil and kuśa grass (should be kept) on the right-hand side for being offered at the foot. The madhuparka is also placed on the right side.

23. The kankola, cloves and nutmeg along with the dūrva grass and unbroken rice (should be offered) in the fire on the north for the sake of rinsing the mouth.

24. A vessel for offering camphor and perfumes to be applied on the body should be placed on the south-east. A vessel containing perfumes and flowers should be placed on the north-east.

25. The murā, mānast, myrabolan, sahadāvā and niśā and sixty lamps should be placed. Eight lamps should be kept for the nirā-jana (showing the light in adoration).

26. The conch, disc, śrutas (mark on the breast of Viśṇu), thunderbolt, lotus etc. should be placed in a golden vessel along with flowers of variegated colours.

1. Hymn commencing with hiranyavarnāṁ harītm. RV. Kh. 5.87.1.
2. A respectful offering consisting of five ingredients: curd, clarified butter, water, honey, and candied sugar.
CHAPTER FIFTYEIGHT

Consecration of the idol

The lord said:

1-3. The priest should get ready a pit (for sacrificial fire) in the north-east. The fire relating to Viṣṇu should be kindled with (the recitation of) gāyatrī¹ one hundred and eight times. Having cleansed the pitchers thoroughly and established (the priest) he should go to the shed where the image has been made ready accompanied by the sculptors and custodians of the idol and along with music of (the instrument) tūrya. The woollen thread containing mustard seeds should be tied on the right arm (of the idol) with the syllables Viṣṇave śīpiṣṭāya² etc. The priest should also have a piece of silk cloth tied (to his arm).

4-5. Having placed the idol in the pavilion and having adored and worshipped the dressed idol (one has to say) "I bow to you the sovereign lady of celestials who has been made (ready) by Viśvakarman (the divine architect)." I make obeisance to you who is resplendent and is the sustainer of the entire universe. I worship in you the healthy Lord Nārāyaṇa.

6. Be thou always prosperous (goddess) devoid of defects due to the sculptors. Having submitted thus that idol should be carried to the bathing pavilion.

7. The sculptor should be satisfied by offering articles (of present). A cow should be given as gift to the priest. Then the eyes of the idol should be made open with (the recitation of) the syllable citram deva.³

8. The sight should be endowed with (the recitation of the syllable) agnir jyoti.⁴ Then white flowers, ghee and mustard seeds should be placed on the pedestal.

9. The priest should place dūrva grass and tips of kusa grass on the head of the deity. Then the priest should anoint the eyes (of the deity) with the syllables madhu vātā.⁵

10. The syllables hiranyagarbha and imam me should be

---

¹ The mantra beginning with 'Om bhūr bhuvah svah consisting of twenty-four letters.
² VS. 22.20.
³ RV. 1.115.1.
⁴ VS. 3.9.
⁵ RV. 1.90.6.
recited. Then the idol should be anointed with ghee reciting (the hymn) gṛtavatī.¹

11. The flour paste of maśūra (a variety of grain) should be rubbed on the deity reciting (the hymn) aṭo devī.² Then the priest should wash (the deity) with hot water with the recitation of) sapta te āgna.³

12. It should be anointed with (the syllables) Urupadādiva. (The image) should be bathed with (the waters of) the rivers and sacred places with (the syllables) āpo hi ṣṭhā⁴ and with the (waters containing) gems (with the) pāvamāna.

13. (The image) (should be bathed) with the waters of an earthen pot with (the syllable) samudraṁ gaccha.⁵ It should be consecrated with sanno devī⁶ and bathed with hot water (consecrated) by gāyatri.

14. The supreme god should be bathed with five (kinds of) earth with (the syllable) hiranya. With pot made of earth of an anthill and sand waters and (the syllable) imam mē⁷ (it should be bathed).

15. (The image should be bathed) with herbal waters (with the syllable) tadaviṣṇoh⁸ and yā oṣadhi,⁹ with herbal decoctions (with the syllable) yajñā-yajñā¹⁰ and then with the pañccagavya (the five things got from a cow).

16. (The image should be bathed) with the waters containing fruits (with the syllables) payaḥ prthivyāṁ¹¹ and yāh phalini¹² and with (the contents of) the pitchers (kept in) the north and east with (the syllables) viṣvataścαkuḥ.¹³

17. The cleansing (of the image) of Hari (Viṣṇu) should be done with (the recitation of the syllables somāṁ rājānam, viṣṇo rātamaṁ)¹⁴ from the right and with hamsaṁ suci¹⁵ on the west

---

¹ RV. 6.70.1.
² RV. 1.22.16.
³ VS. 17.79.
⁴ RV. 10 9.1.
⁵ RV. kh. 5.49.2.
⁶ RV. 10.9.4.
⁷ RV. 1.25.19.
⁸ RV. 1.22.20.
⁹ RV. 10.97.1.
¹⁰ RV. 6.48.1.
¹¹ VS. 18.36.
¹² RV. 10.97.15.
¹³ RV. 10.81.3.
¹⁴ VS. 5.11.
¹⁵ RV. 4.40.5.
18. One should offer the *dhātri* and *mānśi* (herbs) on the head with the sacred syllables *mūrdhānam divā³*. (One should bathe the image) with perfumes with the syllables *gandhavośra* and *mā nas toka*.³

19. (One has to pour over its head the contents of the pitchers) placed in the eightyone squares (with the syllables) *idam āpāṭi*. O Lord Viṣṇu! the bestower of grace on the universe! you come.

20. (You) accept this share in the sacrificial offerings. O Vāsudeva! Salutations to you! Having invoked the lord in this way, the wrist thread (on the hand of the image) should be unfastened.

21. The wrist thread on (the hand of) the priest should also be unfastened with the hymn *muṅcāmi tvā*.³ The water for washing the feet should be offered with (the syllable) *hiraṇmaya*⁴ and the offering with *ato devā*.⁵

22. The madhuparka (should be offered) with (the syllables) *madhuvaśa*⁶ and the ācamana (the ceremonial sipping of waters at the commencement of any rite) should be done with *mayi grīṇāmi*.⁷ The learned (priest) should scatter the unbroken rice with (the syllable) *aksannamimadanta*.⁶

23. The image should be rubbed part by part and perfumes (should be offered) with (the syllable) *gandhavat*, garland with (the syllable) *unnayāmi* and the sacred thread with (the syllable) *idam viṣṇu*.

24. Pair of cloth pieces (should be offered) (with the syllable) *bhraspati* (and) the upper cloth (with the syllable) *vedāham*. The herbs and the flower of concluding worship should be placed with the *mahāvratā*.

25. Incense should be offered with *dhūraśi* and the collyrium (to the eyes of the image) with the hymn (called) *vibhrāt*. The mark on the forehead (should be made) with (the syllable) *yuṣjanti* and the garland (should be offered) with *dṛghāyunovoā*.

---

1. RV. 6.7.1.
2. RV. 1.114.8.
3. See LXVII. 22.1.
5. SB. 14.7.1.12.
6. RV. 1.22.16.
7. RV. 1.90.6.
8. RV. 10.9.
26. (One should offer) an umbrella with (the syllable) indra cchatra, mirror with virāja, the chowrie with vikarna and the ornaments with rathantara.

27. (One should offer) the fan with (the syllable) vāyu daivatya and flowers with muñcāmi tola. One should sing in praise of (Lord) Hari (Viṣṇu) with vedic hymns and (the hymn called) puruṣasūkta.

28. All these rites should be performed similarly relating to pedestals of Hara (Śiva) and other gods. The hymn (called) sauparna should be recited at the time of raising (the image of) the deity.

29. (The image) having been raised (by reciting) (the syllable) uttiṣṭha, the lord should be led to the bed in the pavilion with (the recitation of) the hymn sakuna¹ and with (the syllable) brahmaratha.

30. Then the image and the pedestal (should be laid) in the bed with the hymn ato devā.² With the (recitation of) tri-sūkta the rite for Viṣṇu is completed.

31. The eight auspicious things are: the lion, bull, serpent, fan, pitcher, banner, trumpet and lamp.

32-33. (The priest) should show (these) at the foot with the hymn (called) asvāsūkta and the tripād (gāyatri). One should submit a cooking vessel, covering pan, ladle, pestle, crushing stone, grinding stone, groomstick, utensils for eating and other household things should be given to the goddess.

34. A pitcher known as nidrā provided with clothes and gems and filled with edibles (should be placed) at the head-side (of the image). This is the mode of bathing (the image).

CHAPTER FIFTYNINE

Preliminary consecration of an image

The Lord said:

1-4. The act of causing the presence of God Hari is said to be the adhivārana (preliminary consecration). Having contem-

¹ RV. 9.107.
² RV. 1.22.16.
plated on the self as the omniscient, all-pervasive and supreme spirit and having united one's self-conceited conscious energy with (the syllable) om and after having drawn it out and identifying one's own self with the all-pervasive lord, (the priest) should unite the earth with the wind, illuminate it with the fire particle (mentally), draw the fire with the wind (particle) and lead the wind into the ethereal space. The wiseman should draw in the same order (the other gross elements) after having made them the receptacles of subtle principles along with the gross principles, the supreme being and the secondary forms such as the sādhyas-1.

5. The ethereal space should be drawn into the mind (principle), the mind (in its turn) should be (drawn) into (the principle of) ego, (the principle) of ego in the (principle of) mahat (first principle). The mahat should be led into the avyākhya (unmanifest).

6-7. The unmanifest (is led) into the absolute knowledge known as Vāsudeva. Being desirous to create he, the Lord of sound by means of the unmanifest brought into being Saṅkarṣaṇa (the principle) known as touch. He created Pradyumna the form of splendour by agitating the illusion.

8. He created Aniruddha, (consisting of) taste only and Brahmā of the form of smell. That Aniruddha, the Brahmā created water at first.

9. He also laid the golden egg (of the five principles) in that (water). Impregnated with consciousness (this generated) a peculiar force within.

10. The breath united with life force is spoken as existence. The inner being also known as the vyākhya2 is a spiritual entity amidst the five winds (prāṇāh).

11. Then intellect came into being associated with the prāṇa and with eight-fold modifications. Egoism was born then and the mind came out from it.

12. Then the five (abstract) things were born possessing determination. They are known as sound, touch, sight, taste and smell.

13. The sense-organs possessing consciousness were brought

1. They are refined secondary forms. See MW. p. 1202a.
2. The mystic syllables bhūh, bhūvah, suvaḥ.
about by these. The skin, ear, nose, eyes, tongue are the sense-organs.

14. The feet, anus, arms, speech (mouth) and the genitals are the five organs of action. Listen (I shall describe) the five elements.

15. The ether, wind, light, water and earth (are the five elements). The gross body is composed of these elements and becomes the support for all.

16. (I shall presently) describe the mystic syllables signifying these and for being (mentally) placed on (the different parts of) the body. The letter ma which is the symbol of the inner self should be located to co-extend with (the body of) the deity.

17. The letter bha which is the emblem of life should be lodged in the differentiating individuality of the god. The letter ba which represents the intellect should be located in the region of the heart.

18. The letter pha representing the sense of ego should also be located there itself. The letter pa representing the mind should be located in the mental resolve.

19. The letter na which is a symbol of the principle of sound should be placed on the forehead. The letter dha which is the symbol of sense of touch should be placed in the region of the face (of image).

20. The letter da denoting the gradations should be placed in the region of the heart. The letter tha symbolising the sense of taste should be placed in the region of pelvis.

21. The letter ta signifying the sense of smell should be located on the shanks. After having located the letter na in the ears, the letter dha should be located on the skin.

22. The letter da should be located in the two eyes, the letter pha in the tongue, the letter ta in the nose and the letter na in the speech.

23. Having placed the letter jha representing the hands in the hands, a wise man should place the letter ja in the feet, cha in the anus and ca in the genitals.

24. The letter na symbolising the principle of earth should be placed on the feet. The letter gha (should be placed) in the pelvis. (The letter) ga representing the principle of lustre should be placed in the heart.
25. The letter *kha* which represents the principle of wind should be placed in the nose. The letter *ka* signifying the principle of ether should be assigned to the forehead by the wise.

26-27. The letter *ya* denoting lord Sun having been placed in the lotus of the heart, the letter *sa* possessing sixteen digits should be placed in the seventy-two thousand (rays) emanating from the (lotus) heart. The priest fully initiated in the mystic syllables should contemplate on the point (*bindu*) representing the region of fire in the middle of it.

28. The excellent letter *ha* along with the syllable *om* (pranava) should be placed there. *Om, ām*, salutations to the *paramēṣṭyātman.¹* Ām, salutations to *puruṣātman²*.

29. *Om, Vām*, salutations to the eternal being! *Nām*, salutations to the soul of the universe! *Om, vām*, salutations to the soul of all beings! Thus the five forms of energies have been described.

30. The first one (of the above five syllables) should be used for the place, the second one for the seat, the third one for the bed, and the fourth one for the drink.

31. The fifth one is used at every worship. These (five mystic syllables) are known as the five *upaniṣads*. The syllable *hum* should be placed in the middle after having contemplated on Hari, composed of mystic syllables.

32. Whichever form of the deity is being installed one should assign the particular principal mystic syllable of that form afterwards. The principal syllable of Vāsudeva is *Om*, salutations to Lord Vāsudeva!

33. (The different forms of the god) should be (mentally) assigned to (the different parts of the body such as) the head, nose, forehead, face, neck, heart, arms, shanks and feet in order. (The manifestation known as) Keśava should be assigned to the head (of the image).

34. Nārāyaṇa should be assigned to the face, Mādhava to the neck, Govinda to the arms, (and) Viṣṇu to the heart.

35. Madhusūdana should be assigned to the hinder part, Vāmanā to the belly, Trivikrama to the hip (and) Śrīdhara to the shank.

¹. The word *Paramēṣṭya* denotes the supreme being or one of the forms of Trinity.
². This means a supreme being.
36. Hṛṣikeya (should be assigned) on the right side, Padmanābha on the ankle, Dāmodara on the feet.

(This is assignment) in the six limbs commencing with the heart.

37-39. O most virtuous one! This is general mode of assignment of Viṣṇu. In the alternative, the installation of which form of the deity has been begun, one should infuse life into the image with the principal mystic syllable of that form. The first letter of the name of any form of a deity should be used along with the twelve vowels and assigned to the different parts of image such as the heart. O Lord of celestials! the principal mystic syllable should consist of ten syllables.

40. The principles should be placed in the body in the same order as they are found in the god. Lord Viṣṇu should be worshipped with perfumes etc., in the diagram of a lotus inscribed in a circle.

41. One should contemplate on the seat as before together with the limbs and cover. Then one should imagine an auspicious disc over that as having twelve radii.

42. The circle (should be imagined) as having three concentric naves and two outer circles and filled with the vowels. The wise man should then place the prakṛti (the nature, the source of the material world) and other principles.

43-44. The sun god should again be worshipped at the tips of the spokes in the twelve-fold way¹ and the moon possessing three-fold armies and sixteen phases should be contemplated therein. The excellent worshipper should contemplate on a lotus flower of twelve petals.

45. The effulgent energy of the supreme being should be contemplated and worshipped in the centre (of the lotus flower) by the priest. Having located (Lord) Hari in that image, one should worship him as well as the celestials.

46. Keśava and others should be worshipped well with twelve mystic letters² with perfumes, flowers etc. and with their attendants and enclosures in due order.

47-48. The twice-born should worship the guardian deities of quarters and others in the circular diagram of twelve radii. The image should then be worshipped with perfumes and

---

2. Om name bhagavate vidvadhyas.
flowers and with the _purusāṅkta_. The pedestal should be worshipped with the _śrīṅkta_. The sacrificial fire relating to Viṣṇu should be kindled in the prescribed manner.

49. Having made oblation unto the fire with the sacred syllables the wise priest should sanctify waters and consecrate the image (by sprinkling waters). Then he should kindle fire.

50. The wise priest should kindle fire in the pit on the south with the mystic syllable _agnim hutam_ and in the pit on the east with the syllable _agnim agnim_.

51. In the fire pit on the north, the fire should be kindled with the mystic syllable _agnim agnim havimabhiḥ_ and the sacred syllable to be used to kindle fire in general is _tvam agne hyagnirucyase_.

52. One should place one thousand and eight twigs of the _pālāśa_ tree in each one of the fire pits and offer grains withvedic hymns.

53. Clarified butter and sesamum (should be offered to fire) with the _vyāhritis_ (Om bhūḥ, bhūvah, suvaḥ) and ghee with the principal _mantra_. One should perform the appeasing oblation with the three sweet things.

54. One should then touch the feet, navel, heart and forehead with (the utterance of) twelve mystic sullables (of the god). After having offered ghee, curd and milk, the head of the image should again be touched.

55. After having touched the head, navel, and feet, (the priest) should make four rivers Gaṅgā, Yamunā, Godāvarī and Sarasvatī present there by pronouncing their names.

56. (The rivers) should be dried up by (the recitation of the _viṣṇugāyatri_ and the sacrificial gruel should be boiled with (the recitation of) the _gāyatri_. One should offer oblation, offer the victim and feed the twice-borns afterwards.

57. For the satisfaction of the singer of _sāmans_ one should give gold and cows to the spiritual preceptor. Having made offerings to the guardian deities of the quarters, one should spend night in vigil. By singing the praise of the brahman one gets fruits of the consecration rite.

---

1. RV. 10. 90.
2. RVkh. 5.87.1a.
3. Could not be identified.
6. Could not be identified.
7. Sugar, honey and clarified butter.
8. _nārīhyoṣya viśmeha pāsudeṣṇya dhīnāhi tanno viṣṇuḥ Prapadeṣyāt._
CHAPTER SIXTY

_MODE OF INSTALLATION OF THE IMAGE OF VASUDEVA_

_The Lord said:_

1. One should divide the length of adytum into seven parts for the installation of the pedestal. The wise man should fix the image on the part of Brahman.

2-3. (One should) never (fix it) in the parts (presided over) by the celestials, mortals and goblins, leaving out the part (presided over by) Brahman. The pedestal should be carefully fixed off the regions of celestials and mortals. Gems should be imbedded in the case of a hermaphrodite stone.

4-5. Having performed oblation with (the _mantra_ sacred to) Narasimha (the man-lion form of Viṣṇu), the gems should be placed with (the repetition of) the same (_mantra_). Rice grains, gems, three (kinds of) minerals, iron and other metallic substances, sandal wood etc., should be placed in the nine holes commencing with the east at the centre as one likes. Then the holes should be filled with the _guggulu_ (a kind of fragrant gum resin) with (the recitation of) the _mantras_—_indra_ etc.

6. After having performed the insertion of gems, the preceptor should rub the image with sticks of _sahadeva_ (tree) and bunches of _darbha_ (grass).

7. The outer and inner surface (of the image) should be cleansed and then purified with the _pañcagavya_ (the five things got from a cow). Water should be sprinkled with the _darbha_ grass as well as with the waters of the river.

8. The ground for kindling the sacrificial fire should be made ready with sand. An excellent site should be of the measure of a cubit and a half on all sides.

9. The pitchers also should be placed in the eight directions commencing with the east. The consecrated fire should be brought in uttering the eight letters (described already).

10. The twigs should be offered into the fire with (the _mantras_)—_svam agne dyubhiṣṭa_ and _gīyati_. Clarified butter should be offered with (the recitation of) eight letters, eight hundred times.

---

1. _RV. 2.1.1._
11. The appeasing water sanctified hundred times by the principal mantra should be sprinkled on the head of the image with (the recitation of) the hymn śrīśca te.¹

12. The image should be lifted up with (the mantra) brahma-jajñāna² and should be led to the temple with the mantra uttīṣṭha brahmaṇaspati³ and tadvishnoh⁴.

13. Lord Hari should be placed in a palanquin and carried towards the divine edifice accompanied by songs and vedic hymns. He should be held at the gates of the temple.

14. Lord Hari should be bathed with waters from eight auspicious pitchers by women and brahmins. Then the priest should worship the image with perfumes etc. and with the principal mantra⁵.

15. Then the dress, the devotional offerings of eight kinds should be offered with (the mantra) ato devā. (The image) should be fixed on the pedestal at the fixed moment with (the recitation of) devasya tud⁶.

16. The learned (priest) should fix the image on the pedestal (with the recitation of the following mantra). "O Conqueror of three spaces! Om! salutations to you who surpassed the three regions.

17. The image should be bathed with the pañcagavya (five things got from a cow) with (the recitation of) the mantra dhruva dyauḥ⁷ and viśvastacaksuḥ⁸ and bathed again with perfumed water.

18. Lord Hari should be worshipped along with the attendants and paraphernalia. The heavens should be contemplated as his form and the earth as the seat.

19. His body should be imagined as composed of lustrous minute particles. (One should say), "I am invoking his spirit pervading the twenty-five principles."

---

1. VS. 31.22.
2. TS. 4.2.8.2.
3. RV. 1. 40. 1.
4. RV. 1.22.20.
5. Om nama bhagavate vāśudevaḥ.
6. RV. 1.22.16.
7. VS. 1.24.
8. RV. 10.173.4.
9. RV. 10.81.3.
20-21. O Supreme Lord! you become firmly established in the image. I invoke you, the spirit of supreme happiness, one devoid of (three states) waking, dreaming and deep sleep, one who is devoid of a body, sense-organs, intellect, life and egoism, and one who resides in the hearts of all beings beginning with Brahman and ending with a dump of grass.

22. You make the image imbued with your soul both inside and outside. You have taken your abode in this image (of the size of) a thumb with attributes.

23. Having invoked (the god in the image), the supreme brahman, lustrous form of knowledge and who is one without a second, that is deemed as alive by the use of (the mantra) Om.

24. The act of bringing the god near consists in uttering (the mantra) and touching the heart (of the image). (The priest) should recite the puruṣasūkti¹ and should recite the following (mantra) in secret.

25-27. Salutations to the Lord of celestials who is of the form of happiness and fortune, of the form of knowledge and wisdom and who attends on the lustre of the supreme brahman. (Salutations to) the one who is beyond properties, the great being, devoid of decay, old age. O Viṣṇu, you be present here. Whichever is the supreme principle in you and that which is your form verily (made up) of knowledge, all that be present here in this form. May you awake!

28. Stationing oneself in front of the deity, (the priest) should establish Brahman and other attendant gods as well as the respective weapons (by showing) the mudrā (different postures shown with the hand).

29-30. (The priest) should infer the presence of the god from the yātrā² and varṣa³. Having saluted and sung the glories and recited the mantras of eight syllables⁴ etc., the priest should come out and worship Caṇḍa and Prācaṇḍa (the two guardians) at the gate. (The priest) should go to the place of sacrificial fire, install the image of Garuḍa (the vehicle bird of Lord Viṣṇu) and worship.

¹ puruṣasūkti
² yātrā
³ varṣa
⁴ Om namo nārāyaṇaya
31. Having installed and worshipped (the images) of different presiding deities of the quarters in their respective quarters, the priest should install the image of Lord Viṣvaksena\(^1\) and worship the conch, disc etc.

32. Offerings should be made to the attendant gods and to the goblins. The priest should be given the fees—(which may be of the form of) proprietary right over a village, clothes and gold.

33. The materials required for (the performance of) sacrificial ceremony should be given to the principal priest. The attendant priests should be paid fees half of what was paid to the principal priest.

34. The other priests should be paid their fees. The brahmans should then be fed. Without any restraint the benefits of sacrifice should be extended to the patron-employer by the principal priest.

35. The consecrator of the image of Viṣṇu leads the self, as well as his entire family (to the region of the god). This is the general mode of performance for all gods. Only the principal mantra would be different. The other formalities are the same.

CHAPTER SIXTYONE

Consecration of doors of the temple and the erection of banner

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the purificatory bathing of Viṣṇu. The offering to the fire is made (with the mantra) na tvā\(^2\). Having placed eightyone pitchers (at their respective places) Lord Hari should be invoked and installed.

2. He should be worshipped with perfumes and flowers. Having made the offering, the priest should be worshipped. I shall describe the (mode of) consecrating the door. (A piece of) gold should be placed beneath the door (frame).

3. The priest should place shoots of udumbara (fig tree) in

1. An epithet of Viṣṇu.
2. One of the many hymns beginning with these words.
the (mouth of the) eight pitchers and worship them with perfumes etc. and vedic mantras.

4. Twigs, fried paddy and sesamum should be offered unto the fire in the pits. Having offered the bed etc., the supporting energy should be placed underneath.

5. Gods Caṇḍa and Pracāṇḍa should be located at the bottom of the shoots, Goddess Lakṣmī worshipped by the celestials should be placed above (the shoot of) the fig (tree).

6. Having assigned the four-faced (Brahman) and duly worshipping (him) (by reciting) the Śrīśūktā¹ the fruits of the bilva (tree) should be offered to him and the fees should be paid to the priest.

7. (I shall describe) the consecration of the divine edifice the doors of which have been consecrated and wherein the image of Hari has been duly installed. It is in the consecration of the adytum. Listen.

8-9. Pitcher made of gold, silver or bell-metal filled with eight kinds of gems, herbs, minerals, seeds of grains, iron and water and covered with a cloth should be placed on the darbha (grass) in a circle to the east of the altar after the ṣukanāśa (the keystone) has been got ready.

10. Fallen twigs which have been gathered should be offered into fire with (the mantra of) Nṛṣimha. Then (the temple) should be enlivened with the principle known as nārāyanapatattva.

11. (That lord) who is the life of the temple should be contemplated (as) “O Lord of celestials”. Then a wise man has to imagine the temple as the god himself.

12. (A piece of) gold should be placed below the golden pitcher. The priests and others should be paid their fees and the brahmans should be fed.

13-14. Threads should be wound round the altar, neck, top and the globe of the temple after that. Then the metallic ring known as the sudarśana disc should be placed. It should be known as the form of (Lord) Vāsudeva offering protection from fear.

15. Alternatively a pitcher should be placed (in the place of a globe) and the disc above that. O birthless one! eight lords

---

¹ See above, p. 151 and fn 1 thereon.
of obstacles (Vighneśvara) should be placed around the altar in the temple.

16. Or four images of Garuḍa (vehicle of Lord Viṣṇu) should be placed in the four quarters. I shall describe now the erection of the flagstaff which destroys the evil spirits.

17. One who performs this remains in the regions of Viṣṇu for so many thousands of years as the number of atoms in the image of the god in the temple.

18. O sinless! It should be known that (a man gets) a crore times more merit by erecting the flag-staff, since it surrounds the neck of the temple and it wafts the wind around the globe, altar and image.

19. The flag should be known as the prakṛti and the staff as the purusa and you know that the temple is another form of image of Vāsudeva (Viṣṇu).

20. (In a temple) the dharani (earth) is so called from its ability to hold, its internal cavity stands for the sky, the illumination inside represents the fire, and its touch represents the wind.

21. The earthly waters found in the stone slabs (of the temple) represent the earthly attributes. Its echo stands for the principles of sound. Its touch represents roughness.

22. Its colour which may be white or otherwise stands for the subtle principle of colour. The food (and other eatables) offered (to the deity) stand for the sense of taste. The perfumes represent the sense of smell. The sense of speech lies in the down (used in the temple).

23. The keystone is the nose (of the temple). The two apertures (on either side) represent the two hands. The arched terrace above is to be taken for its head and the pitcher on the head.

24. Its neck should be known as the neck. The platform over the fault is spoken as the shoulder. The outlets for water are the anus and genitals. The lime-plaster is spoken as the skin.

25. The door would be the mouth. The image (installed in the temple) is said to be its life. The pedestal should be known as its energy. Its shape should likewise be known as its animation.

26. Its cavity is its inertia. Lord Keśava is its controller. In this way Lord Hari Himself remains in the form of the temple.

27. God Śiva should be known as the shank. God Brahman
is located in the shoulder. Lord Viṣṇu remains in the upper portion of a temple as it is.

28. Listen to me. I shall describe the consecration of a temple by means of a banner. The demons were defeated by the celestial gods by erecting banners impressed with the signs of divine weapons.

29. The pitcher (shaped part of the temple) should be placed over the top and the flag should be placed over the same. The post should be made to measure a half or one third of the height of the image.

30. The flag should have a mark of a circle of eight or twelve radii. (There should be the figure) of the man-lion (form of Viṣṇu) or the Garuḍa (Tārkṣyā) (inside the circle) in the middle. The staff of the flag should not have any cut.

31. The length of the staff is spoken as the measure of the breadth of edifice. It should be made either half of the terrace or a third part of it.

32. The staff should otherwise be made twice the length of the door. The flag staff should be planted on the north-east or the north-west of the divine edifice.

33. The flag should be made of a piece of silk cloth, of a single or variegated colours. It should be adorned with bells, chowries and small bells. (It is said to be) destroyer of sins.

34. A flag which touches the ground and measures a cubit in breadth at its extremity or has a breadth equal to one fourth of its length at its base is called a mahādvaja. It grants all things when worshipped.

35. The banner should measure half (the dimension of) the staff. The breadth should measure twenty fingers.

36. All the rites relating to the consecration of an image should be done for (the consecration) of the disc, flag and the staff. They should be bathed in the shed.

37. The priest should duly perform all rites described earlier except that of opening the eyes. The consecration should be done in the prescribed manner leaving them in the resting position.

38. Then the learned priest should assign (mentally) the hymn (called) sahasraśirṣā in the disc. Then the sudarśana mantra

1. RV. 10.90.
and the principle of mind should be assigned.

39. It is known as imbued with life by mental formation. O excellent among gods, (the different forms of Viṣṇu such as) Keśava etc. should be assigned to the spokes.

40. The priest should assign twenty-five principles at the navel, and each of the arcs of the lotus. The form of Nṛsiṁha (the man-lion form of Viṣṇu) representing the universe should be assigned to the middle of the lotus.

41. The sakala (endowed with parts) forms should be assigned to the staff as the living soul of it. Lord Hari, the supreme being of the niṣkala (undivided) form should be contemplated and assigned to the flag.

42. The energies Bala and Abala which manifest in the form of the banner should be contemplated. Having placed it in the shed and worshipped it, oblation should be made in the pit.

43. Having placed the golden pitcher over the pitcher and putting five (kinds of) gems (at the top of the temple) a golden disc should be placed underneath that with the mantra of the disc.

44. The disc should be washed with mercury and covered with the eye-cover. The disc should then be placed. Lord Nṛhari (man-lion form of Viṣṇu) should be imagined there in the middle.

45-46. Om, kṣaum, salutations to Lord Nṛsiṁha. Lord Hari should be invoked and worshipped. Then the yajamāna (the person who has arranged for the consecration) accompanied by his relatives should hold banner and dip the tip of the banner in a vessel full of curd. The banner should be worshipped with the mantra commencing with dhruvā and ending with phat.

47. Holding that vessel on the head and remembering Lord Nārāyaṇa (the yajamāna) should go around the temple along with auspicious sounds from the tūri (a musical instrument).

48. The staff should then be placed with (the recitation of) the eight-syllabled mantra. Then the flag should be (hoisted) and unfurled with (the recitation of) the hymn muṇcāmi tavā by the learned person.

49. The twice-born (yajamāna) should give the priest the

1. RV.10.173.4a.
2. Om namo nārāyana.
vessel, banner and elephant etc. Mode of consecration of the flag has been thus described in general.

50. The mark which represents a particular god should be planted with the respective mantra. By the offer of a banner one goes to heaven and becomes a strong monarch on the earth (in the next birth).

CHAPTER SIXTYTWO

Mode of installation of the image of Goddess Lakṣmi

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe to you the mode of installation of all divine images. At first I shall describe the (mode of) installation (of the image) of Lakṣmī and her attendant goddesses.

2. As before, one should do all rites such as bathing (the image) in the shed. (The image of) goddess Lakṣmī should be placed on the pedestal. One should place eight pitchers.

3. The image should be anointed with ghee with the principal mantra and washed with the five things got from a cow. The eyes of (the goddess) Lakṣmī should be opened with (the recitation of the mantra) hiranyavarṇām hariṇim¹.

4. The three sweet things² should be offered with (the recitation of the mantra) tāṁ ma āvaha³. She (the image) should be bathed with (the waters of) the pitcher on the east with (the recitation of) the (hymn) asvapūrva⁴.

5. The image should then be bathed with (the waters of pitchers on) the south, west and north with the recitation of hymns kāmośmi te⁵, candram prabhāsām⁶, āditya varṇa⁷ (respectively)

¹. RV Kh. 5.87.1.
². P. 160. fn 7.
³. RV. Kh. 5.87.2a, 15a.
⁴. cf. RV. Kh. 5.87.3a.
⁵. Could not be identified.
⁶. Could not be identified.
⁷. VS.31.81b.
6-7. (Waters) from (the pitchers placed in) the south-east, south-west, north-west and north-east should be poured on the image accompanied by (the recitation of the mantras) \textit{upaitu mā}, \textit{kṣat pīpāsā}, \textit{gandhadvāra}, \textit{manasaḥ kānāmaśkrī}. The image should subsequently be bathed with (the waters of) eighty-one pitchers (accompanied) by \textit{āpah sṛjan kṣitim}.

8. (The priest should worship the image) with perfumes accompanied by \textit{ārdrāṁ pūskariṇīm}, with flowers accompanied by \textit{tāṁ ma āvaha} and \textit{ya ēnanda}.

9. The goddess should be worshipped in the bed with (the mantra) \textit{śāyanti} \textit{yena} and her presence is accomplished by \textit{sṛsūkta}. Her consciousness is invoked and worshipped again with the principal mantra of the goddess.

10. Thousand or hundred lotus flowers or \textit{karavira} flowers should be offered in the fire pit at the shed accompanied by \textit{sṛsūkta}.

11. Household furniture should be offered with the \textit{sṛsūkta} itself. Then the consecration of edifice should be performed as described earlier.

12. The pedestal should be made with (the recitation of) the mantra. The installation of the goddess is done subsequently. Her presence is accomplished with the \textit{sṛsūkta}. Everyone of the hymns (stated earlier) should be recited as before.

13. Having invoked consciousness in the image, her presence is accomplished by the principal mantra. The priest and the brahmans should be presented with land, gold, clothes, cow and food. The images of all other forms of goddesses should be installed in the same way. One who invokes (and consecrates) in this way is held as going to heaven.

---

1. RV. Kh. 5.87.7a.
2. TB.3.4.1.16.
3. RV. Kh. 5.87.9a.
4. RV. Kh.5.87.10a.
5. Could not be identified.
6. Cf. RV. Kh. 8.87.3a, 14a.
7. RV. Kh. 5.87.2a, 15a.
8. Not found.
9. Could not be identified.
10. RV. Kh. 5.87.1.
CHAPTER SIXTYTHREE

Mode of installation of other gods and goddesses, the Sudarśana disc and the writing of books and their installations

The god said:

1. The installation of the (images of) Garuḍa (vehicle of Viṣṇu) Brahman, Nṛhari (man-lion form of Viṣṇu) and of the (sudarśana) disc should be done in the same way as that of Viṣṇu with their respective mantras. Listen to me.

2. O Sudarśana! The great disc that is tranquil! Dreadful to the wicked! Kill kill, pierce pierce, cut through and cut through.

3. Devour devour the incantations of others. Eat up, eat up the evil spirits. Frighten frighten, hun phat, salutation to sudarśana. Having worshipped the disc with this mantra one destroys the enemies in the battle.

Om kṣaum Narasimha (man-lion) ! of fierce form! burn, burn, blaze up, blaze up, svāhā. Om kṣaum salutations to lord Narasimha! Effulgent like crores of radiant suns! One armed with mace, claws and teeth! One who manifests with a sound similar to the trumpet while the dreadful and dishevelled manes wildly dance in the storm and one who has agitated the ocean! One who rescues from all incantations! O Lord Narasimha (you) come! Manifest with the divine truth as the universal subjective and objective! Open thy mouth! Attack! Roar and release your lion-like voice! Cut through! Drive away! Pierce into all sorts of incantations! Kill, cut, heap together, dislodge, cut open, break up, cause to be burst! A multitude of cluster of flames! Destroy all nether regions with your disc (showering) flames and thunderbolts in all directions! Besiege the nether regions with your arrows of thunderbolt discharging endless fire! Pull out the hearts of all demons residing in the nether worlds! Burn quickly! Cook! Destroy! Dry up! Hack them to pieces till they have not been subject to my control! Phat to the nether worlds! Phat to the demons! Phat to all kinds of incantations! O Lord of the form of Narasimha! Protect me from all doubts! Protect me from all calamities and all incantations! O Viṣṇu! Hum Phat! Salutations to you! This
is the spell of Narasimha representing Hari (Viṣṇu) which grants all desires.

4. The captivator of the three worlds (trailokyamohana) (the image of the lord) should be installed with the mantras known as trailokyamohana (captivating the three worlds) (described above). (The image) should be made to have two or four arms, holding the mace in the right hand and conferring benediction.

5. The disc should be placed in the upper left arm and the (conch-shell) pāñcajanya on the lower (arm). (The two right hands) should be provided with sti (riches) and pusti (nourishment) along with strength and welfare.

6. The images of Viṣṇu, Vāmana (dwarf form of Viṣṇu), Vaikuṇṭha, Hayāsyā (horse-faced form of Viṣṇu) and Aniruddha should be installed in a shed or house or edifice.

7-9. (The images of) manifestations (of Viṣṇu) (such as) the fish etc. should be installed in waters. (The images of) Sañkarṣaṇa, Viṣvarūpa, liṅga, the form of Rudra, hermaphrodite form (of Śiva) (Ardhanārīśvara), Hari (Viṣṇu), Śaṅkara, Śiva, the divine mothers, Bhairava, Sūrya, the planets, Vināyaka, Gaurī (consort of Śiva) worshipped by Indra and others, Bala and Abala (should also be installed similarly). I shall describe the (mode of) consecration of books and the mode of writing them.

10. Having worshipped the manuscript and the written book on a seat made of kusa grass placed on a svastika figure, the preceptor should worship the spell and Lord Hari (Viṣṇu).

11-12. The pājamāna (the person at whose instance a rite is performed) should face the east and contemplate the spiritual guide, the spell, lord Hari, the copyist and (the goddess) Padmā after having written five verses on a silver plate with golden pen and devanāgarī letters. The brahmans should be fed according to one's capacity and fees should be paid as much as one could give.

13. After having worshipped the preceptor, the spell and Lord Hari, one should write the purāṇas etc. as before in a figure in an auspicious seat in the north-east.

14. Having seen the book in the mirror in the pitcher it should be consecrated as (described) earlier. After opening up the eyes one should place it in the bed.
15. The *purusasūkta* and the Vedas etc. should be (mentally) located in the book. After having infused life to it, it should be worshipped and the porridge offered.

16. Having fed the preceptor and given the fees, the twice-borns should be fed. The book should be carried by men in a car, or on the elephant.

17. The book should be established and worshipped (on its return) in a house or temple. That which is wrapped up in a cloth should be worshipped at the commencement and end of reading.

18. Having resolved to have universal peace a chapter of the book should be read out. The *yajamāna* and others should be sprinkled with water from the pitcher.

19. The merit of presenting a book to the twice-born is unlimited. Three things (are said to be) gifts par excellence. (They are) cows, land and knowledge.

20-21. O sinless one! the merits of imparting knowledge (is great). One who presents a bundle of written leaves, remains and enjoys in the region of Viṣṇu for so many years as the number of leaves and letters (in the manuscript). One who gives away pañcarātra, purīnas, bhārata (as gift) elevates twentyone generations of his family and gets merged in the supreme being.

CHAPTER SIXTYFOUR

*Mode of consecration of tanks and ponds*

*The Lord said:*

1. I shall describe the (mode of) consecration of wells, tanks and ponds. Listen! Lord Hari (Viṣṇu) as Soma and excellent Varuṇa remains in the form of water.

2. The universe is permeated by fire and water. Viṣṇu in the form of water is its cause. The image of Lord Varuṇa (the presiding deity of waters) should be made of gold, silver or gems.

1. *RV.10.90.*

2. The religious code book of the *Vaiṣṇavas*. 
3. (The image should have) two hands, the right conferring refuge and the left should hold the snake-noose and as seated on the hamśa along with the rivers and serpents.

4. There should be an altar at the centre of sacrificial shed having a fire-pit. There should be an arch. A pitcher made of stone for Lord Varuṇa should be placed.

5. Pitchers (should be placed) at the entrance to the fire receptacle which may be of a semi-circular shape or a svastika of auspicious nature. Having done the agnyādhāṇa (rite) in the pit for water the final oblation should be done.

6. (The image of) Varuṇa should be touched in the bathing seat with (the mantra) ye te sate. It should then be anointed with ghee by the priest with (the recitation of) the principal mantra.

7. Having washed the eight pitchers with pure water with (the recitation of) samh no devi they should be consecrated. Sea water (should be kept) in the eastern pitcher.

8-9. Having kept the Ganges water in the (pitcher on the) south-east, rain water in the (pitcher on the) south, water from waterfalls in the (pitcher on the south-west, river water in the west, water from a masculine river in the north-west, spring water in the north, waters from sacred places (should be kept) in the north-east. In the absence of all the above, river water (should be poured into these pitchers) with the chanting of yāsāṁ rājā.

10. After having cleansed and anointed the eyes with the three sweet things (honey, sugar and clarified butter) with (the mantra) durmitriya, they should be opened with Citram and taccaśuna.

11. Having invoked lustre in them the priest should be offered a golden cow. (The image of) Varuṇa should be consecrated with the (waters of the) pitcher on the east with (the recitation of) samudrajyesṭhā.

1. Kāṭ. Śr. Sū. 25.1.11a.
2. YV. 10.9.4a.
3. not identified.
4. VS.6.22 and T.S. 1-4-45-2.
5. RV.1.115.1a.
6. RV 7.66-16a.
7. RV. 7.49.1a.
12-13. The waters of the Ganges should be poured with (the mantra) samudram gaccha\(^1\), rain waters with somo dhenum\(^2\), water from waterfalls with devirāpa\(^3\), the water of the masculine rivers with paṅca nadyah\(^4\), the spring water with udbhid\(^5\), the waters from sacred places with ṭavamāni\(^6\), the paṅcagavya (the five things from a cow) with āpo hi śṭhā\(^7\) and from the golden (pitcher) with hiranyavarṇām\(^8\).

14. (The image should be bathed) with rain water with āpo asma\(^9\), with well waters with the vyāhritis (bhuḥ, bhuvah, suvaḥ). (Image of) Varuṇa should be consecrated with the waters of the tank with varuṇādbhīti.\(^10\)

15. Waters from the hills (should be poured) with (the mantra) āpo devi\(^11\) and then with the waters from eightyone pitchers. Then (the image) should be bathed with varuṇasya\(^12\) and waters for sipping (should be given) with tvanṇo varuṇa\(^13\).

16-17. The madhuparka\(^14\) should be given) with the vyāhritis,\(^15\) clothes with bhṛaspati\(^16\), pavitra with varuṇa\(^17\), the upper garment with prāṇava (Om).

Flowers etc. chowrie, mirror, umbrella, fan and banner should be offered to (the image of) Varuṇa with (the mantra) yaduvarṇya\(^18\).

18. The image should be raised up with the principal mantra (saying) ‘Rise up’ and the preliminary consecration is made that night. The presence of divinity is accomplished by varuṇam ca\(^19\). It should be worshipped with yaduvarṇya.\(^20\)

---

1. RV Kh. 5-49-2.
2. RV1.91-20a.
3. MS. 1.1.11.
4. VS. 34-11a.
5. Could not be identified.
7. RV.10.9.1.a
8. RV Kh. 5-87-1a.
10. Could not be found.
11. TS. 1-3-8-2.
12. One of the many hymns beginning so. See Bloomfield, Vedic Concordance C. 106.
13. Cf. RV. 10.147.5a.
14. Curd, clarified butter, water, honey, sugar.
15. Cf. RV. 2. 23.15a.
17. Could not be identified.
18. Could not be identified.
19. RV1.2.7b.
20. Could not be identified.
19-20. Life should be infused into the image with the principal mantra and should again be worshipped with perfumes etc. Having worshipped it well in the shed as before after having offered twigs etc. into the fire pits with (the recitation of the praṇava) the first word of the Vedas, four cows should be milched in the four directions. Then gruel of barley should be prepared and offered to the fire.

21. The invocation should be performed with the vyāhṛtis, gāyatri and the principal mantra. Oblation should be done with the mantra sūryāya prajāpataye dyauḥ svāhā cāntariksakaḥ.

22. (Ceremony is to be performed) for the earth, Deha-dhṛti, Svadhrīti, Rati, Ugra, Bhīma, Raudraka.

23-24. Viṣṇu, Varuṇa, Dhäṛ, Mahendra the furtherer of riches, Agni, Yama, Nairṛta, Varuṇa, Vāyu, Kubera, Íśa Ananta, Brahman and the lord of waters should be propitiated with oblations reciting svāhā and (the mantras) idam viṣṇuh\(^1\) and tad viprāsa\(^2\).

25. Having made oblation six times with soma dhenu\(^3\), oblation should be made with imān me\(^4\). Again oblation should be done thrice with āpo hi śthā\(^5\) (and once) with imā rudrā\(^6\).

26. Bali (offering) should be made in the ten directions. The image should be worshipped with perfumes and flowers. The image should be lifted and placed in a mystic diagram by a wise man.

27-28. (The image) should be worshipped with perfumes and flowers as well as golden flowers duly. The excellent priest should lay eight raised platforms filled with sand after having made ready the water tanks measuring two feet. Then clarified butter (should be given as oblation) hundred and eight times with (the mantra) varuṇasya\(^7\).

29. Then the barley gruel should be offered in the fire and purificatory water sprinkled over the image. The rite to bring life into the image should be performed.

---

1. RV.I.22.17a.
2. RV.I.22.21a.
3. RV.I.91.20a.
5. RV.10.9.1a.
6. RV.10.1.114.1a.
7. Could not be identified.
30. Lord Varuṇa should be contemplated as being accompanied by goddess Gaurī and the host of masculine and feminine rivers. Then having worshipped with the mantra "om salutations to Varuṇa", the act of bringing near should be done.

31. (The image) should be lifted and carried around on the back of elephant etc. and along with the eight auspicious things (a brahmin, cow, fire, gold, clarified butter, sun, water and king). With the recitation of āpo hi ṣṭhā¹, it should be immersed in the water of the pitcher into which the three sweet things have been put.

32. The image should be placed in the midst of the tank unseen. (The priest) should bathe and contemplate on Varuṇa, the creation known as the primordial egg.

33. Having purified it with the principal letter (of the mantra) of the fire, the ashes should be scattered over the earth. The entire world consists of water. Hence, the lord of waters is contemplated.

34. The sacrificial post of a rectangular, octagonal or circular shape should be placed in the middle of the tank.

35. Having worshipped the symbol of the lord, post made of the tree used for the purpose of sacrifice (should be driven) ten cubits into the ground in the case of (consecration of) a well. At the bottom of the post gold and fruit should be placed.

36. It should be driven into the ground in the middle of water fifteen cubits in the case of a well, twenty (cubits) in the case of a tank (puṣkarini) and twentyfive cubits in the case of a pond.

37. In the alternative, (the post) should be driven in the centre of the sacrificial bed and with the mantra yūpavraska² cloth should be put around. The banner should be put at the top of the post.

38. Having worshipped it with perfumes etc., (the rite for) universal peace should be performed. The spiritual preceptor should be given the fees (in the form of) land, cows, gold and water vessel.

39-40. Fees should be paid to twice-borns. Those who are present should be fed. "From Brahman down to (inanimate

¹ RV.10.9.1a.
² RV.I.162. 6a.
objects like) the pillar all those who seek water may get satisfied with the waters of the tank!" (With the utterance of these words) the water should be given as charity. The five things got from a cow should then be thrown (into the water).

41. With the utterance of (the mantra) āpo hi śthāṅ thrice, the sanctified water got ready by the brahmins and the holy waters of the sacred spots should be sprinkled (into the tank) and herd of kine should be given to brahmins.

42-43. Food and other things should be given to all the people without any restraint. One who consecrates a reservoir of water (acquires) in a single day a merit ten crores times more than one who performs thousands of āśvamedha (the horse-sacrifice). Such a person goes to heaven in the (celestial) vehicle and rejoices (there). He never goes to hell.

44. The consecrator can never get any sin as the cattle and other (animals) drink water from it. One attains all merits by the endowment of water (tank) and goes to heaven.

CHAPTER SIXTYFIVE

The building of pavilions in front of the temples

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the mode of building pavilions (in front of temples) and their maintenance. The vāstuśāga (rite performed to please the spirits dwelling in a site) should be performed after having tested the ground (intended for building pavilion).

2. Having constructed pavilion as per one's liking, one should install (the images of) gods according to his wish. (Such buildings) should not be constructed at the junction of four roads or at a deserted place in the village.

3. Such a builder being free from sins and raising his ancestors (to heaven), enjoys in heaven. One should build a seven-storeyed building for Lord Hari (Viṣṇu) in the following way.

1. RV.10.9.1a.
4. The same rule holds good in the building of other (temples of gods), as in the case of erecting the mansions of kings. The banner should be placed in the east. The edifice should be built as a quadrilateral without (having any walls on) the diagonal lines.

5-7. The building should have three or two chambers or one chamber. The vyāya\(^1\) should not be much. Excessive vyāya is deemed to be harmful. Excessive āyā\(^2\) is also harmful. Hence the two should be made equal. (The priest) well-versed in the science of Garga (vāstuśāstra), should sum up the hand measures of building and multiply it by eight. It should be multiplied by three and the resultant product should be divided by eight and the remainder is known as vyāya.

8. Alternatively, having divided the sum of the hand measures of the building by three and multiplying it by eight the resultant is known as the dhvaja (banner) etc.

9. Banner, camel, lion, dog, bull, donkey, elephant and crow are said to be eight āyas.

10. It is commended if we have three after leaving the north and east in houses having three storeys. Together with the building on the opposite side there will always be two buildings in the south.

11. One-storeyed building may be had in the south or there may be two one-storeyed buildings in the west. The other kinds of buildings cause fear.

12-13. A four-storeyed building devoid of all defects is always commended. One may build a mansion having one-storey or seven-storeys without the door, platform and moulding. The mansions of the images of gods should be consecrated in the prescribed way for the gods.

14-23. The hall should be consecrated with the ceremonies as described (for the installation of an image). The consecrator should bathe in the herbal waters and becoming pure and alert should feed brahmins with sweets. He should then enter the hall decked with pitchers and arches, with his

---

\(^1\) One of the formulae for ascertaining the right proportion of measurement.
hand placed on the back of a cow, and after having wished prosperity to the brahmins. The householder should then enter the house after having honoured the astrologers. The following mantra of prosperity should be repeated.

"Om, O Mother Earth! related to Vasiṣṭha! you rejoice with the Vasus (semi-divine beings) and people. Glory be to the daughter of Bhārgava¹ (Śukra the preceptor of demons), the giver of success to her offsprings. The accomplished goddess! relative of Aṅgiras! You grant me my heart’s desire. O auspicious one! related to (sage) Kaśyapa! make my intellect good. Endowed with all herbs! Surrounded by all gems and herbs! Shining one! Joyous one! related to Vasiṣṭha! May you amuse here! Daughter of Prajāpati (Brahman)! O Goddess! Handsome in all parts! Noble-minded! Beautiful one! The strict observer of disciplines! One who is related to Kaśyapa! May you enjoy in this house! O Adored by the great preceptors! Adorned with perfumes and garlands! Bestower of prosperity! O Goddess! Daughter of Bhārgava! May you amuse in this house! The primordial element! The inexplicable one! Accomplished! O daughter of sage Aṅgiras! O Goddess of bricks! I establish you. You confer on me my desires! One surrounded by the lords of regions, place and the house! You be furtherer of men, wealth, elephant, horse and cow.

CHAPTER SIXTYSIX

Mode of consecration of other gods

The Lord said:

1-2. I shall describe the mode of consecration (of images) of all gods—the Ādityas (the suns, twelve in number), Vasus (eight), Rudrāḥ (eleven), Sādhyāḥ, Viśvedvāḥ, Aśvins and the sages etc. It is like (the consecration of the image of) Vāsudeva. I shall describe special features (of ceremonies). The first letter of the name of particular deity should be taken.

¹. Denotes Lakṣmi.
3. It should be split into syllables. The longer vowels should be split. The mystical letter (of the deity) is first formed by adding a nasal and the \textit{pranava}.

4. (The images of) all gods as well as those who had led a disciplined life and had observed austerities and atonements and those who had lived in the monasteries should be worshipped and installed with their respective principal \textit{mantra}.

5. I shall describe the mode of fasting for a month and that which concludes on the twelfth day (of a fortnight). One should place a stone slab and pitchers made of bell metal filled with the articles (described earlier).

6. After having collected the \textit{brahmakūrca} (grass), the worshipper should prepare the gruel made of barley and milk of tawny (coloured) cow with (the mantra) \textit{tadviśnōḥ}.

7. It should be stirred with the ladle holding it with (the recitation of) \textit{pranava} (\textit{om}). Having got it ready and bringing it down lord \textit{Viṣṇu} should be worshipped and the offering made.

8. The oblation should be done with the \textit{vyāhṛti} (\textit{bhūḥ}, \textit{bhuvaḥ}, \textit{suḥ}), the vedic mantras such as \textit{gāyatri}, \textit{tadviṣṇaś}, \textit{viṣvataścaśuḥ} and \textit{bhūragnaye}.

9. Oblations should be given to Sūrya, Prajāpati (the creator), (the lord of) the ethereal region. Oblation to sky ! Oblations to Brahman ! (Oblations should be given upto) the earth and the great king.

10. Oblations should be done with (the mantras) \textit{tasmai}, \textit{somaḥ ca, rājaśājadam}. Having offered the remaining part of the gruel as oblation, \textit{digbali} (offerings to the quarters) should be done with due respect.

11. Having made oblation of one hundred and eight twigs of the \textit{palāša} (tree) along with clarified butter, oblations should be done eight times with sesamum and water along with the \textit{puruṣasūkta}.

1. RV.1.22.20a.
2. \textit{Om bhūr bhuvāssvāḥ tatasvitrauvaeyam bhargo devasya dhiyā do naḥ praocodayat.}
3. RV.1.22.21a.
4. RV.10.81.3a.
5. TA. 10.2.1 or 10.4.1.
6. RV.10.90.
12-13. Having offered oblations for Brahman, Viṣṇu, Iṣa (Śiva), the attendant gods, the planets and the presiding deities of different worlds, oblations should be offered for the mountains, rivers, and oceans. Sacrificial spoon full of clarified butter should be offered thrice as the final oblation with the (recitation of) vyāhṛtis (bhuḥ, bhuvah, svaḥ).

14-15. O Brahman after having sipped the gruel along with the pañcapāya (five things got from a cow) with the vaisnava mantra and the syllable vaṣat, the priest should be paid fees, vessel containing sesamum along with gold, cloth and a cow well-adorned. The wise man should complete the austerity with (the utterance of) “May lord Viṣṇu be pleased!”

16-17. I shall describe in full about another mode of consecration other than that of fasting for a month. The lord of the celestials (Viṣṇu) should be worshipped and the gruel pertaining to Viṣṇu should be prepared out of sesamum, rice, nivāra grains (rice growing unsown), śyāmāka or barley. After adding clarified butter and lifting it up, oblation should be made with that with the mantras relating to that form of the lord.

18. Oblation should be made to Viṣṇu and other gods who are the lords of different months then. Om ! oblations for Viṣṇu ! Oblations to lord Viṣṇu, the ornament ! Oblations to Lord Viṣṇu, the tiṣṭivīṣṭa (pervaded by rays) (an epithet of Viṣṇu) ! Om ! oblations to Narasimha (man-lion form of Viṣṇu). Om ! oblations to Puruṣottama (the foremost) (an epithet of Viṣṇu) ! Twelve twigs of the holy fig tree dipped in the clarified butter should be given as oblation.

19. Twelve oblations (should be made) with the mantra viṣṇo rarāta'. Twelve oblations with the gruel should be made with (the mantras) idam viṣṇu,² irāvati³.

20. Similarly, oblations should be made with clarified butter with (the mantra) tadviprāsa.⁴ Having done the remaining oblation, three concluding oblations should be made.

21. Having repeated the hymn yuñjate⁵ the gruel should be

---

1. TS. I.2.13.3.
2. RV. I.22.17a.
3. RV. 7. 99.3.a.
4. RV. 1. 22.21a.
5. RV. 5. 81.1.a.
partaken. With the pranava (syllable om) repeated at the end of the respective name the gruel should be placed in a vessel made of holy fig tree.

22. Then twelve brahmans (representing) the twelve presiding deities of the months should be fed. The priest (would be) the thirteenth. The thirteenth place should be offered to him.

23. Thirteen pitchers containing sweet water along with umbrellas, shoes, clothes, gold and garlands should be given to them for the sake of conclusion of the rite.

24. A path-way should be laid out (for the cattle) saying, "May the cows get pleased! May they move happily!" Then the sacrificial post should be planted there.

25-26. A water-shed in the pleasure grove, monastery and path-way should be of ten cubits. Having done the oblation etc. in the house duly in the prescribed way, the householder should enter the house according to the earlier injunctions. Offering of food etc. without any restrictions should be made on all these (occasions).

27. Fees should be paid by wise men to the brahmans according to one's capacity. Whoever causes to set up a pleasure grove stays eternally in the garden of Indra.

28. One who builds a monastery goes to heaven and remains in the world of Indra. One who sets up a water-shed (lives) with Lord Varuṇa. By (the construction of) a pathway one remains in the heaven.

29. One who builds a bridge of bricks and who constructs a pathway for cows in the cattle stall and one who observes the austerities in the prescribed way dwells in the region of Viṣṇu. One who performs atonements gets rid of all sins.

30. Having constructed a house (for the god) one dwells in heaven so long as the universe exists. The installation and consecration of Lord Śiva etc., the lords of their edifices (have been described).
CHAPTER SIXTYSEVEN

Renovation of decayed images

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the process of replacing the old images. The priest should bathe the images with their ornaments on them. The fixed class of images should be put in a room and the extremely time-worn ones should be rejected.

2. A broken or mutilated stone (image) (should be cast aside) and a new one the same as the previous one should be installed (in its place) by the priest after merging the principles according to the process of merging (described earlier).

3. Having made one thousand oblations with the Narasimha (mantra), the priest should lift that image. The old image made of wood should be put into fire and the one made of stone should be thrown into water.

4. The old image made of a mineral or gem should be carried on a vehicle after covering it with cloth etc. and be discarded in the deep waters of the ocean.

5. It should be thrown into waters accompanied by the notes of music instruments. Fees should be paid to the priest.

6. New images of the same size and made of the same material should be installed on the same day. One accrues great merit by the renovation of wells, tanks and ponds.

CHAPTER SIXTYEIGHT

Mode of taking out a procession and celebration of festivals after fixing the new image:

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the celebration of festival after the image has been installed. It shall be for a night, or three or five nights.
2-3. Without the festival the installation would become fruitless. The festival for the deity should be celebrated when the sun enters the solstitial or the equinoctial points in the bed-chamber or garden or it may be done in favour of the person at whose instance the ceremony is performed with the sowing of auspicious seeds and the notes of sacred music.

4-5. An earthen vessel, a small water pot or an embankment are suitable for the sowing of seeds. Grains of barley, uncultivated rice, sesame, green gram, wheat, white mustard, horsegram, and black gram should be winnowed, washed and sown. Offerings should be made in the east and other directions. Lighted lamps should be carried round the edifice in the night.

6. (Offering should be made) to Indra, Kumuda and other deities and spirits. They visit the place assuming shapes of men.

7. (One who carries such lamps) certainly gets the merit of (doing) *avamadha* (horse sacrifice) for every step he places. The priest should submit to the lord (as follows) after his return.

8. "O Lord! best among the Gods! you have to be taken in a procession tomorrow. By all means you deserve to permit us O Lord! to commence the same.

9. Having informed the lord in this way the festivities should be undertaken. The platform should be decorated with young shoots of plants and small water-jar.

10-11. Four pillars (should be erected). The image should be placed in a *svastika* (figure) (drawn) in their midst. Desired objects should be painted and placed there and the act of making the deity present in the image should be done with the *vaiśnava mantra*. (The image) should be anointed with ghee with (the recitation of) the principal (*mantra*). Or the wise man should arrange an incessant flow of ghee over the image the whole night.

12. Having shown the mirror, there should be the waving of light, auspicious singing and instrumental music, fanning, worship, and present of light. The deity should be worshipped with incense and flowers.

13. Turmeric, green-gram, saffron and white powders should be put on the head of image. But when ghee (is placed over the head) it gets the merit of all sacred places for the devotees.
14. Having bathed and worshipped the image that is placed in the car for being taken around, the officers of the king should take it to the river-side accompanied by music, umbrella and other things.

15. A platform should be got ready at a distance of a yojana (eight or nine miles) before the river. The image should be brought down from the car and placed on the platform.

16. Gruel should be prepared and sweet gruel should be offered as oblation. The sacred waters (of the sacred spots) should be invoked for their presence with (the recitation of) vedic mantras symbolising the waters.

17. The image should again be worshipped with the principal oblations uttering the mantra āpo hi śthā. The image should again be carried to the waters and the aghamarsana2 hymn repeated.

18. (The priest) should bathe with the assembly of brahmins and then the image should be lifted and placed on the platform. Having worshipped it there that day it should then be taken to the temple. The priest should worship it as in the fire which gets him enjoyment and liberation.

CHAPTER SIXTYNINE

Mode of conducting the bathing festival

The Fire (Lord) said:

1. O Brahman! Listen! I shall describe in detail (the mode of conducting) the bathing festival. The pitchers should be placed in a drawn figure in the shed in front of the temple.

2. First of all, God Hari (Viṣṇu) should be contemplated, propitiated and offered oblations before doing anything. One should offer oblations hundred or thousand times along with the final one.

3. The materials for bathing should then be brought and the pitchers also should be placed. The pitchers to the necks of which

1. RV.10.9.1a.
2. RV.10.190—ṭāṃ kā satyam eśbhīdham
threads have been tied should be made fragrant and they should be held in a circle.

4. A square should be drawn and divided into eleven compartments. The gruel should be placed at the centre, the adjacent parts having been cleaned.

5. The nine angular points commencing with east should be filled with powdered rice etc., and the pitcher should be brought by the wise man after having formulated the kumbha mudra\(^1\).

6. Darbha grass should be put on them with the puṇḍarikākṣa (an epithet of Viṣṇu) (lotus-eyed) mantra. A pitcher filled with water and containing all gems should be placed in the middle.

7. The barley, paddy, sesame, uncultivated rice, śyāmaka (grains), horse gram, green gram and white mustard seeds (should be put) in the eight directions in order.

8-9. A pitcher filled with ghee should be placed in the middle of the eastern side in the midst of nine pitchers. The remaining pitchers should be filled with the decoctions of the (barks of) palāśa, aśvattha, nyagrodha, bīlva, udumbara, śiriṣa, jambū, sami and kapittha. The central pitcher in the nine pitchers in the south-east should be filled with honey.

10. The remaining eight pitchers should be filled with the earth taken from loosening by cow’s horn, elephant’s tusk, horse hoofs, mountains, Ganges bed, sacred spots, rivers and fields.

11-12. In the nine pitchers on the south, the central one should be filled with sesame. The other eight pitchers should be filled with nāraṅga, jambira, kharjūra, nārikeśa (coconut), pāga (arecanut), pomegranate, panasa fruits. In the nine pitchers on the south-west, the central pitcher should be filled with milk.

13-15. (The remaining eight pitchers should be) duly (filled with) saffron (kusumka), nāga, campaka, mālatt, jasmine, punnāga, karavira, and mahoipala flowers. In the nine pitchers on the west, the central pitcher should contain the coconut water. (The other pitchers should contain) waters of the river, ocean, tank, well, rain water, water from the melted ice, waters of the falls, and of the Ganges. In the nine pitchers on the north-west the central one should have banana fruits.

16. The divine herbs sahadevi, kumāri, simhi, uyāghri, amṛṭa,

1. A posture made with the hands representing a pitcher.
viṣṇuparṇa, satasiva and vaca should be placed in the other eight pitchers.

17-19. In the east and the northern (directions) among the nine pitchers one should place the central one having curd. The other pitchers should duly be filled with the fragrant substances—cardamom, vaca, kuśtha, bālaka, the two varieties of sandal, the kastūrikā creeper and the black agallochum. (In the central pitcher among the nine pitchers on the north east) one should fill waters for purification. In the other pitchers we should have (the materials) candra, tāra, sukla, girisāra (iron), trapu (tin), camphor, śrṣa and gems.

20. They should be anointed with ghee and lifted up and bathed with the principal mantra with perfumes and worshipped. Having offered oblations into the fire, the final oblation should be offered.

21. Offering should be made to all spirits. After paying fees to (the priest), (the priest and the brahmins) should be fed after having installed the images of deities, sages and other divinities.

22. Having installed (the image of the god) in this way one should conduct the bathing festival. One who bathes (the image) in one thousand eight pitchers gets all fortune.

23. By bathing at the conclusion of the rite, the bathing festival concludes. The marriage and other festivals of (the goddesses) Gaurī (consort of Śiva), Lakṣmī (consort of Viṣṇu) should be celebrated after the bathing festival.

CHAPTER SEVENTY

Mode of planting trees

The Lord said:

1-2. I shall describe the mode of planting trees conferring enjoyment and emancipation. The trees having been smeared with all the herbs and adorned with fragrant powders should be decorated with flower garlands. Cloth should be put around
them. (The rite known as) the perforation of the ear should be done for them with a golden needle.

3-4. Collyrium should be applied with a short stick. Seven kinds of fruits (should be placed) on the platform. The pitchers should be consecrated. The offering should be made for (the gods) Indra and others and the consecration should be done. Oblations to the fire should be done for (the sake of) plants. Remaining in the midst of trees a cow should be let off with the (recitation of) abhisekamantra.

5-6. Brahmins should bathe the trees as well as the yajamāna with the waters of pitchers placed in the platform with (the recitation of) the ṛk, yajus, sāma mantras and also that of varuṇa accompanied by auspicious music. The yajamāna should adorn (himself) and should present the fees as well as a cow, ornament and cloth.

7. Food should be given along with milk (to brahmins) for four days consecutively. Oblation should be made with sesame and twigs of palāśa (tree). The sacrificial priest should be paid the fees double (the value of what is given to other brahmins).

8. The construction of sheds etc. here should be done as laid down earlier. The consecration of trees and a garden destroys one’s sins and gets the highest merit.

9. Listen to the (mode of) installation (of the image) of Sūrya (sun), Gaṇeśa, the goddess (Gaurī) and the attendant deities of Lord Hari as described byĪśa (Śiva) to Skanda (earlier).

CHAPTER SEVENTYONE

Mode of worshipping Gaṇeśa

The God said:

1-2. I shall describe the (mode of) worship of Gaṇa (Gaṇeśa) which removes obstacles and confers the desired objects. (The worship of six kinds should be done as follows): The heart with “oblations to Gaṇeśa”, the head with “(obla-
tions) to the one-tusked”, the tuft with “(oblations) to the one who has the ear like that of an elephant”, the armour with “(oblations) to the elephant-faced”, the eye with “(oblations) to the big-bellied,” the weapons with “(oblations) to one who has his own tusk in his hands”.

3-5. One should worship the gaṇa, the preceptor, the sandals, the (divine) energy, Ananta, the dharma, and the collection of bones in the lower part of the pedestal, the cover, the petals of the lotus, the lotus and the principal letter, (should be worshipped) in the upper part. (The energies) (are) Jvālinī, Nandā, Śūryeśā, Kāmarūpā, Udayā, Kāmavarttinī, Satyā, and Vighnānāśā. The seat (should be worshipped) with perfumes and earth. (With the following letters the appropriate acts should be performed): the drying with yam, the burning with ram, the agitating with lam and making it to nectar with vam. The gāyatri-mantra is: lambodarāya vidmehe mahodarāya dhimahi tanno dantīḥ pracodayāt.¹

6-7. The following are the names of Gaṇeśa to be worshipped: “Gaṇapati (Lord of gaṇas), Gaṇādhīpa (chieftain of the gaṇas), Gaṇeśa (Lord of gaṇas), Gaṇānāyaka (the lord of gaṇas), Gaṇakrīḍa (one who sports with the gaṇas), Vakratunda (having a bent trunk), Ekadamsṭra (having one tusk), Mahodara (big-bellied), Gajavaktra (elephant-faced), Lambakukṣi (long-bellied), Vikṣa (dreadful), Vighnanāśana (destroyer of impediments), Dhūmravarṇa (tawny-coloured) and Mahendra.

CHAPTER SEVENTY-TWO

Mode of bathing and daily worship

The God said:

1. O Skanda! I shall describe the modes of bathing and worship after the installation everyday. Having bathed one should dig up eight fingers of earth with the sword.

¹. May we know the Supreme person. For that, we meditate upon lambodara (long-bellied) and mahādāra (big-bellied). May Dantin (one who has the tusk) impel us towards it.
2. The pit should be filled with the earth thus removed and it should be carried to the river bed and placed there. It should then be purified with the weapon.

3-5. The grass should be lifted up with the śikhā (tuft) (mantra) and divided into three with the armour (mantra). Having washed up to the navel and foot with one part of them, the other part should be burnt with the astra mantra and sprinkled all over the body. Having pressed the eyes with the hands one should remain immersed in the water for some time after controlling the breath. One should contemplate in the heart, the weapon, radiant like the deadly fire. Having finished the mud bath in this way one should rise up from waters.

6-7. Having worshipped the astrasandhyā (the union of weapon), one should bathe according to the injunctions laid down. The sacred waters of the rivers Sarasvatī and others should be drawn into the heart with the (formation of) ankuśa-mudrā (a formation with the fingers resembling the goad). Having established it (there), one should collect the remaining mud formulating the samhāramudrā (posture with the fingers indicating destruction) and enter the navel-deep water.

8-9. (The remaining mud) should be made into three parts on the left palm facing the north. One part of it on the south once with the aṅga mantras, the next part with the (previous mantra) seven times and the one on the north with the Śiva mantra ten times and duly thus the parts should be sanctified. After having recited the mantra for the weapon ending with hum phat, the first part (of the earth) should be scattered in all directions.

10. Having the part on the north and reciting the Śiva-mantra the waters of Śiva should be accomplished. The part on the south (sanctified with the aṅga mantra) should be smeared all over the body from head to foot.

11-12. After having recited the four aṅgamānas and covered all the (nine) apertures (in the body) with the recitation of the sammukhikaraṇa mantra (mantra accomplishing the presence), one should contemplate Lord Śiva or Lord Hari or the Ganges and plunge into the waters. Then the ṣaḍaṅga mantra (mantra for assigning to the limbs of the body) ending with vauṣat should be recited and water poured (over the head).
13-15. One should place water in the pitchers in the east (and other directions) in order to prevent any harm during ablution. Having bathed one should apply sweet perfumes such as emblic myrabolans which are (considered as) royal honour. Having bathed and come out, that water should be made to cease to exist with the samhārini (mudrā). One should then bathe from head to foot with the ashes duly purified by the samhītā (vedic) mantras or concluding rites with (the recitation) of the mantra hum phat.

16-17. Having performed the mala snāna, (bathing with mud), the vidhisnāna (bathing with the recitation of mantras), one should besmear the head, face, heart, and the genital organ with the (mantras of gods) Īṣa (Īsāna), Tatpuruṣa, Aghora, Guhyaka and Jāta (Sadyojāta) in the three twilights, night, and before and after the commencement of rainy season.

18-19. If a person happens to touch a woman, an eunuch, a man of lower caste, a cat, hare or mouse just after getting up from sleep, or eaten food or drunk water one should do the āgneyaka bathing, standing up with uplifted arms, the face having turned towards the east, being cleansed by the shower of sun’s rays.

20. The māhendra bathing (consists in the recitation of the) Īṣa mantra and walking seven steps in the midst of herds of cows being besmeared with the dust (arising) from the hoofs.

21. The pāvana (purifying) bathing (should be done) with the nine mantras or the constituent mantra and the pouring of water (should be done) with the mantras sadyojāta, etc.

22. The bathing with the mantra should be done in this manner in honour of (the gods) Varuṇa, Agni and others with (the recitation) of the principal mantra being preceded by the regulation of the breath.

23. The mental bathing which has been universally enjoined should be performed in honour of Lord Viṣṇu, by uttering the mantra sacred to him.

24. O Guha (son of Lord Śiva) ! I shall describe the rules (relating to) the twilight (worship) (to be performed) with different mantras. After having had a look one should drink the water, the Brahma and Śaṅkara tirthas (from the root of different fingers).

25. (One should pronounce) the different principles consti-
tuting one's self ending with the term svadhā, touching firmly the (nine) apertures (in the body). After having done the sakalikaraṇa (accomplishing deed) one should remain composed by (the performance of) regulation of breath.

26. The performer should mentally repeat thrice the śivasamhitā. After having sipped water and performing nyāsa (assigning gods or mantras in different parts of the body, one should meditate upon the goddess brāhmī and the sandhyā in the morning as follows:

27. (The goddess) having red complexion, has four faces, four arms with hanging garlands in the right arms and a stick and kamanḍalu (small pitcher) in the left arms and seated in the crossed-leg posture on the swan.

28. The midday twilight should be contemplated as Vaiś-ṇavī, white (in complexion), seated with crossed-legs on the Garuḍā, holding conch and disc in the left arm and the mace and abhaya (mudrā) (hand showing protection) in the right hand.

29. Raudrī should be meditated upon as seated on the lotus and as riding the bull, possessing three eyes, decorated by the moon and holding trident and rosary in the right arm and the protective posture (abhaya) and mace in the left arm.

30. The twilight is the witness of deeds of men. The soul (should be known) as following its radiance. The fourth twilight is that of the learned and it is meditated upon in the night.

31. The supreme sandhyā is declared as that which remains invisible in the cavities situated at the heart, and the upper end of the nose and which secures the realization of Śiva.

32. The root of the fore-finger (is known to be) the pīṭhirttha and that of the little finger as that of Prajāpati. The root of the thumb (is known to be) that of Brahmā, while the forepart of the hand is held sacred for all gods.

33. It is the place of sacred fire on the palm of the left hand, and the soma on that of the right hand. All the tips and folds on the fingers (are sacred) for the sages.

34. After having got ready the sacred waters for Śiva with the mantras pertaining to Śiva, one should sprinkle that water with the sandhidā mantras.

35. The water sprinkled from the right hand should drip
down through the left hand and the head should be sprinkled (with water) with the (repetition of) mantras.

36. The water remaining in the right palm should be carried to the tip of the nose and should be conceived as white in colour and as the embodiment of knowledge. The water should then be drawn through the right nostril and retained.

37. That water should then be ejected into the right palm after having conceived it as black in colour because of the redemption of one’s sins. It should be thrown on a stone slab. This is known to be the aghanarṣaṇa (redeeming from sin) rite.

38. Then one should repeat the gāyatrī mantra as many times as possible after having offered the respectful arghya consisting, of kuṣa, flowers and unbroken rice to Śiva with the mantras of Śiva ending with (the syllable) svāhā (oblation).

39. I shall describe the offering of water oblations to the god. One should utter the mantra Śivāya svāhā (oblations to Śiva) and offer water. (The syllable) svāhā should be repeated in all cases.

40. (The nyūsa should be done as) hrām, to the heart; hrim, to the head; h्रum, to the tuft of hair; hraim, to the armour and the weapons, (or in the alternative), the eight gods (can be located) in the heart and other limbs).

41-44. (The water oblations should be performed for the following gods) —hrām, to the Vasus, Rudras, Viśve (devas), (to the sages)—hām to Bhṛgus, Aṇgirās, Atri; salutation to Vaśīṣṭha, Pulastya, Kratu, Bhāradvāja; salutations to Viśvāmitra, to Pracetas; vaṣaṭ to Sanaka; hām vaṣaṭ to Sananda, vaṣaṭ to Sanatana, vaṣaṭ to Sanatkumāra; vaṣaṭ to Kapila, to Pañcaśikha, (the ceremony being done) with the fingers of the right hand placed at the elbow joint of the left.

45. Vaṣaṭ to all spirits. One should (offer water of oblations) to the spirits, gods, and manes with the sacred thread placed on the right shoulder and with the tips of the kuṣa and sesamum.

46. (Oblation should be offered) to the fire, the conveyor of offerings, to Soma, to Yama, to Aryamā, (the manes), Agni-manes), Agniśvātta (and) Barhiṣada with the addition of svadhā (food).

47. (Oblations should be given) to (the manes) Ājyapa, Soma and to all manes as it would be done for the gods.
Om, hāṁ to Iśāna, the svadhā (food) should be offered to the (manes) (departed) father and grand-father.

48. (Oblations should be offered) to the great-grandfather and the manes in the form of preta (the form of the manes during the period of obsequies after one's death), the fathers, grandfathers, and great grand-fathers.

49-50. Food oblations (should be given) to great-great-grand-fathers, mother side relatives such as the maternal grand-fathers, great-grandfathers, great-great-grandfathers and all manes. Food oblation (should be offered) to all departed paternal relatives, preceptors, to different quarters of heaven, to their lords, to the divine mothers and to demons.

CHAPTER SEVENTYTHREE

Mode of worshipping the Sun

The Lord said:

1. O Skanda! I shall describe the (mode of) worship of Sun preceded by the assignment (of letters) on the body. After having contemplated as “I am the Sun”, one should worship by offering waters (arghya).

2-4. It (should be conceived) as filled with red colour with the drop (of water) drawn to the forehead. After having worshipped it and after making the protective covering with the limbs of the sun-god, that water should be sprinkled on the materials of worship and the sun-god should be worshipped (remaining) facing the east. (One should recite) the syllables om am (hṛdayāya etc. and worship Daṇḍi and Piṅgala (attendants of the sun) respectively at the right and left sides of the entrance. (Salutations should be made to the gṛha saying) am gṝṇya on the north-east. The preceptor (should be worshipped) in the south-east and the lofty seat (of the deity) should be worshipped in the middle of the altar.

5. One should worship vimala, sāra, parama and sukha, (the rays of the sun), which are to be worshipped in the directions
south-east (and should be conceived as) strong as the lion and of the colours of white, red, yellow and blue.

6-8. One should worship (the essences of the energies of the lord) rā-diśā (radiant), ra-jayā (victorious), ru-bhadṛā (auspicious), re-vibhūti (prosperity), rai-vimala (pure), rai-amogha (profound), rai-vidyut (lightning), in the (quarters) east etc. inside the lotus (shaped diagram). The seat of the sun would be at the centre (established by the syllable) rām. One should invoke the sun and worship his form with the six-syllabled (mantra) om ham khakholāya. One should assign the sun-god after having meditated upon the altar with the folded hands lifted to the forehead.

9. One should invoke the god (with the mantra) hrām hrim sa and salutations to the sun-god, showing the mudrā. One should offer him perfume etc. and show the bimbamudrā¹.

10. One should show the padmamudrā² and the bilvamudrā³ (to the god) in all directions commencing with the south-east. Om am salutations to the heart. (Salutations) to sun on the head.

11. Bhūrbhuvah svāh! Obeisance to the lord of celestials in the tuft of hair in the south-west, hum to the armour in the north-west, hām to the eyes at the centre.

12. Va! (salutations) to the weapons in the east etc. Then one should show mudrās. Dhenumudrā (fingers folded in the shape of a cow) to the heart etc. The Goviśaṇa mudrā⁴ should be shown to the eyes.

13-14. The trasani (the dreadful) should be added to the mantra of the weapon and obeisance should be made to the planets (as follows)—som salutations to the Moon, bum salutations to Mercury, bṛṃ to Jupiter, bham to Venus, am to Mars, sam to Saturn, ram to Rāhu and kem to Ketu (to be done) in the petals (of the lotus) commencing with the east. The perfumes etc. (should be offered) with the khakholka mantra.

15. Having recited the principal mantra, water of oblation from the water-vessel should be offered to the sun-god. Then

---

¹ Intertwining of fingers representing a form.
² Intertwining of fingers representing a lotus.
³ Intertwining of fingers in a particular way.
⁴ Formation of fingers representing the horn of a cow.
the worshipper should sing the glory of the lord, pay obeisance to him with his face turned away and say “Pardon me, (taking leave of thee)”.  

16-17. One should mentally merge the five component principles in the fundamental one with the syllable phat. The sun-god should be conceived as identical with lord Śiva in the lotus of the heart. One should offer light to the lord as a garland made of the solar rays. One gets everything by thus worshipping and contemplating the sun-god or by oblation unto fire in his honour.

CHAPTER SEVENTYFOUR

Mode of worshipping Śiva

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the (mode of) worshipping Śiva. After having sipped water, and repeated the syllable Om, one should wash the entrance of the temple with water (consecrated by the) mantra of the weapon and worship the guardian deities of the door-ways and of the oblations etc.

2-3. One should worship goddess Sarasvatī (consort of Lord Brahmā), Lakṣmī (consort of Lord Viṣṇu) and Gaṇa at the threshold, Nandin (attendant of Lord Śiva) and the Ganges on the right and Mahākāla (form of Śiva) and the Yamunā (river) on the left imagining himself as having divine sight, and after having driven the spirits and impediments present in the sky by throwing a consecrated flower.

4. One should kick the earth thrice with the right heels and enter the place of worship after leaping across the threshold holding the left door frame.

5. Having entered (the temple) by placing the right foot (first) and placing the weapons at the threshold, one should worship at its centre (repeating the following): om, hām, (obeisance) to Brahmā, the presiding deity of the dwelling place.

6. Then he should go to the river Ganges silently carrying
pure golden pitchers by means of searching instruments, after having obtained permission from Śiva.

7. One should fill them with waters of the river filtered with the cloth after the repetition of gāyatri or the hṛdayamantra, and purifying one's body.

8. The materials for worship such as the perfumes, unbroken rice and flowers etc. should be placed in front of the place and the purification of five material components (of the earth) should be done.

9. Having placed (these materials) on the right side of the deity with a pleasing face and having lifted these showing samhāra mudrā (posture of the fingers representing destruction), one should place them on the head with (the repetition of) the mantra.

10-11. One who is desirous of enjoying the fruits of action should meditate upon his soul in the twelve-petalled lotus in the heart by means of showing pānikacchopikā (a particular way of showing the fingers)¹. As an alternative one should purify the five elements by meditating upon the apertures in the body from the toes of the feet upwards both inside and outside.

12. One who meditates should control his breath and meditate on the energy which pervades the region of the heart, in the letter hum which resembles the fire and which is situated at the centre of the aperture.

13. The breath should then be let out and the fiery image should be led through the heart, neck, palate, the intervening space between the two eye-brows and the seat of the soul in the head (brahmarandhra), with the ending (syllable) phaṭ.

14. Having broken the knots, the life syllable hum should be located on the head and the consciousness should be reflected back in the heart by means of the pūraka (filling with air drawn through the nostril).

15. Having placed (the syllable) hum on the tuft, one should meditate upon the absolute soul of the form of a speck. Having withheld the breath at a single stretch, one should unite the consciousness with Śambhu (Śiva).

16. After having merged himself with Śiva, by means of drawing his consciousness with the aid of bijamantras and the

1. Representing the tortoise.
recaka (exhalation of the breath), (the worshipper) should purify by carrying in the reverse order the luminous point (in the brain) to the point in (the nerve-complex).

17. One should merge the earth, wind, water, fire and sky, one into the other without any deviation in the order. You hear about it now!

18. The principle of earth is hard, of yellowish colour and bears the mark of thunderbolt. Then its destruction is wrought by the subtle mantra of the soul (namely) haum.

19. The entire body from foot to head should be contemplated as a four-sided figure, and the principle of wind should be meditated therein by five stretches of retention of breath.

20. This principle which has been established with the principal syllable hrim should be contemplated as of half-crescent-shaped in a liquid state, white in colour, beautiful and impressed with (the figure of) the lotus.

21. The reverential principle of fire which is causeless and which is the end of men, should be purified by four stretches of retention of breath along with the Rāma mantra.

22. The orb of fire should be conceived as three-sided, red (in colour), marked with (the sign of) svastika and as the form of knowledge and endowed with the principal syllable hūm.

23. The principle of water should be purified by means of three stretches of awful minuteness. The orb of wind (principle) (should be conceived) as marked with six dots.

24. It should be meditated as composed of tranquility, black in colour and endowed with the principal syllable of hrim (and purified) by two stretches (of retention of breath). The principle of earth should be purified.

25. (It should be contemplated) as filled in with ether, as of the form of the speck of ether, uniformly circular, spotless like the pure crystal and adorned by the energy of bindu.

26. After having contemplated on the form of the digit that is beyond tranquility by means of the (mantra) haum ending with phat, one should contemplate the pure (thing) by one stretch (of retention of breath).

27. One should then permeate the lotus or circles such as ādhāra (base), ananta (endless), dharma (righteousness) and jñāna (knowledge) with the shower of ambrosia with the principal mantra.
28. After having contemplated this seat of the heart, one should then invoke the form of essence of Śiva placed inside that (lotus) with twelve petals.

29. Then that form should be permeated everywhere with the divine ambrosia with the mantra of the energy ending with va\textit{s}a\textit{t} and the sakalik\textit{ar}a\textit{na} (accomplishing) rite should be performed.

30. The sakalik\textit{ar}a\textit{na} is that by which the mantras for the heart etc. are placed in the different parts of the body such as the heart, arms, and the little fingers of the hand.

31. Having protected the enclosure with the weapon and the outer place with its mantra the mah\textit{a}mudr\textit{a} consisting of the energy should be shown below and above that.

32-33. One should worship Śiva in the lotus in the heart from head to foot with the retention of breath and with the flowers of one’s own feeling. One should then offer the clarified butter of ambrosia to the fire of Śiva in the sacred pit of the navel with the mantras of Śiva. One should contemplate the white figure of the form of bindu on the forehead.

34. One of the vessels among the golden pitchers, should be purified by water of nectar got from the speck and by unbroken rice.

35. Having filled the vessel with the six constituents and after having worshipped it, it should be consecrated. After having protected it with the mantra h\textit{a} one should cover it with the armour.

36. After having made ready the water of offering, one should sprinkle the eight constituents (with water) by (showing) the dhenu mudr\textit{a} (a particular form of intertwining the fingers representing the cow). One should then sprinkle one’s own self on the head with the particles of that water.

37. One should sprinkle water of the weapon on the materials of worship kept there. One should then encircle them with the armour of p\textit{inda} with the h\textit{yt} (mantra).

38-39. After having shown the am\textit{t}a mudr\textit{a} (formation with fingers denoting non-decay) and putting flower on its seat and a mark on the forehead consecrated by the principal mantra (of the god) a bold man should remain perfectly silent at the time of bathing, worship of the god, (offering) oblation unto fire, eating, practising yoga and repetition of necessary (mantras).
40. The *mantra* should be purified by pronouncing the *nāda* (*om*) at the end. That purified *mantra* should then be used in the worship along with the *gāyatrī* (*mantra*) and the general water of oblation should be offered.

41. After having repeated the *brahmaṇaṅcaka*¹, (the worshipper) should collect the garland from the *liṅga* and offer it to Caṇḍā in the north-eastern direction.

42. The purification of the *liṅga* consists in the washing of the pedestal and the *liṅga* with the water (consecrated) by the *mantra* of weapon and *hrdayamantra* and sprinkle with the water (for washing) from the vessel of *arghya*.

43. All the celestials should be worshipped for the purification of the self, the materials, the *mantra* and the *liṅga*. *Hām*, salutations to God *Gaṇapati* in the north-western direction. One should pay obeisance to the preceptor in the north-east.

44-45. One should worship the goddess of the seat (of the god) in the *kārmasthā* (the tortoise form on the stone) as possessing complexion of the tender shoots and the seat of Śiva known as ananta (endless) should be worshipped as seated on the *brahmasthā* along with the attendants of the god such as Vicitra-keśa, Kṛta and Tretā who form the seat and shoes as they were of divinity.

46. Then the worshipper should worship righteousness, knowledge, detachment and prosperity, towards the south-east as possessing the hues of camphor, saffron, gold and collyrium respectively.

47-48. At the centre of the lotus-shaped diagram and in its petals in the east etc. one should worship the energy goddesses—Vāmā, Jyeṣṭhā, Raudrī, Kālī, Kālavikārinī, Balavikārinī and Balapramathanī in order as holding the chowries and as conferring boons and offering protection.

49. One should worship (the goddesses)—*Hām*, (salutations) to Sarvabhūtamahānī, (salutations) to Manonmanī, to Kṣiti, to Śuddhavidyā at the extremities of the petals (of the lotus diagram) as also the seat as spread over the component parts of the universe.

50-51. The lord of white complexion, possessing five faces and ten arms, all-pervasive, bearing the crescent moon and

---

¹ The five *mantras* of the five brahman forms of Śiva.
carrying weapons—spear, sword, lance, and staff in the right hands and a drum, citron, blue lotus, a string and a waterlily in the left hands should be located on the lion-seat.*

52-54. The image of Śiva possessing thirty-two characteristics (should be installed) at the centre. Ḫām, ham, hām (salutations) to the image of Śiva. After having meditated upon the self-luminant Śiva, the mantra should be led to the spot sacred to Śiva after leaving below the place sacred to Brahmā. Then (the worshipper) having meditated upon that Supreme form of Śiva, effulgent with the splendour of the moon, as a luminous point at the middle of the forehead and being invested with the six constituents, with flowers in folded palms, should deposit (those flowers) on the form of (Goddess) Lakṣmī.

55-57. Om, hām, haum salutations to Śiva. (The deity) should be invoked with the invoking hṛd (mantra). Having established Śiva with the sthāpana (mudrā)¹, and placed near (that) should be checked with Niṣṭhurā and Kālakāntī concluding with phat. After having removed obstructions by sending them away and making obeisance by (showing) the lingamudrā, it should be covered with the hṛd (mantra). The invocation should follow it. Then standing in front of the image he should repeat. “Let you be located and firmly established. O lord! I am in your presence.”

58. The (rite of) avagunṭhana signifies the presence and super vision of the God and the exhibition of one’s devotion (to the God) from the commencement to the end of the act.

59. After having done the accomplishing act with the six mantras, the (rite of) amṣṭikarana should be performed by mentioning different parts of the body along with the body.

60-61. The worshipper should permeate his heart with the energy of consciousness of Śambhu (Śiva). Similarly, (he should contemplate) the tuft of hair of Śiva as formed of the eightfold glories. The worshipper should contemplate the invincible energy of God as forming his armour, the unbearable prowess of God which removes all impediments (and the words) salutations, svadhā, svāhā and vausaf (should be appended) in order.

62-65. The water for washing the feet should be offered:

¹. Formation with the fingers denoting firm establishment.
preceded by the recitation of the ḫṛd (mantra). The water (should be offered) at the lotus feet and the water for the rinsing of the mouth at the face of the image, the respectful offering at the head of the lord along with the dūrva (grass), flowers and unbroken rice. Having purified the supreme lord with the ten purifications thus, one should worship with the five kinds of services such as the flowers etc. as laid down (in the code books). Having sprinkled and rubbed (the image) with salt, mustard seed etc., it should be slowly bathed with drops of water, flowers, perfumes, milk, curd, ghee, honey and sugar successively.

66. The defects in the above materials should be rectified by worshipping with materials along with the recitation of Īśa mantras. Lord Śiva should be bathed with water and fragrance with the principal mantra.

67-68. Having applied the paste of barley, it should be bathed copiously with cold water and also with fragrant water according to one’s ability. Having wiped it dry with a clean cloth, the preliminary offering of water should be given. The hand should not be moved over the head (of the image). The linga should never be left without any flower on its head.

69. Having smeared it with sandal etc. and worshipped with flowers with the mantras of Śiva, the vessel for holding the perfumes should be consecrated with the weapons (mantra) and worshipped with the mantras of Śiva.

70. The bell consecrated by the weapon (mantra) should be taken and the incense should be offered. The water for rinsing should be given then (with the repetition of) svadha at the end and with the ḫṛd mantra.

71. Having shown light for the idol in the night, then water for rinsing should be offered. After having made obeisance to god and taking his permission, eatables and other articles of enjoyment should be offered.

72. The heart should be worshipped in the south-east, the moon on the north-east, the golden-coloured Śiva together with the tuft and blood on the south-west, Kṛṣṇa and armour on the north-west.

73. These gods having four faces and four arms should be worshipped in the petals in the east etc. along with the divine weapon similar to thunder and fierce teeth.
74. *Haum* salutations to Śiva at the base, *Om hām hūm hīm hom* in the head, *hṛṃ* to the tuft, *haim* to the armour, *ḥaḥ* to the weapons and to one with the attendants.

75-76. Waters for washing the feet, for rinsing the mouth and respectful offering, perfumes, flowers, incense, lamp, food offerings and water for rinsing again, should be given to lord Śiva. Intertwined blades of *kuśa* and unbroken rice should be placed on the head (of the image) of the lord. Perfumes, betel, piece of cloth for wiping the face and a mirror (should also be offered to the deity).

77-78. After having repeated the principal (*mantra*) eight hundred times, the sword of the lord covered by the sheath, protected by the *kuśa* and flowers and consecrated by *hṛd* (*mantra*) along with the unbroken rice and with the *udbhava mudrā* (a formation made with the fingers indicating generation). O most mysterious! Accept this repetition (of *mantra*) for our welfare.

79-81. “May there be success for me by this by your presence here”. Having recited this verse at first, the worshipper should offer to Śambhu (Śiva) the waters of respect with the right hand with (the repetition of) the principal *mantra*. Whatever good or bad that I may do O lord! let it be cast off from me who am in the region of Śiva. *Hūm kṣaḥ* O Śaṅkara, Śiva is the giver, Śiva is the enjoyer, Śiva is all this universe.

82. Śiva is victorious everywhere. I am identical with Śiva. After having repeated these two verses, the *japa* should be dedicated to the lord.

83. One-tenth (should be dedicated) to the limbs of Śiva. Having offered the waters of respect, one should adore (the deity). After circumambulating (the deity), one should bow to the eight-formed (representing the five elements, sun, moon and yajamāna) deity by prostrating (the eight limbs touching the ground). After salutation (the deity) should be worshipped in a picture or in the fire by meditation etc.
CHAPTER SEVENTY-FIVE

Mode of installation of the fire

The God said:

1. (The worshipper) should enter another room unseen with the vessel containing water for offering in his hand and should look to the arrangements of the materials essential in the performance of a sacrifice, as it were, with a divine eyesight.

2. He should look at the sacrificial pit with his face turned towards the north. The sprinkling and beating the water with the kuṣa should be done by (repeating) the mantra of the weapon and the consecration should be done with the mantra of the armour.

3. The digging out (a piece of earth), filling and levelling with the sword should be done with (the mantra of) the armour and bathing and division into parts (should be done) with the mantra of the arrow.

4. The (rites of) cleansing, anointing, fixing the crescent form, investiture of the sacred thread and worship (should be done) always by the mantra of the armour.

5. Three lines should be drawn in the north and one below them (should be drawn) so as to face the east. Whatever defects in them may be made good by touching them with the kuṣa and the astra-mantra of Śiva.

6. A quadrilateral figure should be drawn with the kuṣa by the mantras of vajri-karana (establishing firmly) and hṛd. The vessel for the rosaries should be laid with (the mantra of) the armour. The seat should be laid with the hṛd mantra.

7-8. The Goddess of speech along with the God should be invoked therein and worshipped. The consecrated fire brought from a holy place and placed in a pure receptacle, after leaving aside its parts presided over by the demons and purified by the divine look etc., the three fires audārya, aindava and bhauta should be made into one.

9-10. Om hūṃ (salutations) to god of fire. (The deity) should be established with the principal mantra of the fire. The fire which has been invoked with the vedic hymns and made immortal by showing the dhanus-mudrā (formation with the fingers representing a cow), and protected by mantras of weapons should
be covered by the armour. It should be worshipped by waving 
over the pit thrice and circumambulation.

11. Having meditated upon (the fire) as an element of 
Lord Śiva, (the worshipper) should contemplate it as lying 
dormant in the womb of Goddess of speech and cast by the 
Lord of speech.

12. The worshipper should have his knees resting on the 
ground and put the fire in his front with the hṛdaya mantra. Then 
the seeds of fire in the vicinity should be gathered at the centre.

13. The collection of clothes, purification and offering 
of water for rinsing the mouth (should be done) with the hṛdaya 
(mantra). Having worshipped the dormant fire, it should be 
protected by (the recitation of) the mantra of the shaft.

14. The embryo fire should be contemplated as tied around 
the wrist of the goddess as a bracelet. The fire should be 
worshipped with the sadyojāta (mantra) for the impregnation.

15. Three oblations to the fire should then be offered with 
(hṛdayamantra. For the puñyahavan (rite) (for the determination 
of the sex of the foetus) (generally performed) in the third month 
it should be worshipped on the left side.

16. Three oblations containing drops of water should be 
offered with the head. The simantonnayana (rite) (parting of 
the hair on the head) (performed) in the sixth month should be 
done after having worshipped the fire.

17. Three oblations should be offered into the fire, after 
having determined the formation of its face and body by one who 
wants to restore or open up the face.

18. As before the jātkarma (the purificatory rite on the 
birth of a child) and pūtakarma (the rite after the first menses) 
(usually performed) in the tenth month should be performed by 
kindling the fire with darbha etc. (Mental) bathing (should be 
done) to remove the impurities of the pregnancy.

19. After having mentally contemplated the golden bracelet 
of the goddess one should worship with the hṛdaya (mantra). He 
should sprinkle with water consecrated by the mantra of the wea-
pon for the immediate removal of impurities after the birth 
of a child.

20. The pitcher outside the receptacle for the sacred fire 
should be touched with the weapon (mantra) and (water) should 
be sprinkled over with the (mantra) of the armour. The ends of
the kuśa which form the boundary (of the sacrificial pit) and placed on the north and east (should be washed with water) with (the mantra of) the weapon.

21. The periphery of a circle around (the fire) should be determined with the kuśa, previously consecrated with the weapon and Ḥṛd mantra and then the cushions inscribed within it should be spread out by (reciting) the weapon mantra.

22. Five sacrificial sticks dipped in clarified butter should be offered into the fire with the repetition of the principal mantra. Brahmā, Śaṅkara, Viṣṇu and Ananta should be worshipped with the Ḥṛd (mantra).

23. The gods located in the periphery (of that circle) should be worshipped in turn with unbroken rice. The gods Indra to Īśāna who are directly facing the fire and are having their places inside the circle should be worshipped in their own regions with the Ḥṛd (mantra) “Protect this child (fire) by removing all obstacles, that might befall it.”

24-28. One should then make them hear this command of Śiva. He should then take the sacrificial spoon and the ladle, heat them on the fire and touch them with the base, middle and tips of the darbha with face downwards. In the place touched by the kuśa the three principles relating to the soul, knowledge and Śiva should be located duly with the sounds ḍhām, ḍrim, ḍūm and sām. Having located the goddess in the sacrificial spoon and Śambhu (Śiva) in the sacrificial ladle with the Ḥṛdaya mantra, their necks being girdled with three strings (of thread) and worshipped with flowers etc., kuṣas should be placed on them and they should be placed on the right side.

29-32. Having gathered the clarified butter of the cow that has been purified by looking at it and after having contemplated one’s own Brahma form and carrying that clarified butter, one should wave it over the pit and move it round and round in the south-east. Again having contemplated the Viṣṇu form, one should hold the clarified butter and carry it towards the north-east, it should be offered to Viṣṇu (into the fire) with the tips of the kuśa and with the mantra of the head ending with svāhā. Similarly, one should conceive the form of Rudra (Śiva) as a point in one’s own navel and meditate. One should sprinkle water over that with two kuṣas of the length of a span and held with the ring finger and thumb.
33. Water should be sprinkled over the fire in front (of the worshipper) (with the two kūtas) held (as above) accompanied by the mantra of the weapon. Similarly, the worshipper should again sprinkle water (over the fire) in front of him with the hṛṣ (mantra).

34. The burnt ashes of darbha collected with the hṛṣ (mantra) should be purified by striking with the implements and with the other lighted darbha it should be taken out and lighted.

35-36. The darbha burnt by the mantra of the weapon should again be thrown into the fire. Having put the knotted darbha of the length of a span in the clarified butter, one should contemplate the two for nights, the three arteries idā etc. in the clarified butter and offer the clarified butter divided into three parts as oblation unto fire with the sacrificial ladle in order with (the syllable) sva and hā. The remaining part of the clarified butter should also be offered to the fire successively.

37. Oṁ hāṁ oblation to god Agni. Oṁ hāṁ oblation to god Soma. Oṁ hāṁ oblation to the gods Agni and Soma. (The above oblations should be offered into the fire) for the purpose of opening (as it were) the three eyes of the fire god in his face.

38. The fourth oblation should be offered with the sacrificial ladle filled with clarified butter. Oṁ hāṁ oblation to fire-god for the offering of a right sacrifice. After having consecrated in the six parts of one’s body, (the fire god) should be invoked with the dhenumudrā (posture with the fingers representing a cow).

39. Having covered it with the armour, the clarified butter should be protected by the mantra of the shaft. The clarified butter should be purified by sprinkling water and offering a drop of it into the fire along with the hṛṣ (mantra).

40. The rites of uniting the mouths of the fire should be performed as follows. Oṁ hāṁ oblations to Sadyojāta. Oṁ hāṁ oblations to Vāmadeva. Oṁ hāṁ oblations to Aghora. Oṁ hāṁ oblations to Tapturuṣa. Oṁ hāṁ oblations to Īśāna. Thus with oblations to one by one, one should do the union of the (different) faces.

41-42. Oṁ hāṁ oblations to Sadyojāta and Vāmadeva. Oṁ hāṁ oblations to Vāmadeva and Aghora. Oṁ hāṁ oblations to Aghora and Tapturuṣa. Oṁ hāṁ oblations to Tapturuṣa and Īśāna. Thus the union is done in order with the recitation of
these mantras. With the flow of ghee from the sacrificial ladle taking it from the fire through the angular points such as north-west, south-west, and ending with north-east, one should unite the faces. Om hāṃ oblations to Sadyojāta, Vāmadeva, Aghora, Tatpurusa and Ḫāna. Thus its form and other faces should be contemplated in the face of one’s liking.

43. Having worshipped the fire in the north-east and offering three oblations with the mantra of the weapon, (the worshipper) with his entire soul should contemplate—“O Fire-God! you are the divine essence of Śiva.”

44. Having worshipped the parents with the hṛd (mantra) and left them aside, the final oblation which concludes the rite should be offered as laid down with the principal mantra ending with vauṣṭ.

45. Then one should worship the resplendent, Supreme God attended upon by the attendants and retinue, after having invoked him in the lotus of his heart as before. He should offer waters of oblation to Śiva after having requested his permission.

46. Having established a union among the god of the sacrificial fire, god Śiva and his soul situated in his arteries, (the worshipper) should offer oblations with the principal mantra befitting one’s capacity and using one-tenth of mantras as a supplement.

47. A kāṛṣika (a particular weight) of the clarified butter, milk and honey and a śukti (twice that of kāṛṣika) of the curd and a handful of sweet porridge (should be) offered.

48-49. The worshipper should offer as deemed fit the oblation with all the eatables, a handful of fried grains, three pieces of roots and an equal number of fruits. Five half-mouthfuls of cooked rice, bits of sugarcane of the length of a span and stems of sacrificial creepers measuring two fingers in length should be offered into the fire.

50. The oblations of flowers and leaves should be according to their own measure. The sacrificial twigs should measure ten fingers in length. The camphor, sandal, saffron, musk and an ointment made of camphor, agallochum and kakkola in equal parts (should also be offered).

51. (The worshipper) should make an oblation of the kāḍye (a leguminous seed) and guggulu (a fragrant gum-resin) of the
size of the kernel of the jujube fruit and eight parts of the
roots as laid down.

52. The oblation should thus be completed with the (principal mantra) brahmabija (om) with sacrificial ladles filled with clarified butter holding the ladle in such a way as to have its cup part downwards.

53-56. Having placed a flower at the head of the spoon and then holding it first with the left hand and then with the right hand and (showing) the mudrā denoting the conch he should stand up half erect with feet evenly placed and eyes fixed upon the end of the ladle and holding the base of ladle pressed against his navel. Then one should rouse up the stream of his pure consciousness through the susumnā (nerve centre below the spiral chord) and carry it to the base of his left breast vigilantly and tell the principal mantra ending with the vaṣaṭ in a low tone. The clarified butter should be offered having a flow of the measure of the barley.

57. Water for rinsing the mouth, sandal, betals etc. should be offered. (The worshipper) should meditate in his greatness with devotion and then offer salutation.

58-59. After having worshipped the fire well with (the mantra of) the weapon ending with phat and showing the sanhāra mudrā (the posture of the fingers conveying destruction) and uttering “Pardon me”, the gods who reside in the periphery (of the mystic circle) should be placed in the lotus of the heart with extreme devotion with the hṛd mantra after taking a breath.

60. All the edibles (got ready for the worship) should be taken and kept in two circular diagrams. Offerings should be done both inside and outside in the vicinity of sacrificial pit in the south-east.

61. Om hām oblations to Rudras in the east and in the same way to the mothers in the south. Hām, oblations to the gaṇas on the west. This offering is for them.

62. And hām to the yakṣas on the north, hām to the planets on the north-east, hām to the asuras on the south-east, hām oblations to the rākṣasas in the south-west.

63. And hām to the nāgas on the north-west, and to the stars at the centre. Hām oblations to the constellations in the south-east, and then to the Viṣṇu (devas) in the south-west.
64-65. It is said that the offering for the guardian of the
ground is inside and outside in the west. (Oblations should
be made) to Indra, Agni, Yama, Nirṛti, Varuṇa, Vāyu, Kubera
and Iśāna in the east etc. outside in the second maṇḍala. Salu-
tations to Brahmā on the north-east.

66. Oblations to Viṣṇu in the south-west. The offerings for
the crows etc. (should be) outside. The mantras for the two offer-
ings in one’s soul should be by the samhāramudrā (posture with
fingers indicating destruction).

CHAPTER SEVENTYSIX

Mode of worshipping Caṇḍa (attendant of Śiva)

Lord said:

1. (The worshipper) should approach (the image of Lord)
Śiva and address as follows: “O Lord! accept the merits of the
worship and the oblations offered by me.”

2. We should convey these to the lord with a firm mind
along with the respectful offering of water and uttering the prin-
cipal mantra preceded by the hṛdbiṣa (om) and the exhibition of
the udbhava mudrā (a posture of fingers representing genera-
tion).

3. Then having worshipped as before and praising with
hymns and saluting, (the worshipper) should offer the respectful
offering of water with his face turned away (from the image)
and should say “Pardon me”.

4. The liṅga should be discharged by uttering the mantra
of the weapon ending with phaṭ coupled with the divine nārā-
camudrā (formation with fingers representing an iron arrow),
it should be merged with the mantra of the image.

5. After having worshipped god on the platform and
having merged in himself the collection of mantras as laid down,
the worship of Caṇḍa should be made.

6. Om salutations to Caṇḍesāna. Salutations to the image
of Caṇḍa at the centre. Om, hūṃ phaṭ oblations to Dhūlicaṇḍe-
svara. Thus he should be invoked.
7. Hūm phat to Caṇḍa at the heart. Then om to Caṇḍa on the head. Om hūm phat to Caṇḍa on the tuft, to Caṇḍa, the protector and armour.

8. So also to Caṇḍa as the weapon hūm phat. One should meditate on Caṇḍa, born of the fire of Rudra and as carrying the mace, axe, rosaries and the anchorite’s pitcher and as having a dark complexion.

9. The four-faced deity should be worshipped in the half-crescent shaped axe weapon (of Caṇḍa). One should repeat (the mantra) befitting one’s capacity, being one-tenth of the principal worship.

10. Except the offerings such as the cow, earth, gold, clothes, gems and ornaments, the remains of offerings should be offered to Caṇḍesa.

11. Being ordered by Śiva, I have offered to you these articles of food and drink, betels, garlands and scented pastes, the remnants of offering.

12. O Caṇḍa! may all these acts of service (undertaken) by me by your order (be agreeable to you). Any shortcoming or redundancy out of my ignorance may be made complete always.

13. Having submitted to the lord thus and offered the respectful water and contemplated his form, the mantras should be merged with the self with the mantra of the destructive deity and showing slowly the samhāra mudrā (formation with the fingers (representing destruction) along with the principal mantra and taking a breath. The offering such as flowers etc. should then be removed and that place cleansed with cowdung dissolved in waters. After offering water respectfully one should conclude by rinsing one’s mouth and do any other worship.

CHAPTER SEVENTYSEVEN

Mode of worshipping Kapilā (the Cow)

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe to you the mode of worship of Kapilā (the cow). The cow should be worshipped with these mantras. Om
salutations to you O Kapilā, one makes us rejoice, the abode of bliss. Salutations to you.

2. Om salutations to you O Kapilā of good disposition. O Kapilā, as effulgent as Surabhi (the divine cow, daughter of Dakṣa and wife of Kaśyapa). Om Kapilā, the good-minded, salutations. Om salutations to the bestower of enjoyment and emancipation.

3. O Daughter of Surabhi! the Mother of the universe! Giver of ambrosia to the celestials! Granter of boons! Accept this morsel of food and grant me all my desires.

4. You had been worshipped by Vasiṣṭha and the learned Viśvāmitra. O Kapilā! Take away my sins and the bad acts of mine.

5. (Let there be) cows always in front of me. (Let there be) cows behind me. (Let there be) cows in my heart also. I am dwelling in the midst of cows.

6. May you accept the morsel of food offered by me. After repetition (of the mantra) let me be pure like Lord Śiva. After having worshipped the books of learning one should bow at the feet of the preceptor.

7. One should bathe (again) at noon and worship (Lord) Śiva with aṣṭapūṣpikā. The aṣṭapūṣpikā is the worship of the image, seat and the limbs of (the image of) Śiva.

8-9. The cooked food should be brought into the well-cleansed kitchen at mid-day. Then after the recitation of the mṛtyuñjaya mantra (that which conquers death) seven times and ending with the vauṣat, the food should be sprinkled with drops of water with the darbha and conch. The entire food should first be dedicated to Śiva after lifting them up.

10. Then half of the above should be set apart for oblation at the fire-place. After having purified the fire-place as per rules, the oblation (should be done).

11-12. Having made the oblation once in the fire around one’s navel one should gather the seed of fire with the breath drawn in and after taking it through the places of the letters, one should meditate on it as “You are the fire of Lord Śiva” and it should be put at the fire-place. Om hām obeisance to fire-god— as also hām obeisance to Soma.

13. Obeisance to Sun-god, to Jupiter, the lord of people. (Obeisance) to all gods and to all Višvedevas.
14. *Hām* obeisance to fire-god, for offering a right sacrifice. One should worship these in the east and other directions. After having made oblations ending with the word *svāhā* one should bid farewell after seeking forbearance.

15. One should worship (the god of righteousness) on the right-hand side of the fire-place. "Salutations to the god of righteousness. The lord of unrighteousness (should be worshipped) on the left-hand side in a vessel containing sour gruel.

16. Lord Varuṇa (should be worshipped) as the transformer of the sap and as the lord of fire in the waters. Lord of obstacles (Vināyaka) (should be worshipped) at the entrance. Obeisance to Subhāgā at the grinding stone.

17. *Om* obeisance to Raudrikā and Girikā. Obeisance; one should worship in the mortar. Obeisance to the pestle, the weapon dear to Bala (rāma). It should be worshipped.

18-19. The two gods mentioned (should be worshipped) in the broomstick and the god of love in the bed. Having offered oblation to the trunk for the presiding deity of the ground at the middle stump one should eat from a golden vessel or in the petals of the lotus etc. The preceptor, the worshipper and the son should maintain silence at the time of this vow.

20-22. (The leaves) of the *vaṭa, asvattha, arka, vāṭāri, sala* and *bhallātaka* should be discarded. After having rinsed the mouth with water, five oblations should be offered with the five *prāṇas* (winds in the body) together with the *praṇava (om)* ending with *svāhā* (oblations). The fire in the belly should be kindled. With the secondary winds (in one's body) *viz., nāga, kūrma, kṛkara, devadatta* and *dhanānjaya*, oblations (should be made). Having offered food with the waters of *āpośāna* (prayer repeated before and after eating), one should drink the rest of the water.

23. You are an ambrosial seat. Oblations for the vital winds should be made as before. Oblations to the *prāṇa, apāna, samāna, udāna, and vyāna*. Having eaten food, water should be sipped. (The mantra for that) is "you are the ambrosial covering." Thus the food and the winds in the body (are worshipped).
CHAPTER SEVENTYEIGHT

Mode of investiture of the sacred thread for the deity

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the (mode of) investiture of the sacred thread (for the deity) which completes the acts of worship etc. (It is of two kinds), the daily routine (without any motive) and the other being undertaken to be done with a motive.

2. It should be done on the eighth or fourteenth day of the bright or dark fortnights in the months of āśādha (July-August) or śrāvana (August-September) or bhādra-pada (September-October).

3-4. Or it should be done on the first day of either fortnights during the (above) months up to kārtika (October-November), for (the images of) the fire god, Brahmā, Ambikā, Ibbäśya (Gaṇeśa), Nāga (lord of serpents), Skanda, Arka (Sun), Śūlin, Durgā, Yama, Indra, Govinda (manifestation of Viṣṇu), Śmara (God of love), Śambhu (Śiva) and other gods. (The threads should be) made of gold, silver and copper in the kṛta (first one among the four eras) and other yugas (eras).

5-6. A cotton (thread) or silk thread or the one made of (fibres of) lotus should be used in the kali (yuga) (the last). The pranava (om), moon, fire-god, Brahmā, serpent-god, Gṛha (son of Śiva), Hari (Viṣṇu), Sarvēśa and other gods would reside in the nine component strings (of the thread). The uttama (excellent) and other classes (madhyama and adhama) would be those which contain one hundred and eight (strings) or half of that or a quarter of that.

7. Or it should be made to contain eighty-one or thirty-eight or fifty strings having binding knots at equal intervals.

8. The breadth of the thread should be twelve or eight or four finger lengths or else it should be equal to the breadth of the līga.

9. (In length) it should be touching the pedestal (of the image) or (should be equal) to a quarter of the length of the deity as a whole. The descent of the Ganges should be accomplished by washing with pure (water).

10-11. The knots should be made with (the mantra of) Vāma (deva), purified with that of Aghora, dyed with the paste
of saffron, sandal, musk, yellow pigment, camphor, turmeric and red chalk etc. with that of (Tat) puruṣa. There should be ten knots or equal to the number of strings.

12-13. The inter-space between the knots (should be) one, two or four finger lengths in such a way as to make it elegant. The knots are known as sadāśivā, manonmanī, prakṛti (nature), pauruṣī (relating to the puruṣa), virā (valorous), aparājītā (invincible), jayā (victorious), vijayā (victorious), ajītā (unconquered), sadāśivā (always auspicious), manonnant (expanding intellect), and sarvamukht (omniscient) which confer good.

14. The sacred thread for the moon, fire-god and sun should be done similar to that for Śiva, in the heart, or in their own image or in a book or in that of the preceptor or the gaṇas.

15. In the same way there should be one in each one of the pitchers of the door-keeper and the presiding deity of the directions etc. The sacred thread for the liṅga should measure from one to nine cubits in length.

16-18. The number of knots (in a thread) of the vṛddha (class) should be twenty-eight, the number for other classes being eighteen and eight respectively, their breadth in all being proportionate with the breadth of the liṅga. On the seventh or thirteenth day of a fortnight (one should) become clean and do his daily rites. Then (he) should adorn the place of worship with flowers, cloth etc. in the evening and should perform the naimittika (rites done with some motive), especially the waters of oblation.

19. After having taken possession of the sacred ground, the sun-god should be worshipped. After rinsing his mouth, the preceptor should do the rite of accomplishment (mentioning the names of the parts of the body along with the mantras). Water should be offered with respect with the praṇava (the syllable om).

20. The threshold should be sprinkled with water with the mantra of the weapon (and) the worship should be duly commenced from the east. Ḫām (obeisance) to the entrance to the śānti-kalā (digit of peace); (obeisance) to the vidyākalā (digit of knowledge).

21. (Obeisance) to the digit of non-action, to the one digit
known as existence. The warden of the god should be worshipped at the top sides of those doors, two at each (as follows):

22. (Obeisance) to Nandin, to Mahākāla, to Bhrūgin, to Gana, to Vṛṣabha, to Skanda, to Devi and to Caṇḍa in order.

23. In the case of worship being undertaken without any motive, the preceptor, having entered and worshipped the guardian deities at the western entrance, and after purification of materials, should offer water of respect.

24. After having done the sprinkling (of water) etc., and collected the materials for the rite, consecration with darbha, dūrvā and flowers should be made with the mantras like ḫrd etc.

25. After having permeated thus with the essence of Śiva, one should place it on his head. I am Śiva, the first being, omniscient and I have the importance in the rites.

26. The preceptor (holding) the sword of knowledge in his hand should deeply contemplate the lord. Subsequently he should go to the south-western direction and pour (the washings etc.) with his face turned towards the north.

27-28. The respectful water offering, the pañcagānya (the five things got from a cow) and all other (articles of worship) which have been purified by means of rites at the end of crossroads and by divine look etc. and put in the sacrificial pavilion, one should collect the bunch of kuṭa lying scattered, place them over the little jar in the north-eastern direction.

29. The presiding deities of the place should be worshipped in the south-west and (Goddess) Lakṣmī at the entrance. The pitcher is placed on all kinds of grains facing the west.

30. Then the bull-riding God and the pitcher (varddhant) placed on the lion (should be worshipped) with the praṇava (om). Lord Śiva should be worshipped in the jar with his attendant gods and the weapons in the vardhant.

31-32. Indra and other guardian deities of directions, Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Śiva (should be worshipped) in the (different) directions. Having taken the vardhant (in the hand) behind the pitcher, the preceptor should read out the mandate of Lord Śiva in all directions commencing with the east and ending with the north-east. (The entire ground) (should be made wet) by an unbroken flow of water (along) with the recitation of principal mantra.

33-35. This should be moved around in all directions
for the sake of protection as if it were the weapons. Having placed the pitcher in the east, the lord should be worshipped in the pitcher placed foremost at the front firmly, while there should be one for the weapons to the left of it. The weapons located with the praṇava (om) (should be worshipped with the vardhani. Then the union of the two, the base and the liṅga should be accomplished by (showing) the liṅga mudrā (posture of the fingers representing the liṅga). Then the sword of knowledge should be dedicated to the (consecrated) pitcher. The principal mantra should then be repeated.

36-37. Protection should be spelled out with a tenth (of the mantra) in the vardhani. After having worshipped Lord Gaṇeśa (lord of the gaṇas) in the north-west and Lord Hara (Viṣṇu) with the five sweet things (milk, sugar, ghee, curd and honey), the fire sacred to Śiva should be worshipped in the sacrificial pit as before and bathed after having made the sacrificial gruel duly purified by the sampāta (residual) oblation.

38. It should be divided with the kuṣa into three parts respectively consecrated to the god, the fire-god, and the soul, of which the former two should be offered to Lord Śiva and the fire-god and the part consecrated to the soul should be kept apart.

39. (The stick for) cleansing the teeth should be offered on the east by (repeating the mantras of) the weapon and arrow, and (a piece of) earth on the west or south with the (a) ghora and śikhā (mantras).

40. Water reduced in quantity (should be offered) on the north with the sadyojāta and the ṛṇḍ (mantras). Perfumed water (should be offered) on the north-east with the vāma (deva) and śirās (mantras).

41. The five things got from a cow and flowers like palāśa and lotus (should be cast) all around. Flowers should be offered on the north-east and the yellow pigment on the south-east.

42. The agallochum (should be offered) on the south-western direction and all the articles for oblation in four equal proportions on the north-west with the sadyojāta (mantra) and with the kuṣa.

43-44. (An anchorite’s) stick, rosary, loin-cloth, alms bowl, collyrium, saffron, oil, a small stick (for applying the collyrium), comb, betel (leaf), and mirror should be offered to the image of the god. The yellow pigment (should be offered) on the north.

45. He should offer a seat, a pair of sandals, a vessel, an upper cloth and an umbrella on the north-east with the mantra of the lord for the satisfaction of Isāna (one of the five forms of
Śiva). The sacrificial porridge together with the clarified butter and perfumes etc. should be offered on the east.

46. Having gathered the sacred threads and sprinkled them with the waters offered as respect, they should be led to the presence of fire after purifying them with the samhitā mantras.

47-48. After having covered them with the hide of the black antelope and remembering the eternal blissful one, the witness of all deeds, the protector, the one without any change, that Śiva, with the application of sva and ha (mantras) and samhitā mantras, the sacred threads should be purified. Twenty-one water vessels (should be got ready).

49. The room (for worship) etc. should be girdled by threads. Perfumes etc. should be offered to the sun-god, (who had already been) worshipped. After having rinsed the mouth, and doing the assigning, the water should be offered with respect.

50. Then (the worshipper should worship) the vāstu god along with the weapons, the guardians of the world, Nandin and others by (mentioning) the name of each in the pitcher of (lord) Śiva after adding perfumes.

51-52. Vardhanī, lord of obstacles, the preceptor should be worshipped. Then the sacred thread smeared with (the paste of) all herbs and perfumed with the flowers and dūrvā and purified with the mantras should be held between the folded palms. Om! (salutation to you) the regulation for rectifying any omission in regulations.

53. O lord! I invoke you and that which yields the desired boon. O lord of entity and non-entity! You bless me, one who worships, with that success.

54-55. O Śambhu (Śiva)! Obeisance to you at all times and by all means. Be pleased with me. O lord of celestials! You have been invoked along with the goddess, lords of ganas, lords of mantras, guardians of the world and attendant gods. I invoke you. This sacred thread is for you in the early morning.

56. O supreme lord! By your command I shall do the prescribed routine. Thus one should invoke the lord and do the amṛtikaraṇa² rite by drawing in the breath.

57. Having recited the principal mantra for Śiva, it should be dedicated to (lord) Śiva. After completing the recitation.

¹ Mental identification of the parts of one's body with those of the lord.
(of mantra), praises, and obeisance, (lord) Śambhu (Śiva) should be bid adieu.

58-59. Having made oblation with the third part of the gruel in the fire (permeated with the essence) of Śiva, (oblation should be made) for the residents in the quarters, the lords of the quarters, the spirits, the mothers, ganas, Rudras, guardians of the region. Obeisance. This oblation is given. The oblation is made for the (guardian) elephants of the quarters east etc. and to the regions.

60. After having rinsed the mouth, the oblation should be done for the rectification of omissions in the observances. After doing the final oblation, the fire should be put out.

61-62. Then om oblations to fire (god), to Soma, om oblations to fire and Soma. So also to fire-god, the accomplisher. After having made four oblations, the union of the gods respectively worshipped in the sacrificial pit and the mystic circle of lord Śiva should be brought about.

63-64. Then the union should be made by the method of assigning in the different parts of the body. Then the sacred threads should be placed in a vessel made of bamboo along with (the mantras of) weapons and armour and consecrated with the (mantras) of the digits. The six articles of worship should be consecrated with the principal brahma (mantra) (Om). (The mantras of) the heart, armour and weapon should also be united.

65. Having girdled the vessel with threads and worshipped it with the (mantras of) the parts of the body it should be offered to the lord of the universe with extreme devotion for the sake of protection.

66. After it has been worshipped with flowers, incense etc. and two theological books have been submitted, one should go near the feet of the preceptor and offer the sacred thread with devotion.

67. Having come out of the place and rinsed the mouth, one should worship five things got from a cow, the gruel and the stick for cleansing the teeth on three circles made with the cow-dung.

68. After rinsing the mouth again, one should remain awake singing songs and repeating hymns and should sleep at the end after fasting on a bed of darbha all the while contemplating on the lord.
69. Even one, who is desirous of cessation of births and deaths, should undertake in this way lying only on a bed of ashes, fasting and self-controlled.

CHAPTER SEVENTYNINE

Investiture of the sacred thread

The Lord said:

1. Having got up early in the morning, and finishing bathing the worshipper should enter the sacrificial shed after completing the twilight worship and remaining composed.

2. Having collected the sacred thread, and the deity not being given farewell, the sacred thread should be placed in a spotless vessel within a mystic diagram in the north-east.

3. Then the lord of celestials should be bid farewell and the materials of worship should be removed (from the body of the deity). He should again perform the two rites as before on the cleaned ground.

4. Then the gods—sun, the guardian deities of the entrance and of the directions the pitcher, Isāna, Śiva and the fire-god should specially be worshipped, as usually done in the naimittikī (done with some motives) rites, elaborately.

5. (Having done) the tarpana (appeasing) rite with the mantras and the oblation of expiation one hundred and eight times with (the mantras of) the arrows, the final oblation should be made slowly.

6. Having offered the sacred thread to the sun god and rinsing the mouth, (the worshipper) should offer it to the guardian deities of the entrance and of the directions, the sacrificial pitcher and vardhant etc.

7. Then having sat in his own seat in the presence of lord Śambhu (Śiva), (the worshipper) should offer the sacred thread to one's own self, the gaṇa, the priest and fire-god.

8-9. Om O lord! soul of the time, whatever has been ordained by you in my observances that which has been done, contradictorily, and omitted, and that which has been done—
secretly O Śambhu let the contradictory thing become normal, the contradictory deed become refined, by this omniscient sacred thread and by your wish.

10. _Om_ ! Complete this sacrificial observance! Oblations to the lord of regulations, the principle of the soul, that which underlines the natural principle that is protected by the lotus-born Brahmā.

11-15. Having recited the principal _mantra_ upto the end, lord Śiva should be worshipped with the sacred thread. Again in the principle of knowledge which is the end of all the learning and which is governed by Viṣṇu, one should invest the sacred thread having recited the _mantras_ of Viṣṇu. Similarly, in the principle relating to Śiva, he should recite the _mantras_ of Śiva and invest that deity with the sacred thread. _O_ man of good practices! In the case of those governed by all the deities one should recite the principal _mantra_ upto the end after having recited the _mantras_ of Śiva and the descent of the Ganges should be accomplished. In the case of those who desire to get release (from the cycle of births) it is said that the sacred thread should be invested with the _mantras_ of Śiva relating to the knowledge of the soul. For those who desire to get enjoyment it has been pointed out (that the sacred thread should be invested) duly with (the _mantras_ of) the principles of Śiva. The _mantras_ should be uttered ending with ‘oblation’ or ‘obeisance’.

16. _Om hām_ oblations to lord Śiva, the lord of the principle of soul. _Om hām_ oblations to (lord) Śiva, the lord of the principle of learning. _Om hām_ oblations to (lord) Śiva, lord of the principle of Śiva. _Om hām_ oblations to lord Śiva, the lord of all principles (of the universe). Having made obeisance to the descent of the Ganges, he should pray to it with folded palms. “You are the refuge for all beings. You reside in the movable and immovable beings.”

17. “O Supreme lord! You are the witness (of the acts) of beings by pervading inside the beings. By deed or thought or words I have no other being to resort to except you.”

18-19. “O Great lord! Whatever has been done defective in the _mantra_ or deeds or in the materials (of worship) or in the repetition and worship in the daily (observances), may you complete them. O Supreme lord! You are well-purified. You are pure and destroyer of sins. Every being in the
universe, the immovable and movable have been purified by you.

20-22. "O lord! Whatever has been made defectively by me in my observances (let it be free) from becoming useless. By your mandate let all of them become united, being tied in a string." Having conveyed the recitation (of the mantras) to the lord and praising him devotedly, one should take up the vow after saluting the preceptor and as directed by him. (It should be) for four months, (or) three months, (or) three days or one day.

23-24. After having saluted the lord and seeking excuse, the votary should go near the sacrificial pit and cast four sacred threads for Śiva located in the fire, and worship with flowers, incense, unbroken rice etc. The oblation and holy thread should be presented to the Rudras.

25-26. Having entered inside and praising Śiva (the lord) should be bid adieu with salutations. After having made the expiatory oblation and oblation of sweet porridge, the final oblation should be offered and (lord) Śiva located in the fire should be bid farewell. Having performed oblations with the vyāhṛtis (the syllables om bhūḥ, om bhuvah etc.), the fire should be obstructed with niḍṭvarā (scornful goddess).

27-31. Then four oblations should be offered to the fire-god and others. Oblation should be given outside along with a sacred thread to the guardian deities of all directions. Two theological books and a sacred thread should be offered. Om, hām, bhūḥ oblations. Om, hām, bhuvah oblations. Om, hām, svaḥ oblations. Om, hām, bhūrbhuvah svaḥ oblations. After having done the oblations with the vyāhṛtis, four oblations should be made (as follows). Om, hām oblations to the fire-god. Om, hām oblations to the fire-god, one who accomplishes all desires. The preceptor should be worshipped as lord Śiva with clothes, ornaments and bed. All annual rites etc. of the performer (become) fruitful if the preceptor gets satisfied. The Supreme lord had said so. After having placed the thread on the body of the preceptor thus, the brahmins should be fed and offered clothes etc. with devotion. "O lord of celestials! May lord Śiva get pleased by this gift of mine."

32. After having bathed in the morning (the investor) should perform his daily rites of prayer and worship and take
leave of (god) Śiva after having worshipped him and the sacred threads with eight flowers.

33. After having performed the nitya and naimittika rites as before in full, the sacred threads should be placed and lord Śiva should be worshipped in the fire after obeisance.

34. The expiatory oblation should then be done with the mantras of the weapons. The final oblation should then be given. One who is desirous of enjoyment should then submit the fruits of his acts to lord Śiva.

35. “May this rite of mine become fruitful by your grace!” One who is desirous of release (from the cycle of births) should do this act (as follows): “O lord! May there be no bondage for me.”

36. (Lord) Śiva located in the fire should be united with lord Śiva (in the solar plexus of the investor) by nādiyoga (assignment on limbs). The essence of fire should be drawn in one's heart and the fire should be discharged.

37. After having rinsed the mouth well, (he) should enter inside (the shed) and permeate the water of the pitcher with the essence of Śiva and bid farewell (after saying) “Pardon (me)”.

38. After having taken leave of the guardian deities of the world, the sacred thread should be taken from the lord and placed on the Caṇḍēśvara (form of the lord) after worship.

39. The materials of worship along with the sacred thread should be submitted to him. In the alternative lord Caṇḍa should be worshipped on the sacrificial ground in the prescribed manner as before.

40. “Whatever annual rite has been done by me defectively, may that become perfect by your mandate, O lord! Caṇḍa! my master!”

41. Having thus submitted to the lord of celestials, he should be given farewell after obeisance and praise. After having removed the materials of worship (from the images) and becoming pure, the votary should bathe (the image) and worship (lord) Śiva. A man who remains even at a distance of five yojanas (a yojana is equal to about eight miles) from the preceptor (is deemed to be) pure.
CHAPTER EIGHTY

Mode of investiture with the fibres of Damanaka

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the mode of investiture with damanaka fibres for the lord. It has to be performed as before. Once, the celestials were harassed by Bhairava, a form born of the anger of lord Hara (Śiva).

2-5. Hence, he was cursed by the foe of Tripura (Śiva) (saying), “Become a stump”. Being pleased (after propitiation) the lord said, “Whoever propitiates you would get full benefits and not otherwise.” The votary should address the tree by the (following) words of Bhava (Śiva) after having worshipped it with the vedic hymns on the seventh or thirteenth day (of a fortnight). “O (tree) born of the grace of (lord) Hara(Śiva)! You be present here. For the sake of work of Śiva you have to be carried (home) as per the mandate of lord Śiva.” (The tree) should be invited home and the consecration should be done in the evening.

6. Having worshipped the sun-god, Śaṅkara (Śiva) and fire-god as prescribed, the root (of the tree) should be placed on the west of the lord alongwith the (clump of) earth.

7. The stump (may be placed) on the left or on the head (of the image), the dhārti (myrabolan) on the north, the broken leaves on the south and its flower on the east.

8. The fruits and roots should be placed in a cup. Lord Śiva should be worshipped in the north-east. The lord should be invoked after having placed the five articles of worship in the folded palms and (later) placing them on one’s head.

9. “O lord of celestials! You have been invoked by me in the early morning! O lord! the merit of this penance has to become fully fruitful by your mandate.”

10. After having kept the sacred remnants in the vessel covered, (the votary) should worship the lord of the universe with flowers etc., after having bathed early in the morning.

11-12. After having performed the nitya and naimittika rites, he should then worship with the damana. After having kept the remnants in the folded palms, lord Śiva, fire-god and the
preceptor should be worshipped with (the mantras) of the lord of the principle of knowledge of soul, the principal mantras of the lord ending with (the names of) Ḫīṣvara, with four handfuls (of offering). "Oṃ haum (obeisance) to the lord of sacrifice. Complete the sacrifice. Obeisance to the holder of the spear."

13. "O lord! Whatever has been in excess or in short in my acts let all that be complete by this investiture of the damanaka by me". (Whoever performs this) would go to heaven after having obtained the benefits of all that is got in the month of Caitra (April-May).

CHAPTER EIGHTYONE

Mode of spiritual initiation

Lord said:

1-3. I shall describe the spiritual initiation for the sake of enjoyment and release from bondage, destroying one's sins and shattering bondages of impurities and illusion; by which, knowledge is gained by the disciple, that initiation (is considered) as yielding enjoyment and release. It is considered to be of three kinds. The first one is vijñānakalā (cognisant of the beatitudes). The second one is pralayakalā (a psychic state from which one can be cognisant of those attributes). The third one is sakalā (clouded by worldly impurity). These deserve initiation in scriptures. The first (category) among these is free from all mental impurities, while the second is free from sinful acts.

4. The third variety can (hold communion) by prayer with the region from kalā to the earth. The initiation is also considered to be of two kinds—devoid of any hold and possessing a hold.

5. (The initiation) independent of any (external) aid is for the first two categories (among the three) and that which is dependent on any (external) aid is for (the third category) sakalā (endowed with a form). (The initiation in the first sort) is done by the worship of Śambhu (Śiva) alone without any dependence.
6. That which is remembered as independent (is achieved) by an impact of strong piercing force by resorting to the image in the form of the preceptor and by rending asunder the (veil of) illusion.

7-8. That (initiation) in which Lord Śambhu (Śiva) does it, is spoken as dependant. The spiritual initiation is said to be of four kinds—sabijā (together with imparting of some mantra), btjavarjitā (without any mantra), sadhikārā (with some governance), anadhikārā (without any governance). They are described (now). A sabijā (type) is that in which the disciple is subject to the control of code of conduct laid down in the scriptures.

9-10. The nirbijā (variety) is intended for the incapable which is devoid of any code of conduct of the scriptures. The sadhikārā type of initiation shall be in the case of rites of daily nature and those done with a motive for the disciple and the preceptor. The nirbijā type of initiation is in those cases (where the disciples) possess characteristics as my two sons.

11. The niradhikārikā type of initiation allows one to undertake rites in which the disciple does not aspire for the fruits. This (initiation) may be of two kinds marked by the individual characteristics.

12. One consists of performance of acts preceded by (preparations of) sacrificial pits and mystical diagrams. The other one is composed of knowledge which is achieved by the operation of the mind.

13. In this way an initiation may be made by a preceptor who has the right (to administer). The skandadikṣā may be done by the preceptor after doing daily rites.

14-17. (The preceptor) should purify the place from the spirits remaining in his own seat, having the arghya (waters of respect) in the lotus palm and worshipping the guardian deities of the threshold with praṇava (mantra) and after removing the obstacles and placing the weapons at the threshold. The special arghya offering should consist of sesamum, rice, white mustard, kuṣa, dārvā, unbroken rice, mixed with water, barley, milk and water. Then the materials (for worship) (should be done) pure with that water. (After putting) the mark and the worship of the self and of the seat, the materials (of worship) such as the five
things got from a cow, fried paddy, sandal, white mustard, sacred ashes, dūruḍa, unbroken rice and kuṣa should be purified as before with mantras.

18. The pure fried paddy which has been scattered should be consecrated with mantras of weapons along with incense and consecrated with waters with the mantras of implements and covered by armour.

19-21. Having made darbhas into different shapes of missiles so as to number thirtysix bunches, each measuring (the length of) a palm, which are capable of warding off multitudes of obstacles, and after having repeated the mantra of the weapon of Śiva seven times on the sword of knowledge continuously and having located in one’s self, lord Śiva, the basis of all creation, the most sought after, and devoid of any form, one should deem himself as “I am (lord) Śiva”. After having placed turban on the head one should adorn his body (in the following way).

22. He should besmear his right arm with the sandal paste. The lord should be worshipped in the prescribed way. This is how the head of Śiva is got ready.

23-25. Having located the luminous lord on one’s own head with the mantras of Śiva, the doer should conceive himself as not different from (lord) Śiva as follows: “(He is) the witness of all deeds in the mystic diagram, the protector of sacrifice in the pitcher, the recipient of oblations in the fire and the liberator of the disciple from the bonds and the benefactor in one’s own self,” such that the lord is of six kinds of basis. One should consider (himself) as “I am he”. (Lord) Bhava (Śiva) should again be made firmly established (in one).

26. (Then) that person should remain facing the southwest holding the sword of knowledge and sprinkle the sacrificial shed with the waters of respectful offering and the five things got from the cow.

27. By purification at the crossroads and by (divine) look, (darbhas) should be purified. Having thrown the scattered darbhas there, (darbhas) should be gathered.

28. A seat should be made ready with them in the north-east (direction) for the pitcher. The presiding deity of the place and the celestials should be worshipped in the south-west and (Goddess) Lākṣmī at the entrance (of the sacrificial shed).
29-30. (Goddess) Pūrayantī of the form of sacrificial shed should be worshipped in the west with gems and with the ḫrd (mantra). Lord Śambhu (Śiva) should be worshipped in a pitcher placed in the north-east over the grains and containing water, gems and a piece of cloth (over the mouth) with the face of the worshipper turned towards the west. (Goddess) Śakti (should be worshipped) in the south of the pitcher. (Goddess) Vardhand, in the form of a sword and riding a lion should be worshipped in the west.

31-32. Having worshipped (with their respective names and the ḫrd (mantra) the (gods) Indra and the guardian deities of the directions ending with Viṣṇu placed on the praṇava (om), riding their respective vehicles and holding their respective weapons, that (the sacrificial jar) should be carried round in front of pitchers and an uninterrupted flow of water (should be made) after making a circumambulation.

33. After having recited the principal mantra, the mandate of (Lord) Śiva should be conveyed to the guardian deities. The jar should be duly consecrated and it should be held.

34. After having worshipped lord Śaṅkara (Śiva) in the pitcher placed on a firm seat along with the retinue, the weapon should be worshipped in the vardhand after being placed to purify the path.

Oṃ haḥ to the seat of the weapon hūṃ phat. Oṃ Oṃ Salutation to the embodiment of weapon. Oṃ hūṃ phat obeisance to the Pāśupata weapon. Oṃ Oṃ obeisance to the heart. Oṃ trīḥ hum phat obeisance to the head. Oṃ yam hūṃ phat obeisance to the tuft. Oṃ guṇ hum phat obeisance to the armour. Oṃ phat hūṃ phat obeisance to the weapons.

35. The weapon should be meditated upon as possessing four faces and having teeth in the company of the Goddess Śakti, effulgent like crores of suns and wielding a mace, spear and sword.

36. By (showing) līṅgamudrā (a posture of fingers denoting līṅga), the union of the bhaga (base) and the līṅga is accomplished. The pitcher should be touched with the little finger, the weapon with the heart and vardhand with the clenched fist.

37. The vardhand should first be touched with the clenched fist for the sake of enjoyment and release (from worldly existence).
The sword of knowledge should be offered for protecting the mouth of the pitcher.

38. After the repetition of the principal (mantra) hundred times, the weapon should be placed in the pitcher. A tenth part of it should then be conveyed to the vardhant for the sake of protection.

39. “O lord of the universe! This sacrificial shed has been raised with great effort. O lord! the sustainer of all sacrifices! This has to be protected by you.”

40. The lord Gana placed on the praṇava (om) and having four arms should be worshipped in the north-west by offering water. Having worshipped lord Śiva on the ground, the worshipper should proceed near the pit.

41-42. Remaining in contemplation for the sake of pleasing the mantras, and having placed the water of respectful offering, perfumes, ghee etc. on the left and the twigs, darbha, sesamum etc. on the right, and having purified the pit, fire, ladle etc. as before, (the worshipper) should think of the greatness of the elevated-faced (god) in the heart and worship lord Śiva in the sacrificial fire.

43. After having performed srṣṭiṇyāsa (assignment representing creation) in one’s body, in the pitcher of lord Śiva, on the sacrificial ground, in the hṛd and (the body of) the disciple, purification and meditation (should be done) in the prescribed way.

44. Having contemplated the face of the (same) measure of the pit, the hṛd bija (mantras) are repeated and oblations made for the seven tongues of the fire.

45-46. The principal mantras for the tongue (should have) the last letters without (the letter) ‘ra’, and should have the sound of six ‘ra’s and the moon, a point and the tuft. Hiranyā, Kanakā, Raktā, Krisṇā, Suprabhā, Atiriktā and Bahurūpā should in order (be placed) in the directions north-east, east, south-east and west.

47. Oblations should be done with the sweet things such as milk etc. in the rites to appease (god) or seeking welfare and with oil-cakes, flour, one’s dress and sour-gruel in the rites performed for harming some one.

48. An angry man should offer oblations of salt, goat’s
curd, pungent oil, thorns and crooked twigs along with vedic syllables.

49. Yakṣiṇī (a goddess) becomes certainly favourable by doing oblations with the buds of kadamba. One should offer oblations with bandhūka, kimśuka and other (flowers) for attracting and subjugating another person.

50. The bilva leaves (sacred in the worship of Śiva) are offered for getting kingdom, the pāṭala and campaka (flowers) for the sake of wealth, lotus flowers for the sake of (becoming) a sovereign (and) eatables for wealth.

51. Dūrvā (is offered) for the cure of diseases, flowers priyaṅgu and pāṭali for exercising sway over all beings, and the Āmra flower for arresting fever.

52. (An oblation made with) the mṛtyuṇjaya mantra would conquer death. By the oblation of sesamum there would be prosperity. Propitiation of Rudra (Śiva) (should be made) for all sorts of appeasement. Then the subject of (present) discussion is narrated.

53. Eight hundred oblations with the principal mantra and a tenth of it with the subordinate ones should be made. Appeasement should be made with the principal mantra. The final oblation should be offered as before.

54. Then the repetition (of mantra) should be made hundred times for each disciple for the entry of the disciple and for the sake of good omens after the removal of bad omens.

55. As before oblation should be made two hundred times with the principal mantra. One oblation should be made with the principal (mantra) and the mantras of eight weapons concluding with (the syllable) svāhā (oblation).

56. The illumination (rite) should be done with the repetition of mantras of the tuft ending with (the syllable) phaṭ. Oblation should be done with the mantras like Om, hṛṃ, hraum, hṛṃ, to Śiva, hṛṃ, phaṭ. Then the vessel for preparing the gruel should be washed with waters (made sacred by the mantras) of Śiva and covered by an armour. It

1. Beginning with Tryambakam yajāmahe etc.
should be besmeared with sandal paste and a girdle of darbha consacrated with the (mantra) of armour and weapon.

59. After having placed the seat with (the mantra of the) armour, in a semi-circular mystic diagram, Śiva, whose presence is accomplished in the form of an image, should be worshipped with flowers of sentiment.

60-62. (Worship should be made) alternatively in the vessel whose mouth has been covered with a cloth with flowers got from outside. Over the oven placed to the right of the pit and having its mouth facing the west and previously consecrated with the syllables of ahaṅkāra (egoism) and (the two sides of the oven) having been contemplated as made up of righteousness and unrighteousness over which (the mantra) of the soul of man has been repeated, the vessel should be placed after having repeated (the mantra) of the weapon and sprinkled with the urine of cow. The vessel (should have been) cleaned with the milk of cow and (the mantra) of the weapon and repetition of the prāśāda (mantra) hundred times.

63. Rice and grains such as the ṣyāmāka etc. should be cast into it. If (the initiation) is to be given for a single disciple five handfuls (of grains) (should be thrown).

64. A handful of grains should be added. The above grains should be protected with the mantras of the fire or that of the armour.

65-66. The gruel should be cooked in the flame of Śiva on the eastern face with (the recitation of the) principal (mantra). Then having filled the ladle with the clarified butter and heated in the oven, it should be offered (to the fire) with the sāṁhiti mantras ending with (the expression) "oblations for the sake of satisfaction". The vessel should be placed in the mystic circles after having consecrated with the darbha.

67. Having covered it by the (uttering of) praṇava (syllable om), it should be besmeared with the hṛd (mantra). Thus it would become cool after having received a cool plastering.

68-69. (Oblations) should be offered with the recitation of sāṁhiti mantra once towards the disciple. After having made oblation for the sake of seats etc. on the west of the sacrificial pit and the mystic diagram, the residual offering should be made with the ladle and purification should be performed by (the recitation of) sāṁhiti (mantras). The gruel should be
taken out from the vessel with (the recitation of) the (syllable) vauṣaṭ.

70. The act of making the gruel into ambrosia should be done by showing dhenu-mudrā (formation made by fingers resembling the cow) and it must be allowed to cool on the ground. A part of the gruel consisting of clarified butter (should be set apart) for the disciples and a part for the lord Fire.

71. A part containing honey and clarified butter should be made over to the guardian deities of the worlds. These are three parts. These should be offered to them with the hṛd (mantra) ending with obeisance. The water for rinsing the mouth (should also be given) with the same (mantra).

72-73. The final oblation should be offered as laid down after having made hundred offerings with clarified butter along with the recitation of mantra. Having drawn a mystic diagram on the east of the sacrificial pit or in the midst of pitchers of Lord Śambhu (Śiva), Rudra, the divine mothers and the gaṇas (attendant gods of Śiva) and after having made offerings with the hṛd (mantra), the worshipper should identify himself with God Śiva in the pitcher sacred to Śiva even though he has not received a command.

74-76. He should think himself as the omniscient who stands above all things around. (He should also think) “The place of union is a part of mine and I am the presiding deity at the sacrifice. I am lord Śiva”. Thus the performer should come out of the sacrificial shed with the sense of I-ness. Having made the disciple to be seated on the seat of darbha already placed on a mystic diagram with the mantra of the weapon and duly consecrated with the praṇava (syllable om), and (providing him) with white upper garment after the bath, (the disciple) should be made to face north for emancipation and the east for enjoyment.

77. Having made (the disciple) to sit erect and face the east, (the preceptor) should look at him from foot to tuft if (the initiation) is for emancipation and in the reverse direction if it is for enjoyment.

78-79. (The preceptor) should look (at the disciple) graciously extending the splendour of Śiva. Having sprinkled water with (the mantra of) the weapon in order to accomplish purification by (means of) consecrated water, the disciple should
be struck with the ashes (accompanied) by (the mantra of) the weapon for the purpose of bathing with the ashes and for the destruction of obstacles and sins by the union of creation and destruction.

80-81. Having sprinkled him again with the water of the weapon for the sake of consummation and having repeated the bathing (mantra) of the weapon above the navel with the tip of kuśa, one should touch thrice under the navel with the (recitation of the) principal (mantra) for the destruction of sin and with the mantra of the arrow for the breaking of bonds.

82. Then (the preceptor) should locate lord Śiva in the body (of the disciple) along with his seat and attendants by offering worship with flowers and by looking into his eyes or by the heart.

83-84. Having tied the seat with a white cloth with (the recitation of) mantra, (and) having made him enter by means of circumambulation of Śiva, the seat along with the cloth should be given. (The preceptor) should exhibit the sanhāra mudrā (posture with fingers indicating gathering) and communicate his own self with that form in the lotus of the heart (of the disciple).

85. Having retained that (form of Śiva) in the purified body and having located (it there), it should be worshipped in the east facing the forehead of the disciple with the principal mantra.

86. The hand of the disciple should be converted into a hand sacred to (lord Śiva) and permeated with the essence of (lord) Śiva by telling the Śiva mantra, such a hand being known to convey (the worshipper) to the region of (lord) Śiva, and to supply him with the only means of worshipping (lord) Śiva.

87. Then after having removed all other materials of worship, one should cast flowers on lord Śiva in the company of attendant gods of lord Śiva invoking his presence with mantras.

88-89. The preceptor should name brahmans in the usual order or as desired. After having made (the disciple) to bow to the pitcher and the vordhani (a kind of vessel), (the preceptor) should make (the disciple) seated on the right near the sacred fire facing the north. He should then meditate on
the *sukumā* (an artery in the body) as emerging out of the body of disciple.

90-93. Having placed the tip of *darbha* on the right hand duly consecrated by the base of *darbha* and resting on the symbol of one’s own self, that base (of *kuśa*) should rest on one’s own knee while the tip (should rest) on the cock-banner. Having entered the heart of the disciple by breathing out the wind while repeating the *mantra* of the tuft and re-entered his own heart by breathing in and having thus established communion again with the fire of lord Śiva, the preceptor) should offer three oblations with the *ḥṛd* (*mantra*) for the accomplishment of that communion. One should make hundred oblations with the principal *mantra* for the sake of making the hand (of the disciple) permeated with the essence of Śiva. Being thus initiated in religious practices one would become eligible to perform the worship of lord Śiva.

CHAPTER EIGHTYTW0

*Mode of performing the purificatory initiation:*

*The Lord said:*

1. “O Śanmukha (six-faced one)! Listen to me! I shall describe the mode of performing the purificatory initiation. The great god Śiva situated in the heart and in the fire should be invoked.

2. Having worshipped those two (God Śiva situated in the heart and the sacrificial fire) and having appeased them with the *ḥṛd mantra*, one should offer five oblations in their presence with the same *mantra*.

3. That babe (of fire) should be struck with a flower consecrated by (the *mantra* of) the weapon with (the repetition of) the *ḥrd* (*mantra*). One should contemplate the starry-like effulgent form therein.

1. Son of the divine pair Śiva and Pārvatī.
4. Having placed the syllable *hum* in it by exhalation of breath and having drawn it by means of *sarthāraṅg* (*mudrā*) (formation with fingers representing gathering), it should be placed in the heart by the inhalation of breath.

5. Then (the above-mentioned essence of fire) should be cast in the generative organ of goddess *Vāgīśvari* (goddess of speech) with the *mudrā* known as *udbhava*¹ and the repetition of *hrd* mantra.

*Om hām, hīm, hām* obeisance to the soul.

6. Oblation should be offered in the smokeless sacrificial fire fully ablaze (with the above *mantra*) for the fulfilment of desires. Oblation made in undeveloped and smoky fire does not get the desire fulfilled.

7. A fire which is pleasing, circling upwards and sweet smelling is commended. So also is the fire which touches the ground and which emits sparks in the contrary direction.

8. Having offered oblations in this way, the impurities of the disciple should be destroyed by doing the sin-consuming oblation or it may be burnt with the syllables of Śiva.

9-10. Five hundred oblations should be made with the principal *mantra* and *vausāṭ* etc. in one-tenth of proportion for the sake of getting the characteristics of a twice-born (for the disciple) and to permeate him with the essence of Lord Rudra (Śiva) as well as for the purification of the food etc. and for the (rites of) *garbhādhāna*, *stimanta*, and *nāmakaraṇa*.²

11. The *garbhādhāna* is spoken as that which elevates the soul of the disciple by breaking the bonds and making him gain the sonship of Lord Rudra (Śiva).

12. The *pumāsavāna* is considered as the manifestation of independant attributes of the soul in the initiated. The dawn of knowledge by means of discrimination in the disciple clouded by illusion is the *stimantavardhana* (growth of *stimanta*).

13. One’s birth is considered to be the evolution out of the principle of absolute bliss etc. The wakening (of consciousness) is by means of the principle of supreme bliss in the initiated which has become equal to the Supreme Being in the spiritual perfection.

---

1. Posture of finger indicating evolution.
2. See Ch. 75 Verses 13-17.
14. (Then the preceptor) should carry into the lotus of his heart his own soul resembling a spark of fire by (exhibiting) the *samhāra mudrā* (formation with the fingers denoting gathering).

15. Then the principal *mantra* should be uttered along with the retention of breath and the union of God Śiva and his own soul should be brought about in his heart.

16-17. (Then the preceptor) well-versed in the procedure (relating to the performance of sacrifices) should carry his pure consciousness to the region of Śiva from the sacrificial performances which are the cause of Brahmā (and others) by means of exhalation of breath and collect it by showing the *udbhava mudrā* (formation with fingers denoting generation) and (repeating) the *mantra* of the heart and exhaling the breath he should locate it in the petals of lotus of the heart of the disciple.

18. The preceptor should duly propitiate Lord Śiva and the fire-god. The disciple (should be made) to bow down to the self (preceptor). (He) should then make the disciple hear conventions.

19. One should not blaspheme scriptures or God. One should not leap across the materials of worship. One must propitiate Lord Śiva, the fire-god and the preceptor as long as one is alive.

20. One has to impart these instructions to children, old people, women, people addicted to pleasures, and sick people according to their capacity (to preserve them) and in entirety to those who can practise them.

21-22. After having consecrated in a vessel the symbols of discipline—tuft, ashes, staff and loin cloth in order with the *tāṇa, ṛṭd* and *samhitā mantras* ending with (the syllable) *svāhā* (oblation) as before, (the preceptor) should show them to the presiding deity of sacrificial site after having quickly cast in the fire the residual offering.

23. Having kept them for a while under the pitcher for the sake of protection, the preceptor should give them to the person who takes the vow after having obtained permission of Lord Śiva.

24. Thus in this special spiritual initiation a child especially becomes fit to have a scriptural knowledge about the fire and oblation unto the fire.
CHAPTER EIGHTYTHREE

Mode of spiritual initiation that removes one’s bondage:

The Lord said:

1. The principal mantra should be stimulated in the spiritual initiation. In order to gain strength (to break) the bonds (of worldly existence) one may do it by the rites of tāḍana (striking gently).

2. (Oblations should be offered) with each one of the (principal) mantras or thrice with (them). The principal mantra together with half the tuft mantra (should be repeated) along with (the syllables) hūm, pḥat, etc.

3. The principal mantra should be stimulated by (the syllables) Om, hṛūm, hraum, haum, hṛūm. (assigning) to the heart as well as the tuft and face with (the syllables) Om, hṛūm, hraum, hṛūm, pḥat.

4. One should do the rite of stimulation for each part of the principal mantra in all ceremonies performed to cause injury (to one’s enemy) while the (syllable) vāṣat is appended to the principal mantra in ceremonies intended to bring peace and prosperity.

5. In all instances of annual rites, oblations should be done with religious acts for all desired results along with (the syllables) vāṣat (and) vauṣat.

6. Then after having worshipped the disciple having a pure body and seated on a circle on the right side of one’s self, (the preceptor) should contemplate upon a thread as the susūmnā (an artery of human body).

7. The tuft of hair (of the disciple) should be tied with the principal (mantra) and (one end of the string) should be led to (touch) the toe. In the case of (the disciple) yearning for salvation (the string) should be tied on the body of the disciple showing the samhāra (mudrā) (posture of fingers denoting gathering).

8. (The String) should be attached on the right side in the case of males and on the left side in the case of females. The female deity should be worshipped with the mantra of the deity on the head.

9. The thread should be collected with the samhāra mudrā
and placed with the same (mudrā). The nāḍī (artery) should (be mentally) collected with the principal (mantra) and placed on the string and worshipped with the mantra of the heart.

10. Having covered it with the Rudra (mantra), oblations should be offered thrice with the mantra of the heart for accomplishing the presence. It is the same way in the case of female deity also.

11-13. Om, hām obeisance to the path of letters, hām obeisance to the path of residence (bhavana), Om, hām obeisance to the path of phases. Having located the path of purification on the thread and sprinkled water on the disciple with the weapon and beaten gently the heart (of the disciple) with flower consecrated by (the mantra of) the weapon, the preceptor should (mentally) enter the body of the disciple (by pronouncing) the syllable hām and exhaling the breath. The spirit situated in the hamsabtiṣa should be separated by (the mantra of) the weapon: Om, haum, hām, phat.

14. Having covered the same with the saktisūtra (the thread of energy) by (uttering) the mantra hām ham oblations, it should be joined with the thread which has become artery, by (showing) the samhāramudrā (posture made with the fingers indicating gathering) Om hām haṁ hām salutations to the soul.

15. It should thus be conceived as pervasive. It should then be covered by the mantra of the armour. Oblations should be made thrice with (the mantra of) the heart for the sake of invoking the presence.

16. Having located the principle of knowledge (in the thread), one should look at it as beyond the state of bliss. Other principles which have become mantras as they were should be located in that. One should look at it with (the mantra) “Oṁ, hāṁ, haum obeisance to the kāloṇḍa (the bondage of phases) beyond absolute bliss”.

17-18. Two principles (out of the twenty-five), mantra of single word, sixteen letters, eight worlds, two (principal) arteries (idā and pingalā), (letters) ka and tha, the one object (of sense-perception, the one fundamental attribute, the one fundamental cause and the eternal blissful one (saddāśiva) should be contemplated as having been located in the (phase of) white colour beyond the absolute bliss.
19. *Om haum hum phat* to the *katapāśa* beyond the region of absolute bliss. Having collected the latter by (showing) the *samādramudrā* (posture of fingers denoting gathering), it should be placed over the thread. It should then be worshipped and three oblations (of clarified butter) should be made for its presence (in the thread).

20-21. Two principles (out of twenty-five), two letters *ka* and *tha*, two principal arteries (*iḍā* and *piṅgalā*), two qualities, two *mantras* and one supreme lord situated in the lotus (of the heart), twelve terms (denoting god), seventeen worlds, one of the objects (of sense-perception) should be conceived as merged in the dark phase which is beyond the region of bliss. (Lord) Acyuta should be meditated upon therein.

22. Having gathered it after a gentle stroking, it should be placed at the mouths of the nerve. Oblations should be made thrice with the respective *mantras* for the sake of its presence.

23-24. The seven (fundamental) principles, twenty-one words, six letters, one path-way, twenty-five worlds, three qualities and an object for which Rudra is the cause should be located in the principle of knowledge and the *mantras*, artery, (the latter's) *ka* and *tha* higher above.

25-26. Having taken the weapon, twenty-two words, six worlds, six *kalās* (phases), four qualities, three *mantras* and an object for which (Lord) Viṣṇu is the cause should be meditated at the base. The (rites of) beating should be done in the white (phase).

27-29. Then having placed (the same) in the nerve in the navel (region), one should offer oblations for the sake of its presence. (The preceptor) should then locate (the syllable) *ḥrim*, hundred worlds, twenty-eight words, twice each of the *mantras*, artery, the winds as well as senses, the principle of the letter, the five objects of sense-perception and the (first) cause governed by the *brahmāṇḍa-mantra*, four times the *sambharas* (a religious observance) in the principle of non-action of yellow colour. It should then be beaten.

30. The principles which were left out at the outset should be located on the thread and worshipped. Three oblations should be offered unto the fire for the sake of its presence.

31. Thus having gathered the principles from the body of the disciple, they should be located in the thread. In the initia-
tion with the mantras, it should be done accompanied by religious-sacrificial performances.

32. Other rites (should be undertaken) for the sake of initial protection of the body (of the disciple) until the mantra accomplishes the desired fruits.

33-34. The subtle soul awakening (mantra) should be meditated in the principles of beatific knowledge. (The rites of) arpaṇa (pleasing) and dipana (stimulation) should be performed in the same way with three oblations with their respective mantras (such as) “Om, haum oblations to the phase of beatitude beyond that of absolute bliss” which is (the mantra for) the rite of pleasing; “Om, ḫam, hum, phat to the phase of beatitude beyond that of absolute bliss” which is (the mantra for) stimulation. Then that thread should be considered as pervading the five nerve centres.

35. (The thread) should be smeared with saffron and clarified butter and (Lord) Śiva should be worshipped therein along with his attendants with the kalā-mantras ending with hum phat after having pierced the bondage through the occult nerve.

36. Having (mentally) entered inside (with syllables) ending with obeisance, (the preceptor) should take hold of (the thread) and tie it. Om, hūm, ḫam, haum, hām, hum, phat, I take hold of the phase exceeding that of pure bliss.

37. (The preceptor) should place that thread on the shoulder of the disciple after having made him seated for the sake of successful completion.

38. One hundred oblations should be made with the principal mantra for the expiation of all the sins (of the disciple). (The oblation should be made) in a covered shallow saucer (if the disciple) is a male and in a saucer of enlarged belly (in the case of a) female (disciple).

39-42. The thread which has been covered with the mantra of the heart should be placed and worshipped with (the mantra of) the heart. After having been made pure by the worship of Śiva and his attendants the thread should be placed under the pitcher (saying), “let protection be announced”. After having placed a flower in the hands (of the disciple) and having worshipped the pitcher and other things, the disciple should be made to bow down and led outside the sacrificial shed. After
having drawn three circles, the disciple should be made to sit facing the north in the case of aspiration for emancipation and made to sit facing the east in the case of aspiration (for enjoyment). Three handfuls of pañcagavya (the five things got from a cow) should be sipped at the outset.

43-44. After that, three or eight morsels of gruel unpolluted by the touch of the teeth should be offered with the hand holding a kusa with the leaf of palāsa, if desirous of emancipation and with the leaf of pippala, if desirous of enjoyment.

45-47. Having offered profuse feeding with (the mantra of) the heart, the pure water should be given for rinsing the mouth. After having given the teeth stick (for cleansing the teeth) with (the repetition of the mantra of) the heart, one hundred and eight oblations should be offered with the principal (mantra) for the removal of defects such as deficiency etc. After having dedicated all acts to the lord of the ground, the deity should be given adieu after worship and Lord Caṇḍesa should be worshipped. Then the materials of worship should be removed and the remnants of the gruel should be offered to the fire.

48. After having worshipped the pitcher and the protectors of the world and bidding them adieu, one should bid adieu to the attendant God and fire if they have been retained on the periphery of the mystic circle.

49. Then having offered oblations in a condensed way to the protector of the world at the periphery, one should enter the sacrificial shed after bathing with ashes or pure oil.

50. (If the disciples are) householders, (they) should be seated) on a bed of darbhas with their heads facing the east and protected well (and if the disciples are) monks, (they should be seated) on a bed of ashes with their heads facing the south with (the repetition of the mantra of) the heart.

51. (Then the preceptor) should bathe the disciples who had tied-up their tufts into knots along with the mantras of the weapon and saṃṭa mānawaka and walk out of the place again.

Om, hili, hili, oblations to the trident-bearer.

52. After having sipped five things got from a cow and the gruel and having collected sticks for cleansing the teeth, and having rinsed the mouth (with water), and contemplated on (Lord) Śiva and having reached the pure bed, the preceptor
should enter (again) remembering the rites performed in connection with initiation. Thus, the mode of preliminary consecration relating to initiation has been described briefly.

CHAPTER EIGHTYFOUR

Mode of Initiation for Emancipation

The Lord said:

1. Then the preceptor having got-up early in the morning should bathe and finish worship. (Seeing in the dream) curd, ginger, meat and wine as being consumed is commended.

2. So also riding on an elephant or horse as well as seeing a white cloth in the dream is auspicious. (Seeing in the dream) as smearing the body with oil is inauspicious. Oblation (should be done) with the aghora mantra for the sake of appeasement.

3. After having performed two daily rites (the two twilight worships) and entering the sacrificial shed, (the preceptor) should rinse (his mouth) and perform duties as in the daily routines as laid down for the incidental rites.

4-5. After having purified his self and (the part of the forearm known as) the śivahasta and having located in his inner being the Gods Indra and others in order and worshipped the pitcher, Śiva worship should be done at the shed or on the ground. Worship of fire and the (rite of) mantratarpaṇa (offering oblations along with the recitation of mantras) (should be done) until the final oblation is done.

6. After having offered one hundred and eight oblations with the mantra of the weapon, for the removal of defects due to bad dreams, one should activate the mantra with the subtle syllable hum.

7. Having made the antarbali (the rite of middle offering) in between the (sacrificial) pitcher and the ground for the entry of the disciple, and having obtained permission, the preceptor should walk out of the shed.

8. One should do (the acts of) placing on a mystical diagram (and other acts) in the religious initiation. The preparatory
oblation (should be done) with the end of darbha which should be looked upon as the umbilical chord of the latter.

9. Having offered three oblations with the principal mantra for accomplishing its presence, (the preceptor) should worship lord Śiva in the pitcher and take hold of the thread.

10. It should be tied on the tuft of the disciple who would remain standing on the right-hand-side (of the preceptor) in the manner that the thread hangs down up to the toe of the foot.

11. Having placed it and looked at it mentally as pervading the non-action, one should know that more than one hundred and eight worlds are in it.

12-25. Kaṭāla, Aja, Buddha, Vajradeha, Pramardana, Vibhūti, Avyaya, Śāstā, Pināki, Tridaśadhipa, Agni, Rudra, Hvūṣi, Piṅgala, Khādaka, Hara, Jvalana, Dahana, Babhrū, Bhamāntaka, Kaṭapāntaka, Vāmya, Mrtyuhara, Dhātā, Vidhātā, Kāryaraṇjaka, Kāla, Dharma, Adharma, Samyoktā, Vīyogaka, Nairṛta, Māraṇa, Hantā, Krūradrṣṭi, Bhayānaka, Urdhvāṁśaka, Virūpākṣa, Dhūmralohita, Daṁstravān, Atibala, Pāsahausta, Mahābala, Śveta, Jayabhadra, Dīrghabāhu, Jalāntaka, Vaḍavāsya and Bhīma are known as (the manifestations of) Varuṇa. Śighra, Laghu, Vāyuvega, Sūkṣma, Tīkṣṇa, Kaṭapāntaka, Paṇcāntaka, Paṇcaśīkha, Kapardī, Meghavāhana, Jaṭāmukutādhārī, Nānāratnadhara, Nidhiśa, Rūpavān, Dhanya, Saumyadeha, Prasādakṛt, Prakāśa, Lakṣmīvān and Kāmarūpa, the latter ten; Vidyādhara, Jñānadhara, Sarvajña, Vedapāraga, Mātrṛṇa, Piṅgākṣa, Bhūtāpadā, Balipriya, Sarvavidvāvidhātā, Sukhaduḥkhahara are the ten. Ananta, Pālaka, Dhīra, Pāṭalādhhipati, Vṛṣa, Vṛṣadhara, Virya, Grasana, Sarvatomukha and Lohita known as the ten (manifestations of) Rudra seated on the hoods of snakes; Śambhu, Vibhu, Gaṇādyaka, Tryakṣa, Tridaśavandita, Saṁhára, Vihāra, Lābha, Lipsu (and) Vicakṣaṇa; (and) Attā, Kuhakakāḷagnirudra, Hāṭaka, Kūśmāṇḍa, Satya, Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Rudra are the eight Rudras who all remain in the interior of hemisphere (of the universe). The names of these (Gods) as well as the names of worlds should be remembered.

26. Bhavodbhava, Sarvabhūta, Sarvabhūtasukhaprada (Granter of felicity to all), Sarvasanādhyakṛt, (all pervasive) are worshipped by Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Rudra.
27. O Adored one! Existing prior to all beings! Om! The Witness! Om! The Destroyer of Rudra! Om! Sun! Om! The Sound! Om! The Subtle! Om! Śiva! The Granter of all things to all beings! The pervading life-force of all things! The Creator of Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Rudra! Om! Salutations to Śiva.

O Guha (son of Lord Śiva and Pārvatī)! (in the thread described above) the principle of non-action should be contemplated as impregnated with the twenty-eight beatific states, together with the eight letters of which the sadya, ṛṣi, astra, and netra mantras are composed.

28. The letter ma is the emblem of the mystic seed, the two occult nerves known as idā and piṅgalā, the two vital winds prāṇa and apāṇa and the organs of smell and generation.

29. Among the five qualities smell etc., the quality of smell is spoken as the matter. The principle of matter is yellow (in colour) symbolises thunderbolt and is square-shaped.

30. Its extension is one hundred crores of yojanas (a yojana is equivalent to eight miles). It should be known that the fourteen creative principles are lying concealed in this (zone).

31. It is the first being and the source of the four-fold existence of all celestial beings, Manu, etc. animals and birds and crawling insects.

32-33. (It is also) spoken (as the source of things born of) the fifth, the immovable things, the sixth, the beings other than human (such as) goblins, demons, yakṣas, gandharvas and Indra, the seventh, the God of life (Yama) and the eighth, Brahmā. The earthly principle is considered as controlling the eighth.

34-35. Having contemplated the absolute dissolution (of the universe) in the prakṛti (the original source of the material world) and the intellect and Brahmā, the enjoyer, as the cause, (as well as) the non-action located along with all the worlds continuing through his waking-state, one should unite the appropriate mantras.

Om, ēm, hrūm, hām to the thread standing for the beatitude of non-action ēm, phaṣṭ, tat. Om, ēm, ēm oblations to the thread standing for the beatitude of non-action. Having drawn in breath along with (the above mantra) and shown the ākūṭa-mudrā (posture made with fingers denoting a goad), and having
withheld the breath and carrying it up by showing the samhāramudrā (formation with fingers representing gathering) and with (the mantra) Om, hrūm, hrām, hram to the thread of beatitude of non-action hūm, phat and having placed it in the pitcher by showing the udbhavamudrā (formation with fingers denoting generation) and discharging the breath and repetition of (the mantra) Om, Om, hram, ām obeisance to the thread of beatitude of non-action and having offered the respectful offering with (the mantra) Om, ām, obeisance to the thread of beatitude of non-action and worshipped, (the preceptor) should offer three oblations with face turned away ending with (the word) “Oblation” for the sake of accomplishing its presence and then offer the concluding three oblations. (Lord) Brahmā should be invoked with (the mantra) Om, ām, obeisance to Brahmā and worshipped. (He) should be appeased (with oblations) with (the word) “Oblations”. (The preceptor should say), “O Brahman! I initiate (this disciple) in this (world) over which you hold sway”.

36-37. One should submit (to the lord) “you should be propitious to him”. Goddess Vāgīśvarī, the deity of protection, who is of the form of desire, knowledge and action and is of six kinds and is the sole cause (of the universe) should be invoked with (the mantra of) the heart. One should worship and satisfy the Goddess as follows:—

38-40. (Goddess) Vāgīśvarī, the cause of agitating the receptacles should gently be struck (against) the chest (of the disciple) with the repetition of the hrī (mantra) and the principal mantra concluding with hūm phat and the mantra of the arrow. (The preceptor) who knows the procedure (of these rites) should then enter into the inner self of the disciple and then divide the effulgent consciousness (of the disciple) in the heart endowed with the thread located in the beatitude of non-action and resembling a spark of fire, with jyeṣṭhā (mantra) as follows:— Om, ām, hūm, haḥ, hūm, phat and with (the mantra) Om, ām, oblations and then with the aṅkuśamudrā (posture with fingers denoting the goad).

41-43. Having drawn it with its appropriate (mantra) and seized it, it should be united with his soul. Om, ām, hrūm, ām obeisance to the soul. Having imagined the union of his own soul with discharge of the breath, it should be led to the abode of
Śiva after having gradually discarded with discrimination the cause such as Brahmā, etc. One should cast it in the womb of (Goddess) Vīgīśvarī with the (exhibition of) udbhava-mudrā (posture with fingers denoting generation) after having carried it for impregnation in all the principles simultaneously. Om, hām, hām, hām, obeisance to the soul. One should worship with this (mantra) and after oblations five times.

44. One should do the purification of the body with the mantra of the heart in the case of all other principles. The pūrṇasavāna (the rite of determining the sex) is not done, as there can be a feminine form also.

45. The simantonnayana (parting of the hair) and the divine limbs (should be treated) as the body. (The purificatory rite) at the birth for all human beings should be done with the mantra of the head with aversion.

46. (The preceptor) should similarly contemplate upon the regions over which they have control, with the mantra of Śiva. The objects of sense pleasure (should be contemplated) with the mantra of the armour and the worldly objects with (the mantra of) the weapons.

47-48. One should contemplate on that one which is known as dissolution, as the form of delusion and unbreakable. Streams should be purified by (contemplating) the mantra of Śiva and the purification of the principles should be done with (the mantra of) the heart. Five times five oblations should be made in respect of the rites of garbhādhāna and others in order for the sake of cessation of the bonds due to sinful acts.

49. One hundred oblations should be made with (the mantra of) the heart after having accomplished expiation. By obstructing the force of sins one can sever the bonds.

50. Five times five oblations should be offered with the mantra of the weapon ending with oblations. By the repetition of the (mantra of the) weapon seven times one gets free from bonds ending with illusion.

51-53. The accomplishment by the mantra kalpa of the weapon is like cutting with a scissor. Ṇm, ṇm, to the thread of the beatitude of non-action, ṇm, phat, Having accomplished the cessation of bondage with the hands and with the mantra of the arrow, the thread should be untied and laid in a circular
form on the sacrificial ladle filled with clarified butter. One should then burn it with the mantra of the weapon and reduce it into ashes with the weapon after having offered five oblations for the removal of the goad of bondage. Om, hāṃ, to the weapons hūṃ, phat. Expiation should then be made with eight oblations made with (the mantra of) the weapon.

54-56. After having invoked (Lord) Brahmā, he should be worshipped and appeased. Then Om, hāṃ, O Brahman, whom soul and touch cannot perceive, you take (these oblations). Oblations. He should be informed of the authority invested in him by offering three oblations. "O Brahman! you should not again bind this being whose sins have all been burnt. You listen to the mandate of Lord Śiva." After having bid farewell to Lord Brahmā, (the preceptor) should slowly fill it with the soul of the disciple by his own soul with retention of breath and exhibiting samhāramudrā (posture with fingers representing collection). (That soul) would then look like the disc of the moon at the beginning of the eclipses at a particular spot.

57. After having taken it out, it should be located in the thread with the discharge of breath and with udbhavamudrā (posture with fingers denoting generation). After having worshipped it, the preceptor should place the drop of water in the offering vessel resembling the nectar, on the head of the disciple for the purpose of completion.

58. After having bid farewell to the (divine) parents, the final oblation should be made with the mantra of Śiva ending with vaisat. Thus the mode of completion has ended. The non-action principle is thus purified.

CHAPTER EIGHTYFIVE

Mode of purifying the Beatific principle of establishment

The lord said:

1-2. The union of the two principles good and bad should be brought about by the application of short and long
(vowels) associated with sound. *Om, hām, hr̥um, hām,* water, effulgence, wind, sky, the subtle principles, organs, intellect, the three qualities and ego (are) the twenty-four principles (and) the *puruṣa* (the soul) (is the twenty-fifth).

3. (The preceptor) should imagine the letters beginning with *kha* and ending with *jva* as merged in the above twenty-five principles.

4. The number of Rudras is equivalent to the *bhuvanas* (Worlds), which are known to be fifty-six. They are as follows:

5-12. Amareśa, Prabhāva, Naimiśa, Puṣkara, Pādi, Daṇḍi, Bhavabhūti, Nakulīśa the eighth, Hariścandra, Śrīśaila the tenth, Anviśa, Abhrātikeśa, Mahākāla, Madhyama, Kedāra, Bhairava, spoken as the second (group of) eight. Then Gayākurukṣetra-khalanādikanādika, Vimala, Aṭṭahāsa, Mahendra, Bhīma, Vasvāpada, Rudrakoṭi, Aviyukta, Mahābala, Gokarṇa, Bhadrakarṇa, Svarṇākṣa, Sthāṇu Ajeya, Sarvajña, Bhāsvara, Sudanāntara, Subhū, Mattarūpī, Viśāla, Jaṭila, Raudra, Piṅgalākṣa, Kāladaṃśtri, Vidura, Ghora, Prājāpatya, Hutāśana, Kāmarūpī, Kāla, Karṇa, Bhayānaka, Mataṅga, Piṅgala, Hara, Dāṭṛ (saṁjñaka), Śaṅkukarṇa, Vidhāna, Śrīkaṇṭha and Candraśekhara.

13. Their attributes (to be used) along with their names are also described then. O (All) pervasive! *Om,* Formless! *Om,* Conqueror! *Om,* Lustre! *Om,* Light! *Om,* (Supreme) Being! *Om,* Fire! *Om,* Smokeless! *Om,* Not reduced to ashes! *Om,* One without a beginning! *Om,* Of manifold forms! *Om,* The Agitator! *Om,* The Earth! *Om,* the Atmosphere! *Om,* Heavens! *Om,* Deathless! Born from dissolution! Auspicious! Killer! Absolute Soul! Supreme Deity! Lord of celestials! Lord of Good will! Supreme lustre! Presiding deity of *yoga*! (Your) release! The first soul! All in all! Lord of all beings! are the thirty-two1 attributes. Vāmadeva, Śiva, and Śikhā are the three *mantras* in the subtle form.

14. The two occult sychic nerves *gāndhāri* and *suṣumna,* then the winds *samāna* and *udāna,* the organs of taste and reproduction (are also worshipped).

15-22. The sentiments are the material objects. The quali-

1. But, actually only twenty-nine have been given.
ties are perception, hearing, touch and taste. The mystic diagram should be circular and bear the mark of a white lotus.

After having contemplated on the worlds as well as those established along with the eagle-banneled god who is the cause for the establishment in the dreamy state, the thread should be placed on the body with (the recitation) of the appropriate mantra and retained (by the preceptor). “Om, hām, kṛūm, hām, to the thread of the beatitude of consecration Om, phat”. With this (mantra) and ending with ‘oblations’ it should be drawn while drawing in breath and exhibiting ankuṣa-mudrā (formation with fingers denoting a goad). Then “Om, hām, hṛūm, hṛūm, hṛūm to the thread of the beatitude of consecration hrūm, phat”. With this and retention of breath and showing samhāramudrā (formation with fingers denoting gathering) it should be taken from the occult nerve below the heart. Om, hām, hṛum, hṛūm, hām, obeisance to the thread of the beatitude of consecration. With this (mantra) and showing the udbhavamudrā (formation with fingers denoting generation) and discharge of breath, it should be placed on the pitcher. Having worshipped with the mantra “Om, hām, hṛum obeisance to the thread of the beatitude of consecration” ending with ‘oblations’, and offered three oblations for ensuring its continuance (lord) Viṣṇu should be invoked (with the mantra) “Om, hām, obeisance to Viṣṇu”, worshipped and offered oblations O Viṣṇu! I initiate the disciple who is desirous to get liberation herein under your authority”. You should be propitious. Thus Lord Viṣṇu should be informed. Then the (Goddess) Vāgīśvarī and Lord Vāgīśa should be invoked as before, worshipped and offered oblations and the disciple should be gently struck on the chest. Om, hām, hām, hom, phat. (The preceptor) should enter with the same (mantra) and severe the consciousness in the above-said thread with the (mantra) of weapon and (showing) the ankuṣamudrā (formation with fingers denoting a goad) and jyeṣṭhā (mantra) Om, hām, ham, hom, hṛum, phat. Having drawn it with (the mantra of) the heart ending with “oblations”, it should be lodged in one’s own soul repeating the same (mantra) and ending with “obeisance”. Om, hām, ham, hom obeisance to the soul. The union of divine parents should be imagined as before with the udbhavamudrā (posture with fingers denoting generation) and (the seed of the soul) should be cast into the womb of the goddess by exhibiting the same
(mudrā) from the left. Om, hām, ham, hām obeisance to the soul. the birth of the body should be (accomplished) by (the mantra of) the heart, the postnatal (ceremony) by (the mantra of) the head.

23. Otherwise its possession (could be accomplished) by (the mantra of) the tuft. For the sake of enjoyment of pleasures it should be done by the mantra of the armour. In regard to the purity of principles (it should be done) with (the mantra of) the heart and in the case of impregnation it is in the same way as before.

24-25. For cutting bonds (it should be) accomplished by (the mantra of) the head. Having cut the bonds thus, the preceptor should repeat (the mantra) hundred times. Even after having cut the bonds thus, (the preceptor) should cut it with the repetition of the mantra of the weapon and with a scissor over which the mantra of the beatific principles has been repeated. Om, hrim, to the thread of the beatitude of consecration haḥ phat. The thread should be removed and kept in a circular shape as before (described in the previous chapter) with (the repetition of the mantra of the weapon).

26. Having placed it over the sacrificial ladle filled with clarified butter, oblations should be done with the mantra of the beatific principles and weapons. Five oblations should be made with (the mantra of) the weapon for the cessation of shoots of bondage.

27. Eight oblations should be made for the sake of expiation. Om, haḥ to the weapons hrim, phat. Lord Hṛṣīkeśa should be invoked and worshipped and offered oblations.

28. As laid down earlier investiture of authority should be made “om, hām accept this fees of sentiment, oblations” (is the mantra which should be repeated). O Hara! (you) should not remain as a bond of this being (the disciple) whose bondage has completely been burnt away. Listen to this mandate of Lord Śiva. Having bid farewell to Lord Govinda (Viṣṇu) and united the soul of knowledge which resembles the moon’s disc half uncovered by the band by exhibiting the saṁbhūramudrā (posture with fingers denoting gathering) and having bid farewell by showing the udbhavamudrā (formation with fingers denoting generation), the drop of water should be placed on the thread as before. Having bid farewell to the (divine)
parents and having worshipped the fire with flowers, etc. the final oblation should be made as laid down. Thus the consecration also gets purified.

CHAPTER EIGHTYSIX

Mode of Purification of scriptural knowledge

The Lord said:

1. The union of the beatific principle of knowledge and that of ancient one should be done as before, after having located the principles. The union should be done with (the mantra) \textit{Om, hom, hym}.

2. Attachment, pure knowledge, fate, time, illusion and ignorance together with beatific principle are (known as) the seven unions.

3. The six letters, ra, la, va, śa, ṣa, and sa are said (to represent) the branches of learning. The terms beginning with \textit{pranava (Om)} are twenty-one (in number) (as below)—\textit{Om} obeisance to Śiva, who is the Lord of all (created) things. \textit{Ham}, to (Lord) Śiva, to Īśāna at my head, to Tatpuruṣa at my face, to Aghora at the heart, to Vāmadeva at the anus, to the form of Sadyojāta. \textit{Om} obeisance again and again to the extremely secret form, to the protector, to the deathless one, to the Lord of all beings, to the form of effulgence, to the Supreme Lord (one who pervades) the sky by thoughts \textit{Om}.

4-8. \textit{Om} the forms of Rudras and the \textit{bhuvanas} (worlds) are described now. The first one is Vāmadeva (Lord of irascible nature), next Sarvabhavodbhava (the source of all beings), Vajradeha (possessing a strong body), Prabhu (lord), Dhātā (the supporter), Krama (order), Vikrama (conquest), Suprabha (resplendent), Vaṭu (youth), Praśānta (tranquil), Paramākṣara (supreme knowledge), Śiva (auspicious), Saśiva (endowed with auspiciousness), Babhru (tawny-coloured), Aksaya (unperishable), Šambhu (one who begets peace), Adṛṣṭarūpa (having an invisible form), Adṛṣṭanāma (having an unseen name), Rūpavardhana (promoter of beatuty),
Manonmana (one who agitates the mind), Mahāvīrya (the mighty one), Citrāṅga (one who is variegated) (and) Kalyāṇa (the blessed one). Thus (the Rudras) are known by the twenty-five names (together with) Mantra (the controller of mind), Ghora (the dreadful one) and Amara (the immortal one). Pūṣā and hastijīhva are the two occult nerves in that (above-said) beatific phase. Vyāna, nāga and prabhaṣijana (are the vital winds).

9. The only object is that of the form. The feet and the eyes are the organs. Sound, touch and sight are known as the three qualities.

10. Here the state is that of deep sleep. Lord Rudra is the cause. All the worlds should be looked upon as located in this (beatific principle of) knowledge.

11. Gentle beating, cutting and entry into it should also be done. Having pulled it from the region of the heart by means of knowledge, it should be seized.

12. It should be super-imposed on one's own soul. The beatific principle should be firmly held and then placed in the fire-pit, after having invoked (lord) Rudra, the cause, and submitted (to him) the (new born) child.

13. Having invoked the divine parents, (the preceptor) should gently strike the (new-born) child in the heart (of the disciple). After having entered it with the mantra spoken earlier, one should unite it with his own soul.

14. After having drawn it out and taking it, it should be united with his own soul by the method described already. It should be united in the womb from the left side. After (the repetition of) the doḍaḍa (twelve) letters of mantra it should be taken out.

15. The rites relating to the birth and post-natal purification of the body, enjoyment, deep absorption; purification of the stream and of the principles should be performed.

16. One hundred oblations should be made as expiation as laid down for the removal of all bondages due to impurities.

17. The severance of bondage (should be done) with (the mantra of) the weapon. The vanishing force of impurities.
should be cut and pounded. Then the thread should be placed in a circular form.

18. Its burning and the absence of those letters as well as expiation should then be done. The invocation of (god) Rudra, (and his) worship and the submission of sensibles of sight and smell (should be done).

19. Om, hr̥tim O Rudra I take this fee of the sensibles of sight and smell. Oblations. After having conveyed the mandate of lord Śambhu (Śiva) and bidding farewell to (lord) Rudra, the cause, the pure spirit should be located (first) in himself and then located in the thread of bondage.

20. The subtle speck (of the soul) should be placed on his head and the divine) parents should be bid farewell. Then the final oblation should be made, as laid down, which completes all formalities.

21. The act of gently beating and other acts should be done in the beatific knowledge as described earlier. Here the speciality is the location of (the soul as a) speck. Thus the beatific knowledge is purified.

CHAPTER EIGHTYSEVEN

Mode of purification of the principle of peace

The Lord said:

1-2. The beatific knowledge should be united now with the (principle of) peace as laid down. The two principles lie in the (principle of) peace. Bhāveśvara and Saḍāsiva are spoken as the two letters ha and kṣa. The Rudras are equal in number to the worlds. They are as follows:

3. Prabhava (valiant), Samaya (time), Kṣudra (little), Vimala (free from impurity), Śiva (auspicious), Ghana (heavy), Niraṇjanākāra (unstained form), Svasiva (auspicious to himself), Dīptikāraṇa (cause of brilliance), Tridaśeśvara (lord of

1. This act and the succeeding ones are same as those described in the previous chapter.
the thirty (gods), Trīdāśa (representing the thirty), Kālasaṁjñaka (known as the time), Sūkṣma (minute), Ambujeśvara (lord of the lotus). These are the Rudras firmly established in the principle of peace.

4. (Obeisance) to the one who pervades the ether, to the form which manifests as the ether, to the all-pervasive, to the auspicious one, to the endless, to one who has no master, to one who is not having any hold, to the firm one, to the eternal, to the one firmly established in the seat of yoga, to the eternal yogin, and one who partakes of such meditation (of votaries) are the twelve terms (used in their invocation).

5. The preceptor should meditate with the two protective mantras (known as) bindu and upakāraka, the two occult nerves alambuṣa and syasa and the two vital winds kṛkara and kūrmaka in the subtle phase.

6. The organs of skin and hand are considered as the two senses of perception for this beatific principle. The attributes of touch and sound are the only two attributes. Lord (Śiva) is the only cause of these.

7. Having contemplated upon the different worlds which are located in the beatific principle of peace as the fourth state (of consciousness) (in which the soul gets united with the Supreme being), (the preceptor) should do the (acts of) gentle beating, division, entry and union.

8. Having drawn the (beatific principle of) peace from the string of the face, it should be held (by the preceptor). Having merged it in one's own self, the beatific principle should be held and projected in the receptacle.

9. "O Lord! I am initiating this disciple desirous of release (from bondage) subject to your control. You have to be beneficial to him." The appeal should thus be made.

10. After having invoked the divine parents and doing the gentle beating of the disciple etc. and collecting the soul-force, it should be united with his preceptor's own soul.

11. Having invoked the divine parents as before by (showing) mudrā known as udbhava (formation with fingers denoting generation), it should be located in the womb of the goddess by repeating the principal mantra of the god preceded by the mantra of the heart.
12. A corporeal frame for the beatitude should be done with the (repetition of the mantra of the) heart five times. (The mantra of) the head (should be repeated) for bringing it into being. Its authority (is accomplished) by (the mantra of) the tuft and the enjoyment by (the mantra of) the armour.

13. Its repose (is accomplished) by (the repetition of) the mantra of weapons. The purification of the currents (is achieved) by (that of lord) Śiva. In (the case of) purification of the principle, (the rites of) garbhādhāna etc. (should be done) in the same manner as before.

14. The thread is untied with that of the armour. Having completed the purification thus, one should repeat the mantras hundred times. In order to compensate the mitigation of the power of mantras five oblations should be made with (the mantra of) the weapon.

15. After having untied the thread, it should be severed with a knife by the repetition (of the mantra) of the weapon seven times just as the bondage is cut off with the principal mantra.

16. (The mantra is): "Om, haum, to the thread of the beatific principle of peace ḫaḥ, hūm, ḫaṭ. After having untied and made into a circle, the chord should be placed as before in the sacrificial ladle filled with clarified butter with (the repetition of the mantra of) the weapon. Oblation should be done with (the mantra of) the weapon and of the beatific principle.

17. Five oblations should be made with (the mantra of) the weapon for the sake of ending the fresh shoots of bondage. To remedy the obstruction in expiation, eight oblations should then (be made). Om, ḫaḥ to the weapon hūm ḫaṭ (is the mantra for the same).

18. Having invoked god with (the mantra of) the heart, and offered worship and appeasement, the appropriate fee should be offered to him in the prescribed way: "Om, hām, O lord! accept this fee of intellect and ego, oblations."

19. O lord! You should not remain as a bondage for this being whose all bonds have been burnt away. Thus the mandate of (lord) Śiva should be made to be heard.

20. The god should be bid adieu and the crescent-like soul should be united with the lord Rudra. Then it must be united with one’s own (preceptor’s) soul in the prescribed way.
21. The same should be united with the thread by showing pure \textit{udbhavamudrā} (formation with fingers denoting generation). The drop of nectar should be put on the head of the disciple with (the repetition of) the principal (\textit{mantra}).

22. Having taken leave of the (divine) parents after worshipping them with flowers etc., (the preceptor) should offer the final oblation to the fire as a concluding rite.

23. Even here the acts of gentle beating etc. should be done as before. The distinctive feature is (the use of) its principal \textit{mantra}. Thus the purification (of the beatific principle) of peace is done without any impediment.

\section*{CHAPTER EIGHTYEIGHT}

\textit{Mode of initiation which secures nirvāṇa (liberation from existence)}

\textit{The Lord said:}

1. (The preceptor) should blend the beatific principle surpassing peace with the pure beatific principle of peace and write the principles of letters with that as before. \textit{Om, hrim, kṣaum, haum, hām} (are the syllables used for) the union.

2-5. (Goddess) Śakti and (God) Śiva which are the two principles (of the universe), the eight perfections of the universe (known as) \textit{dīpaka} (illuminating), \textit{rocika} (brightening), \textit{mocaka} (delivering from bonds), \textit{ārdhva-gāmi} (ascending up), \textit{vyomarūpa} (of the form of ether), \textit{ānātha} (not having any master), \textit{anāśrita} (not being dependent) and the eighth the syllable of \textit{om}, the \textit{mantra} of (lord) Ṭīrtha, the sixteen letters beginning with the letter ‘a’ and ending with \textit{visarga} (aspirated sound), the principal \textit{mantra}, the two (occult nerves) \textit{kuhū} and \textit{saṅkhīnt} which are the cause for the body and the two winds \textit{devadatta} and \textit{dhananājaya} (should be contemplated as pervading the above). The senses of touch and hearing are considered as the materials of sense perception. The principle of sound is the predominating attribute. Its state is the fifth state exceeding that of the fourth state (the state in which the soul becomes one with the supreme soul).
6. Lord Sadāśiva should be known as the sole cause. Having meditated upon the collective beatific principles known as beyond (the beatific principle) of peace, (the rites of) stroking gently etc. should be performed.

7. Having gently beaten the beatific principle of the thread and dividing it (mentally) with (the recitation of the principal mantra) ending with phaṭ, (the preceptor should penetrate inside the noose (with the recitation of the above mantra) ending with (the pronunciation of) salutations and loosen (the beatific principle with the recitation of the above mantra) ending with phaṭ.

8. Then (the beatific principle of) the thread should be consecrated with (the recitation of) the mantras of the tuft (and) heart ending with “oblations” and should be drawn out of the head of the thread with the inhalation of breath and showing the śṛṇimudrā (posture with fingers denoting a goad).

9. Having gathered it with the retention of breath, it should be projected into the fire-receptacle with the exhalation of breath (and showing the mudrā known as) udbhava (posture with fingers denoting generation), after having consecrated with (the mantra of) the heart ending with “obeisance”.

10. All the worship etc. of this should be accomplished as (it would be done) for the beatitude of non-action after having invoked lord Sadāśiva and worshipping him and making offerings.

11. (The lord should be addressed by the preceptor as follows):

“I initiate this person (disciple) desirous of emancipation in this well-known mode of life. You should be beneficial (to him)” I am submitting to you with devotion.

12. After having invoked the (divine) parents and having made offerings and achieving their presence, the disciple should gently be struck on the chest with the syllable consecrated by (the mantra of) the heart.

13. Om, hām, hūṃ, hām, phaṭ. Having entered (the heart) with (the repetition of) this (mantra), the psychic energy should be divided by showing the aṅkusa mudrā (formation with the fingers denoting a goad) and with the weapon along with the noose.
14. *Om, hāṃ, haḥ, hrūṃ, phaṭ.* Having drawn it (with this *mantra*) duly consecrated and ending with "oblations", it should be united with his own soul by concluding with "obeisance", after having seized it.

15. *Om, hāṃ, ham, him,* obeisance to the soul. After having meditated on the union of the (divine) parents as before by (showing) the *udbhava mudrā* (posture with the fingers denoting generation), (the preceptor) should place (the psychic principle) in the womb of the goddess with the same (*mantra*) and by the left.

16. The (rites of) *garbhādhāna* etc. should be done as laid down earlier. One should repeat (the *mantra of*) release and the bondage is cut off with that of the principal (*mantra*).

17. As before five times five oblations should be done with (the *mantra of*) weapons for the sake of cutting the bonds and to destroy the evil forces in the disciple.

18. With the repetition of the *mantra* of weapons seven times the principal *mantra* of beatitude the bonds should be cut, with the scissor.

19. *Om, hāṃ,* to the noose of beatitude beyond that of peace *haḥ, hūṃ, phaṭ.* (Then the preceptor) should bid farewell to the noose as described earlier, make it into a circle, place it in the ladle filled with clarified butter and cast it into fire with the (*mantra of*) weapons and of beatitude.

20. Five oblations should be made with (the *mantra of*) the weapon for the removal of the goad of bonds. Eight oblations should be made for compensating atonements.

21. Having invoked lord Sadāśiva with (the *mantra of*) the weapon and done appeasement, one should submit suzerainty as laid down before.

22. "*Om, hāṃ,* Sadāśiva, accept fees (in the form of) the principle of mind. Oblations. O (lord) Sadāśiva! You should never remain as a bond for this being whose all shackles have been destroyed. You hear the mandate of lord Śiva."

23-24. The final oblation should be made with the principal (*mantra*). (Lord) Sadāśiva should be bid adieu. Then the preceptor should unite in his soul, the pure soul in the body of the pupil just risen like the autumnal moon by showing the *samhāramudrā* (posture made with the fingers denoting gathering),
after having collected the same by (showing) the *udbhavamudrā* (posture made with fingers denoting generation).

25. Then (the preceptor) should place drops of water of *arghya* (offered for washing) on the head of the disciple as completion. Having requested the divine parents with great devotion to forgive they should be bid adieu.

26. “O Parents! You have been put to trouble for the sake of initiating this disciple. Having discarded that gracefully depart with pleasure to your own place.”

27. (The preceptor) should then cut off the tuft (of the disciple) of the form of knowledge to a length of four finger-breathths with the scissors, the weapon of lord Śiva, (duly) consecrated with the *mantra* of the tuft.

28. “*Om, klim*; to the tuft, *hūm, phat, om, haḥ*, to the weapon, *hūm, phat.*” Then those (cuttings) should be set in a ladle full of clarified butter in which a ball of cow-dung is kept in the middle and cast into fire with (the recitation of) the *mantra* of weapon ending with *phat*.

29. After having washed the two kinds of ladles and after bathing the disciple, the self (preceptor) should sip waters and gently beat the soul thus blended with the *mantra* of the weapon.

30. It should be disjoined, drawn and worshipped as before to the end of twelve (kinds of worship) and placed in the petals of the lotus of his own heart.

31. The ladle is filled with clarified butter. The ladle should be held (in such a way that the cup of the ladle) faces downwards according to the rules of daily rites of worship and by showing the *saṅkhāmudrā* (posture made with fingers denoting a conch).

32. He should have his head and neck expanded in unison with the pronunciation of the nasal sound (*om*), having his sight fixed and (the heart) filled with contemplation of the Supreme Being.

33. Having gathered the six paths¹ in the form of nerves from the pitcher, the sacrificial pit, the pupil and from one's own soul, (the preceptor) should place them at the head of the sacrificial ladle.

---

¹ The six paths are *mantra, pada, varna, bhumana, tattva* and *kalā* of which the first three are related to the sound and the rest to the objects according to *saṅkhāra-krama* and the reverse way according to *ṣṛṣṭi-krama*. See Śāradātītaka 5.79.86.93.
34-35. Having contemplated the soul-energy as a point it should be united with the (following) seven (principles) in turn. The first one is the union of the soul. Then follows the next one consisting of repetition of the mantras of the heart etc. after having done the inhalation and the retention of the breath with the mouth open a little.

36. The form of the sound (om), which has permeated the suṣumṇā (an artery of human body), is the third one. There would be calm absorption of the mind in the seventh cause by one's renunciation.

37-38. The movements above the energy and the sound known as the discordant (are the fifth one). (The sound emitted) by the universal life, which cannot be measured by energy and which is the discordant of time is the sixth one. The seventh one is that beyond the (region of) energy. This is the proper place for union and is known as the discordant principle.

39. After having inhaled the breath and retaining it while keeping the mouth little open, (the preceptor) should utter the principal (mantra) and (accomplish) the repose of the soul of the disciple.

40. The letter ha (should be deemed as resting) in the lightning stream which is the life force of six paths. The letter u remains pervading above the navel for a length of twelve aṅgulas (an aṅgula is equal to four finger breadths).

41. Then above that the letter ma (should be made to occupy) four finger breadths over the heart. The syllable om, expressive of lord Viṣṇu, occupies the region of the heart for eight aṅgulas still above.

42. The letter ma, expressive of (lord) Rudra, occupies the region of the palate for four aṅgulas. Similarly, the nasal phonetic sign, expressive of lord Iśvara should occupy the middle of the forehead.

43. The syllable om, (the essence of) Lord Sadāśiva, should rest in the aperture on the head. The female energy should be located in the aperture on the head. These should always be rejected one by one.

44-45. After having experienced the divine minute contact therein, the preceptor should contemplate the soul of the disciple in that supreme twelfth principle, characterising extreme happi-
ness, devoid of feelings, beyond the reach of mind, auspicious and giving rise to eternal qualities.

46. After having offered an oblation of clarified butter into the fire for lord Śiva with the mantra of lord Śiva ending with vauṣāt for the sake of stability of the union.

47-52. Having offered final oblation as laid down, (the preceptor) should do for the attainment of qualities. “Om, ḥām, oblations to the soul! Be omniscient! Om, hrūm, oblations to the soul! Be satisfied! Om, hrūm, oblations to the soul! Be cognizant of originless existence! Om, haum, oblations to the soul! Be self-dependent! Om, haum, soul! Oblations! Be undiminished in energy! Om, haḥ, oblations to the soul! Be of endless energy!” The self, possessing six qualities, should thus be taken out of Supreme Being and with contemplation united in the body of the disciple as laid down. Drops of ambrosia from the water-offering should be placed on the head of the disciple to alleviate sufferings due to the projection of powerful soul force (into the disciple). Having made obeisance to the sacrificial pitcher relating to lord Śiva, situated to the right of (lord) Śiva, and placing the disciple to the right of his self with a pleasing face, (the preceptor) should submit to the lord (as follows): “This (disciple) has been favoured by you only! Being present in this form of mine, increase his devotion to the lord, fire-god, and preceptor.” Having paid obeisance to the lord, the preceptor should himself bless the disciple affectionately by saying, “May you have bliss”. The sacrifice should be concluded after having offered eight flowers to the lord with extreme devotion and bathing the disciple with (the waters of) the pitcher of lord Śiva.

CHAPTER EIGHTYNINE

Initiation of principles

The Lord said:

1. Then the initiation in the principles is imparted as it is concise. Binding with the thread should be done suitably with one’s soul.
2. The fundamental principles should be contemplated as pervading time, fire etc. concluding with pure bliss. They should be like the bead of rosaries, the principles distributed evenly on the whole thread.

3. After having invoked the principle of bliss etc., the rites of garbhadhāna etc. (should be done) as before. But the offer of all fees should be done with the principal (mantras).

4. Then the final oblation endowed with the sound-essence of all principles should be offered by which alone the disciple gets emancipation.

5. After having offered another such final oblation to lord Śiva for the sake of union and for securing firmness, (the disciple) should be bathed with the waters of the pitcher (consecrated) for Śiva.

CHAPTER NINETY

Anointing the disciple after worshipping Śiva

The Lord said:

1. Having worshipped lord Śiva, the (rite of) bathing should be done for the welfare of the disciple. Nine pitchers should duly be placed in the directions of north-east etc.

2. The preceptor should invoke the eight oceans of alkali, milk, curd, ghee, molasses, wine, sweet water and sour water in those pitchers.

3-4. The following eight Rudras should be duly located in them:— (1) Śikhāṇḍin, (2) Śṛiṅkaṇṭha, (3) Trīmūrta, (4) Ekārudrākṣa, (5) Ekanetra, (6) Śivottama, (7) Śūkṣma, and (8) Ananta.

5. Lord Śiva, the ocean and the mantra of lord Śiva should be located in (the pitcher at) the middle. Sacrificial sheds (are erected) for the deities of the quarters within the pavilion.

6. A platform measuring eight inches in height and two cubits in length should be erected wherein an endless seat should be made as also a seat of bet leaves.
7-14. Having made the disciple face eastwards, and doing the *sakalikarana*\(^1\), (the preceptor) should worship (the pupil). His body should then be rubbed with sour gruel, earth, ashes, *dūrva* (a kind of grass), cow dung balls, white mustard and curd mixed with water. Then the pupil should duly be bathed with the waters of the pitchers starting with that of alkali with the repetition of (the *mantras* of) the heart, *vidyāśa* and *sambara* with pleasure and devotion. Having clad him in white dress and placed him to the right of lord Śiva, the disciple should again be worshipped as before in the cushion mentioned already. (The preceptor should address him as follows): "From this day onwards you shall test well the recipient of the dress of an anchorite such as the turban, cloth on the body while in meditation, crown, knife, pot, rosary, book etc., initiation, exposition and installation before you favour him. You hear the command." After having saluted the disciple and prostrating (in front of lord) Mahēśvara, the following submission should be made for the removal of all impediments. "I have been commanded by you in the form of a preceptor for doing *abhiseka* (anointing) ceremony. This (disciple) who is well-versed in the scriptural lore has been anointed by me O (Lord) Śiva." Five times five oblations should be made for the propitiation of the chain of *mantras*.

15-16. Then the final oblation should be made. The disciple should then be made to sit on the right side of one's self (preceptor). Then (the preceptor) should mark the fingers of the right hand of the disciple beginning with the thumb with the burnt edge of *darbha* with the *sambara* (*mantra*) for the sake of establishing contact. After having placed flowers on the hand, he should be made to bow down.

17-18. The merits of performance of this rite should be assigned to (lord) Śiva, the fire, the pitcher and his own self. (The preceptor should address him as follows) : The disciples who have been well examined in the scriptures should be blessed by you. Like a monarch the desired objects are gained by men by this anointing (with the *mantra* of) the weapons—*Om, śrām, śrim, paśum, hūm, phat*.

---

1. The act of assigning the different parts of the body to the different deities with the different *mantras*. 
CHAPTER NINETYONE

Different kinds of mantras for the worship of God:

The Lord said:

1. One should worship lord Śiva, (lord) Viṣṇu and other gods such as Bhāskara (Sun) after being anointed, accompanied by the sounding of the conch, bhīrī (a kind of kettle-drum) and bathe (the images) with five things got from a cow.

2-3. Whoever (worships) gods (in this manner) goes to heaven and elevates his departed manes. Whatever sin has accrued to him in the course of millions of years gets reduced to ashes in the fire by anointing gods with ghee. Whoever bathes gods with an āḍhoka (two maṇḍs) of ghee etc. becomes a celestial.

4-6. After having applied sandal paste, (the lord) should be worshipped with perfumes etc. The gods praised with hymns with little effort always confer ability to know past and future events, proficiency in mantra, enjoyment and emancipation.

7. Having taken principal letters of the mantras, if they are divisible by two, (one should know) (whether they are) auspicious or inauspicious. (If divisible) by three (they denote) ājīva, mūla and dhātu, (and if divisible) by four (they denote the four castes) brahmaṇ etc. (Divisible) by five denote the five principles (elements) (earth etc.). So also for muttering (the mantras) etc. (one should find whether they are auspicious or inauspicious). If the mantra consisting of groups of three letters happens to have the letters pa, ma and ka and letter ma comes in the middle it is inauspicious. Lord Indra and a king occurring in the middle are auspicious.

8-9. One should write the mantras of Sūrya, Gaṇapati, Śiva, Durgā (śaivite goddess), Šrī (consort of Viṣṇu) and Viṣṇu in a lṛtus. One should write on that the mantras commencing with a three-letter unit to those having four letters in the form of the gomītra (a particular form of writing letters) with a consecrated stylus.

10. In the same way (one should know) the auspiciousness etc. of (mantras) of sixtyfour letters from the fall on or contact of the dice with the odd place.
11. Commencing with one unit of three-lettered (*mantras*) to eight units of three-lettered (*mantras*), denoting the *dhvaja* (flagstaff) etc. even ones are inauspicious and odd ones are auspicious.

12. The *mantra* known as *tripura* is composed of the letter ‘ka’ amplified by ā, i etc., and preceded by the sixteen letters along with their vowel sounds.

13. The *mantras* having for its principal part (the syllable) *hrim*, preceded by *praṇava (om)* and concluding with “obeisance” used in worship are twenty-thousand one hundred and sixty.

14. The mantras ‘ām, *hrim*’ are for (goddess) Sarasvati (goddess of learning), Cañč [aurī and Durgā (different forms of consort of Śiva). So *ām*, *i* are the *mantras* for Śrī (goddess Lakṣmī).

15. Then *ksaum*, *kraum* are the *mantras* for Sun, and *ām*, *haum* for god Śiva. *Ām*, *gam* are the *mantras* for lord Gaṅeśa and *ām* for lord Harī (Viṣṇu).

16-17. The preceptor should after anointing repeat one hundred and fifty times the letters ‘ka’ etc. as well as the sixteen vowels. With three ‘ka’ at the beginning along with the vowels and ending with ‘ka’ all the *mantras* are formed. After contemplation (the preceptor) should initiate the disciples.

CHAPTER NINETYTWO

*Mode of installation of the image of lord Śiva*

*The Lord said*:

1. O Guha (a name of the son of lord Śiva and Pārvatī)! I shall briefly describe the (mode of) installation of the *liṅga* (representing) Śiva and the pedestal (representing) the female energy. Their union (is accomplished) by (the repetition of) the *mantras* of Śiva.

2. There are five different ways of installation. I shall describe to you their characteristics. Where there is union of the *brahmastilā*, that installation is worth that name.
3. The *sthāpana* (fixing) is the proper manner in which (the *liṅga*) is placed in the pedestal. The installation in which (the *liṅga*) is placed in pedestal with a cleave it is called *sthitasthāpana* (installation on a pedestal already existing).

4-5. It is (known as) *uthāpana* (re-installation) in which the removal (of the old *liṅga*) precedes. It is known as *āsthāpana* in which the new *liṅga* is placed and consecration is done by wise men. (The installation of the images) of (lord) Viṣṇu etc. are of two kinds. In all these cases supreme lord Śiva should be made the soul-energy.

6. There are five divisions in the case of the temples also on the basis of the above differences. The ground should be examined according to the requirements for the respective temple.

7. The earth is white (coloured) having the smell of clarified butter, blood-coloured, possessing the smell of blood, the yellow one having sweet smell and black one having the smell of wine, which are respectively known as the brahmin etc.

8. Among these the earlier ones are commendable than the later ones. If the ground of this type is dug upto a cubit and filled again it would be in excess of the pit.

9. The kind of earth which is moist with water is also to be known as excellent. The preceptor should purify well (the ground) which is impure because (of the presence) of bones, charcoal etc.

10. The ground where a city, village, fort, house or temple is to be constructed (should be purified) repeatedly by digging or by erecting cattle sheds or by ploughing.

11. The worship of the (sacrificial) shed (should be done) as also the concluding (rite) for the satisfaction through the mantras. Having concluded the rites, (the preceptor) should offer one thousand oblations with the aghorāstra (mantra) in the prescribed manner.

12. After having levelled the ground and plastering the ground, the preceptor should purify it. Encircling lines should be drawn with gold, curd and unbroken rice.

13. (Lord) Śiva should be worshipped in the filled up pitcher at the north-east corner from the centre. After having worshipped the presiding spirit, those waters should be sprinkled on the spades etc.
14. Having offered oblations to the groups of demons in the prescribed manner, they should be scattered in (different) directions. Having sprinkled (water) over the ground, the spades (and other implements) should be washed and worshipped.

15-16. Having placed a pitcher (filled with water) and covered by a pair of clothes on the shoulder of a brahmin, being accompanied by the sounding of musical instruments, it should be placed at the south-east corner (of the shed) and worshipped at the auspicious moment. The ground should be excavated with the spade duly consecrated and sprinkled with honey.

17. The earth dug out should be deposited on the south-west corner and water from the pitcher should be put into the pit. The eastern boundary of the edifice should be extended as far as desired.

18. Then having stood there for a while, the preceptor should make the excavations carried around and sprinkle water over the same until the north-eastern corner of the ground is reached.

19-20. This is spoken as the *arghyadāna* (offering of waters) (accomplished) by taking round the pitcher. The ground should thus be taken possession of. After that, (the preceptor) should cause the ground to be excavated, if it is a virgin one, until the stone or water (is reached), in order to ward off evils due to the extraneous matter. The extraneous matter should be dug out in the prescribed manner.

21. If (the extraneous matter) relates to a human being, the (presence of) extraneous matter could be known by writing letters, $a, ka, ca, ta, ta, pa, ya, ta$ and $ha$ for query and casting the die. If it falls on the flagstaff etc. at the south-east corner, it indicates the presence of extraneous matter.

22. The existence of that (matter) could be validly known from the changes noticed in the body of the questioner or from the wailing of animals in (different) directions or from their entry (and movement) into the ground.

23. In the alternative, the presence of extraneous matter could be known by writing the letters of the alphabet on a plank or on the ground, dividing them into eight groups and from the presence of the group (of letters) in the directions east to north-east in order.
24-25. One should declare the presence of (a piece of) iron in the eastern part if the letter of the ‘a’ group is met. Similarly, the presence of charcoal in the south-eastern part from ‘ka’ group, of ash in the southern part from ‘ca’ group, of bones in the south-western part from ‘ta’ group, of bricks in the western part from ‘ta’ group, of skull (in the north-western part) from ‘pa’ group, of a corpse from ‘ya’ group and of (a piece of) iron from ‘ta’ group (could be declared).

26-28. So also, (the presence of) silver, from ‘ha’ group and (the presence of) something causing harm (could be known) from ‘a’ group. (After removal of these extraneous matters) and after taking eight inches of earth and sprinkling water with (the mantra of) the soul, three-quarters of the pit should be filled with water and earth broken by a club. Having made the ground levelled, the preceptor should go to the sacrificial shed with the general argha offering in the hand. After having worshipped the two guardian deities of the entrance, the preceptor should enter the temple through the western door.

29-30. (Then the preceptor) should purify his self as well as the sacrificial shed and sacrificial pit. The sacrificial pitcher along with the small sacrificial pitcher (should be placed) there. The worship of (lord) Śiva and the guardian deities of the world and the generation of the fire and its worship and other acts should all be done as before. (The preceptor) should go to the bathing shed of the stones along with the yajamāna (at whose instance the sacrifice is performed).

31-32. The stone slabs of a temple for the liṅga are known as the pāda or dharma etc. They are commended if they are square shaped, eight inches in height and one cubit in breadth. Those made of bricks should be half (the size) of those made of stones. If the temple (is built of) stones the images (should be made of) stones and if (it is) of bricks the images (should be of) bricks.

33. (These statues) (should be) marked with nine faces and lotus flowers known as nandā, bhadrā, jayā, riktā, and the fifth (pūrṇā).

34. Padma, mahāpadma, taśkha, makara and samudra the five treasures; the presiding deities of these should be located in pitchers.

35. The names of stones are nandā, bhadrā, jayā, pūrṇā, ajitā, aparājita, vijayā, maṅgalā and dharani, the ninth.
36-37. Subhadra, vibhadra, sunanda, puspanandaka, jaya, vijaya, kumbha, pūrna and uttara are the nine pitchers of treasures. Having offered the cushion to them, (the preceptor) should (gently) beat and write on them with the mantra of the weapon.

38-39. All the stone slabs should be covered without exception with the mantra of armour. They should be bathed with perfumed waters mixed with earth, cow-dung and cow’s urine with the recitation of mantra of weapon ending with hūṃ phat. Then they should be bathed with the five things got from a cow and also the five sweet things (milk, sugar, ghee, curd and honey) as laid down.

40. Then they should be immersed in perfumed water with the repetition of mantra containing their own names. Then (they should be bathed) with water containing fruits, gems, gold and cow’s horn.

41-48. After having applied sandal paste, the slabs should be wrapped up with clothes. After having provided a seat made of gold and led them to the sacrificial shed circumambulating, they should be laid on a bed or on a mattress of kūṭa with (the recitation of the mantra of) the heart. After having worshipped, the principles commencing with the intellect and ending with the earth should be located therein. The three principles permeating the three divisions should be located in order. (The first group consists of) principles beginning with intellect and concluding with mind, (the second group consists of principles beginning with) thought and concluding with the subtle principles and (the third group) begins with the subtle principles and concludes with the earth. These principles should be taken as location of pure bliss, knowledge and soul. The principles should be worshipped with their respective mantras and their lords with the mantra of the heart in their respective places marked with garlands of flowers in order (as follows): “Om, hūṃ, obeisance to the principle of absolute bliss ! Om, hūṃ obeisance to (lord) Rudra, the lord of the principle of absolute bliss ! Om, hāṃ obeisance to the principle of knowledge ! Om, hāṃ obeisance to (lord) Viṣṇu, lord of the principle of knowledge ! Om, hāṃ obeisance to the principle of soul ! Om, hāṃ obeisance to (lord) Brahmā, lord of the principle of soul !” Each one of the principles—earth, fire, the sacrificer, sun, water, wind, moon and ether
of the eight forms (of the lord) should be located in each one of the slabs along with their presiding deities Śarva, Paśupati, Ugra, Rudra, Bhava, Maheśvara, Mahādeva and Bhīma in order. “Om obeisance to the image of the earth! Om obeisance to the presiding deity of the earth!” are the mantras for duly locating the guardian deities. The pitchers should be worshipped with their own mantras or with these mantras. The principal mantra for (lord) Indra etc. are as narrated below: lūm, rūm, šūm, sūm, vūm, yūm, mūm, hūm, kṣūm.

49. (The procedure for the installation) in the case of nine images has been told. (The procedure for installation) in the case of five images is being told now. Each one of the five principles of creation such as the earth etc. of the images should be located (in the slabs).

50. As before the five presiding deities of these, Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Rudra, Iśvara and Sadāśiva should also be worshipped in them.

51-54. “Om obeisance to the image (of the principle) of earth! Om obeisance to Brahmā the presiding deity (of the principle) of earth!” are the mantras. Having worshipped the five pitchers in order with their own names, the rite of location should be done as laid down, duly commencing with the central image with the prākāra mantra as well as auspicious darbhas and sesameum. After having located the supporting cārikā (energy) in the sacrificial pit and worshipping it, the principles, the presiding deities of the principles, the images and the presiding deities of the images should be pleased with ghee etc. Then the slabs should be sprinkled with waters of propitiation after having offered hundred oblations up to the final one for the purification of the part (of the slab known as) Brahmā, after having touched each one of the principles with kuśas in order and worshipped.

55. Having done the rites of invoking the presence and union, (the principles) should be located again (in the slabs) after purification, in the same way one should do these rites for the three groups (of principles).

56. “Om, ām and īm obeisance to the principles of soul and knowledge.” (Reciting this mantra, the preceptor) should duly touch the three parts (of the stone), Brahmā etc., with the base of the kuṣa etc. The union of the fundamental principles
should be done by the applications of short and long (mantras).

57-59. "Om, hām, um obeisance to the principles of knowledge and absolute bliss." Oblation should be made in the presence of pitchers filled with clarified butter and honey and into which gems have been put and on which the five things got from a cow have been sprinkled, after having worshipped them with their respective mantras being presided over by the guardian deities of the world. The presiding deities of all the slabs should then be contemplated as of the form of knowledge, as having bathed, gold-coloured, and wearing the dress in the form of knowledge. Hundred oblations should be offered with the mantra of the weapon and the mantra of the head for the purification of the sacrificial site and for the removal of defects of deficiency etc.

CHAPTER NINETYTHREE

Mode of worshipping the presiding deity of a ground

The Lord said:

1. Strings should be laid in the sacrificial shed so as to enclose it. The ground should be divided into sixty-four squares of equal measurements.

2. Two bamboo poles should be fixed at each one of the four corners. Strings (should be laid down) across the eight angular points. They should enclose two squares and six squares. The presiding deity of the ground should be worshipped therein.

3. At the time of worship, one should meditate on the presiding deity of the ground in the fire-pit, as the form of a demon with curled locks and head held raised up from the ground and facing north.

4. The knees, knee-joints and thighs (of the deity) should be taken as lying in the directions of north-west and south-east, the two soles of feet in the south, the head in the north and the two folded palms in the heart.

5. The auspicious gods located in the body of this person are worshipped. The presiding deities of the eight angular points,
situuated in the eight half chambers of the angular points (should also be worshipped.)

6. The sages Marici etc. should be located in the six squares commencing with the east, Brahmā in the four squares at the centre. The rest of the gods are known to occupy one square each.

7-8. The twelve joints such as the trident, svastika (a kind of figure), thunderbolt, mahāsvastika, sampuṭa, trikaṭu, maṇibandha and the pure square among all the joints of the presiding deity of the ground should be left in the walls etc.

9. Oblations of unbroken rice along with clarified butter, for (lord) Īśa, offering of water with lotus flowers for lord Parjanya (god of rain), and a bright saffron-coloured banner should be offered for Jayanta (son of Indra).

10. Gems (should be offered) to Mahendra (lord of the celestials), smoke-coloured canopy for the Sun, wheat and ghee for (the god of) truth and clarified butter alone for (lord) Bhṛśa.

11. Unclean meat (should be offered) to (the lord of the sky) and the flour of barley (first fried and then ground) for all those gods commencing with the east. A ladleful of honey, milk and clarified butter should be given to the fire-god.

12. Fried paddy put in golden waters should be offered to (god of) untruth. Honey should be offered to the destroyer of the house and palaudana for Yamarāja (god of death).

13. Perfumes (should be given) for the lord of the gandharvas (semi-divine beings), a bird’s tongue for Bhṛṅga (one who wards) and lotus leaves for the beast on the south. Thus the eight deities (should be offered offerings).

14. Sesamum mixed water and milk (should be given) for the manes. Sticks from the trees for cleansing the teeth should be given to the lord of the entrance by showing the dhenumudrā (posture with fingers indicating a cow).

15. Cakes should be offered to Sugrīva, darbha to Puṣpadanta (a yakṣa), red lotus flowers to Pracetas (lord of waters) (and) wines to demon.

16. Ghee and rice mixed with jaggery (should be given) to Śeṣa (serpent-god), ghee mixed with baked flour or fried paddy to disease. Thus the mode of offering for gods in the western direction has been told.
17. A yellow banner (should be offered) to Máruta (wind god), nágakesara (a kind of fragrant flower) to serpēnt-god and eatables and well-cooked gruel of green gram to Mukhya.

18. Sweet gruel mixed with clarified butter should be given to Soma, root of lily flower to (goddess) Dawn, lōpi to Aditi, and pūri to Diti. These are the gods placed in the northern direction.

19. Sweet meats (should be offered) to Brahmā on the east and to (sage) Marīci in the six squares. Red flowers (should be offered) to (god) Savitrā situated below the angular square (assigned to) the fire-god.

20. Waters along with the kusa should be presented to goddess Sāvitrī below that square. Red sandal should be offered to (god) Vivasvān occupying six squares on the south.

21. Turmeric mixed rice (should be offered) to lord Indra in the corner square below that of the demon. Mixed rice should be presented to Indra-jaya below that of Indra.

22. Rice mixed with jaggery (should be offered) to (lord) Mitra occupying six squares on the west. Rice cooked with ghee should be offered to (lord) Rudra at the square below the angular point in the north-west.

23. Meat (should be offered) to the servant of Rudra below that. An offering of black-gram should be offered to the mountain (god) occupying the six squares on the north.

24. One should duly offer curd and milk to āpas and its progeny below the angular point (dedicated to lord) Śiva after worshipping in the proper way.

25. Brahmā located at the four squares in the middle of the place should be presented gruel along with clarified butter and the five things got from a cow.

26. Outside the sacrificial ground the four demonesses Carakī etc. should be worshipped in the angular points commencing with the north-east and ending with the north-west in order.

27. Meat with ghee should be offered to Carakī, curd with lotus flowers to (demoness) Vidārī and meat, bile and blood to (demoness) Pūtanā.

28. Bones, blood, biles and meat (should be offered) to demoness sin. Lord Skanda should be offered rice mixed with black gram on the east.
29. Sweet cakes along with kṛṣara (rice and peas boiled together) (should be offered) to (lord)Aryaman in the southern direction), meat along with blood to Jambhaka in the western direction.

30. Rice mixed with blood and flowers (should be presented) to Pilipiṇja (monster-maiden) on the north. Otherwise all the presiding deities of the ground should be worshipped with water along with unbroken rice and kūṭa.

31. In the case of a residential building or town, worship should be done in eighty-one squares. The lines (drawn across the cardinal points of the diagram) should be made to occupy (the breadth of) three squares and comprise (the breadth of) six such squares at the other angular points.

32. The gods Īśa and others should occupy one square each in that (diagram), the serpents and others two squares each, (sages) Marīci and others six squares each, Brahmā is known to occupy nine squares.

33. The above diagram may comprise hundred squares in the case of a city, village or hamlet. Two bamboo poles (are known) as ‘invincible’ and irresistible always.

34. The location (of the deities) in the hundred squares is commended if the rite is done as in the case of a divine edifice. The planets and gods such as (lord) Skanda are known to occupy six squares in that (diagram).

35. Demoness Carakī and others should be located in five squares. The lines and bamboo should occupy spaces as described earlier. In the case of a sacrificial ground relating to the founding of a country, it should comprise one hundred and thirty-four squares.

36. (In that diagram) Brahmā occupies sixty-four squares, as also (sages) Marīci and others. The eight gods, āpas etc. should occupy fifty-four squares.

37. (Gods) Īśāna and others should occupy nine squares. (The gods) Skanda and others should occupy eight squares. (Demonesses) Carakī and others, lines, bamboo should also be located as before.

38. In a sacrificial ground comprising twenty-thousand squares, the location of the deities should be such that they occupy nine times more than what has been enjoined in the founding of a country.
39. The diagram which is divided into twentyfive squares is known as the vaitāla. The other diagrams are known to have nine squares and sixteen sub-divisions.

40. There may be a square figure inscribed in a sexagon or triangle. The location (of the gods) in the case of excavation around should be done as in the case of (the stone slab known as) brahmaśīlā.

41. An offering of sweet gruel to all gods should be made at the installation of the image of a deity or the burial of a dead body.

42. In the absence of any specified measurement, the sacrificial ground should measure five cubits. The sacrificial ground proportional to the measure of the house or divine edifice is always held as excellent.

CHAPTER NINETYFOUR

Mode of placing the stone slabs

_The lord said:_

1. (Demonesses) Carakī and others should be worshipped in the angular points of north-east etc. and outside as before. Three oblations should be done to each one of the gods in succession.

2. After having offered oblation to the presiding spirit, the placing of stone slab (is done) thereafter. (Goddess of) energy and the excellent pitcher known as _ananta_ should be located in the middle line.

3-5. The stone slab should be held in this pitcher with (the recitation of) the principal (mantra) coupled with the letter ‘na’. Having placed the eight pitchers known as Subhadrā etc. in order in the directions east etc. with the recitation of the mantra of the guardian deities of the world and having located the goddesses in each one of the holes, the stone slabs such as Nandā etc. should be duly placed in them by repeating the _sambhara_ (mantra) sacred to the presiding deities of the different images,
in such a way that they are in order from the middle of the ground. The eight (deities) such as the guardian deities of virtue etc. should be located in the different angular points in order.

6. The four pitchers Nanda etc. out of Subhadrā etc. are placed in the south-eastern corner. Ajitā etc. out of the group commencing with Jaya should be located in the east etc.

7. (Lord) Brahmā should be invoked in them and (lord) Maheśvara (Śiva) should be contemplated as pervading the internal space (of the shed) which would serve as a receptacle of these.

8. After having offered oblation one should repeat (the mantra of) the weapon for warding off impediments. The procedure in the case of five stone slabs is now described a little.

9. (The preceptor) should locate the stone slab Pūrṇa in the pitcher (known as) Subhadra half-immersed. The stone slabs respectively known as Nandā etc. should be placed in the pitchers Padma etc. at the different angular points south-east etc.

10-17. Four slabs should be contemplated as located in the middle with the exuberance of mother’s affection. “Om Pūrṇa! You are the great learning! Possessor of all divine attributes! O Daughter of Āṅgiras! You make all (this undertaking of mine) here as complete. Om! Nandā! You make men rejoice! I establish you here. You remain in this temple as fully satisfied as long as the moon, sun and stars shine. O Nandā! Daughter of Vasiṣṭha! You grant long life, fulfilment of) desires, prosperity to men. You have to strive to protect in this temple always. Om Bhadrā! Daughter of Kaśyapa! You always do good to the people. O Goddess! You be granter of long life, of desired (objects) (and) prosperity always. Om! Jayā! O Goddesss! You be granter of prosperity (and) long life always. Om! Jayā! Being established by me you remain here for ever. O Daughter of Br̥gu! You become the governor of prosperity and success. Om! Riktā! Destroyer of excessive defects! O Auspicious one! Granter of accomplishment and emancipation! One who is of the form of the universe and one who underlies all the world, you remain here always.” After having contemplated upon the ethereal mansion, (the preceptor) should locate the three principles therein. Then the sacrifice should be completed in the prescribed manner after having offered the expiatory oblation.
CHAPTER NINETYFIVE

Mode of installation of the linga

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the mode of installation of a linga in temple which yields enjoyment and emancipation. One should always do it for the purpose of enjoyment and emancipation on the day of the god.

2. The installation ceremony should be performed in the five months commencing with māgha (February-March) except (the month of) caitra (April-May) and in the first three karanas (one of the eleven divisions of the day) at the rising of the Jupiter and Venus.

3. (The ceremony should be undertaken) especially in the bright fortnight or in the dark fortnight omitting the fifth, fourth, ninth, eighth and fourteenth days (of the fortnight).

4-5. (All) the other days are auspicious except those falling on the days of inauspicious planets. Commencement during (the rule of) the stable stars of śatabhisak, dhanistā, ārdrā, anurādhā, the three uttara (uttarā, uttaraphālguni and uttarabhādrapada), rohini and śravaṇa yield good results. (The days fixed for the rite should possess) the rising points of aquarius, leo, scorpion, libra, virgo, taurus and sagittarius.

6. Jupiter is always commendable in the above nine stars and seven constellations. Mercury (is commendable) in the sixth, eighth, tenth, seventh and fourth, from the lagna (rising point in the east), while Venus (is commendable) in all the places except the fourth.

7. The Moon is always strengthening if located in seventh, fourth, third or tenth, the sun in the tenth, third, and sixth places and Rāhu (ascending node of the Moon) in the third, tenth and sixth places.

8. The Saturn, Mars, Sun and Ketu (the descending node of the Moon) are commendable in the sixth, and third places. Both the good and bad (planets) in the eleventh place are cruel.

9. Their aspect full in the seventh place, half in the ninth and fifth places, one fourth in the first and tenth places and one fourth less in the fourth and eighth places.
10. (The two constellations) pisces and aries have a duration of three and three-fourth nāḍis (two and a half nāḍis are equal to one hour). The (constellations) taurus and acquarious have a duration of three and three-fourth nāḍis.

11. Capricorn and gemini have a duration of five (nāḍis), sagittarius, scorpion, leo and cancer have a duration of five and three-fourth (nāḍis) and libra and virgo have a duration of five and a half ghaṭikās (synonym of nāḍi).

12. (The constellations) leo, taurus and acquarius are stationary and yield success. (The constellations) sagittarius, libra and aries are moveable. The third (constellations) have both the characteristics.

13-14. The constellations aspected by auspicious planets or associated with them are auspicious and are commendable. Jupiter, Venus and Mercury in the lagna confers abundant strength, long life, sovereignty, valour, strength, progeny, fame and virtue. The first, fourth, seventh and tenth (places from lagna) are known as the kendras.

15. Jupiter, Venus and Mercury in these (houses) yield all perfections. The presence of wicked planets in the third, fourth and eleventh houses from the lagna are beneficial.

16-17. The learned should combine these with the tithis (the days reckoned by the phases of the Moon) for good performances. (The preceptor) should raise a square shed in front of (the temple) leaving a space equal to or five times that (of its measurement) at twelve cubits from the flight of steps with four entrances. (The shed) for (sacrificial bathing) should be half the size of that shed.

18. The shed should be constructed) in the north-east, east or north, (measuring) one or ten or twelve cubits respectively and having a single entrance or four entrances.

19. The remaining eight sheds should be measuring two cubits more than that (shed). The sacrificial altar (should measure) four kara lengths in the middle and should have pillars at the angular points.

20. Leaving apart a quarter of the platform nine or five fire pits or a single pit (should be dug up) in the north-east or east. (The digging of one pit) is done only in the case of the worship of the preceptor.
21-24. (The fire pits) should be a span, an aratni (a cubit of the middle length, from the elbow to the tip of the little finger), a cubit, a yard, four cubits and eight cubits respectively depending on fifty, hundred, thousand, hundred thousand, lakh or a crore oblations (are offered in the pits). (The pit) in the south-east (should be of) the shape of the female generative organ, in the south (of the shape of) the crescent moon, in the south-west (of the shape of) a triangle, in the north-west (of the shape of) a hexagon, in the north (of the shape of) a lotus, in the north-east (of the shape of) an octagon. The pit made at an inclined angle with a border above is auspicious. There should be three borders around that respectively measuring four, three and two fingers in breadth. Alternatively there should be a single border measuring six fingers in breadth or the borders (should be) of the shape of sacrificial pit.

25. The aperture should be above that. It should resemble the leaf of the holy fig tree in its shape. (The aperture should be) an aṅgula in height and eight aṅgulas in breadth.

26. Its length (should be) half the length of the pit and (should be) in the same level as the neck. The apertures of the fire pits on the east, south-east and south should face the north.

27. It should face the east (if the fire pits have been located) in other directions, while those situated at the other points of compass should have their outlets turned towards the north-east. The twenty-fourth of the fire receptacles is called the aṅgula (finger breadth).

28. The four entrances (to the sacrificial shed) on the east etc. should be made of (woods of) plakṣa, udumbara, aśvattha and vata (trees) which duly (stand for) peace, prosperity, strength and health.

29. (The sheds) should be eighteen cubits in length, one cubit high and half (the length) in breadth and should be decorated with mango leaves.

30. The banners should have (colours) resembling (the colours) of a rainbow (or be) red, black, tawny, (or) of the colour of the moon, (or be) white, golden coloured or resembling that of a crystal.

31. (The banner) dedicated to the lotus-born (Brahmā) in the east (should be) red (and that) which belongs to Ananta
(lord of the serpents) in the south-west (should be) blue. The banners (should be) five cubits long and half as much broad.

32-33. The rods should be commensurate with the five cubits of banners being a cubit for every cubit. Twelve kinds of earth from (the places such as) the ant-hill, the tips of the tusk of elephant, horns of the bull, bunch of lotuses, pastures of boars and cows and the cross-ways of roads should be taken in the case (of installation of an image) of Vaikunṭha (Viṣṇu) and eight (kinds) in the case (of installation of an image) of Pīnākīn (Śiva).

34. The decoctions made up from the barks of nyagrodha, udumbara, asvattha, citra and jambu and eight palas (a measure of weight) of the essence of flowers should be taken.

35-36. The waters of the sacred pools, fragrant waters and the waters mixed with the herbs (should be taken). I shall describe the (names of) auspicious flowers (and) fruits (afterwards). Waters mixed with five kinds of gems, cow’s horn and also five things got from a cow should be taken for bathing. A piece of cloth in which the paste has been put should be taken for rubbing.

37. A pitcher having thousand holes should be used for bathing and the yellow pigment for decoration. Roots of hundreds of herbs (are needed). Therein (the roots of) vijaya, lakṣmaṇa, balā, guḍūci, atibalā, pāṭha, sahadvā, satavart, rddhi, suvarcalā and ṣṛddhi have been prescribed separately for bathing.

38-41. (Either) an incessant pouring of waters together with the sesamum and darbha (or) merely the bathing with the sacred ash (has been prescribed) for protection. A wiseman should prepare a paste of powders of barley, wheat, bilva (fruit), along with camphor. (He should also make ready) the pitcher and ganda (a small vessel with a narrow tube like outlet for pouring). The bedstead along with two mattresses, pillow bed and cloth should be made ready suited to one’s aim and in accordance with his means. The vessel filled with ghee and honey and a golden brush should be made ready.

42. The sacrificial small pitcher, the pitcher (sacred to Lord) Śiva, and the pitchers for the guardian deities of the directions, (should be made ready). One pitcher for each of the sacrificial fire-pits should be set apart for inducing sleep and for peace.
43-44. The pitchers for the attendant deities at the door, god of virtue, for Praśānta (a deity), vāstu (presiding deity of the ground), (goddess) Lakṣmī (consort of Viṣṇu), (Lord) Gaṅeṣa (son of the divine pair Śiva and Pārvatī) and pitchers for others should be placed on heaps of grain along with the cloth and garland and gold should be put and they should be filled with fragrant waters.

45-51. They should be supported by vessels filled with (rice), fruits and decorated by tender leaves and should be covered by cloths. White mustard seeds and fried paddy should be brought for scattering. As before the sword of knowledge should be made ready. Sacrificial twigs, the vessel (for cooking) porridge, the sacrificial ladle made of copper and the vessel filled with ghee and honey for anointing the feet, four seats made of three hundred darbhas and of the measure of two cubits long, palāsa twigs for enclosure, and vessel for sesamum, vessel for ḫavis (food offering), vessel for water which can respectively hold one, twenty and eight palas and the sacred thread (should be made ready). A pitcher, an incense-burner, sruk and sruva (the two kinds of sacrificial ladle), a box, a seat, a chowrie, dry firewood, flowers, leaves, scented gum resin, lamps with ghee, incense, unbroken rice, sacred thread, clarified butter from the cow’s milk, barley and sesamum stems of kuṣa, the three sweet things (honey, sugar and clarified butter), sacrificial twigs of the length of ten parva (the interspace between the folds on the fingers) are all needed for appeasement. The sacrificial ladle (sruva) of a length of one cubit is required for the appeasement of the sun and other planets.

52. There should be one hundred and eight sticks of arka, palāsa, khādira, amārga, pippala, udumbara, tami, durvā as also green kuṣa.

53-54. In their absence barley and sesamum (are used). So also the household articles, a sthālti (a kind of vessel), a sacrificial ladle, lid etc. and two pieces of cloth for the gods, coins, crown, apparels, necklaces, earrings and bracelets should be made ready for the worship of the preceptor. One should avoid making them costly.

55. Worship of the custodians of images should be a quarter less than that stated before and that of those who repeat (the mantra of) the weapon is still a fourth less than that. Worship.
of brahmins, astrologers and sculptors are as done for those who repeat (the mantras).

56. The diamond, sun-stone, sapphire, atintila, pearl, topaz, ruby, lapis lazuli are the eight gems.

57. Uśira (the fragrant root of a plant), madhavakrānta, red sandal, agallochum, sandalwood, sārika, kuṣṭha, and sānkhini are the (eight) kinds of herbs.

58-60. The metals (are) gold, copper, silver, bell-metal, lead and iron. Yellow orpiment, red arsenic, red chalk, suvarna mākṣṭa (honey-like mineral), mercury, vahnigairika, sulphur, and mica are the eight kinds of minerals. The eight kinds of grains are stated to be wheat, sesamum, black-gram, green-gram, barley, short term paddy, śyāmāka. All these things should be gathered.

CHAPTER NINETY-SIX

Mode of initial consecration of an image:

The Lord said:

1. After having bathed and performed the two daily (worships), the preceptor should enter the sacrificial shed with the argha offering in his hand and accompanied by the brahmins who are the protectors of the idols.

2. The doors (of the sacrificial shed) (known as the doors) of peace should be worshipped duly as before and also the warder-gods (located) in the branches (of the sacrificial trees) by the (performance of) circumambulation.

3. (The warder-gods) Nandi and Mahākāla (should be worshipped) at the east, Bṛḍī and Vinaśyaka at the south, Vṛṣabha and Skanda at the west, (the warder) goddess and Caṇḍa at the north (of the sacrificial shed).

4-5. Then the preceptor should worship two pitchers each at the base of the branches (of the sacrificial trees)—prasānta (tranquil) and sīśira (cool), parjanya (rain-cloud) and aśoka (griefless), sañjīvāna (reviving) and amṛta (ambrosia), dhanada (bestower of wealth) and triprada (bestower of prosperity) one
after another with (the repetition of) their names ending in the fourth case preceded by (the syllable) om and ending with 'obeisance'.

6-7. The worlds, planets, warden gods and rivers, two in each one of them, three suns, two Vedas, (goddess) Lakṣmī and (lord) Gaṇapati are the gods who stay in the sacrificial shed at each one of the doors for warding impediments and guarding the sacrifice.

8. The thunder-bolt, spear, club, sword, noose, banner, mace, trident, disc and lotus should be duly worshipped in the banner with the mantras Om hr̥m phaṭ obeisance. Om hr̥m p haṭ to the spear at the door, hr̥m p haṭ obeisance.

9-10. The eight presiding deities of the banner such as Kumuda, Kumudākṣa, Puṇḍarīka, Vāmana, Śaṅkukarṇa, Sarvānetra, Sumukha and Supratiṣṭhita should be worshipped in the east etc. with (the offering of) oblation to all beings and with the mantras om kauṃ obeisance to Kumuda etc.

11-12. In the same manner the eight guardian deities Hetuka, Tripuraghaṇa, Śakti, Yamajīva, Kāla, Karālin, Ekāṅghri and Bhīma should be worshipped in the (different) directions with offerings, flowers and incense. (The preceptor) should contemplate them as satisfied.

13. The five fundamental principles earth etc. should be worshipped in kakṣitṛṇa (a kind of fragrant grass), bamboos, pillars and other things in order with the mantras sadyojāta¹ etc.

14. The preceptor should look at the sacrificial shed as permeated by the essence of (god) Sadāsīva, hallowed by his presence and endowed with the banners and spears in the form of fundamental principles.

15. After having warded off the divine ethereal and earthly obstacles as (laid down) before, (the preceptor) should enter (the shed) through the western door and look at the other remaining doors.

16. After having walked around (reverentially) and seated on the southern side of the altar and remaining facing the north, one should perform the purification of elements as before.

¹ Sadyo jātam prapadyāni, Vāmadevāya namo jyesthāya namaḥ, satpurnāya Vidmahe, aghorbhṛyo, the ghorebhṛyāḥ and lāṇāḥ sarvāvidyānām.
17. Then the internal sacrifice, the purification of the mantras and the materials, and the worship of one’s own self (should be done). The five things got from a cow (should be applied) as before.

18. Then the sacrificial pitcher should be placed therein along with the receptacle, especially for the principle of Śiva and the three fundamental principles (soul, body and matter) in order.

19. The preceptor should locate by means of his psychic force, the supreme principle of Śiva along with the presiding deities Rudra, Nārāyaṇa and Brahmā in his body from the forehead and trunk to the foot.

20. Om, ham, hām, The images of the god and their presiding deities should be located therein as before (and contemplate himself) as covered by the essence of Śiva along with his constituent members and forearm of Śiva on his head.

21. (The preceptor) should then contemplate the effulgence (of Śiva) (which has permeated his body and) which has entered the cavity of the brain as coming out dispelling darkness and illuminating the inter-space between directions.

22. Having decked himself with flowers, garlands and cloth along with the custodians of deities (the preceptor) should contemplate as “I am Śiva” and draw out the sword of knowledge.

23. The sacrificial shed should be purified with the fourfold rites of purification. After having scattered the kūṭa all around, they should again be gathered.

24. After having seated the guardian deity of the ground etc. in the big pitcher (vardhānī) as before, (the preceptor) should worship them. The pitcher sacred to god Śiva and the weapons and the vārdhānt (pitcher) should be worshipped in the fixed seat.

25. Then the guardian deities of the worlds along with their weapons and vehicles should be worshipped in order in the pitchers situated at the different directions as laid down.

26. (The preceptor) should contemplate (god) Indra as having a golden complexion, thousand eyes, wearing the crown, and wielding the thunderbolt.

27. (God) Saptār̥cīs (Fire god) (should be contemplated) as holding a rosary, kamāṇḍalu (a small water pitcher), and a
spear in the hand, red (in complexion), engulfs by garland of flames and as riding the goat.

28. (God) Yama (god of death) should be remembered as riding a buffalo, carrying a club in his hand and of the form of destructive fire and (lord) Nirṛti as riding an ass, carrying a sword in the hand and having red eyes.

29. (The preceptor) should then meditate (lord) Varuṇa as seated on a crocodile and having white complexion holding a noose of serpent in his hand and (lord) Vāyu (wind god) as riding an antelope and having blue complexion and Kubera (god of wealth) as seated on a sheep.

30. (Lord) Īśa (Śiva), the trident-bearer should be contemplated (as seated) on a bull, (god) Ananta, the disc-bearer (as seated) on a tortoise, and (lord) Brahmā, the four-faced and four-armed as riding a gander.

31. (Lord) Dharma (god of virtue) and others should be worshipped in the pitchers located at the base of the pillars at the corners. Some also worship (the gods) Ananta and others in the pitchers placed at the corners of different directions.

32. The injunction of (lord) Śiva should be made to be heard. The pitcher placed behind one's own self should be gently turned around. Then as before the pitcher should be firmly put first and then the pitcher vardhāni.

33. After having worshipped (lord) Śiva (seated in) a firm seat and (again in) a firm seat for the sake of weapons, (the preceptor) should as before touch with the udbhavamudrā (posture made with the fingers denoting generation).

34. "O lord of the universe you protect this sacrifice of thy own self out of compassion for the devotee". After having addressed these words, (the preceptor) should place the sword in the pitcher.

35. After having worshipped the lord in the pitcher or on the ground or in the shed relating to initiation and establishment, (the preceptor) should go in front of the fire-receptacle.

36. The custodians of images who are seated in front of the centre of the pit should purify the respective pits as directed by the preceptor.

37. The reciters (of mantras) should recite (the mantras) as many times (as laid down). Others (should recite the samh-
hitā mantra. The brahmins, well-versed in their respective branches should read the appeasing mantras.

38. A follower of the Rgveda should recite the hymns śrisūkta, pāvamāni, maitraka and vṛṣṭakapi on the east.

39. A follower of Sāmaveda should recite the hymns—devavrata, bhārunda, jyeṣṭha and rathantara on the south.

40. A follower of Yajurveda should recite the hymns rudra, puruṣasūkta, ślokādhyāya especially and the brāhmaṇas in the west.

41. An Atharvavedin should repeat the hymns—nilarudra, sūkṣmāsūkṣma and the atharvaśirṣa in the north.

42. After having ignited the (sacrificial) fire, the preceptor should fill the eastern part of each one of the pit from the east in order.

43. Incense, lamps and sacrificial porridge should be offered to them. Then the fire should be offered. After having worshipped Śiva as before, offering unto fire should be made (accompanied by the chanting of) mantra.

44. After having made the oblation for making the place and time of the sacrifice as auspicious and to ward off omens portending evil, the knower of mantras should offer the final oblation which brings forth good.

45. After having prepared the sacrificial porridge as before, it should be offered to each one of the pit. Then the yajamānas (persons at whose instance a ceremony is performed) should go to the bathing shed well-adorned.

46. (The image of) the god should be placed on the auspicious seat and covered with the essence of the mantra after gently stroking it. After having worshipped, it should be bathed with mud and herbal waters.

47. The image should be bathed in between with the urine of a cow and cowdung, sacred as and perfumed water with (the recitation of the mantra of) the weapon ending with (the syllable) phaṭ.

48. The preceptor, after having purified the casual principles, should cover (the image) with a yellow coloured cloth (sanctified) by the repetition of the dharma (mantra) in the company of the protectors of the image.

49-51. After having worshipped (the image) with white flowers it should be carried to the sacrificial platform at the
north. After having laid (the image) on a seat placed over the
bed, the preceptor should mark (on the image) with lines of
saffron-smeared strings and mark (the position of) the eyes with
a golden stick. The collyrium should be put on (the eyelids)
and then the sculptor should carve out the eyes with an imple-
ment at the spot as laid down in the technical works.

52. The eyes should be carved into a spot just at half of one
third or half of one fourth or half of half the length, for accompli-
shing all desires and it is auspicious.

53. Taking one-fourth part of the length of the liṅga and
having divided it into three parts, one such part should always
be the breadth of the body.

54. In the liṅga of a cubit length, the cavity of the eyes
should be a ninth part of one eighth of a yava (measure) both in
depth and breadth.

55. In the liṅga of one and a half cubit length, the sockets of
the eyes would measure an eighth part of a yava (measure) more
(than that of the preceding). In that (the liṅga) of a cubit len-
gth (the cavity of the eyes) would be eight yava (measure) in
depth and breadth.

56. In all the liṅgas of Śambhu (lord Śiva) where the length
would increase by the pāda (measure), the measures of the cavi-
ties of the eyes would also correspondingly increase by a yava
(measure).

57. The lines (on the top of the liṅga) would also increase
by three parts both in depth and breadth. In all the cases the top
of the liṅga would be narrow and tapering.

58-59. The region of the eyes should be divided into eight
parts and the lower part of the head into two. The two lower
parts (of the region of the eyes) should be left out. The remain-
ing six parts should be carved into three lines taken round and
joined at the back (of the emblem). The line at the top should
be made to measure a yava (measure) in the case of (a liṅga)
made of gem as well as of gold.

60. The form and characteristic features of these are that
the radiance of those made of gem is spotless. (The emblem)
should be endowed with the eyesight by carving the above mark
(into the part indicated above).

61. After having worshipped the lines bringing out the cha-
racteristic features of the emblem with ghee and honey with (the
repetition of) the mṛtyuḥjayamantra\(^1\) in order to remove the defects
due to the sculptor, the liṅga should then be worshipped after
having bathed it with mud and other things. After having grati-
fied the sculptor, a cow should be given to the preceptor.

62-64. After having worshipped the liṅga with incense and
other things, married women should sing (in praise of the lord).
After having touched the (liṅga) on the left and right with the
string or with the kusa, and rubbing with rocana (pigment), the
women should be sent away after giving gifts of molasses, salt
and brains.

65-67. The preceptor along with the custodians of idols
should bathe (the liṅga) with mud, cow-dung, cow’s urine,
ashes and water with the (recitation of) hrdayamantra or pranava.
Then (it should be bathed) with the five things got from a cow
preceded by (bathing with) the five sweet things. After the
smearing (of decoctions) of herbs (it should be bathed) with
all herbal waters. (Then it should be bathed) with waters mixed
with white flowers, fruits, gold, gems, horn and barley. Then
(it should be bathed) with thousand pourings of divine herbal
waters.

68. Subsequently, the liṅga should be bathed with sacred
waters, waters of (river) Ganges, waters mixed with sandal and
from the pitcher representing milky ocean and that pitcher of
water sacred to lord Śiva.

69-71. Rubbing and besmearing should be done with fra-
grant sandal and other things. After having worshipped (the
liṅga) with flowers with the recitation of brahma (mantra) and with
red garments with (the mantras of) armour and after having
shown a red flower preceded by the offer of protective mark, the
liṅga should be worshipped with the mantra of puruṣa, after having
appeased it with jets of ghee, water, milk, kusa, other articles of
worship and praises. After having rinsed the mouth with (the
mantra of) the heart (the preceptor) should say, “O lord! May
you rise up!”

72. Then the lord should quickly be led to the shed along
with the articles (of worship) in a divine chariot and placed in
the bed (made ready) at the western door (of the shed).

73. At the western door itself a pedestal should be placed on

---
\(^1\) addressed to lord Śiva praying for deliverance from death.
Tryambakam yajāmahe sugandhim puṣṭivardhanam urvārukamiva
bandhanān mṛtyor mukṣīya māṃrṇtāt.
an auspicious seat permeated with the goddesses beginning with Śakti and ending with Mati. The brahmaśila should also be bestowed therein.

74-75. The sacrificial pitcher in which the psychic sleep had been induced should be converted into the fixed seat. After having placed it in the north-east corner of the shed and offered waters for washing with (the mantra of) the heart, the liṅga should be lifted (from the bed) and deposited on the seat with the head turned towards the east and obeisance to Dharma (god of virtue) and others (should be done) with (the mantra of) creation.

76. Incense should be offered. After having worshipped the liṅga, garments and household articles should be offered with (the mantra of) the heart befitting one’s capacity.

77-78. A vessel filled with ghee and honey should be placed near the foot as unguent. The officiating priest who is present therein should locate the thirtysix principles beginning with energy and ending with the earth along with their respective presiding deities and divide (the above body) into three parts with garlands of flowers.

79-83. After having located the fundamental principles beginning with the principle of illusion and ending with that of the absolute energy, together with the principles of soul, knowledge and pure bliss, in the order in which they were created, in the different parts of the body such as the square, octagon or circle and the presiding deities of the above three principles such as the gods Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Śiva having been projected into each of the above said divisions and also the different embodiments of gods such as the earth, fire, the person for whom the sacrifice is done, sun, water, air, moon, sun, sky together with their respective deities such as Śarva, Paśupati, Ugra, Rudra, Bhava, Maheśvara, Mahādeva and Bhīma and these letters respectively sacred to them such as la, va, sa, sa, ca, ya, sa and ha should be located therein. The praṇava of three parts or the mantra of the heart or some other principal mantra (are also located).

84-85. (The preceptor) who knows the mantra should locate five deities of (the five fundamental principles earth, water, lustre, wind and ether along with their five presiding deities, and
Brahmā, Dharnaṇidhara, Rudra, Iša and Sadāśivain the order of creation in the case of a sacrifice having five fire-pits.

86. (The principles of) non-action, and other things, and their presiding deities Ajāta and others or the three principles should be located as the cause of pervading in the case of a seeker of release (from bondage).

87. Gods known as Vidyēsas (lords of learning) should be meditated upon in the case of one’s own soul being pure and the Lokanāyakas (lords of the world) in the case of one’s own and being impure and also the protectors of images, enjoyers and lords of the mantras.

88. (The fundamental principles numbering) twenty-five\(^1\), eight\(^2\), five\(^3\) and three\(^4\) and their lords such as Indra and others (should be worshipped) in order as follows:

\textit{Om hām} obeisance to the principle of energy etc. \textit{Om hām} obeisance to the presiding deity of the principle of energy etc.

\textit{Om hām} obeisance to the image of kṣmā (earth). \textit{Om hām} obeisance to (lord) Śiva, presiding deity of the image of earth etc. \textit{Om hām} obeisance to the image of prthīvi (earth). \textit{Om hām} obeisance to Brahmā, the presiding deity of the image etc. \textit{Om hām} obeisance to (lord) Rudra, the presiding deity of the principle of Śiva (auspiciousness) etc.

89-91. (The preceptor) should recite (the above mantras) from the region of the navel, spreading like the sounds of bell, rejecting the causes such as Brahmā and others and meditate on the mantra resting in (the lotus of) twelve petals and which is different from the mind and which resembles the sentiment of bliss obtained. Having collected filaments from the twelve (petalled lotuses) (lord Śiva), who pervades (everything) and is devoid of kalās, should be contemplated upon as shining resplendent with thirtyeight kalās, effulgent with thousand rays, consisting of all energies and accompanied by the attendant gods; (he) should be then projected in the liṅga.

92. The \textit{jīvinyāsa}\(^5\) in the liṅga will be accomplished in this

---

1. The \textit{āyakta}, maha, \textit{ahakāra}, pāñcabhiṣītas, pāñcaśataṃmātrās, pāñcakarmändriyās, pāñcaketumändriyās, manas and yajamāna.
2. The five elements, sun, moon and yajamāna.
3. The five elements.
4. The three qualities sattva, rajas and tamas.
5. The projection of vital energy.
manner. It yields all fruits. The location in the pedestal etc. will be described now.

93-94. After having been washed and besmeared with sandal paste etc., the pedestal should be covered by a good cloth. Then the stone set ready just like the liṅga and placed at the north of the liṅga should be endowed with the five gems in its aperture resembling the female organ of generation and should be worshipped as laid down.

95. The (pedestal) stone which has been bathed again should be deposited at the foot of the liṅga. So also the bull and (others such as the goddess of) energy should be located after doing the rites of bathing etc. (to them).

96-97. It should be done being preceded by the praṇava (syllable om) and (followed by) any one of (the mystic letters) hum, pum and hrim. The pedestal stone which is of the form of the base and which is endowed with the energy of action (should be worshipped) with sacred ashes, darbha and sesamum. Then the three outer walls should be set up. The guardian deities with their weapons should be worshipped outside for the sake of protection.

Om hūm, hrema obeisance to the energy of action. Om hūm, hrema, hah oblation to Mahāgaurī, the consort of Rudra—this (being performed) on the pedestal. Om, ḫaṁ obeisance to the energy of support. Om, ḫaṁ obeisance to the bull.

98-101. The (female deities) Dhārikā, Dīptimati, Ugrā Jyotsnā, Balotkātā, Dhātri and Vidhātrī or the five goddesses Vāmā, Jyeṣṭhā, Kriyā, Jñāna, Vedhā or the three Kriyā, Jñāna and Icchā should be located as before. So also the female goddesses should be located in the benefic forms of gods. The five energies Tamā, Mohā, Kṣamā, Niṣṭhā, Mrtyu, Māyā, or Bhava Jvara, Mahāmohā, Ghora, Tritayajvara or the three presiding female deities Kriyā, Jñāna and Bādhā should be located in the three indomitable principles of soul etc.

102. Even in this case the pedestal (should be worshipped) in the Brahmā—part (of the liṅga) in the order. All routines should be performed as before with (the goddess) Gaurī and others.

103-105. Having located in this manner, (the preceptor) should go near the (fire) pit and invoke (lord) Maheśvara at the centre of the pit and on the borders, the goddess of action in the
other border and the sound (om) at the lip. Then the union of the occult psychic force with the sacrificial pitcher, the ground, fire and (lord) Isa (should be brought about).

106-107. The preceptor should contemplate his psychic energy resembling the fire of a lotus rejected upwards by the rising wind, entering by the path of the sun, emerging out and again entering by the path of void. In this manner mutual union with (the psychic forces of) the protectors of guardians should be brought about everywhere.

108. After having worshipped the energy (known as) Dhârikâ (ability to hold), duly the fundamental principles along with their presiding deities, and the images (of gods) along with their presiding deities with ghee etc. and offered oblation duly in the fire-pit in their presence with the sāmhitā mantras, oblation should again be made hundred or thousand or five hundred times (concluding) with the final oblation.

109. Similarly, the guardians of deities should also satisfy the fundamental principles along with their presiding deities, and the images (of gods) along with their presiding deities and offer oblation.

110-111. After having satisfied the (goddess of) energy with Brahma mantras befitting one's capacity and time and sprinkled the waters of the pitcher with the ends of the kūṭa and touched the base of the liṅga, one should repeat (the mantras) as many times as (the number of) oblations. The presence of the god should be accomplished by (repeating) the mantra of the heart. The act of covering (the image) should be done by (repeating) the mantra of the armour.

112-13. After having performed (the rites) thus for the purification of (the parts of the liṅga presided over by) the gods Brahmā to Viṣṇu, (the preceptor) should complete the oblation and repetition of the mantras as many times (as mentioned above). The middle and tip of the liṅga should be touched with the middle and tip of the kūṭa. The mode of achieving the union is described now:

Om, hām, hām, om, om, om, om, bhūm, bhūm obeisance to the image outside. Om, hām, vām, om, om, om, sām, om, bhūm, bhūm, vām obeisance to the image of fire-god.

114. Similarly, the images of the yañamāna and others should be contemplated (in the liṅga). So also in the case of the five
manifestations of the god, union must be brought about with (the repetition of the mantra of) the heart etc.

115. It should be known that (the union) in the case of the three fundamental principles (soul, knowledge and bliss) with the liṅga, pedestal and bull is brought about by the principal (mantra) or with their own fundamental (letters) completely and without any omission.

116-19. Hundred oblations should be made for the purification of the different parts (of the liṅga) and hundred and eight (oblations) with the mantra of (lord) Śiva for the removal of any deficiency (in performing the sacrifice). After having made oblation, whatever act has been done that should be uttered in the ear of (lord) Śiva: “This act has been completed by me by your grace! O lord! Oṃ, obeisance to lord Rudra! Obeisance to (lord) Rudradeva! Whether this act is complete as laid down or incomplete, you complete it by your power and accept it. Then the learned (preceptor) should locate in the liṅga and the act in the pedestal of the image.

120-121. The energy of the form of support should be located in the Brahmā (part of the) stone. The (rite of) adhivāsana (staying together) should extend over seven nights or five nights or three nights or a single night or be done immediately. The sacrifice performed without (the performance of) adhivāsana does not yield any benefit even if performed.

122. Hundreds of oblations should be offered everyday with the respective mantras. Worship of the pitcher of (lord) Śiva and offering to the quarters should be conveyed.

123. The adhivāsa is so called because the disciple stays with the preceptor practising vows. It is said to be the attitude till the end of the stay.

CHAPTER NINETYSEVEN

Mode of installation of the image of (lord) Śiva

The lord said:

1. After having performed the daily rites in the morning and worshipped the guardian deities, the preceptor should enter (the temple) as described already and purify his body.
2-3. After having worshipped the lords of the quarters, the sacrificial pitcher of (lord) Śiva and the small pitcher and having satisfied the liṅga and the fire duly with eight handfuls (of oblation), (the preceptor) should enter the temple reciting (the mantra of) the weapon by the command of (lord) Śiva. The obstacles therein should be removed by (the repetition of) the mantra of the arrow ending with (the syllables) hum, phaṭ.

4-7. The liṅga should not be established at the middle (of the temple) to avoid the defect of injury. Hence the stone slab should be established having left half of a yava (a measure) or a yava from the centre a little towards the north-east.

That slab (known as) ananta (literally without end) and which is of the form of support of all (should be established) with the principal (mantra). The stone slab known as Acalā (without movement) which is all-pervading and is of the form of the seat of (lord) Śiva should be placed by the use of (the mantra of) creation or by (the repetition of) the following mantra:—“Om! All pervading goddess! Firm and unmoving (goddess) Acalā! obeisance. Hram, lam, hrim, oblations. You must always remain here by the command of (lord) Śiva.”

8-16. After having spoken thus and having worshipped (the liṅga), (the preceptor) should arrest its movement by showing the raudramudrā (a posture made with the fingers). After that, (the preceptor) should place the diamond and the other gems, fragrant root, metals like gold and bronze yellow orpiment etc., cereals and grains described already and respectively representing lustre, beauty, strength and valour duly in the holes in the (directions) east etc. after having devotedly contemplated with the mantras of guardian deities of the world. A tortoise or bull made of gold or silver (should be located) along with earth from the banks of a river or from the peaks of a mountain in the central (and other) holes facing the entrance. Otherwise a golden image of a meru along with honey, unbroken rice and collyrium (should be located). Otherwise a golden or silver image of the earth should be located along with syllables of all the mantras and gold. Then a lotus stalk made of gold or silver or all metals together with a dish consisting of sesame and grains should be located. After having located the seat of the lord representing the energy it should be anointed with sweet porridge or guggulu (an aroma-
tic) and covered with a cloth protected by (the recitation of) the (mantra) of the armour and weapon.

17-21. After having offered oblations to the presiding deities of the quarters and rinsing the mouth, the preceptor should offer hundred oblations either with (the repetition of) (the mantra of lord) Śiva or with (the mantra of) the weapon along with the final (oblation) for the removal of defects in the cavity of the stone slab on account of contamination. After having appeased the presiding deities of the ground by offering an oblation, the preceptor should lift the deity along with the seat with (the recitation of the mantra of) the heart and the sounding of auspicious notes. Then the preceptor should walk ahead of the deity and behind the sacrificial ground of the lord along with the four custodians of the image standing in the (different) directions and the person at whose bidding the rite is performed. After having done the circumambulation, the linga should be established in front of the door known as bhadra (welfare). After having offered waters for washing, (the linga) should be taken to the temple through the door, the door frame and the region of the door.

22. The great lord should be taken only through the door without contacting the door (in the case of an unfinished temple) if the door frame has unfinished edges or incomplete or is half done.

23-24. In the case of the construction of a temple being begun, (the linga) should be taken in through the corner also. This is the general rule even in the case of a manifested linga as the worldly practice for entry into the temple through the door. It is known that if the entry into the temple is made through the side door it causes destruction of the race.

25-33. After having placed the linga in the seat facing the door with the sounding of auspicious tūrya (a kind of musical instrument) and (offerings of) dūrvā (a kind of grass) and unbroken rice, (the preceptor) should recite the great pāṣupata (mantra) after uttering ‘Rise, O lord’ with (the recitation of the mantra of) the heart. After having removed the sacrificial pitchers from the holes, the preceptor in the company of the guardians of the image should mentally repeat the mantra and contemplate (the linga) besmeared with saffron and other things and the union of the god and goddess as protected. After having recited the principal (mantra) till deep concentration (is gained),
(the preceptor) should touch (the liṅga) and place it in the hole. Either a portion of the Brahmā-part (of the liṅga) or two parts (of the same) or half of it or one-eighth of the whole (liṅga) should be under (the earth). After having covered (the liṅga) with lead upto the waist with concentration, (the preceptor) should fill the cavity with sand and say, “(You) be firm”. Then after the liṅga has become firm, (the preceptor) should contemplate him who is of all the forms (of beings), recite the principal (mantra) and locate the nīskala (devoid of attributes) upto the energy by the (order of) creation. If the liṅga that is being established leans towards the south, the preceptor should offer oblations with the mantras of the respective presiding deities of the directions until the final (oblation) along with the fees. (The preceptor) should offer hundred oblations either with the principal mantra or (the mantra) of manifold forms if (the liṅga leans) to the left or slips down or cracks. Even in the case of other defects (the preceptor) should similarly perform the blissful appeasing rite.

34. A liṅga associated with the rites of location etc. in this manner does not bring any harm. The pedestal should be consecrated as possessing a part of the characteristic (mentioned already for the liṅga).

35. After having projected the mantra of (the goddess) Gaurī (consort of lord Śiva) in the pedestal, the pedestal should be consecrated with (the mantra) of creation. The sides (of the liṅga) should be smoothened and binding cement and sand should be put.

36-37. Then the preceptor in the company of the custodians of the image should bathe the images (with the waters) from the pitcher of peace and other pitchers placed there as well as the paṅcāṃpta (a composition of the milk, sugar, curd, ghee and honey) and other things. It should then be besmeared with sandal paste and other things. After having worshipped the lord of the universe (Śiva), (the preceptor) should touch the parts (represented by lord Śiva and his consort Umā) with the recitation of the mantras of (goddess) Umā and (lord) Maheśa (Śiva) and showing the liṅgamudrā (a posture made with the fingers).

38-39. Then (the preceptor) should (mentally) project
the three (fundamental) principles\(^1\) in that preceded by the six kinds of worship. After having located the image along with the presiding divinities of the (different) parts as also (lord) Brahmā in the seat of action, the learned person should bathe it. After having besmeared it with fragrant (pastes) and showing fragrant fumes, it should be located as the sole pervading principle of (lord) Śiva.

40-44. After having offered to (lord) Śiva the garlands of flowers, incense sticks, lamps, edible offerings and fruits with (the recitation of the mantra of) the heart befitting one’s capacity and sipping waters (thrice), water should be offered to the lord for cleansing. After the recitation (of the mantras sacred to the lord) and assigning the merits of the same on his right hand (the preceptor) should address the lord in the company of the custodians of (the image of lord) Śiva as follows: “O lord! You should stay in this temple by your own wish as long as the sun, moon and stars (would shine in the sky).” After having made obeisance thus, (the preceptor) should go outside (the temple reciting) either (the mantra) of the heart or the prāṇava (syllable om). After having established (the image of) the bull, (the preceptor) should make the offering as before. One hundred oblations should be made with the mṛtyuñjaya (mantra) (that which conquers death) for the removal of defects like omission etc. In order to appease the lord oblations with sweet porridge should be done with (the recitation of the mantra of) the heart. “O great lord! Whatever thing has been done by me through ignorance or inadvertance you make it good.”

45. One should dedicate all things to the lord of the goddess who is the cause of gold, animals, earth, songs and musical instruments with devotion and within one’s means.

46. Gifts (should be given) and then festivities should be celebrated for four days. The preceptor should offer oblations for three days at the three conjunctions (of time) (the morning, midday and evening) in the company of the custodians of the image.

47-48. And the final oblation composed of sacrificial porridge should be offered in all pits purified with the obla-

Soul, knowledge and bliss.
tion (known as) sampāta (fulfilling oblation) on the fourth day with (the recitation of) the bahurūpi (mantra). The flowers used should be kept for four days after that and removed afterwards. After having bathed the image, it should be worshipped.

49-52. Worship in the case of ordinary liṅgas should be done by (the repetition of) the general mantras. Except consciousness of the liṅga, the lord should be bid adieu. In the case of liṅgas of extraordinary nature (lord) should be bid adieu (with the repetition of words), "Pardon (us O lord ! )" In vocation, manifestation and dismissal (are done) befitting one's ability. According to some it has been stated that seven oblations for the steadiness etc. (should be cast) at the end of installation. steadiness, immeasurableness, cognisance of the originless existence, eternity, all-pervasiveness, deathlessness, seen as manifested are spoken as the characteristics of (lord) Śiva for the manifestation.

53-54. "Om ! obeisance to (lord) Śiva. Be thou steady." This is the order offering oblations. After having accomplished this in this manner and having permeated the two pitchers with the essence of lord Śiva, the (lord) Bhava (Śiva) should be bathed with (the waters of) the one and the other should be borne for bathing the performer.

55-57. After having made the offering, (the preceptor) should do the ācamana (sipping of waters thrice) and go outside with the permission of lord Śiva. (The god) Caṇḍa should be located on a seat over a good pedestal in the north-eastern direction outside the sacrificial ground and worshipped with the brahma mantras preceded by contemplation, and rites of location and offering of oblations. The worship using the brahma mantras is that in which the components are mentioned at first.

Om, hūm, phaṭ obeisance to Sadyojāta. Om, hūm, phaṭ obeisance to Vāmadeva. Om, Vum, phaṭ obeisance to Aghora. Om, vauum, phaṭ obeisance to Tatpuruṣa. Om, hūm, phaṭ obeisance to Īśāna.

58-59. After having conveyed the (merits of) repetition (to the lord) and appeased him, (the lord) should be addressed as follows preceded by bowing. O (lord Caṇḍa) ! Stay (in this temple) as long as the lord (Śiva) stays here. O (lord) Caṇḍeśa ! Whatever has been omitted or made in excess by me out of ignorance, make it complete by your grace.
60. Lord Caṇḍa should not be invoked in cases where a bānaliṅga (a kind of stone representing lord Śiva) or a liṅga placed on the bāna stone or an accomplished liṅga or self-originated liṅga or images of all gods (are established).

61-66. Even in the case of rites relating to the presiding deity of the sacrificial ground in which there is the mental attitude of union with the lord, the preceptor should worship (lord) Caṇḍeśa, and the yajamāna (the person for whom the work is done) along with his son and wife and should bathe himself with (the waters of) the pitcher already placed. The yajamāna should also worship the preceptor as (the lord) Maheśa (Śiva) and make gifts of earth, gold and other things without any distinction whatever. After having satisfied befittingly the protectors of images, those who repeat (the mantras), the brahmins, astrologers and sculptors, the destitutes, forlorn and others should be fed. ‘O lord! Ocean of compassion! Forgive me for all the sufferings you had in being present here.’ To the yajamāna who has spoken thus, the preceptor should offer with his own hands the merits of consecration resplendent like the glowing star along with the kuṣa, flowers and unbroken rice.

67. After having then saluted (lord) Parameśvara (Śiva) endowed with the pāṣupata (mantra), (the preceptor) should address the attendant gods (of the lord) with offerings for their presence.

68-71. ‘You should stay here in as long as (the lord) Hara (Śiva) is present here. Then the preceptor should take possession of the sacrificial shed along with the cloth etc. Then the sculptor (should take possession of) the bathing shed along with the articles (found therein). All other gods should be established with the repetition of the mantras as given in the āgamas. (In these establishments of other gods) the splitting of the first letter of the (respective) names (of the gods) and the location of fundamental principles pervading these (should be made). The gods commencing with Śadhyā, the rivers, herbs, the guardian deities of the ground, kinnaras (semi-divine beings) and others should lie in the principle of earth. In some places the location of the (goddesses) Sarasvatī and Lākṣmī (are) in the waters.

1. Texts relating to worship of deities in the temples.
72. The presiding deities of the world (should be established) in those places where they remain firm. The place of Brahmā is the three fundamental principles which extends to the important cause of expansion of the (primordial) egg.

73. The place of Hari (Viṣṇu) is the triad (of worlds) which has the subtle principles as the main. The places for the lord of dancing (Nāṭyeśa, a form of Śiva), gaṇas (attendant gods), mothers (goddesses), Yakṣeśas (semi-divine beings) and (lord) Subrahmaṇya (are as described above).

74. The place of Gaṇapati is that upto the principle of pure knowledge. (The place) of splendidors emitted by (lord) Śiva and (his consort) Śivā (Pārvatī) extends to the energy in the region of a part of the illusion.

75-77. In the case of manifested images, the place is spoken as upto the lord (Śiva). Some forms like the tortoise as well as the five things such as the gem etc. should be put in the hole of the pedestal except in the case of (the image of) the five brahman forms (of lord Śiva). In the hole divided into six parts one part from the end is left out and fixing is made in the fifth part. If it is divided into eight parts, the fixing is done in the seventh part. This fixing in the case of images brings forth happiness.

78-79. Purification is done by meditation when the images are fixed. In the case of plastered and painted images bathing, placing on a pedestal, placing gems (underneath), opening of the eyes, the (placing of) mantras, and the offer of seats etc. (should be done) mentally: Worship should be done with flow- ers without water in them so that the picture may not get spoilt.

80-82. “The mode (of fixing) the movable variety of liṅga is described now.” (The liṅga) should be divided into five or three parts separately and three or two parts (should be set apart for fixing). On account of the different fundamental principles, the purification of the pedestals as well as the liṅgas made of crystals (should be done) with the mantra of creation as laid down. In those cases there is no need to place the brahmaśīla and the gems etc.

83. The placing of the image on the pedestal should be done mentally. There is no special procedure for purification in the case of self-originated liṅgas and bānaliṅgas (liṅgas made of a kind of stone).
84. (The movable liṅgas) should be bathed with (the recitation of) the vedic mantras. So also the (rite of) assigning an oblation should be done (with the same mantras). The (sacred) rivers, oceans and mountains are installed as before.

85-86. The liṅgas made of earth and flours are known as aihika (relating to this world) and kṣata (perishable). After having made such a liṅga pure, one should worship as laid down with the rites of initiation etc. Then after having withdrawn the mantras into himself in its presence, the preceptor should cast that liṅga in the waters. It yields one’s desires within a year. The installation of (the images of) Viṣṇu etc. should be done with separate mantras.

CHAPTER NINETYEIGHT

Mode of installation of the image of goddess Gaurī

The Lord said:

1. Listen! I shall describe the mode of installation together with the worship (of the image) of (goddess) Gaurī (consort of lord Śiva). The sacrificial shed etc. should be erected and (the image of the goddess) should be placed therein.

2. O Guha (son of lord Śiva and Pārvatī)! After having placed the goddess on the bed, the mantras of the images (should be located therein), and the principles commencing with the knowledge of the soul and ending with Śiva as also lord Isāna (Śiva) should be located.

3. After having located the goddess of absolute energy, offered oblations and recited (the mantras) as before, the pedestal of the form of the energy of action should be placed.

4-5. After having contemplated it as pervading the same place and having put the gems etc., the goddess of the form of supreme energy should be fixed therein with her own mantras. The energy of action should be located in the pedestal and the energy of knowledge in the image (of the goddess).

6. Then the pervading energy should be invoked and located therein. Then the mother goddess known also as Śivā should
also be invoked and worshipped. Om, obeisance to the sustaining energy. Om, obeisance to the tortoise (supporting the universe). Om, obeisance to (lord) Skanda (son of lord Śiva and Pārvatī). Om, hṛim obeisance to (lord) Nārāyaṇa (Viṣṇu). Om, obeisance to sovereignty. Om, am obeisance to the under-cover. Om, obeisance to the lotus seat. Then (the gods) Keśava (Viṣṇu) and others should be worshipped. Om, hṛim obeisance to the pericarp. One should worship here with (the mantras) "Om, kṣam obeisance to the lotus eyes". Om, hām obeisance to nourishment, hṛim (obeisance) to knowledge, hṛim (obeisance) to action. Om, obeisance to the stalk of lotus. Rum, obeisance to virtue. Rum, obeisance to knowledge. Om, obeisance to indifference to the world. Om obeisance to impiety. Om, Rum obeisance to ignorance. Om obeisance to attachment to the world. Om obeisance to indigence. Hum, obeisance to speech, to the passionate, kṛaim to the fiery. Om, khraum obeisance to tranquility. Then hrum obeisance to the elder (goddess). Om, hrum, raum, kraum (obeisance) to (goddess) of fresh energy, gaum to the seat of Gaurī. Gaum obeisance to the form of Gaurī. Then the principal mantra of (goddess)Gaurī is told. Om, hṛim, sāḥ, mahā Gaurī, consort of Rudra (Śiva), oblations ! Obeisance to (goddess) Gaurī. Gām, hṛum, hṛim, Śivaḥ, gūm, to tuft, to armour. Gom to eye and gom to the weapon, om, gaum to the energy of wisdom, om Gūm obeisance to the energy of action. (Gods) Indra and others (are worshipped) in the east and other directions. Om, sum obeisance to Subhaṅga (favourite wife). Hṛim bīja lalitā then. And om, hṛim obeisance to Kāminī (an affectionate woman). Om hrūm Kāmaśālinī. After having established (goddess) Gaurī with the mantras, worshipping (her) and repeating (the mantras), one may get everything.

CHAPTER NINETY-NINE

Mode of installation of the image of the sun-god.

The lord said:

1-2. I shall describe (the mode of) installation of the sun-god. The sacrificial shed (and other things) should be (made
ready) as before. Then after having completed the rites of ablution etc., as prescribed before, and having located the sun-god with his attendants and (goddess) Vidyā in the seat and bed, (the preceptor) should locate the three (fundamental) principles (of soul, knowledge and bliss) and the five (principles of) sky etc. along with chants.

3. After having done the purification etc. as before and having purified the pedestal as before, (the preceptor should locate the five principles up to their own place.

4-5. After having established (the pedestal) then along with the (goddess of) energy (called) Sarvatomukhī as laid down, the preceptor should establish (the image of) the sun (god) as laid down with the (utterance of) its mantras as permeated with the energy or the master. The name should be borne up to the end of the foot. The mantras which have been described already should be seen at (the time of) establishment also.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED

Rites of consecration of doors of a temple

The Lord said:

1. Then I shall describe the mode of consecrating the doors (of a temple). After having washed the door frames with decoctions of herbs, they should be laid on the bed.

2-3. The three fundamental principles—the soul etc. together with their lords should be located in the lower, middle and upper parts. After having offered oblations, and repeated the rūpa mantras, the vāstu (the presiding spirit of the place) should be worshipped there itself with the mantra of Ananta (an important serpent chief). After having placed the five things gem etc., the rite of appeasement should be done.

4-5. Barley, white mustard, krāntā,ṛddhi, vrddhi, mahātiila, gomṛt, mustard, rājendra, mohani, lakṣmaṇā, amṛtā, rocana, rug, vacā, dūrā and pāṭali should be placed on the threshold under the temple in their natural form for the sake of protection after the recitation of (the syllable) om.
6. The northern door should be consecrated after sprinkling water. The fundamental principle of the soul should be located under that and the principle of knowledge on the sides.

7. The principle of bliss (should be located) in the region of the sky as permeating the entire region. Then (lord) Maheśanātha (Śiva) should be installed with (the recitation of) the principal mantra.

8. The turrets etc. resting on the door (should be located) with their respective names appended. Oblation to fire should be made hundred times or half the number of times or twice that or according to one’s ability.

9. One hundred oblations should be made with the mantra of the weapons to ward off defects of omission etc. After having offered oblations for the quarters, the fees etc. should be paid.
THE
AGNI PURĀNA

PART 11

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS PUBLISHERS
PRIVATE LIMITED • DELHI
# CONTENTS

## PART II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHAPTER</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>101.</td>
<td>Mode of consecration of a temple</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102.</td>
<td>Mode of consecrating the flag staff</td>
<td>308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103.</td>
<td>Mode of repair of old or broken liṅgas</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104.</td>
<td>General characteristics of a divine edifice</td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105.</td>
<td>Mode of worship of the presiding deity of a place</td>
<td>316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106.</td>
<td>Vāstu relating to Cities</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.</td>
<td>The creation of Svāyambhuva Manu</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.</td>
<td>Cosmographical account</td>
<td>323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109.</td>
<td>The greatness of sacred spots</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110.</td>
<td>The greatness of Gaṅgā</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111.</td>
<td>The Greatness of Prayāga</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112.</td>
<td>The greatness of Vārāṇasī</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113.</td>
<td>The greatness of Narmadā</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114.</td>
<td>The greatness of Gayā</td>
<td>332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.</td>
<td>Mode of making a pilgrimage to Gayā</td>
<td>335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116.</td>
<td>Mode of making a pilgrimage to Gayā</td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117.</td>
<td>Mode of performing the ancestral rites</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118.</td>
<td>The Country of Bhārata</td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119.</td>
<td>Description of different continents</td>
<td>351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.</td>
<td>The extent of the universe</td>
<td>353</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.</td>
<td>The Science of Jyotiṣa (Astronomy and Astrology)</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.</td>
<td>Pañcāṅga: The Almanac</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.</td>
<td>Svarodaya cakra, Śanicakra, Kūrmacakra, Rāhu-cakra</td>
<td>370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.</td>
<td>Essence of astrology as described in the Victory in battles</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125.</td>
<td>Different circles which get success in battle</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126.</td>
<td>Combinations of good and bad asterisms</td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127.</td>
<td>The auspicious and inauspicious periods of the day based on certain combinations</td>
<td>383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128.</td>
<td>The Koṭacakra—a drawing to forecast results</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.</td>
<td>Guide-lines for storing and selling grains</td>
<td>386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130.</td>
<td>Different spheres marked by astorisms indicating victory in battle</td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131.</td>
<td>Ghātaka cakra, Naracakra, Jayacakra indicating failure or success in battle</td>
<td>388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132.</td>
<td>Sevācakra and the indication of accrual of benefits</td>
<td>390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>133.</td>
<td>Different traits in infants and combinations indicating success in battle</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.</td>
<td>Sacred formula for the conquest of three worlds</td>
<td>396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>135.</td>
<td>Formula for success in battle</td>
<td>397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>136.</td>
<td>The diagram of asterisms indicating the period for undertaking a journey</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>137.</td>
<td>The formula known as Mahāmāri</td>
<td>401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138.</td>
<td>The six accessory acts relating to all mantras</td>
<td>403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139.</td>
<td>The names of sixty years of Hindu cycle and the good or bad results accruing from them</td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140.</td>
<td>Description of herbs used in charms</td>
<td>405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141.</td>
<td>Description of herbs used in charms, medicines</td>
<td>407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142.</td>
<td>Description of medicinal incantations</td>
<td>409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143.</td>
<td>Mode of worship of Goddess Kubjikā</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144.</td>
<td>Mode of worship of Goddess Kubjikā</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145.</td>
<td>Different Kinds of mantras and the rites of locating them</td>
<td>416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146.</td>
<td>Names of different Goddesses</td>
<td>420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147.</td>
<td>Mode of worshipping the goddess Tvaritā and others</td>
<td>423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148.</td>
<td>Mode of worship for success in the battle</td>
<td>425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>149.</td>
<td>Mode of performing Lakṣa and Koṭihoma</td>
<td>425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150.</td>
<td>Names of different Manus, different sages and others during their period</td>
<td>427</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151.</td>
<td>Duties laid down for different castes</td>
<td>429</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>152.</td>
<td>Duties of a householder</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>153.</td>
<td>Duties of a student</td>
<td>432</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154.</td>
<td>Rules of marriage</td>
<td>434</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155.</td>
<td>The Code of Conduct</td>
<td>436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156.</td>
<td>Purification of things</td>
<td>439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>157.</td>
<td>Pollution and Purification</td>
<td>440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>158.</td>
<td>Kinds of pollution</td>
<td>444</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>159.</td>
<td>The merits of libation and the performance of good deeds</td>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contents

160. Duties of a brahmin leading life in the forest 452
161. Duties of an ascetic 452
162. Code of laws 455
163. Mode of performing a śrāddha 457
164. Propitiatory rite for the planets 461
165. Code of Conduct 463
166. Duties of different castes 465
167. Propitiatory rite for the planets 467
168. Kinds of major sins 471
169. Atonements for various offences 474
170. Expiations for association with major sinners 478
171. Description of certain subtle expiations 482
172. The hymn which destroys sins 483
173. Different expiations for different sins 485
174. Expiations for discontinuing the worship of gods 490
175. Rules and regulations relating to the Vows 492
176. Vows observed on the first lunar day 497
177. Vows observed on the second lunar day 498
178. Vows observed on the third lunar day 500
179. Vows observed on the fourth lunar day 503
180. Vows observed on the fifth lunar day 504
181. Vows observed on the sixth lunar day 504
182. Vows observed on the seventh lunar day 504
183. Vows observed on the eighth lunar day 505
184. Vows observed on the eighth lunar day 507
185. Vows observed on the ninth lunar day 509
186. Vows observed on the tenth lunar day 510
187. Vows observed on the eleventh lunar day 511
188. Vows observed on the twelfth lunar day 512
189. Rules of observing Śrāvanaadvādaśī vrata 513
190. Mode of practising Akhaṇḍadvādaśī vrata 514
191. Mode of practising vows on the thirteenth lunar day 515
192. Vows to be observed on the fourteenth lunar day 516
193. Description of Śivarātrivrata 517
194. Details relating to the vows of Asoka Pūrṇimā 518
195. Vows relating to the weak-days 519
196. Vows relating to different asterisms 520
197. Vows performed on certain days 522
198. Vows performed in different months 523
199. Vows relating to different seasons 524
| Contents |
|-----------------|------|
| 200. Vow of giving a gift of a lamp | 525 |
| 201. Mode of Worshipping Viṣṇu in a figure of nine Compartments | 527 |
| 202. Different flowers used in worship | 528 |
| 203. The nature of hell | 530 |
| 204. Mode of practising the vow of fasting for stipulated months | 533 |
| 205. Mode of performing the Bhīṣmapaṅcakavrata | 534 |
| 206. Mode of offering water of libation to the Venerable sage: Agastya | 535 |
| 207. Mode of performing Kaumuda vrata | 537 |
| 208. Rules and regulations relating to vows and gifts in general | 538 |
| 209. Rules relating to gifts | 539 |
| 210. Sixteen great gifts | 544 |
| 211. Different kinds of gifts | 546 |
| 212. Gifts granting the desired fruits | 552 |
| 213. Mode of making a gift of the earth and its benefits | 555 |
| 214. The system of veins in the body and their benefits | 556 |
| 215. Mode of reciting Gāyatrī and its greatness | 559 |
| 216. Instructions relating to Gāyatrī | 563 |
| 217. Vasiṣṭha’s hymn to lord Śiva | 564 |
| 218. Mode of performing the Coronation of a king | 566 |
| 219. Sacred syllables for the coronation | 569 |
| 220. Accomplishment of assistance to the king | 573 |
| 221. Code of Conduct for the servants | 575 |
| 222. Construction of forts | 576 |
| 223. Duties of a king | 579 |
| 224. Duties of a king in the harem | 581 |
| 225. Duties of a King | 584 |
| 226. Means of Conciliation | 587 |
| 227. Code of Criminal laws | 588 |
| 228. Instructions relating to military expedition | 594 |
| 229. Significance of dreams | 595 |
| 230. Inauspicious auguries | 597 |
| 231. Good and bad auguries known from the sounds of animals and birds | 598 |
| 232. Omens known from birds | 600 |
| 233. Propitious periods for undertaking an expedition | 604 |
| 234. Six expedients used by the King | 606 |
Contents

235. Daily duties of a king 608
236. Rites preceding the march of a king 609
237. A hymn to Lakṣmī for success 615
238. Ethics narrated by Rāma 617
239. Duties of a King 618
240. Six expedients used by a king 622
241. Four ways of policy : Conciliation etc. 624
242. Statesmanship for a king 629
243. Physiognomy of men and their indications 635
244. Characteristic features of women 637
245. Characteristics of the royal fan, bow and sword 638
246. Testing of gems 640
247. Characteristics of a Site for building 642
248. Benefit of worshipping lord Viṣṇu with flowers and leaves 644
249. Science of archery 645
250. Science of archery 647
251. Method of using a noose 649
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND ONE

Mode of consecration of a temple

The Lord said:

1-5. I shall describe the mode of consecrating a temple. By that itself it would become permeated by the divine force. After the angular projection is completed, the preceptor should locate a pitcher made of gold or other metals at the middle of the eastern altar. It should be filled with the pañcagavya (five things got from a cow), honey and milk. Five kinds of gems should be placed under (the pitcher). (The pitcher) should be adorned with garland and cloth. It should be besmeared with fragrance. It should be decorated with fragrant flowers. The temple should be decorated with tender leaves of trees like mango etc. After having finished the accomplishing rite in his body, the preceptor should gather (his soul energy) with the breath drawn in. The preceptor should then convey to (lord) Śambhu (Śiva) by his command with the exhalation of breath after the soul had been conceived as different from all the (other) souls with (the recitation of) its own mantra.

6. After having gathered the same from the twelve-petalled, that one shining like a spark-of fire, the beatific states should be located in the pitcher as laid down in the tantras.

7. The image, its qualities, the beatific states, the letters upto kṣa and their lords and the collection of fundamental principles should be located.

8. The ten nāḍis (tubular organs of the body), ten vital winds and the thirteen sense-organs as well as their presiding deities (should be located) after having united the syllable om with their names.

9. (The two fundamental principles of) illusion and universal space which stand in relationship of cause and effect towards each other, the gods of learning who direct the pervad-
ing (lord) Śambhu (Śiva) (should also be located therein) with the (recitation of) mantras.

10-12. After having located the accessories, the preceptor should prevent (the deity) from going away by showing the rodhamudrā (posture made with the fingers denoting restraint). Otherwise an image of the god (should be made) of gold or other metals and it should be purified as before with the five things got from a cow etc. After having placed the pitcher on the bed and contemplating (lord) Rudra, the consort of Umā, (the lord) should be located in that (image) as the pervasive (lord). Oblation, sprinkling, touching and repetition (of mantras) (should be done) for accomplishing (lord’s) stay therein permanently.

13. After having completed thus the announcement of invocation in its three divisions, the preceptor should place the image in the pitcher.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND TWO

Mode of consecrating the flagstaff

The Lord said:

1. O Skanda! I shall describe (the mode of) consecration of the pinnacle, the banner and the flag-staff relating to a temple as laid down.

2. Either it should be half the depth of the tank or of the whole edifice. The banner-staff should be made of wood in the case of (a temple) built of brick and of stone in the case of that built of stone.

3. In the case of a temple of Viṣṇu, the pitcher should have the mark of a disc and be proportionate to the image of the deity. If it is with a trident it is known as agracūla (the tip of the top portion).

4. If the (mark of a) linga is found on the top it is called ākṣṭala (the banner-staff of Śiva). This kind (of flagstaff) is
also found to be described in saivite texts as having the bijapūraka (of the shape of common citron)

5. The coloured banner should be made to reach down to the half of the plinth (of the temple), or to commensurate with its entire length, or of the same length with its rod, according to the option (of the consecrator).

6-7. That banner is known as the mahādvaja (great banner) which flaps around the platform of the edifice. The rod measuring fourteen, nine or six cubits in length should be known as the excellent etc. by learned men. A flagstaff made of a bamboo or of wood etc. yields all desires.

8. A flagstaff breaking down in the middle at the time of planting the same augurs evil to the sovereign of the country or to the consecrator.

9. It should be remedied by (the repetition of) the bahu-rūpamantra. Then the guardian deities of the door should be worshipped and appeasement with the mantras (should be done).

10-12. After having placed the flagstaff, it should be bathed with (the repetition of) the mantra of the weapon. After having sprinkled the flagstaff (with water) with (the repetition of) the same mantra, the preceptor should then bathe (it) with herbal waters and make the divine edifice. After having smeared (the rod) with juice and laid on the bed as before, the location (of the mantras) (is done) in the flagstaff as in the case of the liṅga. But one should not locate the energies of knowledge and action. There is no need to use the fourth case (of inflection) indicating speciality. There is also no need for constructing an altar.

13-14. Then the principle of artha (sense), the second principle of knowledge and the faces (of Śiva) such as Sadyojāta etc. and the principle of Śiva (should be located) in the flagstaff. Lord Śiva, the indivisible, whose attendants have been located should be worshipped. Then oblations should be made with the vedic mantras for the sake of the presence of the flagstaff and ending with (the word) that for every part of the flagstaff. The flagstaff is also consecrated in a different way.

15-17. All about this has been described in the mode of
the astrayāga. After the temple has been made, the bedstead and
the quadrangle having been decorated at the (decided) place,
and the three fundamental principles have been located therein,
the oblations etc. should be offered and then (lord) Śiva should
be worshipped as before.

18-22. After having meditated on (lord) Śiva as the repo-
sitory of all the principles, the all-pervasive god should be located
(therein). The (gods) Ananta (serpent chief) and Kālarudra
(a form of lord Śiva) should be considered as lying at the lotus
feet, the (lords) Kūśmāṇḍa and Hāṭaka at the platform at the
top of the plinth and the guardian deities along with the nether
worlds, hells, other worlds and the hundred Rudras representing
the cosmic egg having been contemplated should be considered
at the plinth. Then (the preceptor) should contemplate the
picture of a man on the cloth with a lion on the left along with the
forty such as principles of water, lustre, and wind, that which is
known as enclosing all things, the eight resultant of the intellect,
the eight kinds of jñāna, and the three qualities ending with de-
struction. The four (principles of) learning etc. (should be con-
dered) as located in the cornice of the temple.

23. The (principle of) illusion along with (lord) Rudra
(are located) in the neck; the learning in the threshold, the
mystic circle, the master along with the lord of learning in the
(ornamental) pot above.

24. It should be conceived as the matted hair and the cres-
cent (on the top) as the trident (of the lord). The three energies
(should be located) in the flagstaff and should be looked upon
(as permeated) with the sound.

25-26. (The preceptor) should also conceive that the energy
(known as) kuṇḍali is present in the banner. Thus (the different
gods) should be conceived as present in that abode. After having
lifted the liṅga along with its pedestal or with the earth (lying
at its bottom) with (the recitation of) the mantras, it should be
placed in its seat namely the lotus of energy after having placed
the gems etc.

27. After the banner staff has thus been fixed, the person
for whom the rite is performed gets the desired fruits after cir-
cumambulating the edifice along with his relatives and friends.

28. After having contemplated (the mantra) pāñcāpata, along with the presiding deities of the mantras, the preceptor should invoke the presiding deities possessing the weapons for the sake of protection.

29. After having made oblation for the removal of defects of deficiency etc. and making offerings to the quarters, fees should be paid to the preceptor. The yajamāna (the person for whom the rite is done) would go to the heavens.

30. Such a person would enjoy comforts for so many thousand yugas as the number of atoms in the structures of the image, linga and the altar.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND THREE

Mode of repair of old or broken lingas

The Lord said:

1-2. I shall describe the repairing of the lingas which have become old etc. as laid down. That one which is devoid of the characteristics, or broken or whose outlines have become blunt or that which is struck by lightning or cracked or broken or mutilated or damaged in any other way should be installed on its pedestal as also its bull.

3-5. The lingas which have been shaken (from their position) or which have become unsteady or which have been slantingly fixed or which lean towards a particular direction or those which have been fixed exactly at the centre (of the temple) should be re-installed (in their places) if they are devoid of any cracks or if they have been washed by floods of river water etc. A linga of Śiva duly reinstalled at a different place as laid down should not be removed whether it has been perfectly fixed or improperly fixed.
6. A liṅga should be established by (offering) a hundred (oblations) and be removed by (offering) a thousand (oblations). If the liṅga is worshipped, it would set right even the old ones.

7. After having erected a sacrificial shed either in the south-ern part or in the north-eastern part of the ground and an arch on the door on the western side and completed the worship of the guardian deities, worship with the mantras (is done) on the (sacrificial) ground.

8-10. After having appeased with the mantras and worshipp-ed the presiding deities of the ground as before and made offerings for the quarters outside, the preceptor should sip waters (thrice). After having fed the brahmins, (lord) Śambhu (Śiva) should then be informed, “O (lord) Śambhu! This liṅga is defective and is to be removed. O (lord) Śiva graciously take thy seat in myself for a while if it pleases you”. After having submitted to the lord thus one should offer oblation of appeasement.

11-12. (The preceptor) (should offer) one hundred and eight oblations with honey, clarified butter, milk, and dūrvā (a kind of grass). After having established the liṅga, it should be worshipped on the ground then. (The Śiva mantras for the worship are (as follows): “Om, to the all-pervading etc.” “Om, obeisance to the lord of the heart, the pervading.” The aṅga mantras (those for assigning on the different parts of the body) are “Om obeisance to the pervading lord, to the head.” etc. Then the principle abiding therein should be addressed with the mantras of the weapon.

13-17. (Then the preceptor should say as follows): “Which-ever good spirit that is lodged in this liṅga may go to its place of liking after leaving this liṅga by the command of (lord) Śiva. (Lord) Bhava (Śiva) being attended to by the learning and the presiding deities of learning would remain here.” Then having made thousand oblations for each one of the (three) parts with the pāśupata mantra, sprinkled waters of appeasement and touched with the kuṭa, (the preceptor) should repeat (the mantras). After having offered the arghya (waters for washing) in the reverse order to the (fundamental) principles and to the presiding deities of the principles, the preceptor should bid farewell to the presiding deities of the eight manifestations (of lord Śiva) located in the liṅga and the pedestal by binding them with
a golden noose placed on the shoulders of the bull and leading them with the repetition of the mantras of (lord) Śiva and should put it in the waters. Then the preceptor should offer hundred oblations in order to confer prosperity.

18-22. One hundred oblations each (should be offered) to satisfy the presiding deities of the quarters and for the purification of the sacrificial ground. After having laid protection for that building with the (repetition of the mantra of) pāśupata weapon, the preceptor should establish another linga therein as laid down. (Lingas) established by demons, sages, brahmins belonging to the clan of renowned sages and those well-versed in the Tantras (class of literature dealing with magic and mystic formulations for the worship of different deities) should not be removed even as laid down, even though they may be old or broken. This is the procedure to be followed for replacing an old edifice. After having located the collection of mantras on the sword another edifice should be made. If (the edifice is) made less spacious it is said to confer death (on the consecrator) and if made too spacious it would cause loss of wealth. Whether the same materials (are used) or better materials it should be done well to be of the same measure as before.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FOUR

General characteristic of a divine edifice :

The Lord said :

1. One who has peacock on the banner ! I shall describe you the general characteristics of a divine edifice. In a ground divided into four parts, the breadth of the walls should comprise a part.

2. The ady tum should be one-seventh of this. The pedestal (should be) a quarter of its extent. The pedestal should occupy the central part of the ground divided into five parts.

3. The aperture and the wall should be one part each. Two ady tum in two parts is medium. One adytum in two parts is excellent.
4-6. According to some the vault of the adytum should occupy three such parts and the walls the rest. In the case of a plot divided into six parts the walls (should comprise) one such part. The breadth of the adytum (should be) one part and that of the pedestal two parts. The height of the temple (should be) double or greater than twice (the breadth) by a quarter or in certain cases triple (that of the breadth). Sometimes it would be half the breadth or one-third of (the entire area of) the ground.

7. The (inner) circumference (of the vault would be) a quarter less than the area of the temple. The outer circumference (would be) a third of it. Small chariots should be got ready at the centre.

8-9. Lords Cāmuṇḍa, Bhairava and Nāṭyeśa (different forms of Lord Śiva) should be placed in them. Images of eight or four deities should be made outside to surround (the main temple) and they should occupy half the space of the temple. They may or may not be within the temples. The (images of) Ādityas (the 12 suns, progeny of Aditi and Kaśyapa) should be placed at the east. The (images of) Skanda and Agni (should be placed) in the north-west.

10. In this way, images of Yama (lord of death) and other deities should be placed in the respective directions over which they preside. After having divided the pinnacle into four parts, the region of the vault (should be made to comprise) two such parts.

11-13. The top platform of (god of) fire should be in the third part. The flat cushion (should be placed above that) with a cornice. The five (classes of temples) are vairāja, puspaka, kailāsa, maṇika and trivistapa (characterised by structures of different shapes) built over the top platform. The first (among the above) is a square, the second one a rectangle, (the third one) circular, the next one oval and the fifth one octagonal. Each one of these is divided into nine (thereby) giving rise to forty-five divisions.

14-15. The temples belonging to the vairāja class are—the first one meru, mandara the second one, vimāna, bhadra, sarvatabhadra, caruka, nandika, nandivardhana and śravatsa.

16-17. The nine temples belonging to the puspaka (class) are valabhi, grharāja, sālāgrha, mandira, viśāla, brahmannamandira, bhavana, prabhava and śīvikāvēśma. The circular shaped temples—
valaya, dundubhi, padma, mahāpadma, varddhani, uṣṇa, saṅkha, kalaśa and khavṛksa belong to the kailāsa class.

18-21. The nine—gaja, uṛṣabhā, hamsa, garutmaṇ, ṭkaṇḍyaka, bhūṣana, bhūdhara, śrijaya and prthividhara are oval-shaped and belong to (the class called) maṇika. Vajra, cakra, svastika, vajra-śvastika, citra, avastika-khadga, gadā, śrikanṭha and vijaya are the names of those which belong to triviṣṭapa (class).

22. These are the names given to the towns of Lāṭas etc. The top portion should be half the height of the neck and proportionately broad.

23. After having made the top platform into ten parts, the breadth of the shoulder portion (should be made to comprise) five parts. The neck portion should be made (to comprise) three parts, and the praṇḍaka (?) should be four such parts.

24. The doors should be made so as to face the cardinal points and never on the intermediate points. The pedestal should extend to two corners (of the temple) and to the middle part of the adytum.

25. Sometimes (the pedestals) extend up to the fifth part of the adytum from the posterior edge thereof, their height being double of their length. A different type (of construction) is described now.

26-30. Four doors should be made so as to measure ten fingers less than one hundred and sixty fingers known as the uttama (excellent ones). Three (doors) would be of the madhyama (middle) order and three (doors) of the kaniṇya (inferior ones). The breadth (would be) equal to half the height or height greater than (the breadth) by a third part. The height may be four or eight or ten fingers more. The breadth may be a fourth (part) of the height. There should be ornamental indents on the threshold. It has been stated that the breadth of all of them (should be) half the breadth (of the doors). The door with two, five, seven or nine ornamental indents confers the desired (fruit). Two warders should be carved in the doorframe to occupy a quarter part of the latter below the lower (ornamental) branch. The ends of the (ornamental) branches should be decorated with (the images) of the fairy twins.

31. (In a temple) if the post has been encroached (the consecrator) would be a slave and if the tree has been impeded
in its growth it would confer poverty, if it has encroached on a well at the gate it portends fear and if it protrudes over the ground (it augurs) loss of wealth.

32. If it has encroached a thoroughfare it would get captivity (for the consecrator). One would get poverty if the temple had been built to make the hall (in front) as narrow. If it obstructs the varṇa (?) it will make one deformed.

33-34. If a mortar causes an obstruction it would give poverty. If a stone-block causes obstruction it would cause enmity. If it is shadowed (by some other building) it gives poverty. There will not be defects of obstruction (in the following cases)—by felling a tree, uprooting (of stone) or by leaving intervening space equal to twice that of the original compound.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FIVE

Mode of worship of the presiding deity of a place

The Lord said:

1. The presiding deity of the ground should be worshipped in (a mystic diagram) of eighty-one squares for the prosperity of a city, village, fort, house or temple and their definite accomplishment.

2-4. I shall narrate the names of the ten occult nerves which face the east. (They are) sāntā, yaśovati, kāntā, viśālā, prāṇavāhini, sati, vasumatī, nandā, subhadrā and manoramā. (The following occult nerves) are remembered in the north in twelve of the eighty-one squares—harini, suprabhā, lakṣmi, vibhūti, vimalā, priyā, jayā, jvalā and viśokā.

5. (Gods) Iśa and others should be worshipped in the eight directions. (Gods) Iśa, Dhanañjaya, Śakra (Indra), Arka (Sun), Satya (truth), Bhṛṣa (strong) and Vyoma (sky) (should be worshipped) in the east.

6. (Gods) Vayavāha (fire), Puṣan, Vitatha, (untruth), Bhauma (Mars), Kṛtānta (god of death), Gandharva (a semi-divine being), Bhṛṣiga and Mṛga (should be worshipped) in the south.
7. The Pitṛs, the door-keepers, Suguṇa, Puṣpadanta, Varuṇa, Dāitya (demon), Śeṣa (the serpent-god), and yakṣman (consumption) (should be worshipped) always in the west.

8. The diseases, the serpent-chief, Bhallāta, fortune, Aditi, and Diti should occupy six half squares. (God) Brahmā should be worshipped in the nine squares (at the centre).

9-10. (God) known as AYYĀ (should be worshipped) in the two north-eastern squares of Brahmā. (God) known as Apavatsa (should be located) in the six squares below that between the central points. (God) Savitā should occupy two squares in between those of Marīci and Fire-god. (God) Sāvitri should occupy two places below that and (God) Vivasvān six places below that.

11. (One should worship) (the gods), Viṣṇu, Indra, Jaya and the moon in the squares belonging to Pitṛs and (lord) Brahmā. (The god) Mitra should be worshipped in the six squares in between those of (gods) Brahmā and Varuṇa.

12. The attendant of (god) Rudra (should be worshipped) always in the ten (squares) in between those of the diseases and (god) Brahmā. (The disease) yakṣman (consumption) (should be worshipped) in the two squares below that and dharādhara in the six squares on the north.

13. (The demonesses and demons) Carakī, Skandavikāta Vidārī, Pūtanā, Jambha, Pāpa and Pili-piccha should be worshipped outside in the directions of north-east etc.

14. There should be eightyone divisions of squares (in the case of a site relating to) a house. The same should be one hundred divisions (if it relates to) a (temple) pavilion. As before, the gods should be worshipped. (Lord) Brahmā (should be worshipped) in the sixteen squares (at the centre).

15-16. (The gods) Marīci, Vivasvat, Mitra and Prthvī-dhara should be (worshipped) in ten squares in the (four) directions. Diti, Iśānī, Mrga, Mukhya, Pitṛs, Pāpa (spirit of sin), yakṣman (consumption) and fire-god should be (worshipped) in one and a half square each in the (eight) directions north-east etc.

17. O Guha (Kumāra, son of Lord Śiva and Pārvatī)! I shall briefly describe the measures (of different forms of temples) in order. It should measure twentyeight cubits in length and twentyeight cubits in breadth.
18. The entire circumference would measure twenty-two cubits. The width of the wall would measure nine. The above measures would hold good in the case of pavilions known as śivāṣraya, śivākhya, rudra-hina and sadabhaya.

19. (The pavilions of) the Sāvitra class would measure eighteen cubits in length and fifteen in breadth, and the width of the walls would be made equal to a thirtieth part of the above.

20. The height of the walls above the plinth would measure thrice the width thereof. The ground elevation of manifold kinds depending on the passages should be in a same line with the foot of the wall.

21. In the Bhadra (type of temples) there should be passages (on all sides) except at the front. There should be a passage at the entrance. The Śrījaya (class) would be devoid of the hinder (passage). If there are no passages on the sides it is Bhadra class.

22. The passage (should be) as wide as the adytum or half of it. The supplementary passage (should be) half (that) of the (main) passage and should link one, two or three chambers.

23. I shall describe the common features of the temples which would confer all the desires (on the consecrator). (It should have) one, two, three, four or eight rooms in order.

24. In a temple having one room the southern part should face the north. If there are two, one of them should have its western part facing the east. If there are four rooms there should be one room each as stated above facing the north and east respectively.

25. If it faces the west it is known as Śiva, the east (it is known as) Yamasūryaka, the east and north (it is known as) Danḍa, and the east and south (it is) known as Vāta.

26. If it faces the west and north it is called Bali. That which is (known as) the Triṣūla will get destruction of wealth. A house devoid of its eastern wing will be Sukṣetra which confers prosperity.

27. One devoid of southern rooms is (known as) Śūlī. That are having three rooms confers excessive prosperity. The building without any room on the west destroys the progeny of the consecrator) and also creates many enemies.

28-29. I shall describe the eight chambers commencing with the east (known as) dhvaja etc. The washing and fragrance
chambers as well as the kitchen (should be) on the south-east. The parlour and bed chambers (should be) in the south. (The chamber) for bows and weapons (should be) at the south-west. (The chamber) for costly articles (should be) at the west. (Room) for articles of perfume (should be) at the north-west.

30. (The chamber) for wealth and cattle should be made in the north. The excellent place for initiation (should be) on the north-east. The building (should be made) according to (a standard) measured with the consecrator's hand and co-extensive with the pedestal.

31. The cubit measures should be tripled and then divided by eight. Then the remainder should (be the measure) of the dhwaja etc. up to the end of vāyasa.

32. A building (raised on) the second, third, fourth, sixth, seventh and the eighth (parts of the ground) as well as in the middle and end will be ruinous.

33. Hence, the divine edifice built on the ninth part is deemed to be auspicious. The pavilion built at the centre thereof having a breadth equal to or twice the breadth (of the edifice) is commendable.

34-38. Eight rooms each should be built on the east, west, north and south. The effects of these from east onwards are respectively (described). Fear, association with woman, victory, prosperity, fame, righteousness, strife and poverty are the eight effects of the door on the east. The eight effects of the door on the south are conflagration, unhappiness, annihilation of friends, loss of property, death, (gain of) wealth, becoming a sculptor and (birth of) children. Long life, banishment, grains, wealth, peace, destruction of wealth, emaciation, enjoyment, progeny are the effects of the door on the west. Illness, intoxication affliction, prominence, wealth, longevity, intelligence and honour are the effects of the door on the north.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SIX

Vāstu relating to Cities

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the vāstu (worship of the presiding deity) relating to a city for the prosperity of the kingdom. Land measuring eight miles or half of it or a quarter of it should be set apart.

2. After having worshipped the presiding deity of the city, enclosure should be made ready in the thirty squares of lord Īśa (Śiva) and others. The eastern gate (should be) on that of (lord) Sun.

3. The southern (gate) should be (raised) on (the squares) of the gandharvas (semi divine beings) while the western one (should be raised) on that of (lord) Varuṇa. The northern gate (should be) made on that of (lord) Soma. The low-roofed chambers should be made extensive.

4. The doors should be six (cubits wide) so that the elephants and other (animals) could easily pass through. A city should never be founded (on grounds) far away from one another, or of shape of the crescent moon or hypotenuse (of the plot) broken.

5. (A city of the shape) of the face of a vajrastūci (diamond needle) or having two or three easy ways is not favourable. The frontage of a city resembling (the shape of) a bow or vajranāga is beneficiary.

6. After having worshipped (the gods) Viṣṇu, Śiva, Sun and others and bowing down, the founder (of a city) should make the offerings. The goldsmiths and blacksmiths should be provided for at the south-eastern quarter of the city.

7. The houses of professional dancers and courtesans (should be located) in the southern quarter. (The houses) of actors, potters and fishermen (should be located) in the south-western quarter.

8. (Space) should be (set apart for) war-chariots, weapons and swords in the western quarter (of a city). Distillers of liquor and those engaged in the service (of the state) (should be located) in the north-western quarter.
9. Brahmins, ascetics and holymen (should be provided for) in the northern quarter. Those who sell fruits and other articles and merchant community in general should be located in the north-eastern quarter.

10. The commanders of army (should be given quarters) in the eastern quarter. Different regiments of the army (should be provided) in the south-eastern quarter. The officers who attend upon the ladies (should have their residence) in the southern quarter. Royal camps should be located in the south-western part.

11. The chief ministers, treasurers and architects (should be located) in the western direction. Men of judiciary belonging to the clan of brahmins and eminent men (should be located) in the northern part.

12. The military men (should be located) in the southern part, the tradesmen and śūdras (fourth class of men) in the western part. The physicians (should be provided with quarters) in all directions and horses and army should be placed in all quarters.

13. The movable class of līṅgas (should be placed) in the east and the cremation ground in the south. Cattle-sheds (should be located) in the western part and farmers in the northern part.

14. Foreigners should be located in the angular points. This should be observed even in small villages. Those who see (the goddess) Lakṣmī and Kubera at (each side of) the eastern gate-way (of the city) obtain prosperity.

15. The temples of gods (should be established) in the western part facing the east. (The divine edifices should) face towards the west and north respectively in the east and the south.

16-17. The temples of gods Brahmā, Iśa (Śiva) and Viṣṇu (should be built in the city) for the protection of the city. A city, a village, a fortress or a house not having a (guardian) deity will be swallowed by the goblins etc. and becomes infected by diseases. The cities protected by deities confer victory, enjoyment and emancipation.

18. The treasure-house should be in the east, the kitchen in the south-east, the bed-chamber in the south and the arsenal on the west.

19. The dining (chamber) (should be) in the western part,
the granary in the north-west, store-house in the north and the
chamber for the deities in the north-east.

20-23. The palaces may have four chambers or three or
two or one. In the case of palaces having four chambers there
are two hundred and fifty-five subdivisions based on the terraces
in front of the buildings, whereas those having three chambers
(will have) four (sub-divisions) and those having two chambers
(will have) five (sub-divisions) and those having one chamber
(will have) four. The terraces should number twenty-eight
both in a house and city or they should be four, seven, fifty-five,
six, twenty-eight or eight only.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SEVEN

The creation of Sūryambhuva Manu

Fire-god said:

1-3. I shall describe the different worlds, the earth and the
continents. King Priyavrata had ten sons Agnīdhra, Agni-
bāhu, Vapuṣmān, Dyutimān, Medhā, Medhātithi, Bhavya,
Savana, Jyotismān, and Satya. The father gave them seven
continents as follows: He gave Jambūdvipa to Agnīdhra and
Plakṣa to Medhātithi.

4. He gave (the continent of) Śālmla to Vapuṣmān,
(continent) Kuśa to Jyotismān, continent of Kraupīca to Dyutimān
and (continent of) Śaka to Bhavya.

5. He gave Puṣkara to Savana. What Jambūdvipa was
given to Agnīdhra by his father (was divided by him and given
to his sons). He gave (the country) called Hima to Nābhi.

6. (He gave) Hemakūṭa to Kimpuruṣa, Naiṣadha to Hari-
varṣa, central Meru to Ilāvṛta, Nīlācala (Nīla mountains) to
Ramya.

7. (He gave) Śvetavarṣa to Hiraṇvat, Kuru to Kuru,
Bhadraśva to Bhadrāśva, western (countries) to Ketumāla.

8. The king having established the sons of Priyavrata (in
the regions) of Meru, went to the forest. After having performed
penance, he reached god Hari.
9. O Foremost among beings! the eight countries Kim-puruṣa and others by nature abound in happiness and felicity and have natural perfection.

10. There is no fear of old age or death, (adherence or non-observance of) moral obligations relating to yuga periods, or lower or middle class of beings in (the country) of Hima.

11. Rṣabha was born to Nābhi through Meru. Bharata was born to Rṣabha. After having entrusted the kingdom to his son, Rṣabha resorted to Śālagrāma and attained Hari.

12. The country was called Bhārata after the name Bharata. Sumati was born to Bharata. Bharata resorted to Śālagrāma (to worship) Hari after entrusting his kingdom (to his son).

13. He became a yogin (on practising yoga). I shall describe his life later at the time of narration of yoga. From Sumati, Tejas (was born). Indradyumna was born from him.

14-15. Parameśṭhī was born from him and Pratīhāra was born then. Pratīhāra (was born) from Pratīhāra and then Bhuva, Udgītha and Prastāra from Pratīhāra. Vibhu was the son of Prastāra. Then (was born) Prthu and Nakta. Gaya was the son of Nakta.

16. Nara was the son of Gaya. Then Virāṭ was his son. Mahāvīrya was the son (of Virāṭ). Dhīmān was born to him.

17. Mahānta was his son. Manasya was his (Mahānta’s) son. (Then) Tvaṣṭā (was born to him). Virajā (was born) to Tvaṣṭā. Raja was his son.

18. Satyajit (was born) to Raja. O Sage! one hundred sons were born to him. They were the lights of the universe. The (country of) Bhārata was well-developed by them. The creation of the Svāyambhuva (Manu) was remembered (so far) relating to Kṛta and Tretā (yugas).

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHT

Cosmographical account

Fire-god said:

1. The seven continents are Jambū, Plakṣa, Śālmali, Kuśa, Krauṇca, Śāka and Puṣkara.
2. These continents are surrounded by seven oceans namely, Lavaña (salt), Ikṣu (sugarcane juice), Surā (nectar), Sarpiṣ (clarified butter), Dadhi (curd), Dugdha (milk) and Jala (water) of even proportions.

3. The Jambūdvīpa (continent of Jambū) is situated at the centre of continents. The Meru mountain which is the kind of sixteen mountains towers majestically extending to eighty-four (yojanas).

4. The mountain rises to thirtytwo thousand (yojanas) above (the earth) and spreads to sixteen thousand (yojanas) under the earth. Its peaks are in the shape of a pericarp of a lotus.

5. Himavān, Hemakūṭa and Niṣadhā are in the southern part. Nīla, Śveta and Śṛṅgī are the varṣaparvatas (boundary mountains) in the northern part.

6. Two of the above (mountains) extend to two lakhs (yojanas) at their middle, while the others are ten thousand (yojanas) less. Their altitude is two thousand yojanas and they have an equal breadth at the base.

7. O Twice-born one! Bhārata is the first mountain. Kimpuruṣa is known as the next one. Harivarṣa is the next one to the south of Meru.

8. Ramyaka, Hiraṇyaka and Uttara Kuru are in the north just as the Bhārata (in the south).

9. O Excellent sage! Each one of them is nine thousand (yojanas) in their extent. Ilāvṛta is at the middle. Meru rises up from the centre with its golden peak.

10. O Fortunate one! Ilāvṛta spreads to nine thousand (yojanas) all around Meru. There are four mountains here.

11. They are beams of support for the Meru, each one extending to one lakh (yojanas). (Among these) the Mandara (mountain) is in the east and the Gandhamādana is in the south.

12-13. The Vipula (mountain) is in the west and the Supārśva (mountain) is in the north. The Kadamba, Jambū, Pippala and Vaṭa are the trees in these extending to eleven hundred (yojanas) (serving as) their banners. Jambūdvīpa gets its appellation on account of the Jambū fruit of the size of an elephant.

14. The waters of the river Jambū deposit the golden ores.
The Supārśva (mountain lies) on the east of Meru and the Ketumāla (mountain) on the west.

15. The forest of Caitraratha (lies) on the east, Gandhamādana on the south, Vaibhrāja on the west and Nandana on the north. (I shall describe) the lakes herein.

16. (They are) Aruṇoda, Mahābhadra, Śītoda, Mānasā, Sitāmbha, Cakra and Muṇja. The mountains known as Keśarācalā¹ are in the east.

17-18. The mountains (called) Trikūṭa² (group) lie on the south. The Śikhvāsa³ (group) lie on the west. The Saṅkhakūṭa⁴ (group) lie on the north. The abode of lord Brahmā is on the Meru (mountain) extending to fourteen thousand yojanas above. (The abodes) of Indra and other guardian deities are around the abode of Brahmā.

19. The river Śitā, after falling from the feet of (lord) Viṣṇu, washes the lunar region and falls from heavens on the east (on the Bhadrāśva mountain). It falls from Bhadrāśva on the hills below successively and reaches the ocean.

20-21. Similarly, (the river) Alakanandā flows in Bhārata through the south and reaches the ocean after dividing itself into seven branches.

(The river) Cakṣu reaches the ocean on the west. So also (the river) Bhadrā (passes through) the Uttara Kuru (country) and reaches the northern ocean. (The mountains) Mālyavat and Gandhamādana extend upto the Nīla and Niṣadha (mountains in the north and south respectively).

22-27. The Meru (mountain) lies in between them in the shape of a lotus. (The countries) Bhārata, Ketumāla, Bhadrāśva, and Kuru situated outside these boundary mountains are the petals of this lotus of the world. The two boundary mountains Jaṭhara and Devakūṭa extend upto the Nīla and Niṣadha mountains on the north and south. The Gandhamādana and Kailāsa

¹. They are Śitāmbha, Kumuda, Kurari, Mālyavān and Vaikaṅka. See Vi.P. II.ii.26.
². They are Trikūṭa, Śiśira, Pataṅga, Rucaka and Niṣāda. See Vi. P. II.ii.27.
³. They are Śikhvāsa, Vaiḍūrya, Kapila, Gandhamādana and Jārudhī. See Vi.P. II.ii.28.
⁴. They are Saṅkhakūṭa, Rṣabha, Haṁsa, Nāga and Kālaṅjara. See ib. 29.
(mountains) spreading in the east and west to eighty yajanas lie in the ocean. The two boundary mountains Niṣadha and Pāriyātra are situated on the west as in the east. (Similarly), the boundary mountains Jaṭhara and others (are situated) around Meru in four directions.

28. O Excellent sage! Abodes of (goddess) Lakṣmī, (lords) Viṣṇu, Agni and Sūrya and other gods are situated in the caves in the mountains Keśara and others.

29-30. They are the abodes of gods on the earth. Sinners do not go there. Lord Viṣṇu resides in Bhadrāśva as Hayagrīva, in Ketumāla as Varāha, in Bhārata in the form of Kūrma (tortoise) and in Kurus in the form of Matsya (fish). Lord Hari is worshipped everywhere in his universal form.

31. In the eight countries Kimpuruṣa and others, there is no (misery such as) hunger, fear, grief and others. The twenty-four thousand inhabitants live without diseases.

32. There is no imaginary division of time such as the Kṛta (yuga) etc., the division of worlds, waters and clouds. There are seven principal mountains in each one of these countries.

33. Hundreds of rivers rise from them giving rise to sacred waters. I shall describe the sacred spots situated in Bhārata.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND NINE

The greatness of sacred spots

Fire-god said:

1-4. I shall describe the greatness of all sacred spots which confer enjoyment and emancipation. One, whose hands, feet and mind are well-disciplined and one who possesses learning, austerity and penance, reaps the fruits of pilgrimage. One who has restrained from accepting alms, one who eats less, one who has conquered his senses, one who is devoid of sins, such a person on pilgrimage would get the fruits of all sacrificial rites. One would be born as poor, if he has not fasted three nights, had not gone on pilgrimage and had not given gold and cows as gift. Whatever fruit is got by doing sacrificial rites will be gained by going on pilgrimage.
5. O Brahmin! Puṣkara is the excellent sacred spot. One should dwell there at least for three nights. There are thousand crores of sacred places in Puṣkara.

6. Lord Brahmā resides here along with celestials. The sages who desire for everything and the celestials have had perfection here after bathing and worshipping the ancestors and celestials.

7. They attain the fruits of performing Aśvamedha rite and reach Brahma-loka. One who gifts food in (the month of) Karttiika, gets free from sins and reaches Brahma-loka.

8. It is difficult to go to Puṣkara and the austerity at Puṣkara is still more difficult. It is difficult to give gift at Puṣkara and it is still more difficult to stay at Puṣkara.

9. One elevates hundreds of manes by staying therein, by repetition (of divine names) and by doing ancestral rites. The path to Jambū also lies therein, as also the sacred spot of Taṇḍūlikāśrama.

10-11. The Kanvaśrama, Koṭitṛtha, (river) Narmadā, Arbuda, Carmanavati, Sindhu, Somanātha, Prabhāsa, confluence of (river) Sarasvatī at the ocean, the ocean, Pindāraka, Dwārakā and Gomatī yield all fruits.

12-13. The Bhūmitṛtha, Brahmaṭuṅga and the (land of) five rivers, the king of mountains, Devikā, the destroyer of sins, the meritorious Vīnaśana, Nagodbheda, the destroyer of sins the Kumārakoṭi are spoken as bestowers of all benefits.

14. Whoever always says, “I will go to Kurukṣetra and live, therein”, becomes free of sin and goes to heaven.

15. The gods Viṣṇu and others dwell there. (One who) lives therein reaches lord Viṣṇu. One who bathes in the river Sarasvatī and Sannihata reaches the region of Brahmā.

16. Even the dust particles at Kurukṣetra confer excellent position. The Dharmatīrtha, Suvarṇa and Haridvāra are excellent places.

17. The sacred places Kanakhala and Bhadrakarṇahrada are meritorious. The confluence of the rivers Ganges and Sarasvatī and the Brahmavarta destroy sins.

18. The Bhṛgutuṅga, Kubjāmra and the place of origin of Ganges destroy sins. Vārāṇasī is an excellent sacred spot. Avimukta is unsurpassed.
19. The sacred Kapâlamocana and Prayâga, the excellent sacred spot, the confluence of Gomati and Gaṅgâ and (the river) Gaṅgâ throughout do not confer hell.

20. The sacred Râjagrha is meritorious. Šâlagrâma removes sins. Vaṭeśa, the sacred Vâmanana and the confluence of Kâlikâ are excellent places.

21. Lauhitya, (river) Karatoya, Šoṇa, Rṣabha (hills) are excellent places. Śrîparvata, Kolbagiri, Sahyâdri and Malayagiri (are sacred).

22. The rivers Godâvari, Tuṅgabhadra, Kâverî, Tâpî, Payoṣñi and Revâ are the bestowers (of fruits). The Daṇḍaka forest is excellent.

23. Kâlañjara, Muñjavaṭa, Sûrpaṭaka, (river) Mandâkinî, Citrakûṭa and Śrîgañaverapura are excellent spots.

24. Avantî is an excellent place. Ayodhya destroys one's sins. Naimiṣa is an excellent place which yields enjoyment and liberation.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND TEN

The greatness of Gaṅgâ

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the greatness of (river) Gaṅgâ. She should be worshipped. She yields enjoyment and liberation. The countries through which she flows are holy and excellent.

2. The (river) Ganges is the succour for the beings who resort to it always. The (river) Ganges duly worshipped, succours the two lines of ancestors.

3. The drinking of the waters of Ganges (confers the merits of performance of) thousands of Cândrâyaṇa. One who worships the Ganges for a month gets the fruits of all sacrificial rites.

4. The goddess (Ganges) destroys all sins and confers (access to) heavens. One continues to stay in heavens as long as (his) bones remain in the (waters of the) Ganges.

5. Blind people and others attain equal status with the
celestials by worshipping her. The carrying of the earth dug up from the beds of Ganges destroys one’s sins just as the Sun.

6. (The river) purifies hundreds and thousands of holy men who look at it, touch it, drink (its waters) and repeat (the word) Ganges.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND ELEVEN

The Greatness of Prayāga

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the greatness of Prayāga, the excellent place, which confers enjoyment and emancipation. O Excellent sages! the gods Brahmā, Viṣṇu and others stay at Prayāga.

2. So also the rivers, oceans, siddhas (accomplished persons), gandharvas (semi-divine beings) (stay there). There are three fire-pits and the Ganges (flows) in the middle.

3. (The river Yamunā), the daughter of Sun, renowned in the three worlds flows there with force having all sacred spots before her.

4. (The land) in between (the rivers) Ganges and Yamunā is known to be the thigh of (goddess) earth. The sages knew that Prayāga is the generative organ situated in the thigh.

5. Prayāga and Pratiṣṭhāna are the woollen blanket and the mule. The holy place of Bhogavatī is the platform for the god of creation (Brahmā).

6-7. The scriptures and sacrificial rites are endowed with forms at Prayāga. By singing in praise of this sacred place, or by the repetition of (lord’s) names or by touching the earth here (one) gets free from all sins. Charity, ancestral rites and recitation (of names of the god) done at Prayāga, the place of confluence (of the two rivers), has undecaying merits.

8. O Twice-born! One who has resolved to die at Prayāga at the end (of his term of life) should not change his mind on the authority of scriptures or on the words of the people.

9-12. Ten thousand and six crores of sacred places are present only here. Hence Prayāga is the foremost (place). The
Bhogavātī, sacred spot of Vāsuki (serpent chief) and the flight of swans are present here. One reaps the fruits of making a charity of a crores of cows by bathing at Prayāga three days in the month of māgha (February-March). The learned have declared thus. It is easy to have access to Ganges all along its course, but very difficult at the (following) three places—Gaṅgādvāra (Haridvāra), Prayāga and the confluence of Ganges with the ocean. One goes to heaven by giving alms here and one will become a monarch here itself.

13-14. One who dies at the root of the banyan tree and the confluence goes to the abode of lord Viṣṇu. The sacred sands on which Urvaśī (a nymph) had sported, the Sandhyāvāta, the Kośīṭhīrtha, the Aśvamedha, the pure Mānasa, and Vāsaraka are all excellent places.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND TWELVE

The greatness of Vārāṇasi

Fire-god said:

1. (Lord) Maheśvara (Śiva) said to Gaurī (consort of Śiva) that Vārāṇasī is the sacred place. It confers enjoyment and emancipation on those who reside there and recite (the name of god) Hari (Viṣṇu).

Rudra (Śiva) said:

2. “The sacred place, O Gaurī, has never been forsaken (by me) and hence it is called Avimukta. The repetition (of god’s names), the performance of penance and giving alms at Avimukta indeed (yields) undiminishing benefits.

3-5. After rubbing away dust from the feet with a stone, one should stay at Kāśī (Vārāṇasī). He should never forsake it. The eight holy spots—Hariścandra, Āmrātakeśvara, Japyeśvara, Śrīparvata, Mahālaya, Bhṛgu, Caṇḍeśvara and Kedāra, remain concealed at Avimuktaka (Vārāṇasī). Avimuktaka is the most sacred place among all sacred places.

6. It extends to two yojanas in the east and half a yojana in

1. Avimukta is one of the names of Vārāṇasī.
the opposite direction. The (two) rivers Varanā and Asī (flow) and Vārāṇasī lies between the two.

7. Bathing, muttering (of divine names), oblations (to gods), (one’s) death, worship of gods, ancestral rites, almsgiving and stay and whatsoever done here is capable of conferring enjoyment and emancipation.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND THIRTEEN

The greatness of Narmadā

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the greatness of Narmadā which yields great pleasure. The water of the Ganges purifies the bather at once. The water of the river Narmadā (purifies) at the mere sight of it.

2-3. It extends (in length) to one hundred yojana and two yojanas in breadth. There are sixty thousand holy places and sixty crores on the hills on either side at Amarakaṇṭaka. (The place of) confluence with Kāverī is meritorious. Listen to me. I shall describe about Śrīparvata.

4-5. (Goddess) Gaurī in the guise of (goddess) Śrī (Lakṣmī) did penance here. Lord Hari told her, who was doing penance, that she would attain salvation, and that hill will be known after her name as Śrīparvata. Hundred yojanas all along (the hill) would become greatly meritorious. Charity, penance, chants and ceremony done here all yield undiminishing merits.

6. Death at this place (conveys one) to the world of Śiva. This excellent sacred place yields everything. Lord Śiva sports here with his consort. (The demon) Hiranyakaśipu performed penance here and became mighty. The sages attained perfection here.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FOURTEEN

The greatness of Gayā

The Fire-god said:

1-2. I shall describe the greatness of Gayā. It is the most excellent among the sacred places. The demon Gaya practised penance. Being tormented by the heat of his penance, the celestials (approached lord) Viṣṇu who was lying in the milky ocean and told him “Kindly protect us from the demon Gaya.” (Lord) Hari (Viṣṇu) said yes. He met the demon and asked him to request for a boon.

3-4. The demon requested that he would be the holiest of all places. Lord Viṣṇu granted his request. Having seen that the demon (was on the earth) and the earth had become deserted without Lord Viṣṇu, the celestials, Brahmā and others in the heaven met lord Hari (Viṣṇu) and said, “O (lord) Hari! The earth has become deserted.”

5. On seeing the demon’s presence, lord Hari (Viṣṇu) asked (lord) Brahmā, “You go to the demon along with the celestials and request for his body for the purpose of a sacrifice.”

6. After having heard that, Brahmā went to the demon Gaya along with the celestials and said to him as follows: “I am your guest. I request you (to give me your) pure body for (the sake of being offered in) a sacrifice.”

7. The demon Gaya granted the request. He fell down. (Lord Brahmā) did the sacrifice on the skull. As it was moving, (lord Viṣṇu) asked lord Brahmā to offer the final oblation.

8-9. Even as the final oblation was being offered, the demon moved. Hence lord Brahmā asked Lord Viṣṇu. Lord Viṣṇu then called Dharma (the god of virtue) and said, “O celestials! you all support this divine stone. The club-wielding form of mine along with the gods will be present on this slab.”

10-11. Having heard that, lord Dharma supported that excellent divine slab. Mārici, the son of Brahmā married Dharma vratā, the daughter of Dharma and Dharma vatī. She was devoted to doing penance. (They two spent happily) just as (lord) Hari sported with (goddess) Śrī (Lakṣmi) and (lord) Śambhu (Śiva) with (goddess) Gaurī (Pārvatī).

12. (Once) he returned from the forest with kuśa (grass)
and flowers and was very tired. After taking food he said to Dharmavratā, "Massage my feet."

13. The dear wife accordingly was massaging the feet of the sage who was taking rest. In the meanwhile, as the sage fell into a nap, lord Brahmā came there.

14. Dharmavratā began to think, "Shall I worship lord Brahmā? Or shall I continue to massage the feet (of my lord)? Brahmā who is the lord of my lord should be worshipped."

15-17. After thinking (for some time) she began to worship lord Brahmā with all the honours. Marici (woke up and) saw her (doing service to Brahmā). As she was not doing as directed he cursed her angrily, "You will become a stone". Dharmavratā also said to him, "After having stopped massaging your feet, I had worshipped (Brahmā) your lord. As you have cursed me, a faultless person, you will be cursed by (lord) Śaṅkara (Siva)". Dharmavratā bore the curse singly and resorted to fire-god.

18. She performed penance for a long period. Then Viṣṇu and other celestials appeared in front of her and asked her to request for a boon.

19-22. Dharmavratā said to the celestials, "O Gods let my curse come to an end. The celestials said, "The curse given by Marici will not be otherwise. You will become a sacred stone bearing the marks of the foot-prints of lord (Viṣṇu). You will be endowed with the essence of the gods, O Devavratā (Dharmavratā)! You will be representing the forms of all celestials, You will be meritorious for making the demon motionless". Devavratā said, "If you are pleased with me, may Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Rudra, Gaurī, Lakṣṇī and other gods stay in me ever." The fire-god said, "Having heard the words of Devavratā, the celestials said in affirmative and repaired to the heavens."

23. That divine stone slab of the demon was supported by (lord) Dharma. The demon began to move with the stone slab on which (the gods) Rudra and others remained.

24. The demon was still moving along with celestials. Then lord Hari (Viṣṇu), who was reclining in the milky ocean, was requested by celestials and he gave his form of wielding a mace.

25. (He said) "You all may go. I shall myself go there with the form known to all celestials." There lord Gadādhara
manifested (in the form of) manifest, unmanifest and both manifest and unmanifest.

26-30. (Lord) Ādīgadādhara was himself present in order to make (the stone slab) steady. There was a demon named Gadā. He was killed by lord Viṣṇu. Viśvakarmā (the celestial architect) made a mace from the bones (of that demon). (Lord) Gadādhara killed Heti and other demons with that first mace duly. Hence, he is known as Ādīgadādhara. When lord Ādīgadādhara was manifest in the divine stone slab and the demon remained steady, then lord Brahmā offered the final oblation. The demon Gaya asked celestials “Why I was deceived? By the more command of lord Viṣṇu I would have remained steady. Because you have tormented me you should give me a boon”.

The celestials said:

31-32. “Since you have been made steady by us, this will become a holy place of the lords Viṣṇu, Śambhu (Śiva) and Brahmā. (It would become) more renowned than all other sacred places. It would confer the region of Brahmā on the (departed) ancestors”. Having spoken thus, the gods and goddesses remained there. All the sacred places also were present there.

33-35. After having performed the sacrifice, Brahmā gave fees to the priests. The sacred place of Gayā (extends to) five kroṣas (ten miles). Fiftyfive villages were endowed with (the following): Golden hills flowing with rivers, milk and honey, reservoirs of curd, clarified butter, plenty of hills of food, kāmaghātru (the celestial cow), kalpataru (the celestial tree) and abodes made of gold and silver. Let the brahmins here do not seek alms. The lord gave all these things after having spoken very little.

36-37. (The brahmins) at Gayā were cursed by lord Brahmā when they on account of their greed received gifts of money and other things of the righteous sacrifice “You will be deprived of learning. You will be greedy. The rivers will be bereft of milk and other things. The mountains will become mere rocks.”

38-40. The brahmins said to (lord) Brahmā, “Everything has been lost on account of the curse. Kindly be gracious to us
for the sake of our livelihood”. He replied to the Brahmins, “You will be dependent on (the pilgrims to) the sacred place as long as the moon and sun (exist). The people who come to Gayā and worship you by offering gifts of food, wealth etc. and ancestral rights shall elevate hundreds of their families to heaven from hell and excellent position after heaven.”

41. Gaya also performed a sacrifice offering plenty of food and profuse fees. The place has been named as Gayā after him. The Pāṇḍavas worshipped lord Viṣṇu.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED FIFTEEN

Mode of making a pilgrimage to Gayā

Fire-god said:

1-7. When he has decided to go to Gayā after having duly performed the ancestral rite, he should wear ochre robes and do circumambulation of the village. He should control his mind and should not seek alms as he proceeds on the journey everyday. As soon as he has started from his house to go to Gayā, he secures for his ancestors the steps to ascend to heaven at each one of his steps. What is that to be done by acquiring knowledge about the brahman (the absolute)? What is the benefit of dying at a cowshed? What is the use of stay at Kurukṣetra? If the son goes to Gayā, the ancestors celebrate it on seeing that the son has reached Gayā. (They would think), will they (the sons) offer us waters atleast by touching with their feet? The knowledge about brahman, the ancestral rite at Gayā, the death at the cowshed and stay at Kurukṣetra are the four ways of attaining liberation. The ancestors who are afraid of hell desire that their sons who go to Gayā would be their saviours. Tonsure and fasting is a general rule (to be adhered) at all the sacred places.

8. There is no restriction about time at Gayā. The oblations may be offered always. One who stays there for three fortnights purifies seven generations.

9. In the aṣṭaka ceremony and in the vyddhi rite at Gayā on the day of death, separate rite is performed for the mother at Gayā. But it is performed along with the husband at other places.
10. So also with the rites for the nine relatives such as the father etc. and for the twelve relatives. One should bathe in the sacred water of Uttaramāṇasa on the first day.

11. One should bathe in the sacred Uttaramāṇasa for the sake of increase of longevity and good health, for the destruction of all sins and for liberation.

12. By satisfying gods and ancestors with offerings, the doer of ancestral rite is deemed to have offered them the balls (of rice) "I am satisfying gods remaining in heaven, sky and earth."

13-16. One should satisfy beings in heaven, sky and earth, and father and mother (with the words), "I make these offerings of balls (of rice) for (my) father, grandfather, great-grandfather, mother, (paternal) grandmother, (paternal) great-grandfather, (maternal) grandfather, (maternal) great-grandfather and (maternal) great great grandfather and others for their uplift. "Our salutations to the Sun-god who is of the forms of (the planets) Moon, Mars, Mercury, Jupiter, Venus, Saturn, Rāhu and Ketu. Whoever bathes in the Uttaramāṇasa elevates his entire family.

17-18. After having saluted Sun (god) one should go to the Dakṣinamāṇasa without speaking (any word). (One should contemplate as follows): "I bathe in the Dakṣinamāṇasa for the satisfaction of (my) ancestors. I have come to Gayā. May all my ancestors ascend heaven." After having performed ancestral rite and offered balls (of rice), one should utter as follows after worshipping Sun (god):

19. "Om, salutation to Sun (god), lord (of the universe. O Supreme god! get me the cherished end. Graciously grant enjoyment and emancipation to all my ancestors.

20-21. May the most propitious Fire-god, the conveyor of oblations, Soma, Yama, Aryamā, and groups of manes—Agniśvātṛaḥ, Barhiṣadaḥ, Ājyapāḥ come here. My ancestors such as mother, (maternal) grandfather and others were protected here by all of you.

22-24. I am the person to offer them balls (of rice). I have come to this Gayā (Kṣetra). The sacred place named Kanakhala, renowned in three worlds and being worshipped by celestials, sages and ganiṣṭhas, lies to the north of Munḍa-
prṣṭha (the place where tonsure is done). It is being guarded always by the licking great serpents that give pleasure to accomplished persons and frighten sinners. The mortals on earth go to heavens and sport there by bathing there (in the waters of Kanakhala).

25. Then one should go to Phalgutīrtha situated on the Mahānadi after having visited Uttaramānasa, Nāga, Janār-dana, sacred well and banyan tree.

26. This is spoken as the Gayāśīra. It is also called Phalgutīrtha. The Muṇḍaprṣṭha, Naga hill and other places are the most excellent among outstanding.

27. The water on the earth is veritable Kāmadhenu which yields prosperity and heaven. The Phalgutīrtha causes delight to the eyes. No other place is like the Phalgu (tīrtha).

28. The man who bathes in the Phalgutīrtha and worships lord Gadāḍhara (Viṣṇu) is deemed to have achieved all things got by the doers of good deeds.

29. The sacred places on earth, commencing with oceans and ending with tanks go to Phalgutīrtha once everyday.

30. Whoever bathes reverentially at the Phalgutīrtha, the foremost among tīrthas, causes forefathers to reach the region of Brahmā and the own self to get enjoyment and emancipation.

31-33. One who performs the ancestral rite here should bathe; offer balls (of rice) and worship (lord) Brahmā. In this Kaliyuga, all regions (of the universe) are presided over by (lord) Maheśvara (Śiva). But (lord) Gadāḍhara (Viṣṇu) is the presiding deity here. (Lord) Brahmā (remains here) in the form of a liṅga. (One should say), “I make obeisance to (lords) (Maheśvara) Śiva, Gadāḍhara (Viṣṇu), Bala, Kāma (god of love), Aniruddha (a form of Viṣṇu) and Nārāyaṇa. I also make obeisance to Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Nṛsiṁha and Varāha (forms of Viṣṇu) and others.” Then one elevates hundreds of his family after worshipping (lord) Gadāḍhara.

34. Then one should go to Dharmāraṇya on the second day, bathe in Mataṅgavāpī at the excellent Mataṅgāśrama, do the ancestral rite and offer balls (of rice).

35-36. One should utter the following (words), after worshipping gods Mataṅgeśa and Siddheśa: “Let the gods and
guardian deities be the witness (to the fact) that I had come here and performed rites at this Mataṅga for the liberation of my fore-fathers. Bathing, offering waters of liberation, performance of ancestral rite and other acts (should be performed) at Brahmatīrtha and the sacred well.

37. The performance of ancestral rite between the well and the sacrificial post lifts hundreds of fore-fathers. The righteous person who salutes the Mahābodhi tree gets the region of heaven.

38-39. On the third day, having control over the senses, one should bathe in the Brahmasaras, with the words, “I bathe in the sacred Brahmasaras for the favour of lord Brahmā and convey forefathers to the region of Brahmā served by the brahmārṣis and gaṇas. The doer of ancestral rite should offer waters of libation, offer balls (of rice) and sprinkle (water over his body). One who wants to have Vājapeya (rite) should circumambulate the brahmayāpa (post).

40. One sage offers water at the root of the mango tree holding a pitcher and kuṭāra in his hand. The mango trees are watered and the forefathers are satisfied. One act is well known as yielding two fruits.

41-42. By making obeisance to lord Brahmā one elevates hundreds of generations. On the fourth day, after having bathed in the Phalguṭīrtha and offering tarpāṇa to gods, one should do the ancestral rite together with (the offering of) balls (of rice) at the Gayāṣiras. The extent of sacred Gayā is five kroḍas (ten miles) and the extent of Gayāṣira is one kroṭa (two miles).

43. By offering balls (of rice) there, one elevates hundreds of generations. The great lord Mahādeva (Śiva) has placed his foot at the Muṇḍapṛṣṭha.

44. The Gayāṣira is said to be the sanctuary at Muṇḍapṛṣṭha. The Gayāṣira itself has been made the hermitage at Phalguṭīrtha.

45-48. The nectar flows therein. Whatever is offered there to the forefathers never decreases. After having bathed at Daśāśvamedha and worshipped lord Brahmā, whoever touches the Rudrapāda (the foot mark of lord Rudra) will not be born again. Having offered the ball of rice of the measure of a śanī leaf at Gayāṣira, those who are in the hell go to heaven and those who are in heaven attain liberation. The offer
of ball (of rice) (is made) along with pāyasa, (sweet porridge) flour made into a paste, gruel, rice and wheat and mixed with sesame. By offering the ball (of rice) at Rudrapada, one elevates hundreds of generations.

49. Similarly, one who offers the ball (of rice) at the ancestral rite at Viṣṇupada gets released from debts (due to ancestors). One will elevate hundreds of fore-fathers as also his own self.

50-53. So also, one who does the ancestral rite at the Brahmāpada (the place where the footmarks of Brahmā are situated) conveys the forefathers to the region of Brahmā. Similarly, (the performance of) ancestral rite at the dakṣiṇāgniṇapada, gārhapatya-pada and the āhavaniyapada confers the fruits of (performance of a) sacrificial rite. One who does the ancestral rite to āāsthya (fire), (gods) moon, sun, gana, (sage) Agastya and Kārttikeya elevate the family. After having saluted the chariot of Sun, one should make obeisance to Karṇāditya. After having worshipped the foot of (lord) Kanakeśa, one should make obeisance to Gayākedāra. (By such acts) one gets freed from all sins and conveys his fore-fathers to the region of Brahmā.

54-55. Prince Viṣāla at Viṣāla became father of children by offering balls (of rice) at Gayāśiras. He asked the brahmmins, “How can I have children?” The brahmmins told Viṣāla, “All things will be got by offering balls (of rice) at Gayā.”

56-59. Then Viṣāla also offered balls (of rice) to the forefathers at Gayāśiras. Having seen white and red (coloured) souls in the sky, he asked them, “Who are you?”. One among them, the white person, said to Viṣāla, “I, the white person, am your father now going to the region of Indra on account of (your) good deeds. O son! The red coloured (person) is my father and the black coloured is my grand-father. We had reached hell and we are liberated by you. Because you have offered balls (of rice) we are going to the region of Brahmā”. After saying thus they went away. Viṣāla got progeny, ruled the kingdom and (finally) reached lord Hari (Viṣṇu).

60-62. The foremost among the pretas said to the merchant for his liberation, “Good fruits are enjoyed by all pretas, who

1. The places associated with the fires of the household.
2. A household fire.
are tormented by sufferings. Once, a pitcher together with food and water was given on a Śrāvaṇaadvādaśī day at noon. That has been sustaining (us ever since). You go to Gayā with money and offer us balls (of rice)". The merchant went to Gayā with money and offered balls (of rice).

63-64. The foremost among the pretas was led to the region of (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu) along with the other pretas. (One liberates) his own self, his forefathers and those who have died on the paternal and maternal side, as also those related to the preceptor, the father-in-law and other relatives, by the offer of balls (of rice) at Gayāśiras.

65-67. (One should utter the following words): "Those who have been deprived of the offer of balls for their sake, those who do not have a wife or children, those for whom the rites could not be done, those who were blind, lame or of deformed limbs, those who were born prematurely and other known and unknown (relatives) in my family, for their sake, I have offered the ball (of rice). Let it remain undecaying. Those fore-fathers of mine who remain in the form of a preta, let all of them be pleased for ever by the offer of the ball (of rice)"

68. All those who desire to elevate the family should offer balls (of rice) to all. So also one desirous of (elevating his own self) and getting imperishable place should offer (ball of rice).

69-70. The wise man should bathe at Gadālola with the (repetition of) mantras. O lord Janārdana! I bathe in this sacred Gadāprakṣālana at the extremely sacred Gadālola in order to appease sufferings due to mundane existence. Obeisance to the Aksāyavaṇa (banyan) tree, which yields undecaying heaven.

71. One should do the ancestral rite at the spot of the banyan tree and feed brahmins for (securing) undecaying position of forefathers and for the destruction of all sins.

72. If one brahmin has been fed, crores (of brahmins) would become fed. What more to say? If many are fed, the offerings done to the fore-fathers become undecaying.

73. The fathers of those who offer food at Gayā become virtually the putriṇa (i.e. having sons). After having saluted the

1. The word putra means—one who saves parents from the hell called put.
banyan tree and the lord of the banyan tree, one should worship the great grand-father.

74. One would attain imperishable position and elevate hundreds of his family members. The pilgrimage made to Gayā always (bears) fruit whether it is done in the proper way or not.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SIXTEEN

Mode of making a pilgrimage to Gayā

_The Fire-god said:_

1. One should do _sandhyā_ (twilight worship) after bathing in (the river) Mahānadi with (the recitation of) _gāyatri_ (mantra). The ancestral rite and offer of balls (of rice) in the morning preceded by (the recitation of) _gāyatri_ (mantra) yields undiminishing (fruits).

2. Having bathed in the noon (as the sun remains up) and having worshipped with songs and (playing of) musical instruments, the (evening) twilight worship is done there itself in front of the sun and the offer of balls (of rice) is made.

3. (Similarly) one should (offer) at the place of Agastya. One, who has come out after having entered the _yoniḍvāra_ (the fissure in the hill), does not enter the _yoni_ (the womb) again and will be liberated from the cycles of birth and death.

4. (He) should then pay obeisance to Bali (a demon king) at Kākaśilā and (lord) Kumāra (Subrahmanya). Then one should offer balls (of rice) at Svaradvāra, Somakuṇḍa and Vāyuṭīrtha.

5. Then (he) should offer balls (of rice) at Ākāśagaṅgā and Kapilā. After having paid obeisance to Śiva, the lord of Kapilā, one should offer balls (of rice) at Rukmikūṇḍa.

6. After having worshipped (lord) Koṭāsa at Koṭiṭīrtha, one (should offer balls of rice) at Amoghapada. Then the balls (of rice) should be offered at Gadālola, Vānaraṇaka and Gopra-cāra.
7. After the worship of the cow, one who does the ancestral rite and offers balls (of rice) at (the river) Vaitarini, elevates twentyone generations. Then one should offer balls (of rice) at Krauṇcapāda.

8-11. (The pilgrim) should then offer balls (of rice) at Viśālā and Niścīrā on the third day. One who bathes in the Knamokṣa and Pāpamokṣa and with the sacred ash at the Bhasmakunḍa gets free from sin. One should then worship lord Janārdana (uttering as follows): “I have placed this ball (of rice) on your hand. O Janārdana! When I die let this remain without decay.” (Lord) Janārdana himself (remains) at Gayā in the form of forefathers. Having worshipped that lotus-eyed lord one gets liberated from three debts. After having worshipped (lord) Mārkaṇḍeyesvara, one should worship (lord) Grdhreśvara.

12. Then the balls (of rice) should be offered to (lord) Maheśa at the Mūlakṣetra at Dhārā. Balls (of rice) should be offered at Grdhraṇaṭa, Grdhraṇaṭa and Dhauteṇapāda.

13. (The pilgrim) should then offer balls (of rice) at the Puṣkariṇī, Kardamāla and Rāmatīrtha. One should make obeisance to (lord) Prabhāsesa and offer pīṇḍa (balls of rice) at Petaśilā.

14. (The following words should be recited on these occasions): “May all (my) fore-fathers and relatives who are still in the form of pretas (the dead people still in the state of a spirit) in the heavens, sky or earth get released from that state by my offer of pīṇḍas.”

15. One who offers pīṇḍa at the following three places-Petaśilā, the sacred Gayāśiras and Pretakuṇḍa at Prabhāsa, liberates his family.

16. (The pilgrim) should pay obeisance to (lord) Vasiṣṭhesa and offer pīṇḍa in front of that (deity). He should then offer pīṇḍa at Gayānabhī, Suṣumṇā and Mahākoṭi.

17. (Pīṇḍa should be offered) in front of (lord Gadādhara), at Munḍaprṣṭha and in the presence of the goddess. The Munḍa-prṣṭha together with the guardian deities should be worshipped first.
18. By doing such worship, one will not have fear and the effects of disease and poison will be destroyed. One who worships (lord) Brahmā conveys his family to the region of Brahmā.

19. One who worships Subhadrā (sister of lord Kṛṣṇa), Balabhadra (brother of lord Kṛṣṇa) and Puruśottama (here refers to lord Kṛṣṇa), gets all his desires fulfilled, elevates his family and attains heaven.

20. One should pay obeisance to (lord) Hṛṣīkeśa and offer pīṇḍa in front of that (deity). Having worshipped (lord) Mādhava, one becomes honoured by the celestials.

21. One who worships (the goddesses) Mahālakṣmī, Gaurī, Maṅgalā and Sarasvatī elevates his fore-fathers and enjoys all pleasures in heaven and becomes a learned man (in his next birth).

22-24. One who worships the twelve Ādityas (suns), Fire-god, Revanta and Indra, gets free from diseases etc. and attains heaven. One who worships Kapardi, Vināyaka and (lord) Kārttikeya (Subrahmanya nourished the six Kṛttikās) gets his desire accomplished without any impediment. One would get everything by worshipping the eight mysterious tiṅgas—Somanātha, Kāleśa, Kedāra, Prapitāmaha, Siddheśvara, Rudreśa, Rāmeśa and Brahmakeśvara.

25. By worshipping (lords) Nārāyaṇa, Varāha and Nara-sinha one would get prosperity. By worshipping (lords) Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Maheśa and Tripurāghna (destroyer of Tripura) one would get all things.

26. He who worships Sītā, Rāma, Garuḍa and Vāmana gets all the desired things and conveys his forefathers to the region of Brahmā.

27. By worshipping lord Ādigadādhara in the company of celestials, one gets free from three debts¹ and redeems the entire family.

28. The stone slab is of the form of celestials and it is hence meritorious. There is no place in Gayā where there is no sacred spot.

29-32. That person in whose name a pīṇḍa is offered, is conveyed to (the region of) Brahmā eternally. After having paid obeisance to Phalgvīśa, Phalgucanḍī and Anāgārakeśvara, one should perform the ancestral rite at the place of Mataṅga and

¹. They are due to the sages, gods and manes.
Bharatāśrama. So also one should offer food at Hamsatīrtha, Koṭitiśtha and Pāṇḍuśilā. There, at the Agnidhārā, and at Madhusravas, pīṇḍa should be offered. One should offer pīṇḍa at the forest of Dhenukā and worship the cow at Dhenupada. One who offers pīṇḍa in the Sarasvatī (river) redeems all the forefathers.

33. After having worshipped the evening twilight, one should pay obeisance to (goddess) Sarasvatī. The brahmīns proficient in the Vedas and Vedāṅgas should do the three twilight worships.

34. After having done circumambulation of Gayā and having worshipped the brahmīns at Gayā, offer of food or anything else becomes undecaying.

35-42. The lord Ādīgadādhara should be glorified and prayed to as follows: “I pray to the conferer of yoga, (lord) Gadādhara, the resident of Gayā, who redeems the fore-fathers for the sake of dharma (righteousness), artha (prosperity) kāma (pleasure) and mokṣa (redemption). I salute that true brahman, who is devoid of a body, organs, mind, intellect, life-force and ego who is always pure, and who is endowed with intellect. I always salute the lord who is bliss, without a second form, who is worshipped by the celestials and demons, and who is surrounded by gods and goddesses. I pay obeisance to the destroyer of the sinful propensities of the Kāli period, the person wearing the garland of wild flowers, the protector of all the worlds, the one bent on the redemption of the family, the one divided himself into the manifest and unmanifest. I worship that destroyer of frightful sins and one who remains as the permanent essence. O lord! Gadādhara! I have come to Gayā in order to do the ancestral rite. You be the witness for me here today. Let me be free from three kinds of debts. May the gods Brahmā, Isāna and others be the witness for me. I have come to Gayā and have redeemed my forefathers. Whoever reads (about) the greatness of Gayā at the time of (doing) the ancestral rite, attains the region of Brahmā. The ancestral rite done to the forefathers becomes undecaying and it confers the region of Brahmā.”
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SEVENTEEN

Mode of performing the ancestral rites

_Fire-god said:_

1-5. I shall describe (the mode of performing) _śrāddha_ (ancestral rite) as described by sage Kātyāyana to the sages. One should do _śrāddha_ at Gayā especially on the _sāṅkrānti_; etc. or on the day of the new moon or on days after the fourth day. After having reached there, one should invite (any one of the following for the _śrāddha_): the mendicants, pious householders one who has completed his studies, learned brahmins, those who are faultless, those who strictly observe the propriety of conduct. Persons afflicted by white leprosy or leprosy should not be invited. So also people who are present uninvited should not be entertained. They should have bathed, be pure and have self-control. They should face the east while doing divine acts. The three fore-fathers (father, grand-father and great grand-father) should separately be invoked. So also the fore-fathers on the maternal side (to whom one is entitled to offer) should be invoked.

6. The performer of the _śrāddha_ should observe continence that day. (He should be) gentle, calm, not hasty, true and not intoxicated. (He should) not stir out. (He should) not read the scriptures and practice silence.

7. Kind enquiries should be made of the chief among those seated. Even number of _darbha_ should be spread for the fore-fathers. The (appropriate) deity should be invoked.

8. One should ask, "Shall I invoke Viśvedevas?" (He should be replied), "you invoke". After having invoked Viśvedevas, and having spread barley, one should repeat the following:

9. _O Viśvedevas! You hear this. I invoke the fore-fathers._ Having asked thus and being permitted to invoke, one should invoke them (saying) "You be pleased."

10-12. After having spread the sesamum, one should invoke the fore-fathers with the repetition of (the mantra), "Fore-fathers" One should sprinkle on the _kūṭa_ with the mantra <i>sām no devi.</i>

1. The day on which the sun enters a new sign of the zodiac.
After having scattered the grains of barley with the (repetition of the mantra) “You are the barley grains”, the sesameum (is scattered) (with the repetition of the mantra) “You are the sesameum. You are permeated with the essence of Soma. Graciously gratify the souls of forefathers. Salutations.” Flowers should be offered with (the mantra “śrīśca te” in a golden or silver vessel or a wooden (vessel) or sword or vessel made of a leaf. The circumambulation is done clockwise in the case of celestials and anticlockwise in the case of fore-fathers, wearing the pavitra (made of darbha) on the hand, one for each one (of the fore-fathers).

13. (Then he should recite the following mantra): “May the celestial waters together with the waters of the earth and sky and the golden sacrificial waters confer blessing on you.” (Then the waters of respectful offering should be offered to the Viśvedevas with the mantra): “O Viśvedevas! Here are the offerings for each one of you”. (Similarly, offerings should be made to the forefathers saying) “Here is the offering for you, O Forefathers!

14. Similarly, offerings should be made (to the grand-fathers) with (the mantra) “Obeisance to the grand-fathers.” The sacrificial vessel is lowered with (the repetition of the mantra) “You are the seats of my forefathers.”

15. Then perfumes, flowers, incense sticks, lamps, shawls and food with clarified butter should be raised up (by the performer of ancestral rite). (The brahmins should then be asked) “Shall I offer them in the sacrifice?”

16. Being permitted (by the brahmins) to do so, those things should be offered to the fire in the case of those who maintain fire and on the hands of forefathers in the case of those who do not maintain fire with the repetition of the following mantra and (wearing) the pavitra (made of darbha worn on the finger).

17. The first oblation is (made with the mantra): “Obeisance to the Fire-god, the conveyor of offerings.” The subsequent (mantras) are to Soma, to forefathers, to the god of death and Aṅgirases.

18. The remnants of oblations should be collected in the food vessel. “O Nectar! this earth is your receptacle, the sky is the covering. The brahmin is your mouth. I am casting in that mouth permeated with the nectar.” After having repeated (the
mantra) "This Viṣṇu", the thumb of the brahmin is placed in the food.

19. The sesame should be scattered with (the mantra) "Removed", and the food should be given. After saying, "Be pleased", the gāyatri and other mantras should be repeated.

20. "Obeisance to the gods, the forefathers, great yogins, Svadāh and Svāhā always."

21. After having known that they are satisfied, the food must be scattered and water should be given to each one of them. After repeating the gāyatri (mantra) as before, (the mantra) "honey, honey" should be repeated.

22-23. They should be asked, "Are you all satisfied?". They should say, "We are satisfied." Being permitted by them the residual food should be gathered together and water should be sprinkled by the side of the place where food was eaten. Three pīñḍas should be placed on kuṣṭa, after they have done the ācamana (rinsing of the mouth).

24. After the rinsing of the mouth, water, flowers and unbroken rice should be offered. The water given may be undiminishng. Then (the forefathers) should be requested (as follows):

25-31. "May the forefathers be gracious: May our progeny prosper always. May the donors enjoy prosperity. So also (may) the Vedas and progeny (prosper). May our earnestness never fail., May we have plenty to give. May our food get profuse. May we get (enough) guests. May there be (plenty) seeking alms. May we not seek alms from anybody. The stems of kuṣṭa over which the (term) svadāh (obeisance) has been repeated are then gathered along with the pavitraś and (permission) should be asked to say obeisance (to forefathers). After having been permitted, (the following mantra) should be recited: "Obeisance to the fathers (includes the brothers and cousin of the father) grandfathers and great-grand fathers. Obeisance." As one is repeating this, water should be sprinkled from the raised pot and fees should be paid according to one's means. In the ceremonies related to the gods and forefathers one should say: "May the Viśve devas be pleased". They should be bid adieu (with the mantra) "Vāje vāje". Then one should accompany the brahmans (with the repetition) of (the mantra) "āmāvājasya," do circumambulation of them and enter the house. One should do this on the new moon day every month.
32. I shall describe (the mode of doing) ekoddiṣṭa (rite done for an individual only). The śrāddha rite is done as before. One pavitra, argha and one piṇḍa are offered.

33-34. In this rite, there is no invocation and the offering is not made in the fire. The Viśvedevas are not (invited) here. At the (time of) query about satisfaction (one should ask) “May it be relished”. The brahmin should say, “well relished”. They should be asked to be seated and be pleased with the offering. They (should say), “We are pleased”. The remaining (part of the ceremony) should be done as before.

35-37. I shall describe (the mode of performing) the sapindikaraṇa (a rite in honour of the dead person done on the 12th day after death or at the end of one year). (It is done) at the end of a year or in the middle. Three vessels should be kept for the forefathers and one vessel for the dead person. The four (vessels) should be provided with the sesamum and flowers along with the pavitra. Having filled them with scented water, sprinkle the vessel of the dead person with the mantra “ye samānā”. The offering of the piṇḍa should be (done) as before. By this rite (the soul of) the dead person attains the position of fathers.

38-49. I shall describe (the mode of doing) the śrāddha rite which confers prosperity. Everything is done as before. One should repeat (the mantras) except the mantra of the father and (do) circumambulation in the forenoon. The materials (required are) good kuṣṭa, and barley grains instead of sesamum in this rite. The query about satisfaction is “Is it well done”. The brahmin should say, “well done”. The piṇḍas should be composed of curd, broken rice and the jujube. One should ask, “Shall I invoke the ancestors who are fit to receive nāndī (rite)”. They should be requested to be satisfied with the offerings. The manes (who are) the nāndimukhas, I shall describe. One should ask the clan of manes, the nāndimukhas to be pleased. The nāndimukhas are—father, grand-father, great-grandfather, maternal grandfather, maternal great grand-father and maternal great great grand-father. (In this ceremony) the term svadha should not be added. Even number of brahmins should be fed. I shall describe the country herbs which would satisfy the manes. They would get satisfied with the roots and fruits of the forest for a month, with the fish for two months, with the ominous bird for three months, with the deer for four (months), with the goat
for five or six, with the tortoise for seven or eight, with the boar for nine (months), with the meat of the ram, (meat) of the buffalo and the spotted antelope for ten months, with the milk of a cow and pāyasā (sweat gruel) for one year. They would be satisfied for twelve years with the meat of a sacrificial goat. The meat of a rhinoceros, the kālaśāka (a kind of vegetable), (meat) of a red goat, honey and sea crabs offered in the rainy season and śrāddha (done) in the (asterism) of maghā (tenth in the cycle) (yields) undiminishing benefits. The brahmins who study the Vedas, who do agnihotra, who study their own branch of Vedas, those who are learned in the six ancillary texts (of the Vedas), one who worships the Nāciketa fire thrice a day, the three madhu (rks of theṚgveda), those who read the dharma drona, one who knows the trisupaṇṇa (stūka) and the jyeṣṭhasūman are those spoken as the paṅktipāvanas (the purifiers of an assembly).

50-53. I shall describe the mode of performing fruit-bearing (rites). (The śrāddha done) on the first lunar day confers plenty of wealth, on the second day (gets) beautiful wives, on the fourth day the fulfilment of heartfelt desires, on the fifth day (confers) progeny, on the sixth day (makes the doer) thrive well, on the seventh day (increases) agricultural prospects, on the eighth day (confers) material prosperity, on the ninth day mules, on the tenth day plenty of cows, on the eleventh day off-springs, on the twelfth day wealth and grains, on the thirteenth day (ensures) excellent position among one’s kinsmen. The śrāddha of those dead by means of weapons (should be done) on the fourteenth. It is said that one gets all (desires fulfilled by doing śrāddha ) on the new moon day.

54-58. "The seven hunters (who resided) in Daśārṇa, the deer (which dwelt) upon the mountain Kālaṇjara, the cakravāka (a species of water birds) in the Śaradvipa, the hamsas (ganders) in the Mānasa lake were born at Kurukṣetra as brahmins well-versed in the Vedas. They had gone a long way. May you excel them." When this verse is read at the (time of) śrāddha etc., the śrāddha gets completed and it yields the region of Brahmā. A son may perform śrāddha of his grandfather even as his father is alive, or of the grandfather when the great grandfather is living, or of the great grandfather when the great great grandfather is living. So also (śrāddha is done) for the mother, maternal grandfather etc. Whoever reads the śrāddhakalpa (that
relating to performance of śrāddha) gets the fruits of performing a śrāddha.

59-63. A śrāddha performed at a sacred place, or on the days of the commencement of the yuga or Manu period gets undimini-
shing fruits. Similarly, (śrāddha done) on the ninth day of bright
fortnight in (the month of) Āśvayuk (October-November),
on the twelfth day in Kārttiika (November-December), on third
day in Māgha and Bhādrapada (February-March and Septem-
ber-October), on the new moon day in Phālguna (March-
April), on the eleventh day in Pauṣa (January-February), on the
tenth day in Āśāḍha (July-August), on the seventh day in the
month of Māgha (February-March), on the eighth day of dark
fortnight in Śrāvaṇa (August-September), on the full moon day
in Āśāḍha (July-August) and on the full moon days in Kārttiika,
Phālguna and Jyeṣṭha (June-July) (confer manifold benefits).
The days of commencement of the Svāyambhuva Manu periods
are also of undiminishing benefits. Gayā, Prayāga, (river)
Gaṅgā, Kurukṣetra, (river) Narmadā, Śrīparvata, Prabhāsa,
Śālagrāma, Vārānasi and river Godāvarī (are sacred places).
Śrāddha (done) at those places and also at the Puruṣottama
(kṣetra) (Puri) (yields manifold fruits).

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTEEN

The country of Bhārata

Fire-god said :

1. That country which (lies) to the north of ocean and south
of Himādri (Himālaya) is known as the Bhāratavarṣa ex-
tending to nine thousand (yojanas).

2-4. This is a land of religious rites. It gives accomplish-
ment of action in getting redemption. Mahendra, Malaya,
Sahya, Śuktimat, Hemaparvata, Vindhya and Pāriyātra are the
seven principal mountains here. Indradvīpa, Kaseru, Tāmra-
varṇa, Gabhastimān, Nāgadvīpa, Saumya, Gāndharvā, Varuṇa
and Bhārata are the nine territories here surrounded by the ocean.
5-8. The continent extends to one thousand yojanas from north to south. There are nine divisions of the Bhārata lying around the central part. The kirātas (hunting tribes) (are) in the east. The javanas (the foreigners) (are in the west). The brahmins and others devoted to the Vedas and smṛtis (code books) (are) in the central part. The rivers rise from the Pāriyātra (mountains). Narmadā and other (rivers) flow from the Vindhya. (The rivers) Tāpī, Payoṣnikā, Godāvarī, Bhīmarathī and Kṛṣṇaṇevaṇī and others flow from the Sahya (mountains). (The rivers) Kṛtamālā and others flow from the Malaya (mountains). (The rivers) Trisāmā and others originate from the Mahendra (mountain). (The rivers) Kumāra and others rise from Śukti- mat (mountain). (The river) Candrabhāgā rises from the Himālaya (mountains). The countries Kuru and Pāncāla and the Madhyadeśa are situated in the western part.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND NINETEEN

Description of different continents

Fire-god said:

1. The Jambūdvipa extends to a lakh of yojanas. It is surrounded by the Kṣīroda (ocean) measuring one lakh yojanas.

2. The Plakṣadvipa is surrounded by the Kṣāra ocean. The seven sons of Medhātithi are the rulers of Plakṣadvipa.

3. They are Śāntabhaya, Śiśira, Śukhodaya, Ānanda, Śīva, Kṣema and Dhruva after whom the countries are named.

4. Gomedha, Candra, Nārada, Dundubhi, Somaka, Su-manā and Vaibhṛaja are the boundary mountains. The inhabitants are good.

5. There are seven principal rivers here. The inhabitants from Plakṣa to Śāka live for five thousand years and they adhere to righteous way of life adhering to the institutions of caste and stages of life.

6-7. Āryakas, Kurus, Vivimśas and Bhāvins are respectively the brahmins and others (kṣatriyas, vaisyas and śūdras) here. They worship (lord) Soma (moon). Its extent is two lakhs yojanas
and it is surrounded by the ocean of ikṣurasa of equal measure. The Śālmala (dvIPA) is twice that. The seven sons of Vapiṣṭa were the rulers of Śālmala.

8-12. Śveta, Harita, Jīmūta, Lohita, Vaidyuta, Māṇasa and Suprabha are their names and the countries were known by their names. This twice bigger continent is surrounded by the Suroda (ocean) of equal measure. The seven (boundary mountains) are Kumuda, Anala, Balāhaka, Droṇa, Kaṅka, Mahiṣa and Kakudmat. The brahmins and other (three castes) are Kapila, Aruṇa, Pīta and Kṛṣṇa (respectively). They worship (the lord) in the form of Vāyu (wind god). This is surrounded by Suroda, Udbhida, Dhenumat, Dvairatha, Lambana, Dhairyā, Kapila and Prabhākara, (the sons) of Jyotiṣmat were the rulers of Kuṣa(dvIPA). Dadhimukhya and others are the brahmins and others. They worship (the lord) in the form of Brahmā.

13. Vidruma, Hemaśaila, Dyutimat, Puṣpavat, Kuśeśaya, Hariśaila and Mandara are the boundary mountains.

14-16. This is surrounded by the Ghṛtoda ocean as well as the KrauṇcadvIPA. The sons of Dyutimat were the rulers of Krauṇca and the countries (ruled by them) were named after them. They are seven—Kuṣala, Manonuga, Uṣṇa, Pradhāna, Andhakāraka, Muni and Dundubhi. (The names of) the seven mountains here are Krauṇca, Vāmana, Andhakāraka, Devāvṛt, Puṇḍarīka and Dundubhi. Each one of them is twice as big as the other.

17-19. The mountains in the respective continents are also twice as the corresponding one in the others. The brahmins and others (three castes) are Puṣkara, Puṣkala, Dhanya and Tiṣya and (they) worship Hari. The KrauṇcadvIPA is surrounded by Dadhimanḍodaka (ocean) and the ŚākadvIPA. The sons of Havya and the rulers of Śākadvipa were Jalada, Kumāra, Sukumāra, Maṇivaka, Kuśottara, Modākī and Druma. The countries were known by their names.

20-21. Udaya, Jaladhara, Raivata, Śyāma, Kodraka, Āmbikeya and the beautiful Keśarī are the seven (boundary) mountains. The brahmins and others are Maga, Magadhā, Māṇasa and Mandaga. They worship (the lord) in the form of the Sun. The Śaka dvIPA is surrounded by the Kṣṭrābdhi.

1. These are Damināḥ, Śuṣmipāḥ, Snehāḥ and Mandehāḥ.
22-24. It is also surrounded by Puṣkara (dvīpa). (The ruler of Puṣkara), Savana had two sons—Mahāvīta and Dhātaki. They ruled over two countries known by their name. There is one boundary mountain called Mānasa at the centre in the shape of a bracelet. It extends to one thousand yojanas and is of equal height. (The people here) live for ten thousand years. (Lord) Brahmā is worshipped here by celestials. This continent is surrounded by the Svādūdaka ocean of equal measure.

25-26. The waters of the ocean neither decrease nor increase. O Sage! At the moon-rise or moon-set and at the white and dark fortnights, an increase or decrease of waters by five hundred and ten āṅgulas (equal to one finger-breath) is seen in the oceans.

27-28. The Svādūdaka is of many good qualities. The land is golden and is devoid of living beings. The peak (called) Lokāloka extends to a lakh of yojanas. It is engulfed in darkness in the form of the pan of the egg-shaped (universe). This land found with this pan of the egg-shaped (universe) extends to fifty crores.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY

The extent of the universe

The Fire-god said:

1. The extent of the earth is believed to be seventy-thousand (yojanas). Its height is ten thousand. The nether worlds (extend) to one thousand each.

2-3. The seven nether worlds are Atala, Vitala, Nitala, Gabhastimat, Mahātala, Sutala and Pātāla. The demons dwell in those pleasant lands which are respectively coloured black, yellow, red, white, stony and golden.

4. Lord Viṣṇu in the tāmasa (darkness) form as Śeṣa (the serpent) lies under the nether worlds. He, the Ananta (infinite) on account of his infinite (good) qualities, (lies there) supporting the earth with his head.

5. There are many hells under the earth. A vaiṣṇava (devo-
tee of lord Viṣṇu) should not fall therein. The extent up to which
the earth is illuminated by the sun is known as the sky.

6. O Vasiṣṭha! The region of the sun is at (a distance of)
one lakh (yojanas) from the earth, the region of the Moon at one
lakh (yojanas) from the Sun, and the region of the stars at one
lakh (yojanas) from the moon.

7-8. (Planet) Mercury is at two lakhs (yojanas) from the
region of the stars. (Planet) Venus (is) at two lakhs from Mer-
cury. (Planet) Mars (is) at two lakhs from Venus. (Planet)
Jupiter (is) at two lakhs from Mars. (Planet) Saturn (is) at
two lakhs from Jupiter. (The region of) the seven sages (ursa
Major) (is) at one lakh from Saturn, the polestar (is) at one
lakh from the sages (Ursa Major) and is at the apex of the three
worlds.

9. The Maharloka (lies) at a crore (yojanas) from the pole-
star, where those who have seen a full cycle of time reside. The
Jana (loka), wherein dwell (the sages) Sanaka and others,
(lies) at two crores (of yojanas) from that.

10-11. The Tapo (loka) (is) at eight crores from Jana (loka)
where Vairājas (a class of celestial beings) are the presiding
devities. The Satyaloka is at ninetysix crores from the Tapo
(loka). It is known as the Brahmaloka where dwell celestials
who do not die. The region fit for one to move on foot is the
Bhūloka (the earth). The region of Bhuvarloka is said to be
between (the earth and) the Sun.

12. The Svargaloka lies between the Sun and the pole-star
in the fourteen lakhs (yojanas of space). These regions cover as an
exterior shell of the universe.

13. They are again covered by ten-fold layers of elements
water, fire, wind and ether.

14. O Great sage! Each one of the ten latter regions lie
enfolded in one another and thus form an exterior cover of the
primary thing.

15. O sage! One does not have any knowledge about the
limit of that infinite. That nature has been the source of every-
thing else.

16. This kind of innumerable eggs had come into being
there. The pumān (brahman) exists in a potent state in the univer-
sal nature just as the fire in the wood and oil in the sesamum.
17-19. This puṇān lies embedded in the nature as a conscious onlooker and knower. O Wiseman! The nature and the brahman are held together by the force of Viṣṇu, the form of the essential virtues of all beings. That is the cause for their separate existence as well as union. O Great sage! That is the cause for the agitation at the time of creation (of beings). It is similar to the wind sustaining hundreds of water particles after its contact with water.

20. The celestial beings and others are born through the concerted action of the nature and the effect of the force of Viṣṇu acted upon by the force of the former.

21-29. Viṣṇu is identical with brahman itself from whom this entire universe (has come into being). The chariots of the Sun are nine (occupying) thousand yojanas. O Excellent sages! The axis is double that (measure). The axle of its wheel is one and half crores and seven lakhs (yojanas). The wheel is fixed there. It has three naves, five spokes, six circumferences, two movements consisting in the cycle of period. O Great intellectual! The second axis of the Sun’s chariot is twentytwo thousand seven hundred and fifty (yojanas). The measurement of the two axles is equal to its yoke. The shorter axis and its yoke rest on the polestar. O Best disciplined! The seven metres gāyatri and others are its horses. Sun’s rise and setting are his being perceived and not being perceived. O Vasiṣṭha! The regions from the earth to those where the polestar remains get lost at the time of deluge. The region where the polestar is stationed to the north of Ursa major is the excellent shining third place of (lord) Viṣṇu in heaven. This is the excellent place of ascetics who have become free from impurities.

30. The river Gaṅgā which purifies one by mere remembrance flows from there. It is to be known that the porpoise shape of the planets in the sky is that of lord Viṣṇu.

31-32. The polestar is situated at its tail. It revolves (on its non axis) and causes the planets to go round. That chariot

1. Forenoon, midday and afternoon.
2. Parivatsara etc.
3. The seasons.
4. Northern and southern.
5. gāyatri, brāhmaṇ, uṣṇik, jagati, tristupa, anuṣṭupa and pankti.
of the Sun is ridden by different celestials, Adityas (sons of Aditi), sages, gandharvas (semi-divine beings), apsaras (semi-divine beings), grāmaṇi (semi-divine beings), serpents and demons. Lord sun is the cause of snow, heat and rain.

33-36. He is the manifestation of lord Viṣṇu of the form of Rgveda and other (vedas) and is the cause of good and evil. The chariot of moon has three wheels drawn by ten horses yoked to its left and right and of the colour of jasmine. Thirtysix thousand three hundred and thirty-three celestials drink (the phases of) the moon. The manes (drink) one phase. One (phase) (is lost) being associated with the rays of the new moon. The chariot of the son of the Moon Mercury is composed of the fiery and windy material. Mercury moves on drawn by its eight horses.

37-41. The chariot of Venus (has got) eight horses, as also the chariots of Mars, Jupiter and Saturn (drawn) by horses. The chariot of Rāhu (ascending node of the Moon) (has) eight horses. The chariot of Ketu (descending node of the Moon) (has) eight horses. O Brahmin! From this body of (lord) Viṣṇu this lotus-shaped earth with the mountains etc. has originated. (Lord) Hari (Viṣṇu) is the galaxy, worlds, rivers, mountains, oceans and forest. Whatever exists or ceases to exist is (lord) Viṣṇu, known through true knowledge about (lord), Viṣṇu. There is nothing beyond the purview of knowledge. Knowledge is the supreme place, the (lord) Viṣṇu. One has to do that act by which that true and infinite knowledge, namely, (lord) Viṣṇu, may be attained. Whoever reads (the section on) cosmogony would attain happiness.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTYONE

The science of Jyotiṣa (Astronomy and Astrology)

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the science of astrology which gives discrimination of good and bad events. It is the quintessence of four lakhs (of treatises). By knowing this (science) one becomes omniscient.
2. The marriage of girls should not be done when there is śaḍaśṭaka\(^1\) or dvidoḍaśa\(^2\) as well as in trikoṇa\(^3\). In other cases as well as in samasaptaka, there will be happiness.

3. If there is friendship between the lords of the second and twelfth (houses) or the trines or there is single lordship, then there will be prosperity in the married life even if there be hostility.

4. Even in such a condition the union may be made, but not in sixth-eighth (śaḍaśṭaka) condition. (If the marriage is done) when Jupiter or Venus has set, the bridegroom and bride would die.

5. A marriage is not commendable when the Sun is in the house of Jupiter or Jupiter is in the house of the Sun.

6. The marriage should be postponed by three fortnights or by four months respectively when there is transit (of a planet from one house to another) or retrograde motion (of a planet). A vow or marriage should not be done when there is retrograde motion or transit of Jupiter.

7. (Marriages done) in (the months of) Caitra (April-May), Pauṣa (January-February) on the rikṭa days (fourth, ninth and the fourteenth day of a fortnight) or when (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu) is asleep, or on Tuesdays and Sundays or on the new moon day would bring forth unfavourable result. But the twilight (time) is auspicious.

8. A marriage is said to be commendable in the asterisms rohiṇī, uttarā, mūla, svāti, hasta and revatt (when the Sun is) in Libra or Gemini.

9. One should avoid a viddharkṣa\(^4\) in celebrating a marriage, piercing the ears, vow, rite to determine the sex of a child before its birth, the first feeding of the child, and the tonsure.

10. The rite to determine the sex of the child before its birth should be done in (the asterism) śravaṇa, mūla and pūṣya, on Sundays, Tuesdays and Jupiter and in (the signs of) Aquarius, Leo and Pisces.

---

1. The sixth and eighth; counting from the ascendant in the horoscope of the proposed life partners the ascendant in the other person's horoscope gives sixth or eighth.

2. The second and twelfth; counting as before which gets the second or twelfth.

3. The trine, Leo, Taurus, Virgo, Sagittarius, Libra and Aquarius are the trines for the planets sun etc.

4. Certain asterisms said to be opposed to certain other asterisms.
11. The discharge of a debt (should be done) in (the asterisms) hasta, mūla, mrga (śirṣa) and revati and on Wednesday and Friday. The (rite of) chewing of betal leaf should be done on Sunday, Monday, Thursday and Friday and in (the asterism) mūla.

12. The first feeding (of a child) (should be done) on a Friday or Thursday or in (the asterism) mrga (śirṣa) in (the sign of) Pisces, in the five asterisms (beginning with hasta (citrā and svāti) and in the three asterisms beginning with kṛttikā (rohini and mrgaśirṣa).

13. New fruits and food should be eaten in (the asterisms of) āśvini or revati, puṣya, hasta, jyeṣṭha, rohini, śravana and āśvini.

14. Medicine should be administered in (the asterisms of) svāti, saumya (name of the five stars in orion’s head), the three pūrvas (Pūrvaphālguni, pūrvabhādrapada and pūrvāśaṅga, maghā, yāmya (bharaṇi) and the three (beginning with) śravana which are auspicious.

15-20. One should bathe first after becoming free from illness on Tuesday or Sunday or Saturn. One should write eight times the syllable ‘hrīm’ and the name (of the enemy) in the middle and the (names of the eight) vasus as well as the (syllable) hrīm in the (eight) angular points on a Tuesday and wear it in his cloth on the neck with the gorocanā (pigment got from the cow) and saffron. It is certain that one’s enemies get subjugated by this mantra. Śrīm hrīm is the protective (mantra) when the (mantras) śrīm and hrīm are written on the bhūrja leaf as stated above in the eight (points) together with gorocanā and saffron and covered by turmeric. (Similar writing) on a stone slab kept buried under the soil with its face downwards nullifies them. Om hūm saḥ is the mantra. This mantra written on a bhūrja leaf along with gorocanā and saffron wards off death. The first, fifth and ninth houses confer satisfaction and second, sixth and twelfth confer general welfare.

21-23. The third, seventh and eleventh cause acquisition; fourth, eighth and twelfth cause enmity. (The twelve houses Meṣa etc. denote) respectively the body, wealth, brothers, friendship, progeny, enmity, wife, death, righteousness, activity, income and expenditure. One should speak about the nine
tārābala¹ (as follows): the janma (birth), sampat (prosperity), vipat (misfortune), kṣema (welfare), pratyari (enmity), sādhaka (seeker or accomplisher), nidhana (death), mitra (friend) and paramamitra (close friend).

24. The first shave (of a child) is commended on Sunday, Monday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday in the six months commencing with Māgha (February-March).

25-26. The karnavedha (piercing of the ear) (should be done) on Wednesday and Thursday in the (asterisms of) puṣya, śravaṇa and citrā. The commencement of study in the fifth year (should be done) after worshipping (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu) and (goddesses) Vānī (goddess of speech) and Śrī (Lakṣmī, goddess of wealth), avoiding the sixth, first and the fifteenth, the riktā days (fourth, ninth and fourteenth days) and Tuesday. The tying up of the girdle is auspicious (if done) in the six months commencing with Māgha.

27-31. The tonsure and other (rites) are not commended in (the asterisms) śravaṇa etc. The investiture of a brahmin (boy) performed when the Jupiter or Venus has set and the Moon is waning brings forth death or stupidity. The rite marking conclusion of the study should be done on an auspicious day, in the asterism suitable for shaving, at an auspicious place on the rising constellations in a good house. The imparting of the science of archery in the asterisms aśvini, maghā, citrā, svātī, yāmya (bharaṇi), uttarā, punarvasu and puṣya is commendable. One who desires to live should not wear new clothes in the asterisms bharaṇi, ārdrā, maghā, āśleṣā, kṛttikā and uttaraphālguni. (Wearing of new) clothes on Wednesday, Thursday and Friday is not objectionable at (the time of) marriage (and other festive occasions).

32. Wearing of gems like conch-shell and coral is commendable in (the asterisms of) revati, aśvini, dhaniṣṭhā, and the five commencing with hasta.

33. Anything bought in (the asterisms of) bharaṇi, sarpa (a particular constellation), dhaniṣṭhā, the three pūrva (pūrva-

¹ Counting from the birth asterism to the asterism of that day that number should be divided by nine, the remainder indicates the tārābala as shown above.
phālguni, pūrvabhādrapada and pūrvāṣāḍha) and vāruṇa (śatabhiṣak) causes adversity. Also its sale causes adversity.

34. Anything bought in (the asterisms of) aśvini, svātt, citrā, revati and śatabhiṣak and on Sunday causes profit. If anything is sold (on the days ruled by these asterisms) causes adversity.

35. An employer should not be attended upon in (the asterisms of) bharaṇi, the three pūrvaś (see verse 33 above), ādrā, āśleṣā, maghā, svātt, kṛttikā, jyeṣṭhā and viśākhā.

36. Money is deposited or articles are given or taken back in (the asterisms of) uttara, śravaṇa and sākra (jyeṣṭha). The coronation of a king should be done (in these asterisms).

37. Entering a house (for the first time) is auspicious in the months other than Caitra (April-May), Jyeṣṭha (June-July), Bhādra (pada) (September-October), Āśvina (October-November), Pauṣa (January-February) and Māgha (February-March).

38. The commencement (of the construction) of a house in (the asterisms of) aśvini, rohini, mūla, the three uttaraś (uttarā-śārguna, uttarābhādrapada, and uttarā-ṣāḍha), mṛgāśīrṣa, svātt, hasta and anurādhā is commendable.

39-40. Sundays and Tuesdays should be avoided for (the excavation of) a tank or (the construction of) a palace. So also the building of a house should be avoided when Jupiter is in Leo or in (the conjunction of) Jupiter and Sun or in an intercalary month or when Venus is in the transit ascension or descension or has set. (It would cause) burning by fire, fear, disease, affliction from the sovereign or loss of wealth.

41. Hay should be gathered in the five (asterisms of śravaṇa etc.). One should enter the (new) house in the asterisms of dhanīṣṭhā, uttara and vāruṇa (śatabhiṣak).

42. The second, third, fifth, seventh and thirteenth days (of a fortnight are commendable) for the construction of a boat. A sovereign should be seen in (the asterisms of) hasta, revati and aśvini.

43. Pilgrimage undertaken in (the asterisms of) the three uttara (uttarāṣāḍha, uttarā-śārguna, and uttarābhādrapada), dhanīṣṭhā, ādrā, kṛttikā, saumya (mṛgāśīrṣa), viśākhā, āśleṣā and aśvini accomplishes prosperity.

44-47. One should not graze the cows in the three (asterisms of) uttara, rohini or on sīndvālī caturdaśī (day prior to new
moon) or in (the asterisms of) śravaṇa, hāsta, cītrā and vaiśṇavī (śravaṇa). One should not enter (the cow-pen) in (the asterisms of) anila (svāti), uttarā, rohini, mṛga (śrīṣa), punarvasa, śravaṇa and hāsta. One should do agriculture in (the asterisms of) punarvasu, uttarā, svāti, Bhaga (pūrvapahālguni), mūla, Indra (pūrvāśādha) and vāruṇa (śatābhīṣak) or on Thursday or Friday or Monday or Sunday or in (the zodiacal signs of) Taurus, Virgo and Gemini.

48-51. One who desires fortune should sow seeds except that of the mandāra (coral) on the second, third, fifth, seventh, tenth and thirteenth (days of the fortnight) and in (the asterisms of) revati, rohini, Indra (pūrvāśādha), Agni (kṛttikā), hāsta, maitra (anurādhā) and uttarā. Harvest of grains should be done in (the asterisms of) revati, hāsta, mūla, śravaṇa. Bhaga (pūrva-phālguni), maitra (anurādhā), pūrṇadaīva (māghā) and saumya (mṛgaśīrṣa). One should take them into the house at the time of the rise of (the asterism) mṛgaśīrṣa or in (the asterisms of) hāsta, cītrā, Aditi (punarvasu), svāti, revati or in the three stars (commencing with) śravaṇa or in a fixed sign or on Thursdays, Fridays and Wednesdays or in (the asterisms of) yāmya (bharaṇi) Aditi (punarvasu), māghā, jyeṣṭhā and uttara.

52. (The following mantras) written on a leaf and placed amidst the heap of grains in (the asterisms of) the three pūrvas (pūrvāśādha, pūrvapahālguni and pūrvabhādrapada), viśākhā, dhanisthā and vāruṇa (śatābhīṣak) increases the grains “Om, (salutation) to the bestower of wealth and the lord of all wealth. Give me wealth. Oblations. O goddess Ilā (Lakṣmī)! One who makes the world thrive! The desire incarnate! Grant me wealth in the new year! Oblations.

53. Wisemen know that grains should be taken out in the (above) six asterisms. Tanks, gardens and (images of) gods should be consecrated when the Sun is in the Cancer. (Lord) Cakrapāṇi (the wielder of the disc) (Viṣṇu) should always be laid down when the Sun is in the (sign of) Gemini and it is the twelfth day after the new moon.

54. When the Sun is in the (sign of) Leo and in Libra and the two twelfth days after the new-moon, the first is the day of getting up of (lord) Indra and (the second one) is the waking up of (lord) Hari.
55-57. Similarly, (the goddess) Durgā is made to get up when the Sun enters (the sign of) Virgo. When a bhadrāitiṣṭhi (the second, seventh and twelfth days of a lunar fortnight) occurs on a Tuesday, Sunday or Saturday and is marked by three fourth of a constellation that (combination) is known as tripustkara. All ceremonies should be done when the moon and star are pure.

58. One has to forecast prosperity for those in whose (chart), the Moon is situated in the sixth, seventh, tenth or eleventh house from the ascendant.

59-60. The second, fifth and ninth in the bright fortnight brings good. The asterisms are (known to be) friendly, extremely friendly, accomplisher of riches and welfare etc. (The one known as friendly) causes death by its ascendancy. That which is calamitous (causes) destruction of wealth. One should know that which is prayari (enemy) (causes) death. One gets death in that which is (known as) destruction.

61. The period from the eighth day of the dark (fortnight) till the eighth day of the bright (fortnight), the moon is known to be waning and is known to be full thereafter.

62. It is known to be mahājyaiṣṭhi if the Sun is in (the signs of) Taurus or Gemini and Jupiter is in (the asterisms of) mṛgastirṣa or jyeṣṭhā and the full moon (occurs) on a Thursday.

63. It is also called mahājyaiṣṭhi when Jupiter and Moon are in (the asterism of) jyeṣṭhā and the Sun is in (the asterism of) rohini on the full moon day in the month of jyeṣṭhā (June-July).

64. The banner of (lord) Indra fastened to the support should be hoisted in (the asterism of) svāti. It should be lowered down after a week in (the asterism of) aśvini and in the sign of Leo.

65. When the Sun is eclipsed by Rāhu (the ascending node) any gift is deemed to be gold, all the brāhmīns are equal to (lord) Brahmā and all the waters are equal to Gaṅgā.

66. O Brahmins! The entry of the Sun in the different signs is known by the names of dhvāṅkṣi, mahodari, ghōrā, mandā, mandakini and rājast.

67. If the Sun passes (from one sign to the other) in the karaṇas (divisions of a day) bālava, kaullava and taitila, then the people would be happy.

68. People would suffer from poverty and harassment by
the sovereign if (the Sun) enters (the astral combinations known as) \textit{gara, vava, vanik, vi\text{oreignlanguage{la}{\textbf{s}}}ti, kintughna and sakuna}.

69. If the Sun makes a transit in lying position in \textit{catus-pada, vi\text{oreignlanguage{la}{\textbf{s}}}ti or v\text{oreignlanguage{la}{\textbf{n}}}ijya (kar\text{\`a}nas\textsuperscript{1} or divisions of the day), it would cause famine or war between sovereigns or quarrel among husbands and wives.

70. If (the Sun) stays in one's birth-star it would cause disease or mental anguish, while (its presence) in the asterisms of \textit{k\text{oreignlanguage{la}{\textbf{rtik\text{\`a} and rohini}}} would cause misery for nine nights and three nights respectively.

71-76. It is said that the transit in (the asterism of) \textit{mrga-sira} (causes misery) for five nights, in \textit{\text{\`a}rd\text{\`a}}} (causes) death, and in \textit{punarausu} or \textit{pu\text{\`a}ya} (causes) (misery) for seven nights. Its entry in (the asterism of) \textit{\text{\`a}les\text{\`a}}} (causes misery) for nine nights, in \textit{magh\text{\`a}}} (causes misery) until one's death, in \textit{p\text{\`a}rvaph\text{\`a}iguni} (causes misery) for two months and in \textit{uttara} (causes misery) for fifteen (days). While the sun is in (the asterism of) \textit{hasta}, the (asterisms) \textit{citra, sv\text{\`a}ti and vi\text{\`a}kh\text{\`a}}} would bring misery for a fortnight, two months and twenty days respectively. Its transit in (the asterisms of) \textit{anur\text{\`a}dh\text{\`a}, jye\text{\`a}th\text{\`a}, m\text{\`u}la and p\text{\`a}rv\text{\`a}dha} (would cause misery) for ten days, a fortnight, no relief (from misery) or fifteen days respectively. (The Sun's transit) in (the asterisms of) \textit{uttara, stavana, dhani\text{\`a} and satabhi\text{\`a}ka} (would cause misery) for twenty days, two months, fifteen days or ten days respectively. There will not be relief (from misery) if it enters (the asterism) \textit{bh\text{\`a}d\text{\`a}rapada}. (The Sun's transit) in (the asterisms of) \textit{uttara, revati and as\text{\`a}ini} would (cause misery) for fifteen days or ten days or a single day respectively.

77. Its transit in (the asterism) \textit{bhara\text{\`a}ni} causes danger to life and it becomes auspicious by doing oblations with the \textit{g\text{\`a}yatrt (mantra)}. Making a gift of a cow with five kinds of grains, sesame, clarified butter to a \text{\`a}raham compensates (the evil influences).

78-79. The periods of influence of the Sun, Moon, Mars, Mercury, Saturn, Jupiter, R\text{\`a}hu and Venus are six, fifteen, eight, seventeen, ten, nineteen, twelve and twentyone years respectively.

\textsuperscript{1} These are different kar\text{\`a}nas or eleven divisions of the day.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTYTWO

Pañcāṅga : The Almanac*

God Agni said:

1a. Time is (reckoned by) the accumulated number of years, (months etc., from the epoch up to the point of time under consideration). I shall set forth the calculation involved in reckoning time.

1b. The accumulated (i.e. elapsed) number of years (up to the required point of time) is to be multiplied by 12 (arka) and the (number of months elapsed in the current year from) Citrā is to be added to the product.¹

2a. The sum obtained is doubled and placed at two places. To one is added 4 (veda) and to the other 865 (pañcāṅgāśta). (The latter figure is to be divided by 60 and the quotient added to the first, while the remainder is kept as the second figure). The resultant is to be called ‘guna’.²

*General : Pañcāṅga or the five aspects of reckoning time for each day, computed and recorded in Hindu almanacs are: (i) Vāra (day of the week), (ii) Tithi (lunar day), (iii) Nakṣatra (the Constellation through which the moon moves), (iv) Yoga (Sum of the longitudes of the Sun and the Moon), and (v) Karana (half-tithi). All these reckonings have religious and ritualistic significances.

The verses in this chapter are all of a highly cryptic nature and, like philosophical aphorisms, imply much more than what is actually expressed, and can be correctly understood only with suitable explanations. While the implied information is given brackets in the translation, an example is worked out in the Notes illustrating the working, step by step.

1. Any epoch or starting point in time might be adopted, like, for instance the Kalpa or the beginning of creation, the Caturyuga, Kaliyuga etc. or any of the eras like the Śaka.

Let the point of time taken for consideration, for which the Pañcāṅga is required be Śaka 10 (elapsed), in the month of Vaiśākha, 1st tithi of the bright fortnight.

Multiplying by 12, the elapsed years, 10 × 12 = 120
Adding the 1 month, Mṛṣa, elapsed, = 1

Total months elapsed from epoch = 121

2. Multiplying the months from epoch by 2 (i.e. 121 × 2 = 242) and placing them in two places:

Adding 4 and 865

246  865

246  1107

Dividing the second figure by 60 and adding to the first

264  27 (Guna)
2b. (The guṇa) is placed at three places (one below the other, in the serpentine fashion, each being written one step to the right of the preceding one). The 'middle' is multiplied by 8 (vasu) and the product again multiplied by 4 (veda). (The columns are to be added up.) and again written as 'upper', 'middle' and 'lower'.

3. Subtract 398 (aṣṭa-randhra-agni) from the lower and 87 (saika-rasāṣṭaka) from the 'middle'. Divide (the 'middle' and the 'lower') by 60 and add the quotients to the preceding, (keeping the remainders in their places).

4a. Vāra-tīthi correction. The first (i.e. 'upper') when divided by 7 will give the week-day constant for tīthi. (The quotient is to be rejected as of no more use.) The resultant is to be used as the Vāra-correction for tīthi-nāḍikās.

4b-5. Nakṣatra-Yoga constants. The 'guṇa' derived above is to be multiplied by 2, and 3 subtracted from the second figure. Guṇa is set down before the result (in the serpentine fashion). 30 (kha-rāma) is set down below the last figure, and 6, 12 and 8 (rasa-arka-aṣṭa), respectively, below the three figures, (and the columns added up and elevated by dividing by 60). Divide the first figure by 28 and place it below the 'correction for tīthi' (obtained in verse 4a). (add and take the result as a second 'upper').

1. Placing the guṇa) in three places
in the serpentine fashion:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>264</th>
<th>27</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>264</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>264</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Multiplying the 'middle' by 8 (i.e. 2112-216) and again by 4 (i.e. 8448-864), and setting it down in the above scheme:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>264</th>
<th>27</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8448</td>
<td>864</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>264</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adding the columns, the new 'upper', 'middle' and 'lower' are:

|       | 264 | 8475 | 1128 | 27 |

2. Subtracting 398 and 87

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>264</th>
<th>8388</th>
<th>730</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Elevating by 60

|       | 264 | 8388 | 730 |

3. Dividing the 'upper' by 7 for week-days and rejecting the quotient, we get the vāra-correction for tīthi as 3-0-10.

4. Multiplying the (guṇa) (264-27) by 2 (i.e. 528-54 and subtracting 3

|       | 528 | 51 |

Setting down the (guṇa) below

|       | 264 | 27 |

Adding 30 to the last figure

|       | 30 |

Adding 6-12-8 to the expression

|       | 6 | 12 | 8 |
6-8a. The 'guna' is halved, 3 subtracted (from its second figure) and the whole expression multiplied by 2. The first figure here is multiplied by 11 (rudra); the second figure is increased by 1 and divided by 39, the quotient being subtracted from the first figure and the remainder kept in its place. The resultant is termed madhya. Subtract 22 from the first figure and divide it by 60; the remainder is deductive; the quotient is added to the (second) 'upper' (of verses 4b-5). The first figure is divided by 27 and the remainder set down in its place. The resultant expression is the constant for the correction of nakṣatra and yoga.\(^1\)

8b-9a. Nakṣatra. For the calculation of tithi, there is a monthly constant, being 2 pinda (i.e. whole units) and 32 nadi-kās (which has to be added to the tithi correction contained in verses 4a). Similarly, for the nakṣatra, there is a monthly constant, being 2 nakṣatras and 11 nādikās, (which, when added to the nakṣatra correction of verse 8a, will give the elapsed nakṣatra and the nādikās gone in the current nakṣatra.)\(^2\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adding the whole</th>
<th>534</th>
<th>327</th>
<th>65</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Elevating by 60</td>
<td>539</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dividing the first figure by 28 and rejecting the quotient</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding the correction for tithi, i.e. the second 'upper'</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Adding | 40 | 28 | 15 |

1. The guna (264-27) is halved (132-14), 3 subtracted from the second figure (132-11) and multiplied by 2 (i.e. 264-22). The first figure is multiplied by 11 (i.e. 2904); to the second figure 1 is added (i.e. 23) and divided by 39 and the remainder (i.e. 23) is retained. This is termed the new 'middle'. Subtracting 22 from the first figure (i.e. 2882-23) and elevating by 60, we get 48-2-23.

| Applying this | 48 | 2 | 23 |
| to the new second 'upper' | 40 | 28 | 15 |

| we have      | 88 | 30 | 38 |

2. Adding the tithi-constant (2-32-00) to the vāra-tithi correction (5-0-10), we have 7-32-10, being the vārādi (week, day etc.) correction for the point of time taken for consideration. For the nakṣatra of that point of time, add the nakṣatra constant (2-11-00) to the nakṣatra correction (got in verses 6-8a), i.e. 7-30-38, and we have the nakṣatra as 9-41-38. In other words, at the point of time taken, nine nakṣatras have passed by, and in the current 10th nakṣatra, maghā, it is 41 nādikās and 38 vinādikās.
9b-10. *Weekday and commencing point of Tithi.* Add the *tithi*-correction above (to the *vārādi-tithi* correction got in verse 4a), placing the *tithi* number below the *vāra* number. Divide by 7 (if *vāra* plus *tithi* exceeds 7); the remainder will give the elapsed week-day counted from Sunday, and the *nādiṅkās* gone in the next day at the point of the commencement of the relevant *tithi*.) In the case of *tithis* after adding the complete units (*piṇḍakas*), the sum should be divided by 14 (if the sum exceeds 14, and the remainder taken as the *tithi*.)

11-14a. *True-Tithi correction.* The correction, in *nādiṅkās*, for the fourteen *tithis* would be, in order, minus, plus, plus, minus, (minus and so on). Where the correction for the 14th *tithi* is zero), the correction for the thirteenth and the first is 5 (*vinādiṅkās*) (each, minus and plus, respectively), that for the 12th and the 2nd, 10 (*vinādiṅkās*), that for the 11th and 3rd, 15 (*vinādiṅkās*), that for the 10th and 4th, 19 (*vinādiṅkās*), that for the 9th and 5th, 22 (*vinādiṅkās*), that for the 8th and the 6th, 24 (*vinādiṅkās*), and that for the 7th, 25 (*vinādiṅkās*). These *khaṇḍakas* (correction-bits) are to be applied appropriately to the *piṇḍakas* (full units).

14b-17a. *Vikāla correction.* In the case of (the three), Karkaṭaka, (Simha and Kanyā), divide the *rāsis*, respectively, by 6 (*ṛtu*), 4 (*veda*) and 3 (*traya*); in the case of Tulā, (Vṛścika and Dhanus), divide, respectively, in the reverse, i.e. by 3, 4 and 6; in the case of Makara, (Kumbha and Mīna), respectively, by 3, 4 and 6; and in the case of Meṣa, (Rṣabha and Mithuna), divide, respectively, in the reverse, i.e. by 6, 4 and 3. The correction, in *vikalās*, which is positive in the case of the three, Meṣa etc., are 50 (*kha-īṣu*), 40 (*kha-yuga*) and 12 (*mitra*); in the case

---

1. Adding the *tithi* constant (2-32-00) to the *vāra-tithi* correction (5-0-10), we get 7-32-10 for the week, day, which means that 7 days have elapsed as counted from Sunday, and at the point of time in consideration, i.e. *Śuklapratipad* in Vaiśākh, it is Sunday at 32 *nādiṅkās* and 10 *vinādiṅkās* (Mean).

2. The *nādiṅkā* corrections enunciated are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tithi</th>
<th>Nādiṅkā corr.</th>
<th>Tithi</th>
<th>Nādiṅkā corr.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>+ 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>-5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>+10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>-10</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>-15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>+19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>-19</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>+22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>-22</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>+24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>-24</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>+25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
of the three, Karkata, etc., it is in the reverse order, (i.e. 12, 40 and 50, but positive); in the case of the three, Tulā etc., (it is 50, 40 and 12), negative; (and, in the case of the three, Makara etc., it is 12, 40 and 50, negative). ¹

17b-19a. Application of the vikalā correction. The vikalā correction is to be applied to the titi multiplied by 4. Multiply their eleven vikalās by the difference in liptās (i.e. kalās) between the elapsed and to-elapse portions of the titi and divide by 60. If the elapsed portion is less than/the portion to-elapse, treat the correction as positive even if it be negative and or positive, retain it as positive; while, in the case of the portion to-elapse being greater, the reverse is the case (i.e. the correction is to be taken as negative both if it is negative or positive).

19b-21a. Further correction to the Tithi. Double (?) Treble (the nāḍikās of) the titi and subtract from it one-sixth of (the product). Apply to it the titi-nāḍikās obtained for the sun in the reverse order, and subtract the result from 60; the true nāḍis of the titi would be obtained. If not subtractible, add 60 and subtract; if more than 60, reduce it by 60 and subtract. ²

21b-22. Yoga. The titi is associated with the constellation The titi multiplied by 4 and a third (of the titi) added to it. Apply to it the negative correction. (By dividing it by 27, the yoga elapsed and the nāḍikās in the current yoga are obtained.) True titi has be to be used as the means for calculating the yoga. ³

23a. The yoga is, indeed, got also by adding (the longitudes

1. The vikalā corrections enunciated are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Karkaṭaka</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>+12&quot;</td>
<td>Makara</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-12&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simha</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>+40&quot;</td>
<td>Kumbha</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-40&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kanyā</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>+50&quot;</td>
<td>Mina</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-50&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tulā</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>+50&quot;</td>
<td>Meṣa</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-50&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vṛśćika</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>+40&quot;</td>
<td>Rṣabhā</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-40&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhanuṣ</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>+12&quot;</td>
<td>Mithuna</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-12&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. For the third titi correction, multiply the titi-nāḍikās, 32-10 (of verses 9b-10) by 3 (i.e. 96-30), and deduct a sixth thereof (i.e. 16-5), resulting in 80-25. Adding to this the titi-nāḍikās (32-10), we get 112-35. The correction for one titi (viz. 5 nāḍikās, of verse 11-14a) being applied negatively, we get 107-35. Dividing it by 60, the true nāḍikās in the current titi is got at 47-35.

3. Yogas form variable divisions of time during which the joint motion of the Sun and the Moon in longitude is 13° 20' or 800 kalās. In a cycle there are 27 yogas; some of them being considered as auspicious and others inauspicious. Their significances are taken due note of in deciding upon the times for rituals and domestic ceremonies. The 27 yogas are:
of) the sun and the moon (in kalās and dividing by 800).¹

23b-24a. Kāraṇa. (The number of) the tithi reduced by 1 and multiplied by 2, and the product divided by 7, gives the kāraṇa of day-time. The tithi-number multiplied by 2 and the product reduced by 1 and divided by 6 (kṛta) gives the kāraṇa of the night.²

24b-c. The kāraṇa of the end (i.e. second half) of the 14th tithi of the dark fortnight is called Sākuni; (that of the first half of the full moon day is called Cātuspada; that of the end (i.e. second half of the full moon day) is called Ahi (Nāga); and that of the beginning (i.e. first half) of the prathamā (of the bright fortnight) is called Kimistughna.

2. Pṛiti 11. Vṛddhi 20. Śīva
5. Śobhana 14. Harṣaṇa 23. Śubha
6. Atigandha 15. Vajra 24. Śukra
9. Śūla 18. Varīyaṇ 27. Vaidṛṭi

Multiplying the true tithi (viz. 47-35 of verses 19-20) by 4 (i.e. 190-20) and adding a third of the tithi (viz. 15-52), we get 200-12. Dividing by 27 (which is the total number of yogas in a cycle) and rejecting the quotient, we have 7-12. i.e. 7 yogas up to Sukarmā have been gone by and, in the current 8th yoga, Dhrīti, 12 nāḍikās too are over.

1. In the alternative method of calculating the yoga, the longitudes of the Sun and the Moon are added and the sum divided by 800 (which is the said sum in terms of six kalās). The quotient will give the number of the yogas elapsed and the remainder the nāḍikās etc. elapsed in the current yoga.

2. The Kāraṇa is a measure of time extending over half a tithi, having astrological significance. They carry eleven names, being: (1) Bava, (2) Bālava, (3) Kaulava, (4) Taitila, (5) Gara., (6) Vaṇija, (7) Viṣṭi, (8) Sākuni, (9) Cātuspada, (10) Nāga and (11) Kimistughna. A cycle consists of 60 kāraṇas (during the 30 tithis or 60 half-tithis). The last four kāraṇas occur only once and occupy the four half-tithis from the second half of the 14th of the dark fortnight to the first half of the/1st tithi of the bright fortnight, and, so, are called sthīra or ‘fixed’ kāraṇas, while the other seven kāraṇas occupy the remaining 56 half-tithis, by repeating themselves eight times, and, so, are called cāla or ‘moving’ kāraṇas.

CORRECTIONS TO THE PRINTED TEXT (SV Edn).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>For</th>
<th>Read</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7b</td>
<td>पद्धतिः</td>
<td>पद्धतिः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>मूढः</td>
<td>मूढः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10a</td>
<td>शेषवारास्तिः</td>
<td>शेषवारास्तिः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14b</td>
<td>पिण्डकादि</td>
<td>पिण्डकादि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19a</td>
<td>तिथिदिः</td>
<td>तिथिदिः (विस्त्र)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22a</td>
<td>तिथिस्तिः</td>
<td>तिथिस्तिः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22b</td>
<td>शोधनम्</td>
<td>साधनम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23b</td>
<td>कृतिदिष्ठय</td>
<td>कृतिदिष्ठय</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24c</td>
<td>तो हि</td>
<td>-तो हि</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTYTHREE

Description of the Svarodayacakra, Śanicakra, Kūrmacakra and Rāhucakra

The Fire-God said:

1. I shall describe the (svarodayacakra) in order to know the victory and welfare in a military expedition. The vowels a, i, u, e and o (should be written) in order (in the different squares) and then the days (tithis) nandā and others (should be written below) in order.

2. (The names of) the planets Mars, Sun, Mercury, Moon, Jupiter and Venus (are marked) on the right-hand side and Mars, Sun and Saturn on the other side in the letters ‘ka’ to ‘ha’.

3-7. The time between the rising of the Sun to its rising on the next day should be multiplied by thirty-nine and then divided by twelve, and the quotient should be divided by nine and three respectively, the quotient being the time of predominance of the vowels or the principles they represent from day to day. The tithi on which the predominance takes place, brings death (to the organiser of any expedition).

Three sphuraṇas (throbs) make up one uchvāsa (breath). Three uchvāsas make up one pāla (a measure of time). Sixty pālas constitute one liptā. Sixty liptās (make up) a day.

The five (vowels are known to be) child, boy, youth, old and death in their half-rising state. It is said to be rising and setting when it is in the eleventh place and together with the fifth (place) brings death and reverses.

(Thus-far the Svarodayacakra)

8. In the Śanicakra (the diagram of Saturn) the rise of the planets is taken into account in a fortnight. There will be fifteen squares herein. Therein the place of Saturn indicates death.

(Thus ends the Śanicakra)

9. (The Kūrmacakra) is in the shape of a tortoise. (The result is known) from the position of Saturn in the asterisms beginning with maghā and ending with kṛttikā.

(Thus ends the Kūrmacakra)

10-11. In the Rāhucakra, one should write seven (squares) above and seven below. On the full-moon day, Rāhu travels.
from the south-east by the north-west to the south-west occupying the north-west on the new-moon day. The letter ‘ra’ should be written in the southern part and the letter ‘ha’ in the north-west. The letters ‘ka’ etc. (are marked) on the first lunar day and other (days) and the letter ‘sa’ in the north-west.

12-20. When it happens to be in the face of Rāhu it brings reverses. On the full-moon day and in the south-east it is viṣṭi. It is karālti in the east and on the third day. It is (known as) ghorā in the south and on the seventh day. It is (known as) saumya in the north-east and on the tenth day. One should avoid travel towards the north-west on the fourteenth day, towards the west on the fourth day, towards the south on the eighth day of the bright fortnight, and on the eleventh day. The (names of the) fifteen muhūrtas (a period of forty-eight minutes) are Raudra, Śveta, Maitra, Sārabhaṭa, Sāvitra, Virocana, Jayadeva, Abhijit, Rāvana, Vijaya, Nandin, Varuṇa, Yama, Saumya and Bhava. One should do violent deeds in the Raudra, ceremonial bathing in the Śveta, the marriage of one’s daughter etc., in the Maitra, auspicious deeds in the Sārabhaṭa, establishing in the Sāvitra, deeds relating to the monarch in the Virocana, victorious deeds in the Jayadeva, battles in the Rāvana, agriculture and commerce in the Vijaya, wearing the turban in Nandin, the digging of tanks in the Varuṇa, acts of destruction in the Yama and good acts in the Saumya.

21-22. The yogas (a division of time) are known to be indicating good or bad from their names. Rāhu (ascending node) (travels) from the east to north-west and thence to the south. From the south (it goes) to the north-east, and from the north-west to the west, then to the south-east, then to the north for three (gṛṣṭikas). Then after four gṛṣṭikas it affects the (point of) concurrence.

(Thus ends the Rāhucakra)

23-24. The (following) excellent herbs (should be) worn for victory caṇḍi, indrāṇi, vṛdhrī, musalti, girikarnikā, balā, atibalā, kṣiri, mallikā, yūthikā, śvetārka, satāvarti and gudūct.

25. One should tie up the tuft of hair with (the repetition of) the mantra, “Om, salutations to (lord) Bhairava (a form of Śiva), the wielder of a sword and axe in his hands; ‘Om, hrūm’, (salutation) to the destroyer of obstacles, (“Om, hrūm, phat”, for success. With the same mantra, mark on the forehead, collyrium to the eyes and scented fumes should be applied.
26-32. Listen to me. (I shall describe) the different kinds of unguents for bathing and drinking and powdered drugs. A mark on the forehead composed of subhagā, manahśilā (arsenic) tāla, shellac and the milk of taruṇī (gives) conquest (over one's enemy). Viṣṇukṛnta, sarpākṣi, sahadeva and rocanā made into a paste with the milk of goat and worn on the forehead gains success (over one's enemy). Priyāṅgu, saffron, kuṣṭha, mohani and tagara worn along with clarified butter subjugates (the enemy). Roçanā, red sandal, niśṣā, manahśilā, tāla, priyāṅgu and mustard (made into a paste and worn) also yields the same result. Mohint, haritā, kāntā, sahadevi and sikhā made into a paste in the juice of pomegranate and worn on the forehead as a mark subjugates (all). Even the celestials including Indra are subjugated. Then what about the poor mortals? Maṇjiśṭhā, red sandal, katu-kandā and vilāsini together with punarnava as a paste subjugates even the Sun (god). Sandal, nāgapuspā, maṇjiśṭhā, tagara, vacā, lodhra, priyāṅgu and rājani mixed with oil of masi controls others.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTYFOUR

The essence of astrology as described in the science of victory in battles

Fire-God said:

1. I shall describe the essence of astrology as propounded in the (science) of victory in battles, without the employment of mantra and herbs and as narrated by Īśvara (Lord Śiva) to Umā.

The Goddess said:

2. Explain to me the strategy by which the demons were conquered by celestials. So also (explain to me) the knowledge relating to success in battles which give discrimination about good and bad.

The Lord said:

3. Energy comprising fifteen letters was born by the desire of the chief god. The movable and immovable were born then. One finds one's desire fulfilled by the worship (of the energy).
4. I shall explain the base of the mantra which is produced from five mantras. Those mantras remain in all the mantras in their beginning and end.

5-6. They are the mantras of Rk, Yajus, Sāman, and Atharva vedas in order. The mantras of lords Brahmā, Viśnu, Rudra, Īśa (Śiva), Indra and others who are (known as) Saptaśikha devas are these five mantras. ‘a, i, u, e, o’ (are) the parts. The fundamental (mantra) is stated to be Brahma.

7. Just as the fire in the wood which has not developed fully is not seen, the energy of lord Śiva remaining in the body is not seen.

8. The energy adorned with the syllable of ‘Om’ is first born. O Great lady! the bindu (dot) (was) then (born) together with the letter ‘e’.

9. The letter ‘u’ which is the soul of the sound was born then. It produces the sound remaining in the heart. Then the letter ‘i’ of the shape of a crescent, which gives knowledge about the path of release, (was born).

10. The letter ‘a’ which is the supreme one giving enjoyment and emancipation, was born manifest. The letter ‘a’ is under the power of control of the lord. It is remembered as the part of cessation of activity.

11-12. The fragrance, the mystical letter ‘na’, prāṇa (life breath), īḍā (a tubular vessel in the body) and the energy known as fixed rest in this. The letter ‘i’ is known as the stable part. The essence, the apāna (one of the five life-winds) in the body), piṅgalā (a tubular vessel in the body), the energy (known as) krūrā and the mystical letter ‘i’ remain united inside. The letter ‘u’ is the knowledge part. The form which is the characteristic of fire, the mystic letter ‘ra’, the samāna (one of the five life-winds in the body), the gāndhāri (one of the tubular verse in the body), and the energy damani (rest therein).

13. The letter ‘e’ is the tranquil part. The sense of touch which is the characteristic of the wind, the udāna (one of the five life-winds in the body), the cala (one of the tubular organs of the body) and the energy (called) kriyā (rest therein). The syllable ‘om’ is that beyond the tranquil part. The sound which is the characteristic of the sky and the vyāna (one of the five life-winds in the body) (rest therein).
14. The (above-mentioned) are the five kinds of letters. The (planets) Mars, Mercury, Jupiter, Venus and Saturn respectively (preside over) the letters ‘a’ etc. The letters ‘ka’ and others are placed below these.

15. Everything relating to the movable and immovable (objects of the world) is known through these. I shall describe the knowledge-base. The praṇava (syllable ‘om’) is stated to be (lord) Śiva.

16. (When we say) Umā, it denotes (lord) Śiva along with (his consort) Umā. Umā is the energy (of Śiva). This energy remains (in three forms) as Vāmā, Jyeṣṭhā and Raudrī. (It remains in the three forms of) Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Rudra duly. Creation etc. are the three qualities (associated with them).

17-18. Three nādis (tubular vessels in the body) which are gem-like (are also present). (The praṇava) is moreover gross and subtle (which are respectively) highest and lowest. One should contemplate (on) that (praṇava) day and night as white-coloured, as showering the excellent ambrosia and flooding the soul. O Goddess! One would become unaging and attains the qualities of lord Śiva.

19. The limbs (of the body) (are assigned) in (the fingers) beginning with the thumb and the eye at the centre. Then one should worship (lord) Mṛtyuṇjaya (Śiva, conqueror of earth) and become victorious in the battles.

20. The sound is void and without any support. The sparśa (consonants ka to ma) should be touched bending horizontally. The form is stated to be having upward motion and rests under the water.

21. The fragrance remains detached from all places. The principal part is at the centre. The bulbous root, which is of the form of (lord) Śiva remains at the base of the navel.

22. The formation with energy houses the moon, sun and (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu). It is endowed with the ten winds and the five primary elements.

23. (That bulbous root) which is the soul of lord Śiva is of the shape of the destructive fire that is shining. That is the life of the entire world of living beings of the immovables and movables. When that one having the fire as its soul is lost, I consider that it is dead.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTYFIVE

Different circles which get success in battle

The Lord said:

1. "Om hṛṁ (Goddess) Karṇamaṭāni! Manifest in different forms! Possessor of many teeth! hṛṁ phaṭ om haḥ. Om devour devour. Cut cut. Suck suck. Hṛṁ phaṭ salutation". When this mantra is repeated by persons angrily and with red eyes, it would bring about the death or the downfall (of his enemy) or stupefy (his mental calibre).

2. The great incantation of (Goddess) Karṇamaṭānin is the protector of all castes. I shall describe the rise of five principles which rests on the svarodaya (science of sound).

3. The wind moves in the space between the navel and the heat. One should repeat this at the time of battle etc. It would pierce the ears and eyes (of the enemy).

4. The accomplisher should be bent on repetition (of mantras) and oblation (to fire). When the wind (moves) from the heart (downwards) to the anus and (upwards) to the throat, the acts of bringing fever on the enemies or causing their death (should be undertaken).

5. When the wind blows through the larynx with the essence, (the votary) should do rites conferring peace and prosperity. When (the wind flowing) from the eyebrows to the nostrils (known as) gandha (smell) (is present) one should practise the divine paralysing or drawal.

6. There is no doubt that one would be able to paralyse by making the mind absorbed in the smell. The votary should perform the (acts of) paralysing and wedging.

7. (To accomplish this he) should worship (the divinities) Canda, Ghanṭa, Karāṭī, Sumukha, Durmukha, Revati, Prathama and Ghorā in the wind-circle.

8-10. The goddesses who accomplish the charm remain well-established in lustre. They (are) Saumyā, Bhīṣaṇī, Jayā, Vijayā, Ajitā, Aparājitā, Mahākoṭī and Raudrī. (These goddesses who possess) dry bodiēs take away life. (The goddesses) dwelling in the essence are Virūpākṣi, Parā, Divyā, Akāśamāṭra, Samhārī, Danḍrālā and Śuśkarevatī.
11-12. Pipālikā, Puṣṭiharā, Mahāpuṣṭipravardhanā, Bhadrakālī, Subhadrā, Bhadrabhīmā, Subhadrikā, Sthirā, (Niṣṭhūrā, Divyā, Niṣkampā and Gadinī) (are the goddesses staying in the circle of smell. These thirty-two mothers reside in the circles at the rate of eight in each.

13. There is only one Sun and only one Moon (in the world). Each one of these goddesses preside over each one of the sacred places on the earth.

14. The one (universal) life force remains divided through (different) circles among created beings. It remains in tenfold forms on account of division into left and right.

15. Out of the skull (cup) of the universe (they) drink the supreme nectar, the mystical drops, encircled by the apparel of principles.

16-18. Listen to those five groups of letters which give victory in battle. (The letters), a, ā, ka, ca, ṭa, ta, pa, ya and ša are said to be the first group; i, ī, kha, cha, ṭha, tha, pha, ra, and ṣa (form) the second group; u, ū, ga, ja, ḍa, da, ba, la and sa (form) the third group, c, ai, gha, jha, ḍha, dha, bha, va and ha form the fourth group and o, au, am, aḥ, ūa, ṅa, ṇa, na and ma form the fifth group.

19-20. These forty-five letters (indicate) the prosperity of men. (These letters in each group) are respectively) known as the child, boy, youth, old, death, affliction to one's self, emaciation, indifference and destroyer. The (asterism) kṛttikā, the first day of a fortnight and (the planet) Mars are known as beneficial to one's self.

21-22. The sixth day (of a fortnight) and (the asterism) maghā (occurring) on a Tuesday and the eleventh day (of a fortnight) and (the asterism) ārdrā (occurring) on a Tuesday (cause) affliction. (The asterism) maghā and the second day (of a fortnight) occurring on Tuesday (yields) gain. (The asterism) ārdrā and the seventh day on a Wednesday bring loss. The asterisms bharani and śravana on a Tuesday (are) also of the same type. A Thursday marked by (the asterism) pūrvaphālguna and third day is profitable.

23. A Thursday (marked) by (the asterism) dhaniṣṭhā and ārdrā on the eighth day, and the same day (ruled), by (the asterism) āśeṣā on the thirteenth day causes death. A Friday
(marked) by (the asterism) pūrvabhādrapada on the fourth day (also yields the same).

24. A Friday ruled by (the asterism) pūrvāśādhā and the ninth day as also by (the asterism) bharani and the fourteenth day causes affliction.

25. The fifth day and the (asterism) kṛttikā occurring on a Saturday is said to be prosperous. The tenth day together with the (asterism) āśleṣā in conjunction with Saturday would be causing affliction.

26-27. The conjunction of (asterism) magha, Saturday and full moon is held as fatal. First to the ninth have (the directions) east, north, south-east, south-west, south, north-west, moon and Brahmā as the aspects. If they have aspects together with the signs (artificial division of the ecliptic) as well as the planets that would confer perfection.

28. The four constellations meṣa to kumbha cause victory if full and death if otherwise. It is to be duly calculated, the absence of Sun etc. as well as whether they are full.

29. The Sun has no influence in the case of war. The Moon influences to appease defeat. One should know that Mars causes riot. Mercury (influences) to realise desire. Jupiter influences to get success.

30-31. Venus influences to get mental happiness. Saturn would influence to get defeat in battle. In the pīṅgalācakra, the asterisms in which the Sun moves should be arranged (in the shape of a human figure), at the face, eyes, forehead, head, hands, thighs and feet. If the three stars at the foot (are identical with the natal star of the person concerned) (it indicates) death. (It indicates) loss of prosperity if on the sides.

32. (If the three asterisms) on the face (are identical with the natal star) (it indicates) affliction. If that on the head (is identical) (it indicates) failure of the task undertaken, and that on the head (indicates) fruitfulness. (I shall) describe the Rāhu-cakra now.

33-35. It goes from the east to the south-west, from the south-west to the north, from the north to the south-east, from the south-east to the west, from the west to the north-east, from the north-east to the south, from the south to the north-west and then again to the north, during (the period of) four (ghaṭikas
every day). O dear! I shall now tell you about the lunar phases which act as the above said Rāhu and about different directions south-east to north-east and from the full-moon etc. to which a journey should be held inauspicious during their respective continuance. (An expedition commenced) at the back of Rāhu brings success in battle, (while that undertaken) at its front brings death.

36. Till the eighth day of the dark fortnight, the east aspected by Rāhu would cause fright. (Similarly) Rāhu acts in the north-east, south-east, north-west and south-west (on the same day).

37-38. If the constellations Aries etc. are in the directions east etc., and when the Sun is (present) there it causes death, The third day in the dark fortnight, the seventh day, the tenth day, the fourteenth day in the bright (fortnight); fourth day, the eleventh day and the fifteenth day viṣṇi (a kind of adverse period) in the south-east and north-west.

39-42. (The letters) a, ka, ca, ṭa, ta, pa, ya and śa are the (five) groups (of letters) (standing for) the planets Sun etc. The vulture, owl, hawk, a small owl, owl (kaustika), crane, peacock and the water-fowl are known to be birds (in the diagram). At first the mystic syllable should be accomplished by means of oblation. Then it is known as expansion when it is uccāja (a kind of charm which drives away one's enemy). Then the application (of the mystic syllable) accomplishes (the desired results) in bringing another under one's control, in fever and in attraction. The syllable 'salutations' should be used in acts of bliss and peace-making, the syllable vauṣṭ in (rites for) nourishment and in controlling etc. (The syllable) hum (is used) for (causing) death, breaking amity (between two persons), while (the syllable) phāṭ (is used) for driving away one's enemies. (The syllable) vaṣṭ (is used) in (connection with) progeny and bringing splendour etc. Thus there are six kinds of mystic syllables.

43-45. I shall now describe the medicinal plants which provide good protection. Mahākākā, caṇḍi, vārāhi, tisvati, sudaratana and indraṇi when worn on the body protect. Balā, aṭibalā, bhīru, musali, sahadevi, jāti, mallika, yūthi, gāruḍi, bhṛgarāja and cakra-
rupā are great herbs which confer victory when worn (on the body).

46-48. O Greatest Goddess! if these are gathered during an eclipse they confer good. Making an elephant endowed with all characteristics out of earth, one's enemy should be numbed by doing the rite at its foot. After having gathered earth from an ant-hill (the rite should be done) at the summit of a mountain or at (a place having) a single tree or at a place struck by lightning. Then (the previously invoked) twodivine mothers should be attached. Om! obeisance to Mahābhairava! to the Fierce form with deformed tooth! to the Yellow-eyed! to the Bearer of trident and sword! Vauṣaṭ. O Goddess! One should worship the mud and benumb multitudinous weapons (of the enemy).

49-50. I shall describe rites relating to fire which ensures victory in battle etc. The votary should remain nude, have the tuft untied, face the south and offer human flesh, blood and poison mixed with chaff of grain, pieces of bone as oblations to fire kindled with logs of wood at the cremation ground in the night uttering the name of the enemy one hundred and eight times. “Om obeisance to Goddess Kaumāri! (You) dally, (You) coax! O Ghanṭādevī! (You) kill this person at once. Obeisance to you O Goddess of knowledge! Oblations.” By oblations made with this formula the enemy gets fettered.

Om! One having a hardy frame! One having a fierce mouth! One possessing a tawny complexion! One having a dreadful face! One possessing erect hairs! One having great strength! One possessing a red face! One having the lightning as the tongue! Most fierce! Possessing large teeth! Having dreadful form! One who strikes very firmly (at the battle)! One who built the bridge to the city of Lanka! The carrier of the mountain! One who moves about in the ethereal space! You come O lord! Possessor of great strength! Valiant! The Bhairava makes known (his presence). O Great Raudra (fierce) you come! You encircle this person with the long tail, pierce and trample him. Hrūm ṣhaṭ. O Goddess! (oblation should be made) one hundred and thirty-eight times (with the above). Hanumat (monkey-faced god) accomplishes all acts. The enemies get routed on seeing Hanumat in the picture.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTYSIX

Combinations of good and bad asterisms

The Lord said:

1-2. I shall describe combinations of asterisms determining good and bad. One should count the asterism in which the Sun is present and assign three (asterisms) from that at the head (of human figure drawn), one at the face, two in the place of the eyes, four at the hands and feet, five at the heart, the genital organ and the knee. Then one should determine one's longevity etc. (based on that).

3. The presence of the natal star on the head or at the face indicates acquisition of kingdom. (Its location) on the eyes (indicates) fortune and lustre. (Its location) at the heart (indicates) acquisition of wealth.

4. (Its presence) on the arms (indicates) that one would be a thief. (Its presence) on one of the feet (indicates) death or (the natal would be) a wanderer.

5. (Commencing with the asterism in which the Sun is stationed, the respective names of the days associated should be written on eight pitchers leaving the pitcher for the Sun as empty). The pitcher of the Sun exerts malignant influence and the pitchers in the east and other directions benevolent influence. I shall describe the (method known as) Phaṇi Rāhu, which indicates success or failure (in battle).

6-10. Twenty-eight circles should be drawn, intersected by four lines. The asterisms should be arranged therein in rows of three. The asterism occupied by Rāhu (the ascending node) should be deemed as the head of the serpent. Commencing with that, the twenty-seven asterisms are arranged in successive order. The presence of seven asterisms at the face (of the serpent) (indicates) that one will die in the battle. The presence of seven asterisms at the shoulders as well as the middle part (of the body) (portends) complete rout. Their presence at the belly foretells honour and success for the native. Their presence about the waist indicates success over rivals in the battle. One would get fame if (the asterisms) are situated on the tail. The asterisms aspected by Rāhu indicate death. I shall describe you a different (combination) known as the strength of the Sun and Rāhu.
11-12. Sun, Venus, Mercury, Moon, Saturn, Jupiter, Mars and Rāhu respectively preside over one-sixteenth part of a day. One who (sets out) after the expiry of (the periods of) Saturn, Sun and Rāhu, conquers battalions of army, and a marching force and wins in gambling.

13-15. (The asterisms) Rohini and the three Uttaras (Uttarahālaṅgū, Uttarāṣāḍha and Uttarāproṣṭapada) and the Mrgaśīrṣa are the five fixed (asterisms). (The asterisms) Āśvinī, Revati, Svātī, Dhanisṭhā and the Śatabhiṣak are the five movable (asterisms). One should undertake journeys in these (asterisms). Anurādhā, Hasta, Mūla, Mrgaśīrṣa), Puṣya and Punarvasu are (commended) for all acts. Jyeṣṭhā, Citrā, Viśākhā, the three Pūrvās (Pūrvapāṅgū, Pūrvāṣāḍha and Pūrvaproṣṭapada), Kṛttikā, Bharaṇī, Maghā, Ārdrā and Āśleṣā are evil.

16. (All acts) at fixed places (should be done under the influence) of fixed asterisms. Movable asterisms are excellent for journeys. One should do (acts) in mild (asterisms) for conferring prosperity and frightful (deeds) in malignant (asterisms).

17-21. An evil (act) should be done (under the influence) of an evil asterism. I shall now describe (the asterisms known to) have their faces downwards etc. (The asterisms) Kṛttikā, Bharaṇī, Āśleṣā, Viśākhā, Maghā, Mūla, the three Pūrvās (Pūrvāṣāḍha, Pūrvapāṅgū and Pūrvaproṣṭapada) (are known to be) downward-faced. One should do such acts (which require) keeping one’s face downwards. (Digging) of wells and tanks, acts relating to imparting knowledge and preparation of medicine, the launching of a boat, installation of a prince and pitching (of a royal camp) etc. (should be performed) in these (asterisms). (The nine (asterisms) Revatī, Āśvinī, Citrā, Hasta, Svātī, Punarvasu, Anurādhā, Mrgaśīrṣa), Jyeṣṭhā are known as having their faces lateral. One should perform coronation of kings, construction of stables for elephants and horses, laying of garden houses, building of palaces, walls, doorways, fixing of flagstaff and banner etc. under these (asterisms).

22-26. The twelfth day falling on a Sunday, the eleventh day on a Monday, the tenth day on a Tuesday, the third day on a Wednesday, the sixth day on a Thursday, the second day on a Friday, and the seventh day on a Saturday are inauspicious.
I shall now describe the (combination known as) *tripuśkara*. The second, twelfth, seventh and the third day with the Sunday, Tuesday and Saturday, these six (are known to be *tripuśkara*. (The asterisms) Viśākhā, Krṛttikā, the two Uttarās, Punarvasu and the Pūrvabhādrapada, these six (are known to be) *tripuśkara*. Any profit, loss, victory, disease, birth of a son, loss, something which has slipped and that which has strayed, all these get multiplied thrice (during the *tripuśkara* period).

27-28. The seven (asterisms) Āśvinī, Bharaṇī, Āśleṣā, Puṣya, Svātī, Viśākhā and Šravaṇa are known (to be having) firm look. They have their look in ten directions. The journey undertaken to a far off place at an auspicious moment (is followed by a safe) return journey.

29-31. The five asterisms—the two Āśādhas (Pūrvāśāḍha and Uttarāśāḍha), Revaṭī, Citrā and Punarvasu (are) squint-eyed. The person undertaking a journey under these asterisms (has a safe) return. Krṛttikā, Rohiṇī, Saumya (the five stars on the orion’s head), Phālguni, Maghā, Mūla, Jyeṣṭhā, Anurādhā, Dhaniṣṭhā, Śatabhiṣak and Pūrvabhādrapada are known as blunted. One who undertakes journey under these asterisms would again return home.

32. Anything lost (on days ruled by the asterisms) Hasta, Uttarabhadra (pada), Āḍrā and Āśādha cannot be recovered and a battle commenced in these asterisms) would not continue.

33-36. I shall again describe the *gaṇḍānta* (the first fourth of an asterism preceded by a node of asterisms) in the midst of asterisms as such. The four *nādis* (one *nādi* equals 24 minutes) of the (asterism) Revaṭī and the four (*nādis*) of Āśvinī (are known as *gaṇḍas*). One has to avoid with great care those *yāmas* (three hours) (in undertaking a journey etc). The four *ghaṭikās* (one *ghaṭikā* equals 24 minutes) forming last part of Āśleṣā and the first part of Maghā are called the second *gaṇḍa*. Listen to me! O Bhairavi! The third (*gaṇḍa*) is between the asterisms of Jyeṣṭhā and Mūla, and that is of the form extremely malignant for three hours. One should not do auspicious acts in these, if he wants to live. At the time of birth of a child in these periods the parents would die.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTYSEVEN

The auspicious and inauspicious periods of the day based on certain combinations

The Lord said:

1. The three ghaṭikās (one ghaṭi is equal to 24 minutes) (from the commencement) of viśkambha (an inauspicious period), the five ghaṭikās of śūla (an adverse period), the six (ghaṭikās) respectively in the gaṇḍa and atigāṇḍa (types of impediments) and the nine (ghaṭikās) in the vyāghāta and vajra (a kind of adverse period) should be avoided.

2. One should avoid all undertakings when the whole day is ruled by both parigha and vyatipāta (obstacles) and the undertaking of any journey or commencing a battle on the day ruled by vaidhīra (obstacle).

3. O Goddess! I shall describe the good or bad (effects of the positions of planets) in the constellations of Meṣa and others. The Moon and Venus occupying the first house confer good when they leave (the same).

4. One has to forecast loss of property, absence of gain and reverses in the battle if the Mars, Sun, Saturn and Rāhu (occupy) the second house.

5-6. The second (house) occupied by the Moon, Mercury Venus and Jupiter confers good. Just as the Sun, Saturn, Mars and Venus in the third (house) confer good so also all the planets. Mercury, Moon and Rāhu yield benefits. Mercury and Venus in the fourth (house) are beneficial. All other planets are ominous.

7. Just like Jupiter in the fifth, the presence of Venus, Mercury and Moon yield the desired gains. The Sun is auspicious in the sixth (place).

8. O Goddess! The planets Moon, Saturn, Mars and Mercury confer good (if they remain) in the sixth (place) from the native sign. One should avoid Jupiter and Venus in the sixth (house).

9. The Sun, Saturn, Mars and Rāhu in the seventh (house) (indicate) misery and Jupiter, Venus and Mercury (in the seventh house) indicate happiness. The Mars and Venus are
auspicious in the eighth (house).

10. All other planets (in the eighth house) (indicate) evil propensities. The Mars and Venus in the ninth (house) are auspicious. The other (planets) (in the ninth) (exercise) evil influences. The Venus and Sun in the tenth (house) confer gains.

11. The Saturn, Mars, Rāhu, Moon and Mercury bring good. All planets are good in the eleventh (house). One should avoid Jupiter in the tenth (house).

12. The Mercury and Venus in the twelfth (are beneficial). One should avoid all other planets in the twelfth. The twelve zodiacal signs exercise influence over the whole day (in order). I will describe them (now).

13-14. (It takes) four nādis for the Sun to traverse the (zodiacal signs). Pisces, Aries, Taurus and Gemini, six nādis (to traverse) Cancer, Leo, Virgo and Libra and five nādis (to traverse) Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricorn and Aquarius. The (Zodiacal signs) Aries and others are respectively movable, fixed and of dual nature.

15. The Cancer, Capricorn, Libra and Aries are movable. One should do all acts involving movement and permanent victory, both good and bad.

16. The Taurus, Leo, Aquarius and Scorpio are the fixed signs and all acts of fixed nature (should be done in them). (A person going away under their influence) will not return quickly. (One who) falls sick (under their influence) will not get cured.

17. The Gemini, Virgo, Pisces and Sagittarius are of dual nature. These dual-natured (signs) are always auspicious for all acts.

18. One would get increase, victory and gains in sojourn, trade, battle, marriage and royal audience. One would get victory in battle.

19. (The asterisms) Aśvini (consisting of) three stars is of the form of a horse. If it rains in this (asterism), it would rain for a night. If it rains in the asterism presided over by Yama (god of death) (Bharani) it would rain for a fortnight.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTYEIGHT

The kotacakra—a drawing to forecast results

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe kotacakra. One should draw a square. One should draw another square inside that (square) and again another square inside the second.

2. The zodiacal signs Aries etc. (should be assigned) to the directions east etc. (in the three squares) which are the symbols of the three nādis (tubular organs in the body). The (asterism) Kṛttikā (is located) in the east and the (asterism) Āśleṣā in the south-east.

3. (Asterism) Bharaṇī should be placed in the south. Viṣākhā should be assigned in the south-west. (Asterism) Anurādhā (should be located) in the west and Śravaṇa in the north-west.

4. (Asterism) Dhaniṣṭhā should be located in the north and Revati in the north-east. These eight asterisms are located in the outer nādi carefully.

5. The asterisms Rohini, Puṣya, (Pūrva) Phālgunī, Svāti, Jyeṣṭhā, Abhijit, Śatārā and Aśvinī (are located) in the middle square in order.

6. I shall describe the nādi at the middle of the drawing. In that inner square, the (asterism) Mrga (śirṣa) (is located) at the east, and Punarvasu at the south-east.

7-8. The Uttaraphālgunī (is placed) in the south. (The asterism) Citrā (is located) in the south-west. Having placed Mūla in the west, the Uttarāśādha in the north-west, the Pūrva-bhādrapada in the north and Revati in the north-east, the central square should be thus made to contain the eight asterisms.

9. (The asterisms) Āḍrā, Hasta, the four Āśādha1 and the three Uttarā8 should be placed inside the central square as four pillars.

10. Fortifications should be made thus. A belligerent coming from outside from the direction of lord (planet) (that presides over the day) and the asterisms (representing that

1. The Pūrvāśādha and Uttarāśādha.
2. The Uttaraphālgunī, Uttarāśādha and Uttarāproṣṭapada.
quarter) is sure to get the benefits.

11. If the planets and asterisms at the innermost square are good, it is known that those remaining in the inner square would be victorious and defeat for that person coming (from outside).

12-13. One should enter the fort when the conducive asterism (rules) and one should come out under the influence of conducive asterism. One should know if the battle commenced when the planets Venus, Mercury and Mars leave their respective asterism one would face defeat. If the battle commenced when the asterism held auspicious for entering the castle was ruling, then that fort would be captured. One need not get surprised.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTYNINE

Guidelines for storing and selling grains

The Lord said:

1-2. I shall describe the quantity of food-grains to be gathered when there may be fall of meteors, earthquake, hurricane, eclipse, entry of foreign matter and conflagration in different directions in different months (of the year). If these occur in the (month of) Caitra (April-May), the ornaments etc. gathered (would become) four-fold (worth) in (the course of) six months.

3. All things collected in the (month of) Vaiśākha (May-June) would become six-fold (worth) in eight months. In the same way, the grains such as barley and wheat (stocked) in the (months of) Jyeṣṭha (June-July) and Āṣāḍha (July-August) (would fetch more).

4. (Similarly) one would get (increased returns) in the month of Mārgaśīrṣa (December-January) from ghee, oil etc. purchased in (the month of) Śrāvaṇa (August-September), apparels and grains in Āśvina (October-November) and grains (purchased) in Kāṛttika (November-December).
5. (One would get) profit by the purchase of saffron and
perfumes in Puṣya (January-February), food grains in Māgha
(February-March) and perfumes in Phālguna (March-April).
Thus the arghakāṇḍa (section on storing and selling of grains
and goods) has been described.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND THIRTY

Different spheres marked by asterisms indicating victory in battle etc.

The Lord said:

1-2. O Good-natured Goddess! I shall describe the four
kinds of spheres (to find) one’s victory. (The asterisms) Kṛttikā,
Maghā, Puṣya, Pūrva (phālguni), Viśākhā, Bharaṇī and Pūrva-
bhādrapadā belong to the sphere of fire. I shall describe its
characteristic.

3-9. If the wind blows, holes (are noticed) in the disc of the
Sun and Moon, earthquakes (occur), hurricanes (strike), (there
be) the eclipses of Sun and Moon, smoky flames, conflagra-
tion in (different) quarters, and comets are sighted and
(there be) blood-like red showers, heat waves and fall of mete-
orites (under these asterisms), (there would follow) epidemics of
eye diseases and diarrhoea. The fire would rage. The cows would
yield reduced (quantity of) milk. The trees (would bear) lesser
(quantity) of flowers and fruits. The food grains would get
destroyed. One should foresee little rain. The four castes of
people would be harassed. The entire humanity would suffer
hunger. The inhabitants of (the regions of) Sindhu, Yamunā,
Gurjara, Bhoja, Vālīka, Jālandhara, Kaśmīra and the Uttarā-
patha as well as these countries would be destroyed when these
portents are noticed. (The asterisms) Hasta, Citrā, Maghā,
Svāti, Mṛga (śiṅga) or Punarvasu, Uttaraphālguni and Aśvinī
are spoken as comprising the sphere of wind.

10-12. The people would become bereft of virtues. All
would lament in despair. (The countries) Dāhala, Kāmarūpa,
Kaliṅga, Kośala, Ayodhyā, Avanti, Koṅkaṇa and Āndhra would
get destroyed. (The asterisms) Āsleṣā, Mūla, Pūrvāṣāḍha, Revatī, Bhādrapada and Uttarā (form the regions where) water reigns supreme. If something unusual takes place under their influence, it should be spoken as resultant of their respective influences.

13-14. Cows would have plenty of milk and trees would abound with flowers and fruits. There would be good health. The earth would abound with grains. The grains would be highly valuable. The kingdom would be prosperous. There would be grave battles among kings.

15-19. (The asterisms) Jyeṣṭhā, Rohini, Anurādhā, Dhanisṭhā, Uttarāṣāḍhā and Abhijit witnessing any unusual commotion are said to be related to celestial (region). The subjects would be jubilant being free from all diseases. Kings would conclude treaties and the kingdom would be prosperous. The eclipses are known to be of two kinds—by the head or by the tail of Rāhu. If the Sun or Moon and ascending node of Moon are in the same sign, it is known to be eclipse by the head. If it is the jāmitra (the seventh sign of Zodiac) it is said to be by the tail. When the Moon stays at the fifteenth asterism from the one occupied by the Sun and if the lunar day begins and ends in between two sunrises, one should indicate the lunar eclipse.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND THIRTYONE

Diagrams known as Ghāṭakacakra, Naracakra and Jayacakra indicating failure or success in battle etc.

The lord said:

1-3. The vowels commencing with ‘a’ should be written in a circular form commencing from the east. One should write such circles for the months Caitra (April-May) and the other months. The vowels should be considered as representing the lunar days first to thirteenth. If the (names of) lunar days of first, full moon, thirteenth, fourteenth, eighth, eleventh and seventh in the circle of Caitra happened to be touched, one
should know about one's victory or gains. One should know that it augurs well if odd numbers (of vowels are present). It is said that it augurs bad if even numbers (of vowels are present).

4-5. When the name of a person is pronounced at the time of commencement of the battle, if one's name begins with a long vowel, he will always have victory even in dreadful battles. If the name of the warrior (commences with) short vowel, he would die without any prevention.

6. If the first letter is long and the middle letter is also long (both indicate) death. If two letters at the middle are first (among the letters), it would end in the death (of the person) without any doubt.

7. If there are vowels at the beginning and the end, one should know (impending) death (if the vowels are) short and victory (if the vowels are) long.

8. I shall describe Naracakra (the figure of a man) consisting of asterisms. A human figure is drawn first and the asterisms are arranged (in order).

9-11. Three asterisms are placed at the head (of the figure) one at its face, two at the eyes, four on the arms and two at the ears. Five asterisms (are placed) at the heart and six asterisms at the feet. The asterism for one's name should be found out and be placed at the centre of the drawing, at the eyes, head, right-ear, right-hand, feet, heart, neck, left hand, secret organ and feet (of the human figure).

12. One should know that fatality is certain at that asterism occupied by the Sun, Saturn, Mars or Rāhu (the ascending node).

13. I shall (now) describe the Jayacakra (the circle of victory). One should draw letters a to ha. One should draw thirteen lines (on a plane) and six lines obliquely.

14-15. The quarters, planets, sages, Sun, priest and the lunar days are placed (in the chambers above) in order. Stupefaction, remembrance, scriptures, asterisms etc. and the letters a, ka, da, ma etc. (are written) below them. The Sun and other planets when placed in seven places, the planets are powerful at the end of the name. (The planets) Sun, Saturn and Mars (are) for victory and the planet Mercury for truce.
16-18. Twelve lines are drawn, six on the right and six on the left. Fourteen, twentyseven, two, one, fifteen, six, four, three and seventeen are known as weak points for wealth. The letters a, ka, ta and pa should be located below. After having assigned letters one by one the rest should be located as follows: the figure made up of letters comprising the name should be divided by eight.

19-20. The quotient if identical with the number represented by a crow (fourteen) would signify the diagram a strong one, while the same equal to the numbers represented by an ass, bull, elephant, lion, horse and camel would signify greater success respectively than the preceding one.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND THIRTYTWO

Description of Sevvācakra and the indication of accrual of benefits

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the Sevvācakra that indicates the gain or loss from the father, mother, brother, husband or wife.

2. One should know from that from whom one would get benefits. One should draw six vertical lines and eight different lines obliquely.

3-4. Then there would be thirty-five chambers. The letters should be written in these (chambers). The five vowels are drawn and afterwards one should discard the three (consonants known as) hīnāṅga (diminutive) and write letters ka to ha in groups of siddha, sādhya, susiddha, ari and mṛtyu.

5. Names (which begin with letters) falling under (the chambers) ari and mṛtyu should be avoided in all acts by one's efforts.

6-7. (The letter) falling in the first place (should be deemed) as yielding good. The second place would be a supporter and the third one would confer materials. The fourth one causes one's own destruction, while the fifth one gives death. The chambers occupied by friendly, servile and related letters would indicate acquisition of wealth.
8. All the letters respectively occupying the *siddha*, *sādhyā* and *susiddha* always yield fruits and the two *ari* and *mṛtyu*, should be rejected in all undertakings.

9. The vowels *a*, *i*, *u*, *e* and *o* are known as included in the term *akārānta* as told now. Now I shall describe the different species of beings for which the different groups of letters stand for.

10-11. The celestials occupy letters falling under the group of letter ‘*a*’, the demons occupy letters of ‘*ka*’ group, the serpents letters of ‘*ca*’ group and the *gandharvas* (a kind of semi-divine beings) letters of ‘*ta*’ group. The sages are stated to be in letters of ‘*ta*’ group, the demons are known to be in letters of ‘*pa*’ group, the goblins in letters of ‘*ya*’ group and the men in letters of ‘*sa*’ group.

12-13. Demons are stronger than celestials, serpents than demons, *gandharvas* than serpents and sages than *gandharvas*. Demons are stronger than sages, goblins than demons and men than goblins. One (under the influence) of a stronger species should avoid (contact with one of) the weaker.

14-18. Listen again duly (to the narration) about Tārācakra which indicates friendship. As before it is calculated from the star and the first letter of the name of a person. The nine stars which should duly be ascertained from the natal star of a person are—*janma, sampat, vipat, kṣema, pratyari, dhanadā, saṣṭhi, nidhana, mitra* and *paramitra*. The star known as the *janma* is inauspicious. The star (known as) *sampat* yields extremely great result. The star (known as) *vipat* makes (one’s attempts) futile. The star (known as) *kṣema* is favourable for all undertakings and *pratyari* destroys one’s wealth. The star (known as) *dhanadā* gets the benefit of kingdom etc., and the *nidhana* makes all attempts futile. The effect of the star (known as)*mitra* is friendship and that of *paramitra* is conferring benefits.

19. O dear, the number of syllables which are the numerical equivalents of vowels in the names of two persons (to be related in any way), should be counted and added and (the total) be divided by twenty. The remainder indicates the result.

20. One should find the debt and credit between the two names from the debt being indicated by lesser number of
syllables and the credit by greater number of syllables.

21. Friendship (would grow between two persons) whose names stand in relationship of credit and indifference in the case of relationship of debt. This is said to be the Bevācakra which indicates benefits or the contrary.

22. (There would be) friendliness (between those born under the constellations) of Aries and Gemini as also between those of Gemini and Leo. There would be great amity (between the born under the constellations) of Libra and Leo as also between Sagittarius and Aquarius.

23-25. One should not accept the service of a person if his natal sign and that of the other person are in (relationship of) friendship. There is friendship between the following Taurus and Cancer, Cancer and Aquarius, Virgo and Scorpion, Capricorn and Scorpion, Pisces and Capricorn when they are respectively the third and eleventh signs. The constellations Libra and Aries would be in great friendship, Taurus and Scorpion would be in great enmity. There would be friendship between Gemini and Sagittarius, Cancer and Capricorn, Capricorn and Aquarius as also Virgo and Pisces.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND THIRTYTHREE

Different traits in infants and combinations indicating success in battle

The Lord said:

1-5. I shall describe the character (of an infant) from the nature of planets presiding over nativity. One would be born not extremely tall, neither lean nor stout; possess even loins, of a reddish yellow complexion, having reddish eyes and would be possessing good qualities and brave in the house of the Sun. One who was born in the house of the Moon would have good fortune and be of mild disposition. One who was born in the house of Mars would be flatulent and greedy. A person born in the house of Mercury would be intelligent, fortunate and respectable. A person born in the house of Jupiter would be ex-
tremely irascible and fortunate. One born when the Venus was rising would be charitable, enjoy comforts and fortune. A person born in the house of Saturn would be intelligent, fortunate and respectable. One born in a good-natured lagna (the rising point at the east at the time of one's birth) would be good-natured and one (born) in cruel-natured lagna would be cruel-natured.

6-11. O Gaurī! I shall describe the effect of the presence (of the planets) in the sign of one's nativity according to one's name. The presence of Sun in such a position would get the native elephants, horses, wealth, grains, wide sovereignty and recovery of lost wealth. The period of Moon would get (the native) a damsel of celestial beauty. In (the period of) Mars one acquires land and happiness. One (gets) land, grains and wealth in (that of) Mercury. One (gets) elephant, horse etc. and wealth in (that of) Jupiter. In (that of) Venus one (is blessed with) plenty of food and drink and wealth. One is afflicted with diseases etc. in (that of) Saturn. (One is blessed with) good services with unguents etc. and good trade if Rāhu (ascending node of the Moon) is seen (in the nativity) even if the name of person contained odd number of letters or if it be in the flow of left nāḍī. Similarly, the presence of Saturn, Mars and Rāhu (in the left nāḍī) would make the native victorious in the battle. The presence of the Sun in the flow of the right nāḍī would augur loss in trade. A person would certainly be victorious in battle if his name contains even (number of letters). One should know victory in battle if the movement is downwards and death if the movement is upwards. *Om hūm om hrām om sphem* break down the weapons. *Om* break to pieces. *Om* rout all enemies. *Om hrūm om hrak phat.*

12-14. One should place (the above) mantra (on his body) repeating seven times and should meditate on his self as lord Bhairava, auspicious, possessing four or ten or twenty hands, wielding in the hands a spike, a club, a sword, raised kattāri, devouring the army of others and having his back on his own forces. One should repeat this one hundred and eight times in front of the army of enemies. By the repetition of this and the sound of small drum the enemy force would run away abandoning their weapons.
15-24. Listen! I shall again describe another application that breaks the army of others. After having collected the charcoal from the cremation ground and the excrements of owl and crow one should draw the image of Bhairava on a cloth. The name of the enemy together with the letters are to be written at nine places such as the head, face, forehead, heart, genital organ, feet, back and between arms. (The image) should be broken down at the time of battle with the repetition of the above sacred syllable.

I shall describe Tārksyacakra for the sake of victory and which is (known as) trimukhākṣara (three-faced syllable). Throw away. Om oblations. Tārksya is destroyer of enemies, disease and poison. It also sets right one possessed by an evil spirit or afflicted by diseases or grief-stricken. One would accomplish results proportional to his actions through the bird (Tārksya). All poisons such as those due to a plant, movable beings and spiders and artificial poison get destroyed by the look of an accomplisher. One should again contemplate on the great Tārksya having two wings and of the form of a man, having two arms and a curved beak, supporting an elephant and tortoise and coming in the middle of the sky having innumerable serpents at its feet. One would see the enemies being swallowed, eaten, hit and struck by the beak in the battle, some crushed by the feet, some crushed by being struck by the wings and some running away in ten directions. One who contemplates on Tārksya would be invincible in the three worlds.

25-26. I shall describe the work to be done to accomplish the sanctity of the bunch of peacock’s feathers. Om hrūm bird! Cast away! Om hūm saḥ! The most valiant and of great strength! Devour all forces (of the enemy). Om trample down. Om break to pieces. Om melt away. Om hūm khaḥ om! Bhairava may accept oblations. One should repeat this at the (time of) lunar eclipse and the bunch of peacock’s feathers should be sanctified and waved in front of the army. Just as the one riding the lion would do the herds of deer, one would rout (the army of enemies) by the sound and contemplation on the elephant and lion.

27-33. I shall describe the invocation with the sacred syllable (which would rout the enemy force) from a distance by its
sound. Porridge should be offered to the divine mothers, especially to Kālarātrī. One should invoke (the goddess) from a distance with the flowers malati and cāmāri together with the ashes from the cremation ground and the roots of cotton (plant). *Om ahe he Mahendrī! Break! hi om discard! Devour the enemy! lili kili om hum phat!* By this breaking sacred syllable (*bhaṅga-vidyā*) repeated from a distance the enemy would be destroyed. A mark on the forehead made up of *aparājitā* and *dhattūra* (should be made use of) together (with the mantra). *Om kili kili vīkīlī icchākili!* (Goddess) Umā! Destroyer of goblins! Śaṅkhini (woman fairy)! Wielder of a club! Ferocious! Māheśvarī (Great goddess)! Projecting meteors from the mouth! Emitting fires from the mouth! Possessing ears like the conch! Possessing emaciated thighs! One who vomits (Alambuṣa)! Take away! *Om* dug up all wicked persons. *Om!* O Goddess! whoever looks at me (you) stupefy them. *Om!* the terrible (goddess) remaining in the heart of Rudra (Śiva)! By your gracious disposition protect me then. Oblations. After having drawn the divine mothers surrounded by all their forms outside, the (above) sacred syllable, which accomplishes all desires, should be written on a betel leaf. It was worn by (gods) Bhramā, Rudra, Indra and Viṣṇu on the hand before. The celestials were adorned with this protective potent of (goddesses) Nārāsimhī, Bhairavī, all goddesses of the form of Śakti, (goddess) Trailokyamohinī and Gaurī at the time of great battle between celestials and demons.

O auspicious one! It is known as the protective amulet in which the letters consisting of the name (of the wearer) sanctified by the principle sacred syllable on the petals of a lotus (shaped diagram) and duly worshipped with the accessories.

34-41. I shall describe *mṛtyuṇjaya* (conquering death). The name surrounded by *kalās* (syllables) should be in the midst of sacred syllable and preceded by the letter *sa*. The letter *ja* coupled with the dot and the syllable *om*, containing the letter *dha* at the middle and with the letter *va* together with the sanctified Moon at the middle that routs all the wicked (should be placed). Otherwise one should write the name and the object on the petals. The syllable *om* should be written on the petal
on the east, one’s right and north. The syllable *hum* (should be written) on the south-east etc. and the (other) syllables on the sixteen petals. (The consonants) *ka* etc. (should be written) in the thirty-four petals. One should write this sacred syllable of conquering death outside on a *bhairja* leaf together with *rocana* (yellow pigment), saffron, camphor and sandal. It should be enclosed with a white thread, covered by bee-wax and worshipped on a pitcher. By wearing this amulet one gets cured of his diseases and his enemies would perish. I shall explain the sacred syllable known as Bhelakhi that wards off separation and death.

Ām Vātala (windy) ! Vitala (located in the lower region) ! Cat-faced ! Daughter of Indra ! Born through the agency of wind god ! Obstruct. Come. Hājā in me, Vāha ityadi duḥkha nityakathocairmuhitātvayā aha mān yasmahāṁ upādi om Bhelakhi ! Om ! oblations. (Similarly) the sacred syllable of Navadurgā repeated seven times if worn on one’s mouth paralyses the mouth (of the enemy). *Om hūm phat* oblations. One undefeated in a battle with a word if held after repetition for seven times.

**CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND THIRTY-FOUR**

*Sacred formula for the conquest of three worlds*

*The Lord said:*

1-3. I shall describe (the formula) that conquers three worlds and crushes all (other) amulets. *Om hūm kṣūṃ hṛūṃ om* obeisance. O Goddess ! Possessing (frightful) teeth ! Possessing fierce face ! One having a very fierce form ! *Hili, hili* ! Possessing red eyes ! *Kili, kili* ! Possessing great sound ! *kulu om* ! Possessing a tongue resembling the lightning ! *kulu om* ! One having no flesh ! *kata kata* ! Wearing the ornament of *gonasa* (a kind of gem) ! *Cili cili* ! One who wears the garland of dead bodies ! Drive away. *Om* ! One having a terrible form ! One who is clad in raw hide ! (You) gape ! *Om* ! Dance O goddess wielding the creeper-like sword! One whose side glances have been hot with anger. One having the third eye ! One whose body has been besmeared with marrow and fat !
Kaha kaha om. Laugh. Be angry. Om. One possessing the colour of a blue cloud! One who has made the garland of cloud as the ornament! Shine! Om. One having the body strewn by the sound of the bell! Om! One who rides the lion! One of light-red complexion! Om hrām hrīm hrūm. One of terrible form! Hrūm hrīm klim om hrīm hrūm om. Attract. Shake. Om he haḥ khaū. One who wields the club! Hūm kṣūm kṣām. One who has the form of wrath! Inflame. Om. Terribly frightening one! Break. Om. One having a big body! Cut. Om. One having a dreadful form! Burrow. The mother of great goblins! One who wards off all the wicked! Victorious one! Om. Victorious one! Om. One who conquers the three worlds! Hūm ṭhaṭ oblations. One should propitiate the goddess of blue complexion, remaining on dead bodies and possessing twenty arms for (gaining) victory. After having located on the five parts of the body, red flowers should be offered (to the goddess). There would be routing of the (enemy) forces in the battle by the repetition of the formula (known as) conquering three worlds. Om. (Obeisance) to (the god of) manifold forms. Paralyse. Om. Stupefy. Om. Scatter away all enemies. Om. Attract (lord) Brahmā. Attract (lord) Viṣṇu. Attract (lord) Maheśvara (Śiva). Om. Make (the god) Indra tremble. Om. Make the mountains move. Om. Dry up seven oceans. Om. Cut through. Cut through. Obeisance to (the god) of manifold forms. One should then meditate (while pronouncing this formula) that the enemy is present in an image of a serpent made up of earth.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND THIRTYFIVE

Formula for success in battle

The lord said:

1. I shall describe the garland of words of the formula that gives victory in the battle. Om hrīm (Goddess) Cāmuṇḍā (having a terrific form)! One who dwells in the cremation ground! One who holds in hand the club with a skull at the top!
One who is riding the terrific dead body (or the body in the form of universe at the time of deluge)! One who is surrounded by the great vehicle in the form of the decaying universe! The dark night at the destruction of universe! One who is surrounded by the great attendant gods! Goddess with a great mouth! Possessing several hands! (One who holds) the bell, the little drum and the small bell! One who has a terrific laughter! Kili kili om hūm phat. One who makes (the world) dark by her fierce teeth! One who makes many kinds of sounds! One who is clad in the hide of an elephant! One who is besmeared with flesh! One whose terrific tongue is licking! The great demoness! One having the terrible teeth! One who has frightening roar of laughter! One who has the splendour of shining lightning! Move. Move. Om. One who has the eyes like the Cakora1 (bird)!) Cili. Cili. Om. One who has a lustrous tongue! Om bhim. One who has a frown on the face! One who frightens by uttering the syllable hum! One who wears the moon on the crown on her matted hair surrounded by the garland of skulls! One who has the terrific laughter! Kili kili om hrūm. One who makes (the world) dark by her frightening teeth! One who destroys all obstacles! (You) accomplish this act. Om. Do it quickly. Om phat om subjugate with (your) mace. Enter. Om Dance. Dance. Shake. Om. Make (the enemies) move. Om. One who is fond of blood, flesh and intoxicating drink! Kill. Om trample. Om cut. Om kill. Om chase Om make the strong body (of the enemy) fall down. Om. Enter into the beings of three worlds whether wicked or not wicked, taken possession or not. Om dance. Om extol. One who has sunken eyes! One having erect hairs! One having the face of an owl! One who holds skull (in the hand)! Om. One who wears a garland of skulls! Burn. Om. Cook. Cook. Om. Seize. Om. Enter into the middle of the circle (of the enemies). Om. Why do you delay? Overwhelm (them) with the strength of (lords) Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Rudra and the strength of sages. Om Kili kili om khili khili vili vili om. One who displays an ugly form! One whose body is enveloped by a black serpent! One who subjugates all planets! One who has a long lip! One whose nose rests on the frowning eyes! One who is

1. A fabulous bird supposed to live on the ambrosia of the Moon.
having a frightful face! One having tawny matted hair! Brâhmi! Break. One whose mouth emits flames! Yell. Om. Make (the enemies) fall down. Om. One having red eyes! Roll the earth. Make (them) fall. Om. Catch hold of the head. Close the eye. Om. Catch hold of the arms and feet. Split open the posture (of the hands). Om phat om. Pierce open. Om. Cut with the trident. Om kill with the mace. Om strike with the stick. Om. Cut with the disc. Om. Break with the spear. Stake with the teeth. Om. Pierce with the middle finger. Om. Seize with the goad. Om. Release. Release the possessive spirits like the Dâkinî and Skanda and also the fevers occurring every day, second day, third day and fourth day (and the diseases of) the head and eyes. Om. Cook. Om. Destroy. Om. Make them fall to the ground. Om. Brahmâni!° Come. Om (goddess) Mâheśvarî! Come. Om Kaumâri! Come. Om Vaiṣṇavi! Come. Om Vârâhi! Come. Om Aindri! Come. Om. Câmunḍâ. Come. Om Revati! Come. Om. Ākâśarevati. Come. Om. One who moves like the snow. Come. Om. One who has slain (the demon) Ruru! One who annihilated the demons! One who goes in heaven! Bind. Bind with the noose. Pierce with the goad. Stand for the moment. Om enter the circle (of enemies)! Om. Seize. Bind the face. Om. Bind the eyes, arms and feet. Bind the malefic planets. Om. Bind directions. Charm the cardinal points, the space below and all places. Om. Subjugate all with ashes or water or earth or mustard. Om. Make them fall. Om. (goddess) Câmunḍâ! Kili kili âm vicce hûm phat oblations. This is known as the garland of words that accomplishes all acts.

2-6. One gets victory in battle always by oblations, repetitions and reading of this formula. One has to contemplate (on the goddess) as having twenty-eight hands holding the sword, club, mace, stick, bow, arrow, clenched fist, hammer, conch, sword, banner, club, disc, axe, little drum, mirror, spear, dart, plough, mace, nose, an iron club, large drum, pânava (a kind of musical instrument), conferring pose, clenched fist, threatening posture, killing the (demon in the form of a) buffalo in the pairs of hands. By making oblations one would conquer the enemies.

1. From Brahmâni to Câmunḍâ are the eight divine mothers.
The (above) oblations should be done with three sweet things (honey sugar and clarified butter). This incantation should not be disclosed to everyone.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND THIRTY-SIX

The diagram of asterisms indicating the period for undertaking a journey

The Lord said:

1-6. I shall describe the diagram indicating good or bad results in journey undertaken. A diagram consisting of three columns should be drawn and (the asterisms) Aśvinī etc. should be represented therein (by their first letters). (The asterisms) Aśvinī, Ārdrā, Pūrvā (phālgunī), Uttaraphālgunī, Hasta, Jyeṣṭhā, Mūla, Vāruṇa (Śatabhiṣak) and Ajaikapāt (Pūrvabhādra-pada) consist of first column. (The asterisms) Yāmya (Bharani), Mrgaśira, Puṣya, Bhāgya (Pūrvaphālgunī), Citrā, Maitra (Anurādhā), Āpya (Pūrvāṣadha), Vāsava (Jyeṣṭhā) and Ahirbudhnya (Uttarabhādraphada) (are located in the second column). (The asterisms) Kṛttikā, Rohini, Ahīḥ (Āśleṣā) Citrā, Svāṭi, Viśākhā, Śravāṇa and Revati are located in the third (column). One should know the good or bad results from the asterisms associated with three columns. This is known as the diagram of phanistvāra (lord of serpents) divided into three columns. The presence in Sun, Mars, Saturn and Rāhu (the ascending node) indicate bad luck and the rest good luck. The position is the same, such as the country or village, the brothers and wife indicate good. The twentyseven asterisms should be known as (represented by letters) a, bha, kr, ro, mṛ, ā, pu, pu, ā, ma, pū, u, ha, ci, svā, vi, a, jye, mū, pū, u, śra, dha, śa, pū, u and re.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND THIRTYSEVEN

Description of the formula known as Mahâmârī

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the formula known as Mahâmârī (that which brings death) that routs the enemies. Om hrim Mahâmârī! One having red eyes! One having black complexion! O One who commands the god of death! One who destroys all beings! Kill such and such a person. Kill. Om burn, hum. Om cook, cook. Om pierce, pierce. Om kill, kill. Om annihilate, annihilate. Om one who charms all good (beings)! One who grants all desires! Hum phat oblations. Om Mâri! Obeisance to the heart. Om Mahâmârī! Oblations to the head. Om Dreadful night (at the time of deluge)! Vausat to the tuft. Om possessing black complexion! Khaḥ to the armour hum. Om one having starry eyes! One having the tongue-like lightning! One who frightens all beings! Protect, protect in all my undertakings. Hrâm. To the three-eyed vâsat. Om Mahâmârī! One who controls all beings! Mahâkâli! To the weapons hum phat. O Great goddess! This is the rite of location to be performed by the votary.

2-3. After having collected from the dead body, the cloth of the shape of a square of three cubit's length, one should draw (the image of the goddess) of black complexion, having three faces and four hands, (and draw) on the cloth with different colours, (the weapons) bow, spear, scissor, staff with skull at its top and the eastern face having black colour.

4-6. By the fall of the sight (of this face) it would devour the man in front. The second (face) on the south (is) red-red-tongued, frightening, licking, dreadful and frightful with protruded lips through which a row of horrid teeth are visible. A look at this (face) is sure to devour the horses etc. (of the enemies). The third face of the goddess is of white colour and is the destroyer of the elephant etc. The western face (of the goddess) should be propitiated with incense, flower, honey and clarified butter etc.

7. By the remembrance of this sacred syllable the diseases of the eye, head and others (limbs) get destroyed. The yakṣas
(semi-divine beings) and demons come under one's control. The enemies get destroyed.

8. There is no doubt that by oblation made with the twigs of margosa tree mixed with the blood of a she-goat, the angry votary would kill (his enemies).

9. If the oblation is done for seven days in front of the army of the enemy, the army would be afflicted with diseases and the enemies get routed.

10. In whose name eight thousand oblations are made with (the same) twigs, he would die even if protected by Brahmā.

11. (If oblations are made) for three days with the twigs of unmatta (a kind of plant) with blood and poison for thousand times, the enemy would get destroyed together with his army.

12. One would rout the enemy by doing oblations of black mustard and salt for three days. The oblations made with the addition of the blood of an ass would make the enemy fly away.

13. The oblation made with the addition of the blood of a crow would cause annihilation of the enemy. Whatever (the votary) does as he wished for the destruction (of the enemy) (should be completed with an oblation performed with the same material).

14-18. Then at the time of battle the votary should ride an elephant accompanied by a couple of girls, his body having been sanctified by sacred syllables. He should then charm the musical instruments like the conch etc. at some distance (from the enemy) and should cut (the enemy forces) at the battle-field holding the cloth containing the figure of Mahāmāyā. He should show that great cloth against the army of the enemy. The girls should be fed therein and the lump (of food?) should be carried round. The votary should then think that the army has become immobile like a stone, crest-fallen, broken and confused. This paralysing (formula) has been uttered by me. It should not be disclosed to everyone. The cloth described above (may also have the outlines of) Durgā, Bhairavī, Kubjikā, (different forms of the consort of Śiva), Rudra and Narasimha (man-lion) manifestation of Viṣṇu) besides those of (Mahā) māyā that conquers the three worlds.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND THIRTYEIGHT

The six accessory acts relating to all mantras

The Lord said:

1-5. I shall describe six acts (to be used) in all sacred syllables. Listen (to me). The sādhyā (to be accomplished) should be written first being followed by the sacred syllable. This is known as the pallava (bud) and should be used in all incantations. First the sacred syllable (is written), then the sādhyā and then the sacred syllable. This is known as the yoga (combination). This should be employed for the utsādana (extinction) of one’s race. The sacred syllable is written first and the sādhyā is added at the middle and again the sacred syllable at the end. This tradition is (known as) the rodhaka (that which arrests) and should be employed in stambhana (stupefying the faculties of the enemy). The sādhyā should be added at the bottom and top, left, right and middle. This is known as the sampuṭa (casket) and should be employed in vaṭya (subjugation) and ākārṣa (attraction).

6. When the letters composing any particular sacred syllable are of the category of sādhyā letters, that sacred syllable is known to be the first class. It is capable of attracting and subjugating (another person).

7. Two of the letters constituting the sacred syllable are written first and one sādhyā letter afterwards. This is known to be the vidarbha and should be made use of in attraction and subjugation.

8-10. The acts of ākārṣaṇa etc. as also (in subduing) high fever should be performed only in the spring. The term svāhā (oblations) is auspicious in attraction and subjugation. The term namaskāra (obeisance) should be employed for peace and prosperity. The term vaṣaṭ (should be made use of) for good health and in acts of attraction and subjugation. (The term) phat would be (used) for creating dissension, causing death and to break an auspicious one. The term vaṣaṭ gives accomplishment in gains and initiation in sacred syllables.

11. You are Yama (god of death). You are the sovereign over the dead (Yamarāja). You are of the form of time. You
are the reign of righteousness. You quickly make dead this enemy offered by me.

12. The priest, who is the destroyer of the enemy, should say with pleased mind, "O Votary! Be calm! I shall kill (him) with (all my) efforts."

13-14. This gets accomplished after worshipping the god of death in white lotus and making oblations contemplating himself as Bhairava and Kuleśvarī (as remaining) at the centre. (The votary) would know in the night the result (of the incantation) on himself and the person (concerned). One would become the killer of his enemy by propitiating the (goddess) Durgā with the formula “O (goddess) Durgā! Durgā! You are the guardian!” One should kill the enemy by the repetition of letters “ha, sa, kṣa, ma, la, va, ra and ya” sacred to (the goddess) Bhairavī.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND THIRTYNINE

The names of sixty years of Hindu cycle and the good or bad results from them

The lord said:

1. Listen! I shall describe the names of sixty years and the good or bad results from them. Sacrificial rites (would be done) in Prabhava. The people would be comfortable in Vibhava.

2. All grains (grow well) in Śukla. (People) rejoice in Pramoda (Pramodāt). There would be increase (of articles of comforts) in Prajāpati (Prajōtpatti). (The year) Aṅgirā (Aṅgirāsa) would increase comforts.

3. The people (population) increase in Śrimukha. Thoughts flourish well in Bhāva (Bhava). (In the year) Yuva the life essence gets filled up. Dhāttā makes the herbs sprout well.

4. Īśvara (gives) welfare and health. Bahudāna gives prosperity. In Pramāthī (there would be) moderate rains. There would be plenty of grains in Vikrama.

5. Vṛṣa (Vṛṣu) makes all things thrive. Citrabhānu sees many
wonderful events. Svarbhānu (gives) prosperity and health. The clouds are favourable in Tārāṇa.

6. (There would be) abundance of rains in Pārthiva. Jaya (Vijaya) (indicates) excessive rains. Sarvajit (indicates) good showers. Sarvadhātri gives prosperity.


10. Vikāri causes the wrath of enemies. O Victorious one! (The year) Sarvāda (Śarvari) gives comforts to all. Water inundates (the earth) in Plava. O Good-natured one! The people do auspicious things in Subhakṛt.

11. The people (become) cruel in Rākṣasa. In Ānala (Nala) (there would be plenty of) different kinds of grains. (There would be) good showers in Piṅgala and destruction of wealth in Kālayukti.

12. All things are accomplished in Siddhārtha (Siddhārthi). Dreadful events take place in Raudra (Raudri). (There would be) moderate rains in Durmati. Dundubhi causes welfare and (plenty of) grains.

13. It rains well in Rudhirodgāri. Raktākṣa and Krodhana (give) victory. In Kṣaya (Aksaya) people get reduced to poverty. These are the sixty years.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FORTY

Description of herbs used in charms

The Lord said:

1-3. I shall describe (drugs) used in charms. These should be written in eight squares. They are bhrṅgarāja, saha-

1. The text then omits the names of 12 years and continues from Rākṣasa, the 49th year.
devi, mayūraśikhā, putrañjiva, kṛtāñjali, adhāhpuṣpā, rudantikā, kumāri, rudrajatā, viṣṇukrāntā, white arka, lajjālukā, mohalatā, black dhattūra, gorakṣa, karkatī, meṣaṅrī and snuhi.

4-5. The symbolical numbers of herbs are ṛtwijāḥ (priests) (16), vaṁnayaḥ (fires) (3), nāgāḥ (elephants) (8), pākṣau (wings) (2), muni (sage) (3), Manu (14), Śiva (11), vasavaḥ (vasus) (8) dik (directions) (10), rasāḥ (tastes) (6), vedāḥ (4), grahāḥ (planets) (9), ṛtavaḥ (seasons) (6), Ravi (Sun) (12), Candra-māḥ (Moon) (1) and ṛīthayaḥ (phases of the Moon) (15). The first four (of the above-said herbs) should be used to fumigate (the body of the votary) or in the burning sticks.

6. Collyrium should be made out of the third (in the list). Bathing should be done with the fourth. The unguent of four kinds should be made with the bṛṅgarāja and the one following it (in the list).

7-8. (The herbs represented symbolically by) muni in the list should be used in unguent for the right side, by yuga for the left side, by bhujaga for the foot and īśvara for the head. Fumigation of the centre should be done with arka (12) and śaśi (1), in all acts. A body besmeared with these would be worshipped even by the celestials.

9. Incense sticks made of the sixteenth (herb in the list) should be burnt and taken round the house. (The herbs standing as) the fourth should be used in the collyrium and those (standing as) the fifth should be used in bathing.

10. (The herbs denoted by the number) eleven should be used for eating and fifteen for drinking. A mark on the forehead with (the herbs denoted by the numbers) ṛtwik (16), veda (4), ṛtu (6), nayana (2) captivates the world.

11. A lady being besmeared with (the herbs denoted by) sūrya (12), tridāla (13), pākṣa (2) and śaila (7) gets captivated. Women get captivated by besmearing their genital organ with (herbs denoted by) candra (1), Indra (1), phani (8) and rudra (11).

12. A pill made of (herbs denoted by) ṛīthi (15), dik (8), yuga (4), and bāṇa (5) can subjugate. This pill should be given in eatables, food and drink as a charm.

13. (The herbs denoted by) ṛtwik (16), graha (9), aksī (2) and śaila (7) if had on the face (are effective) in paralysing weapons. One can remain in waters by besmeasuring limbs
with (the herbs denoted by) saila (7), Indra (1), veda (4) and randhra (9).

14. A pill of (the herbs denoted by) bana (5), aksi (2), manu (14) and rudra (11) removes hunger and thirst. A miserable woman would be made happy by besmearing with (herbs denoted by) tri (3), sodasha (16), dik (8) and bana (5).

15. One would (be able to) play with serpents by besmeared with (herbs denoted by) tri (3), dasa (10), aksi (2), dik (8) and netra (2). A woman delivers a child comfortably by an application of the unguent of (the herbs represented by) tri (3), dasa (10), aksi (2), isa (11) and bhujaga (8).

16. One is sure to win in dice (by wearing) a cloth besmeared with (the herbs represented by) sapta (7), dik (8), muni (3) and randhra (9). Male child (would be born) by besmearing the penis with (the herbs denoted by) tri (3), dasa (10), aksa (2), abdhi (7) and muni (3) before coition.

17. A pill made (of the herbs represented by) graha (9), abdhi (7), sarpya (8), tri (3) and dasa (10) would be able to charm. The efficacy of the herbs in the sixteen places has been explained.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FORTYONE

Description of herbs used in charms, medicines etc.

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the effect of the herbs arranged in 36 squares which were used by lords Brahma, Rudra and Indra and which if used make men immortals.

2-5. (They are)—haritaki, aksi, dhatri, marica, pippali, tilphā, vahni, sunthī, pippali, guḍūct, vacā, nimba, vāsaka, satamūli, saindhava, sindhu-vāraka, kanṭakāri, gokṣurakā, bilva, paunarnavā, balā, eranḍamunḍi, rucca, bhṛngā, ksāra, parpaṭa, dhanyaka, jiraka, satapusṭi, javānikā, viḍāṅga, khadira, kṛtamāla, haridrā, and siddharthā located in the 36 squares.
6-10. The herbs duly counted from one and placed in all squares are highly efficacious in curing ailments, making (men) immortal and cure wrinkles and baldness. Their crushed powder compounded and treated with mercury and used as an electuary with pieces of jaggery, honey or ghee or as an astringent or through the medium of ghee or oil taken by all would save their lives. One can take half a karṣa¹ or one karṣa or half a pala² or one pala and may live for 300 years although he may be pursuing an indisciplined way of life. There is no other combination more (efficacious) than this remedy reviving the dead.

11. One gets free from all diseases by the combination of the first nine (herbs). One gets free from aches by (the use of) second, third and fourth (herbs).

12. So also (one gets free from all diseases by the use of) six herbs from first to sixth as well as ninth.

13. One gets free from wind (affecting the body) by (the use of herbs) one to eight and from biles by agni (third) 'bhāskara (twelfth), twenty-sixth and twenty-seventh.

14. One gets cured of (deranged) phlegm by (the use of herbs) bāṇa (fifth), ṛtu (sixth), tāila (seventh) vasu (eighth) and tithi (fifteenth). (Herbs denoted by) veda (four), agni (three), bāṇa (five) and six would be (efficacious) against (diseases caused by) charm.

15. One would get freed from (all afflictions due to) planets and being possessed (by goblins) by (the due use of herbs denoted by) one, two, three, six, seven, eight, nine and eleven.

16. There is no doubt that (they would also be cured by herbs denoted) by thirty-two, fifteen and twelve. This knowledge relating to thirty-six places should not be imparted to everyone.

¹ One karṣa is equal to 16 māṣas where māṣa stands for the weight of a kind of grain.
² One pala is equal to 4 karṣas.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FORTYTWO

Description of medicinal incantations

The Lord said:

1-2. I shall describe the medicinal incantations and diagrams which yield all (desires). The number of letters composing the name of a thief should be doubled (and added to) the number of its syllables multiplied by four. (The total thus obtained) should be divided by (the number of letters in) the name (of a person) and if there be any remainder (he should be reckoned as) a thief. I shall describe (the process of reckoning) the birth (of a child). If there are odd numbers of letters in the question (put to the soothsayer), it indicates that the child in the womb would be a male.

3-4. (The child would be born) blind in the left eye if the letters in the name are even and in the right eye if the letters are odd. The number of letters composing the names of both the male and female should be multiplied by the number of their syllables and divided by four. (The quotient), if even, (would indicate the birth of) a female child and if odd, a male child. If there is no remainder, (it indicates) the death of the woman.

5. If there is no remainder in the former, (it indicates) the death of the husband first. In hoary science one should take the subtle akṣara in all divisions.

6-7. I shall describe the diagram of Saturn. One should avoid the aspect of that (Saturn) (at all times). (The Saturn in) its house has one hundred and fourteen (units) aspect at the seventh. It has one-fourth its aspect in the first, second, eighth and twelfth (places). One should avoid them. The lord of the day governs one eighth part of a day. The others govern half a yāma (three hours).

8-10a. One should avoid the period of Saturn during the battle. I shall describe the rule of Rāhu (the ascending node) on a day. It (lies) always at the east on Sunday, at south-east on Saturday, at the south on Thursday, at the north-west on Friday, at the south-east on Tuesday, and at the north on Wednesday, while the Phaṇirāhu lies enclosing at the north-east, south-east, south-west and north-west and kills one who sets on a journey against it.
10b-13. I shall describe the position of Rāhu on different days of a month. Rāhu kills the enemy facing it on the full moon day at the south-east and on new moon day at the north-west. Rāhu will lie facing on the days represented by (the letters) ka to ja and, in the south on (the days of) sa to da, in the east on (the days of) dha to ma and in the north on (the days of) ya to ha and one should avoid those associated with Mars in the bright (fortnight). Three lines towards the east and three lines towards the south (should be written) and then one should write from Sūryarāṣṭi onwards in the main division. (If battle is made) in the rāṣṭi aspected by Rāhu there will be defeat and victory if otherwise.

14-18a. I shall describe the viśṭirāhu. Eight lines should be drawn. The Rāhu, the great, moves with the viṣṭi (hell) from the north-east to the south, south to the north-west, from the north-west to the east, from the east to the west, from the southwest to the north, from the north to the south-east and then to the west and from the west to the north-east. The Rāhu kills the enemies on the third day (of a lunar month) in the north-east, on the seventh day in the south and so also in the dark and bright fortnights in the north-west. (One has to propitiate), Indra and others, Bhairava and others, brahmin and others and planets numbering eight in each class in the east and other (directions) and the vāṭa-yogini (the presiding goddess) in (the directions) south and others. One should kill the enemy in that direction in which the wind blows.

18b-19. I shall describe (the rite) that strengthens one. (The herb known as) śrāṇṇkhīkā if worn on the neck, arm etc. on (a day ruled by the asterism) Puṣya would prevent the (enemy’s weapon) striking at the neck. Aparājītā and Pāṭhā, the two (herbs) in the same manner would ward off the sword. (The following is the mantra to be used) :—Om. Obeisance. Goddess Vajraśrīkhalā ! Kill. Kill. Om. Devour. Devour. Om. Eat. Am. Eh. Drink the blood with the skull O Red-eyed one ! One having the red cloth ! One having the body besmeared with ashes ! One wielding the weapon of mace ! One who is covered by the action of the mace ! Close, close the eastern direction. Om. Close, close the southern direction. Om, Close, close the western direction. Om. Close, close the northern
direction. Bind, bind the serpents. Bind, bind the wives of the serpents. Om. Bind, bind the demons. Om. Bind, bind the Yakṣas, demons and goblins. Om. Guard, guard (me) from the dead, goblins and Gandharvas, whoever troubles me. Om. Guard, guard above. Om. Guard, guard below. Om. Bind, bind the knife. Om. Burn. One of great strength! Ghaṭi ghaṭoi: Om Moṭi moṭi satāvali. Fiery mace! One who strikes with the mace! Him phaṭ hrim hrūṃ strīm phaṭ hrim hah phūṃ phem phaū. From all planets, from all diseases from all wicked afflictions, hrim from all things guard, guard me. One should employ this in all acts such as those relating to the planets, fevers and goblins.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FORTYTHREE

Mode of worship of Goddess Kubjikā

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the mode of worship of (goddess) Kubjikā that accomplishes all comforts. (It is only by such worship) the celestials had conquered the demons together with their weapons and kingdom.

2-3. One should locate the māyābija (the secret basic mantra of the goddess) at the secret organ and the six (syllables) of the weapons on the hand. (One should say) Kālī, Kālī (and touch) the heart and Duṣṭacāṇḍālikā (vicious Cāṇḍālikā) (and touch) the head. "Hrim sphem ha sa kha ka cha ḍa syllable om Bhairava" (is the mantra to be said to touch) the tuft. Bhelaki (for) the kavaca (armour) and Dūṭī and Raktačaṇḍikā (for) the eyes.

4-5. (Then one should say) guhya Kubjikā (and touch) the weapon. One should worship (goddess Kubjikā) in the lotus at the centre and the seat at the south-east, the head at the north-east, the tuft at the south-west, the armour at the west, the eyes at the centre and the weapons in all directions of the circle in the thirty-two petals. The principal mantra (for the goddess Kubjikā is) ha, sa, kṣa, ma, la, na, va, vaṣaṇā.”

6. (The eight goddesses) Brahmāṇī, Māheśī, Kaumārī,
Vaiṣṇavī, Vārāhi, Māhendrī, Cāmuṇḍā and Caṇḍikā (should be worshipped) in the directions east onwards.

7-8. One has to (locate and) worship (the subtle letters) ra, va, la, ka, sa, and ha at the (petals at the) north-east, east, south-east, south, south-west and west. A garland of flowers and the five mountains such as Uḍḍīyāna, Jālandhara, Pūrṇagiri and Kāmarūpa should be worshipped at the north-west, north-east, south-east and south-west and (goddess) Kubjikā at the centre.

9-10. The five Vimalas such as Anādivimala, Sarvajña-vimala, Prasiddhavimala, Sarṇyogavimala and Samayavimala (should be worshipped at the tips (of the petals) at the north-west, north-east, south-west, south-east and north.

11-14. Khiṅkhini, Śaṣṭhā, Sopamā, Susthirā and Ratnasundarī (should be worshipped) in the north-east corner for (the worship of) Kubjikā. The eight Ādināthas—Mitra, Oḍīsa, Śaṣṭhi, Varṣa etc. (constituting) the jewels of heaven (should be worshipped) in the south-east, west and north-west and the kavacaratna (the excellent mantras serving as armour) in the west. (The syllable) ‘brum’ (should be worshipped) in the north-west, north-east and south-east together with the five basic letters. The five gems (the divine mothers) (should be located and worshipped) at the south and south-east. Among these, the three, Jyeṣṭhā, Raudrī and Antikā are very old. They and other goddesses and others (should be worshipped) with the five pranavas (syllable om). The worship is of two kinds—twentyseven and twentyeight.

15-17. Then (the god) Gaṇapati (lord of the attendant gods on Śiva and son of the latter) of the form of prapavas and a boy should be worshipped duly with (the mantra om em ām). Gaṇapati should be worshipped in a square diagram on the south. The Vaṭṭuka (form of Gaṇapati) (should be worshipped) on the left. The sixteen preceptors—nāthas (tāntrik preceptors) and eighteen nāthas should be worshipped in the north-west and other (directions). Then the gods Brahmā and others (should be worshipped) around in the six angular points. At the centre the nine gods (should be worshipped). This is always the mode of worship of (goddesses) Kubjikā, Kulaṭā etc.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FORTYFOUR

Mode of worship of goddess Kubjikā

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the worship of glorious Kubjikā who grants righteousness, wealth and victory. One should worship her together with her attendants with the basic mantra: Om aim hraum śrim khaim hrem ha, sa, kṣa, ma, la, va, ra, ya, āṁ Goddess! Mother! Hrām hrim kṣrim, kṣaum kṣūm kṛim Kubjikā! Hrim om ṅa, ṅa, ṅa, ma Aghoramukhi! Vāṁ chrām chīm kīli kīli kṣraum vicce khyōm śrim krom om hrom āṁ Vajrakubjini! Strīṁ Trailokyā-karśini (One who subjugates the three worlds)! Hrim Kāmāṅgadraṇī (one who melts away the god of love)! Hrīṁ strīṁ Mahākṣobhakārīni (the great agitator)! Aṁ hrīṁ kṣraum aṁ hrīṁ śrim pheṁ kṣaum obeisance. O Goddess! Kṣaum Kubjikā! hrīṁ kraiṁ ṅa, ṅa, ṅa, ma Aghoramukhi! Chrāṁ chāṁ vicce om kīli kīli.

2-4a. After locating the mantras on the hand and the body, one should perform the worship of twilight (addressed to the goddesses) Vāmā, Jyeṣṭhā and Raudrī. (The following is the mantra)—May we know you as Kulavāgīśi. Let me contemplate on (the goddess) Mahākālī. May (goddess) Kaulī impel us to the same. There are five mantras such as praṇava etc. (The votary should say) “I am worshipping the sandals.” The name (should be) at the middle, ending with (the term) obeisance with eighteen bija (letters). Then (the name of the goddess) in the sixth (declensional) case with (the term) ‘obeisance’ and the end. I shall describe all of them to be known.

4b-12. Kauḷīśanātha, Sukalā, Kubjikā from the birth, Śrīkaṇṭhanātha, Kauleśa, Gaganāṇandanātha, Cāṭulādevī, Mai-trīśī, Karāḷi, Tūrṇanāthaka, Ataladevī, Śrīcandrādevī are their names. (These should be invoked) as stupefying the attendants of Śiva and the sandals should be worshipped. Then the sandal endowed with gems that excel the bliss in the world should be worshipped. Brahmajñānā, Kamalā and Paramā together with Vidyā (should also be worshipped). I shall describe the threefold purifications of vidyā (knowledge), Devī (goddess) and guru (preceptor). By means of the sōḍdaṇyāsa (six ways of touching...
the body with mystical letters) the following deities should be located in the body—Gagana, Caṭulī, Ātmā, Padmāmadda, Manī, Kalā, Kamalā, Māṇikyakaṇṭha, Gagana, Kumuda, Śrī, Padma, Bhairava, Ānanda, Deva, Kamala, Śiva, Bhava, Kṛṣṇa, the nine and then sixteen siddhas—Candrapāṭra, Gulma, Śubha, Kāma, Atimuktaka, Viraktaka, Prayoga, Kuśala, Devabhoga, Viśvedeva, Khaḍgadeva, Rudra, Asidhanya, Mudrāśphoṭa, Varnśapūra and Bhoja.

13-14. After having put flowers on the circle, the circles (of the deities) should be worshipped. Then one should worship Ananta, Mahānanta, sandals of Śiva, mahaṃvyāpti (the great pervading force), the void circle consisting of five principles, sandals of Śrīkaṇṭhanātha and Śaṅkara and Ananta.

15. One should worship within the circle Sadāśiva, Piṅgala, Bhṛgvināṇa, Nāṭhaka, Rāṅgūlānanda and Sarivarta.

16-18. Śrīmahākāla, Piṅkī, Mahendraka, Khaḍgā, Bhujaṅga, Bāṇa, Aghāsi, Śabdaka, Vaśa, Ājñārūpa and Nandarūpa should be worshipped in the south-west after making the offering (victim) (with the following mantra)—Hrōm kham kham hūṃ saum (obeisance) to (god) Vaṭuka. Aru aru (you) accept, accept argha (water offered as token of respect), flower, incense, lamp, perfumes and bali (offering). Obeisance to you. Oṁ hrōm hrim hūṃ kṣem (obeisance) to the guardian of the ground. (You) descend, descend. One bearing the great grown matted hair! One having a face shining with the flames in the three eyes! (You) come. Come. Accept, accept worship with perfumes, flowers and bali (offering). Khaḥ, khaḥ, oṁ khaḥ, oṁ laḥ om oblations to the lord of great dāmara (uproar). The trikūṭa (the three groups) should be worshipped with (the syllables) hrim hrim hūṃ śrim and the offering of the remnant of bali in the left, right and middle. The sandals of Niśāṇātha (are worshipped) in the south, Tandrinātha on the right and Kālānala in the front.

19-24. The mountains Uḍḍiyāṇa, Jālandhara, Pūrṇa and Kāmarūpa and the five gems Gaganānandadeva, Svargānanda, Paramānandadeva, the sandals of Satyānanda and Nāgānanda (should be worshipped) in the north. One should worship the six—the sandal of Suranātha (Indra), Śrīsamayakoṭīśa, Vidyākoṭīśvara, Koṭīśa, Bindukoṭīśa and Siddhakoṭīśvara in the north-
east. The siddhacatuṣka (four siddhas)—Amarīśeśvarā, Cakrī-
śanātha, Kuraṅgeśa, Vṛtreśa and Candranāthaka should be
worshipped in the south-east with perfumes etc. The Vimala-
paṇcaka (five Vimalas)—Anādivimala, Sarvajñavimala, Yogī-
śavimala, Siddha (vimala) and Samaya (vimala) (should be
worshipped) in the south.

25. One should worship the four gods Kandarpanātha
and others, all the female energies already described and the
sandals of (goddess) Kubjikā.

26. (The votary) should always worship the thousand-eyed
and blemishless (god) Viṣṇu and (god) Śiva with the mantra
of nine syllables or five praṇava (mantras).

27-37. Brahmā and other gods (should be worshipped)
from the east to the north-east. (The goddesses) Brahmāni,
Māheśvarī, Kaumārī, Vaiṣṇavī, Vārāhī, Indrāṇī, Cāmuṇḍā
and Mahālakṣmī should be worshipped from the east to the
north-east. (The goddesses) Dākinī, Rākiṇī, Kākinī, Śākinī
and Yākinī should be worshipped in the six directions (commenc-
ing) from the north-west. The goddess composed of thirty-
two letters should be worshipped with five praṇavas or syllable
hrim. She should be contemplated upon as of dark complexion
like the petals of blue lotus, having six faces, of six kinds, as
eighteen kinds of cicchakti (faculties of the mind), possessing
twelve arms, seated comfortably on the throne, remaining on
the lotus of absolute dead (of primordial matter), and shining
with the splendour of multitudes of kulas. She should also be
contemplated as having Karkoṭaka (one of the eight principal
cobras) as the girdle, Takṣaka (a cobra) above, Vāsuki (a
cobra) as a garland on the neck, Kulika (a cobra) on the ears,
the tortoise as the ear-stud, (the serpents) Padma and Mahā-
padma forming the eye-brows, and having skull, a serpent,
rosary, a club with a skull at the top, a conch and a look in her
left (hand) and a trident, a mirror, a sword, a garland of gems,
dart and a bow in the right (hand). The upper front face of the
goddess (should be contemplated) as having a white complexion
and elevated, the eastern face pale, the southern one angry, the
western face of black colour, and the northern one of the colour
of snow and jasmine. Moreover, Brahmā (should be imagined
to be) as remaining at the foot, Viṣṇu at the buttocks, Rudra at
the heart, Ishvara at the neck, Sadashiva at the forehead, Siva as remaining above her. Kubjikā should thus be contemplated as whirling in all acts of worship.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FORTYFIVE

Different kinds of mantras and the rites of locating them

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe different kinds of mantras preceded by sōdhānyāsa (the six ways of touching the body with the mantras). There are three kinds of sōdhānyāsa—the śākta, Śambhava and yāmala devoted to the goddess, lord Siva and both).

2-3. In the Śambhava (rite), the six terms would have sixteen knots. The three kinds of knowables are related to the nyāsa of this kind. It connotes the principles. The fourth (nyāsa) is of the vanamālā of twelve ślokas (letters). The fifth (nyāsa) (is known as) the Rānapāścātmā (comprising the five gems) and the sixth one is said to be the Nāvatmā (comprising nine).

4-17. In the case of śākta (nyāsa), (the first one is) Mālinī (nyāsa) the second one (is) trividā, the next one (third is the nyāsa of) the eight aghoris. The fourth one (is on) the twelve parts (of the body). The fifth one is (of) six parts. (The sixth one) is of the astracaṇḍikā of the form of śakti (goddess). Kṛm hraum klim śrīm krum phat (are the mantras in the above) three, known as the fourth accomplishing everything. The mālini would be from na to pha. The nādinī is known to be the tuft. The agrasani would be on the head. (The letter) śa (should be) like a garland around the head. (The letter) ta (representing) peace be (on) the head. (Goddess) Cāmunḍā (be) on the three eyes. (The letter) dhā (denoting) pleasing look (should be) on the two eyes. (The goddess) Guhyaśaktinī (should be) on the nostrils. (The letter) na (standing for) (goddess) Nārāyaṇī (should be) on the two ears. (The letter) ta that stupefied (should be) on the right ear. (The letter) ja (representing) wisdom (should) remain on the left ear. (Goddess) Vajrini is known to be on the face. (The letter) ka (representing) (the goddess) Karāli (of horrible
features) (should be on) the right tooth. (The letter) kha (representing) (the goddess) Kapālinī (bedecked with human skulls) (should be on) the left shoulder. (The letter) ga (representing the goddess) Śivā be (on) the upper tooth. (The letter) gha (representing the goddess) Ghorā (should be on the left tooth. (The letter) u (denoting the goddess) Śikhā has her place on the tooth. (The letter) i (representing the goddess) Māyā is represented by the tongue. (The letter) a should be (located) as (the goddess) Nāgeśvarī in the words. (The letter) va (representing the goddess) Śikhivāhinī (having peacock as the vehicle) (is located) in the throat. (The letter) bha (representing the goddess) Bhīṣāni (frightening) (is located) on the right shoulder. The letter ma (representing the goddess) Vāyuvegā (swift as the wind) (should be located) on the left (shoulder). (The letter) da (denoting) Nāmā (should be located) in the right arm. (The letter) dha (representing the goddess) Vināyakā (remover of obstacles) on the left arm. (The letter) pa (denoting) Pūrṇimā (the full moon) (be located) on the two hands. The syllable om etc. should be (located) on the ring fingers. (The letter) am (be represented by) Darśanī (one who exhibits) on the finger of the left (hand). (The letter) ah be (located) on the hand (representing) Sañjīvanī (the vitalising force). (The letter) ta (be located on) the skull (representing) Kapālinī (the goddess wearing garland of skulls). (The letter) ta (representing) Dīpanī (the goddess who illuminates) (be located) on the staff of the spear. (The letter) ca (representing) Jayantī (the goddess who is victorious) be (located) on the trident. (The letter) ya is remembered to be Sādhanī (one who accomplishes) (as representing) the process of growth. (The letter) sa known to be Paramā (the Supreme goddess) be (located) in the soul. (The letter) ha remembered to be (representing) Ambikā (the mother goddess) be (located) in the vital principle of life. (The letter) cha (representing) Śarīrā (the goddess with a visible body) (be located) on the right breast. (The letter) na (representing) Pūtanā (the demoness) (be located) on the left breast. (The letter) za (be looked upon as permeating) the breast milk. (The letter) ā (representing) the crushing Lambodarī (the big-bellied goddess) (be located) in the belly. (The letter) kṣa representing Samhārikā (the goddess of destruction) may be (located) on the navel. Mahākāli (the
most ferocious goddess) (be located) at the buttocks. (The letter) sa (representing) Kusumamālā (the goddess wearing garland of flowers) (be located) in the arms. (The letter) śa (representing) Śukradevikā (the goddess of fertility) (be located) in the semen. (The letter) ta (representing) Tārā may be (located) on the two thighs. (The letter) da (signifying) Jñānā (the goddess of knowledge) (be located) on the right knee. (The letter) au (representing) u Kriyāśakti (the energy of activity) may be (located) in the left (knee). The letter ro (denoting) Gāyatrī (the personification of the mantra of that name) be located in the groins. (The letter) o (representing goddess) Śāvitrī (be located) on the left groin. (The letter) do (representing) (goddess) Dohinī (be located) on the right (groin).

18-31. (The letter) pha (representing the goddess) Phetkārī (should be located) at the left foot. I shall describe the rite relating to the Mālīni-mantra of nine parts. (It is as follows). (The letter) a (denoting the god) Śrīkaṇṭha be (located) on the tuft. (The letter) ā (representing the god) Ananta be (located) on the facc. (The letter) i (standing for the god) Śūkṣma be (located) on the right eye. (The letter) i (signifying the lord) Trimūrti (of three forms) (be located) at the left (eye). (The letter) u (representing) Amariśa (the lord of celestials) (be located) at the right ear. (The letter) ū representing Ardhamāsaka¹ (one who has assumed half of the divine form) (be located) at the other ear (left ear). (The letter) r (denoting) Bhāvabhūti (the lord of ensuing fortune) (be located) at the tip of the nose. (The letter) r (denoting) Tīrthīśa (the lord of the day) (be located) on the left nostril. (The letter) l (representing) Sthānu (of the form of a pillar) should be (located) at the right cheek. (The letter) i (signifying lord) Hara (should be located) at the left cheek. (The letter) o (standing for) Kaṭiśa (be located) at the rows of teeth. (The letter) ai (representing) Bhūtīśa (the lord of fortunes) (should be located) at the upper (row of) teeth. (The letter) o (denoting) Sadyojāta (one of the five forms of Śiva) (should be located) on the lower lip. (The letter) au (standing for) Anugraḥīśa (one who confers blessing) (should be located) at the upper lips. (The

¹. This may denote one half of either the combined form of Śiva and Viṣṇu or that of Śiva and his consort.
letter) am (denoting) Krūra (the cruel one) be (located) at the back of the neck. (The letter) aṅ (signifying) Mahāsena (the lord of huge army) be (located) in the tongue. (The letters) ka, kha, ga, gha, ṇa, ca, cha, ja, jha, ṇa, ta, tha, da, dha, na, pa, pha, ba, bha, ma, ra, la, va, sa, ṣa, ṣa, sa, ha and kṣa respectively denoting Krodhīśa (lord of wrath), Caṇḍīśa (consort of Caṇḍī), Pañcāntaka (the destroyer of the five elements), Śikhī (tufted), Ekapāda (one-footed), Kūrmaka (manifest as the tortoise), Ekanetra (one-eyed), Caturvaktra (having four faces), Rājasa (possessing the quality of rajas—passion) Sārvakāmada (one who confers all desires), Su-meśa (lord of moon), Dakṣa (Able), Lāṅgalī (wielder of the plough), Dāruka (lord of woods), Ardhajaleśvara (lord of half the watery region), Umākānta (consort of Umā (Pārvatī)). Āśādhi (holding a kind of wood), Daṇḍī (holding a stick), Bhīda (one who breaks), Mīna (of the form of the fish), Meṣa (of the form of the ram), Lohita (of red complexion), Śikhī (tufted), Galartha (?), Dvīraṇḍaka (?) Mahākāla (the great god of darkness at the time of deluge), Vānīśa (the god of speech), Bhūjaṅgeśa (the lord of serpents), Piṅāki (the wielder of the bow piṅaka), Khadgeśa (the lord of the sword), Baka, Śveta (Śiva's manifestation as the sage), Bhṛgu (a sage), Nakulīśa (a manifestation of Śiva) and Śāmvarata (lord of destruction) (may be respectively) (located) on the right shoulder, arms, elbow, right wrist, fingers, left shoulder, arms, elbow, wrist, fingers, buttocks, right thigh, right knee, leg from the ankle to the knee, fingers, buttocks, left thigh, left knee, left leg from the ankle to the knee, toes, right belly, left belly, the back bone, navel, heart, memory, blood, flesh, one's own self (soul), bones, marrow, semen, life force and sheaths (of human organism). One would get all things by the worship of the energy of Rudra with the syllable hrim.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FORTYSIX

Names of different goddesses

The lord said:

1. I shall describe the three parts (of mantras) relating to (the gods) Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Mahēśvara. Om obeisance to the lord Rudra. Obeisance. Obeisance to Cāmuṇḍā. Obeisance to the (divine) mothers in the ethereal region who accomplish all the desired materials, who have unobstructed movement everywhere, who transform their forms, who are engaged in doing all deeds of sattva, vaśikaraṇa, utsādana and unmūlana (pacification, attraction, destruction and eradication). The secret (mantra) of all the divine mothers, the most accomplished one which nullifies the incantations of others and accomplishes the supreme (thing)! (The following) one hundred and twenty-one (terms) are in the section of Brahmā. They are as follows: Om obeisance. Cāmuṇḍā (a terrific form of Durgā)! Brahmāṇī (consort of Brahmā)! Aghorā (not terrific)! Amogha (infallible)! Varadā (conferer of boons)! Viçcā (one who shines)! Oblations. Om obeisance. O Cāmuṇḍā! Māheśvarī (consort of Lord Śiva)! Aghorā! Amogha! Varadā! Viçcā! Oblations. Om obeisance. O Cāmuṇḍā! (one having a maiden-form)! Aghora! Amogha! Varadā! Viçcā! Oblations. Om obeisance. O Cāmuṇḍā! Vaiṣṇavī (relating to Viṣṇu)! Aghorā! Amogha! Varadā! Viçcā! Oblations. Om obeisance. O Cāmuṇḍā! Vārahī (the sakti of Viṣṇu in the form of the boar)! Aghorā! Amogha! Varadā! Viçcā! Oblations. Om obeisance. O Cāmuṇḍā! Indrāṇī (the consort of Indra)! Aghorā! Amogha! Varadā! Viçcā! Oblations. Om obeisance. O Cāmuṇḍā! Cāṇḍi! (name of Durgā)! Aghorā! Amogha! Varadā! Viçcā! Oblations. Om obeisance. O Cāmuṇḍā! Iśāṇī (related to the Iśāna form of Śiva)! Aghorā! Amogha! Varadā)! Viçcā! Oblations.

2. The second part relating to Viṣṇu has equal number of terms (as follows): Om obeisance. O Cāmuṇḍā! One who has erect hairs (on the head)! One who has flames on her head! One whose tongue is like lightning! One whose eyes are sparkling like stars! One who has tawny brows! One who has uneven teeth! The Angry one! Om, One who is fond
of flesh, blood, wine and spirituous liquor! (You) laugh, laugh. 
Om dance, dance. Om yawn, yawn. Om bind, bind, Om to all 
those thousands of sorceres who change the form of three 
worlds by their incantations! Om thrash, thrash. Om ciri ciri. 
Om hiri hiri. Om bhiri bhiri. One who frightens and frightens. 
One who whirls round and whirls round. One who makes 
(something else) melt and melt. One who agitates and agitates. 
One who kills and kills. One who revives and revives. Heri 
heri geri geri gheri gheri om muri muri om obeisance to the mothers. 
Obeisance. Obeisance. Vicca. (There are) thirtyone terms for 
Sambhu (Siva) and the syllables (are) one hundred and seventy-
one.

3-21. One should repeat trikhaṇḍi (mantra) (mantra of 
three parts) (with the syllables) he and ghaum preceded and 
followed by the five praṇavas (omkāras) and worship. The sacred 
secret mantra he ghaum of (the goddess) Kubjikā should be added 
in between the terms. It should be in the middle of the three 
akulādi, the three kulādi, the three madhyama and the piṇḍa at the 
foot. It must have one and a half vowels and praṇava etc. (at 
the) tuft of Śivā. Om kṣrauṁ obeisance to Śikhambhairava. Skhim 
Skhim Skhem the three letters with the bija (basic) mantra. Ḥrām 
hrim hram without the bija, the three waters and the supreme 
three two letters. The letters kṣa, ka are the akula (mantras) 
according to the order of Kula. (The goddesses of energy are) 
Śaśinī (goddess in the moon), Bhānavi (the energy in the sun), 
Pāvanī (the purifier), Śivā, Gāndhārī (whose essence is the 
letter) na, Piṇḍākṣi (of round eyes), Capalā (fickle-minded), 
Gajajihvikā (tongue like that of an elephant). (The letter) 
ma represents (the goddesses) Mrṣā (untruth) and Bhayasāra 
(the essence of fear). (The letter) pha (represents) (goddesses) 
Madhyamā (the middle one), Ajarā (without aging). (The 
letter) na represents (goddesses) Kumārī (maiden), Kālarātrī 
(dreadful night at the time of deluge). (The letters) da and dha 
respectively represent (goddesses) Śaṅkaṭā (difficulty) and 
Kālikā (of dark complexion). (The letter) pha (represents) Śivā 
(consort of Śiva), na—Bhavaghora (the frightening god of the 
cycle of existence), ṭha—Bibhatsā (disgusting one), ta—Vidyutā 
(the goddess in the form of the lightning), ṭha—Viśvambharā 
(the sustainer of the universe). (The letter) āha (is the repre-
sentation) of Śaṁsinī (the goddess of doubt), Jvālāmālā (gar-
land of flames), Karālī (ugliness), Durjayā (invincible), Raṅgī (sportive), Vāmā (beautiful), Jyeṣṭhā (the eldest) and Raudrī (terrible). (The letter) kha (represents) Kālī (the goddess of time), ka—Kulālambī (goddess regulating succession of events), da—Anulomā (of descending order) and Piṇḍinī (regulating the three primordial forces), ā—Vedinī (of the form of pain), i—Sāntimūrti (of the form of peace) and Kalākulā (embodying the arts), ṝ—Khaḍginī (the sword-wielding goddess), u—Balī (strong), l—kulā (belonging to the kula class), l—Subhagā (fortunate), Vedanā (pains), r—Karālī (dreadful), am—Madhyamā (middle one) and ah—Apetarayā (unimpetuous). These goddesses of energy should be duly worshipped on the altar. Skhāṃ skhīṃ skhaum obeisance to the great Bhairava. (The goddesses) Akṣodhyā (uncrushable), Akṣakarnī (eyes reaching up to the ear), Rākṣasī (demoness), Kṣapāṅkṣayā (indestructible), Piṅgākṣī (having tawny coloured eyes), Akṣayā (undecaying), Kṣemā (of the form of welfare), and Brahmāṇī (energy relating to Brahmā) are the eight (belonging to the group of Brahmāṇī). (The goddesses) Ilā (representing the earth), rilāvatī (sportive), Nīlā (blue-coloured), Laṅkā, Laṅkeśvarī, Lālasā (extreme desire), Vimalā (spotless) constitute the group of Māheśvarī (relating to Śiva). (The goddesses) Hutāśanā (fire), Viśālakṣī (large-eyed), Hruṅkārī (of the form of syllable hrūṃ) Vāḍavāmukhiḥ (having volanic fires in the mouth) Hāhārāvā (having wailing sound), Krūrā (cruel), Kroḍhā (angry), Bālā (graceful) and Kharānanā (having the face of an ass) had their origin from the body of (the goddess) Kaumārī (virginity). (They are) accomplishes of all things when worshipped. (The goddesses) Sarvajnā (omniscient), Tarā (tremulous), Tārā (shining), Ṛgvedā (the goddess of the Ṛgveda), Hayānā (horse-faced), Sārā (essence), Sārasvayaṅgrāhā (one who herself absorbs the essence) and Śāśvatī (eternal one) (had their origin) in the family of (goddess) Vaiṣṇavī (relating to Viṣṇu). (The goddesses) Tālujihvā (of the form of a crocodile), Raktākṣī (red-eyed), Vidyujjhāvā (lightning like tongue), Kāraṅkiniḥ (having the skull), Meghanādā (sounding like the cloud), Pracaṇḍogrā (terribly ferocious), Kālakarnī (representing nisfortune) and Kalipriyā (fond of strife) were born of the family of (the goddess) Vārāhī (relating to the boar form). They should be worshipped by those who seek victory.
(The goddesses) Campê, Campêvañi, Pracampê, Jvalitânâna (having flaming face), Piśâcî (of the form of a demoness), Picuvakrâ and Lolupâ (ardently longing) are born of (the goddess) Aindrî (relating to Indra). (The goddesses) Pâvanî, Yâcanî, Vâmanî, Dâmanî, Binduvelâ, Brhatkukśî, Vidyutânanâ Viśvarûpinî born in the family of goddess Câmunḍâ should be worshipped in the circle of victory. (The goddesses) Yamajihvâ (frightening tongue), Jayantî (victorious), Durjayâ (unconquerable), Yamântikâ (one who subdues the god of death), Biḍâlî (a female cat), Revatî, Jayâ (victorious) and Vijayâ (victorious) were born in the class of (goddess) Mahâlakṣmî. Thus the eight (goddesses) in the eight groups of (goddesses) have been explained.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FORTYSEVEN

Mode of worshipping the goddess Twaritâ and others

*The Lord said:*

1-2. *Om Guhyakubjikâ (Goddess Kubjikâ of secret powers) ! Hum phat.* You destroy and destroy all my miseries and also whatever incantations of the form of yantra (written on a plate), mantra (repetition of some syllables), tantra (use of mystic syllables) and cûrça (powders) done or made to do by some one, or being done, or would be done or would be made to do. O One possessing frightening teeth! *Hraîm hrim hum* oblations to Guhyakubjikâ. *Hraîm om khe vom* obeisance to Guhyakubjikâ. *Hrim.* One who subjugates all people! One who attracts the people! *Om kham khyam.* One who attracts all people be the stupefier of the people. *Om khyaum.* One who paralyses all people! *aîm kham khrám.* Agitator. *Aîm* the basic syllable comprising the three principles, that which is excellent in the kula (system). The five-syllabled mantra. *Pham śrim kṣim śrim hrim kṣem O Jacchâ ! kse kse hrim phat hrim obeisance. Om hram kse Vaccâ kse kso hrim phat.* Thus the *tvaritâ mantras* are of nine kinds. They must be known and they confer victory if propitiated.
3. The seat should be (offered) with (the mantra)\(^*\) hraum\(^h\) to the lioness. (The mantra) hrim kše is said to be the heart. Vacchā! Oblations to the head. This (mantra) of Tvaritā is remembered in the tuft.

4. Kšem hrim vausāt be (the mantra) for the tuft. Kšem hum would be for the armour. Hrūm vausāt (be) for the three eyes ending with hrim and phat.

5. (The names of) the nine (goddesses of) energy (are) Hrīṃkārī, Khecarī, Caṇḍā, Chedanī, Kṣobhanī, Kriyā, Kṣemakārī, Hrīṃkārī and Phāṭkārī.

6-8. Now, I shall describe the envoys (companions) of the goddess Tvaritā, to be worshipped in the directions east and others. Hrīṃ Nalā! Possessing thick lips and who moves in the sky. Hrīṃ Khecarā (one whose region of movement is the sky)! Embodied as glowing flames! Burn, kha khe cha che. Frightening like the dead body! Ca che O Caṇḍā (fierce)! Chedanī (one who breaks)! Karāli (dreadful)! kha khe che khe. One whose physical constituents are (the letters) kha, ra and ha. Hrīṃ kše va kše O Kapilā (tawny-coloured)! Ha kše hṛūm kum Jejovatī (resplendent)! Raudrī (one in rage)! O Mother! Hrīṃ uhe ve phe phe Vakrā (crooked one)! Varī phe puṭi puṭi ghore (frightening one)! Hrūm phat Brahmavetāli! Middle one! I shall again describe the secret mantras and principles relating to (the goddess) Tvaritā. Hraim hram hāḥ are said to be (located) at the heart. Harum and ha are remembered to be (for) the head. Phāṭ sparkles sparkles (is) for the tuft. Vara ilā hram hum krom kṣūṃ sṛṃ is said (to be for) the eye. Kṣaum (is) for the weapon. Or (the mantras) phat hum khe vacche kṣe hrim kšem hum phat (is said) then. O Hum for the head must be in the middle. Khe at the beginning. O Sadāsivā (ever benevolent one). Va (for) Ṛṣaḥ, che (for) Manonmanī, ma and kṣe (for) the Garuḍa, hraum for Mādhava, kšem (for) Brahmā, hum (for) Āditya. The (mantra) phat hraum is always remembered as cruel.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FORTYEIGHT

Mode of worship for success in the battle

The Lord said:

1-7. Om de kha khyāṃ. Obeisance to Sun, the victorious in the battle, hrāṃ, hrīṃ, hrūṃ, hreṃ, hrom, hraḥ. These are the six mantras for the Sun, who confers success in the battle. Om ham kham oblations to Khakholka. Sphūṃ hrūṃ hum krūṃ śrīṃ hom krem. The eight attributes prabhūta (plenty), vimala (spotless), sāra (essence), ārādhya (to be worshipped), parama (supreme), sukhā (happiness), dharmajñāna (knowledge of righteousness) and vairāgya (firm resolve) should be worshipped. Then the seats anantāsana (having ananta, the serpent as the seat), simhāsana (the lion seat), padmāsana (lotus seat) should be worshipped. Then the pericarps N (of the mystic diagram) consisting of the spheres of sun, moon and fire such as Diptā (luminous), Sūkṣmā (subtle), Jayā (victorious), Bhadrā! (conferring safety), Vibhāti (fortune), Vimalā (spotless), Amoghā (infallible), Vidyutā (lightning) and Sarvatomukhī (having face every side), the ninth one, should be worshipped. Then one should worship (the qualities) sattva, rajas and tamas, prakṛti (the source of the material world) and puruṣa (the soul), one's soul, one's inner soul and the supreme soul. All the endowed with the bindu and māyānīla. One should worship Uṣā (dawn), Prabhā (lustre), Sandhyā (twilight), Sāyam (evening), Māyā (mysterious), Balā (strong), Bindu (dot) and endowed with Viṣṇu. The eight attendant gods at the entrance such as Sūrya, Cānda, pracaṇḍa and others should be worshipped with perfumes etc. One would be victorious in the battle etc. by the worship, meditation and oblation.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FORTYNINE

Mode of performing lakṣa and koṭishoma

The Lord said:

1. A homa (oblation) performed after having practised the
prāṇāyāma (control of breath) hundred times and purifying with the rite of kṛcchra, confers victory in battle, gets kingdom and destroys obstacles.

2-5. After having repeated gāyatri (mantra) (remaining) in the water, one should perform prāṇāyāma sixteen times. Oblation of havis (clarified butter) should be made into fire in the forenoon. One should eat only that which has been procured after begging or eat only fruits and roots. One should take only single morsel of food such as milk or flour or ghee. O Pārvatī! as soon as the (rite of a) lakh of oblations concludes, one should give cows, clothes and gold as fees. (The oblation should be done) by fifteen brahmins in the case of all disasters that befall. There is no disaster in the world that does not get warded off by this oblation.

6-10. There is no such benevolent (rite) that could excel this (rite). A king, whosoever, arranges to do the rite of koṭihoma (making a crore oblations) as before (employing) the brahmins, his enemies cannot face him in battle any time. There cannot also be any disease in his country that would kill him. (By its virtue) excessive rainfall, deficient rainfall, mice, crickets, parrots demons and others get controlled. So also the enemies (get controlled) in the battle. One should employ twenty or a hundred or a thousand brahmins for the performance of koṭihoma. One would get fortunes as much as one desired. A brahmin or a king or a tradesman, whoever may perform the koṭihoma, would get whatever was desired by him. (Moreover) he would go to heaven with his mortal frame.

11.15. By the performance of this homa with the gāyatri (mantra), or the mantras of planets, or those used in the (rite known as) kuśmāṇḍa or those addressed to the Fire God or the gods of directions east, west, north-west, south and south-east or the mantras relating to (lord) Viṣṇu or the goddesses or Śambhu (Śiva) or Sun, one would get lesser benefits (if it is done) for ten thousand times. One who does homa a lakh times would be able to get rid of all distress. The all-yielding koṭihoma (is done) for the destruction of all afflictions. The following materials should be used for oblations—barley, paddy, sesamum, milk, ghee, kuśa, prasāṭikā (a variety of rice), petals of lotus, uṣtra (the fragrant root of a plant) and bilva. In the koṭihoma the fire-pit should measure eight cubits. Half
its measure is laid down in the oblation for a lakh times. Thus the mode of performance of oblation ten thousand lakh and crore times have been explained.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY

Names of different Manus, different sages and others during their periods

The Fire-god said:

1-5. I shall describe the Manu periods. Svāyambhuva is (the name of) the first Manu. Agnīdhra and others (were) his sons. The celestials (were) known as Yama¹. Indra (was a performer of) hundred sacrifices. In the period of (the second Manu) Svārociśa, the seven sages (were) Aurva and others. Indra (was) Vipaścit. Pārāvatas and Tuṣitas (were) the celestials. Urja, Stambha and others (were) the brahmins. Caitra, Kimpuruṣa and others (were) the sons. The third Manu (was) Uttama. Indra (was) Suśānti. Sudhāma and others born in the family of Vasiṣṭha (were) the seven sages. Aja and others (were) their sons. Tāmasa Manu was the fourth. Svarūpa and others (were) the celestials. Śikhi², Jyotirddhāma and others (were) the sages and Navakhyāti and others his sons.

6. In the (period of the fifth Manu) Raivata, Vitatha³ (was) the Indra, Amitābhas were the celestials, Hiranya⁴romā and others were the sages and Balabandha and others were his sons.

7. In the (period of the sixth Manu), Cākṣuṣa, Manojava (was) the Indra. Svāti and others (were) the celestials, Sumedhā and others (were) the sages and Puru and others (were) the sons.

8-15. Śrāddhadeva, son of Vivasvān (Sun) (was) the next Manu. Ādityas. Vasus and Rudras (were) the celestials. Purandara (was) the Indra. Vasiṣṭha, Kāśyapa, Atri,

1. For their different names see Vi.P. I, vii. 7-21 and III. i-ii.
2. Vi.P. III. i. 17 reads Śibi.
3. Vi.P. III.1. 20 reads Vibhu.
4. Vi.P. III.1. 23 reads Balabandhu.
Jamadagni, Gautama, Viśvāmitra and Bharadvāja (were) the seven sages. Ikṣvāku and others (were his sons). Lord Viṣṇu was manifest with a part (of his energy in each one of these periods). He was born as Mānasa in the (period of) Svāyambhūva and Ajita in the next one (that of Svārociṣa). Then (he was born as) Satya, Hari, Devavara, Vaikuṇṭha and Vāmana (in the respective Manu periods which followed). The eighth Manu would be born as the son of Sūrya and Chāyā. As he would be a cognate of his predecessor, this eighth Manu to come (would be known as) Sāvarṇi. Sutapā and others (would be) the clans of celestials. Dīptimān Drauṇi (Aśvatthāmā) and others (would be) the sages. Bali (would be) the Indra. Viraja and others (would be) the sons. The ninth (Manu would be) Dakṣasā-varṇi. Pāra and others (would be) the celestials. Ādbhuta (would be) the Indra. Savana and others (would be) the sages. Dhṛtaketu and others (would be) (his) sons. The next (Manu would be) Brahmasāvarṇī. Sukha and others (would be) celestials. Śānti (would be) their Indra. Haviṣya and others (would be) the sages. Sukṣetra and others (would be) the sons of that (Manu).

16-19. (The eleventh Manu would be) Dharmasāvarṇī. Vihaṅga and others (would be) the celestials then. The Indra (would be Vṛṣa)\(^1\). Niścara\(^2\) and others (would be) the sages. The sons of Manu (would be) Sarvatraga and others. Rudra Sāvarṇī would be (the twelfth) Manu. Štadhāmā (would be) the Indra and Harita and others (would be) the celestials. Tapas and others (would be) the seven sages. Devavān and others (would be) the sons. The thirteenth Manu (would be) Raucya. Sutramāṇa and others (would be) the celestials. Divaspati (would be) their Indra who routs the demons etc. Nirmoha and others (would be) the seven sages. Citrasena and others (would be) the sons.

20-22. The fourteenth Manu (would be) Bhautya. Śuci would be the Indra. Cāṅṣṣa and others (would be) the celestials. Agnibāhu and others (would be) the sages. Uru and others (would be) the sons of Bhautya, the fourteenth Manu. The seven sages (would descend) to the world from the heavens.

2. Vi.P. III.ii.30 reads Nissvara.
and propagate the *Vedas*. Then (the respective) celestials would partake the oblations of sacrifices and the earth would be protected by the sons (of Manus). O Brahmin! Fourteen Manus (will reign) in the course of a day of Brahmā.

23. Lord Hari (Viṣṇu), who preceded the Manus, divided the *Veda* at the end of the *dvāpara*\(^1\) (*yuga*). The first *Veda* had four parts consisting of a lakh (of verses).

24-26. The *Yajurveda* originally a single work was divided into four. The sage (arranged) the office of an *adhvaryu*\(^2\) priest (to be done) with the *Yajurveda*), the *hotra*\(^3\) with the *Rks*, the *audgātra*\(^4\) with the *Sāmans* and *brahmata*\(^5\) (relating to omissions and anecdotes) with the *Atharvan*. Paila, the disciple of Vyāsa and proficient in the *Rgveda* imparted the first (*Veda*) to Indrapramiti and the *samhitā* (part) to Bāśkala. He also (divided) that *samhitā* into four parts and gave it to Baudhāya and others.

27-30. The great man of intellect Vaiśampāyana, the disciple of Vyāsa, divided the tree of *Yajurveda* into seven branches. The Kāṇvas, Vājasaneyas and others are known to be (the branches founded) by Yājñavalkya and others. Jaimini, the disciple of Vyāsa, divided the tree of *Sāmaveda* into branches and Sumantu and Sukarmā received one part of the *samhitā*. Sukarmā had received one thousand *samhitā* text. Sumantu, the disciple of Vyāsa, divided the tree of *Atharvaveda*. He imparted it to thousands of Paippalāda, his disciples. Sūta made the *Purāṇa*-samhitā by the grace of Vyāsa.

**CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTYONE**

*Description of duties laid down for different castes*

The Fire-god said:

1. Puṣkara narrated to Paraśurāma the duties which the

1. The third among the four *yuga* periods of time, equal to 8,64,000 years of men.
2. The priest of the *Yajurveda* who attends to the needs of the sacrifice.
3. The priest of the *Rgveda* who does the oblation.
4. The priest of the *Sāmaveda* who sings the *sāman* melodies.
5. The priest of the *Atharvaveda*.
Manus practiced and had enjoyment and emancipation as described by lord Varuṇa to him.

Puṣkara said:

2. I shall describe the laws of conduct relating to the castes, stages of life etc. spoken by the Manus and others, that would give all (benefits) and please (lord) Vāsudeva (name of Viṣṇu in his manifestation as Kṛṣṇa) and others.

3-9. O Excellent one among Bhṛgus! abstaining from killing, truthfulness, compassion, kindness towards all beings, visiting sacred places, munificence, celibacy, not jealous, doing service to god, brahmins, preceptors and others, listening to all laws of conduct, worship of the manes, veneration towards the king, sustained interest in good scriptures, mercy, forbearance and theism are the general good and bad conduct for all castes and stages of life. The duties of a brahmin should be pointed out as performing religious rites, officiating as priests at the sacrifices, munificence, imparting vedic knowledge, accepting gifts and engaging in the study. The duties of a ksatriya (warrior class) and the vaiśya (tradesman) are said to be munificence, engaging in the study and perform sacrificial rites as laid down. Protection and suppression of the wicked are special (duties enjoined) on a ksatriya. Agriculture, protecting the cows and trade are spoken to be (the duties) of a vaiśya. (The duties) of a śūdra (the fourth class of men) (are) to serve the brahmins or (to practise) handicrafts.

10. Since the binding of the girdle of the muṇja grass (at the time of investiture of the sacred thread), the brahmins and others (are supposed to) take a second birth. One's caste is decided from that of the mother in the natural order of castes.

11. Contrary to the natural order the son of a brahmin woman through a śūdra (is known as) Caṇḍāla, from a ksatriya (as) sūta and from a vaiśya (as) devala.

12. A son born to a ksatriya woman and a śūdra contrary to the natural order would be (known as) pukkasa. Similarly (a son born to a ksatriya woman) and a vaiśya would be māgadhā and from a śūdra as āyogava.

13. There are thousands of pratilomas (born to higher caste woman and lower caste man) among the vaiśyas from the order contrary to natural one. Therefore a marriage (should be done)
only between (members of) the same class and (should not be) with (members of) either the higher or the lower class.

14. The killing of those condemned to death by law and living by means of women are laid down as the duty of a caṇḍāla. (The duty) of a vaidehaka is said to be their protection.

15-18. To be a charioteer (is the duty) of the sūtas, and hunting (is the duty) of the pukkasas. (The duty) of the māgadhās is singing panegyrics. (The duty) of an āyogava is said to be the profession of an actor and living by handicrafts. It is laid down that a caṇḍāla should live outside the village, wear the clothes of the dead and should not be touched by others. One, who belongs to any one of the other community, discards his life for the sake of a brahmin or a cow or a woman or child in distress, gets accomplished. The mixed castes should be known from the work done by the father or mother.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTYTWO

Duties of a householder

Puṣkara said:

1. A brahmin should live following the code of conduct laid down for him or those of the kṣatriya or vaiśya or īśā. But he should never live by doing such acts exclusively (laid down) for a īśā.

2. A brahmin may engage himself in agriculture, trade, keeping cows and usury. But he should abstain from taking milk, jaggery, salt and meat and using red-dye.

3. One gets purified from the sin accruing from ploughing the earth and cutting the plants and killing insects and ants by doing a sacrifice. The cultivator (gets free from the sin) by worshipping the god.

4. A virtuous man (should yoke) eight bullocks, one who lives by any means six bullocks, wicked men four bullocks and those who have transgressed rightful living two bullocks.

5. One should live by picking grains in the field and on alms got without solicitation. (One may live) on alms got by solici-
tation or got without solicitation a second time. Otherwise (one may live) by truth and false (i.e., trade). But (one should never (live) on servitude.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTYTHREE

Duties of a Student

Puṣkara said:

1-6. Listen! I shall describe the righteous (way of living for those in (different) stages (of life), which yields enjoyment and emancipation. The men'sus flow for women lasts for sixteen nights. Among these the first three are censured. One who desires for a male child should cohabit on even (nights). When the conception is explicitly known, the rite favouring conception is prescribed. The rite to be performed with the intention to get a male child is done even before the embryo (in the womb) begins to move. The (rite of) parting of the hair (should be done) in the sixth or eighth (month). The asterism relating to the name should be such that it confers a child (good) and is auspicious. (The rite known as) the jātakarma (performed soon after the birth of a child) should be done by wise men before the separation of the umbilical cord. The rite of naming the child should be done after the period of pollution is over. The name of the child of a brahmin is said to end with (the word) sārma, of the warrior class to end with (the word) varmā, of the tradesmen and śūdra with (the words) gupta and dāsa respectively. (After the birth of a child) the child should be brought to the father (of the child by the other) with (the words) “This is your son”.

7-10. The tonsure ceremony (is laid down) according to one's family (custom). Upanayana (the rite of investiture of sacred thread) should be done in the eighth year from that of the conception or in the eighth year of the child for a brahmin. (The same is to be done) in the eleventh year from that of pregnancy for the warrior class and in the twelfth year from that of
pregnancy for a tradesman. It should never be done after the sixteenth year (for any one). The mauñiya (the girdle to be worn after the above rite) is known to be (made) of muñja (grass) or bark. The hides of deer, tiger or goat (should be worn) by those in the student life. The sticks are said to be from the parna (palaśa), pippala (fig) and bilva tree. They should be (long enough to reach) up to the hair, forehead and face respectively (for the three classes). All the sticks should be having the barks and should not be having bends or be burnt ones.

11-12. The sacred thread (should be made of) cotton, silk or wool respectively (for the three classes). The three classes are indicated by the (repetition of the word) bhavati (address to the housewife) at the beginning, middle or end while begging food. One should seek food first at such a place where one would be certain about getting food. The above rites are performed without (the repetition of) mantra in the case of female children. But the marriage (should be done) with (the repetition of) mantra.

13. After investiture of the sacred thread, the preceptor should instruct his pupil first with cleanliness and then with codes of conduct, the worship of fire and the worship of twilight.

14. Eating facing the eastern direction is conducive to (one’s) longevity, the southern direction brings fame. Eating facing the western direction gives wealth. Eating facing the northern direction gets rightful living.

15. Offering to fire should be made in the morning and in the evening. (One should) not (offer) impure things or with separated hands. One should abstain from (drinking) intoxicants, (eating) flesh, singing and dancing with men.

16. (One should also eschew) violence, spreading scandal about others and especially speaking unpleasant words. (The student), whose stick (and other things) get damaged, should throw them in water and have another.

17. (He) should learn the scripture (from the preceptor), pay fees to the preceptor and perform the bathing (ceremony marking the completion of one’s study). But the naiṣṭika brahmacāri (one who has taken a vow of life-long abstinence) should remain with the preceptor till his (own) death.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTYFOUR

Rules of Marriage

Puṣkara said:

1. The brahmin should marry four wives, the warrior class three wives, the tradesmen two wives as they desire. The last class should marry only one wife.

2-3. All the righteous acts should not be done in the company of women not belonging to one’s own community. One should marry only from his own community. (At the time of marriage) the warrior class should hold the arrow, the tradesmen should bear the toad and then the last community the fringe of a garment. A girl should be given (in marriage) only once. One who abducts such a girl deserves the same punishment as for a thief.

4-7. No atonement is laid down for one who sells his children. Marriage is said to consist of four kinds of acts such as kanyādāna (giving the girl as a gift), sacyāga (rite relating to the wife of Indra), marriage and caturthikā (the fourth one). Women are allowed to have another husband in the following five adversities—if (the first husband is) lost, dead, has become an ascetic, impotent or fallen morally. If (the husband) is dead, (she) should be given to the brother (of the deceased). In the absence (of a brother) (she should be given) as one wished. The three pūrvas (pūrva, pūrvāśādhā, pūrvaproṣṭapadi), āgneya (kṛtlikā), vāyaya (svāti), the three uttārās (uttārā, uttarāśāḍā, uttarāproṣṭapadi) and rohini are the asterisms always commended for copulation.

8-11. O Bhārgava (Parāśurāma)! One should not choose (the bride) from the same gotra or born in the line of same sage. (One may choose) from (descendants of) more than seven (generations) on the paternal side and more than five (generations) on the maternal side. Having invited a person endowed with good conduct and belonging to a good family and giving a girl as a gift is known as brāhma (type of marriage). The lustre due to the offering of a girl as a gift always elevates men. Then the marriage accompanied by the offer of the gift of a pair of cows is spoken to be the ārṣa (variety of marriage). The offer made to one after solicitation (is known to be) prajā-
plate (variety of marriage) for the purpose of righteousness. It is āsura (type of marriage in which the girl is offered) along with the purchase money. (It is considered as) the lowest. The marriage by mutual consent (is known as) gāndharva. (Marriage) by abduction after a battle (is known as) rākṣasa (variety of marriage). (It is known as) the paiṣāca (variety) if the girl is married after deceiving her.

12. An image of Indrāṇi (wife of Indra) should be made with potter's earth on the marriage day. She (that image) should be worshipped at a pond and (then) the bride should be taken inside the house accompanied by music.

13-14. The marriage should not be done when lord Keśava (Viṣṇu) sleeps¹ and also in (the months of) Pauṣa (December-January) and Caitra (April-May), on Tuesday and on the days of rikta² and viṣṭi.³ (The marriage should also) never (be done) when Venus and Jupiter are not to be visible and the Moon has been eclipsed. (So also it should not be done) in asterisms ruled by (the planets Sun, Saturn and Mars and days afflicted by vyattipāta.⁴

15. The asterisms (suitable) for (the performance of) a marriage (are) Mṛgatīra, Maghā, Svāti, Hasta, Rohini, the three Uttaras (Uttara, Uttarāśādha and Uttarapraśaḍa), Mūla, Anurādhā and Revati.

16-19. The ascendant and the aṁśa (subdivision of the stellar house) relating to a mortal are auspicious. (The planets) Sun, Saturn and Mercury in the third, sixth, tenth, eleventh and eighth (houses) are commendable. Mars in the eighth (is) not (commendable). All the other planets are commendable in the seventh, twelfth and eighth (houses). Even among them, Venus in the sixth from the sixth house is not commendable. (Just as the worship of Indrāṇi is done) in the asterism on the marriage day, the caturthikā (the rite on the fourth day of the marriage) should also be done in the asterism of the marriage. The marriage should not be performed if four planets are in the

---

1. The four month period commencing with the eleventh day of the bright half of the month of Aśādha (June-July).
2. The fourth, ninth and fourteenth days of a lunar fortnight.
3. An adverse period.
4. The day of the new Moon occurring on a Sunday and when the Moon is in a particular asterism.
same house. One should cohabit his wife only on days other than the *parva* (days) (the eighth and fourteenth days as well as the full-moon and newmoon days). When a truthful girl is given in marriage (there would be) pleasure always.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTYFIVE

The code of conduct

Puṣkara said:

1-12. After getting up in the *brāhma muhūrta* (about 48 minutes prior to sunrise), one should contemplate on the gods Viṣṇu and others. One should pass both urine and stools facing the north during the day time, facing the south during the night and as in the day during the two twilight periods. One should not do on the roads, water, streets and on the grassy surface. After having purified oneself with earth, one should sip water three times and then cleanse the teeth. Bathing is said to be six kinds such as daily, casual, performed with some desire, part of a purificatory rite, removing the bodily dirt and at the time of obsequies. The religious act done without bathing yields no result. Hence one should bathe in the morning. Among the waters of a sacred place, a river, a tank, flowing water, water present in the well and water drawn (from the well), the preceding one is more meritorious than the succeeding one in order. The waters of (the river) Ganges are always meritorious. After having cleansed the impurities (on the body), one should remain submerged in (the waters of) the tank. After having touched waters one should sprinkle them (on his body) three times with the (repetition of the *mantra*) *hiranyavarṇā*¹, then with (the *mantra*) *sanno devi*², three times with *āpo hi śthā*³, and then with *idam āpa*⁴. Then one should remain in the water of the tank and mutter (sacred syllables) (remaining) in the water. One should

1. *RV. 5.87.1a.*
2. *Śrīstikta. RV. 10.9.4a.*
3. *RV. 10.9.1a.*
4. *RV. 1.23.22a.*
either recite the *aghamaṛṣana*\(^1\) hymn or the *drupada*\(^2\) or *yuvajñate mana*\(^3\) or the *puruṣasūkta*\(^4\). The *gāyatri* (*mantra*) should be recited especially. *Bhāavrīta* is the deity, *Aghamaṛṣaṇa* is the sage and *anuṣṭubh* is the metre for the *aghamaṛṣaṇa* hymn. Lord Hari (*Viṣṇu*) is remembered to be *Bhāavrīta*. After squeezing the garment (one should) offer (respectful) waters of oblation to the gods and manes. One should offer waters of homage with the palms with the recitation of the *puruṣasūkta*. Then one should offer oblation to fire and make gifts befitting one’s capacity.

13-14. Then one should worship lord (*Śiva*) for the sake of one’s prosperity. One’s seat, bed, vehicle, wife, children and water-vessel are pure for one’s self. (But they) are not pure for others. Even preceptors should leave way for pregnant women afflicted by the weight.

15. One should not look at the rising or setting Sun or in the waters. One should not look at naked woman. One should not peep into the well and look at a dog, or drinking house and a sinner.

16. One should not tread on cotton, bones, ashes and that which is despised. (One should not enter) the apartments of women or treasury. One should not go as an emissary of another person.

17. One should not board an uneven boat, or (climb) a tree or a mountain. One should then be interested in sciences relating to acquisition of wealth.

18. One who tramples on clod of earth, one who cuts the grass and one who eats the nail would perish. One should not desire to raise sounds with the mouth. One should not stir out in the night without a lamp.

19. One should not enter a house not having a door. One should not change the colour of the face. One should not interrupt in the midst of a conversation. One should not wear other’s garments.

20. One should always say good. One should never utter that which does not please others. Seat made of *palāśa* (wood) is prohibited. One should move in the shade of gods etc.

---

1. *RV.* 10.190.
2. *AV.* 6.115.3a.
3. *RV.* 5.81.1a.
4. *RV.* 10.90.
21. One should not go in between revered people. One should not look at the broken (and falling) asterism. One should not utter the name of another river (while standing) in one river. One should not gargle with two hands.

22. One should not cross the river without propitiating the forefathers and gods. One should not throw impurities like feces in the waters. One should not bathe remaining naked.

23. Then one should worship lord Īśvara (Śiva) for the sake of welfare and prosperity. One should not remove one's garland oneself. One should avoid the dust of an ass and other animals.

24. One should not ridicule mean (people). One should not go (with them) and live with them. One should not also reside at a place devoid of a physician, a king and a river, a place ruled by other races, women and many men.

25. One should not converse with women in their monthly menstrual courses or otherwise fallen. One should contemplate on lord Keśava (Viṣṇu) (if happened to converse with the above). One should not laugh, yawn and sneeze without covering the mouth.

26. A wiseman should avoid disrespect shown to his master and his own self. One should guard the words of one's self and his master. One should not yield to (the dictates of) his organs. One should not control the natural impulses of the body.

27. O Bhārgava! One should not ignore a disease like an insignificant enemy. One should always sip waters (for purification) whenever one goes in the street. One should not carry water and fire.

28. One should not utter hum to a good and venerable person. One should not tread over one foot with the other. One should not speak something unpleasant to someone either in his presence or his absence.

29. One should refrain from abusing the scriptures, king, sages and gods. One should not envy women and one should avoid having faith in them.

30. One should hear righteous things, have devotion to gods and adhere to righteous path. One should worship Soma (moon) as well as gods and brahmans in the natal star.
31. One should avoid bathing with the application of oil on the sixth, eighth and fourteenth (days of the fortnight). (One should pass) urine and stools far away from the house. One should not have enmity with great men.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTYSIX

_Purification of things_

_Puskara said:

1-2. I shall describe the (mode of) purification of things. Earthen vessel made impure by contact with urine or feces would become pure by heating again. A copper and gold vessel similarly made impure (may be made pure) by melting or the copper one by water or acid. (The vessels made) of bell-metal and copper (may be purified) with acid. (Those made) of pearls (get purified) by washing.

3-5. Lotuses, vessels made of iron, vegetables, ropes, roots, fruits and cane (could be made pure by washing). The sacrificial vessels (are made pure) by sprinkling (water) with hand at the sacrificial work. Those made of oily things (such as wax) could be purified with hot water being sprinkled in the house. Muddy water may be purified by straining it through a cloth, or by sprinkling on many cloth. Wooden (things) get purified that moment (by sprinkling with water).

6-7. Liquid materials which have become solidified (would become pure) by sprinkling or by leaping up. A bed, seat, vehicle, winnowing basket and cart would become purified by sprinkling (water), as also in the case of straw and fuel. (Things made) of the horn and tusk (may be purified) by a paste of white mustard.

8. A vessel (containing) flesh (may be purified) with cow’s tail. Bones have to be (purified) as in the case of horns. Molasses of jaggery and solution of salt (may be purified) by drying.

9. Safflower, flowers, wool and cotton (may be purified) in the same manner. The flowing water of a river is pure. So also the water that remains spreads out.
10-15. A cow is pure except in its mouth. The mouths of a horse and goat are impure. The mouths of women, calves of cows, birds and of dogs (are pure). While hunting a dog dripping water from its mouth is always pure. One should sip (water thrice for purification) after eating, sneezing, sleeping, drinking (water), having had a dip in the water, walking on the street and having changed the dress worn. The cat is pure because it moves (here and there). A woman in her menstrual courses (becomes pure) after bathing on the fourth day. She becomes eligible (to take part) in rites relating to gods and manes. (In impurity) due to the *apāna* (one of the airs in the body) five parts of mud (should be used), fifteen parts in purification after urine and seventeen parts in impurity due to feces. One should apply one part of mud to the penis and three times two parts (of mud) on both hands. For the *brahmacārins* (students), the foresters and ascetics (it is laid) as four times. Silken cloth (are purified) with *śriphala* (emblic myrabolan), white cloth with white mustard. It is said that the hairs of animals would be purified by sprinkling water. Flowers, fruits etc. would get purified by sprinkling water.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTYSEVEN

*Pollution and Purification*

*Puṣkara* said:

1. I shall describe purification after death and after the birth (of a child). The pollution due to the death of a *sapiṇḍa*¹ is prescribed for ten days.

2-7. O Excellent among Bhṛgus (descendants of Bhṛgu)! So also purification (from pollution) is after birth in the case of brahmmins, after twelve days for the warrior class, after fifteen days for the tradesmen, and after a month for *śūdra* (fourth class). If the dead belongs to the higher class, the pollution for the servant (of the lower class) would be as for

1. A kinsman connected by offering the funeral rice-ball to the manes of certain relatives.
the master. A brahmin or a person of the warrior class who had his birth through the warrior, tradesman or śūdra gets purified after six or three or one day in order. O Parāśurāma! if born of a tradesman and śūdra purification would be after six or three nights (respectively) and if born of a śūdra and tradesman purification would be) after six (nights). (If one’s child dies) before the formation of teeth, one become pure at once, (if it dies) before tonsure, (the parent) has pollution for a night, if before the vratabandha (vow relating to investiture of thread) pollution lasts for three nights, and ten nights if afterwards. If a śūdra dies at less than three years of age, the purification should be after five days. If aged more than three, purification would be after twelve days, if aged six years, the purification would be after a month.

8-9. If a female (child) (dies) before tonsure, the purification would be after a night. Similarly, the relatives of female children dying after tonsure get purified in three days. No pollution is laid down for the parental side if (a female dies after marriage. If a woman delivers a child in her parent’s house, the relatives get purified after a night.

10-14. A woman after childbirth gets purified after ten days) and not otherwise. There is no doubt that if a married girl dies in her father’s house, the relatives get purified after three nights. If two pollutions take place and the second one is equal or inferior to the first one, the pollution ends with the first one, and ends with the second one if the second is not equal. These are the words of Dharmarāja. One who lives abroad happening to hear (the news about) the death of his kinsmen would be impure only for the remaining part of the ten days (of impurity). (If it is known) after ten days, impurity would last for three days. Then if one year had elapsed, one would become pure after bathing. (One has to do as before) if either the maternal grandfather or the preceptor dies.

15-16. One gets purified after abortion after the same number of nights proportionate to the months (period) of pregnancy. O Bhārgava (son of Bhṛgu) whoever of a sapinda of a brahmin caste may die the pollution ends after ten days for all with-

---
1. The lord of righteous living; may mean any upholder of a code.
2. Denotes Parāśurāma.
out any distinction. So also for a warrior (class) (it would end) after twelve days, the tradesmen after fifteen days and the śūdras after a month.

17. A ball should be made and offered from the remnants of the ceremony and placed in front. One who does the deed should then declare the name and clan of that person (dead).

18-24. After the excellent brahmins had partaken food, were well honoured with gifts and had blessed with unbroken rice and water with the recitation of the name and clan (of the doer), one should dig up three pits of four cubits breadth and depth and of twelve cubits length. Near the pits one should kindle three fires. O Rāma (Parāśurāma) one should offer oblations to Soma, Agni (Fire god) and Yama four (handfuls) three times each. Balls of rice should be offered separately (in each one of these) as before. One should fill (pits) with cooked rice, curd, honey and flesh. If an inter-calary month occurs this should be done in addition. Or (this ceremony) should be completed in twelve days. If an inter-calary month occurs in the middle of the year, then there would be extra rites at (the time of doing) the twelfth ceremony. After the completion of one year the ceremony should be done as the annual ceremony.

25. If one dies balls of rice should be offered to the ancestors of the three past generations. Likewise the fourth is brought together.

26. O Bhārgava! After having worshipped and offering (ball of rice) with (the recitation of syllables) prthuṣaṃā, the ball of rice (intended) for the dead should be united with those (intended) for the other (ancestors).

27. So also the vessel for the dead should be united with the vessels (for the ancestors). This rite of uniting the vessels should be done one by one.

28. This rite is laid down without (the recitation of) syllables for the śūdra. The rite of sapinḍikarana should be done in the same way for women.

29-30. If one dies, a potful of cooked rice should be offered for a year and the ceremony should be done every year. One

1. cf. prthuṣaṃā HG. 2-11-4.
2. The rite of uniting the ball of rice for the dead with those for the ancestors.
may be able to count the sand particles in the Ganges or the rain drops as Indra rains. But one may not be able to count in this world the past ancestors. In the ever-moving time there is no permanence. Hence, one should do the deeds.

31-32. The dead would get the results of ceremony whether (they are) in heaven (or) in hell. No benefit would accrue to the dead if one is only mourning (the death). There is no pollution due to the death of a person by (falling from) a cliff, (burnt) by fire, in a trap, by (drowning in) the water or by suicide. (There is no pollution on account of the death) of those fallen (from their caste) and those killed by lightning and weapons.

33. Ascetics, those who have undertaken vows, student-celibates, kings, sculptors and those initiated for religious ceremonies and those under the command of the king should bathe, if they had followed the dead body.

34. Immediate bathing is laid down after copulation and (coming across) smoke from (a burning) dead body. A śūdra should never carry the dead body of a brahmin.

35. So also a brahmin should not carry (the dead body) of a śūdra. There would arise sin from these. One would reach heaven by carrying the dead body of a destitute brahmin.

36-41. One who gifts fuel for burning the (dead body of a) destitute person would get victory in battle. (One who performs the cremation of the dead) should solemnly vow that he is a relative and then circumambulate the funeral pyre in the anti-clock direction. (After the completion of cremation rite) all should get out and bathe with their clothes. Then handful of water should be offered thrice for the dead. After that one should enter the house after placing the foot on a stone at the entrance (to the house). Unbroken rice should be offered to the fire and margosa leaves should be eaten. All should sleep separately on the floor. One should eat light food that has been bought. The learned one who offered the ball of rice becomes pure after shaving, bathing with white mustard and sesamum and wearing different clothes on the tenth day. Neither cremation with fire, nor the rites of offering waters should be done in the case of the death of children who had not grown teeth and in the case of abortion. The gathering of the bones (of the cremated) should be done on the fourth day. It is laid down that one may
touch (the polluted person) after (the rites of) gathering of bones have been done.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTYEIGHT

Kinds of pollution

Puṣkara said:

1-4. I shall describe the pollution due to abortion accepted by Manu and others. In the case of abortion (pollution lasts) so many nights proportionate to the period of pregnancy (for the mother). If the abortion is after four months (the pollution lasts) for three days, after five months for ten days. It lasts for four nights in the case of royal people, and for five days in the case of tradesmen. It lasts for eight days in the case of śūdra and for twelve days in the case of others. Purification has been prescribed for women. But the father (of the abortive) (becomes pure) by bathing alone. No bathing has been laid down for those who are sapīṇḍas. (If the abortion) occurs in the seventh or eighth (month), (pollution lasts) for three nights. In the case of the death of a child after the appearance of the teeth, the sapīṇḍas become purified immediately.

5-7. (If the death of a child occurs) before the tonsure, the pollution is for a night, and before the undertaking of the vow (for the investiture of sacred thread) (it lasts) for three nights (for sapīṇḍas). For the mother and father (the pollution) lasts for ten nights. (For those who are not sapīṇḍas), if the child dies before the appearance of the teeth, or after the tonsure, (the pollution) lasts for three nights. If the child dies before it is three years old, one becomes pure after a night. In the case of a warrior class purity is after two days, and three days in that of the tradesman. A śūdra becomes pure after five days. (If the death occurs) before marriage, (the pollution lasts) for twelve days.

8. In the circumstances in which the pollution for brahmins is noted as three nights, in such cases a śūdra (would have)
for twelve days and the warrior class and tradesmen (would have) for six and nine (days respectively).

9. If (a child) dies (when) two years old no cremation (be done). It should be buried in the ground. No water of libation need be given even if it had been named. Or it should be done if the child had grown teeth. (If death occurs) after the investiture of sacred thread (one has pollution) for ten (days). A brahmin who propitiates the fire and is well versed in the scriptures becomes pure after a day.

10. (The pollution) lasts for three or four days if one is inferior or still less inferior in his (learning).

11. One who has neglected the worship of fire (would become pure) after five days. One who has neglected the duties of a brahmin (would become pure) after ten days.

12. A warrior gets pure after nine days and a brahmin possessing qualities after seven days. A tradesman possessing qualities (becomes pure) after ten days. A śūdra (gets pure) after twenty days.

13. (The normal period of pollution) would be ten days for a brahmin, twelve days for the warrior class, fifteen days for the tradesman and one month for the śūdra.

14. If there be excellent qualities (the normal pollution) for ten days would become three days, for three days would become a day, for one day would become immediate purity. One has to infer in this way in all the cases.

15. The pollution for the servant, pupil, hired servant and disciple, residents of same place will be as that of their masters. But the pollution for the death would be separate.

16. In the case of pollution due to the death of a person who performs sacrifices etc., the obsequial rites should be commenced after doing purification before the cremation is done.

17. One may touch a person (polluted) after one-third (of the period of pollution) is over in the case of all the castes. (The period after which) one may touch (the polluted) is three, four, five and ten days for the (four) castes respectively.

18. The gathering (and immersion) of the bones should be done on the fourth, fifth, seventh and ninth day (after the death) for the (four) castes in the successive order.

19. (Pollution) would be for a day in (the death of) girls not given in marriage and three days in (the death of) girls.
after marriage. A night and two days enclosing it has been laid down (as the period of pollution) in the (death of) married sisters and others.

20. The *gotra* for the unmarried girls would be that of the father, and for the married girls that of their husbands. The water of libation (should be offered) to the father on both sides in the case of the married.

21. (The pollution) for the parents (would be) for three days after ten days in (the case of) the death of the daughter. O Brahmin! the *sapinda* would become pure immediately in (the death of the boy) before the tonsure is done.

22. (The pollution would be) for one day in (the death of a girl) before the marriage (had been done) and three days after the girl had been given in marriage. (The pollution lasts) for a night and two days enclosing it in (the death of) the brother’s son and immediately for the *sapindas*.

23. A brahmin becomes pure after ten days in the death or birth through the brahmin woman. So also (a brahmin becomes pure in the death or birth) through the warrior, tradesman and *śūdra* respectively after six or three days or one day.

24-27. This should be known as (applicable) to the *sapindas*. I shall describe (the pollution) in (the case of the death of) illegitimate (children). It is said that there would be purity after three days in (the case of the death of) the illegitimate children adulterous wives and women who had former husbands. No water of libation (need be given) for those born in the mixed castes and, those gone abroad and those committing suicide. Pollution for those having one mother and two fathers and brothers having illegitimate wives; would be one day for birth and two days in (the case of) death. (I have described) the pollution for *sapindas*. I shall describe (the pollution) for those having relationship by the libation of waters.

28. One becomes pure after bathing with the dress worn at the death of a person who is not a *sapinda*, whether the dead be a boy or has died abroad.

29. But *sapindas* would become pure only after ten days in the case of both birth and death. The members of the same family (distant relatives) would become pure after three nights. Those belonging to the same clan would become pure after bath.
30. The relationship of *sapinda* would cease after the seventh (generation) in the case of males. The status of being eligible for waters of libation would cease after the fourteenth generation.

31-33. If details about one's birth are not remembered he is said to belong to another clan. One who hears about the death of a person abroad within ten days after the death, pollution would last only for the remaining period of the days. (If it is heard) ten days after (the death) pollution would be for three days. (If one hears) after one year had elapsed, one becomes pure after touching waters. (The pollution lasts) for a night enclosed by two days (in case of death) of the maternal uncle, a night (in case of death) of the pupil, priest and relatives.

34. Only bathing is laid down in (case of) the death of son-in-law, daughter's son, nephew (sister's son), brother-in-law and the son of the latter.

35-38. (The pollution would last) for three days in (case of) the death of maternal grand-mother, preceptor and maternal grand-father. It is laid down that one becomes pure (in the following cases): (Death at the time of) a famine, the decadence of kingdom, a calamity has befallen, in case of death due to misfortune (or at the time of eclipse), in the death of) knower of brahman by means of fire, (in case of the death of) one who constantly performs sacrifice, one who observes a vow, a celibate, in (case of death at) battle and national calamity, while gift is being made, a sacrifice is being performed and the marriage is being conducted. An atonement in the form (of discarding life) by entering fire or water has been laid for those who kill a brahmin, a cow, and the king as also those who (attempt to) commit suicide, and one who has an incurable disease and one who is incapable of doing *svādhyāya*.

39-41. If a woman or a man dies by hanging one's self on account of disgrace, anger, affection and insult, somehow he (or she) would live for a lakh (of years) in an impure hell. If an old man who has neglected the ritual enjoined by the scriptures and code books, discards his life, (the period of) pollution is for three days. The collection of bones (after cremation) is done on the second day. Water of libation is to be done on the

---

1. Study of one's own branch of the Vedas.
third day. The śrāddha (annual ceremony for the dead) should be done on the fourth day.

42. In the death of people struck by lightning or by fire, pollution lasts for three days for the sapinda. Women who had taken to heretic path and those who had killed their husbands are not eligible for water of libation.

43. If one’s father or mother had died (in the above described manner), one should wear wet clothes, and fast. After one year had gone, the obsequies should be done as laid down.

44. If one, who is an asapinda, carried the dead body, he becomes pure after bathing with the dress, touching the fire and taking ghee.

45. If one eats food from them, he becomes pure only after ten days. If not eaten food there, he becomes pure that day itself. Then one should not stay in that house.

46. The brahmīns who carry the dead body of a destitute brahmin, get the benefits of a sacrifice at their each step and would become pure after bathing alone.

47-49. A brahmin who accompanies the dead body of a śūdra becomes pure after three days. After having mourned the death of a person along with the relatives, one should avoid making any gifts or doing śrāddha etc. fully for a day. If a śūdra woman delivers (a child) or dies in one’s house, the vessels should be discarded and one becomes pure after three days by sweeping the floor (of the house with water). The dead brahmin should not be made to be carried by a śūdra when the same (caste men) are available.

50. After bathing the dead body, it should be cremated after being worshipped with flowers. Never should the (dead) body be cremated naked. A part (of the body) should be left (uncovered).

51-53. One who is born in the same clan should lift and place (the dead body) on the funeral pyre. A brahmin who had consecrated the sacred fire should be appropriately cremated with the three fires². One who has not consecrated the sacred

1. Not a sapinda.

2. Sacrificial fire of three kinds gārhapātya, āhavantya and dakṣiga—the fire perpetually maintained in the house, a consecrated fire taken from the previous, the sacred fire lit on the south.
fire (should be cremated) with one (among these three fires). The others (should be cremated) with the ordinary (fire). The son should place the fire at the face with the words, "You were born from this. May this be born from you again. This is for the heaven". The relatives (should utter) the name and clan (of the dead) and sprinkle water once.

54. The water of libation (should be done) in this way in the death of the maternal grand-father, and the preceptor. The water of libation is optional in (the case of) the death of the girl friend, sister's son, father-in-law and priest.

55-56. The son should offer the water of libation for ten days (with the syllable) apo naḥ śoṣucad. Ten balls of rice should be offered (at the death) of a brahmin. Twelve (balls of rice) are remembered (to be offered) for a warrior. Fifteen (balls) are spoken to be for a tradesman. It is said that thirty (balls) (should be offered) for a śūdra. A son or daughter or anybody else may offer the balls of rice like the son.

57-59. After biting the margosa leaves, becoming self-controlled and sipping water at the entrance to the house, all should touch fire, water, cow dung, white mustard and place foot slowly on a stone and enter (the house). Till the pollution goes pungent and saline food should not be taken. Flesh should not be eaten and all should sleep on the floor. After bathing, food bought from outside should be eaten. The same person, who did the first day rite, should do rites for ten days. In the absence (of that person), a brahmacāri may offer the balls of rice and waters of libation.

60. Just as the pollution for the sapindas at the death (of their relatives) has been laid down, so also it would be in regard to birth for those who desire for purification.

61. The pollution due to death is applicable to all. But the pollution due to birth is only for the father and mother. Pollution would be for the mother only and the father would become pure after touching water.

62. If it had been decided that śrāddha should be done on the day of birth of the (dead) son, cow, gold and dress should be given as gift on that day.

63. The pollution due to death (goes) with (another)

1. RV. I.97.1a.
pollution. The pollution due to birth (goes) with (another) pollution. Even between them one gets pure with that which occurs first.

64. If a pollution due to death occurs while there is pollution due to birth and vice-versa, the pollution is based on that of death only and not on that of birth.

65. If one pollution occurs when there is already another pollution, if the two are equal or the latter is less equal then the pollution should be completed with the former. If the two are unequal, it should be completed with the second according to the words of Dharmarāja.

66. If death occurs at the end of another death, there is purification after the end of first pollution. The greater one always affects the lighter one. But the lighter one never affects the greater one.

67. If the pollution due to death or birth occurs in the midnight when there is already a pollution due to death or birth, all would become pure with the remaining part of pollution. That is that part of the night added to two days.

68. If the pollution occurs in the morning, one becomes pure after three days. In both cases one should not eat food from that family.

69. One should refrain from making any gifts. If one happened to die, he should do rites of atonement. There is no sin if it is done unknowingly in the former. Otherwise, it would be for a day for the one who dines.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTYNINE

The merits of the offer of libation and the performance of good deeds

Puṣkara said:

1. One would reach heaven whether the cremation is done or not done if Lord Viṣṇu is remembered. The dead gets redemption if the bones are immersed in the waters of the Ganges.
2-4. One remains in heaven till (the period) his bones remain in the waters of the Ganges. No cremation (is laid down) for those committing suicide and those fallen (from righteous living). Even for them it is beneficial to drop their bones in the waters of the Ganges. The waters and food offered for them would be absorbed in the sky. The (rite of) Nārāyanabali\(^1\) should be done with great compassion for the dead fallen (from righteousness). Hence, that person would enjoy favour.

5. The lotus-eyed (Viṣṇu) is without decay. That which is offered there will not perish. Lord Janārdana (Viṣṇu) is the vessel because that protects from falling.

6. It is certain that (Lord) Hari (Viṣṇu) is the only (god) who confers enjoyment, emancipation etc. for the fallen. Seeing the people dying one should do the helpful righteous deeds.

7. Even after the death (of a person), the relatives would not be able to follow the dead person. The path of death is different for all others except the wife.

8-15. Only the deeds accompany one wherever one may go. One should do today the work of tomorrow and in the forenoon that of the afternoon. The death does not wait to see whether (the work) has been done or not done. One who is attached to the plot, market and house and has his mind drawn towards something else, death takes him and goes away like the she-wolf seizes the ram. No one is dear, nor one is an enemy of time. When the life (period) and one’s work are over, (it) endures and takes away the people. Even if pierced with hundred arrows one does not die at the inopportune time. One does not live if the destined time has come even if he has been touched only by the tip of kuṭa (grass). Medicines and sacred syllables and others cannot save one who is destined to die. Certainly one’s past actions find the doer like (the cow finding its) calf. That which precedes one’s birth and that which succeeds one’s death is not explicit. Only that which is in between is explicit in this world. Just as we have the boyhood etc. for the body, so also another body is got. Just as the body wears another new dress, so also the soul (gets another body). (The soul) is always indestructible. Hence one should discard grief.

\(^1\) A particular funeral ceremony.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SIXTY

Duties of a brahmin leading life in the forest

Puṣkara said:

1-2. Listen to me! I shall describe the duties of an anchorite leading life in the forest. He should have matted hair, worship fire, sleep on the ground and wear the hide of an antelope. He should live in the forest. He should maintain his life with milk, roots, nivāra (rice growing uncultivated) and fruits. He should not take alms. He should bathe thrice a day. He should observe celibacy.

3. The duty of an anchorite is to worship gods and guests. A householder after having seen the grandchild should resort to the forest.

4-5. The third part of one’s life (should be spent in the forest) either alone or with the wife. One should do severe penance in the midst of five fires in the summer, under the clouds as the shelter in the rainy season, with wet dress in the winter. One should resort to a life of not expecting (anything from anybody) and go on straight in (different) directions.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SIXTY ONE

Duties of an ascetic

Puṣkara said:

1. I shall describe the duties of an ascetic which confer knowledge and release (from cycles of birth and death). When one reaches the fourth part of his life, he should renounce contact (with men).

2-3. One should renounce on that very day when he gets disinterested (in worldly activities). A brahmin should leave the house after performing the Prājāpatya rite, worship of

1. Giving away the whole of one’s property before entering the life of an ascetic.
all gods along with the (appropriate) fee and invoking fires in one's own self. One should move alone daily. One should resort (to the village) only for a morsel of food.

4-5. The ascetic should be indifferent and should not acquire wealth. A bowl, roots of a tree, tattered clothes and equanimity towards everything are the characteristics of a liberated soul. One should neither welcome death nor life.

6-8. One should await only the time just like a servant (waiting for) the command. One should set his foot (at a place) purified by his look, drink water purified with a cloth, utter words purified by truth, do (things) (that are considered to be) purified by the mind. A vessel made of gourd or wood or earth or burnt ashes (are the symbols) of an ascetic. An ascetic should seek alms daily (from the house) when the smoke has ceased, the pestle has been set aside, the charcoal has been put out, the inmates have eaten, the food vessel has been kept inverted after eating.

9. Begging is of five kinds—collected from different places like a bee, unintended (not already fixed), that has already been fixed, temporary (arranged just when the ascetics seek alms) and (food) made ready and brought (to him).

10. (The alms) may be (received) in the vessel in the hand or transferred from the vessel to the vessel. He has to examine the state of men (from whom alms are received) due to their discreditable conduct.

11. One should pursue righteousness entertaining purity of thought in whichever order of life he may be interested. He should treat all beings equally. The cause of righteousness does not lie in the symbol (associated with the different orders of life).

12. Although the fruit of the kataka tree purifies the water, the water cannot become pure by the mere mention of its name.

13. An honest person, eunuch, lame, blind and deaf person associated with the wicked on account of ignorance get liberated by pious men.

14. If an ascetic kills any being unknowingly during the day or night he should bathe for purification and do the prānāyāma six times.

15-16. (The ascetic) should discard his body having bones as the pillar, united with sinews, besmeared with flesh and blood, covered with skin, full of foul smell of
urine and feces, subject to old age and grief. (It is also) the abode of diseases and afflictions, emotional and non-eternal.

17. Firmness, forgiveness, self-restraint, not-stealing, purity, control of senses, modesty, learning, truthfulness and absence of anger are the ten characteristics of righteousness.

18. The ascetics are of four types—kūṭicaka, bahūdaka, haṁsa and paramahaṁsa. Each succeeding one is superior.

19-26. An ascetic would be liberated, whether he is an ekadaṁśin (holder of one stave) or tridaṁśin (holder of three long staves tied together). Abstaining from killing, truthfulness, not stealing, celibate life, and non-possession of things are the five moral observances for an ascetic. Purity, gratifying, penance, study of vedic texts of one’s school and worship of the deity are the (five) self-imposed moral observances. The padmaka and others are the postures. The prāṇāyāma (the controlled breathing) is of two types—sagarbha and agarbha. The garbha type is that associated with the repetition and contemplation (of a sacred syllable) and agarbha is the opposite. Each one of these is again of three kinds—inhalation (filling), retention and exhalation (emptying). The breath is said to be filling as it fills up, retention as there is no movement, and emptying on account of emptying. It is also of three kinds on account of difference in the (period of) measure, such as twelve, twenty-four and thirtysix mātrā respectively. One mātrā is the time (taken) for (pronouncing) a short vowel. One should repeat syllables like the prāṇava (om) slowly. The pratyāhāra (restraining the organs) is (only) for those who repeat (sacred syllable). Dhyāna is the contemplation on god. The firmness of mind is the dhāraṇā. Samādhi is the state of continuous existence in brahma. This self is the supreme brahman (of the form of) truth, knowledge and bliss. I am that supreme brahman, effulgent self, the (lord) Vāmadeva (Śiva) liberated om.

27-28. (I am) devoid of a body, sense organs, mind, intellect, life and ego. (I am) free from (the states of) waking, dreaming and deep sleep, (and I am) the brahman of the fourth (state). (I am) eternally pure, realised, liberated, truth, bliss and without

1. The posture of sitting erect with crossed legs, the right foot resting on the left loin and the left foot on the right loin.
a second. I am the brahman, the supreme effulgence, undecaying (and) all-pervading lord Hari (Viṣṇu).

29. That person who (is in the) Sun, that I am, the undivided, om. (I am) one who is devoid of all beginnings, equal towards grief and pleasure and having forbearance.

30-31. A person would become brahman being pure in one’s thought and after having pierced the primordial egg. One should perform the vow of caturmāṣya\(^1\) on the full moon day of āśāḍha (June-July). Then one should move out on the ninth day etc. One should have the shave at the junction of two seasons. The atonement for ascetics are contemplation, (doing) prānāyāma and (the practice of) yama, (moral observances).

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SIXTYTWO

The code of laws

Puṣkara said:

1-2. I shall describe concisely the code of laws as narrated by Manu, Viṣṇu, Yājñavalkya, Hārīta, Atri, Yama, Aṅgirasa, Vasiṣṭha, Daśa, Saṃvarta, Śaṭātapa, Parāśara, Āpastamba, Uṣanas, Vyāsa, Kātyāyana, Brhaspati, Gautama, Śaṅkha and Likhita. You listen to that which would yield you enjoyment and emancipation. The path of action adhering to the Vedas is of two kinds—taking active part in worldly life (pravṛttta) and abstaining from worldly acts (nivṛttta).

3-5. An act performed for (getting) particular object would be taking active part in worldly life. Abstaining from worldly acts is preceded by true knowledge. The study of the Vedas, penance, knowledge, control of senses, non-injury and service to the preceptor all confer extreme pleasure. But the knowledge of one’s own self is the most superior to all.

6-7. It is the leading one among all knowledge. One gets ambrosia from that. A learned man who studies his own self

1. A period of four months during which an ascetic has to stay at the same place.
and sees equally his own self in all beings and all beings in his own self attains identification of his own self with the brahman. One should make equal efforts in (the acquisition of) knowledge about self and in the study of Veda.

8-10. This is the same for all the twice-borns and it is specially (laid down) for brahmins. One who knows the scriptures and sciences and their import is set for becoming identical with brahman even as he is living in this world and remaining in different stages of life. The commencement of vedic study of one's own school should be in the month of śrāvana (July-August) in the (asterism) śravaṇa. (It can also be done) in the (asterism) hasta or Monday or fifth day (of the lunar fortnight) in the (month) of śrāvana, or in the (asterism) rohini in the month pāusa (January-February), or in the aṣṭakā (the three days 7th to 9th).

11-18. The study of Veda should be commenced as laid down outside on the banks of a tank. There would be cessation of vedic study for three days at the death of the pupil or the officiating priest or the preceptor or the relative. So also (there would be cessation of vedic study) at the beginning and conclusion of the vedic study if a person well-versed in one's own branch of Vedas (dies). If there is thunder at the (time of) twilight or a hurricane or earthquake or fall of meteor (cessation of study is laid down). Even if the study has been completed and the ceaseless study has been made in the forest (there would be cessation of study). So also (there would be cessation of study) on the fifteenth, fourteenth and eighth days of a lunar fortnight, at the time of eclipse (of the sun or moon), at the junctions of seasons, after having dined at a śrāddha and after having received a gift. (There would be cessation of study) for a day and night if a hare or frog or mongoose or dog or serpent or cat or pig goes in between (the preceptor and the pupil). It is the same if there is lightning or rising of planets. If the sounds of a dog or a jackal or ass or owl (are heard) once, five times or six times or at a place impure, or associated with a corpse, sūdra, or an antya (the fifth caste), cremation ground or a person fallen from righteous living, (there is cessation of study). (So also there is cessation of study) in evil asterism, and when there is lightning, thunder and floods. (So also there is no study) after eating, with wet hands, remaining in waters, at midnight, (and on
the days when there is) excess of wind, dust storm, morbid heat, the fall of snow and at the time of twilight and while having other fears. (So also there is no study) while running or being disturbed by animals or when a great person has come home or while climbing a mule, camel, vehicle, elephant, horse, boat and tree. These are known to be the thirtyseven temporary (instances) of cessation of the vedic study.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SIXTYTHREE

Mode of performance of a śrāddha

Puṣkara said:

1-2. Listen to me. I shall describe the procedure for (the performance of) annual ceremony that yields enjoyment and liberation. After having invited brahmins the previous day, they should be welcomed in the afternoon, worshipped and seated on the seat. Two (brahmins are invited) in the ceremony intended for gods and one by one in the ceremony intended for departed forefathers. They (are made to sit) facing the east in the ceremony for the gods. There may be three or one (brahmin) in the ceremony for forefathers.

3-7. The same (procedure is followed) in regard to the ceremonies of the maternal forefathers also. (I shall describe the procedure for) the vaiṣvadeva. After having given (waters) for washing hands and kuṣa (grass) for the sake of seat and having obtained permission (from brahmins) (all gods) should be invoked with the syllables, vīṣvedevāsah. After having spread the barley then, and pouring water in the vessel containing pavitraka (the purifying kuṣa) with (the syllables) ṣanno devi and then the barley with (the syllables) yavosī, the

1. An offering made to gods.
2. ĀpŚ. S. 3-10-1 d.
3. RV. 1.9.4a.
4. ĀpŚ. S. 7.9.10.
libation is placed on the hand with the sacred syllables \( \text{ya} \) \( \text{divya} \). Then, after having offered waters, fragrance, flowers, incense and lamp, and shifted the sacred thread to (rest on) the right (shoulder), the forefathers should be circumambulated. The forefathers should be invoked with the syllables \( \text{usantastv} \) extending two \( \text{kusa} \) (grass). After having been permitted by them, one should recite (the syllable) \( \text{a} \) \( \text{yan} \) \( \text{tu} \) \( \text{naha} \).

8-15. Sesamum should be used in the place of barley. Respectful offering of water should be made as before. After having done it, the remains of libation should be collected in a vessel as laid down and the vessel is turned upside down with the (syllable) \( \text{pitrya} \) \( \text{sth} \) \( \text{anamasi} \). Then the cooked rice covered with ghee should be taken (in hand) and asked, “shall I offer it to the fire?” Being permitted (to do so saying) “Do it”, one should offer it to the fire as in the ceremony (done) for the manes. The remnants of offering should be given with devotion in vessels secured according to one’s status or especially in silver (vessels). After having offered food the vessel should be consecrated with (the sacred syllable) \( \text{prthivipatram} \). Then the thumb of the brahmin should be placed therein with (the recitation of the sacred syllable) \( \text{idam} \) \( \text{vi} \) \( \text{naha} \). After reciting \( \text{gayatri} \) together with the \( \text{vyahriti} \) and the hymn \( \text{madhuvata} \) it should be stated “(eat) comfortably”. They should also eat controlling their speech. They should be served the cooked rice and the clarified butter after the repetition of (sacred syllable) of purification. Then cooked rice should be taken (and shown and enquired) : “Are you satisfied?” The remaining cooked rice should be scattered on the ground and water should be sprinkled one by one. The cooked rice (that was scattered) should be gathered together with sesameum and as in the case of the ceremony for the manes the balls of rice should be offered

---

1. \( \text{ApShS. 22.28.13} \).
2. \( \text{ApShS. 8.14.18} \).
3. \( \text{cf. a yan tu na h V. Sam. 19.58 a} \).
4. \( \text{YDh. 1.234} \).
5. \( \text{YDh. 1.237} \).
6. \( \text{YDh. 1.237. ApSh. 2-6-1} \).
7. \( \text{Om bhurhuvauwauh taitavitarvanvath} \) etc.
8. \( \text{Om bhuh} \) etc.
9. \( \text{ApShS. 16-25-1} \). \( \text{RV. 1-90-6a} \).
remaining facing the south in the proximity of the place where the food was eaten (by the brahmins).

16-20. (It is done) in the same way for the maternal forefathers also. Then water for sipping is offered. Then the words of benediction should be uttered. So also the undecaying waters (should be offered). After having paid fees befitting one’s capacity, the syllable svadhā should be pronounced. After having been permitted to say, (the words) svapitrībhyaḥ svadhā1 (svadhā to my forefathers) should be said. When (the brahmin) says let svadhā be (repeated), it should be done so. Then water should be sprinkled on the ground. Water should be offered with the (repetition of the syllables) priyantām2 or viśve devaḥ.3 After having said “Let our donors, the Vedas and the progeny flourish. Let not our earnestness dwindle. Let us have plenty to give”4 and uttering sweet words (the brahmins) should be allowed to go. The satisfied manes should be bade adieu after (repeating the syllable) vāje vāje5.

21-23. The vessel in which the remnants of libation had been poured earlier, that vessel of the manes should be made upright and the brahmins should be bade adieu after following them in such a way as circumambulating. After having eaten (remnants of) the food partaken by the forefathers, one should observe continence that night in the company of brahmins. After having done the circumambulation of the manes in the nāndī6 in connection with the impurity caused by the birth of a child, they should be worshipped with the balls of barley mixed with curd and (fruit of) jujube.

24. The ekodīṣṭa7 (ceremony) (is done) without (the worship of) (Viśve)devas. There would be only one libation and one purificatory rite. The (offering should be made) in the

1. MS. 1.6.1.45.
2. MS. 11.9.2.
4. Y.Dh. 1.245.
5. RV. 1.30.7b.
6. The ceremony performed in memory of the manes, preliminary to any festive occasion such as marriage etc.
7. The rite performed for one individual deceased not including other ancestors.
āvāhana fire without the instrumental (syllable) with the sacred thread lying on the right shoulder.

25. One should say 'let you get up' in place of 'imperishable' and 'may you be satisfied' in place of bidding adieu to the manes (in the former). They should say "We are satisfied"

26-27. Four vessels containing fragrant waters and sesame should be kept apart, the vessel of the dead person should be sprinkled with (waters), the waters of libation from the vessels of the forefathers with the two (sacred syllables) beginning with) ye samāṇa. The remaining (acts) should be done as before. When this ekodīṭṭa becomes the sapindikarana (it should be done adding the (dead) woman also.

28. If the sapindikarana has to be performed for a (dead) person within a year (after death), the food for him should be given to a brahmin the whole year together with a vessel filled with water.

29. The ceremony should be done on the day of death for every month in a year and should be done for every year as the food (offered) every month.

30-31. (The forefathers would be satisfied for) a month with cooked rice and a year with pāyasa (sweet liquid made with flour, rice, sago etc.). The forefathers get pleased by a month more with (the offer of) flesh of the fish, deer, ram, bird, sheep, spotted antelope, black antelope, ruru deer, boar and hare in the succeeding order.

32-33. The offer of any one of the following—the flesh of a buffalo, of a kind of sea crab, cooked rice with honey, the flesh of the red goat, kālaśāka, the flesh of a rhinoceros while at Gayā would (please the manes) immensely. So also (the offer made) on the thirteenth day in the asterism of maghā in the rainy season (would) no doubt (please the manes).

34-35. One who does the (annual) ceremony always makes grow the prosperity of his daughter, progeny, attendants, animals, chief among the sons, ghee, agriculture, trade, animals-cloven-footed and not cloven-footed, sons possessing the lustre of brah-

1. ĀpŚ. S. 1.9.12 a; T. Dh. 1.253.
2. See p. 453. fn. 7.
3. The rite performed to merge the soul of the dead person with the ancestors.
man, gold, silver and the excellence of the relatives. He will also get his desires fulfilled.

36. The ceremony is to be done on all days from the first lunar day except the fourteenth day. (The ceremony) is to be done on that day (fourteenth) for the sake of those who were killed by weapons.

37-39. One who does the ceremony as laid down gets heaven, progeny, radiance, valour, land, strength, excellence of sons, progeny with prosperity, importance, sons, unimpeded sovereignty, trade, lordship, unimpaired health, fame, absence of grief, excellent state, wealth, learning, the accomplishment of a physician, silver, cows, small cattle, horses and long life.

40-41. (If the ceremony) is done in the asterisms commencing with Kṛittikā and ending with bharani one gets all these desires fulfilled. The Vasus, Rudras, Ādityas, the deities in the form of manes get pleased with the men who satisfy the manes with (the performance of) ceremony. The forefathers being pleased confer on men long life, progeny, wealth, learning, heaven, liberation and comforts.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SIXTYFOUR

The propitiatory rite for the planets

Puṣkara said:

1. One should commence the propitiatory rite for the planets if one desires for prosperity or appeasement (of planets) or rains, long life, or nourishment or exorcising for malevolent purposes.

2-3. Sun, Moon, Mars, Mercury, Jupiter, Venus, Saturn, Rāhu and Ketu (the ascending and descending nodes of Moon referred to as planets) are known to be planets. (The images of) these planets should be made of copper, crystal, red sandal, gold, silver, iron and lead respectively.

4-7. Otherwise (the images may be made) of gold and worshipped. Or their figures may be drawn in the circles drawn with
fragrant materials. The dress and flowers should be offered matching their respective colours. Lines made of perfumes and guggulu as the incense should be offered. Caru should be offered to each god along with the sacred syllables (as follows):ā kuṇenā
imān devā, agnirmūrdhdhā divah kakut and udbudhyasva are said to be the syllables in order. Bhāspate atiyadaryah, annāt parisrutatah, sam no devi, kāndāt and ketum kyvan are the (syllables).

8-9. The arka, khadira, apāmārga, pippala, udumbara, sami, dūro and kuṣa are the twigs in order. Each one of these should be offered to fire one hundred and eight times or twenty-eight times together with honey, clarified butter and curd.

10-12. Rice boiled with coarse sugar, rice boiled with milk or water, cooked food, dish of liquid rice and milk, curd rice, ghee, small round cakes made of flour, flesh and rice mixed with coconut and other things should be offered to the planets in the respective order. A wiseman should feed the brahmins according to one's capacity after having worshipped them as laid down according to one's knowledge. Cow, conch, ox, gold, dress, horse, black cow, iron and goat are the things to be given as gifts in order.

13-14. One should worship a planet with great effort if that planet remains in a bad house at that time for that person. They were blessed by lord Brahmā (that they should be) worshipped (by the people). The rise and fall of the people are subject to the planets. They are the existence and the non-existence of the world. Hence the planets ought to be worshipped.

1. An oblation of rice, barley and pulse boiled.
2. Y.Dh. 1.299.
3. Y.Dh. 1.299.
4. ĀPŚ. S. 5.28.11.
6. ĀPŚ. S. 17.21.7.
7. V. Sam. 19.75a.
8. Y.Dh. 1.300. RV. 10.9.4a...
10. ĀPŚ. S. 20.16.3. RV. 1.6.3a.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SIXTYFIVE

Code of conduct

Fire-god said:

1. One should contemplate the soul, the lord that remains in the heart like a lamp, having his mind, intellect, memory and the senses not resting on any other object.

2. One should give things got from a cow, curd, ghee, and milk. Saffron, masūra (a kind of pulse), vārtāku (egg-plant) and kodrava (a species of grain) should not (be given).

3. When the son of Simhikā (Ketu) swallows the Sun (that is, there is an eclipse of the Sun due to the descending node of the Moon) at the junctions of the lunar fortnights, it is known to be hasticchāyā. The ceremony and gift made then (yield) undiminingish (benefits).

4. When the Moon is in (the asterism) paitya (maghā) and Sun in (the asterism) kara (hasta), the day is known as Vaivasvatti and the shadow is that of kuñjara.

5. The remnant of that offered unto the fire should not be given in the (rite of) vaiśvadeva. The fees should be paid on the hand of the brahmin in the absence of fire.

6-9. A woman is not defiled by a paramour and also a brahmin (who has defaulted) from vedic rites. A woman enjoyed by employing force or fallen into the hands of an enemy should be abandoned. She becomes pure after the menstrual period. Earlier, women were enjoyed by the celestials such as the Moon, Gandharvas and Fire. The men enjoy them later. (Hence) they do not get defiled by any one. If a woman is impregnated by one not belonging to the same caste, that woman becomes impure till the extraneous matter is not discharged. When the extraneous matter had come out, she then becomes pure by her menstrual flow.

10-12. Whoever does not see another as different from his own self, becomes here the brahman itself. One who rejoices in his own self is (said to be) free from impurity. Some describe union as the union of objects and senses. Verily unrighteousness has been taken as righteous view by those ignorant (people). Others (say) that the union of the soul and mind as the union.
13. After having restrained the mental activity and unifying one's soul with the Supreme Being, one gets released from bondage. This union (is said to be) the outstanding one.

14. It is a collection of five family members. The sixth one is extremely great. It cannot be conquered by the celestials or demons or mortals.

15. All those (the senses) which look externally should be made (to look) inward. The collection of senses (should lie) in the mind. The mind should be united in the soul.

16. One's soul that is free from all feelings should be fixed in the brahman. This is the knowledge and meditation. Everything else that remains would be elaborating the text.

17. That matter which (one thinks) as non-existent in all the worlds is spoken to be as present. That which is spoken (as being present) does not remain in the heart of another (other than a yogi).

18. As a virgin (does not know) the happiness of a woman so also that brahman is really unknowable. One who is not a yogin never knows it just as a born-blind person (does not know) the pot.

19. Having seen a renouncing brahmin, the Sun moves from his position (thinking that) "This person would pierce my orb and reach the Supreme Brahman".

20. (One would get as) a fruit of that what one would get by fasting, vow, bathing, sacred spots, the fruit of penance and the gaining of a brahmin.

21. Supreme Brahman is the single letter. The control of breath is the supreme penance. There is nothing more purifying than the (sacred syllable) Sāvitrī (addressed to the Sun-god).

22. One who eats even from an outcaste would get pure by contemplation. The meditator is the soul, the meditation is the mind, the object of meditation is lord Viṣṇu and the fruit is lord Hari.

23-28. Just as the Pañktipāvana\(^1\) purifies in a ceremony so also the ascetic (gets) imperishable worlds (for others). I do not find an atonement that purifies a brahmin if he slips after entering the state of abstinence. He is the killer of (his) soul.

---

1. One who purifies a party of diners by his presence. He would be a learned person and follower of codes of conduct.
Those who are the progenitors through their wives after having renounced, (their progeny) become outcastes known as bindulā. There is no doubt. An eagle dies after hundred (years). A dog (lives) for twelve (years). A vulture (lives) for twenty years. Then the pig (dies) after ten (years). A tree without flowers becomes fruitless and is surrounded by thorns. Then having been burnt by forest fire it becomes a dry trunk on a peak. Then it remains a lifeless matter for eight hundred years. After one thousand years are over it becomes a brahmārākṣasa (spirit of a brahmin indulging in sinful deeds). One gets liberation from this either by deluge or the annihilation of the family. One should always resort to (the practice of) yoga. There is no other sacred syllable that removes sin.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SIXTYSIX

* Duties of different castes *

Puṣkara said:

1-5. I shall describe the codes of conduct (laid down) by the scriptures and codes of law. (The codes of conduct) are of five kinds. That is known to be the codes of conduct of the castes in which the authority rests on the caste alone. A thing that is laid down resting on the stages of life is said to be the code of conduct of the stages of life. The codes of (the above) both which are made prevalent by a motive is known to be naimittika (occasional or produced by a cause) like the codes of atonement. O King! the student, the householder, the forester and an ascetic are said to be the codes of conduct of stages of life. The fourth one is the practical code and the fifth one is the metaphysical code. It is said to be the practical code which has its say in the six qualities.

6. This is of three kinds. According to Manu mantra (mystic syllable) and yāga sacrifice (are) metaphysical codes. Those which belong to the two classes are justice and administration of justice.

7. Even for the same kind of things it is said that there would
be option due to yāga (sacrifice). The same duty is laid down in the codes also as in the scriptures.

8. Followers of Manu (declare) that the code brings forth repetition for the purpose of the work undertaken. Otherwise the repetition is specially for the quality of limitation.

9. Followers of Manu (state) that this (repetition) is only a special practical code for the result. One would reach the world of Brahmā by doing the forty-eight purificatory rites.

10-19. (They are) the impregnation\(^1\), causing the birth of a male child\(^2\), the parting of the hair\(^3\), rites done at the birth of a child, naming the child, the first rice-feeding of the child\(^4\), the tonsure\(^5\), investiture of the sacred thread, the collection of four vedic observances—the completion of one’s studies, marriage, the collection of five devotional acts—towards the gods, manes, mortals, beings and sages, seven simple domestic sacrifices—the ašṭakā and pūrvaṇasrāddha, śrāṇi, agrahāyani, caitrī, and āśvayuji, then the haviryaṇaš (such as) the agnyādheya, agnihotra, dasaṇaḥpaurṇamāsa, cāturmāsya, āgrahāyanyeṣṭi, nirūḍha-paṇḍhaka and the sautrāmaṇi, the seven somaśaṃsthās—commencing with agniṣṭoma—ātyagniṣṭoma, uktha, sdaśi, vājapeyaka, atirātra etc. and the eight basic human qualities—compassion, forbearance, freedom from malice, absence of exertion, propitiation, charity and absence of desire. Whoever possesses these attains the supreme. One should observe silence in the six (acts)—evacuation of bowels, copulation, passing urine, cleaning the teeth, bathing and eating. One should avoid making a gift again (of an article received as a gift) drinking separately the ghee and milk in the night, removal of teeth and hotness in the seven (kinds of) flours. One should not gather flowers without bathing. It is said to be unfit for the (worship of) gods.

20. If a person not belonging to the same gotra and not related does the cremation of a dead person, he has to complete ten day rites by offering balls of rice and water.

1. Is done when the conception is known.
2. Is done before the embryo begins to move.
3. Is done in the eighth month after pregnancy.
4. Is done in the six months after the birth of a child.
5. Is done in the third year of a child.
21. If one has to dine with unequal persons there is no defiling of the row if (the two) are separated by water or grass or ashes or door or pathway.

22. The five oblations to the (five breaths) (at the commencement of taking food) should be done with the union of the ring-finger and the thumb.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SIXTYSEVEN

Propitiatory rite for the planets

Fire-god said:

1. I shall again describe (the mode of performing) the propitiation of the planets for the sake of prosperity, peace and success. The propitiation of planets is of three kinds—oblations ten thousand times, lakh times and crore times.

2-7. After having invoked planets in a circle at the north-east of the fire-pit with the sacred syllables, Jupiter (should be located) at the north (of that circle), Mercury at the north-east, Venus at the east, Moon at the south-east, Mars at the south and the Sun in the middle. Saturn (should be located) at the west, Rāhu, the ascending node at the south-west and Ketu, the descending node at the north-west. Iśa (lord Śiva), Umā, Guha, Viṣṇu, Brahmā, Indra, Yama (god of death), Kālaka and Citragupta1 are the presiding deities (of the places where the planets have been located). The fire, water, earth, Hari (lord Viṣṇu), Indra, the presiding deity of the east, Prajeśa (the lord of men), Serpent (god) and Brahmā are the subordinate deities respectively. Gaṇeśa, Durgā (the consort of Śiva), wind, sky and Aśvinī gods (are also the gods). They should be worshipped with their respective basic vedic syllables. The twigs of arka, palāsa, khadira, apāmārga, pippala, udumbara, śami, dūrva and kusa should duly be offered in the fire mixed with honey, clarified butter and curd one hundred and eight times.

1. An inmate of the world of Yama recording the vices and virtues of mankind,
8. After having filled one, eight and four pitchers, the final oblation (should be made). Then the vasodhāra² should be offered and the fees paid.

9-10. The sacrificer should be anointed with (the waters of) the four (pitchers) along with sacred syllables. (The following benediction should be made)—"May the celestials—Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Maheśvara, Vāsudeva, Jagannātha, lord Saṅkarṣaṇa Pradyumna and Aniruddha be for your victory."

11-13. May Indra, Fire-god, Yama, Nairṛta, Varuṇa, Pavana (wind), Kubera (lord of wealth), Śiva, Śeṣa (the lord of serpents) along with Brahmā and the gods of the directions always protect you all. May the (divine) mothers, the chaste wives Kīrti, Lākṣmī, Dhrīti, Medhā, Puṣṭi, Śraddhā, Kriyā, Mati, Buddhī, Lajjā, Vapus, Śānti, Tuṣṭi and Kānti who have gathered here anoint you.

14. The planets Sun, Moon, Mars, Mercury, Jupiter, Venus, Saturn, Rāhu and Ketu, who have been appeased, anoint you.

15-18. May the celestials, demons, gandharvas, yakṣas, rakṣasas, serpents, sages, Manus, cows, the divine mothers, the wives of gods, trees, serpents, progeny of Diti, heavenly nymphs, attendant gods, weapons, scriptures, kings, vehicles, herbs, gems, the constituents of time, rivers, oceans, mountains, holy waters (places), clouds and the west-flowing rivers all these anoint you for the attainment of all desires. After having adorned, one should then give gold, cow, food, earth etc.

19. O Rohinī! The Tawny-coloured! You are to be worshipped by all gods and hence you are made up of all holy spots and gods. Hence you give me tranquillity.

20. O Conch! You are the meritorious among all merits, auspicious among all auspiciousness. You are borne by lord Viṣṇu always. Hence (you) give me tranquillity.

21. O Righteousness! You make the universe rejoice in the form of the bull. You are the location of eight forms. Hence you give me tranquillity.

1. A profuse oblation of ghee offered in the fire through a long bamboo or plough.

2. Relating to Śiva, being the five elements, sun, moon and the sacrificer.
22. O Golden embryo of the Fire god or Sun that is lying imbedded inside the golden egg! You give me appeasement that yields limitless meritorious fruits.

23. The pair of yellow cloth is the favourite of lord Vāsudeva. Hence lord Viṣṇu (would be pleased) by making a gift of the same. Hence give me tranquillity.

24. You are lord Viṣṇu in the form of Fish from which the nectar has come. You have the moon and the sun as the vehicle always. Hence you get me tranquillity.

25. O Cow of the colour of (lord) Keśava (Viṣṇu), on account of the fact that you are the entire earth that always removes the sin, you give me tranquillity.

26. (O Iron) On account of (the fact that) all deeds as well as weapons such as the plough are always subject to your control, you get me tranquillity.

27. On account of (the fact that) you are always the origin of fire and remain as a constituent of all sacrifices, you get me tranquillity.

28. Because the fourteen worlds remain in the limbs of the cow, let me have good in this world as well as in the next.

29. On account of the fact that the beds of Keśava and Śiva are not empty let my bed also be not empty in every birth being given (now).

30. Just as the celestials are established in all gems so also let the celestials get me tranquillity by my gift of gems.

31. Just as the other gifts are not equal to one-sixteenth (of the merit) of making a gift of land, may I have peace by the gift of the land.

32-41. (The performance of) sacrifice (to appease) the planets with ten thousand oblations with the payment of the fee (secures) victory in battle. At the time of marriage, festivities, sacrifices, rites for the installation and for the fulfilment of desires, it is said (that one should do) the two—the oblations a lakh times and crore times. In the (oblation) ten thousand times a pit of one cubit length and another pit having a girdle and hole (should be made ready) at (the exact spot for building) the house and pavilion. (There should be) four sacrificial priests. In the (oblation for a) lakh times there may
be the self alone. These are ten times meritorious. (The pit may be a square of) four cubits or two cubits (long). Here Tārksya (the bird vehicle of lord Viṣṇu) should be worshipped more. (He should be addressed as) "You are the vehicle of highly adorable god and your body is composed of the sound of sāman (melodies). You are always the remover of things. Hence you get me tranquillity. As before the sacrificial pit should be sanctified and the oblation lakh times performed. The vasordhārā\(^1\) should be given then. (Then) bed, ornaments and other things should be offered (as gift). There may be ten or eight sacrificial priests in the performance of oblations lakh times. (By the performance of this) one would get sons, food, kingdom, conquest, enjoyment and liberation. One who performs oblation a crore times after making different gifts, would kill his enemy as a result of it. The sacrificial pit (may be a square) of four or eight cubits and there may be twelve sacrificial priests. (There may be) twentyfive or sixteen (priests) and four (?)\(^2\) on a cloth at the entrance. One who does oblation crore times gets the desired things and reaches the world of lord Viṣṇu. The oblation (may be done) with the sacred syllables of planets, or the gāyatri or those of Viṣṇu, or those addressed to the fire god or those of Śiva or the well-known vedic (hymns). One gets the benefit of (doing) asvamedha (sacrifice) by (making oblations with) sesamum, barley, ghee and grains.

42-44. (In the oblations intended) to cause enmity or sorcery the sacrificial pit should be a triangular one. The twigs (should be offered) with the left hand together with bones of the eagle and fire by (those) who contemplate evil for their enemy and who have red dress and untied hair. "Let the person who hates have enemies. Ḥum phat". This is the (sacred syllable). The image (of the enemy) made of flour should be cut with a knife and the enemy should be killed. Or one ball of rice should be offered. One who does so would go to heaven.

\(^1\) See p. 468 fn. 1.
\(^2\) The text is cryptic. The exact significance is not known.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SIXTYEIGHT

Kinds of major sins

Puṣkara said:

1. The king should punish the men who do not perform atonement (for their own misdeeds). One should perform atonement (irrespective of the fact that the misdeed was done) with one's willful desire or not.

2. One should never eat (food) from intoxicated, angry and sick men. (One should not eat food) touched by great sinners and that touched by a woman in her courses.

3-9. (One should) also (not take) food (prepared) for a group of persons, food from the courtczan, an usurer, a singer, a cursed person, an eunuch, a (woman) having a paramour in the house, a washerman, a noxious person, a panegyrist, a cheat, a false ascetic, a thief, one who has undergone a punishment, one who is born to an adulterine, one who is born to a widow, one who is controlled by a woman, one who sells scriptures, an actor, a weaver, and food from an ungrateful person. One should avoid food from the blacksmith, hunter, washerman of sarees, falsely renounced person, a harlot, an oilman, one who had ridden (on a horse etc.) and fallen and one's enemies. So also (one should not eat food) from a brahmin, being not invited by that brahmin. So also a śūdra should not eat food from a brahmin even if invited. If one happens to eat unknowingly from the other among these, one has to fast for three days. After having eaten knowingly one should observe the kṛchra. One who had eaten food from a Caṇḍāla and śvapaca and the semen, feces and urine, should observe the cāndrāyana.

10-11. One should observe taptakṛchra after having eaten food within ten days of pollution, food intended for the dead or that is smelt by a cow or the remnant of that eaten by a śūdra or a dog and the food from a fallen person. (When the food has been taken) at the time of pollution one should observe kṛchra. Whoever eats food from a person having pollution also becomes impure.

1. A simple expiation of fasting etc.

2. Fast regulated according to the phases of the moon.
12. An excellent brahmin who had drunk water from a well into which a five-nailed dead animal (had fallen) or containing feces, should observe fast for three days.

13-21. In all the cases the śūdra, vaiśya and bhūmīpa (the ruling class) (would have fasting) one fourth, half and three-fourth (of days prescribed for the brahmans). A brahmin who has partaken the urine and excreta of a bird, boar, mule, camel, jackal, monkey and crow should observe cāndrāyāṇa.¹ One gets purified by (observing) taptakṛcchra² after having eaten dry flesh, food (intended) for the dead, (flesh of) karaka (a species of bird) (and also after eating the flesh) of a carnivorous animal, boar, camel, jackal, monkey, crow, cow, man, horse (and) camel and after having eaten mushroom, the village cock as well as the flesh of an elephant. So also a brahmačārī having eaten at the āmastrāddha³ and consumed honey or garlic or onion etc. get purified by (doing) prājāpaya⁴ etc. So also one should do cāndrāyāṇa⁵ after having eaten flesh made ready (cooked) by himself. So also pelugaya⁶ and peyūṣa⁷ which cause excess of phlegm and uṭā-kṛsarasanyāva⁸, pāyasa⁹, cakes, fried eatables made of flour, flesh of animal not prepared for a sacrifice, food intended for the gods, oblations and all (kinds of) milks except (those) of cows, she-buffaloes and goats are prohibited as well as their waters ten days old. The hare, porcupine, godhā (a kind of an alligator), rhinoceros and tortoise are (those among) the (animals having) five nails (whose flesh) could be eaten. The remaining ones are prohibited. One may eat fish such as the pāṭhina (a kind of sheat-fish), rohita and lion-faced fish.

¹ See note 2 on p. 471.
² Drinking water with milk and ghee once in three days for twelve days.
³ An ancestral rite in which uncooked food is offered.
⁴ A kind of fast for 12 days, eating food in the morning for the first three days, in the evening for the next three days, only if given as alms the next three days and a plenary fast the rest of the days.
⁵ See note 2 on p. 471 above.
⁶ The exact meaning is not known.
⁷ The milk of the cow within seven days after calving.
⁸ Food consisting of wheat flour, rice and sesamum not prepared for any religious purpose.
⁹ Rice boiled with milk or sugar.
22-23. (Having eaten) all (eatables) made of barley and wheat and (all) transformations of milk, vāgṣādgaśavacakra (?) and others, that which is oily and (the food) kept overnight, a brahmin should do the agnihotra¹, kindle the fire and as desired observe cāndrāyana² for a month. The posture of virāsana³ is said to be conducive.

24-25. The killing of a brahmin, drinking of wine, stealing and copulating with preceptor’s wife are said to be great sins. The association with them, pleasure in untruth, miserliness in a king, speaking ill of the preceptor are equivalent to the killing of a brahmin.

26. Neglecting the Vedas, censuring the Vedas, bearing false witness, killing of a friend, eating forbidden food and clarified butter are the six equivalents to the drinking of wine.

27. The stealing of the entrusted such as a man, horse, silver, land, gems like diamond are remembered to be equivalent to the stealing of gold.

28. Cohabiting with consanguineous girls, (women) of low caste, wife etc. of the son of a friend are known to be equivalent to cohabiting with the wife of the preceptor.

29-40. Killing of a cow, doing a sacrifice for an outcaste, adultery, selling oneself, forsaking the preceptor, mother, and father as well as one’s vedic study, the fire-worship and the son, marrying before the marriage of one’s elder brother, getting one’s daughter married to a person whose elder brother is unmarried, conducting a sacrifice for them, seducing a girl, practising usury, breaking of a vow, selling a tank, garden, wife and son, becoming an outcaste by the non-performance of the religious rites, forsaking the relatives, teaching the servant taking instruction from a servant, selling of things prohibited for sale, exercising control over all the mines, instituting a potent amulet, destroying herbs, living by means of a woman, disregarding one’s work, felling of unwithered trees for fuel, taking many wives, associating with those who despise women, commencing some action for the benefit of one’s own self, eating of censured food, not invoking the

¹. A daily oblation to the fire.
². See note 2 on p. 471.
³. Posture of squatting on the thighs, the lower leg being crossed over each other.
sacrificial fires, indulging in stealing, not discharging the debts, studying of false scriptures, bad conduct, (doing) deeds harmful to others, stealing grains, metal and cow, cohabiting woman fond of drinking, killing a woman, a śūdra, a vaiśya, or a kṣatriya and atheism are all minor sins. Causing injury to a brahmin, the act of smelling something that should not be smelt or the wine, deceitfulness, and cohabiting with men are known to be the acts to make one an outcaste. The killing of a dog, mule, camel, lion, goat, ewe, fish, snake and mongoose are known to be sankīrṇakaraṇa (mixed acts). Getting money from the defamed, doing trade, serving a śūdra, and speaking untruth are known to be apātrikaraṇa (doing unworthy acts). The killing of insects, worms and birds, taking food followed by drinking wine, stealing fruits, fuel and flowers and cowardice are also defiling (acts).

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SIXTYNINE

Atonements for various offences

Puskara said:

1-4. (I) shall describe the atonements for the sins described so far. A killer of a brahmin should live in a forest for twelve years in a hut. For the sake of one’s purity one should seek alms carrying the skull of the dead person on a staff. Or one should throw oneself in the kindled fire thrice with head downwards. Otherwise one should do the āśvamedha, svarjit or gosava. Or one should recite one of the Vedas and walk one hundred yojanas. Otherwise one should give away all (his wealth) to a brahmin, learned in the Vedas. The impurity due to the great sins gets destroyed by these observances.

5-10. One who is possessed of minor sins (such as) killer of the cow should drink (only water along with) barley. After having had a shave he should live in the cowshed covering himself with the hide of that (cow killed by him). He should

1. A yojana is equal to eight or nine miles.
eat a little without alkaline things and salt in the fourth part (of the day). He should bathe in cow’s urine for two months controlling his senses. He should follow the cows during the day and consume the dust rising (from their feet) standing with raised (face). After having taken and observing a vow, he should make a gift of eleven bulls and a cow. In the absence of these one should make a gift of all his possessions to those learned in the scriptures. Having caused obstruction to the movement (of a cow) one should do a fourth (of the above atonements) and two-fourth if (he had) kept (the animal) bound. It would be a fourth less (i.e., three-fourth) if yoked and in full if (a cow) has been killed. If some mishap has occurred (to the cow) in the forests, mountains, inaccessible (terrain) and (due to) sickness, one fourth (of the atonement) is laid. If it dies on account of the tying of the bell or ornament, half the above (atonement) should be prescribed.

11. A quarter less (of the above expiation) should be observed if (the cow or ox) dies on account of taming (goading) or chaining or confining or yoking to a cart or (while being tied) to the pillar, chain or rope.

12-15. When the horn or the bone (of a cow) has been broken or the tail has been cut off, one has to drink barley (water) till the cow becomes healthy. One should repeat the gomati-vida¹ and the hymn on the cow and contemplate on the gomati (vida). If a herd of cows has been killed accidently, one fourth (atonement) should be practised separately for every killing. There will not be any sin if any mishap occurs when some help is rendered (with good intention). Those subject to minor sins except those who have violated the vow of continence should observe this vow or the cāndrāyāṇa.

16-18. One who has broken the vow of continence should worship Nirṛti in the night at the cross-road with the performance of pākayājīna (a domestic sacrifice) with a black ass. After having kindled the fire as laid down, a wiseman should offer oblation to the Moon, Indra, Jupiter, Fire-god and others with twigs, vedic hymns and clarified butter. Otherwise one should wear the hide of an ass and roam about in the world. One should

1. A vedic hymn, to be repeated while observing an expiation for having killed a cow.
observe the vow for killing a brahmin after having killed an ass unknowingly.

19. Having drunk wine, through ignorance, a brahmin should drink wine of the colour of fire, or cow's urine of the colour of fire or water alone.

20-21. A brahmin, who has stolen gold should approach the king and confess his act and say, "Let you punish me". The king should take the club and kill with one stroke the person who had himself come. The expiation for the thief is by death. A brahmin (gets purified) by doing penance.

22-24. Having violated one's preceptor's bed, one should cut off the penis and testicles himself, hold (them) in the folded palms and move towards the south-west until he does not fall down. Then he should observe cāndrāyana for three months controlling his senses. After having done wilfully one of the acts making one an outcaste, one should practise the sāntapana¹. The expiation (known as) the prājāpatya (is laid down for the same done) unwillingly. For acts causing mixture of castes, the expiation of cāndrāyana (should be observed) for a month.

25-29. For acts which defile one (drinking of) boiled barley (water) for three days would be (the expiation). A fourth part (of the expiation) for the killing of a brahmin is prescribed for killing of a warrior class, an eighth part (for killing) a tradesman and a sixteenth part (for killing) the fourth class. Having killed a cat, a mongoose, a blue jay, a frog, a dog, godhā (a kind of alligator), an owl, and a crow one should practise the expiation as for killing the śūdra. For having killed an unsteady woman belonging to any one of the four castes and for having killed a woman unintentionally one should observe the expiation as for killing the fourth class. Doing breath-control is the expiation for killing all (beings) not having bones. One should practise the expiation sāntapana for having stolen things of little value from another's house. One becomes pure after completing the vow.

30. The five products got from a cow are the purification

¹. The expiation in which cow's urine, cowdung, milk, curd, clarified butter or water with kusa is taken and fasting is observed for one night.
for the stealing of eatables, food, vehicle, bed, seat, flowers, roots and fruits.

31. Fasting for three nights would be (the expiation) for (having stolen) grass, log of wood, tree, rice in the husk, molasses, saree, hide and flesh.

32. One should be eating a small quantity of food for twelve days (having stolen) gems, pearls, corals, copper and silver.

33. (One who had stolen) the cotton or silk or woollen rope of cloven-hoofed or whole-hoofed (animal), a bird, perfume and herb (shall take) only milk for three days.

34. One who had cohabited with a woman related by blood or with the woman, or daughter of the son of a friend as well as a woman belonging to the low caste should practise the expiation for that of violating the bed of his preceptor.

35. One should practise cāndrāyana for having cohabited father's sister's daughter, (one's) sister, mother's sister's daughter or (the daughter) of mother's brother or a friend.

36. One should practise the kṛṣṭha sāntapana for having (emitted semen) in an unnatural way or (having gone) to a menses woman or having emitted semen in the water.

37. A brahmin who had intercourse with a woman in the bullock-cart or in the water or during the day should bathe together with his dress.

38. A brahmin cohabiting a woman of the caṇḍāla or the low caste and having eaten (food therein) and having received a gift (from them) unknowingly gets defiled. But (done) knowingly becomes in par (with them).

39. The husband should keep the woman defiled by a brahmin confined in a room. That which a male should observe for having cohabited other's wives, the same vow should be made to be practised by her.

40. If she is defiled again being advised by a person of the same (character), only kṛṣṭha cāndrāyana is remembered to be the purification for her.

41. That which a brahmin does in one night by resorting to a low-caste woman, gets rid of it by eating only that collected
as alms and by repeating (the sacred syllables) daily, for three years.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SEVENTY

The description of expiations for association with major sinners

Puṣkara said:

1. I shall describe the expiations (to be practised) by those who associate with major sinners. A man having associated with a degraded person for a year would himself be degraded.

2-3. A person who officiates as a priest or teaches or has marital relationship or travels in the same vehicle or eats together or shares a seat and has thus association with a degraded person should do that vow (relating to that act) for the purification from such an association. The water of libation should be offered (for that person) in the company of sapindas¹ and relatives.

4-9. On the day of degradation, a servant (of that person) should throw around a pot with water in the presence of the relatives, priest and preceptor at evening (time) as if he was dead. One should fast the whole day and observe pollution along with the relatives. (The relatives) should cease to talk with him and seize the share (of the paternal property) as the eldest. The share of the property as the eldest would be got by the younger brother excelling him in moral qualities. After the expiation has been done (the relatives) should bathe in the sacred waters of a tank and fill a new pot with water and drink water along with the degraded person. The same procedure has to be followed in the case of degraded women also. They should be supplied with dress, food and drinks and they should live near the houses (of their husbands). The hymn of Sāvitri² of those brahmans (who officiate as priests for the degraded) become degenerated. (A brahmin who) has officiated so should practise

¹. Those eligible to have the same rice-ball offering.
2. The gāyatrī mantra is called so as it is addressed to the Sun god.
three kṛcchra\(^1\) (observances) and as laid down should be invested with the brahminhood. (Those brahmins) who do not practise the rites enjoined on them become outcasts and the same procedure is to be prescribed also for them.

10. One gets free (from the sin) of accepting a gift from a vile person by repeating the sāvitrī (mantra) for three thousand times and drinking milk at the cow-shed for a month.

11. For having forsaken a person who had sought refuge and having violated the Veda, a brahmin gets rid of that sin by taking limited food for a month.

12. One who has been bitten by a dog, jackal, mule or carnivorous village animals, or a man, camel or horse or pig gets pure by doing prañāyāma.

13-19. In the (case of) breaking the vow of snātaka\(^2\) and neglecting) his duty (one should) fast. Having uttered the syllable of hum to a brahmin and (having made) familiar address to the elder, one should bathe and abstain from food the rest of the day and appease (the offended person) after prostration. One should practise kṛcchra and atikṛcchra\(^3\) respectively for having assaulted and assaulted fatally (a brahmin). One should observe kṛcchrāti-kṛcchra\(^4\) for having caused blood to come out from a brahmin. If a cāṇḍāla and others happen to stand at the house (of a person) unknowingly, purification should be done from the time it was known explicitly, Cāndrayaṇa or parāka\(^5\) are the purificatory (rites) for a brahmin. Prājāpatya is (laid down for the fourth class of men. The rest follow this. If the jaggery or flower (safflower) or salt or grains etc. (get polluted) they should be kept in the house and at the entrance and they should be put into the fire. It is laid down that (the polluted) earthen vessel should be discarded.

---

1. Consists of taking urine or dung or milk or curd or butter of a cow or the kūsa immersed water and fasting for a night.

2. The observance marking the completion of one's study.

3. A kind of severe penance to be finished in 12 nights.

4. Eating for nine days the quantity of water one can hold in the hand and fasting for three days. But compare the explanation given in the next chapter.

5. Fasting for twelve days.
20-29. Purification of the materials is laid down in the case of materials which are remnants. Those who have become polluted by drinking (water) from the same well and by touch get pure by fasting or by the five things got from a cow. A brahmin who eats as desired after having touched a candala, should do the candrayana or the taptakrechra. One becomes pure after six nights after having eaten or drunk from a vessel in a melee defiled by candala and others of vile (caste). Those of the twice-born communities after having eaten the remnants (of food) eaten by the low-castes should do the vow of candrayana and a sūdra (should do it) for three nights. A brahmin who had unknowingly drunk water from a well or pot (used by) a candala should do the sāntapana\(^1\) and a sūdra should fast for a day. A brahmin who drinks water after having been touched by a candala (should fast) for three days and a sūdra should fast for that day. A brahmin who has been touched by a dog, a sūdra or by the remnants (of food) becomes pure after fasting a night and by taking the five products obtained from a cow, and (if touched) by a tradesman or a warrior should bathe (that) night. A brahmin beginning a journey and discharging urine at a forest where there is no water holding cooked food on his lap without placing it anywhere should cleanse himself, sprinkle (water on the food) and show it to the sun and fire.

30-32. I shall describe the mode of purification for travellers for having taken food both permitted and prohibited in a place habited by aliens and robbers. After having returned to one’s native place (one should do) in the natural order of the castes. At the end of the kṛcehra a brahmin is again to be given the samskāra (purificatory rite). A warrior (class) (gets purified) after three-fourths (of the above rite), a tradesman after half of it and the fourth class after doing a quarter and gets purified after making a gift.

33. A woman in her courses touched by another woman in her courses belonging to the same caste no doubt gets purified by bathing that day itself.

34. A woman in her courses having been touched by a

---

1. Drinking milk, ghee or water heated once every three days.
woman of the lower caste should not eat until she gets pure. She gets pure by the purificatory bath.

35. A man having discharged urine passing through a road and drinking water forgetfully becomes pure after fasting a day and night and by taking the five products got from a cow.

36. A brahmin having discharged urine and eaten forgetfully without having cleansed himself becomes pure after drinking barley (water) for three nights.

37-38. I shall now describe the mode of purification for the brahmins who have renounced the life of a mendicant and the life of detachment. They have to do three kṛcchras or cāndrāyana. Then they should be purified by purificatory rites such as the jātakarman and others.

39. One whose face comes into contact with the sandal or impure thing, the means of purification for him are the earth, cow-dung or the five things got from a cow.

40. A brahmin who had shaved or sold or wears blue coloured cloth etc. for the purpose of austerity becomes pure by (doing) three kṛcchras.

41. A woman in her courses having been touched by a low caste or a caṇḍāla becomes pure on the fourth day. She has to observe (a vow for) three nights.

42. One who has touched a caṇḍāla or śvapaca or the discharge from a delivered woman or a dead body or a person who has touched it (dead body) becomes pure immediately after bathing.

43-45. A brahmin gets purified by bathing with oil after touching the bone of a man. One who had a vomiting or purging becomes pure after (smearing) with street mud and water below the navel, bathing and taking ghee. One who had done the shaving (gets pure) by bathing, One who eats food at the time of an eclipse (gets purified) by doing the kṛcchra. One who has eaten food with an outcaste (becomes pure) after taking (the five) things got from a cow. One who has been bitten by a dog, one who has been bitten by an insect and one who commits suicide (gets purified) by (doing) kṛcchra,

---

1. A kind of simple expiation.
2. See note 2 on p. 471.
3. Rite performed immediately after the birth of a child.
repetition (of mantras) and (offering) oblations. All sinners get purified by repentance and by doing oblation etc.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYONE

Description of certain subtle expiations

Puṣkara said:

1. I shall describe certain subtle expiations which are highly purificatory. One's sins would get destroyed by the repetition of the ārūṇasūkta for a month.

2. By the repetition of the aghamarśa thrice one gets free from all sins. The repetition of the vedic (mantras) such as the (hymns of) vāyu, yama and gāyatrī and the observance of the vow destroys all sins.

3-7. In all the (expiations called) kṛchras (there would be) shaving, bathing, offering of oblations and worship of Hari (Viṣṇu). After getting up, one should stand during the day and sit during the night (when practising the expiations). This is said to be the virāsana. One who does the kṛchra in that (posture) gets rid of sins. (Eating) eight morsels (of food) everyday is known as jati-cāndrāyana. (Eating) four (morsels) in the morning and in the evening is known to be śīṣucāndrāyana. Eating two hundred and forty balls (of food) in any manner in a month is suracāndrāyana. One should drink hot water for three days and hot milk for the (next) three days. (Then) drinking hot ghee for three days, one should be consuming (only) wind for three days. This is said to be taptakṛchra. It is said to be śīta (kṛchra) by the (use of) cold (things).

8-10. Kṛchratikṛchra (is that of maintaining) with water for twentyone days. (Drinking) cow's urine, cow dung, milk, curd, clarified butter and water with kusa (for a day) and fasting one night is known to be the expiation sāntapana. The same if practised every day is known to be māhāsāntapana. If each

1. RV. X. 90. 1a.
2. RV. X. 190.
one of these is taken for three days, it is known to be *atisāntapana*. The expiation known as *parāka* would be (the practice of) fasting for twelve days.

11-14. Practising eating (food) once a day for three days and (eating food obtained) unsolicited in the night (is known to be) *prājāpataya*. A quarter (of the *kṛchra*) is the *pādakṛchra*. (Maintaining) with fruits for a month (is known to be) *phala* (*kṛchra*) and with *bilva*, is said to be *śri-kṛchra*. (Similarly, one may maintain) with lotus seeds and myrobolans. (Maintaining) with flowers (is known to be) *puspakṛchra*. *Patrakṛchra* (would be) with leaves, *toyakṛchra* with water, and *mūlakṛchra* with roots. (So also one may maintain) with curd, milk and butter-milk. It would be *vāyavakṛchra* if one eats food (every day) for a month that he can hold in the hand. The expiation (known as) *āgneyakṛchra* (is) by (the eating of) sesamum for twelve nights. It destroys one's disease.

15-16. (Eating) a handful of fried grain (every day) for fifteen days would be *brahmakūrcca*. One should fast on the fourteenth day and then eat the five things got from a cow on the full-moon day and twice-cooked food thereafter. A person who does so twice in a month gets free from all sins.

17. One who desires to be prosperous and wealthy and one who wishes to attain heaven and to have all sins destroyed should be intent on propitiating god. One who performs the expiations would get all things.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYTWO

*The hymn which destroys sins*

_Puṣkara said:_

1. When the minds of men indulge in (coveting) other's wives or other's property or in doing harm (to others) the expiation for that is the extollation (of the god).

2. Obeisance to that all-pervasive (four times repeated) always. I salute the All-pervasive who resides in the mind, and that lord Hari (Viṣṇu) who is the sense of my ego.
3. (Obeisance to) that lord who remains in the mind and who is unmanifest, endless and unconquered. (I salute) lord Viṣṇu (all-pervasive), the adorable by one and all, one without an origin, endless and lord of all.

4-5. Let my sin get destroyed by my contemplation on that only lord Viṣṇu, who remains in my mind, intellect and ego and that lord Viṣṇu, who is well-established in me and who makes the immovable and movable beings as made of their acts.

6. I (bow) to that Upendra¹, (lord) Viṣṇu and (lord) Hari that removes the distress of the worshipper, and who removes the sin seen in one's dream or due to imagination.

7. I salute that supreme lord Viṣṇu who is the supporting hand for one who is sinking down in the supportless dark world.

8. O Lord of all lords! Lord of all! Supreme soul! One who has under him the thunderbolt! O Lord of the senses! (repeated three times) (My) obeisance to you.

9. O Man-lion-formed! Endless one! Cow-herdsman! An Efficient cause of all beings! One having handsome hair! (My) obeisance to you! You subdue the sin, the wicked (words) spoken, wicked (deeds) done and (wicked) thoughts.

10. O Keśava (one having handsome hair)! You put down the wicked thoughts of mine under the influence of the mind and that very fierce and unworthy (act of mine).

11. The Sacred god! Cowherdsman! Devoted to the sublime truth! The Lord of the universe! The creator of the world! O Decayless one! Subdue (my) sin.

12-13. Let my sins done in the forenoon, midday, afternoon and night with the body, mind or speech unknowingly or knowingly or in dream get destroyed by the repetition of the three names—O Hṛṣīkeśa (lord of the senses)! Lotus-eyed¹! Consort of Lakṣmī!

14. O Lord of the senses! Lotus-eyed! Consort of Lakṣmī! You destroy my sins done by my body or speech. O Consort of Lakṣmī!

15-16. Whatever sin I have committed while eating, sleeping, standing, going and remaining awake by my body, mind

¹. Viṣṇu in his manifestation as the dwarf was known to be the brother of Indra and was called as Upendra.
or speech, whether little or big which brings forth a wretched
birth or stay in hell, let all that be subdued by the pronunciation
of the word Vyāsudeva1.

17. That which is the Supreme Brahman, the Supreme
Abode, the Holiest, the Supreme, when that Lord Viṣṇu is
praised let my sin get destroyed.

18. Let that position of Viṣṇu reaching which the learned
never return and which is devoid of smell, touch and other
(qualities), subdue all my sins.

19-21. Whoever either reads or hears this hymn, which
destroy the sins, would become free from sins done by the bodies,
minds and speeches. One reaches the supreme place of lord
Viṣṇu (released) from all evil planets. Hence one should repeat
this hymn that destroys the sin when a sin has been done. This
hymn is an expiation for multitude of sins. This is the excellent
one for a person practising a vow. Sin gets destroyed by expia-
tions, repetition of hymns and vows. Then one has to do them
for the sake of perfection and for enjoyment and emancipation.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYTHREE

Different expiations for different sins

The Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the expiation as told by Brahmā that
would alleviate the sin. That action which results in the separa-
tion of the soul from the body (death) is known to be killing.

2. One who kills a brahmin on account of anger, hate or
by one’s own or other’s fault, would become a killer of a brahmin.

3. If one is a killer among many who are engaged in the
same act and who bear weapons, all of them are considered to
be killers.

4. If a brahmin dies on account of being censured or beaten
or is hurt by means of wealth that person (who caused death)
is said to be the killer of that person.

1. An appellation of Lord Viṣṇu in his manifestation as lord Kṛṣṇa,
son of Vyāsudeva.
5. When some help is rendered such as (the supply of) medicine there is no sin if the recipient dies. There is no sin when the son or pupil or wife dies when chastised.

6. One should examine carefully the place, time, age, ability and sin and lay down expiation when no expiation has been indicated.

7. One should give up his life at once for the sake of a cow or a brahmin. One gets free from (the sin of) killing a brahmin by throwing himself into the fire.

8. One who kills a brahmin should hold the skull on the banner and seek alms proclaiming the act (done by him) for twelve days, eating moderately. He would become pure.

9. A man who had killed a brahmin becomes pure by doing good deeds for six years. Twofold (expiation) is laid down for a motivated action as that of an unmotivated one.

10-12. The expiation would be for three years in the (case of a brahmin) who has attempted to kill. If a warrior kills a person (the expiation would be) twofold. A tradesman or the person of the last class (doing that crime has to observe) thrice that twofold (expiation). In the case of a brahmin (causing the death) of a warrior (the expiation) would be a fourth less (of that prescribed for the death of a brahmin), and half a quarter in the case of (causing the death of) a tradesman. In the death of a warrior caused by a warrior and (the death) of an old man, woman, child and sick it would be one fourth of that for killing a brahmin. In (the death of) a tradesman (it would be) one-eighth part (of that) and it would be known to be one-sixteenth in commencing (to kill) the last caste.

13-20. One should practice the vow (prescribed) for killing the last caste for having killed a woman not wicked. A killer of a cow should drink five things got from a cow and have (the senses) subdued for a month. (He) should lie down in a cowshed, follow a cow and he becomes purified by giving a cow as a gift. It will be a quarter less in the kroccha or atikroccha for the kings and others. A brahmin who has killed a very old or very emaciated or very young or sickly cow should practice half the vow as mentioned above. He should feed the brahmins according to his ability and should give away gold, sesamum etc. It should be declared as killing a cow if the cow had been struck with clenched fist or by the elbow or the horn had been
broken or had been struck with the club or stick. In the event of the death of a cow while being subdued or chained or yoked to a cart etc. or (being tied) to a post, chain or rope, one should do three-fourth (expiation of the above). One should practise sāntapana (if the death is due) to a log of wood, prājapātya (if due) to a lump of earth, taptakṛcchra (if due) to a stone and atikṛcchra (if due) to a weapon. One who has killed a cat or an alligator or a mongoose or a frog or a dog or a bird should drink milk for three days and practise expiation (called) cāndrāyana. (If the sin has been done) in secret, the expiation (should be done) in secrecy and (if done) explicitly, (expiation should be done) explicitly.

21-25. One should do hundred prāṇāyāma1 for dispelling all sins. Beverages, grape juice, date juice, palm juice, sugar-cane juice, spirituous liquor got from the flower of madhūka, tāṅkamādhvīka (a kind of liquor), maireya (a kind of intoxicating drink) and coconut juice are not (classified as) intoxicating drinks although (they are) intoxicating. Only those which are mainly made of flours are known to be surā (wine). Drinking (of wine) is prohibited for the three castes. After drinking so one should do penance and become pure (by drinking) water. Then he may eat small quantity of food for a year or oil-cake once in the night. For dispelling (the sin due to) drinking of wine one should wear woollen dress, have matted hair and hold a staff. Having eaten unknowingly the excreta or urine or something which has come into contact with wine, the three castes of twice-borns require to be purified again by the performance of rites. One who has drunk water kept in the vessel for wine should observe a vow for seven days.

26. One who has drunk water belonging to a caṇḍāla should practise a vow for six days. One should practise sāntapana for having drunk water from the well or vessel belonging to a caṇḍāla.

27-28. A brahmin (becomes pure by eating) the five things got from a cow for three nights for having drunk the water belonging to the last caste. (One who has eaten) fish, thorn, snail, conch-shell, shell and a small shell and has drunk fresh water becomes pure by (taking) five things got from a cow. One

1. Breathing regulated by the repetition of gāyatrī mantra and the evāhṛti.
gets pure after three nights after having drunk water from a well having a dead body.

29. One should practise cândrâyana for having eaten food from a man belonging to the lowest caste. (If one had eaten food) at the house of a śūdra at the time of distress, he becomes pure by means of repentance.

30-31. A brahmin eating from the vessel of a śūdra (gets purified) by (eating) the five things got from a cow and fasting. That which is cooked in an oven, cooked in oil, oil, curd and flour as well as jaggery, milk and juices from a śūdra are not prohibited (items). One who eats without bathing gets pure by fasting and repeating (sacred syllables) at the end of the day.

32-34. One who had eaten food after discharging urine without getting purified becomes pure after three nights. One who had eaten food into which hair or worm had fallen, knowingly touched by the foot, seen by one who causes abortion, or touched by a woman in her courses, licked by a crow and other (birds), touched by a dog, and smelt by cow etc. should fast for three days. One who eats the semen, excreta or urine should practise the prājāpatya.

35-36. It is opined that cândrâyana (should be done) at (the time of) navaśráddha¹, parāka at the māsika (monthly rites for the dead). Atikṛchra would be (in the ceremony) after three fortnights and kṛchra at the six-monthly (rite). Pādakṛchra would be (done) at the annual (ceremony) and one day (rite) at the second annual (ceremony). The annual ceremony will be on the preceding day and the second annual ceremony on the next day.

37. The expiation for having eaten the prohibited food is fasting. One should do the śiṣuka expiation (śiṣucândrâyana) for having eaten bhūṣtra (a kind of fragrant grass) and garlic.

38. One who has eaten prohibited food and remnant of food eaten by women and a śūdra and prohibited flesh should drink milk for seven nights.

39. If a brahmaçāri (student) or an ascetic or one who has undertaken a vow (drinks) wine and eats flesh while he is impure due to the death (of a person) or birth (of a child), he should do the expiation (known as) prājāpatya.

¹ The first series of ceremonies collectively offered on the 1st, 3rd, 5th, 7th, 9th and 11th days after the death of a person.
40-41. Taking away another's (belongings) by illegitimate means is said to be stealing. One who has stolen gold gets purified if the king beats him to death with a club. Otherwise he should lie down on the floor, bear matted hair, eat leaf, root and fruit and eat well only once a day. He gets purified after twelve years.

42. A person who had stolen gold or drunk wine or killed a brahmin or cohabited the wife of the preceptor or committed theft or drunk wine should practise kyčhra for a year.

43. (One who steals) gems, pearls and corals, copper, silver, iron, bronze and stones should eat little quantity of food for twelve days.

44. The expiation for abduction of men or women or taking possession of lands or houses or wells or tanks is said to be cândrāyaṇa.

45. The five things got from a cow are the purification for the stealing of eatables, food, vehicle, bed, seat, flowers, roots and fruits.

46. One should not take food for three nights (for having stolen) the grass, wood, tree, dry food, jaggery, dress, hide and flesh.

47-54. One who cohabits his mother, sister, the daughter of his preceptor, the wife of the preceptor and his own daughter should be deemed to have violated his teacher's bed. He should be declared as having violated his teacher's bed and made to embrace a heated and glowing iron image (of a woman) and he becomes purified by death. Otherwise a person who has violated the bed of his teacher should practise cândrāyaṇa for three months. One should follow the same procedure for having cohabited even fallen women. One should perform that vow for such (women) which a person would perform for others' wives. It is laid down that one should end his life for having cohabited girls, cândāla women, daughters and wives of one's sapinda. (The sin) which a brahmin commits in a night by cohabiting a women of the lowest caste is got removed by him in three years by eating (the food) got after seeking alms and daily repetition (of sacred syllables). One has to practise cândrāyaṇa for having cohabited the wife of the paternal uncle, wife of one's
brother, woman of the lowest caste, a woman of the pukkasa caste, one's daughter-in-law, sister, friend, sisters of the mother and father, a woman who has been entrusted to one's care, a woman who has sought refuge, wife of maternal uncle, one's sister, a woman belonging to the same clan, a woman who desires another person, the wife of one's pupil and the wife of one's teacher.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYFOUR

Expiations for discontinuing the worship of gods

Fire-god said:

1-3. (I shall describe) the expiation for omission in the worship of gods and orders. One should repeat one hundred and eight times and worship twice for omission in worship. After having made oblations with the five upaniṣadic sacred syllables brahmans should be fed. One should repeat hundred times if (the idol of) the deity has been touched by a woman who has delivered a child, a woman of the lowest caste and a woman in her courses. (One should do) worship with the five upaniṣadic (sacred syllables) and two times bathing. When there is omission in the oblations brahmans should be fed. (Then one should do) oblation, bathing and worship.

4-5. When the materials for the oblation have been eaten by rats, etc., or abound with worms, that part alone should be rejected, sprinkled (with water) and the deities worshipped. When it is broken or damaged to the extent of a sprout it should be rejected. When it has been touched by an untouchable it should be transferred to another vessel.

6. If the sacred syllable or the materials get altered at the time of worship or in destroying the impediments due to the gods and mortals one should mutter the basic (syllable) and repeat again.

7. (One should) repeat one hundred times if the pot is lost. If (the image of) the deity has fallen from the hand and got

1. A kind of mixed caste.
broken or lost there will be welfare only after fasting and (doing) oblations hundred times.

8. For a man who repents after doing a sin, the best expiation is to remember lord Hari.

9. The practice of śaṅdrāyāna or parāka or prayāpatya destroys the sin. The repetition of the sacred syllables of the Sun, Īśa (lord Śiva), Śakti (consort of lord Śiva), Śrīṣa (lord Viṣṇu) and others would destroy the sin.

10-11. The repetition of gāyatri, prāṇava (om), hymns and sacred syllables destroy sins. The sacred syllables of the Sun, Īśa, Śakti and Śrīṣa beginning with the (letters) ‘ka’ etc. and their basic syllables and ending with the respective letters are separately more than a crore. (The sacred syllables) such as om, ārām etc. and ending with (the name) in the fourth case and (the word) ‘salutation’ are capable of yielding all desires.

12. The sacred syllables of (lord) Nṛśimha (man-lion form of lord Viṣṇu) consisting of twelve and eight letters etc. destroy sin. The reading and hearing etc. of Āgneyapurāṇa (would also be expiation to remove all sins).

13-16. Lord Viṣṇu is of two forms of Vidyā. He is praised in the form of fire. The supreme lord is praised in all scriptures as the face of the celestials. He is worshipped as the conserver of enjoyment and emancipation in taking active part in worldly life as well as in inactivity. The oblataions, contemplation, worship, repetition (of sacred syllables), hymns and obeisance made to lord Viṣṇu of the form of Fire (god) would destroy sins relating to one’s body. Making a gift of ten gold (things), twelve (kinds) of grains, sixteen great gifts such as making a gift of something equal to one’s own weight and other great gifts such as giving food remove all sins.

17. Practising vows on the phases of the moon, weeks, asterisms, movement (of planets from one constellation to another), good periods of the day and period of Manu for the Sun, Īśa, Śakti and others would destroy sins.

18-19. The sacred places such as Ganges, Gayā, Prayāga, Kāśī, Ayodhyā, Avantikā, Kurukṣetra, Puṣkara, Naimiṣa, Puruṣottama (Purī), Śālagrāma, Prabhāsa and others

---

1. Vidyā, knowledge, is of two kinds: aparā and parā, standing respectively for the vedas etc. and for the knowledge about supreme Brahma.
also destroy sins. The contemplation that ‘I am the brahman, the supreme effulgence’ would destroy sins.

20-24. The Brahmapurāṇa and the Āgneyapurāṇa, (lords) Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Maheśvara, the manifestations (of the god), all kinds of worship, the installation of the images (of deities) etc. (also remove one’s sins). The science of astrology, Purāṇas, codes of law, penance, vow, the science of politics, sarga\(^1\) etc., the medical lore, the science of archery, phonetics, metrics, grammar, etymology, lexicon, manual of rituals, logic, mimāṁsā (the science investigating the vedic texts) and all other things are the lord Hari (himself). The sins of others get destroyed by seeing one who has got the knowledge about the single lord without the second from which (all are produced) and in which (all repose) and who is everything. He is verily the lord Hari. Lord Hari remains in the form of eighteen vidyās\(^2\). He is subtle and gross. He is the most supreme. He is the effulgence and the sentient, immutable, brahman, supreme, omni-present and blemishless.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYFIVE

Rules and regulations relating to the vows

Fire-god said:

1. Listen O Vasiṣṭha! I shall describe the vows for men and women (to be observed) in order on the phases of the moon, weeks, asterisms, particular day (of a week), month, season, year and the entry of the Sun (from one constellation into another).

2. The vrata (vow) is a restraint as told in the scriptures. It is known to be a penance. The special observances of dama (subduing) etc. are for the vow.

1. The primary and secondary creation, genealogy of gods and sages, periods of Manus and accounts of royal genealogy.

2. The four Vedas, the six accessory texts, mīmāṁsā, nyāya, dharmaśāstra, purāṇa, āyurveda, dhanurveda, gāndhāravāeda and arthaśāstra.
3. A vow is designated as a penance because it causes mortification of the body for the doer. It is said to be a restraint as it controls the collection of senses.

4-9. O brahmin! Those brahmans who do not worship fire get prosperity by vows, fasting, restraints and many kinds of gifts. The gods etc. who confer enjoyment and emancipation become pleased. One who has turned back from sins and lives with qualities it is known as upavāsa (fasting). It is devoid of all enjoyments. One who is fasting should reject bellmetal, flesh, masūra (a kind of pulse), chick-pea, koradūṣaka (a species of grain), vegetable, wine, food from others, (association with) a woman, flowers, ornaments and dress, incense, perfume and unguent. (People) do not commend the cleaning of teeth and (use of) collyrium. The five things got from a cow should be used in the place of the toothstick in the morning and the vow commenced. Fasting gets vitiated by frequent drinking of water, the chewing of betels, dreaming and having intercourse during the day.

10-17. Forbearance, truth, compassion, charity, cleanliness, control of the senses, worship of gods, making oblation to fire, happiness and not stealing are remembered to be the ten general virtues (to be practised) in all vows. Befitting one's capacity one should repeat the sacred hymns and offer oblations (to fire). One should bathe daily, eat moderately and worship preceptors, gods and brahmans. One should avoid taking alkaline substances, honey, salt, wine and meat. Among the grains (all the grains) except sesamum and mudga (a kind of kidney-bean) are commendable. Wheat, kodrava (a species of grain), cinaka (a kind of paddy), devadhānya, leguminous grain, sugar, sitadhānya (barley or white paddy ?), roots from the market are deemed to be alkaline things. Rice, saṣṭika (a kind of rice), mudga (a kind of kidney bean), sesamum, barley, śyāmāka (a kind of corn), rice grown without cultivation and wheat etc. are conducive to vows. One should avoid taking pumpkin, bottle-gourd, brinjal, uḍāṇki (?) and pūṣikā (a kind of herb). Sweet porridge, the flour of barley, pāṭā-herb, curd, ghee, milk, śyāmāka (a kind of corn), rice, rice growing without cultivation, mūlataṇḍula are conducive as haviṣya (fit to be offered as oblation) at the time of vows (in general) and nakta (orata) (eating food only in the night) in the rites of offering made to fire. Except
wine and meat, the other things are said to be conferring good in a vow.

18. A brahmin who observes the prajāpatya should eat in the morning for three days, in the evening for three days, without seeking alms for three days, and should not eat the next three days.

19. A brahmin who is practising the atitrechra should eat one morsel a day for three days three times as before and fast for three days at the end.

20. The expiation sāntapana is known to be (that of taking) cow’s urine, cow dung, milk, curd, clarified butter and water with the kuśa and fasting for a night.

21. Maintaining with the (six) materials used in the sāntapana, each one for a day for six days together with fasting in seven days is known to be mahāsāntapana, which removes the sin.

22. Parāka is fasting for twelve days and it destroys all sins. If it is three-fold (of above) it is said to be mahāparāka.

23-30. Commencing with fifteen morsels (of food) on full-moon day, reducing one morsel a day and no food on new-moon day and then increasing a morsel a day is (known to be) cāndrāyana. Or one pala (a measure of weight) of urine of a tawny cow, cow dung of half the volume of a thumb, seven palas of milk, two palas of curd, ghee one pala, one pala of water (in which kuśa has been dipped) should be collected. Among these, urine of cow should be gathered with the syllable gāyatri, cow dung with gandhadvāra, milk with ṣravasu, curd with dadhikrāṇa, clarified butter with tejo asi, and water in which kuśa has been dipped with devasya. It is brahmakūrca by doing as above. Then one should repeat the hymn āpo hi śthā. They all should be mixed with the (repetition of the) hymn ahamaraṇa or the praṇava (syllable om). After drinking (the mixture) one gets free from all sins and reaches the world of Viṣṇu after fasting. A person who

---

1. The mantra addressed to the deity in the orb of the Sun.
2. RVKh. 5.87.9a.
3. RV. 1.91.16a.
4. RV. 4.39. 6a.
5. TS. 1.1.10.3.
6. TS. 1.3.1.1.
7. RV. 10.9.1a.
8. RV. 10.190.
faets, eats only in the evening, an ascetic, and one who eats only in the sixth part of the day, avoids (eating) meat, performs the \textit{asvamedha} (sacrifice) and speaks truth would reach heaven. The maintenance of sacred fire, the installation (of images of deities), (the performance of) sacrifices, (making) gifts and (practice of) vows, observance of religious vow, the rite of letting out a bull, tonsure, (the investiture with) the girdle and the auspicious bathing should be avoided in the \textit{malamāsa} (a solar month in which two new moons occur).

31. The lunar (month) would be from the new moon to the new moon. The \textit{sāvana} (month) (would be of) thirty days. The solar month (would be reckoned) from the movement (of the sun from one constellation to another). An astral (month) is from (one) revolution of an asterism.

32. Solar month (should be taken) for the marriage etc., and \textit{sāvana} for sacrifices etc. Lunar month is recommended for the annual ceremony and ancestral rites.

33. The fifth one would be that which concludes with the (month of) \textit{āśādha} (July-August). One may perform the ceremony (for the ancestors) at that time whether the Sun moves into the constellation Virgo or not.

34. Whenever a lunar day occurs twice in a month in a year, there the second one is known to be the excellent one and the first one would be bad.

35. One should fast in an asterism when the Sun sets in that. The lunar days are meritorious during the day. They are auspicious in the night in the rite observed in the night.

36-37. The combination of the lunar days—second and third, fourth and fifth, sixth and seventh, eighth and ninth, eleventh and twelfth, fourteenth and full moon, the first and the new moon is of great consequence. This is individually very bad and destroys the meritorious act done previously.

38. It has been stated that (there would be) immediate purity for the kings, ministers and ascetics in (the case of) calamity at the time of marriage etc. as also in the forest path or some danger or in the assembly.

39-41. A king should not obstruct the vow of those who had undertaken a prolonged penance or of a woman. If a pregnant woman or a woman who has delivered a child or a girl who is in her monthly course becomes impure after beginning a long
vow she may arrange always to do the same by someone else. If the vow is broken on account of anger or mistake or greed, one should not eat for three days. Otherwise, one should shave his head. If a person who practises a vow is unable to continue, his wife or son may be made to continue it.

42. A worship that has been begun should not be discontinued when (a pollution is caused) by the birth (of a child) or by the death (of some relative). A person observing a vow falling into a swoon should be brought back to his senses by the preceptor by (giving him) milk and other drinks.

43. Water, roots, fruits, milk, clarified butter, the desire of a brahmin, the words of the preceptor and herb are the eight (things) which do not vitiate a vow.

44-58. (One should resolve as follows) : "O Lord of vows! I am doing this vow for the furtherance of fame, progeny, learning, prosperity, and health and for purity, enjoyment and emancipation. I have taken this excellent vow in your presence. O Lord of the Universe! Let it come to fruition without impediment by your grace. After taking this excellent vow if I happen to die when it is not completed, let all that be complete when you, the lord of beings, are pleased. I invoke the embodied image of the vow, the prosperity of the world for all accomplishments. My obeisance to you. O Lord Keśava (one having beautiful hair)! Be manifest. I bathe you with the five nectars, the five things got from a cow and good water mentally arranged with devotion. You become the remover of my sin. O Lord of libation! (Here is) the auspicious libation mixed with fragrance, flower and water. Accept waters for washing (the feet), for sipping. Make me always fit to offer libation. O Lord of dress! Accept the meritorious dress and O Good lord of vows! Make me always covered by good dress, ornaments etc. O Embodiment of fragrance! Accept the spotless fragrant perfume. You make me have good fragrance and (make me) free from smell of sin. Accept the flower and make me always abundant with flowers. The spotless fragrance of the flower is for the furtherance of longevity and health. Accept the incense (stick) made of ten (fragrant) ingredients, the guggulu and ghee. O good lord of incense! You make me fragrant with perfumes. O Embodied form of the lamp! You accept the lamp
having upward flames and which makes everything shine. (You) make (me) endowed with lustre and elevated movement always. O Good Lord of food! Accept the offerings such as food etc. (You) make (me) abundant with food and as a giver of food and all (things). O lord! whatever my omission in the sacred syllable, in the act and devotion, and the worship offered to you may all that be complete for me. O lord of vows! Give me virtue. Give me wealth, prosperity, continuous flow of qualities and fame. Give me learning. Give me longevity, heaven and emancipation. O Lord of vows! Accepting this worship you may go now only to come again, to confer boons, O Lord!

59-62. In all the vows the embodied golden images of vows should be worshipped by the person practising a vow after bathing (according) to his means. He should sleep on the floor. (He should do) repetition (of sacred syllables), (offer) oblation and (make) gifts at the end of a vow in general. Twenty-four or twelve or five or three or one brahmin should be worshipped. The preceptors should be fed. The fee (such as) cows, gold etc., sandals, shoe, water vessel, food vessel, earth, umbrella, seat, bed, pair of dress and pots should be paid according to (one’s) means to every one. The rules and regulations have thus been described.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYSIX

Vows observed on the first lunar day

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the vows for the first lunar day which would confer on you everything. The first lunar day of kārttika (November-December), āsvayuji (October-November) and caitra (April-May) are the days of (lord) Brahmā.

2. After having had no food on the fifteenth (lunar) day, one should worship (lord) Aja (Brahmā, the unborn) on the first lunar day (with the words) Om tatsat obeisance to (lord) Brahmā or with gāyatrī for a year.
3. A golden (image of lord) Brahmā (carrying) a rosary and ladle in the right (hand) and a kamaṇḍalu (a wooden or earthen water-pot) and a small ladle in the left (hand) and (having) a long beard and matted hair should be worshipped.

4. According to one's means one should offer milk, (to lord Brahmā stating) that let (lord) Brahmā be pleased. A brahmin would become stainless, enjoyer of pleasures in heaven as well as on earth and wealthy.

5-6. I shall describe an excellent vow (by practising which) an unfortunate one would become fortunate. After having fasted and offering oblations on the night of the first lunar day of mārgasīrṣa (December-January), one would get all (things) by worshipping fire (stating) 'Obeisance to fire'. Eating food once on the first lunar day and giving a tawny (cow) at the conclusion one reaches the place of lord fire. This is known to be tīkhivrata (vow dedicated to fire).

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYSEVEN

Vows observed on the second lunar day

Fire-god said:

1-8. I shall describe vows (performed) on the second lunar day which would confer enjoyment, emancipation etc. Eating flower one should worship Aśvins the celestials. One who practises vow for a year would get good fortune and reach heaven. One should worship the god of Death on the second day of the bright fortnight in (the month of) kārttika (November-December). A practiser of the vow fasting for a year would reach heaven and (would) not (go to) hell. I shall describe the vow (called) aśūnyaśayana (the bed that has not become empty) which would confer (the fruit of) not becoming a widow. This should be practised on the second lunar day in the dark fortnight in (the month of) śrāvaṇa (August-September). "O Bearer of śṛivatsa (a mark on the chest of lord Viṣṇu) ! Consort of Śrī ! (Lakṣmī) ! Abode of Śrī (Lakṣmī) ! Consort of Śrī ! Immutable ! May not my life of a householder
get destroyed. Let it be the conferer of virtue, materials and desire. Let not the (sacred) fires be destroyed. Let not the deities be destroyed. Let not my ancestors be destroyed on account of my married life being shattered. Just as you the lord never get separated from (Goddess) Lakṣmī, so also O lord! let not my association with my wife get separated. O Conferer of boons, O Lord! Just as your bed does not become devoid of (Goddess) Lakṣmī, O Slayer of (demon) Madhu! let my bed also be not empty. One should worship (Goddess) Lakṣmī and (Lord) Viṣṇu for a year and bed and fruits should be given away (as gift).

9-12. Libation should be offered to Soma (moon) every month with the (recitation of) sacred syllables. One who lights up the courtyard of the sky! One who is born from the churning of the milky ocean! Enjoyer of the starry quarters of heaven! Younger brother of Lakṣmī! Obeisance to you. Om śrīṁ obeisance to the Sustainer of Śrī! One should worship Lord Hari of the form of the Moon. Dham, dham, bham, haṁ obeisance to Śrī! to the great soul of ten forms! Oblation (should be made) in the night with ghee. A bed may be given to a brahmin. A pot with water and an image of the deity together with a lamp, food vessel, umbrella, shoe, seat and a vessel (may be given) then.

13-14. One who does so in the company of his wife would get enjoyment and emancipation. I shall describe the kāntivrata (the vow that makes one shining). It should be done in the white (fortnight) of (the month of) kārttika (November-December). Taking food only in the night on the second lunar day, one should worship Bala (rāma) (brother of Viṣṇu in his manifestation as Kṛṣṇa) and Keśava for a year. One gets shining (body), long life and health etc.

15-20. Then I shall describe the Viṣṇuvrata which gets the mentally desired (fruits), after doing it for four days in the second lunar day in the white (fortnight) of (the month of) pausā (January—February) etc. One should bathe on the first (day) with white mustard, then with black sesamum the second day) and with vacā (aconis calamus) on the third day and with all herbs on the fourth (day). Murāmāmsi, Vacā, kuṣṭha, vṛśṭha saleya (bitumen), the two (kinds of) rajāni, sajī, campaka and musta are remembered to be the collection of herbs. One should
worship with (the repetition of) the names Kṛṣṇa, Acyuta (unslipping), Ananta (endless), Hṛṣikeśa (the lord of the senses) with flowers duly at the foot, navel, eye and head. Libation (should be made) to Moon with the (repetition of the) names taśi, candra, taśāṅka and indu. The person (who does the vow should eat in the night before the moon sets. (By the practice of) this purifying (vow) for a year and a half, the performer would get all things. This vow was practised by the kings and women in the past.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYEIGHT

Vows observed on the third lunar day

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the vows (to be practised) on the third lunar day which would confer enjoyment and emancipation. Listen to me. (I shall describe) the mūlagaurīvratā for the (goddess) Lalitā (a form of consort of Śiva) (to be done) on the third lunar day.

2-23. Goddess Gaurī was married by Hara (Śiva) on the third day of the bright (fortnight) in (the month of) Caitra (April-May). (Then on that day) one should bathe with sesamum and worship Śambhu (Śiva) in the company of Gaurī with golden fruits etc. “Obeisance to Pāṭalā” (saying so one should worship) the feet of the goddess and Śiva. One should worship ankles for Jayā after saying “to Śiva”. (One should worship) the two shanks (by saying obeisance) to the destroyer of the three cities, to Rudra, to Bhavāni, the two knees (by saying obeisance) to Śiva, to Rudra, to Iśvara (the lord) and to Vijayā (the victorious), the hip (by saying obeisance) to Iśa for the goddess and to Śaṅkara for Śaṅkara. The two bellys (should be worshipped by saying obeisance) to Koṭavyā and the Śūlin (lord Śiva) (by saying obeisance) to the one having trident in the hand. The stomach should be worshipped (by saying) obeisance to you, Maṅgalā (the auspicious). Rudra (should be worshipped by saying) obeisance to the soul of all
beings, the two breasts (by saying obeisance) to Isâni. Similarly (lord) Śiva should be worshipped (by saying) (obeisance) to Hładini. Lord Śiva (should be worshipped by the words obeisance) to the great lord and the two hands (by saying obeisance) to Anantâ. (Lord) Hara (should be worshipped with the words obeisance) to the three-eyed one and the arm (with the words obeisance) to the consort of the destructive fire at the end. The ornaments should be worshipped (by saying obeisance) to Saubhâgyâ (the fortunate) and the great lord. The lips (should be worshipped by saying obeisance) to the (goddess) dwelling in the honey of aśoka (flowers) and to the lord. The face (should be worshipped) by saying obeisance to the consort of the four-faced one and to Hara and the immovable one. Obeisance to lord Hara, the lord of the man-woman form and the nose (should be worshipped) (by saying obeisance) to measured limbs. The lord of the universe (should be worshipped by saying) obeisance to the fierce one and then the two eyes (saying obeisance) to Lalitâ. The destroyer of the cities (should be worshipped saying obeisance) to Sarva (all) and the palate (with the words obeisance) to Vâsanî (the one belonging to the spring), Obeisance to the consort of Śrîkantha (one having the auspicious mark on the throat) and the hair (saying obeisance) to Śitikantha (having black mark on the throat). (Obeisance) to fierce one and (the goddess) of good form and (worship) the head (by saying) obeisance to the soul of all beings. The (following) flowers should be used in order in the respective months—jasmine, aśoka, lotus, jasmine, tagara, mālātī, kadamba, karavira, bāna, mlâna, kunkuma and sindhuvara. After having worshipped (goddess) Umâ and (lord) Maheśvara, the (following) eight auspicious things should be placed in front: ghee, nispâva, kusumbha, kṣirajivaka, tarurâja, ikṣu, lavana and kustumburu. One should take śyṅgodaka in (the month of) Caitra (April-May) and sleep in front of the god and goddess. One should bathe in the morning, worship (the god and goddess) and worship the brahmin couple. The above (mentioned) eight (things) should be given to the brahmin. (He should then say) “Let (the goddess) Lalitâ (consort of Śiva) be pleased (by this gift of) mine. Śyṅgodaka, cow-dung, mandâra, bilvâ leaf, water with kuśa, curd and milk are the things and ghee mixed with coagulated milk (are the things offered) in (the month of)
kārttika (November-December). Cow’s urine, clarified butter, black sesame and the five things got from a cow (ãre the) food to be eaten duly. “(Goddesses) Lalitā, Vijāyā, Bhadrā, Bhavānī, Kumudā, Śivā, Vāsudevī, Gaurī, Maṅgalā, Kamalā and Sati be pleased.” Thus one should say at the time of making a gift in (the months of) Caitra (April-May) etc. He should then offer one pala (a measure of weight) of the purifying clarified butter and a bed should be given at the end of the vow, a golden (image of) Umāmaheśvara, (Śiva and his consort), a bull and a cow (should also be given). The performer would get enjoyment and emancipation by (offering) clothes etc. and worshipping the teacher couple. (One would get) fortune, health, beauty and longevity from the (performance of the) vow saubhāgyaṣṭaṇa. One should perform the vow in the (month of) nabhas (srāvana—July-August) or vaisākha (June-July) or mārgaṣira (December-January) on the third lunar day in the bright fortnight. One should worship (saying) “Obeisance to (goddess) Lalitā”. After having worshipped in every fortnight and having worshipped twenty-four couples at the end of the vow by (giving) clothes etc., the performer gets enjoyment and emancipation.

24-28. Thus a second way (of performance of the vow) has been told. I shall describe the saubhāgyaṇa (the vow which confers fortune). One should avoid salt on the third lunar day in the (month of) phālguna (March-April). When (the vow) is completed he should give a bed and a house with household things after having worshipped a brahmin couple (by saying) “Let (goddess) Bhavānī be pleased”. The vow on the third lunar day for the sake of (getting) fortune has been told. (Goddess) Gaurī confers heaven etc. So also (one would get) by doing the vow on the lunar day in (the months of) māgha (February-March), bhādra (pada) (September-October) and vaisākha (May-June). A person who performs (the vow of) damanakaṭṭitiyyā should worship with damanaka (fragrant leaf used for worship) in (the month of) caitra (April-May). (The third lunar day) in (the month of) mārga (śīrṣa) (December-January) (is known as) ātmāṭṭitiyyā (the third lunar day relating to the soul). One who worships by giving the goddesses Gaurī, Kāli, Umā, Bhadrā, Durgā, Kānti, Sarasvatī, Vaiṣṇavi, Lākṣmī, Prakṛti, Śivā and Nārāyaṇī duly commencing from the third lunar day
in (the month of) mārga (śrṣa) (December-January), (by giving) the desired things, food etc. would get fortune and gold.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYNINE

Vows observed on the fourth lunar day

Fire-god said:

1-5. I shall describe now the vows (to be performed) on the fourth lunar day which would yield enjoyment and emancipation. On the fourth lunar day in the bright (fortnight) in (the month of) māgha (February-March), one should fast and worship gaṇapati (the lord of attendants). One who gives sesamum rice on the fifth lunar day for a year will be happy without obstacles. Gaṅ oblations is the chief mystic syllable. (The syllables) commencing with gāṁ are the heart etc. (of the mystic syllable). Having invoked (god) (saying), “come (obeisance) to ulka (the fiery)” The permission (for the deity) to go (would be by saying) “Go away (obeisance) to ulka (the fiery)”. One should worship commencing with ‘ga’ and ‘gam’ and ending with ulka by (offering) modaka (sweet ball) etc. (The sacred syllable would be)—“Om we know the great fiery (god), we meditate on the (god) with the curved trunk, let that god having the tusk impel us”. One who performs the vow on the fourth lunar day in the month of bhādrapada (September-October) would reach (lord) Śiva. One would get (all desired things) by worshipping the lord of attendants on the fourth lunar day on Tuesday. It is known to be avighnā caturthi (the fourth lunar day without any obstacle) on the night of the fourth lunar day in (the month of) pñāguna (March-April). One who worships (the lord of) attendants on the fourth lunar day in (the month of) caitra (April-May) with damana would be happy.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY

Vows observed on the fifth lunar day

Fire-god said:

1-2. I shall describe the vow (performed) on the fifth lunar day which would confer health, heaven and emancipation. The serpents Vāsuki, Takṣaka, Kāliya, Manibhadra, Airāvata, Dhṛtarāṣṭra, Karkotaka and Dhanañjaya should be worshipped (on the fifth lunar-day) in the bright fortnight in (the month of) nabhas (August-September), nabhasya (September-October), āśvina (October-November) and kārttika (November-December). These would confer protection from fear, longevity, learning, fame and wealth.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTYONE

Vows observed on the sixth lunar day

Fire-god said:

1-2. I shall describe vows (to be performed) on the sixth lunar day. It should be done in (the months of) kārttika (November-December) etc. One who eats fruits and offers libation etc. on the sixth lunar day gets enjoyment and emancipation. The skandaḥaṣṭi vow (done) on the sixth lunar day in (the month of) bhādra (pada) (September-October) is said to (confer) undiminishing (benefits). I shall describe the krṣna-ḥaṣṭivrata that should be done in (the month of) mārgasīrṣa (December-January) remaining without food for a year. One would get enjoyment and emancipation (by that).

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTYTWO

Vows observed on the seventh lunar day

Fire-god said:

1-4. I shall describe vows (performed) on the seventh lunar day that would yield enjoyment and emancipation. One
would be free from grief by worshipping Sun in the white lotus in the month of māgha (February-March). One would get everything by the worship of Sun on the seventh lunar day in the month of bhādra (pada) (September-October). The worship of Sun in the bright (fortnight) in the month of pausā (January-February) without taking food would destroy the sin. The seventh lunar day in the dark fortnight (in the month) of māgha (February-March) would confer everything. The seventh lunar day in the bright fortnight in (the month of) phālguna (March-April) (is known as) nandāsaptami. (It confers benefit) by the worship of Sun. The seventh lunar day in the bright (fortnight) in (the month of) mārgaśirṣa (December-January) (is known as) aparājitā (unconquered). (It would make one so) by worshipping (Sun then). Women (who worship) on the seventh lunar day in the bright (fortnight) in (the month of) mārgaśirṣa (December-January) and for a year would get female children.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTYTHREE

Vows observed on the eighth lunar day

Fire-god said:

1-2. I shall describe the vows (to be performed) on the eighth lunar day. Lord Kṛṣṇa (one of the ten manifestations of Lord Viṣṇu) was born in (the asterism) to rohini on the eighth lunar day in the month of bhādrapada (September-October) at midnight. Hence the eighth lunar day would be victorious. By fasting on that day one would become free from sins committed in seven generations.

3. Fasting on the eighth lunar day in the dark fortnight in (the month of) bhādrapada (September-October) marked by (the asterism) rohini one should worship lord Kṛṣṇa, the bestower of enjoyment and emancipation.

4-17. I invoke (the gods) Kṛṣṇa and Balabhadra (brother of the former) and Devakī (mother of the former), Vasudev (father of the former), Yaśodā (the cowherdess who brought up
Kṛṣṇa in his childhood) and the cows. I worship them. "Obeisance to you. Obeisance (repeated) to the communion, the master of the communion and the lord of the communion. Obeisance (repeated) to the one who grazes the cows and the one who is born of communion." (Water for) bathing should be given and the libation should be made with this (utterance). Obeisance to the sacrifice, the lord of the sacrifice and the master of sacrifices. O Lord! Accept the fragrant flowers dear to you. O Lord! Saluted by the celestials! Be the bestower of all my desires. O Perfumed by the incense! You being incensed accept the incense (offered) by me. O Lord Hari! You make me always profusely perfumed. You accept the great lamp that is lighted and offered by me and be always conferer of the light of the lamp. Make me going upwards. Obeisance (repeated) to the universe, master of the universe and lord of the universe. It has been made known to the one born of the universe etc. and the cowherdsman. Obeisance (repeated) to virtue, master of virtue, lord of virtue and to the one born of virtue etc. O cowherdsman! You lie down. Obeisance (repeated) to one who is everything, to the master of everything, to the lord of everything and to the one born of everything. And to the cowherdsman, the purification. O The one born of the milky ocean! The one born of the eye of (the sage) Atri! O One having the spots resembling the hare! Accept libations of mine in the company of rohini (the asterism, referred to as the wife of the moon). The lord should be established on the altar. Rohini together with the moon should be worshipped. (In the same way) one should worship Devakī, Vasudeva, Yaśodā, Nandaka (foster father of Kṛṣṇa) and Bala (bhadra). Showers of milk together with molasses and clarified butter should be made to fall (on the image) in the midnight. Clothes, gold etc. should be given (to brahmins). The person who practises the vow should feed the brahmins. One who does the vow of janmāśṭami (the eighth lunar day, the birth-day of Kṛṣṇa) would have children and attain the world of Viṣṇu. One who does it every year seeking progeny does not know any fear. "Give me children. Give me riches, longevity, health, progeny, virtue, desire, fortune, heaven and emancipation.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTYFOUR

Vows observed on the eighth lunar day

Fire-god said:

1. Since (the gods) Brahmā and others worshipped the (divine) mothers one should repeat (their names) on the eighth, lunar day of the group of (divine) mothers. One would get wealth by the worship of (lord) Kṛṣṇa on the dark fortnight in the month of caitra (April-May) and for a year.

2-10. I shall describe the kṛṣṇāṣṭami vrata (the vow practised on the eighth lunar day of the dark fortnight). It should be performed in the month of mārgaśira (December-January). Having (fasted) in the night and becoming pure one should drink cow's urine in the night. The doer of the vow should lie on the (bare) floor in the night and worship (lord) Śaṅkara (Śiva). (One should worship) lord Śambhu (Śiva) in (the month of) pausa (January-February) after taking ghee lord Maheśvara (the great lord, Śiva) in (the month of) māgha (February-March) (taking) milk and lord Mahādeva (the great god, Śiva) in (the month of) phālguna (March-April) after fasting and taking sesamum. One should worship lord Sthānu (firm as the pillar, Śiva) in (the month of) caitra (April-May) taking barley and lord Śiva in (the month of) vaiśākha (May-June) taking water with kuśa and lord Paśupati (lord of the flock) in (the month of) jyaiṣṭha (June-July) taking śṛṅgodaka. One should worship lord Ugra (the fierce, a form of Śiva) in (the month of) āṣāḍha (July-August) eating cow-dung, (lord) Sarva (a form of Śiva) in (the month of) ṛavāṇa (August-September) eating the arka (the sun-plant), lord Tryambaka (three-eyed) in (the month of) bhādrapada (September-October) eating bilva leaf in the night, lord Ṛṣa (a form of Śiva) in (the month of) āśvayuji (October-November) eating rice and lord Rudra in (the month of) kārttika (November-December) taking curd. Oblations should be made and worship should be offered in a circle at the end of the year. Cow, clothes and gold should be given to the preceptor. After having requested the brahmmins thus and after feeding them one would get enjoyment and emancipation. One should eat only in the night on the eight lunar days. One who gives a cow at the end of the year would get the
place of Indra (the lord of celestials). Svargativrata (the vow that conveys one to heaven) is described. When the eight lunar day (falls) on a Wednesday in both fortnights, then the vow should be practised. Otherwise one who eats (food) with molasses and observes discipline on that (day) would never have his fortune affected.

11-12. Eight times fist full of rice less the quantity that would rest on two fingers should be cooked and kept on mango leaves knit together and spread on the kuṭa and (the goddess) Ambikā with her retinue and benevolent attendants should be worshipped. (The food) should then be eaten while the anecdotes (relating to the goddess) are being heard. Fees should be paid according to one’s means. (One should also give) karkaṭī (a sort of cucumber) together with rice.

13-23. (The following is the anecdote related to the vow):
(There was) a brahmin (by name) Dhīra. His wife (was) Rambhā, son Kauśika and daughter Vijayā. The bestower of wealth for that Dhīra was a bull. Kauśika took that and was grazing it in the company of cowherds. When he was bathing in the river Ganges, the bull was driven away by thieves. After bathing and not finding the bull he started searching for that in the company of his sister Vijayā. He then found a group of divine damsels in a tank and asked them to give (him) food. The group of damsels told him “You do the vow and hence (be) our guest and eat”. (Accordingly) after performing the vow he ate (the food) and got (the position of) the guardianship of the forest. He then came to Dhīra with the bull and Vijayā. Vijayā was given by Dhīra to the God of Death and the father died (afterwards). On account of the merits of the vow Kauśika became the king of Ayodhya. Seeing the parents in hell Vijayā (felt) grief-stricken. She went to the God of Death (and) implored him to show them mercy. (Finding Dhīra) come for hunting (the next day) she asked him how he got freed from hell. The God of Death said that it was after getting the two vows which Kauśika had given. The two parents reached heaven as a fruit of the two eight lunar days on Wednesday. Vijayā rejoiced and practised the vow for accomplishing enjoyment and emancipation. Those who drink eight buds of aśoka in the (asterism) punarvasu in the month of caitra (April-May) on the eighth lunar day of a white (fortnight) would never get grief. (The following
is the prayer made to aśoka): “O Aśoka! Dear to Lord Hara (Śiva)! One produced in the month of madhu (January-February)! Being tormented by grief I am drinking you. You always make me free from grief. One who worships (divine) mothers in (the month of) caitra (April-May) on the eighth lunar day would conquer his enemies.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTYFIVE

Vows observed on the ninth lunar day

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the vow (performed) on the ninth lunar day which would accomplish enjoyment, emancipation etc. The goddess should be worshipped in the bright (fortnight) in (the month of) āśvina (October-November). It is known as the gaurinavamivarta.

2-4. The ninth lunar day known as the piṣṭaka (cake made of the flour of any grain) (is called so) on account of eating the cake and worshipping the goddess. On the eighth lunar day in the bright (fortnight) in (the month of) āśvina (October-November) when the sun is in the (constellation) Virgo in the asterism mūla is said to be the great navami (ninth lunar day) which destroys the sin always. (Goddess) Durgā (a form of the consort of Śiva) should be worshipped as housed in nine places or as stationed in one place having eighteen hands. The rest (of the images) (should have) sixteen hands. The collyrium and damaru (little drum) (should be held in two hands).

5-10. (The forms of the goddess) to be worshipped (are) Rudracaṇḍā, Pracaṇḍā, Caṇḍagrā, Caṇḍanāyikā, Caṇḍā, Caṇḍavati, Caṇḍarūpā, Aticaṇḍikā and Ugracaṇḍā (otherwise known as) Durgā, the killer of the buffalo (demon) in order at the centre. The ten-syllabled mystic formula is Om Durgā! Durgā! The protector! Oblations! It begins with the long letter ā, has nine eyes and ends with ‘obeisance’. Obeisance, svadhā, vaṣṭṭkāra and hṛt etc. occupy six places. After having assigned the limbs in the toes to the little finger, (goddess) Śivā
should be chanted. One who repeats thus the secret (syllable) would not be affected by anybody. One should worship (the goddess) as holding human skull, kheṭaka (club), bell, mirror, threatening posture, bow, banner, little drum and noose in left hands. One should worship (her as holding) the weapons spear, club, pike, thunderbolt, sword, dart, conch, disc and stick (in right hands).

11-15. After having repeated (the name) Kāli (twice) (a form of consort of Śiva), the animal (that is to be offered to her) should be killed with a sword. "O Kāli! Kāli! Vajresvari (the goddess with the thunderbolt)! Obeisance to the one having the metal rod!" (is the formula). The blood and flesh got from that (killing) (should be offered) to Pūtānā (a demoness) on the south-west, to Pāparākṣasī (the demoness representing sin) on the north-west, to Caraki (a form of the goddess) on the north-east, to Vīdārikā on the south-east and Mahākauśika (should be worshipped) for the fire. The king should bathe in front of that and kill the (form of the) enemy made of the cake. Offerings should be made to Skanda and Vīśākha (the progeny of Śiva and Pārvatī). (The goddesses) Brāhma and others should be worshipped in the night. Obeisance to you O Jayanti (victorious)! Maṅgalā (auspicious)! Kāli (dreadful)! Bhadrakāli (Benevolent Kāli)! Kapālinī (the bearer of (the skull)! Durgā (difficult to reach)! Śivā (auspicious)! Kṣamā (forbearance)! Dhātrī (supporter)! Svāhā and Svadhā (the two syllables used at the time of oblations made into fire). After having bathed the goddess with the five sweet things, she should be worshipped with veneration etc. One who carries the goddess in a chariot with banner etc. and offers a victim would get all benefits.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTYSIX

Vow observed on the tenth lunar day

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the vow (to be performed) on the tenth lunar day that would confer virtue, desire etc. One should
eat once on the tenth lunar day and give ten cows as gift at
the end. Land and gold should be given. One would become a
lord of the brahmins.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTYSEVEN

Vows observed on the eleventh Lunar day

Fire-god said:

1-9. I shall describe the vow (to be performed on the)
eleventh (lunar) day that would yield enjoyment and emanci-
pation. One should take restricted food, avoid (eating) flesh
and copulation. He should not take food on the eleventh day
in both the lunar fortnights. When there is a conjunction of the
eleventh and twelfth (lunar) days (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu) is present
therein. One gets the merit of doing hundred sacrifices by
(such fasting and) taking food on the thirteenth (lunar) day.
When a part of the eleventh day exists followed by the twelfth
day (if one fasts) and takes food on the thirteenth day one gets
the merit of (doing) hundred sacrifices. One should never eat
at the junction of tenth and eleventh (lunar) days. It would
confer hell. One should fast on the eleventh day and take food
the next day (and say) "O lotus-eyed! I am eating. O
The unchanging one! (You) become my refuge". When the
asterism pusya rules over the eleventh day of a bright fortnight
one is said to get undiminishing benefit. It is known to be de-
stroyer of sins. If the (asterism) śravaṇa marks the conjunction of
the eleventh and twelfth (lunar) days, it is said to be victorious.
It confers victory on the votaries. The same in the month of
phālguna (March-April) and endowed with the (asterism) pusya
it is said to be victorious by pious men. (It is said to be of) 100
rores
and crores of virtues. One should worship lord Viṣṇu on the
eleventh day. It confers all good, (makes one) wealthy and be-
gets progeny in this world. It makes him honoured in the world
of lord Viṣṇu.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY-EIGHT

Vows observed on the twelfth lunar day

The Fire-god said:

1-14. I shall describe the vows (to be observed) on the twelfth (lunar) day that would confer enjoyment and emancipation. The person practising the vow should eat once in the course of the day food that has been got without seeking alms, or fast or eat food obtained after seeking alms. One who practises the vow of Madanadvādāṣi should worship lord Hari and the God of love on the twelfth day in the bright fortnight in the month of caitra (April-May), if he desires enjoyment and emancipation. One who practises Bhimadvādāṣi on the twelfth day in the bright (fortnight) of (the month of) māgha (February-March) should worship (lord) Viṣṇu (repeating) “Obeisance to lord Nārāyana (attribute of Viṣṇu)”. He gets all things. One who practises Govindadvādāṣi (should worship) in the bright fortnight of phālguna (March-April). One who performs the Visokadvādāṣi should worship lord Hari in the (month of) āśvayuja (October-November). One who gives salt on the twelfth day of a bright (fortnight) in the (month of) mārgaśīrṣa (December-January) after worshipping lord Kṛṣṇa, is deemed to have given all niceties (of food). One who observes the vow of Govatsadvādāṣi should worship a calf in the (month of) bhādra-(pada) (September-October). When the (month of) māgha (February-March) is over and if the twelfth (lunar) day is marked by the (asterism) śravaṇa in the dark (fortnight), it is said to be Tiladvādāṣi. Bathing and oblation are done with sesamum. Sesamum balls are the offering. A lamp (should be lit) with the sesame oil. Then water of libation should be given together with sesameum. Sesamum should be given to brahmmins. One gets the fruit by doing oblation and fasting. One should worship (with the sacred syllable) Om. Obeisance to lord Vāsudeva. One who practises the vow of Tiladvādāṣi reaches heaven with his family. One who performs Manorathadvādāṣi should worship in the bright (fortnight) in (the month of) phālguna (March-April). One who practises the vow of Nāmadevādāṣi should worship lord Hari for a year with (the recitation of) names Keśava and others. That person would reach heaven and not hell. One becomes the performer of the vow of
Sumatadvāḍaśī by the worship (of the lord) in the bright (fortnight) in (the month of) phālguna (March-April) and the performer of the vow of Anantadvāḍaśī in the bright (fortnight) in the month of bhādrapada (September-October). A person who performs Tiladvāḍaśī should do oblations with sesamum and worship (the lord saying) “Obeisance to (lord) Kṛṣṇa” in the asterisms of āśleṣa or mūlā in (the month of) māgha (February-March). The performer (of the vow) of Sugatidvāḍaśī should worship (the lord) in the bright (fortnight) in (the month of) phālguna (March-April). (One should worship the lord) for a year (on the twelfth days) (saying) “O Victorious Kṛṣṇa! Obeisance to you” to get enjoyment and emancipation. One is (known to be) the performer of Samprāptidvāḍaśī (by the worship of the lord) on the twelfth day in the bright (fortnight) of pauṣa (January-February).

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTYNINE

Rules of observing Śrāvaṇadvāḍaśī vrata

Fire-god said:

1-2. I shall describe the (mode of performance of) Śrāvaṇadvāḍaśī. Fasting (on the twelfth day) in the bright (fortnight) in the month of bhādrapada (September-October) marked with (the asterism) śravaṇa is highly meritorious. One would get the benefits of the Śrāvaṇadvāḍaśī by bathing at the confluence of rivers. (The twelfth day) marked by (the asterism) śravaṇa and a Wednesday is extremely meritorious for making gifts.

3-15. One should do even that which is prohibited. One should eat after the fast on the thirteenth (lunar) day. One should fast on the twelfth (lunar) day (saying) “I am worshipping Vāmana” and invoke the golden (image) (of Vāmana) in a water-pot (saying) “I am invoking Vāmana, (a form of) Viṣṇu bearing the conch and disc. I am bathing lord Viṣṇu with waters such as the five sweet things and others in the pitcher covered by a pair of white cloth (and provided with) good umbrella and sandals. (I worship lord) Viṣṇu holding an umbrella and staff. Obeisance to Vāmana. O Lord of the celestials
I offer you libation. Being worshipped always with good libation and others you make me endowed with enjoyment, emancipation, progeny, fame and all fortune. Obeisance to Vāmana.”

With this (sacred syllable), perfume (is offered) and oblations hundred (times are made). “Om, Obeisance to Vāsudeva.”

The head of lord Hari is worshipped. Similarly the face (is worshipped with the syllable obeisance) to Śrīdhara, and on the neck (with) “Obeisance to Kṛṣṇa”, the chest (with) “Obeisance to the consort of Śrī (Lakṣmī, the arms (with obeisance)” to the wielder of all weapons”, the navel (with) “Obeisance to the omnipresent”, the hip (with) “Obeisance to Vāmana, the male organ with (obeisance) “to the Creator of the three worlds”. The shank of lord Hari should be worshipped (with Obeisance)” to the lord of everything”. The feet of Viṣṇu (are worshipped with) “Obeisance to the lord of all beings”. Offering prepared in ghee as well as pitchers with curd rice should be made. After having remained awake in the night and bathed in the morning at the confluence (of rivers) and worshipped with perfumes, flowers and other things, one should say “This handful of flowers (is offered)” “Obeisance to you, O Govinda! One who is named as (the planet) Mercury and (asterism) śravāna! You destroy the floods of sins and become the conferer of all happiness. O Lord! Lord of celestials! Be pleased with me always O Janārdana!” Vāmana is the bestower of wisdom. Vāmana himself is stationed in the materials. Vāmana accepts the gift and Vāmana also confers on me. Vāmana is always stationed in the materials. Obeisance to Vāmana”. After having given fees to the brahmmins and fed them, (the performer) himself should take food.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND NINETY

Mode of practising Akhaṇḍadvādaśī vrata

Fire-god said:

1-6. I shall describe the (mode of performing) Akhaṇḍa-
dvādaśī vrata (unbroken twelfth day), that is complementary to all
vows. The performer should worship lord Viṣṇu on the twelfth day in the bright (fortnight) in the (month of) mārgaśīrṣa (December-January) after fasting and bathing in water mixed with five things got from a cow and drinking the same. He should give to a brahmin a vessel with barley and rice on the twelfth day. “O Lord! that vow which has been broken by me in the (past) seven births let it now get complete for me by your grace. O Excellent Being! Just as you are the unbroken entire world, in the same way let all my vows get completed.” It is laid down for every month in the same way for four months. Otherwise (it may be practised) in the months of caitra (April-May) etc. Vessel (filled) with flour should be given as a gift. If the vow is begun in the (months of) śrāvana (August-September) etc., one should break it at the end of kārttika (November-December). The deficiency in the vows (practised) in the seven (past) births gets fruitful by the performance (of this). One would get long life, health, fortune, kingdom and pleasures.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND NINETYONE

Mode of practising vows on the thirteenth lunar day

Fire-god said:

1-10. I shall describe vows (to be practised) on the thirteenth day that gives all (things). I shall describe Anāṅga-trayodaśī (the thirteenth day of God of love) that was done at first by the God of love. Lord Hara (Śiva) (of the form of) God of love should be worshipped on the thirteenth day in the bright (fortnight) in (the month of) mārgaśīrṣa (December-January). One should take honey in the night and do oblation with ghee, sesamum and unbroken rice. One who worships Yogeśvara (Lord of Yogas) (on the thirteenth day of the bright fortnight) in (the month of) pauṣa (January-February) after using sandal and offering oblations and one who worships Maheśvara (the great lord Śiva) in (the month of) māgha (February-March) (on a similar day) after using pearls would reach heaven. One who practises the vow should take water and raven and
worship (on a similar day) in (the month of) phālguna (March-April) and consume camphor and worship (lord Śiva) of his own form in (the month of) caitra (April-May). By those one would become fortunate. One should worship Mahārūpa (the lord of the great form) in (the month of) vaiśākha (May-June) eating fruits of nutmeg. One who practises vow should worship (lord) Pradyumna (one of the five forms of Viṣṇu) on (a similar) day in (the month of) jyaiṣṭha (June-July) eating cloves. One should worship the consort of Umā (Śiva) in (the month of) āṣāḍha (July-August) taking sesamum water. One should worship the bearer of trident in the hand (Śiva) in (the month of) śrāvaṇa (August-September) consuming fragrant water. (The practiser of vow) should worship Sadyojāta (one of the five forms of Śiva) in (the month of) bhāḍrapada (September-October) consuming agallochum. One should worship Indra (the lord of thirty-three celestials) in (the month of) āstivina (October-November) taking gold (immersed) water. The person practising vow should worship Vighneśvara (lord of obstacles, son of Śiva) in (the month of) kārttika (November-December) eating madana. The golden (image of) Śiva should be covered with mango leaves and a cow (covered and) worshipped and bed, umbrella, pitcher, sandals and vessel for edibles should be given to a brahmin at the end of the year. One should contemplate on (lord Śiva) causing delight to Rati (wife of God of love) on the thirteenth day in the bright (fortnight) in (the month of) caitra (April-May) and should draw aśoka tree with red-lead and turmeric. One who seeks pleasure should worship for a year and practice the vow of Kāmayatraśaṭ.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND NINETYTWO

Vows to be observed on the fourteenth day

Fire-god said:

1-10. I shall describe the vow (to be practised) on the fourteenth (lunar) day that would confer enjoyment and emanci-
pation. One should fast on the fourteenth day in (the month of) kärtika (November-December) and worship (lord) Śiva. One who performs (the worship of) Śiva (on) the fourteenth day would get all pleasures through the year, wealth and long life. One should take the vow of an ascetic on the eighth or third or twelfth or fourteenth day in the bright (fortnight) in (the month of) mārgaśīrṣa (December-January), eat fruit (only) and worship the lord. Then one should leave (taking fruits) and give fruits as gifts practising the vow of Phalacaturdāśi. One should worship (lord) Śambhu (Śiva) on the eighth and fourteenth days in both the dark and bright fortnights without eating. (One who practises the vow) on both the fortnights would reach heaven. One who eats food only in the night on the eighth and fourteenth days of the dark (fortnight) would get all pleasures in this world and good position in the other (world). One who bathes on the fourteenth day in the dark (fortnight) in (the month of) kärtika (November-December) (would be) happy, when he worships Mahendra in flagstaffs in the form of the banner. One should worship Ananta (endless), (a form of) Hari on fourteenth day of the bright (fortnight). After having made a water-vessel out of darbha, one should prepare cakes from the flour of a prastha (a measure) of rice. He should give one half (of that) to a brahmin and enjoy the other half himself. (This vow) should be done near the river and after the narration of the anecdotes of (lord) Hari. “O (lord) Vāsudevā! Lift us drowned in the great ocean of endless mundane existence and put in the limitless form. Obeisance to you of the limitless form”. After having worshipped with these (words) and bound the consecrated thread on his own hand or the neck, the performer of the Anantavrata becomes happy.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND NINETYTHREE

Description of Śivarātrivrata

Fire-god said:

1-6. Listen! I shall describe the vow of Śiva’s night that confers enjoyment and emancipation. The fourteenth day in the
dark (fortnight) in between (the months of) māgha (February-March) and phālguna (March-April) is endowed with kāma (pleasure). One who practises the vow should fast, keep awake (and resolve) "I shall do Śivarātrivrata fasting on the fourteenth day and worship lord Śiva after remaining awake and undertaking the vow. I invoke lord Śambhu (Śiva), the conferer of enjoyment and emancipation and the boat that rescues from the ocean of hell. Obeisance to you. Obeisance to lord Śiva, the tranquil person, the bestower of progeny and kingdom, the giver of fortune, health, knowledge, material prosperity and the pathway to heaven. Give me righteousness. Give me riches. Give me fulfilment of desires and enjoyment. Give me the happiness of good quality and fame. Get me also heaven and emancipation. (By the practice of this vow) the greedy sinner Sundarasena acquired merit.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND NINETYFOUR

Details relating to the vows of Aśoka-pūrṇimā

Fire-god said:

1-7. I shall describe the (vow of) Aśoka-pūrṇimā. One should worship Bhūdhara (the supporter of the universe) and the earth on the bright fortnight in (the month of) phālguna (March-April). One would get the whole year enjoyment and emancipation. After having set free a bull in (the month of) kārttika (November-December) one should do the nakta (vrata) (eating food only in the night). One would reach the place of lord Śiva. This Vṛṣa vratā (vow of letting lose the bull) is an excellent one. The offering made to the fore-fathers on the new-moon day relating to the forefathers has undiminishing (benefits). After fasting the whole year and worshipping the forefathers one becomes free from sin and reaches heaven. One who worships the birthless deity (Brahmā) on the fifteenth (lunar day) (new moon) in (the month of) māgha (February-March), would get all (things). I shall describe the new-moon day (known as)
the Sāvitrī, that is auspicious and bestows enjoyment and emancipation. A woman should practise vow on the fifteenth day (new moon) in (the month of) jyeṣṭha (June-July) and worship the great chaste woman (Sāvitrī) at the foot of the banyan tree with seven (kinds of) grains after fasting three nights. Women should deeply embrace the banyan tree (besmeering) with saffron etc. doing dancing and singing in the night and worship (Satyavān and Sāvitrī) in the morning (saying) "Obeisance to Sāvitrī and Satyavān". The offering should be gifted to a brahmin. After reaching the house one should feed brahmins and eat oneself and request them to go (saying) "May the goddess Sāvitrī be pleased and let (me) get fortune etc."

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED NINETYFIVE

Vows relating to the week-days

Fire-god said:

1-5. I shall describe vows relating to the week-days that would confer enjoyment and emancipation. (The asterism) punarvasu on the Sunday is the hand (of Sun). Bathing with all herbs is auspicious (on that day). One who performs the ancestral rite on a Sunday would be free from disease for seven births. A Sunday (occurring) on the saṅkrānti (Sun’s entry from one constellation into another) is the auspicious heart of the Sun. One who eats in the night on a Sunday (occurring) in (the asterism hasta) for a year would get everything. One who practises a vow on Mondays (occurring) in (the asterism) cīrā seven times would be happy. One who undertakes to do the vow of eating only in the night on a Tuesday (occurring) in (the asterism) svāttī seven times would be free from difficulties. One who takes the vow of eating only in the night on Wednesday (occurring) in (the asterism) viśākhā seven times would get rid of afflictions due to planets. One who eats only in the night on Thursday in (the asterism) anurādhā seven times would destroy all afflictions due to planets. One who undertakes to practise eating only on Friday in (the asterism) jyeṣṭha
for seven nights would get rid of all afflictions due to planets. One who resolves to practise eating only seven nights on Saturday in (the asterism) mūla would destroy all afflictions due to planets.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND NINETYSIX

Vows relating to different asterisms

Fire-god said:

1-7. I shall describe (the practice) of vows in (different) asterisms, Lord Hari worshipped in the asterism gives material prosperity. Lord Hari in the form of asterisms should be first worshipped in the month of caitra (April-May). The legs should be worshipped in (the asterism) mūla. The shanks of lord Hari should be worshipped in (the asterism) rohini, the knee in the combination of āsvinta, the two thighs in the āśādha, the male organ in the pūrva and uttara, the hip in the kṛttikā, the two sides in the bhādrapada, the belly in the revati, breasts in the anurādhā, the backside in the dhanisthā. The arms should be worshipped in the viśākhā, the fingers in the punarvasu. Having worshipped nails in the āśleṣā, the neck should be worshipped in the jyesṭhā. The two ears of lord Viṣṇu should be worshipped in the śravaṇa and the face in the pūṣya. The tip of the tooth should be worshipped in the svāti, the face in the satabhisak, the nose in the maghā, the eyes in the mrgaśīrṣa, the forehead in the citrā and the hair in the Ārdrā. A golden image of lord Hari should be worshipped in a pot filled with molasses at the end of a year and bed, cow and materials (should be given) as fees.

8-22. Lord Viṣṇu should be worshipped in the form of the asterisms and in the form of lord Śiva. One who practises the vow (known as), Sāmbhavāniya should worship lord Hari in the asterisms of every month, in the kṛttikās in the (month of) kārttika, in the mrgaśīrṣa in the mrgāsya (māgha), with the names, such as Keśava etc. or (with the words) “Obeisance to Acyuta (one without a loss)”. One should worship
lord Hari of the form of the asterisms on the day of (the asterism) kṛttikā in the (month of) kārttika. (One should resolve that) "I shall do the vow (known as the) Śāmbhavāvantya, that confers enjoyment and emancipation. I am invoking the lord of great forms such as Keśava etc., that bestows everything and furthers longevity and health". Food together with a pool (should be offered) for four months commencing with kārttika. Rice and pulse boiled with spices (should be offered for four months) beginning with phālguna and sweet gruel from āśādha. Offering should be made to the lord and brahmans in the night. One becomes pure after bathing in water (mixed with) the five things got from a cow and drinking the same. Whichever material is offered before allowing the invoked deity to go is told as offering. When lord Jagannātha (the lord of the world) is allowed to go it becomes the remains of the offering in a moment. "O Acyuta (one without a loss)! Obeisance to you. Let my sin get destroyed and (my) merits grow. Let all my fortune, wealth etc. be without decay. Let not my progeny get destroyed. Just as you are decayless, greater than the greatest, that Supreme soul who has become the Brahman, in the same way, you make that desired by me as without a loss. O Immeasurable one! You take away the sin done by me. One without a loss! Limitless! One who protects the cows! You grace me with the desired things. O Immeasurable being! You make me without a loss, O Excellent among beings!" After having worshipped for seven years one would get enjoyment and emancipation. I shall describe the vow (known as) Ananta, (endless) among the vows relating to asterisms, that would yield wealth. One should worship lord Hari in the (asterism) mṛgastha in (the month of) mārgasirṣa drinking cow’s urine. Lord Ananta (the limitless) confers endless fruits for all desires and also the same endless (fruits) in the next birth. This great vow makes one acquire a limitless acquisition of merits. It would make one get the desired objects without loss. After having worshipped the feet etc., one should eat without oil in the night. Oblation should be made for four months for the sake of Ananta with ghee. Oblation (should be made) with rice (for four months) commencing with caitra and with milk in (the four months) beginning with śrāvaṇa. Māndhātā was born as the son of Yuvanāśva as a result of (doing) Anantavrata.
CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND NINETYSEVEN

Vows performed on certain days

Fire-god said:

1-6. I shall describe the vows to be performed on certain days. I shall first explain the Dhenuvarata (vow of giving a cow as a gift). One who gives as a gift a cow delivering a calf together with plenty of gold and observes the payovrata (drinking milk oozing from the udders of a cow), reaches the exalted position. After practising payovrata for three days and giving a golden (replica of) kalpapādapa (the celestial tree that yields the desired object), one reaches the place of lord Brahmā. This is known as the kalpavṛksa varāta. One should give as gift golden (replica of) earth (weighing) more than twenty palas and practise payovrata that day. That person would reach (the world of) Rudra. One who eats food only once a day for three days in every fortnight would get enormous wealth. One who observes the trirātvarāta (vow for three nights) every day in every month eating only once (in the nights) for three nights in every month would get the place of Gaṇeśa. One who practises the trirātvarāta intended for lord Janārada (a form of Viṣṇu) would reach the abode of lord Hari taking with him hundreds of his own family.

7-11. One who practises the vow called trirātvarāta should begin it on the ninth day in the bright fortnight in (the month of) mārgaśīrṣa. One should repeat, “Om, obeisance to Vāsudeva”, a thousand or hundred times. One should eat once on the eighth, day, fast for three days worship lord Viṣṇu on the twelfth day and practise the vow in kārttika. After having fed the brahmāns, one should give clothes, beds, seats, umbrellas, sacred threads and vessels. He should then request brahmāns “Whatever has become incomplete for me in this difficult vow, let it become complete being permitted by you”. One who practises the trirātvarāta would attain lord Viṣṇu after having enjoyed all comforts.

12-16. I shall describe the kārttikavrāta that would confer enjoyment and emancipation. One who partakes five things got from a cow on the tenth day, fasts on the eleventh day and worships lord Viṣṇu in the bright fortnight in kārttika would
reach him by the celestial vehicle. One who eats for three nights in castra and gives five goats would be happy. Drinking milk for three nights and fasting for three days on the sixth day etc. of the bright fortnight in kārttika is said to be the expiation māhendra. After having drunk milk for five nights, fasting, taking only curd, on the eleventh day in kārttika is (known to be) the expiation Bhāskara, that confers wealth. Taking gruel made of barley and rice, curd, milk, ghee and water on the fifth day etc. in the bright fortnight is known to be expiation sāntapana.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND NINETY-EIGHT

Vows performed in different months

Fire-god said:

1-2. I shall describe vows (to be performed) in different months, that would yield enjoyment and emancipation. A wise man should avoid bathing with oil for four months commencing with āśādha. One who abstains (from using) flower and salt and gives a cow (as a gift) in vaisākha would become a king. One who gives a cow and fasts a month is said to practise a terrible vow and is deemed to be lord Hari.

3-4. One who bathes (daily) early in the morning for four months commencing with āśādha would reach lord Viṣṇu. One who gives molasses and cow in the month of māgha or castra on the third day would be the great performer of the guḍāvatata (vow of giving away molasses) and he would get (an identical form of) consort of Gauri. One who eats food only in the night in the months of mārgaśīrṣa etc. would attain the world of lord Viṣṇu.

5-7. So also one who eats only once a day and observes the twelfth day vow would do. One who rejects fruit for four months commencing with śrāvaṇa and gives (the fruits) as gift would get everything. One should fast on the eleventh day in the bright fortnight in āśādha and prepare to do the vows lasting for four months. One should worship lord Hari in the āśādha at the entry of the Sun (into a constellation) in karakata.
8-10. "O lord! This vow has been undertaken by me in your presence. O Keśava! When you are pleased let it be accomplished without impediment. O lord! If I die after taking this vow and the vow becomes incomplete, let it become completed by your grace, O Janārdana!" One should avoid eating flesh and a brahmin should refrain from (the use of) oil and worship lord Hari. One who fasts on alternate days and for three nights would reach the world of lord Viṣṇu.

11. One who practises the cāndrāyāṇa would reach the world of Viṣṇu, the vow of silence would be fit for liberation, the vow of prājāpatya eating the flour of barley would reach heaven.

12-15. One who takes milk etc. and one who takes five things got from a cow would reach heaven. A person eating vegetables, roots and fruits would reach the world of Viṣṇu. One who avoids flesh and tasty food and takes barley would reach lord Hari. I shall describe the Kaumudavrata. Having observed a fast on the twelfth day in kārttika one should besmear lord Viṣṇu (with sandal) and worship (him) with lotuses and blue lotuses and offer a lamp lit by ghee and sesamum oil. "Om obeisance to Vāsudeva." One should worship him with a garland of mālati (flowers). One who practises the kaumudavrata would get piety, pleasure, wealth and liberation. One who practises the vow of fasting in the months (specified) and worships lord Hari would get everything.

CHAPTER ONE HUNDRED AND NINETYNINE

Vows relating to different seasons

Fire-god said:

1-3. I shall describe the vows relating to the seasons that would bestow enjoyment and emancipation. A brahmin who gives away fuel in the four seasons beginning with the rainy season and gives ghee and cow at the end would become agni-vrati. Maintaining silence at the twilight and giving a pitcher with ghee at the end of the month as well as sesamum, bell and clothes one would be happy. (He is known to be) the performer
of Śarasvatāvrata. One who bathes with the five sweet things for a year and gives away a cow would become a king.

4-5. Eating only in the night on the eleventh day in caitra food should be offered to (lord Viṣṇu). That person who practises the Viṣṇu-madvrata would reach the golden feet of lord Viṣṇu at the end of the month. One who eats sweet gruel and offers a pair of cows as a gift would get fortune. He would be (known as) the performer of Devivrata. One who offers to the pitrdevas (the dead ancestors) and eats (the food) would become a king.

6-8. I have described the Varṣavratas (the vows relating to rainy season). I shall describe the vows relating to the movement (of the Sun). A person who keeps awake in the night at the time of the movement (of the Sun from one constellation into another) would go to heaven. Similarly worship of Śiva in the form of the Sun at the time of the new-moon and Sun’s movement (would get the same result). Bathing (the image of) Keśava with a prastha (a kind of measure) of clarified butter of thirty-two pala measures one gets free from all sins. One who bathes (the lord) with ghee, milk etc. at the time of the equinox etc. (would get the same fruits).

9-10. The Umāvrata done on the third day and the eighth days confers fortune on women. One who worships (goddess) Gaurī and lord Maheśvara would get all fortunes. After worshipping Umāmaheśvara one gets non-separation. The main performer of the vow in the Umēsvrata is the woman. A woman who is devoted to the Sun would certainly become a male.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED

Vow of giving a gift of lamp

Fire-god said:

1-5. I shall describe the vow of making a gift of a lamp that would yield enjoyment and emancipation. One who gives a lamp to the abode of a deity or a house of a brahmin is rewarded with everything for a year. (One who does so) for four months
would reach the world of Viṣṇu, and (giving) in kārttiṇa, would reach heaven. There is nothing greater than the gift of a lamp, neither there was, nor there would be. One gets longevity, eyesight, fortune and progeny etc. by giving a lamp. One who gives a lamp enjoys in heaven after getting fortune. Lalitā, the daughter of the king of Vīdarbha, the beautiful and faithful spouse of a king became the foremost among hundreds of wives (of the king) by giving a lamp. That chaste lady used to give thousand lamps to the temple of Viṣṇu. When enquired about the greatness of the lamp she said to her co-wives as follows:

Lalitā said:

6-18. In olden days Maitreya was the priest of the king of Sauvira. He caused a temple to be built for lord Viṣṇu on the banks of Devikā. He gave a lamp (for that temple) in kārttiṇa. (The lamp) which was about to be extinguished was kindled with the wick by me as a mouse with my mouth (taking shelter there) on account of being afraid of a cat. After the death I was born as the daughter of a king and became a queen among the hundred (of the king’s wives). The fruit of that act of kindling the lamp of the temple of Viṣṇu, even though not resolved, is enjoyed by me. Because I remember my past birth. I give lamps day and night. One who gives a lamp on the eleventh day rejoices in heaven in a vehicle. One who steals a lamp would become dumb or dull or fall into the dark hell difficult to be crossed. Seeing the crying men, the servant of the God of Death said to them:

"Enough of your wailing. What use of your wailing over misdeeds wantonly done by you before? One is born as a man after a cycle of thousand births. O Extremely stupid fellow! Why do you run after pleasures even in that (life)? The result of enjoying according to one’s desire is that of coming here and wailing. You are enjoying the fruits of your past deed. Why have you not thought about it? The embrace of the breasts of other women for your pleasure has given you grief. The worldly enjoyment for a while causes grief many crores of years. O Seducer of other’s wives! Why do you cry "O Mother! What would be very heavy (to bear) when the name of Hari is repeated with the tongue? Fire can be had always with a wick and oil at low cost. The lamp has been stolen by you not showing
inclination for giving. That is the cause of your grief. What use in wailing now? You bear that which has happened.

Fire-god said:

19. After hearing what was told by Lalitā, (the other wives) reached heaven after giving a lamp. Hence there would be great benefit by the gift of a lamp.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND ONE

Mode of worshipping Viṣṇu in a figure of nine compartments

Fire-god said:

1-6. I shall describe the navavyūhārcaṇa (worship in nine compartments) that was narrated by Hari to Nārada. The letter ‘a’ with Vāsudeva should be worshipped at the centre of a lotus figure and the letter ā with Saṅkarṣaṇa and Pradyumna at the south, the letter ah and Aniruddha at the south-west, the letter oṁ and Nārāyaṇa at the west, (the words) tat sat and Brahmā at the north-west, (the letter) hum and Viṣṇu and (the letter) kṣaum and Nṛṣimha at the north, and (the letter) bhūḥ and Varāha at the north-east. (The letters) kāṁ, tāṁ, tāṁ, sāṁ and Garutmat (vehicle of Viṣṇu) (should be worshipped) at the western entrance (of that figure), (the letters) khaṁ, ṇaṁ, ṇaṁ and the eastern face at the south, (the letters) khaṁ, ṇaṁ, ṇaṁ, sāṁ and the mace at the north. (The letters) bāṁ, ṇaṁ, māṁ, kṣaum and Īśāna should be worshipped at the north-east, (the letters) dhāṁ, dāṁ, bhaṁ, haṁ and Śrī (Lakṣmī) at the south and (the letters) gam, dāṁ, vāṁ, sāṁ and Puṣṭi. (The letters) dhāṁ, vāṁ (should be worshipped) and the garland of wild flowers at the west of the pedestal, the śrūvaśa (the mark on the chest of lord Viṣṇu) and (the letters) saṁ, haṁ, laṁ at the west and (the letters) chaṁ, taṁ, yaṁ and the kaustubha (the crest-jewel) to the west of it.

7-10. (After having worshipped with) “Obeisance to Ananta”, worship should be made below in the order of the ten (forms) of Viṣṇu and the four pitchers representing Mahendra
and others in the east and other directions in the above order of
the ten forms (of Viṣṇu). The arches and canopy (should also
be worshipped in the same way). After having contemplated
the orbs of fire, wind and moon with (their respective) letters in
order, one should worship the body and then bathe it. One should
then contemplate on the subtle form of the self in the sky,
submerged in the white nectar that flows from the disc of the
moon. That is the eternal seed of one’s self that has been conse-
crated by the flood. One should thus resolve the spirit that is
being produced in the self.

11-16. Then one should do the location of twelve letters
(after saying) “I am verily Viṣṇu produced (again)”. The
heart, head, tuft, armour and weapons should be located (res-
pectively) on the chest, head, tuft, back and eyes. Then the
weapons should be located on the two hands. Then one would
have a divine body. One should do this location on the body of
the disciple in the similar way (as it has been done) on one’s
self as well as the deity. The worship done for Hari on the heart
is known to be anirnālīyā (without remnant) and that done in a
circle as sanirmālīyā (together with remnant). The disciples with
their eyes covered should throw the flower (on the images)
(at the commencement of the worship). On which images the
flower falls that name should be given to them. Then the discip-
les should be seated on the left and sesamum, rice and ghee should
be offered (as oblation). After having made one hundred and
eight oblations, (one should do) thousand (oblations) for the
purification of the body. One should do more than hundred
(oblations) for the limbs of the images of the nine compart-
ments. After having made the final (oblation) the preceptor
should initiate them (the disciples). He has to be respected by
them with riches etc.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND TWO

Different flowers used in Worship

Fire-god said:

1-2. Lord Hari gets pleased with flowers, perfumes, in-
cense, lamps and offerings. I shall describe you flowers which
are fit and unfit for the god. Malati is the excellent flower. Tamala (flower) confers enjoyment and emancipation. Mallika (jasmine) destroys all sins. (The flower) yuthika gets the world of Visnu.

3. Atimukta will also get the same fruit. The patala (flower) conveys one to the world of Visnu. One gets the world of Visnu with the karavtra (flowers). One becomes fortunate with japa (flowers).

4. One would reach the world of Visnu with the pavantri, kubjaka and tagara (flowers). (One would reach) the world of Visnu with the kartrakara. There would be destruction of sin with kuruntha.

5-6. One will have an excellent position with lotuses, ketakt and jasmine. One would reach the world of Hari with bana flowers, barbara and krshna. Similar result would be got by asoka, tilaka and aparusabhava. The leaves of bilva would confer liberation. One will have the supreme position with the leaves of sani.

7-11. One would reach the world of Visnu with the bhrngaraaja. One would have same fruits with the leaves of tamala. The black and white basil, white lotus, blue lotuses, lotus, red lotus are meritorious. Lord Hari (gets pleased) with a garland of hundred lotuses. One would get enjoyment and emancipation and destruction of sin with nipia, arjuna, kodamba, vakula, fragrant kimshuka, munipuspā, gokarna, nāgakarna, sandhyā flower, bilva, raṅjani, ketaki, kusmāṇḍa, timira, kuśa, kāśa, sara, dyūta etc., maruvaka leaves and other fragrant (leaves and flowers). The god would get pleased with all (that is offered) with devotion. A flower is more meritorious than a lakh of gold and a garland, more than a crore times.

12-15. It would be three times more meritorious with the forest flowers than with the flowers from one’s own garden or another’s garden. One should not worship lord Visnu with withered or broken (flowers) or (flowers) having more than the usual parts. (One would reach) hell (by worshipping) with kānianāra, unmatra, girikanikā, kujjaja salmaliyā and shriṣa. Lord Hari (is pleased) with sugandha, brahma, lotuses and blue lotuses. Lord Hara is worshipped with arka mandara (and) dhustura flowers. One should not offer Kujjaja, karkaṭi flowers
and ketaki for Śiva. (One should not use) kūsmānda, nimba and wild flowers without fragrance (in worship).

16-18. One would get enjoyment and emancipation by worshipping gods with the eight flowers of gestures such as non-violence, conquest of senses, forbearance, knowledge, compassion and learning. Non-violence is the first flower. (The second) flower is the control of senses. Compassion for the beings is (said to be) all flowers. The flower of tranquility excels. Quietitude is a flower and penance is a flower. Meditation is the seventh flower. Truth is the eighth flower. Lord Keśava is pleased with these flowers.

19-23. When lord Hari is worshipped with these flowers, he certainly gets pleased. O Excellent among men! There are other external flowers. When lord Viṣṇu is worshipped with devotion together with compassion, he gets pleased. Water is the flower for Varuṇa. Ghee, milk and curd (are the flowers) for Soma. Food etc. (are the flowers) for Prajāpati (Brahmā) and incense and lamp for Fire (god). The fifth flower is the fruits and flowers of the forest. The kusa, roots etc. are the flowers of the earth. Fragrant sandal is that of the Wind (god). Earnestness is the flower for lord Viṣṇu. These are always the eight flowers. The seat, the form, the five limbs (such as the heart etc.) and Viṣṇu are the eight flowers. (Worship should be made with the names) Vāsudeva and others for Viṣṇu and Iśāna and others for Śiva.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND THREE

The nature of hell

Fire-god said:

1-5. I shall describe hells. One does not go to them if he worships lord Viṣṇu with flowers and other things. A man gets released from his life forces at the end of his life even though he does not wish for it. A man gets released from his life on account of some case such as water, fire, poison, weapon, hunger, illness and fall from a mountain. One takes another body to be
experienced as a result of one’s own acts. One who has committed a sin would experience grief and one who does good (deeds) would experience happiness. One is led to the God of Death by the dreadful messengers of God of Death through the southern gate if one has taken evil path. Pious men (would be taken) by the western and other (doors). (They are) cast into hells by the servants being ordered by the God of Death. On account of piety one is led to heaven according to the words of Vasistha.

6-9. The killer of a cow is tormented for a lakh of years in the mahāvīci (one of the hells). The killer of a brahmin (would be tormented) in a well-heated copper pot (for the same period). One who steals the land would be slowly tormented in the raurava (hell) till the great deluge. One who kills a woman, child or the old (is tormented) in the dreadful mahānrurava (hell) till (the period of) fourteen Indras. One who sets fire to the house, ground etc. is burnt for a kalpa (432 million years of mortals). Thieves would fall into the tāmisraka hell. They would be pierced by the attendants of the God of Death with spears etc. for many kalpa periods. Then they would be tormented in the mahatāmisraka hell by serpents, leeches etc.

10-11. One who kills his mother would be struck by swords in the asipatravana (forest where the trees have leaves as sharp as swords) for many kalpa periods as long as the earth (remains). One who has burnt men would be burnt in muddy region with gravel etc. One who has eaten sweet food alone will suffer in kākola (hell) eating the excreta of insects.

12. One who has discontinued (doing) five sacrifices¹ (would suffer) in kūṭtala hell eating urine and blood. One who has eaten the forbidden food would take blood in the filthy hell.

13. One who afflicts others would be tormented in the hell tailapāka like sesamum. One who kills a person who has sought refuge would be cooked in the tailapāka.

14. One who withholds gifts at the sacrifice and who sells wine would be thrown into the hell nirucchvāsa. Similarly,

¹. To be performed by a householder—brahmayajña, pītyajña, daivyapītyajña, bhūlayajña and nṛyajña respectively denoting teaching, libation to manes, oblation to gods, offering made to spirits and feeding guests.
one who lies (would be thrown) into the great hell vajrakāvāṭa.

15. Evil-minded persons (would suffer) in (the hell) mahājvāla; one who has cohabited the forbidden woman (would suffer) in (the hell) krakaca, the doer of mixed sins in (the hell); one who strikes at other’s weakness would suffer in hells guḍapāka and pratoda.

16. The killer of an animal (would be thrown) into an alkaline lake. One who steals the land (would be placed) under a current as sharp as a razor. One who steals a cow or gold (would be thrown) into (the hell) amburtṣa. One who cuts a tree (would be put) in (the hell) vajrastrastra.

17. One who steals wine would be put into paritāpa (hell) and one who steals other’s wealth into kālasūtra (hell). One who eats flesh in excess (would be thrown) into kaśmala (hell). One who does not offer the rice-balls (for the manes) (would be put) into ugragandha hell.

18. One who receives a bribe (would be tormented) in (the hell) durdhara. One who cohabits women taken captive (would suffer) in the hell (called) maṇjūsa. One who censures scriptures (would be thrown) in the unstable hell loha.

19-20. One who bears false witness (would be put) in (the hell) pūtivaktra. One who steals wealth and one who kills a child, woman or the old and one who afflicts a brahmin would suffer in (the hell) karāla. A brahmin who drinks wine (would suffer) in (the hell) vilepa. Those who have caused breach (of friendship) (would be put) into (the hell) mahātāmra.

21. One who cohabits others’ wives (would enter) (the hell) sālmala (and embrace) glowing iron or stone. Similarly, a woman cohabiting many men would do.

22-23. Those who cohabit their mothers and daughters, those who have cut the tongue (of others), those who have looked (at others’ wives) with lustful eyes and those who have plucked the eyes would be thrown into a heap of charcoal. Thieves would be pierced with razors. One who eats flesh (would be made) to eat his own flesh. One who practises fasting for (the stipulated) months would not go to hell. So also one who practises the vow on the eleventh day and the bhīṣmaṇcakavrata- (would not go to hell).
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FOUR

Mode of practising the vow of fasting for stipulated months

Fire-god said:

1-2. I shall describe the vow (known as) fasting for a month, that is the most excellent among (the vows). After having done the sacrifice relating to (lord) Viśṇu and got the command of the preceptor and knowing one's own strength with (the practice of) kṛcchra etc., O Sage! a forester or an ascetic or a woman or a widow should fast for a month.

3-5. One should undertake to observe this vow for thirty-two days after having fasted on the eleventh day of the dark fortnight of (the month of) āśvina (October-November). "O lord Viṣṇu! Commencing from this day until you get up (from sleep) I shall worship you without taking food for thirty days. O Viṣṇu! (this vow would be) till you get up in the (months of) āśvina and kārttika. Let not my vow be incomplete if I happen to die in the middle."

6-9. (Lord Viṣṇu should be worshipped thrice with fragrant flowers after bathing thrice. The person practising the vow should repeat the songs of lord Viṣṇu and contemplate (on him). He should avoid vain discussion and should avoid desire for wealth. He should not touch someone who is not practising the vow. He should not enter into conversation with those addicted to vices. He should dwell in temple for thirty days. The observer of the vow should worship the brahmans on the twelfth day and feed them. After completing vow and paying fees, he should break the fast. One would get enjoyment and emancipation for thirteen kalpas (a kalpa is equal to 432 million years) by practising thus.

10-12. He should do the sacrifice relating to Viṣṇu and worship thirteen brahmans. He should give them as many pairs of clothes, vessels, seats, umbrellas, metal rings, pairs of sandals, upper cloth and sacred threads. All these things should also be given to another brahmin being permitted by them. After having worshipped golden lord Viṣṇu on the bed, he should worship his own form with clothes and other things.
13-15. Then he should tell brahmins, “O Brahmins! I am going to the world of Viṣṇu being freed from all sins by the grace of lord Viṣṇu. I am becoming lord Viṣṇu himself”. (The brahmins should say), “O One with divine wisdom! You go to the faultless place of lord Viṣṇu by this vehicle and remain there spotless bearing the form of lord Viṣṇu”. Then that bed should be offered to the preceptor. One who practises thus would elevate hundreds of his family and take them to the world of Viṣṇu.

16-18. That country in which there is a person observing fast for a month, would become spotless. What to speak about the family in which there is one who fasts for a month! Seeing the person practising a vow fallen into a swoon, one should make him drink milk and clarified butter. These things would not nullify the vow. The ghee is allowed by the brahmins, and milk, water, roots are beneficial remedies (administered) by the preceptors. Lord Viṣṇu is the maker of all remedies. Hence he will make the vow complete.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FIVE

Mode of performing the Bhiṣmapañcakavrata

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the Bhiṣmapañcaka, that is the foremost among the vows and that which yields everything. It should be done on the eleventh day in the bright fortnight in kārttika.

2. (The observer of the vow) should bathe thrice (daily) for five days and satisfy gods and manes with five kinds of grains and sesamum. He should worship lord Hari silently.

3. Having bathed the deity with the five things got from a cow and with the five sweet things, sandal paste should be besmeared and guggulu should be burnt along with ghee.

---

1. The five days from the eleventh to the fifteenth of the bright half of kārttika said to be sacred to Bhiṣma. See chapter 205 below.
4. A lamp should be offered. Food offering should be made day and night. He should then repeat (the syllable) "Om obeisance to Vāsudeva" one hundred and eight times.

5. The performer of the vow should then make oblations of sesameum and rice dipped in ghee with the sacred syllable of six letters along with the word 'oblations.'

6-8. He should worship the feet with lotuses (on the first day), the knee and thigh with the bilva leaves on the second day, the navel with the bhrṅgarāja on the third day, with the bāṇa, bilva and japā (flowers) on the fourth day and with mālati on the fifth day. The votary should lie down (only) on the (bare) floor. (He should use) cow dung on the eleventh day and cow's urine, curd and milk (on the subsequent days). (He should use) five things got from a cow on the fifth day. He should take food only in the night on the full moon day. The votary would get enjoyment and emancipation.

9. After having practised the (Bhīṣmapaṇcaka) Bhūṣma reached lord Hari. That is why (it is known as) Bhīṣmapaṇcaka. One should worship lord Brahmā and fast while practising the vow.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SIX

Mode of offering water of libation to the venerable sage Agastya

Fire-god said:

1-4. (Sage) Agastya (is verily lord) Viṣṇu. After having worshipped him one would reach lord Viṣṇu. When the Sun has not entered (the constellation) Virgo one should offer libation to Agastya for three days and one-third part of a day after having fasted and worshipped him. An image of the sage (Agastya) made of the kāṭa flower should be located in a pot at (the time of) nightfall and that image in the pot should be worshipped. He should then remain awake in the night. "O Agastya! The foremost among sages! A multitude of brilliance! Great-minded person! You accept with your wife this worship done by me". After having invoked the presence (of
(of the sage) with libation, he should worship him with sandal and other things.

5-13. After having led (the image) near the water tank in the morning libation should be offered. "O One having the colour of kāśa flower! Born of Fire and Wind (gods)! Son of Mitra and Varuṇa!-Born in the pitcher! Obeisance be to you! That Agastya by whom Ātāpi was eaten as also Vātāpi, the great demon and the ocean was dried, may he be present before me. I am praying to (the sage) Agastya with my deeds, mind and speech. Being desirous of attaining the other world, I shall pray to the son of Mitra, born in a different continent and most dear to the gods. Kindly accept the sandal that is the king among the trees. May you accept the garland, that is the destroyer of sins, the vessel of piety, wealth, desire and liberation and that which confers fortune, health and prosperity. O Lord! Let the incense be accepted. You make my devotion steady. You confer on me the desired boon and also auspicious position in the next (place) (got) by the celestials and demons. O Excellent among the sages! Conferer of all the desired fruits! This libation has been offered by me together with clothes, rice, fruits and gold. I make known to (sage) Agastya that which I have raised with my mind. I offer libation with fruits. You accept libation, O Great Sage!" Agastya being thus excavated with the spades (gave) men the desired progeny and strength. (The sage) with fierce splendour along with his chaste wife nourished the two ears. He then conferred blessing on the celestials.

14. "O Daughter of a king! Obeisance to you, the wife of the sage (Agastya)! One who is a great devotee! O Governess of the celestials! Accept libation. O Lopāmudrā! One who is famous!

15-16. Libation should be offered to Agastya together with a vessel containing five gems, gold and silver and enclosed by seven kinds of grains as well as curd and sandal. (The above libation should be done) by women and śūdras without (the reci-

1. When the seed of Mitra and Varuṇa fell at the sight of the nymph Urvaśī, part of it fell into a jar and part into water. From the former arose Agastya, hence called 'born of the pitcher'.
2. They were brothers, both demons.
3. Daughter of the king of Vidarbha.
tation of) the sacred syllables. “O Agastya! Foremost among the sages! A multitude of splendour! Bestower of all things!”

17. After having accepted this worship of mine you retreat in peace. One has to forego a kind of grain, a variety of fruit and a kind of taste for the sake of Agastya.

18. Then the brahmins should be given food (as well as) ghee, sweet gruel and sweet balls. Cows, clothes and gold should be given to them as fees.

19. That pitcher should be given to a brahmin together with gold and its mouth being covered by another vessel containing ghee and sweet gruel.

20. All would get all things by offering libation for seven years. A woman (would get) children and fortune and a girl (would get) a husband born to a king.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SEVEN

Mode of performing Kaumudavrata

Fire-god said:

1. The Kaumudavrata, which has been described by me, should be practised in the bright (fortnight) in ātvayuji. After fasting on the eleventh day, lord Hari should be worshipped for a month.

2. (One should resolve as follows): “I shall practise the Kaumudavrata taking food only once (daily) in the bright fortnight in ātvina after repeating (the name of) Hari for a month, for the sake of enjoyment and emancipation”.

3-4. After fasting, he should worship lord Viṣṇu, after having besmeared the lord with sandals, agallochum and saffron with lotus, blue lotus flowers or white lotuses or mālati (flower). (He should offer) a lamp with oil silently. Offering of sweet gruel, cakes and sweet balls (should be made) day and night.

5. “Om obeisance to Vāsudeva”. Having made the offering (with this syllable) (the vow) should be completed. Food and other things should be given to a brahmin. The fast for a month would continue until the lord wakes up. (If it is continued) beyond that (it would get) greater benefit.

1. See Ch. 198 13-14.
 CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND EIGHT

Rules and regulations relating to vows and gifts in general

Fire-god said:

1-3. I shall describe briefly the vows and gifts in general. Whichever vow or whichever gift or whichever article or the routines in whichever time such as the first lunar day and other days, on days such as the (Sunday), in asterisms such as the kṛttikā, in viśkumba (a particular combination) etc., in the (constellations) aries etc. and at the time of the eclipses, lord Viṣṇu is the governing deity for all these materials, and time. Sun, Iśa, Brahmā, Lakṣmī and all others are the manifestations of lord Viṣṇu.

4-12. The vow, gift, worship and other acts done for him would yield all things. “O lord of the universe! You come here. (Here are) seat, water for washing the feet, waters of libation, the sweet drink, water for sipping, bathing, clothes, perfumes, flower, incense, lamp and offerings. Obeisance to you.” This is the common statement in worship, vow and giving gift. The statement for giving a gift is similar. Listen to me. “Today I offer this article dedicated to Viṣṇu to such and such a brahmin belonging to such and such a gotra. I offer this gift to you for the appeasement of all sins, for increasing the longevity and health, for increasing the fortune, for furthering the progeny in the gotra, for conquest, wealth, piety, desire for prosperity, the removal of that sin, and release from mundane existence. For the sake of the accomplishment of this gift I am giving to you only. May the lord, the master of the world, get permanently pleased with this. O Lord of sacrifice, gift and vow! Give me knowledge, fame and other things. Give me piety, desire, wealth and emancipation, that which is wished by the mind.” Whoever reads this collection of vow and gift daily, would get the desires fulfilled, would become pure and get enjoyment and emancipation. The vows which should be practised under the auspices of different lunar days, weekdays, asterisms, positions of the sun, astral combinations and Manu and the like should not be practised by worshipping god Vāsudeva in one and the same way.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND NINE

Rules relating to gifts

Fire-god said:

1. Listen to me. I shall describe the charities that would bestow enjoyment and emancipation. One who does acts of charity (such as digging wells etc.) would get all things.

2. (Digging) reservoirs, wells and tanks, (constructing) temples, giving food and (establishing) gardens are (known to be) pūrtadharma, that confers emancipation.

3. Performing agnihotra (a kind of sacrifice), penance, truth, protecting scriptures, serving guests, (doing) vaiśvadeva (an offering made to the gods Viśvedevas) are said to be īṣṭa that take one to heaven.

4. The gift (made) at the time of the eclipse of planets and (that offered) at the time of the entry of the Sun from one constellation to another, gift made on the twelfth lunar days etc. (are also) pūrta, which also take one to heaven.

5-7. A gift at the (proper) place, time and (to a proper) person would be of crore merits especially in the transit of the Sun on the tropics, on the equinox, at the (time of) vyatipāta, at the waning of the day, at different days beginning the cycles of period, at the transit of the Sun from one constellation to another, on the fourteenth days, on the eighth days, on the full-moon days, on the twelfth days, at the time of aṣṭakas (a collection of three days beginning from the seventh day after the full moon), at the time of sacrifices, festivals and marriages, at the Manu-periods, at the vidhṛti(yoga), on having had a bad dream and when a good brahmin has been got.

8-12. Otherwise it is desired that a gift (has to be bestowed) always upon those on whom one has the faith to do. Tropical (periods are) two, equinoxes (are) two making up four. The eighty-six (auspicious periods are)—the four viṣṇupadis\(^1\), the twelve transits of the Sun from one constellation to another (and) the transit of the Sun in virgo, gemini, pisces and sagittarius. The eighty-six (periods) are said to have eighty-six times merits (than ordinary periods). The two summer and winter solstices

1. They are taurus, leo, scorpio and acquirous.
are meritorious when it has come and when it has not come i.e., thirty nādis\(^1\) in cancer and twenty in capricorn respectively. When the Sun stays in the libra or aries (it would be) ten (nādis) in both. In the eightysix (periods) described already sixty nādikās (are auspicious after the Sun’s entry). Among the auspicious periods of viṣṇupadi sixteen (nādis) before and after (are auspicious).

13. It is said to be the vyatipāta if the Sunday morning occurs in (the asterisms) śravaṇa, aśvani, dhaniṣṭhā and āśleṣā.

14-15. The kṛta (yuga) began on the ninth day in the bright fortnight in kārttika, the tretā (yuga) on the third day in the bright (fortnight) in vaisākha, the dvāpara (yuga) on the new-moon day in the month of māgha and the kali (yuga) on the thirteenth day of the dark (fortnight) in nabhāsyaaka (bhādraṇā). One has to know them thus. One should also know the periods of Manu and others thus.

16-19. Gifts made on the ninth day of the white (fortnight) in aśvayuk, the twelfth day in kārttika, the third day in māgha and bhādraṇā, the new-moon day in phālguna, the eleventh day in pāuṣa, the tenth day in āśāṭha, the seventh day in the month of māgha, the eighth day of the dark (fortnight) in śravaṇa, the full-moon day in āśāṭha, and similarly fifteenth day of kārttika, phālguna and jyaiṣṭa, the three aṣṭakas\(^2\) in the later part of āgraḥāyaṇi (December-January) and the eighth day known as the aṣṭaka confer undecaying benefits.

20. (In the same way one should give gifts in the auspicious periods) at sacred places like Gayā, (the river) Gaṅgā and Prayāga and temples etc. Gifts should be made without being requested. But knowledge, wealth and girls (should) not (be given as gifts thus).

21. Gift should be made facing the east and the gift should be received facing the north. (By this) the longevity of the giver increases and that of the recipient does not decrease.

22-26. (In general) (the name of) the gotra of the recipient and their own selves are repeated and the gift is made (by the givers). In the case of giving away a girl in marriage (the name of) the three (gotras) (should be repeated). Gift should be given after bathing and worshipping the deity (along) with (the reci-\(^{1}\) One nādi is equal to 24 minutes.

\(^2\) The collection of seventh, eighth and ninth days after full moon.
tation of) the vyāhṛtis (the syllables bhū etc. of the gāyatri mantra) together with water. Gold, horse, sesame, elephant, servant, chariot, earth, house, girl and tawny, cow are the ten great gifts. The money got by one’s learning, valour, penance, means of a girl, by officiating as a priest and through the disciple is (said to be) ERAL (fees, or bride’s-price etc.). All the wealth acquired by following some trade or work is also (known as) ural. All that which was got by usury, agriculture and trade and that obtained as a favour and the one got by gambling, dice, stealing etc. and similar heroic pursuits (are said to be acquired) by some device. The three kinds (of acquisition) have three different kinds (of fruits).

27. Woman’s property is said to be of six kinds—adhyagni (gift made to a woman at the time of marriage), adhyāvāha-
nika (gift made to a woman at the time of leaving her father’s house for her husband’s house), gift made (by the husband) out of love or affection and gifts got from the brother, mother or father.

28. Brahmins, warriors and tradesmen (have their own) wealth. (But) a sūdra (will have) by their favour. One should not give as gift cow, house, bed and women to many.

29-30. If one promises to give a gift and does not give, it would kill hundred of generations. Whatever little merit one has acquired should be made to the gods, preceptors, mothers and fathers with one’s effort. The wealth that has been given (as a gift) with a view to have something in return (would be) useless.

31-33. Piety is accomplished by faith. Even water given (to the thirsty gets) undiminishing (merit). One is said to be an excellent person (to receive a gift) if he is endowed with knowledge, good conduct and quality, avoids doing harm to others and protects and saves the ignorant. A gift made to the mother is hundred times (meritorious than the others), and that to the father is thousand times (meritorious). The gift given to the daughter (gets) endless (merits) and that to the sister (gets) undecaying (merits). A gift (given) to a creature (is) of equal merit and that (given) to a sinner (is) of great merit.

34-38. (A gift) to (a person of) the mixed caste (is) two times (meritorious), a gift to a sūdra (is) four times (meritorious), to a vaisyā (is) eight times (meritorious) and to a kṣatriya is sixteen
times (meritorious). I shall describe (the merits of giving a gift) to a brahmin. (Gift made) to one who has studied] the scriptures is hundred times (merit-worthy), to one who imparts the scriptures is of endless (merit). It is said that gift (given) to the priest and the officiating priest is of undecaying (merit). Gift given to those devoid of wealth and to a sacrificer would be of limitless (merit). A brahmin who does not do penances and study and has desire to accept gift would get drowned along with that just like a practitioner together with the stone in the floods. After bathing and touching (waters) properly one should accept the gift after becoming pure and restraining senses. The recipient of the gift should always repeat the sāvitrī (gāyatrī). Then the deity should be glorified together with the materials.

39-48. The recipient should utter the complimentary words loudly after having received from an excellent brahmin, (in a) soft (voice) (after receiving) from a kṣatriya (warrior), in a low voice (after receiving) from a viśa (tradesman) and mentally (after receiving) from a śūdra. (I shall describe the deities of different things). All (the gods) are the presiding deities for (the gift of) protection. Viṣṇu is the deity of the earth. Girl, servant and female servant are said to be governed by Prajāpati. An elephant is also governed by Prajāpati. The deity for the horse is Yama (god of Death). Similarly all the one-hoofed animals and the buffalo are governed by the God of Death. Nirṛti (is the presiding deity) of the camel, Śiva is that of a cow, Fire-god is that of a goat, Varuṇa is that of a ram, Hari is that of a boar, Wind-god is that of forest animals, Varuṇa for the tank, (Varuṇa) for vessels of water such as the pot etc. and gems got from the ocean, Fire-god for gold and iron, Prajāpati for food grains and cooked food, Gandharva for fragrant material, Brhaspati for dress, Wind-god for all birds, Brahmā for knowledge and its accessories, Sarasvatī for books etc., Viśvakarmā for sculpture, Vanaspati for the trees etc. The deities of the materials make up the body of Hari. Aṅgiras is said to be the deity of umbrella, antelope-skins, bed, chariot, seat, sandals and vehicle. All ammunitions, weapons, banners etc. (are governed) by all the gods. A house also (is governed) by all the gods. (Lord) Viṣṇu is the presiding deity of all things.

49-54. Or Śiva may be (the presiding deity) because there is no other article besides the above. One should mention the
name of the material and say that “I am giving”. Then water should be given on the hand. This is known to be the procedure in all gifts. (The receiver) should say “(Lord) Viṣṇu is the giver. (Lord) Viṣṇu is the materials. I am receiving.” Wishing the welfare of the giver is the duty of the recipient (that confers) the two fruits of enjoyment and emancipation. One may accept gift from all for protecting the preceptors and servants and also to propitiate gods and manes. But he should not get satisfied with that. Money should not (be taken) from a śūdra for the sake of sacrifice. The benefit of that would reach the śūdra. Molasses, butter-milk and juices etc. may be accepted by an anchorite from a śūdra. A brahmin struggling for his existence may accept gift from all. If the brahmins are associated with fire and sun there cannot be any defect in teaching performing sacrifice or by accepting a gift from a prohibited person.

55. (A gift) is given in the kṛtyāyuga by approaching the person, is given in the tretāyuga after inviting (the person concerned). (A gift is made) in the dvāparāyuga to one who seeks and in the kaliyuga to one who follows and begs.

56-63. Water should be poured on the ground after mentally resolving to give to a suitable person. The ocean has its limit. But there is no limit for the gift. (I shall give) to such and such a person belonging to such and such a gotra, who is a good soul, and a proper person who is learned in the Vedas and its accessories at the time of the eclipse of the Moon and Sun, at the entry of the Sun into a constellation, at the sacred places of great merit such as the Ganges, Gayā, Prayāga etc. “I make a gift of such and such an article for which Viṣṇu and Śiva and others, are the presiding deities for the sake of (getting) children, grand children, house, fortune, wife endowed with good qualities and for the increase of fame, learning, desire, fortune and health and for the destruction of all sins and for getting heaven, enjoyment and emancipation. I give this to you. May lord Hari (identical with) Śiva, the destroyer of spate of evils belonging to the heaven, sky and earth be pleased. May you be the conferer of the world of Brahmā on me for the sake of getting the piety, wealth and desire. I offer gold as fee to such and such a brahmin of such and, such a gotra for the sake of making this gift established”. All gifts should be made with this sentence for giving a gift.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND TEN

Sixteen great gifts

Fire-god said:

1-4. I shall describe all the gifts. The great gifts (are) sixteen. (The gift known as) the tulāpurusa is the first. (The others are) gift of hiranyakarbha, brahmāṇḍa kalpavṛkṣa (celestial tree). The fifth one (is the gift of) thousand cows. (The gift of) golden kāmadhenu (the celestial cow) (is the sixth one). The seventh one (is the gift of) golden horse. (The other gifts are) the golden horse and chariot and the golden elephant and horse. Then (the remaining gifts are) five ploughs and (the gift of) earth, viśvakāra, kalpalata, the excellent seven oceans, ratnadhenu and mahābhūtagha. (The gift) should be given on an auspicious day.

5. Gift should be given to a brahmin after having worshipped gods in a circle in a shed. Listen to me. I shall describe ten gifts (known as) merudāna (heaps of different things).

6. The best gift is that of a thousand dronas (a measure) of grains. The rest are successively half (the quantity) of the preceding ones. An excellent gift of a mountain of salt should be given (consisting of) sixteen dronas.

7. An excellent (gift) of a mountain of molasses would be of ten bhāras (a measure). The rest (would be) successively half of the preceding ones. An excellent hill of gold would be of thousand palas (a measure of weight) and the rest as that (described above).

8. A hill of sesamum would be of ten dronas (the rest being) duly five and three dronas. The hill of cotton would be twenty, ten and five bhāras (respectively).

9. An excellent hill of ghee would be twenty pots of ghee. An excellent hill of silver (would be) ten thousand palas.

10-12. (An excellent) hill of sugar (would be) eight bhāras and the medium (would be) half that (and the inferior still half that. I shall describe the ten cows by giving which one would get enjoyment and emancipation. The first one would be the cow of molasses and the next one would be the cow of ghee. The third one is the cow of sesamum and the fourth one cow of

1. gold, jewel or other valuable things equal to a manḍap weight given to a Brähmana as a gift.
water. (The others are) cow of milk, cow of honey, cow of sugar, cow of curd and the cow of juices. The tenth one is the cow in its natural form. This is said to be the rule (governing the ten cows).

13-18. In the case of liquid materials given as the cow, they should be in the form of the pots. But they should be a heap in the case of other (materials). One should place a deer skin of four cubits (length) on the ground besmeared with cow dung with the neck (part) on the east. Darbha should be spread everywhere. Similarly (a seat) should be made for the calf with the tender skin of enaka (a kind of black antelope). The cow together with the calf should be arranged such as it faces the east and the feet point to the north. An excellent gift of cow of molasses would always be of four bhāras (out of which) the calf should be of one bhāra. The middle type is known to be of two bhāras (for the cow) and half a bhāra for the calf. The last type should be one bhāra (for the cow) and a quarter (bhāra) for the calf. Otherwise (the gift may be made) according to the molasses and wealth one may have. One māsa (a measure) is five krṣṇa-lakas (seed of the guṇja plant). One swarna is equal to sixteen māsas. One pala is equal to four swarna. One tulā is known to be one hundred palas. A bhāra would be twenty tulās. One droṇa (is equal to) four āḍhaka.

19-22. The cow and the calf both made of the molasses should be covered by a thin white cloth. The ears (should be made of) pearl oyster, the feet of sugarcane and the eyes of pure pearls. The veins (should be made of) white thread, the woollen blankets (for spreading) of white wool, the backside with copper vases, the hairs with white chowrie, the two eye-brows with coral, the breast with butter, the tail with silken cloth, the milk pails made of bronze and the pupils with sapphire. The ornaments on the horns should be made of gold and the hoofs of silver. The teeth should be of different kinds of fruits and the nose of sandal.

23-29. O Brahmin! After having made ready the cow, it should be worshipped with these sacred syllables. "That goddess who is the fortune of all beings and who remains in the celestials may in the form of the cow give me peace. The (goddess) Rudrāṇi is always dear to lord Śaṅkara and remains in the body, may that goddess in the form of the cow dispel my sin. That one who is on the chest of (lord) Viṣṇu
and who is the Svāhā for the fire, who is the energy of the moon, sun and star, that is of the form of the cow O Goddess of Fortune! May that cow which is the fortune of the four-faced one (Brahmā), the god of wealth and the guardian deity of the world, be the conferer on me. You are the svadāhā (oblation of food) for all the manes and the svāhā for the partakers of sacrifices. Hence you are the cow that removes all sins. Hence you get me peace”. The cow that has been sanctified thus should be given to a brahmin. The same procedure (holds good) for the (offerings) of all kinds of cows (mentioned already). After having obtained the benefits of all sacrifices one (would become) pure and get enjoyment and emancipation.

30-34. One should give as a gift a cow having golden horns, silvery hoofs, of good conduct and having udders with bronze, with milk and decked with cloth together with the fees. One who gives such a cow would stay in heaven for as many years as the number of hairs (on its body). If it is a tawny (cow) it would again elevate seven generations (of the giver). One who gives a cow having golden horns, silvery hoofs and bronze attached udders together with fees befitting one’s capacity would get enjoyment and emancipation after giving. By giving a cow with a calf, i.e., a cow that is delivering a calf, one would reach heaven and stay there for so many years as the number of hairs (on the body of the cow). It should be given as laid down before. A cow and a calf should be given as a gift by one that is about to die as (laid down) before. (He should say) “There is the dark Vaitaranī river at the dreadful entrance to (the place of) the God of Death. I am giving this black cow in order to cross that Vaitaranī.”

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND ELEVEN

Different kinds of gifts

Fire-god said:

1. One who has ten cows should give one. One having hundred cows should give ten cows. A person having a thousand cows should give hundred. All yield the same benefit.
2. Those who give thousand cows (as gift) would go to a place where the mansions are golden, there would be flow of wealth and the gandharvas and celestial nymphs (dwell).

3. By giving hundred cows one becomes free from the ocean of hells. By giving a weaned calf one stays in comfort in the heaven.

4-6. By the gift of a cow one would get longevity, health, fortune and heaven. She is the auspicious queen of the guardian deities such as Indra and the like; may she be the bestower of all my desires by the greatness of the gift of the she-buffalo. That mother of the demon in the form of buffalo the children of which (woman) are established by the assistance of the Lord of Dharma, may be the bestower of wealth on me. One would get fortune by giving a she-buffalo and reach heaven by giving a bull.

7-11. The gift known as samyuktahapāṅkti (attached with ten ploughs) confers all fruits. A collection of ten ploughs is said to be a pāṅkti. They should be made of wood and yoked to bulls. One would stay in heaven by giving them bound with golden strips. The benefits of giving ten tawny cows at the Puṣkara (a sacred place) in (the month of) jyeṣṭha is said to be undecaying. Similar benefit would accrue by releasing a bull. (One should say) “O Four-footed one! You are the virtue. These four are dear to you. O lord of Viṣṇu! One who nourishes the manes, beings and the sages! Let me have the worlds free blemishes and undecaying when you are released. May I not have the debts due to the gods, beings, manes and mortals. You are the virtue. That fate which befalls one who resorts to you, let it be firm in me.”

12-16. One should mark (the bull) with the circles and spears and let it go with these sacred syllables (described above). If a bull is released on the eleventh day of a dead person he would be freed from the world of the dead. (The same benefit would accrue if a bull is let loose) at the time of six-monthly ceremony and annual ceremony (for the dead). One who makes a gift of gocarma (a measure of surface) would get rid of his sins. A nivaritana would be of thirty kundaś, each kunda being ten cubits. The ground extending to ten times (the nivaritana) (is known to be) gocarma. One who gives deer’s skin together with
a cow, earth and gold would get united with lord Brahmā, even though he had done many sinful deeds. One may give vessels filled with sesamum, honey and black sesamum as well as a *prastha* (a particular measure) of long pepper. Having given a bed of good quality one may get enjoyment and emancipation.

17. After having made a golden image of the self and given (the same as a gift), (the giver could reach) heaven.

18. After having made a large house and giving it one would get enjoyment and emancipation. (One would reach) heaven by giving a house, a hut for an ascetic, hall and shelter. One who builds a cattle-shed and gifts it would be free from sin and reach heaven.

19-20. One who makes a gift of the buffalo (the vehicle) of the God of Death would be free from sin and would go to heaven. One who gives (as a gift the images of gods) Brahmā Hara (Śiva), Hari with the celestials and the messenger of the God of Death in their middle and (the god) Pāśi (Varuṇa) as cutting the head of the latter would reach heaven. A brahmin who accepts this gift known as the ‘three-faced’ would incur sin.

21. One should give to a brahmin a wheel made of silver together with gold after having placed it on (his own) lap. This is (known as) the ‘wheel of time’ of great merit.

22-27. One who makes a gift of iron equal to one’s weight would not go to hell. One who gives an iron rod of fifty *palas* covered by a cloth to a brahmin would not get (the chastising) rod of the God of Death. One should give the root or fruit or other material collectively or separately for the Conqueror of Death for the increase of one’s life. One should make (a figure of) a man with black sesamum, with the teeth (made) of silver, eye (made) of gold, wielding a sword in the hand, bedecked with *japā* flowers, wearing red cloth, adorned with a garland of conch-shells, the feet having a pair of sandals, the sides (covered) by black wool and holding a ball of flesh in his left (hand). He is (known as) the embodiment of time. After having worshipped that (image) with perfumes and other things, it should be given to a brahmin. (Such a giver) would be free from death and disease and become a monarch.

28. One who gives a gift of a cow and a bull to a brahmin
would get enjoyment and emancipation. One would not die by giving a golden hairy horse.

29-31. One who makes such a gift endowed with bells would also get enjoyment and emancipation. One who gives gold would get the desired things. When gold is given as gift, silver should be given as remuneration. Gold is the remuneration even in the case of other gifts. No remuneration (should be given) when gold, silver, copper, rice and other grains (are given as gift) or at the daily ceremony for the manes and at the worship of gods.

32-35. Silver (given) as remuneration at the ceremony for the manes is a means to get piety, pleasure and material comfort. A wiseman who gives land as a gift should also give gold, silver, copper, gems, pearls, wealth and all other things. One who makes a gift of land, that composed man satisfies the manes in their world and the gods in the world of gods. One who gives (as a gift) a market town or small town or village or field abound with grains or hundred nivartana1 or half of that or a house etc. or only gocarna2 extent of land would get all things.

36. Just as a drop of oil spreads on the waters so also the fruit of all gifts would follow the mortal in the next birth.

37. The benefit (of making a gift) of gold, land and an eight year old girl would follow (the giver) in his seven births. One who gives a girl (in marriage) would elevate twentyone generations of his family and attain the world of Brahmā.

38. Having given an elephant together with remuneration one becomes free from blemish and would attain heaven. Having given a horse one would get long and healthy life and fortune and ascend heaven.

39-40. One who gives a maid servant to an excellent brahamin would reach the world of nymphs. Having given a copper plate weighing five hundred palas (a measure of weight) or half the weight or a quarter of that weight or one-eighth of the weight would get enjoyment and emancipation. By giving a cart together with a bull one would go to heaven by means of a cart.

41. One who makes a gift of cloth would get longevity,

1. See verse 13 above.
2. See verse 14 above.
health and undecaying heaven. The giver of grains such as the wheat, kalama (rice sown in June and harvested in December), barley and other (grains) would attain heaven.

42-43. Having given (as a gift) a seat, metallic vessel, salt, fragrant sandal, incense, lamp, betel, iron, silver, gem and other rare materials, one would get enjoyment and emancipation. One would ascend heaven by giving sesamum and a vessel for keeping sesamum.

44-46. There is nothing superior to the gift of food. Neither there was nor there would be. The (merit of) gift of an elephant, horse, chariot, maid-servant, servant and house will not equal a sixteenth part (of the merit) of giving food. One who gives food after committing a great sin would become free from all sins and attain undecaying worlds. One who sets up a place for distributing water for drinking would get enjoyment and emancipation.

47. By giving fire and firewood (for travellers) on the way, one would get radiance etc. and would be served in the (celestial) vehicle in heaven by the celestials, gandharvas and women.

48. One would get all things by giving ghee, oil and salt. After having given umbrella, sandal and firewood etc. one would dwell in heaven happily.

49-52. A gift made after worshipping lords Hari, Hara, Brahmā and the guardian deities on the important lunar days like the first etc., on the combinations (known as) viśkambha etc., in the (months) caitra and others, in the years and the (asterisms) aśvini etc. is of great merit. One would get enjoyment and emancipation by providing shady trees, feeding places, (vehicles) to carry burden and for anointing the feet. There are three things which are of equal merits. (They are)—cows, land and imparting knowledge. By imparting knowledge one becomes blemishless and attains the world of Brahmā. One who imparts knowledge about the brahman, would be equal to one who gives earth consisting of seven continents.

53-54. One who gives refuge to all beings would get all things. One who copies and gives the purāṇa or Bhārata or Rāmāyana, would get enjoyment and emancipation. One who teaches scriptures dancing and music would reach heaven.
55. Money should be given to the teacher and food etc. for the students. What more can be possibly given by one who does with a motive to acquire virtues and desires.

56. There is no doubt that one would get by imparting knowledge every benefit that he would get by (performing) a thousand Vajapeya sacrifices.

57. One who reads a book would be the giver of all gifts at the temples of (lords) Śiva, Viṣṇu and the Sun-god.

58. All the castes and the four institutions of life separately and all the gods such as Brahmā and others are established on the gift of knowledge.

59. Knowledge is the wish-yielding cow. It is the unsurpassing eye. One rejoices with the Gandharvas by giving the Upavedas (the secondary texts such as the Āyurveda).

60. One would attain heaven by giving the accessory texts of scriptures. One would rejoice with piety by giving the religious law books.

61. There is no doubt that one gets release (from the mundane existence) by giving the established texts (of any discipline). One would reap the same benefit by giving a book as he would by imparting knowledge.

62. One would get everything by giving sacred religious texts and Purāṇas. One would get the benefit of Puṇḍarika by imparting (knowledge to) the disciples.

63-65. There is not known to be any limit for the benefit accrued by one who gives that by which he lives. That which is the most excellent in the world and that which is liked by one should be given to the manes by one who desires to have them without depletion. One who gives materials for worship after having worshipped (lords) Viṣṇu, Rudra (Śiva), the Lotus-born (Brahmā), Goddess, Vighnaśvara (lord of impediments) and others would get everything. One who causes (to construct) a temple and to make an image would get all things.

66. One would be free from blemishes by washing and cleaning the temple. One who draws the mystic diagrams would become the ruler of a province subsequently.

67-69. After having given perfumes, flowers, incense, lamp, food offering, circumambulation, bell, banner, canopy, (arran-

1. A unit of measurement.
ged) a show, musical instruments and music and clothes for the lord, one would get enjoyment and emancipation. One should give musk, benzoin, sandal wood, agallochum, camphor, musta (a kind of grass), guggulu (a fragrant resin) and vijaya. One who establishes light at the time of solstice and others with a prastha (a measure) of ghee would get everything.

70-71. Bathing is known to be with hundred palas (of materials), bathing with oil with twenty-five palas. A great bathing is said to be with a thousand palas (of materials). (By bathing) with water ten sins (are washed off), by bathing with thick milk hundred sins (are washed off), (by bathing) with milk a thousand (sins are washed off) and ten thousand (sins are washed off by bathing) with ghee.

72. One would get fortune and wealth and would go to heaven by giving a maid-servant, servant, ornaments, cow, land, horse and elephant and other things for the deity.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND TWELVE

Gifts granting the desired fruits

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe gifts that confer the desired benefits. One should do daily worship each month and do the worship for (the accomplishment of one’s) desires.

2-3. The undertaking of the vow, worship of the preceptor and the grand worship at the end of the year (are the routines). One who gives a horse and a lotus made of flour to lord Śiva after worship in mārgaśīrṣa would live in the world of Sun for a long time. (By giving) an elephant made of flour in pauṣa, one would lift twentyone generations.

4. By giving a horse and a chariot made of flour in māgha, one would not go to hell. One would become a monarch and would ascend heaven by giving a bull made of flour in phālguna.

5. Having given a cow made of sugarcane together with a servant and a female servant in caitra, one would remain in
heaven for a long time and would become a monarch at the end.

6. One would become verily (lord) Śiva himself by giving seven kinds of rice in vaisāṭkha. One would become (identical with lord) Śiva by making a circular altar in the āṣāḍha.

7. One would ascend heaven and also (become) a king by giving a vehicle made of flowers in śrāvāṇa. By giving two hundred fruits one would elevate his family (and become) a king.

8. One would become a king after ascending heaven by giving guggulu (gum resin) etc. in bhādra. Giving a vessel filled with milk and clarified butter in āsvina would convey one to heaven.

9. Having given pieces of jaggery and clarified butter in the kärttika one would go to heaven and then be a king. I shall describe the twelve varieties of gifts (known as) merudūṇa (heaps of things resembling the Meru mountain) that confers enjoyment and emancipation.

10-18. In the meruwrata one should give a meru (mountain) of gems to a brahmin in kärttika. Listen to me. (I shall describe) the measure (of things) in all (the gifts of) Merus duly. Only a prāṣṭha (a measure) of diamond, ruby, maḥānīla (a kind of sapphire), sapphire, crystal, topaz, emerald and pearl are excellent. Half of that (measure) would be medium and a quarter of that (would be) inferior. One should avoid doing trickery knowingly. The Meru should be located in the pericarps presided by (the lords) Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Iśa. Mālyavān should be worshipped on the east and that is known as Bhadra still to its east. Āśvarakṣa is said to be the next. The Niṣadha, Hemakūṭa and Himavān, the three, should be (worshipped) on the south of Meru. The three (mountains) Nīla, Śveta and Śrīgī are (worshipped) on the north (of Meru).

(The mountains) Gandhamādana, Vaikaṅkā and Ketumāla would be on the west. Thus the Meru would be associated with the twelve (mountains). One should worship (lord) Viṣṇu or (lord) Śiva after fasting preceded by bathing. The Meru should be worshipped with the sacred syllables in front of the deity and given to a brahmin. (One should say) “I give this excellent material of (the shape of) Meru belonging to god Viṣṇu to a brahmin of such and such a gōra to become sinless and for the sake of enjoyment and emancipation.” (One who does so) would be honoured by the celestials and would sport in the
(divine) chariot in the worlds of Indra, Brahmā, Śiva and Viṣṇu after elevating his family. One should make the gift even at other times such as the entry of the Sun from one constellation into another.

19-22. One should offer the golden Meru of (the weight of) a thousand palas. It should have three peaks representing the (lords) Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Hara (Śiva). Each one of the mountains should be hundred (palas). Together with the Meru, the mountains are known to be thirteen. One who makes a gift of gold Meru to a brahmin at the time of solstices, eclipses etc., in the presence of (lord) Viṣṇu, after having worshipped lord Hari (Viṣṇu), would live in the world of Viṣṇu for a long time. One would be a king for such a long time as the infinitesimal particles (of the gift). One should resolve and give a silver Meru having twelve mountains.

23-26. It would have the aforesaid benefit. One should worship lord Viṣṇu and a brahmin and resolve (to give) bhitimiru (land in the form of Meru) consisting of a circular orb or a village of one-eighth part. The other parts (carry) the same benefit as before. One who gives the Meru in the form of an elephant together with the twelve mountains and the three beings (gods) would get infinite benefit. Meru (in the form) of a horse (would be) fifteen horses together with twelve horses. Giving this (as a gift) after worshipping lords Viṣṇu and others one would enjoy comforts and become a king. One should give a Meru (in the form) of cow of the same number as the horse as before.

27. A gift of a Meru (in the form) of cloth would be a bhāra of silk cloth in the middle with the twelve cloth as mountains (around). By giving (this gift) (one will have) undiminishning benefit.

28-29. A mountain of clarified butter (would be) five thousand palas of ghee, each one (of the mountains being) five hundred. One should worship lord Hari in this mountain. Having offered it to a brahmin in the presence of (lord) Viṣṇu, one would get everything and reach lord Hari. One would get (the same fruit) by making a Meru of sugarcandy and giving in the same way.

30-35. The Meru of grains (should be) five khāri (a measure equal to 15 dropas) and the other (mountains) of one khāri
each. All should have golden peaks (denoting lords) Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Maheśvara. One would acquire special benefit by worshipping lord Viṣṇu in all of them. One should set up a Meru of sesamum in the same way measuring ten parts. The peaks should be as before for that (mountain) and other mountains. One who makes a gift of a Meru of sesamum would reach the world of Viṣṇu together with his relatives. "Obeisance to the form of Viṣṇu. Obeisance to (the mountain) Dharādhara. (Obeisance) to one having lords Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Iśa on the peaks, to one remaining at the navel of the earth, to the lord of twelve mountains, to the destroyer of all sins, to the devotee of lord Viṣṇu and to the calm person. You always protect me so that I may reach lord Viṣṇu together with my forefathers becoming sinless. Om, obeisance. You are indeed lord Hari. I am lord Viṣṇu in the front of (lord) Hari. I shall inform lord Viṣṇu with devotion for the sake of enjoyment and emancipation.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND THIRTEEN

Mode of making a gift of earth and its benefits

Fire-god said:

1-4. I shall describe (the mode of) making a gift of the earth. The earth is known to be of three kinds (extending to) hundred crores of yojanas (containing) seven continents and the oceans. That earth upto the continent of Jambū is spoken as excellent. One should make an excellent one with five bhāras (measure of weight) of gold. The tortoise and lotus (supporting that) should be laid with half that (measure). The excellent earth is said to be (of the full measure). The middle one (is said to have) two parts. The last one (should be of) one-third part. The tortoise and lotus will be one-third. The wish-yielding (cestial) tree should be made (to weigh) a thousand palas.

5-9. The central stalk (of the tree) together with the leaves, fruits and flowers and having five branches should be got ready and the five should be given by a good man. One who makes
this gift would rejoice in the world of Brahmā together with the manes for a long time. The celestial cow (should be made) with five hundred palas in front of lord Viṣṇu. The gods Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Maheśa and others are settled in the cow. The gift of a cow is the gift of all (things). It gives all (things) and also the world of Brahmā. Having given a tawny cow one would elevate all families. By giving a girl (in marriage) after decorating her, one would acquire the benefit of (doing the) horse sacrifice. One who gives a land in which all grains grow would get everything. One who gives a village or a town or a hamlet would be comfortable. By setting free a bull in kārttika one would elevate the family.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FOURTEEN

The system of veins in the body and their benefits

Fire-god said:

1-14. I shall describe the system of veins by knowing which one would know lord Hari. Fibre-like things spread out from the bulbous root below the navel. They are seventy-two thousand situated at the centre of the navel. They spread out and occupy everywhere across, above and below. They are situated like a wheel. Among these īḍā, pśṅgalā, suśumnā, gāṇḍhāri, hastijihvā, prthā, yaśā, alambuṣā, hhu and saṅkhini are the ten principal veins.

5-14. These veins are said to be carrying the ten life forces—prāna, apāna, samāna, udāna vyāna, nāga, kūrma, kykara, devadatta and dhanaṇjaya. Prāna is the chief wind and is the lord of the ten. The prāna makes the life living from exhalation after the inhalation. Remaining in the chest of beings it fills up daily. The prāna gets united with life by exhalation, inhalation and coughing. Because it moves out from the life it is said to be prāna. Apana pushes down the food in men. It is said to be apāna because it is the wind that carries the urine and semen. The wind known as samāna equalises the blood, biles, phlegm and wind in the body (caused by) drinking, eating and smelling.
The wind known as udāna agitates the vulnerable points and causes the quivering of lips, face and causes change in the complexion of the eye. (The wind) vyāna depresses the body and activates the disease. It is said to be vyāna because it returns from the throat and spreads out. The wind nāga (is known to be) in vomiting and kūrma remains in the opening. (The wind) kṛkara is in eating, devadatta in yawning, dhanaṅjaya in raising loud sound. They do not abandon even the dead. Thus goes the life cycle with the ten activities. Hence it is the cycle of veins.

15-20. The solstices, the equinoxes, day and night, the sun’s passage north and south of the equator, intercalary month, debt, the incomplete night and wealth (are attributed to the different parts of the body and their functions). The incomplete night would be the hiccough and the intercalary mouth the yawning. The debt would be coughing. The exhalation is said to be wealth. The right side (of the body) is known to be the north and the left side is designated as the south. The equinoctical points are said to be in the middle line passing through the two parts while the solstice is that passing from its own nerver centre to another centre. O Brahmin! Sūsumnā is established in the middle of the body, the idā on the left and the piṅgala on the right. The prāṇa above is remembered to be the day. In the same way apāna would be the night. One wind (exists) in ten forms. The expanse in the middle of the body is said to be the lunar eclipse. The expanse between the principles of the body is known to be the solar eclipse.

21. Filling the abdomen with wind as much as one desires is known to be the prāṇāyāma known as the pūraka because it fills up.

22. After covering all the holes, one should remain like a pot after filling (the abdomen with air) without exhalation and inhalation. That is the kumbhaka (variety of) prāṇāyāma.

23-26. One who knows the sacred syllable should push the wind upwards and let out in one breath. He should evacuate it upwards (to the region of the brain). Since (lord) Śiva residing in the body (of beings) himself utters (that) (the letter ha), that is said to be the repetition for those who know the principles. That master of yoga does the repetition twentyone thousand six hundred times in the course of a day and night. This gāyatrī
known as the *ajapa* is of the form of Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Maheśvara. There is no rebirth for one that repeats this *ajapa* (*mantra*).

27. The foremost *kuṇḍalini* (the energy coiled in one of the psychometric centres) is considered to be associated with the moon, fire and sun. It is known to remain in the heart in the form of a sprout.

28-32. The location of the creation should be therein because of its suspension from that. The foremost worshipper should contemplate therein the flowing ambrosia. The *sakala* (endowed with the parts) is known to be remaining in the body and the *niśkala* (without the parts) as devoid of the body. That one who repeats *hamsa* is the lord Sadāśiva (ever auspicious). That person remains in the body of the man both outside and inside just as oil in the sesameum and fragrance in the flowers. Lord *Brahmā* has his place in the heart. Lord Viṣṇu remains at the throat. Lord Rudra is situated in the middle of the cheeks. Lord Maheśvara is at the forehead. Lord Śiva should be known as the tip of the vital principle and the higher and the lower as its end. The *sakala* form is said to be of five kinds and *niśkala* form as the contrary.

33-41. That person who produces the sound that is *prāśāda* (propititious) and repeats hundred times would no doubt get accomplished in six months endowed with *yoga*. There will be destruction of all sins because of the knowledge of the past and future events. One would get virtues such as *agimā* (the power to become minute as an atom) in six months. The *prāśāda* has been described by me as three: gross, subtle and foremost. *Prāśāda* is of three kinds—short, long and protracted. The short one burns sins. The long one would confer emancipation. The elongated one is in accomplishing things. It is adorned with a dot on its head. The syllable *phaṭ* is beneficial at the beginning and end of the short sound for the sake of destroying an enemy. The heart (*mantra*) at the beginning and end is stated to be useful in captivating (others' minds). One should repeat (the same) five lakhs time (standing facing) the southern face of the deity. After the repetition there should be oblation of ghee ten thousand times. With the sacred syllable having been accomplished thus one should do the repetition for captivating etc. It is void above, void in the middle and void below. It is devoid of blemishes. Whichever brahmin
knows the three voids would certainly be released (from the mundane existence). One is said to be not a preceptor if he does not know the prāsāda, made of the five sacred syllables, endowed with thirty-eight parts. So also the preceptor knows the syllable om, the gāyatri, (lord) Rudra and others.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FIFTEEN

Mode of reciting gāyatri and its greatness

Fire-god said:

1-3. One who knows the syllable om is verily a yogin and (the lord) Hari. Hence one should practise the syllable om, that is the essence of all sacred syllables, and the giver of all things. The praṇava (om) is known to be the first in the application of all the sacred syllables. Hence the act which becomes complete with that, will not get completed with any other (syllable). There are three great unmutilating vyāhṛtis (syllables) which are preceded by the syllable om. The three-footed sāvitṛ (gāyatrī) should be known as the face of (lord) Brahmā.

4. One who unwearily repeats these everyday for three years, reaches the supreme brahman becoming the wind and embodying the sky.

5. The one syllable is the supreme brahman and prāṇāyāma (control of the birth) in the supreme penance. There is nothing greater than sāvitṛ. Truthfulness excels silence.

6-7. The repetition (of gāyatrī) seven times would destroy one's sins and ten times would convey (the person) to heaven. That goddess repeated twenty times would convey him to the abode of (lord) Iśvara (Śiva). One would cross the ocean of mundane existence by repeating it hundred and eight times. The Gāyatrī excels the repetition of Rudra and Kuśmāṇḍa (mantras) in its merit.

8-9. There is nothing excelling Gāyatrī for repetition. There is nothing equal to vyāhṛtis for doing oblations. A quarter of the hymn or a half of it or half the hymn or the whole hymn being repeated purifies one of the sins such as the killing
of a brahmin, drinking of wine, stealing of gold and cohabiting the preceptor's wife.

10. On having committed a sin it is said that one should do oblations with sesamum repeating Gāyatrī. After repetition of Gāyatrī a thousand times and fasting one gets rid of his sin.

11-12. The killer of a cow, the patricide, the matricide, the killer of a brahmin, the defiler of the bed of preceptor, the person who has stolen gold and the drunkard get purified after repetition (of the mantra) a lakh number of times. Otherwise one should bathe and repeat hundred times remaining in the water. One would get rid of his sin by drinking water (consecrated by the repetition) of Gāyatrī hundred times.

13. The Gāyatrī repeated hundred times is remembered to destroy one's sins. That goddess repeated a thousand times would destroy the minor offences.

14-21. The repetition a crore times would yield the desired benefits and lead one to godhead and sovereignty. After having uttered the syllable om first and (the syllables) bhūh, bhuvah and svah (the earth, sky and heaven) then, and the praṇava (om) and Gāyatrī at the end is said to be (the mode) for repetition. Viśvāmitra is the sage, gāyatrī the metre and Savitā (Sun) the god (for the mantra) when it is used for appeasement (of gods), for repetition and for offering oblation. The gods who preside over different letters constituting the mantra are the Fire god, Wind god, Sun, Lightning, God of Death, lord of the water (ocean), Jupiter, God of rain, Indra, Gandharva, Pūṣan, Mitra, Varuṇa, Tvaṣṭr, Vasus, Maruts, Moon, Aṅgiras, Viśve (devas), Nāsatya (Aśvins), Ka, Rudra, Brahmā and Viṣṇu respectively who are said to destroy sins at the time of repetition of Gāyatrī. (They respectively protect) the toes, ankles, legs, knees, shanks, the male organ of generation, testicles, hip, navel, belly, breasts, heart, neck, face, cheek, nostrils, eyes, the centre of the eye-brows, forehead, front part of the face, the two sides on the right and left, head and the mouth in order.

22-24. Yellow, blue, tawny, green, colour of the fire, the golden colour of lightning, smoky, black, red, white, colour of the sapphire, crystal coloured, golden, white, red, all the lustre, golden, smoky, blood red, blue red, golden, white, dark green
are the colours of Gāyatrī. It destroys sins at the time of repetition and confers all desires when used to offer oblation.

25-28. Oblations made with sesamum and Gāyatrī would destroy all sins. One who desires to appease should do with barley. One who desires life should do with ghee. For success in one's work (one should do) with white mustard. (One should do) with milk for spiritual splendour, with curd if one wishes to have children, with sāli (grains) if one desires to get grains. One (should do oblation) with twigs of kṣīri (milky) trees for the appeasement of affliction due to planets. Then one desiring for wealth (should do) with bilva (a kind of tree) and desiring for fortune (should do) with lotuses. (One should do) with dūrvā (a kind of grass) if he desires for health and the same if portents (are met with). (One should do) with guggulu (gum-resin) aspiring for prosperity and with sweet porridge if seeking knowledge.

29. There would be the indicated success with (oblation done) ten thousand times and the mentally desired (benefit) with a lakh times. One would be released from (the sin accrued) by killing a brahmin, be lord Hari and the elevator of the family with (oblations done) crore times.

30-31. One should invoke Gāyatrī at the commencement of oblations done for propitiating the planets or the one for ten thousand times or any other sacrifices. Then he should meditate on the syllable om. After having remembered the syllable om one should tie up the tuft with the Gāyatrī. Then after having sipped (three drops of water) one should touch the heart, navel and shoulders.

32. The sage is Brahmā, the metre is gāyatrī and the god is the Fire god for the praṇava (om). It is the Supreme soul and it should be associated in all acts.

33-34. (She should be contemplated as) possessing white complexion, having fire as the mouth, divine, born in the gotra of Kātyāyana, encircling the three worlds, associated with the support of the earth, wearing the rosary, the goddess seated in the padmāsana (posture of sitting with legs crossed) and auspicious (with the following words): “Om ! You are the lustre, the sacrifice, the strength, one of the seven Suns, the abode of the gods, the universe, the life of the universe, all beings and the
life of all beings. Oṁ ! to the earth. O Goddess ! Bestower of boon ! You come ! The one to be repeated ! You be present before me !"

35-37. Prajāpati is the sage for all vyāhṛtis (the syllables bhū etc.). (They are used) separately and collectively with the letter oṁ of Brahmā. The sages (of the vyāhṛtis are) Viśvāmitra, Jamadagni, Bharadvāja, Gautama, Atri, Vasiṣṭha and Kaśyapa in order. Fire god, Wind god, Sun, Jupiter, Varuṇa, Indra, Viṣṇu are the (presiding) deities of vyāhṛtis in order.

38. Gāyatrī, Uṣṇik, Anuṣṭubh, Brhatī, Paṅkti, Triṣṭubh, and Jagatī are said to be metres (of these) respectively.

39-40. It is remembered that eight drops of water should be thrown upwards with the hymn āpo hi śthā₁ or drupadā₂ or hiranyavarṇāṃ₃ or pāvamānī₄ at the end in the use of the vyāhṛtis, in the prāṇāyāma and in oblation. It destroys the sin done since the birth.

41. One should recite (the hymn) stam ca₅, the destroyer of sins, thrice in the water. Sindhudvīpa is the sage for the hymn āpo hi śthā.

42. The metre is gāyatri and deity water for this (hymn) for brahmasūna (bathing to get rid of sin). It should be used for sprinkling water on the body or at the time of bathing at the conclusion of a sacrifice.

43. Aghamarṣaṇa is the sage for this aghamarṣaṇa hymn. Anuṣṭubh would be the metre. Bhāavṛtta is the deity.

44-49. (The mantra) āpo jyoti raso₆ is remembered to be the head of Gāyatrī. Prajāpati (Brahmā) is the sage for that because the yajur (mantras) are not metrical. Brahmā, Fire god, Wind god and Sun are said to be deities. The wind is generated from the suppression of breath. Fire is produced from wind. Water (is produced) from fire and then purity. Then one should rinse. It moves within beings, cavity and universal gods. The syllable vaṣṇat is the sacrifice in the form of

---

1. RV.10.9.1.
2. AV. 6.115.3.
3. This is Śrīsūkta, RVkh. 5.87.1.
4. Designation of RV. 9.1.1 ff
5. RV.10.190. 1.
6. RV.10.9.
penance. Water is the lustrous sap of nectar. The sage of the hymn udu tyam jātavedasah⁴ is said to be Praskanna (?): Gāyatri is stated to be the metre and Sun the deity. It is used in the atirātra (sacrifice) and the agniṣṭoma is the employer. Kautsa is stated to be the sage for the hymn citram devānāṃ. Triṣṭubh is said to be the metre for this (hymn) and Sun the deity.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SIXTEEN

*Complete instruction relating to Gāyatri*

*Fire-god said:*

1-4. After having performed the twilight worship thus, one should recite Gāyatri. It is known to be Gāyatri because it saves disciples, wives and lives. It is known as the Sāvitri because it illumines the Sun. It is (known as) Sarasvatī because it is the form of speech. It is known to be the bharga, the lustre, because it is the effulgence of supreme brahman. (The root) bhā denotes shining. It is also known that bhrasī denotes cooking. It ripens the herbs etc. (The root) bhrājī would denote shining. (The word) Bharga would be (denoting) shining. (In this sense) it has been used in the scriptures many times.

5-6. (It is said to be) most excellent because it has an exalted position than all the splendours. It is the one always desired by those who wish to attain heaven. As (the word) vr̥ṇoti means covering, (it signifies) an eternal, absolutely pure conscious, absolutely real and great god that is beyond (the states of) waking, dreaming and deep sleep.

7-10. I am that brahman, the supreme effulgence. I contemplate on that for the emancipation. That effulgence is lord Viṣṇu that is the cause of origin of the universe. Some read Śiva, some read a form of goddess, some Sun and some such as those learned in the scriptures and those propitiating fire, the fire (god). Lord Viṣṇu of the form of fire etc. is praised in the scriptures as the brahman. That most exalted place of lord Viṣṇu is known to be that of lord Savitā (Sun). That lord Hari, the self effulgent produces the (libations of) clarified butter.

1. RV.1.50. 1.
2. RV.1.115. 1.
(The same god) as the god of rain, the god of wind and the Sun would nourish (everything) by means of cold, heat etc.

11. Libations cast into the fire reach the Sun. Rains are produced from the Sun. Food grains (grow) from rain and then the people.

12-13. (The word) dhimahi (may be) from the root dhā (to hold). (It means) “May we retain in our minds”. The word naḥ (means) ‘our’ May that Bharga who is in the intellects of all beings prompt the intellects of those who enjoy in all their acts and results seen and unseen. He is of the form of Viṣṇu, Sun and Fire.

14. Being prompted by the lord one may reach heaven or the pit (of mundane existence). Everything is an abode of the lord. Lord Hari is verily (the worlds) such as the mahat.

15-16. “I am that lord who sports with the paradise and the like. That lord the universal being known as Bharga inside the Sun should be contemplated by those desiring for emancipation for the destruction of birth and death and the three kinds of griefs. This universal being should be beheld in the orb of the Sun.

17. You are that Supreme Being, the conscious brahman which is the exalted position of lord Viṣṇu. I am Bharga, the most exalted fourth place of lord Sun. I am the body and the like, the state of waking and that upto that brahman. I deem myself as the brahman. I am that absolute spirit in the Sun. I am the infinite. Om. I am that one who always directs the knowledge in auspicious acts and the like.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SEVENTEEN

Vasiṣṭha’s hymn to lord Śiva

Fire-god said:

1. After having propitiated lord Śiva of the form of the linga with Gāyatrī, Vasiṣṭha obtained yoga. Moreover he
got the exalted brahman and emancipation from lord Śaṅkara (Śiva).

2. Obeisance to the golden liṅga and the liṅga in the form of scriptures. Obeisance to the supreme liṅga and the liṅga in the form of the sky.

3. Obeisance to the thousand liṅga-s and the liṅga in the form of the fire. Obeisance to the liṅga of the forms of the Purāṇa and the scriptures.

4. Obeisance to the liṅga in the form of the nether worlds and the brahman. Obeisance to the mysterious liṅga and the liṅga above the seven continents.

5. Obeisance to the liṅga as the soul of all beings and to the liṅga that is the limb of all people. Obeisance to the unmanifest liṅga and the liṅga of the form of the intellect.

6. Obeisance to the liṅga representing the ego and to the liṅga denoting the beings. Obeisance to the liṅga of the form of senses and the subtle principles.

7. Obeisance to the liṅga denoting the Supreme spirit and the sentiments. Obeisance to the liṅga above the (principle of) rajas and to the (principle) of sattva.

8. Obeisance to the liṅga of the form of becoming and of the form of the three qualities. Obeisance to the liṅga denoting future and the form of lustre.

9. Obeisance to the liṅga beyond the wind and of the form of the scriptures. Obeisance to the liṅga in the form of the (hymns of) Atharva (veda) and the Śāma (veda).

10. Obeisance to the liṅga that is the limb of the sacrifice and of the form of the sacrifice. Obeisance to the liṅga of the form of principles and to the liṅga of the form of the companion of the lord.

11. You impart me the excellent yoga. (Bless me) with a son equal to me. O Lord! May I attain the imperishable brahman. O Lord (you also confer) tranquillity. May the progeny be without break and let them have an undiminishing interest in righteousness.

Fire-god said:

12. Once after having been propitiated by Vasiṣṭha on the Śrīparvata (mountain) thus, Śambhu (Śiva) granted the boon to Vasiṣṭha and disappeared there itself.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND EIGHTEEN

Mode of performing the coronation of a king

Fire-god said:

1. O Vasishtha! I shall describe now the duties of a king as told by Puskara to Rama as the latter asked (him the same).

Puskara said:

2. I shall describe the duties of a king (foremost) among the host of other duties. The king should be the slayer of the enemy, protector of the subjects and administer justice properly.

3. He would look after the welfare of all those who are on the righteous path. He should practise this vow. He has to choose the astrologer, the brahmin priest, the ministers who had known the minds of the people and the queen endowed with righteous qualities. (After having practised the vow) for a year the king should have the anointment with all the regal paraphernalia at the proper moment. But there is no regulation about time for the same if the king has died (and a new king is installed). He should be bathed with sesamum and mustard and the astrologer and the priest should hail victory for the king. (Then the king) seated on the throne should proclaim protection (for all) and throw open (the gates of) the fortress for the provincial governors.

7-11. Before the anointment (is done), the priest should do the rite to appease Indra. After having fasted on the day of anointment, offerings should be made into the sacrificial fire for the Manus with the sacred syllables of lord Vishnu, Indra, Savitri (Sun), and the Vishvedvas and the sacred syllables that are auspicious, beneficial, conferring longevity and protection. The golden pitcher known as aparajita (not defeated by anybody) containing the remnants of the sacrifice should be worshipped with perfumes and flowers on the right side of the fire. (The sacrificial) fire should have flames circling clockwise, having the colour of heated gold, should be like the moving chariot, be making sound like the cloud and without smoke. The flames in their natural form, fragrant, resembling the figure of a svastika¹, with clear and high flames and without sparks are benevolent.

¹ Made up of two lines intersecting at right angles having perpendicular lines in the clock-wise direction at the ends of two lines.
12-17. Cats, deer and birds should not pass between (the king and the sacrificial fire). The king should cleanse his head with the mud (obtained) from the summit of a mountain, the ears with the mud from the top of an anthill, the face with that (mud) from the temple of (lord) Keśava, the neck with the mud from the temple of (lord) Indra, the heart (breast) with that (got) from the courtyard of the king (king’s palace), the right arm with the mud dug up by the tusk of an elephant, the left arm with the mud dug up by the horns of a bull, the back with the mud from a tank, the abdomen with the mud from the confluence of rivers and the sides should be purified with the mud from both the banks of a river. It is laid down that the waist of a king should be cleansed with the mud (obtained) from the threshold of a courtesan, the thigh (with mud got) from the sacrificial place, the knees (with mud obtained) from the cow-shed, the shanks (with that got) from the stable, the feet with the mud from the wheel of a chariot. The head of the king seated on the throne (should be washed) with the five things got from a cow.

18-29. Four ministers (of the king) should anoint him with (waters from ) the pitchers. A brahmin (minister should anoint him) with a golden pitcher filled with ghee from the east, a kṣatriya (minister) with a silver pitcher filled with milk from the south, a vaiṣya (minister) with a copper pitcher (filled) with curd from the west and a śūdra minister with an earthen (pot) with water from the north. Then a brahmin priest reciting the Ṛgveda should anoint the king with honey and a priest of the Sāmaveda with waters along with the kuṣa. O Fortunate one! Then the (royal) priest should go towards the pitcher containing the residual offering, perform duly the protective amulet of the fire for the courtiers and give it (to the king) with those sacred syllables mentioned in connection with the coronation and with the recitations made by the brahmins. Then the priest should go to the foot of the sacrificial platform and anoint (the king) with a golden vessel having hundred holes. The head (of the king) should be touched with the herbs with (the recitation of the sacred syllables) yā oṣadhi,
with perfumes, with flowers with (the syllables) *puspavatī* 1, with seeds with (the syllables) *brahmaṇa* 2, with gems with (the syllables) *āśūh satānaḥ* 3, with *kusa* dipped in water with (the syllables) *ye devāh* 4 and a reciter of the *Vajurveda* or the *Atharvaveda* should touch the head and throat with *rocanā* with (the recitation of the syllables) *gandhādvarā* 5 and other brahmins with all the sacred waters. Then they should hold a pitcher filled with the herbs in front of the king to the accompaniment of singing and instrumental music and the (waving of) chowries and fans. The king also should see them as well as the auspicious things such as the mirror and ghee etc. Then the priest, seated on a bed covered with a tiger-skin, should worship (gods) Viṣṇu, Brahmā, Indra and others and the lords of planets and place the turban after having given the respectful offering of mixture of honey.

30-34. The crown of the king should be fixed with the hides of five animals. The king should place the hides of a bull, a cat, elephant, lion and tiger on that seat with (the recitation of the sacred syllables) *dhruvā dyauḥ* 6. Then the door-keeper should present the ministers to the king. Then the king should give presents of cows, goats, sheep, houses and other gifts to the astrologers and priests. (The other) brahmins should be honoured by (giving gifts of) land, cows, food etc. Then (the king) should circumambulate the (sacrificial) fire and make obeisance to the preceptor. (He should then move) backwards, touch the bull and worship the cow and calf. Then he should ride the consecrated (royal) steed. Similarly, he should worship the royal elephant and mount it. He should then go round the royal path along with his army. Then he should enter the palace and send away all (those gathered) after pleasing them with gifts.

1. RV. 10.97.3.
2. AV. 5. 17. 9.
3. RV. 10.103. 1.
4. MS. 2. 6. 3.
5. RV Kh. 5. 87. 9.
6. RV. 10.173. 4.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND NINETEEN

Sacred syllables for coronation

Puṣkara said:

1. I shall describe the sacred syllables for the anointment of a king or god which would destroy sins. One would accomplish everything by sprinkling water from the pot with the kuṣa.

2-6. (The sacred syllables are as follows): "May the gods Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Maheśvara, Vāsudeva, Saṅkarṣaṇa, Pradyumna and Aniruddha install you. May the gods Indra and others occupying ten cardinal points confer victory on you. The lords of created beings such as Rudra, Dharma, Manu, Dakṣa, Ruci, Śraddhā, Bhṛgu, Atri, Vasiṣṭha, Sanaka, Sanandana, Sanatkumāra, Āṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Marici and Kaśyapa guard (you) always. May the God of Death, lustrous celestials, (the manes) Barhiṣadas, Agniśvattas Kravyādas, Upahūtas, Ājyapas and Sukālins guard you. May (the goddesses) Lakṣmī and others, the consorts of Dharma anoint you with fires.

7-13. May the consorts of Ādityas and others, the progeny of Kaśyapa, having many offspring, the wives of Krṣāśva, the son of Agni, (the wives) of Ariṣṭanemi, Aśvinī and others, (the wives) of the Moon and the wives of Pulaha, namely, Bhūtā, Kapīśā, Daṁśṭri, Surasā, Saramā, Danu, Śyenī, Bhāsi, Krauṇci, Dhṛtarāṣṭri and Śuki (install you). (May) Aruṇa, the charioteer of the Sun anoint you. May Āyati (future), Niyati (fate), Rātri (night) and Nidrā (sleep) who stabilise the world and support it as well as (the goddesses) Umā, (consort of Śiva), Menā (wife of Himavān), Śacī (wife of Indra) guard (you). May Dhūmrā, Urṇā and Nirṛti (confer) victory. May (the goddesses) Gauri, Śivā, Ṛddhi, Velā, Naḍvalā, Asiknī and Jyotsnā, the consorts of the celestials and the presiding deity of the forest (confer victory). May the mahākalpa (greater cycle of time), kalpa (smaller cycle of time), manvantara (Manu periods), yugas (a certain long period of time), saṁvatsara (years), varṣas and the two half years (based on the movement of the sun) guard you. May the seasons, months, fortnights, nights, days, twilight, tīkṣa (lunar days), mahātās (period of 48 minutes), which are the constituents of the time personified (guard you).
14-41. May the planets such as the Sun as well as (the fourteen Manus) Svāyambhuva and other Manus guard you. Svāyambhuva, Svārociṣa, Auttami, Tāmasa, Raivata, Cākṣuṣa the sixth, Vaivavata, Sāvarṇi, Bhramaputra, Dharmaputra, Rudraja, Dakṣaja, Raucya and Bhautya are the fourteen Manus. May the foremost celestials Viśvabhuk, Vipaścit, Sucitti, Śikhi, Vibhu, Manojava, Ojasvī, Bali, Adbhuta, Śānti, Vṛṣa, Rta-dhāmā, Divasprk, Kavi, Indraka, Raivanta, Kumāra, Vatsaka, Vināyaka, Virabhadra, Nandī, Viśvakarmā and Purojava anoint you. May the celestial physicians Nāsatya, the eight Vasu Dhrūva and others, the ten Aṅgirasas and the scriptures anoint you for gaining perfection. May the soul, duration of life, mind, mental power, egoism, life-breath, possessed of oblation, the most important, divine law and truth guard you. May Kratu, Dakṣa, Vasu, Satya, Kālakāma and Dhuri (lead you) to victory. May the Purūravas, Mādravas, Viśvedevas, Rocana, Aṅgāraka and others, Sūrya, Nirṛti and Yama, Ajākapāt, Ahirbudhyāna, Dhūmaketu, Rudrajas, Bharata, Mṛtyu, Kāpāli, Kiṅkiṇī, Bhavana and Bhāvana protect you with their children and wives, Kratuśravāh, Mūrddhā, Yājana, Abhyuśanāh, Prasava, Avyaya, Dakṣa, Bhṛgu, the celestials, Manaḥ Anumanṭa, Prāṇaḥ, Nava, Apāna, Vīryavān, Vitihotra, Naya, Saḍhya, Hamṣa and Nārāyaṇa protect you. May the foremost among the celestials who are devoted to the welfare of universe such as Vibhu, Prabhu, and the twelve Suns Dhātā, Mitra, Aryamā, Pūṣa, Śakra, Varuṇa, Bhaga, Tvaṣṭā, Vivasvāna, Savitā and Viṣṇu as well as Ekajyotis, Dvirjyotis, Trijyotis, Caturjyotis, Ekaśakra, Dviśakra, Triśakra, Mahābala and Indra command (saying) 'do not'. Then may Pratimākṛt, Mita, Sammita, Amita, Mahābala, Rta-jit, Satyajit, Suṣena, Senajit, Atimitra, Anumitra, Puruṣmitra, Aparajita, Rta, Rta-vāk, Dhātā, Vidhātā, Dharaṇa, Dhrūva and Vidhāraṇa, the mighty friend of Indra, Īḍṛkṣa, Adṛkṣa, Eṭādrk, Amitāśana, Kiṛḍita, Saḍṛkṣa, Sarabha, Mahātapa, Dharta, Dhurya, Dhuri, Bhīma, Abhimukta, Kṣapātsaha, Dhṛti, Vasu Anāḍhṛṣya, Rāma, Kāma, Jaya, Virāṭ, the forty-nine wind gods protect you. May the Gandharvas—Citraṅgada, Citraratha, Citrasena, Kali, Ürṇāyu, Ugrasena, Dhṛtarāṣṭra,

1. Literally means helpful, denotes the Āśvinī kumāras, the celestial physicians.
Nandaka, Hāhā, Hūhū, Nārada, Viśvāvasu and Tumburu anoint you for your victory. May the foremost among the priests and the divine group of damsels Anavadyā, Sukēśi, Menakā, Sahajanyā, Krutusthalā, Ghṛtācī, Viśvācī, Puṇjikasthalā, Pramlocā, Ūrvaśi, Rambhā, Paṇcācūdā, Tilottamā, Citralekha, Lakṣmānā, Puṇḍarikā and Vāruṇī guard you. May the demons Prahlāda, Virocana, Bali and Bāṇa and their sons and other foremost demons Heti, Praheti, Vidyut, Śphūrjathu anoint you. (May) the Yakṣa, the accomplished soul-Manibhadra, Nandana, Piṅgākṣa, Dyutimān and Puṣpavanta bring forth victory. (May) the treasures saṅkha(conch), padma (lotus), makara (fish), kacchapa (tortoise) (bring) victory.

42-46. May the ghosts Urdhvakeśa and others, the goblins who dwell on the earth, the (divine) mothers led by Mahākāla (form of Śiva at deluge) and Narasirśha (man-lion form of Viṣṇu), Guha (son of Śiva), Skanda, Viśākhā and Naigameya (other names of Guha) anoint you. May the female goblins and female attendants on God Śiva dwelling in the sky and on the earth and the principal birds such as the Garuḍa, Aruṇa and Sampāti guard you. May the great serpents Ananta, Vāsuki, Takṣaka, Airāvata, Mahāpadma, Kambala, Aśvatara, Saṅkha, Karkoṭaka, Dṛreature and Dhanaṅjaya, and the elephants Kumuda, Airāvana, Padma, Puṣpadanta, Vāmana, Supratika and Aṇjana protect you always from all evils.

47. May the swan, the bull and the buffalo, (respectively the vehicles) of Brahmā, Saṅkara, Durgā and God of Death guard you.

48. (May) Uccaiḥśravas, the lord of the horses, (lord) Dhanvantari, Kaustubha, the foremost among the conches, always (proect) the mace, spear and the disc.

49. May Nandaka, Dharma, the governor of conduct, Citragupta, the wielder of the punishing rod, Piṅgala, Mṛtyu (death) and Kālaka (the regulator of time) protect the weapons.

50-51. May the sages Vālakhilyas and others and the foremost among the sages such as Vyāsa and Vālmiki, (the foremost among the kings of the past) Prithu, Dilipa, Bharata, Dusyanta, Śakrajit, Bāli, Malla, Kakutstha, Anenas, Yuvanāśva, Jayadratha, Māndhātā, Mucukunda and Purūravas guard you.

52-53. May the presiding deities of the grounds and the twentyfive principles confer victory on you. (May) the golden
earth, rocky soil, nether world, blue soil, yellowish red, earth, white soil, Rasātala (a nether world), the earth, the terrestrial region and the foremost among the continents Jambū etc. (bring you) fortune.

54-55. May the Uttarakurus and the continents Ramya, Hiranīyaka, Bhadrāśva, Ketumāla, Balāhaka, Harivarṣa, Kimpuruṣa, Indrādvipa, Kaśerumā, Tāmravarṇa, Gabhastimān, Nāgadvipa and Saumyaka guard you.

56-72. Varuṇa, the ninth gandharva, the conserver of dominion protect you. The mountains Himavān. Hemakūṭa Niṣadha, Nila, Śveta, Śrīgavān, Meru, Mālyavān, Gandhamādāna, Mahendra, Malayā, Sahya, Śūktimān, Rkṣavān, Vindhyā and Pāriyātā bestow peace upon you. May the Rgveda and the other (Vedas), the six accessory texts1 Itihāsa and Purāṇas, medical science, science of music and archery, the accessory Vedas protect you. Phonetics, the texts laying down rules for sacrificial acts, grammar, etymology, astronomy and metrics, the (four) scriptural texts, mimāṃsā, the science of logic, code of laws and Purāṇa are the fourteen branches of learning. (The schools of philosophy such as) the Sāṅkhya and Yoga, the Pāṣu-pata, the Vedas and the Pāñcarātra are the five dogmas. May (the goddesses) Gāyatrī, Śivā, Durgā, Vidyā and Gāndhārī protect you and confer peace on you. May the four oceans of salt, sugarcane juice, liquor, clarified butter, curd, milk and water and the 49 different sacred spots protect you. (They are) Puṣkara, Prayāga, rṛabhāsa, the excellent Naimiṣa, Gayāśīrṣa, Brahmaśīra, Uttaramānasa, Kālodaka, Nandikuṇḍa, Pañcanadatīrtha, Bhṛgutīrtha, Prabhāsa, Amarakaṇṭaka, Jambūmārga, the spotless, the hermitage of Kapila, Gaṅgādvāra (Haridvāra), Kuṣāvarta, Vindhyāka, Nilaparvata, Varāhaparvata, Kanakha, Kālaṅjara, Kedāra, Rudrakoṭi, Vārāṇasi, the great spot Badari-kāśrama, Dvārakā, Śrīgiri, Puruṣottama (Puri), Śālagrāma and Vārāha, the spots of confluence of the rivers with the ocean, Phalguṇītīrtha, Bindusara, Karavīrāśrama and the rivers Gaṅgā,

1. Phonetics, the texts laying down rules for sacrificial acts, grammar, etymology, metrics and astronomy.
2. The texts dealing with the interpretation of vedic texts.
3. Śaivite philosophical texts.
4. Vaiṣṇavite philosophical texts.
Sarasvatī, Śatadru, Gaṇḍakī, Acchodā, Vipāśā, Vitastā, Devikā, Kāverī, Varunā, Niścīrā, Gomatī, Pārā, Carmanvati, Rūpā, Mandākinī, Mahānadi, Tāpī, Payoṣṭi, Veṇā, Gaurī, Vaitaraṇī, Godāvarī, Bhūmarthī, Tuṅgabhadra, Aranī and Candrabhāgā (and the goddesses) Śivā (and) Gaurī anoint and protect you.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND TWENTY

Accomplishment of assistance to the king

Puṣkara said:

1-7. A foremost king thus crowned along with his ministers should conquer the enemies. A brahmin or a kṣatriya should be appointed by the king as the commander-in-chief. He should also be a descendant of a noble family and well-versed in ethics. The door-keeper (should be) learned in ethics. The emissary should be speaking sweet, strong and a matchless warrior. The betel-bearer (may be) a man or a woman devoted (to the king), capable of enduring fatigue and be affectionate. One who is proficient in the six expedients of royal policy¹ should be made the minister of foreign affairs. A guard should bear the sword. A charioteer should know the strength of (the hostile) army. The chief cook (should be) a beneficiary, learned and one living in the (royal) kitchen. The courtiers should be well-versed in righteousness. The (royal) scribe should be well versed in (the art of) writing. The door-keepers should know the appropriate time of call and bebeneficial. The treasurer should be a man well-acquainted with the gems and be beneficial in the acquisition of wealth. The royal physician should know the science of medicine. The superintendent of elephants should know (the science of) elephants. The rider of an elephant should be one who has conquered fatigue. The superintendent of horses should know equinology. The superintendents of forts should be beneficial and wise. The architects should be well-versed in the nature of the grounds.

1. Alliance, war, march, halt, seeking shelter and duplicity.
8. Persons (employed) to give instructions in (the use of) weapons, should be well-versed in the use of weapons projected by the machines or discharged by the hands or not discharged entirely or discharged and held back and fight with hands. He should be beneficial to the king.

9. The officer in the harem should be old, fifty years old if women and seventy years old if men. They should be engaged in all types of work.

10-15. (The man) in (charge) of the arsenal should be wakeful. A person is employed in a task after knowing (his ability). A king should employ foremost, medium and ordinary people after knowing the tasks as excellent, medium and ordinary. A king desirous of victory should bring beneficial accomplices. Righteous men (should be engaged) in righteous acts, valorous men in tasks like battle, clever men in acts yielding material gains and men of good conduct in all acts. Eunuchs should be employed in (matters relating to) women and cruel-hearted men) in cruel deeds. Whomsoever the king knows to be of good conduct, that person should be employed (by the kings) in the acts of piety, acquisition of wealth and pleasure. Vile people (should be employed) in bad acts. The king should employ in appropriate task those people whose fidelity has been tested. The minister should engage properly men of the same kind to find the evil doers just as an elephant (is employed to control) the wild ones.

16-24. Experts should be employed in their own fields of specialization. The servants who have been serving since the time of the grandfather and father (of the king) should be engaged to do all tasks except in matters which are to be done by the heirs. In those acts, only those who have come (in that line should be employed). Men who have come from other kings (and) desiring protege should be given protection (irrespective of the fact) whether they are bad or good. If one is known to be bad, (the king) should not trust him and keep his livelihood under his control. Men who have come from a different country should be watched by (engaging) spies and then honoured (if they are found to be good). The enemies, fire, poison, serpent and the sword on one side and the trustworthy, distinguished servants (on the other side) should be known (as equal). So also the wicked servants on one side (equal the loyal servants) (?)
The king should have the spies as the eyes. He should always employ the spies. The spies should not be known to the people. They should be good and not known to each other. (He should employ the spies) in the guise of tradesmen, diplomats, astrologers, physicians and as ascetics knowing the strength and weakness (of the people). The king should not trust (the words of) a single person. He should believe the words of many. The king should make use of the likes, displeasures, merits and demerits of his servants and people, as well as the good and bad (deeds done by them) in order to control them. He should do only such acts which would attract them and desist from acts causing displeasure. The king would be adorned by the fortune of the pleasure of the people because of pleasing the people.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND TWENTYONE

_Code of conduct for the servants_

Puṣkara said:

1-5. The servant has to carry out the orders of the king, like a disciple, for the prosperity of the master. He should not disobey the commands of the king. He should speak only that which is good and dear to him. If an unpleasant news is beneficial (to the king), (the servant) should let him know in privacy. When he has been employed in some work he should not swindle the money. He should not do anything that would affect his dignity. He should not similarly put on the dress of the king and speak and act in the manner of the king. The superintendent of the attendants of the harem should not have any contact with those dismissed (by the king) and have become enemies. The servant should guard the secret of the king. After having done some act of ingenuity, (the servant) should ascribe it to the king. He should not give publicity to any of the secrets heard by him from the king. When some (superior person) orders him (to disclose) he should say, “what to do?”
6-7. He should wear the dress, gems and ornaments given by the king. He should not enter the royal chamber without being asked (by the king). He should not see him at an improper place. He should avoid yawning, spitting, coughing, frowning based on depravity, raising the eyebrows and eructation near him.

8-14. One should engage others cleverly by making the king know about his qualities. Perfidy, avarice, slandering, atheism, meanness and fickle-mindedness should always be avoided by one in the service of the king. A servant who thus associates his own self with the self by means of scriptural knowledge and manual work should then do the service to the king for the sake of the growth of fortune. He should always bow down to the sons, favourites and ministers of that person (the king). He need not gain the confidence of the ministers. He should do (such acts) which please the king. (The servant) should ignore those not liked by the king. One who knows the king should desire to earn his livelihood from those liked by the king. He should not speak anything when not asked by the king. He should do the desired when (he has) a misfortune. The king would be pleased with a person who gathers the words spoken. The king also would not suspect (that he would disclose) his secrets. (The duty of the servant is) to enquire about the health (of the king) and to make the seat ready (for him). (A servant) rejoices to hear the exploits of the king. He rejoices even after (hearing) an unpleasant (comment). He receives the small remuneration and remembers it on other occasion. Only such a servant should be employed. The services of others should be avoided.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND TWENTYTWO

Construction of Forts

Puṣkara said:

1-2. I shall describe the excellent fortification. The king should reside in the fort. It should abound with the traders and
servants and sparsely with others. It should have few brahmans and plenty of artisans. A country not depending on rain-water and having plenty of water (for cultivation) is commended.

3. It should not be vulnerable for attack by others and should abound with flowers, fruits and grains. It should be impassable by foreign army and should be free from rogues and thieves.

4-5. The mighty king should build one of the following types of forts and live there. O Bhārgava (son of Bhṛgu; Paraśurāma)! Fort guarded by archers, land, men, forest, water and hill (are the six kinds of forts). The excellent among these (forts) would be the fort protected by the hill. It is indestructible and it destroys others.

6. Such a fort should have the market place, temple and other things. A fort furnished with weapons and implements and surrounded by water is an excellent one.

7-9. I shall describe the means of protecting the king. The king has to be saved from poison. The śrīśa well ground with (cow's) urine, (known as) paścāṅga destroys poison. Śatāvart, chinnaruḥā, viṣāghni, taṅḍulīyaka, kośātki, kalhāri, brāhmi, citrapaṭolikā, maṇḍukaparṇi, vārāhi, dhātri, ānandakaṁ, ummādini, somarājī and the gemstone destroying poison (are the antidotes for poison).

10. Residing in the fort possessing the characteristics of a dwelling place, (the king) should propitiate gods. (He) should protect the subjects, conquer the wicked and make gifts.

11. (The king) who takes away the articles (dedicated to) the god would dwell in hell for a kalpa (period). The king being devoted to the worship of gods should erect temples.

12-13. The temples should be protected and (images of) deities should be installed. A wooden one is meritorious than the earthen one, one made of bricks than the wooden one. One made of stone is meritorious than that of the (image) made of brick. One made of gold and gems (is meritorious) than that of the stone one. Even by the construction of a temple sportively one would get enjoyment and emancipation.

14. One who donates paintings, musical instruments and (arranges for) dramatic performances to be seen and who anoints the deity with oil, clarified butter, honey, milk and other things would go to heaven.
15-18. The king should worship and protect the brahmans. He should not take away the belongings of a brahmān. (The king) would reach hell and remain there till the inundation of beings (deluge) by taking away (a piece of) gold, a cow or an āṅgula breadth of a thumb) measure of land (from a brahmin). There is no other sin greater than the killing of a brahmin. The brahmans would make non-divine into divine and divine into non-divine. Brahmans are the most fortunate ones. They should always be respected. A brahmin woman who weeps would destroy the family, kingdom and subjects (of a king).

19-23. A righteous king should protect the chaste women. The women should engage happily and efficiently in the cores of household work. (She should be) decorating well the household articles and be frugal in her expenses. She should always do service to her husband to whom her father has given her (in marriage). The lady practising continence after the death of the husband goes to heaven. She should not have the desire (to live) in other’s house and should not be quarrelsome. A widow as well as the wife of a man who has gone abroad, should not decorate her person. She should always be bent on the worship of god and the welfare of the husband. (A woman whose husband has gone abroad) should wear some ornaments for the welfare (of the husband). The woman (widow) who enters the (funeral) fire along with the (dead) husband would also reach heaven. (A householder) should worship the goddess of fortune and do the cleansing of the house etc. (He should worship lord) Viṣṇu on the twelfth day of Kārttika and then make a gift of a cow together with a calf. Her husband was saved by Sāvitrī (wife of Satyavān, king of Sālva) by practising truthfulness and good conduct. There need not be any doubt that a woman would have children by the worship of the Sun on the seventh day in the bright (fortnight) in (the month of) margastra.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND TWENTYTHREE

Duties of a king

 пу́кар said:

1-4. A king should appoint a head for (every) village, for ten villages, for hundred villages, and then an over-all head. Their salaries would be in conformity with their duties. (The king) should watch them daily through (his) spies. Any irregularity that has arisen in the village should be controlled by the village head. If (he is) not able (to set it right) (he) should approach the head of ten villages and report him. The head of the ten villages also should take appropriate step after having heard the same. The king would get wealth etc. by protecting the state.

5-13. A wealthy man gets righteousness and enjoys the desires. All actions without (being supported by) wealth would be ephemeral just as the river in the summer. There is no difference between the fallen and the poor in the world. No one would take from the fallen. A poor man would not give. Even the wife of the poor would not lend him support. A king oppressing the country would dwell in hell for a long time. A king should do in the same way as a pregnant woman who would abandon her comforts and would attend to the welfare of the child in the womb. What (use) of the sacrifices or of the penance (for a king) whose subjects have not been protected. One whose subjects have been well protected, his house would be equal to heaven. One whose subjects have not been protected, his house would be the hell. The king collects one-sixth (of the income) of both the good and bad subjects. (The king) would acquire virtue by protecting (the subjects) and sin by not protecting them. The subjects should be protected (by the king) from the oppressions by thieves (in the guise of) the officers of the state, especially the writer-caste, just as a virtuous woman afraid of a villain (is protected). The subjects being protected from their fear (by the king) would be the subjects of the king. If not protected they become an easy prey for them. The wicked should be put down and the tax laid down in the codes should be taken.

14-17. Half (the amount collected) should be kept in the treasury and the other half should be given to brahmans daily. Having found a treasure a brahmin should take it in entirety.
The same having been found by a kṣatriya, a vaiśya or a śūdra, it is enough if one-fourth or one-eighth or one-sixteenth part of the treasure is given (to the king) in order as per law. One who lies is punishable (with a fine) of one-eighth part of the treasure. The king should keep an unclaimed property in his custody for three years. (One who is able to establish his claim) after three years by saying that ‘it is mine’ should be given the property as laid down. On the contrary the king would forfeit the wealth.

18-21. The owner (of a property) deserves (to get) that property after furnishing (details about) its nature, dimension etc. The king should manage the property belonging to a minor till he (the minor) completes his study or crosses the state of childhood. The same (procedure) should be followed in the (case of the properties) belonging to widows with children and those not having the guardians. The righteous king should punish those relatives who seize (the properties) of faithful women (who have become) widows and weak, even as they are alive, with the punishment meted to the thief. In general the property stolen by a thief should be paid by the king himself.

22. The king should obtain from thieves and the officers in charge of the protection, the property taken by them. One who lies that he has been robbed when he has not been robbed should be punished and expelled (from the country).

23-29. The property that has been stolen by the inmates of the house need not be restored by the king. O Brahmin! the king should take one twentieth of the value from the merchandise belonging to his country. The fees to be levied on goods from foreign countries should be determined after knowing the cost, the wear and tear and the profit got by the trader. (In this case) one twentieth of the profit should be taken. If not (paid) (the importer) should be punished. Freight should not be collected from women and mendicants. The ferryman should be made to repay by the king that which has been lost in transit on account of the fault of the ferryman. The king should take one sixth in the case of the grain śūka (barley) and one eighth in the case of the grain simbi (a kind of kidney bean) as toll befitting the region and season. The king should take four and five parts respectively in the case of animals and gold. Only a sixth part should be collected in the case of perfumes, herbs,
cereals, flowers, roots, fruits, leaves, vegetables, straw, bamboos
hides, wicker works and vessels made of stone and all (other
materials), honey, meat and clarified butter.

30-33. (The king) should not levy tax on the brahmins
even in emergency. The king in whose realm a brahmin,
well-versed in the scriptures, perishes on account of hunger, his
kingdom gets ruined on account of diseases, famine and thieves.
The king should ascertain the attainments and provide him
an occupation. (The king) should always protect him just as
the father (would protect) his son. The life of the king, the wealth
and the kingdom would increase by the meritorious deeds of a
person (brahmin) being protected by the king. The artisans
of the king should work for a day in a month (without any
remuneration). The other workers under him should (work
without any remuneration) by taking food only.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED TWENTYFOUR

Duties of a king in the harem

Puṣkara said:

1-2. I shall describe the duties of the king in the harem.
Virtues etc. (are) the purpose of life (for the king). The kings
should entertain them without mutual conflict in the company
of the women. Virtue is the root, worldly prosperity the bough
and action or deed the great fruit. One who fosters this tree of
the three objects of worldly existence, would realise the fruits.

3-9. O Rāma! Women are subject to desire. Hence the
gems are gathered for their sake. They should be entertained and
also not much entertained by the king who desires for wealth.
One should not indulge excessively in eating, sexual pleasure and
sleep. It would cause disease. The king should share his bed
only with his beloved women. A woman behaving badly, not
rejoicing in (hearing his) exploits, associating with the enemies
(of the king), feeling haughty and proud, wiping her face when
kissed, not feeling grateful after accepting a present, sleeping
before and getting up later after sleep, shaking the body when
touched and preventing from touching the body on account of
shyness, scarcely listening to pleasing words and keeping the
face turned away, ignoring to look at things placed in front,
concealing the loins, having a pale face when looked at, turning
her face away from the friends, appearing as if a mediator in the
(affairs of) other women loved (by the king) and not adorning
her person even after knowing that it is time for adorning (should
be rejected).

10-19. One who is disinterested should be rejected and one
who is loving should be entertained. (The characteristics of a
loving woman are as follows). She rejoices even at the sight
(of her husband). When looked at she casts her eyes down.
Being looked at she places her shaking glances elsewhere. Yet
she would not be able to turn aside her look completely. O
Bhârgava (son of Bhṛgu, Paraśurâma) ! She exhibits her con-
cealed parts of body and covers up with effort the organs prohi-
bited (from being displayed). She embraces and kisses him
(immediately after) being seen. She always speaks only the
truth. When being touched feels horripilation later manifest-
ing as the sweat-drops (on the body). (O Râma ! She
asks for easy and simple things (from the husband). She
gets great rejoice after getting even a little. She feels elated
and favoured much by the mere pronunciation of her name.
She sends fruits to her husband with the impressions of her
nails. She holds those sent by her husband on the chest out of
regard. She besmears the body as if with the ambrosia by her
embraces. She sleeps after (the husband) had slept and would
get up before (he gets up). She would wake him up from sleep
by touching his thigh much. O Sage ! The clarified butter
becomes fragrant by combination with the powders of kapittha
and a column of curd as also with barley put in milk. This is the
way by which an eatable thing should be dressed. Now I shall
describe the mode of preparation of perfumes.

20-22. O Râma ! Cleansing, gargling, vomiting, adorning
(with flowers etc.), heating, burning (incense sticks) fumi-
gation and perfuming are indicated to be the eight acts. Puri-
fication of a thing is by washing it with water containing the
leaves of Kapittha, bilva, mango and Karavira. In the absence
of these, purification should be done with water saturated with
musk.
23-29. The twenty-one herbs for fumigation are—nakha, kuṣṭha, dhana, māṃst, sprkka, saileyaja, jala, saffron, shellac, sandal, agallochum, nirada, sarala, devakāṣṭha, camphor, kāntā, bāla, kunduruka, guggulu, śrīnivāsaka and sarjarasa. Two of these should be taken and mixed with parts of resin from a śala tree. They become fit for fumigation by being mixed with nakha, pinyāka, malaya and honey and made as desired in the proper way. The bark, tubular part, fruit, oil, saffron, granthiparoaka, śailey, tagara, kāntā, cola, camphor, māṃst, surā and kuṣṭha are said to be the things (to be used) for bathing. One should bathe with any three (things) from these collected as one desires after mixing with the musk. This would increase the passion.

30. If one bathes with tvak, murā and analada in equal proportions added to half (the quantity) of bālaka with saffron and oil, one would have the fragrance of the lotus.

31. By adding a half of tagara (in the same), it will have the fragrance of the jāti flower. It gives a captivating fragrance of the bakula (flowers) with the dhyāmaka (grass).

32. One would get an auspicious fragrant oil by putting the maṇiṣṭhā, tagara, cola, tvak, vyāghranakha, nakha and gandhapatra.

33. O Rāma! the oil extracted from the sesamum and scented with any of the flowers would certainly have the fragrance of the flower.

34. Cardamom, clove, kakkola, nutmeg and camphor mixed with the skin of the nutmeg would be able to make the mouth fragrant.

35-38. O Rāma! a kārsika (weight) of camphor, saffron kāntā, musk, hareṇuka, kakkola, cardamom, clove, jāti, koṣaka, tvakpatra, truti, musta, kastūrikā latā, the thorns of clove, the fruit and skin of nutmeg and katuka should be powdered and a fourth part of the essence of khadira that gives fragrance should be added. Then tablets should be made of them by (adding) mango juice. When kept in the mouth they give fragrance and destroy the diseases of the mouth.

39. Arecanut well washed with the waters of the leaves of five (trees) and made fragrant with the (above) things (used) for (making) the pills would make the mouth fragrant.

40. O Rāma! (the herbs) katuka and dantakāṣṭha soaked
in cow’s urine for three days and perfumed as the arecanut would make the mouth fragrant.

41. Equal parts of tvak and pathya mixed with half (the quantity) of the camphor would give an attractive fragrance in the mouth similar to that of the nāgavalli (betel).

42. The king should always protect the women thus. He should not trust them, especially, the mother of children. He should never sleep in the night in the apartment of a woman. The faith (placed in them) should be feigned one.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND TWENTYFIVE

The duties of a king

Puṣkara said:

1-2. A king should protect the princess. He should instruct them in the sciences of virtue, polity, erotics, archery and fine arts through reliable persons. In the guise of protecting the body of the prince, guardians should be engaged (to guard from) those feigning to speak pleasant.

3. He should not be given (an opportunity) to associate with angry, greedy and dishonoured persons. If not able to inculcate virtue (in the prince, the king) should bind him with pleasures.

4. An obedient prince should be engaged in all posts of authority. The king should avoid hunting, drinking and dice (playing) that destroys the kingdom.

5-7. (He) should also avoid sleeping during the day-time, strolling about idly and scurrilous language. He should also leave off censuring, cruel infliction of punishment and extravagance. The destruction of mines, neglecting—the care of the fort etc. and scattering wealth are said to be extravagance. A gift that is made to an unworthy person at an inappropriate place and time and engaging in unworthy acts are said to be extravagance.

8. One should avoid passion, anger, haughtiness, pride,
greed and arrogance. Then one should win (the love of) citizens after having controlled the servants.

9. Then (he) should subjugate his external enemies. The external enemies are of three kinds—those belonging to the same clan, those having enmity from the period of the ancestors and those who have enmity on account of some particular reason. Among these three each preceding one is greater than the succeeding one.

10. O Fortunate one! Friends are of three kinds—friend of the father and grandfather, feudatory under the enemy and artificial.

11. O Knower of virtue! An empire is said to possess seven constituents—king, minister, subjects, fort, punishment, treasury and allies.

12-16. The central figure is the king. He should be protected and the kingdom is especially dependent on him. One who rebels against any of the above constituents of the kingdom should be killed. The king should be firm and liberal at (the appropriate) time. Thus there are two worlds (to be conquered by the king. The king should not cut jokes with the servants. The servants soon get an upper hand of the king whom they can persuade to laugh. In order to control people he should feign grief (in their misery). He should speak preceded by a gentle smile. He should make them feel delighted. It would certainly be detrimental to the work if the king is procrastinating. Procrastination is commended in the (following) acts—passion, arrogance, pride, quarrel, sinful acts and unpleasant things to be told. The king should hold secret counsel. There is no danger from secret counselling.

17-20. The acts relating to the state done (by a king holding such a counsel) is known from the deeds done and begun to be done. One’s mind is known from the postures, gestures, gaits, action, speech and the changes in the eye and face. The king, should not keep his own counsel, nor consult a large number (of his ministers). The king may have the counsel with many (ministers). But it (should be had) separately. (He should see that) none of his ministers would disclose his secret counsels. Men will always have trust in some one somewhere. In counsel decision must be made by one wise man.
21-22. A king would perish on account of immodesty and would acquire a kingdom on account of modesty. (A king should learn) the three sciences, the science of administration, metaphysics, science of wealth and business from the world. Only a person that has conquered his senses would be able to keep his subjects under his control.

23. The gods and all brahmins should always be worshipped and gifts should be given to them (brahmins). Gift made to a brahmin (would be) imperishable and the treasury cannot be destroyed by any of these.

24. Not retreating in the battle, protecting the subjects and giving gifts to the brahmins are the supreme good for a king.

25. (The king) should likewise arrange for the welfare and livelihood of the poor, destitute and old people, widows and women whose husbands have gone abroad.

26-33. (The king) should arrange for (the proper pursuit of) the orders of the varṇa (castes) and āśrama (stages of life). (He should) worship the ascetics. He should not trust everyone and trust only the ascetics. He should make (others) trust him adducing reason (to show that his words) are not impeachable. The king should think about the wealth like a crane, conquer like a lion, pounce (on the enemies) like a wolf, dart forth like a hare and strike firmly like a boar. The king should also be showing vanity like a peacock, faithful as a horse and be speaking pleasantly like a cuckoo. A king should always be suspicious as a crow while living in the residence of a stranger. A king should not partake of the food and touch a bed not tested before. He should not visit a woman whom he had not known before and not board an unfamiliar boat. One who oppresses his subjects would be deprived of the position and comforts of a sovereign. Just as a nourished bull gains strength and becomes fit for work, so also O Fortunate one! the nourished sovereignty becomes fit for work. All these works are dependent on the providence and on one's efforts. Out of these two the providence is unthinkable and one's accomplishments depend on his effort. The kingdom and the wealth of the earth of a king belong to him by the good-will of the people.
TWO HUNDRED AND TWENTYSIX

The means of Conciliation

Puṣkara said:

1-4. One's own act that has been acquired from a previous existence of a person is known as the providence. Hence people declare that will-force is superior. So also an adverse providence can be nullified by one's efforts. One will accomplish by his previous deeds of virtue without providence. O Bhārgava (son of Bhṛgu)! Effort yields fruit at the proper time by the grace of providence. The providence and effort are the two that yield fruit for a man. The fruits would be accomplished at the proper time by the combination of rain and ploughing. Along with virtuous deeds one should exert effort. One should neither be lazy nor be dependent on fate.

5-11. All the stratagems are accomplished by means of conciliation and other things. The seven means are conciliation, making gifts, creating dissent, punishment, stratagem, indifference and deceit. Conciliation is said to be of two kinds—true and untrue. Of these two the untrue (reconciliation) would be for the censure of the good people. Those who belong to good families, upright, always virtuous and have conquered their senses are conquerable by conciliatory words. Even demons are taken by false (conciliations). The description of the good services rendered by them (is conciliation). A dissension may be created between two who are inimical to each other, angry, afraid of each other and have been insulted by each other. He should instill fear in them. A king should give hopes to his own people (relatives). He should cause dissent in adversaries by holding out threats about which they are afraid. One who causes such dissents among such kinsmen should be protected by the king. The anger of the soldiers is external and those of the ministers, counsellors and princes etc. (are internal). The king should pacify the internal anger and conquer that of the enemies.

12-16. Paying money is the excellent expedient. By giving money one would get both the worlds. There is no one for instance who is not influenced by the payment of money. Only (a king) who makes a gift of money would be able to cause dissent in the enemies who have become allies. A king should accom-
plish by (means of) punishment and service that which could not be accomplished by the other three. Everything rests on punishment which would destroy everything if improperly used. A king would be destroyed by punishing those unpunishable and not punishing those punishable. In the absence of punishment, the gods, demons, serpents, men, accomplished persons, goblins and birds would transgress their limits. The wisemen call ‘the punishment’ so because it controls the uncontrolled, punishes the unpunishable, controls and punishes.

17-20. The king like the sun cannot be looked at on account of his splendour. He should be like the moon to look at in order to please the people. The king is the wind-god since he spreads himself in the world by means of his spies. He becomes fire when he burns the wicked. When he makes the gift to the brahmins he is the lord of wealth (Kubera). Because he showers wealth he is known to be god Varuṇa among the celestials. The king would be the earth by supporting the universe with his forbearance. Then he is lord Hari (Viṣṇu) because he would protect the people with determination, incantation, strength etc.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND TWENTYSEVEN

The code of criminal laws

Puṣkara said:

1-8. I shall describe the criminal laws by (enforcing) which an elevated position is attained by a king. You know that (the weight of) three barley (grains) is (equal to) one berry seed. (The weight of) a black gram would be that of five berries. O Rāma! It is said that sixty berries (make up) a half of one karṣa (weight). O Rāma! A suvarṇa (weight) is said to be (equal to) sixteen blackgrams. Four suvarṇas make up one niṣka and ten niṣkas one dharaṇa. These are the measures of weight (used) in (weighing) copper, silver and gold. O Rāma! Kāṛṣika is said to be kāṛṣāpaṇa by coppersmiths well-versed (with the same). Two hundred and fifty paṇas are remembered to be
the sāhasa first. The middle one is known to be (equal
to) five (hundred pānas) and the foremost one as one thousand
(pānas). (These are the three kinds of punishments). If a per-
son tells ‘I have been robbed’, when he has not been robbed by
the thieves and is handed over to the king, such a person should
be punished by making to pay the same amount. One who tells
differently or falsely (about the exact amount robbed), both
these should be levied double the punishment by the king.
The men belonging to the three castes (other than brahmins)
who bear false witness should be levied punishment. A brahmin
(bearing false witness) should be expelled. The above punish-
ment has not been prescribed (in that case). One who enjoys
(a property) entrusted with him should be levied a fine of equal
value.

9-11. O Righteous one! (The same fine should be levied)
in the case of clothes etc. (being used similarly). One would
not swerve from righteousness by such an act. One who
conceals the entrusted property and one who asks for restoration
of things without having entrusted the same (to some one)
should be punished like robbers or levied double the fine.
One who sells away another’s property unknowingly is free of
fault. But (one who sells another’s property) knowing (that it
belongs to another) deserves punishment as for a robber. One
who receives the price for a work and does not give goods, is
indeed punishable.

12. The king should levy a fine of one suvarṇa for one who
promises (to give something) and does not give. One who accepts
payment and does not do the work should be levied a fine of
eight kṛṣṇalas.

13-22. But (a master) dismissing a servant before (the
end of) the term should be punished with the same fine. One
who has a remorse after buying or selling something may return
to its master or take from him within ten days (as the case may
be). Neither one can receive nor return after ten days (in such
a deal). Any person receiving or returning (such a property
after that) should be levied a fine of six hundred (pānas) by the
king. One who solicits a girl for a bridegroom, should be levied
a fine of two hundred (pānas) by the king whether the marriage
has been done or not. One who gives in marriage a girl who had
already been married to another should be punished by a king.
The fine of \emph{uttama sāhasa} (one thousand \emph{panas}) (should be levied) in that case. One who enters into a solemn agreement (with a person for sale) and sells it to another person out of greed deserves to be punished with six hundred (\emph{panas}). The keeper (of a cow-shed) not restoring the cow (to the owner) after receiving the charges for the upkeep should be punished by the king with one hundred (\emph{panas}) and a \emph{swarna} if not taken proper care (of the entrusted animal). Land to the extent of one hundred \emph{dhanus} (one \emph{dhanu} is equal to four cubits) should be set apart around the village and twice or thrice as much around a city (for the grazing of the cows). It should be made in such a way that a camel would not be able to look over (the encircling wall). When the (stored) grains have not been enclosed and were lost there would be no punishment. One who frightens (the owner) of a house, tank, garden or land and takes the same should be punished with five hundred (\emph{panas}). (If it is done) inadvertently the fine (would be) two hundred (\emph{panas}). All those who break the boundaries should be punished with the first \emph{sāhasa}.

23-25. O Rāma! A \emph{kṣatriya} censuring a brahmin deserves to be punished with (a fine of) one hundred \emph{panas}, a \emph{vaisya}, two hundred \emph{panas} and a \emph{śūdra}, a capital punishment. A brahmin having censured a \emph{kṣatriya} should be punished with (a fine of) fifty (\emph{panas}), (having censured) a \emph{vaisya}, twentyfive (\emph{panas}) and (having censured) a \emph{śūdra}, twelve (\emph{panas}). A \emph{vaisya} (having censured) a \emph{kṣatriya} should get (punishment to pay) the first (class of) \emph{sāhasa}. A \emph{śūdra} having censured a \emph{kṣatriya} should be getting (the punishment of) severing the tongue.

26-27. A \emph{śūdra} giving moral instruction to brahmins is liable for punishment. One who preaches falsely the doctrines of scriptures should be levied (a fine of) twice the \emph{sāhasa}. One who insults men of respect should be (meted the punishment of) \emph{uttama sāhasa}. But the above described punishments should be half if the crimes have been done inadvertently or for fun.

28. One who accuses his mother or father or elder brother or father-in-law or the preceptor should be levied a fine of one hundred (\emph{panas}). (The same punishment should be levied) for obstructing the pathway of the preceptor.

29. One of a lower caste should without enquiry be severed

\footnote{See verse 4, pp. 588-589.}
of the organ by which he had done harm to a member of the
(three) higher castes.

30-31. The king should cause the lips to be cut off if a
person spits on the ground with pride. Similarly, one passing
urine or faeces on the body (of a brahmin) (should be punished
by cutting the) penis and the anus respectively. If a member
of a low caste had occupied the seat of a member of a higher
caste, his lower organ (buttocks) should be cut. One who causes
injury to any organ of another (should be punished by cut-
ting the same organ (of the offender).

32. The killers of a cow, elephant, horse or camel should
have their legs and hands cut off. One who would make a tree
barren deserves the fine of a suitara.

33-36. When the pathway or a boundary or the tank has
been cut (by a person he) should be levied double the (above)
fine. One who either wilfully or unintentionally takes away the
articles of another should restore it to him to satisfy him and pay
the fine to the king. One who steals the rope or the pot from the
well and damages the channel should be punished for a month
(with imprisonment). One should be punished (similarly) if
he beats an animal. The punishment for stealing ten pitchers
full of paddy is more than death. The punishment (for stealing)
more than that (quantity) would be eleven times (the former).
Capital punishment (should be ordered for stealing) gold, silver
etc. (and for kidnapping) men and women.

37. The organ with which one would steal from others
should be removed by the king for the sake of discipline.

38-39. A brahmin taking little (quantity of) vegetables and
grains etc. (for his use without the knowledge of the owner)
would not be a criminal. (Similarly) in the case of taking for the
cows or gods (one would not be a criminal). One who attempts
to kill another, should be killed.

40. One who seizes the house or field (belonging to another,)
one who copulates with another's wife, one who is an incendiary
and one who administers poison should be killed. So also in
the case of one who attacks with a drawn weapon.

41-42. A king should kill those who cause the death of
cattle by magic spells. One should not converse with another's
wife and should never copulate with a forbidden (woman). A
girl choosing her husband herself should not be punished by
the king. A man of the lower caste holding incest with a woman of the higher caste deserves to be killed. The woman who breaks her faith in the husband, should be made to be bitten by dogs. A woman defiled by a man of her own caste should be made to live on a morsel of food (a day).

43-47. A woman defiled by one of the superior (caste) should have her head shaved. A brahmin copulating with a vaisy woman and a ksatriya going to a woman of the low caste (should be fined) with the first (variety of fine). A ksatriya and a vaisy are punishable for going to a sūdra woman. If a courtesan after having received a contract, goes to another on account of greed, she should pay (the first one), twice the contracted amount and (pay) twice the amount as fine. One’s wife, sons, servants, pupil and brother having done an offence should be beaten with a rope or with a piece of bamboo A thief should be struck on the back but not on the forehead. One would acquire sin (by doing so) (by striking on the forehead). The officers in charge of protecting the people seizing very much should be banished (from the kingdom) after having seized all their (property).

48. Those who have been employed to do certain work if do not do the work of their employers, the king should make those shameless, cruel-minded to be penniless.

49. Likewise the king should banish the minister or justice after having taken the entire (property) for doing the work of another (king).

50. If one violates the bed of the preceptor, (mark of) female generative organ should be made (on the forehead), a pot of wine in case of drinking of wine, a dog in case of stealing and the head of a person in the case of killing a brahmin.

51. The king should kill (criminals belonging to) sūdra and other (communities) and banish the brahmin sinners. The wealth belonging to great sinners should be offered to (god) Varuṇa (God of righteousness).

52. (A king) should kill all those who offer shelter, food and wealth to thieves in the villages also.

53-54. The feudatory chiefs and the governors of provinces in the kingdom who are sinful should be killed. The king should place on the pike after having cut the arms of those thieves who commit theft in the night after having agreed (to show good
conduct). The king should kill those who break tanks and temples.

55. One should be levied (a fine of) a kārsāpaṇa for having committed nuisance on the thoroughfare when there was no adversity and be made to clean the impurity.

56-59. One who breaks his contract every month should pay (a fine of) five hundred (pañās) to the party concerned (Merchants), dealing fraudulently with honest men in respect of the price (of a commodity), should be punished with the first or the middle (kind of) fine. The king should confiscate all goods from the obstructing merchants by (paying) small sum and punish them with the uttama (variety of) sāhasa separately. One who adulterates the materials and who sells imitation articles should be given the middle (kind of) punishment. One who makes contraband goods (should be made to pay) uttama (sāhasa). One who insults in a quarrel should be given the punishment of twice that (amount).

60-64. A fine of kṛṣṇāla¹ (should be collected) from a brahmin or a śūdra who eats the forbidden food. One who makes false balance and weight and those who make use of these should be levied the uttama (kind of) fine. The women who administers poison to her husband or preceptor, or a brahmin and children or sets fire to the house should be banished (from the country) with cows after having cut her ears, hands and nose. Those men who damage a land or house or village or forest and one who seduces the wife of the king should be burnt with the fire from the cremation ground. One who copies the royal edict omitting or adding (some sentences) and one who sets free an adulterer and a thief should be punished with the uttama (sāhasa) fine. The punishment for one who ascends the vehicle or the seat of the king is the uttama sāhasa.

65-66. If one thinks that he has not been defeated even though he has duly been defeated, (the king) should defeat him again and inflict double-fold punishment. One who summons a person that had not done any crime should be put to death. If an accused person escapes from the custody of the punisher on account of the latter's carelessness, that punisher should pay the fine.

¹. See the first verse, p. 588.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND TWENTYEIGHT

Instructions relating to military expedition

Puṣkara said:

1. When a king is attacked by a strong enemy and he thinks "I have been attacked", he should undertake the military expedition.

2. If the (king thinks that the) warriors had been well-cared for and the servants well supported and he feels, "I have a strong army and I am capable of protecting the central (army)", he should go with them and move into the camp.

3-5. Otherwise one may invade (the country of) the enemy when it (the latter's country) is afflicted by natural calamities such as the appearance of the earthquake in that direction or the comet afflicting it or the army of the enemy king dislikes that king and awaits his ruin. One should enter the kingdom of the enemy when he has auspicious throbbing (of the muscles) of the body, has good dreams and good omens. One should employ an army consisting largely of infantry etc. and elephants in the rainy season.

6. In the early and advanced winter it should consist of chariots and cavalry, while it should consist of four divisions of an army (cavalry, infantry etc.) in the spring and autumn.

7. An army consisting of a large number of infantry would always win the enemies. The throbbing (of the muscles) on the right side (of the body) would be commendable.

8. So also the palpitation on the left back and the heart and mark of mole (on the left side) should be known as not commendable. While the contrary to what has been told on the left side would be auspicious for women.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND TWENTYNINE

The significance of dreams

Puškara said:

1-14. I shall describe the good and bad omens and the way to prevent bad dreams. The growth of grass and trees on one's body except the navel, the breaking of bronze on the head, the shaving (of the head), remaining nude, clad in torn dress, anointing with oil, besmear with mud, falling from a great height, one's marriage, music, playing on the lute or any other stringed instrument, swinging in a hammock, gathering lotus and metals, killing of serpents, seeing red flowers and trees and a cāndāla, riding a pig or dog or ass or camel, eating the flesh of birds, and the oil of kṛṣara (?) entering the mother's womb, getting into the funeral pyre, the fall of the flag-post etc., the fall of the moon and the sun, seeing the divine beings of the terrestrial and celestial regions as well as a calamity (such as the earthquake), the wrath of the divine beings, brahmans, other beings and preceptors, dancing, laughing, marriage and singing, playing on stringed instruments other than the lute, drowning in a river, bathing in water mixed with cow-dung, or muddy water or water mixed with ink, embracing the unmarried girls, sexual union of men, injury to one's limbs, purging or vomiting, starting in the direction of the south, being afflicted by diseases, plucking of fruits, breaking of diseases, breaking of minerals, falling of buildings, sweeping the house, playing with goblins, flesh-eaters, monkeys and low-caste men, insult from others and feeling grief on account of that, wearing ochre robes and playing in that dress, immersion in oil and drinks anointing with red unguent are inauspicious omens and it is better not to describe them.

15-18. (After dreaming as above) one should continue to sleep, bathe, worship a brahmin, do oblations with sesamum, worship (gods) Hari (Viṣṇu), Brahmā, Śiva, Sun and Gaṇapati (Viṇāyaka). Then one should recite hymns (on gods) and repeat hymns such as the Puruṣasūkta\(^1\). The dreams dreamt in the first quarter of the night yield results within a year, the second (quarter), within six months, the third quarter of the

1. RV. 10.91.1.
night, within three months, the fourth (quarter), within a fortnight and within ten days (if dreamt) at (the time of) the sunrise. If (two dreams) either auspicious or inauspicious (were dreamt) on the same night, one should indicate the result of the dream dreamt later.

19-22. Hence, it is not commended to sleep after a good dream (has been dreamt). (Dreaming) as climbing a hill, mansion, elephant, horse or bull is beneficial. O Brahmin! (Seeing) trees and white flowers in the sky (seeing) the navel as grown with trees, (seeing oneself) as having many arms and many heads, (seeing) the appearance of grey hair, bearing a garland of white (flowers), wearing white garment, the eclipses of the moon, sun and the stars, washing (oneself), embracing the flag-post and the raising of the banner (are good).

23-27. O Brahmin! Seizing of land and stream of water, victory over the enemies, success in dispute, dice-play and battle, eating of raw meat and drinking of sweet porridge, seeing blood, bathing in blood, drinking of spirituous liquor, blood and wine, drinking of milk, making marks with the weapons on the earth, (seeing) the clear sky, and sucking milk from cows, she-buffalos, lionesses, she-elephants and mares are commendable. O Brahmin! The favour from the gods, brahmmins and preceptors, the anointment with water and falling down from the horns of cow (are also commendable).

28-29. O Rāma! (The dream) as falling down from the horns of a moon is known to be capable of bestowing kingdom. The installation as the sovereign, the cutting of one’s head, the death, the destruction of one’s house by fire, the gain of royal rewards and the play on stringed instruments (are auspicious).

30-31. The family of a person flourishes that sees an elephant or horse or gold or bull or cow. (Dreams of) riding a bull or an elephant, the climbing a peak or a tree, weeping, besmeared with ghee or excreta, copulating with a forbidden women, (seeing) a white cloth, clear waters, tree laden with fruits and clear sky (are good augury).
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND THIRTY

The inauspicious auguries

Puṣkara said:

1-4. Mixtures of herbs and black cereals are inauspicious, Cotton, grass, dried cow-dung, wealth, charcoal, molasses and resin, one having a shaven head or one that has besmeared oil (for bathing) and one that is nude, iron, mud, hide and hair, a lunatic, an eunuch, a cāndala, a dog, an outcaste and others, men guarding the captives, a pregnant woman, widow and oil-cake, etc., dead (body), husk, ash, skull and bone and broken vessel are not commendable (to be seen). The sounds of musical instruments that are broken, frightening and harsh are also not commendable.

5. The sound ‘come on’, (heard) in front of the person undertaking a journey) is commendable, (while) that from behind is not (commendable).

6-7. The undesirable sounds (such as) “Where do you go”, ‘Stand’, ‘Do not go’, ‘What is there for you by going’ are for death. So also (the appearance of) carnivorous animals, banners etc., the fall of vehicles etc., the breaking of weapons, dashing of the head against the door etc., and the fall of umbrella, dress etc., (are not commendable).

8. An inauspicious (augury) gets destroyed by the worship and invocation of lord Hari (Viṣṇu). If a second inauspicious augury is seen (while setting out) then one should re-enter the house.

9-13. White flowers are excellent augury. (So also) a pitcher full (of water) is greatly meritorious. Meat, fish, a distant sound, an old man, an animal, goat, cows, horses, elephants, (images of) gods, glowing flame, dūrūḍa (grass), wet cow-dung, courtesan, gold, silver, gem, vacā, white mustard, herbs, beans, weapons, sword, umbrella, throne, insignia of royalty, a dead body without (being followed by) mourners, fruit, ghee, curd, milk, unbroken rice, mirror, honey, conch, sugarcane, auspicious sentence, the instrumental music of the devotee, the loud sound of thunder and lightning are all auspicious. The satisfaction in the mind (of the person undertaking a journey is also auspicious.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND THIRTYONE

The good and bad auguries known from the sounds of animals and birds

Puṣkara said:

1. Birds let us know the good and bad indications for a man staying or leaving a country or town or (putting) a question.

2. All excited sounds are pointed out to indicate evil according to fortune-tellers and cooing sounds are said to indicate good results by fortune-tellers.

3. The excitement of birds are said to be of six kinds based on the divisions of time, direction, place, karaṇa (a division of the day), the sound and the species (of the bird).

4-6. Each preceding (item in the above list) should be known as more powerful. The nocturnal (bird) moving in the day-time and that of the day-time moving in the night (are known to be the excitement in time). One should know the malefic asterisms, ascendants and planets also as excited. It is known to be dhūmitā (obscured), jvalitā (burning) and aṅgāritā (burnt) if the sun goes to or stays or leaves (a particular quarter). These three are remembered to be the excited ones and the gentle (cooings) are of five kinds.

7-9. It is said to be agitated bird if it makes an excited sound in the direction that is (termed) agitated. Similar (appellations should be given) to wild (birds making sound) in the village and the village(birds) in the forest as well as on an inauspicious tree. O Foremost brahmin ! The deśadīpta (agitation in respect of a place) is known to be in inauspicious place. It is designated as kriyādīpta (excitement in respect of an action) if there is any action improper for one’s own species. It is said to be the rutadīpta (excitement in respect of sound) making broken and harsh sounds. It is known to be the jātidīpta (excitement in respect of the species) in the case of the carnivorous species alone.

10. If the excited characteristics of different categories occur together it is stated to be good. If they are mixed the result is said to be mixed.

11. The cows, horses, camels, asses, dogs, (birds) sārikā, small house-lizards, sparrows, vultures and tortoises and others are said to be living in the villages.
12. Goats, black sheep, parrots, elephants, pig, buffalo and crow are said to be both domestic and wild. All other (birds and animals) are wild.

13. The cat and the cock are both domestic and wild. We know about them from the change in their characteristics.

14-16. The snakes, peacocks, ruddy geese, mules, pigeons, cows, light-brown horses, wild cocks, hawks, jackals, wag-tails, monkeys, sataghna (?), sparrows, cuckoos, blue jays, hawks, kapinjala¹ the three, tittiri (francolines partridge), peacocks, pigeons, wag-tails, gallinules, parrots, cranes, cocks, skylarks and deer are known to be moving about during daytime.

17. The fowlers, owls, sarabha-s,² curlews, hares, turtles, jackals and pingalikas (a kind of owl) are said to be nocturnal.

18-19. Ganders, deer, cats, mongoose, bears, serpents, red dogs, lions, tigers, camels, domestic boars, men, dogs, porcupines, bulls, jackals, wolves, cuckoos, cranes, horses, men in ragged clothes and alligators wander day and night.

20. The above seen in a group in front (of the king) making an expedition with the forces are stated to bring victory and seen on the back cause defeat.

21-22. If the blue jay comes out of the house and makes the sound remaining in front, it indicates humiliation for the king and (making sound) on the left (indicates) quarrel and gaining food. It being sighted on the vehicle or on the right side of the body are commended. The peacock making an unusual sound conveys plundering by thieves.

23-29. O Râma! a deer (seen) in front of one that has set out would be (indicating) danger to life. O Râma! The bears, rats, jackals, tigers, lions, cats and asses (running away) in the opposite direction as well as mule braying strangely (would indicate the same result). The kapinjala (bird) (seen) on the left or right is an excellent (augury). But it does not augur well (if seen) on the back. The tittiri (bird) (in any one of the above positions) is not commended. The black deer, boars and spotted antelopes crossing from the left to the right would always be beneficial and the contrary (movements) are condemned. The bulls, horses, jackals, tigers, lions, cats and asses are known to

¹ The citaka bird that is said to drink water directly from the rains.
² A fabulous animal powerful than the lion.
confer the desired results if they move to the left from the right. The vixen, *tyāmānāna* (?), *chucchā* (a kind of animal), *pīṅgalā* (a kind of owl), house alligator, sow and a female cuckoo (are said to be) male (omens) if they are on one’s left. The vulture, *rūṣa* (?) monkey, *śrīkāraṇa* (antelope), and *citkārā* (?) are known as feminine (omens). The monkey, *śrīkāraṇa*, *piptlikā*, *ruru* (a kind of deer), and hawks (auger well seen) on the right. The sounds made by the bull that is born, the serpent, hare, hog and alligator are good.

30-33. Then it is not desirable to see the monkey and bear at the commencement of a work. The strong omen from a bird as one sets out on a day should be explained by wise men as bearing result on the same day. O Brahmin! Mad ones, those concerned only with the prey, young ones, those mutually quarrelling and those separated by a distance should be known to bear no effect. The vixen howling alone or in groups of two or three or four forebode good. It is said to be not beneficial if five or six (vixen howl). It would be good if seven (vixen howl) and there would be no effect if more than that.

34. The volcano facing the sun that causes the horripilation in men should be known to bring ill luck to vehicles and increase the fear.

35-36. When an antelope is seen at a good place it would give good results. It would give bad results for the whole year for the man (if seen) at a bad (place). One may know the result for himself for the whole year as he had seen the deer on the first day.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND THIRTYTWO

Omens known from birds

Puṣkara said:

1. An army would take possession of a city that is under siege by that way through which many crows enter that city.

2. It indicates unfordable fear if a crow taking its abode in the place of the army goes about cawing with agitation and fear.
3. If (the crow) pecks at the shadow, body, vehicle, shoes, umbrella and clothes and other things (of a person, it indicates) death (for that person). If it honours (the person, he) will be honoured. If it gives something that it is fond of, (it augurs) good.

4-6. A crow going to and fro at the entrance (to a house, indicates) the return of the absentee owner of the house. It indicates destruction by fire (if the crow) throws a red or burnt thing inside the house. A red (thing) placed (by the crow) in front of a person indicates imprisonment. O Bhārgava (son of Bhṛgu), if (a crow) brings (to the house) a yellow substance, gold or silver, it would indicate the gain of that (substance). So also one should indicate the loss of that thing which (a crow) should take away.

7. (If a crow) vomits raw flesh in front (of a house) there would be gain of wealth. (There would be) gain of land if (a piece of) earth is thrown. (There would be gain of kingdom if a great gem is cast.

8. If the crow (flies) favourably to the person who undertakes a journey it bids welfare and he would be able to accomplish his task. But if (it flies) against him it should be known that the task would not be accomplished and would cause fear.

9. If the crow comes cawing loudly against (the person) it would be an impediment to the journey. A crow on the left is considered to be beneficial and causing destruction of the task if on the right.

10. (If the crow flies) on the left in the direction (of the person undertaking a journey), it is excellent and medium if on the right. (If it flies) against the direction of the traveller on the left, it would cause impediment to the movement.

11. If the crow comes to the house when the traveller is beginning to move it should be known that he can set out. (If a crow) stands on one leg and looks at the sun with a single eye it causes fear.

12. (If a crow) makes its habitat in a hollow of a tree there would be great misfortune. A crow (seen) in the saline soil is not for good. But (the same seen) as having its wings with mud is commendable.

13. A crow (seen) as having its mouth full of excreta accom-
plishes all things. O Son of Bhṛgu! The other birds should also be known as (indicating the same results) as the crow.

14-20. Dogs (howling) on the right of a royal camp (indicate) the destruction of the brahmins. If they howl at the place of Indra in the palace, at the main entrance to the royal city and inside the house, it would augur the death of the lord of the house. It indicates the accomplishment of the task, if (a dog smells the left side of the body (of a man) and fear if (it smells) the right side of the body and the left arm. A dog coming against the traveller would be adverse to the journey. O Bhārgava (son of Bhṛgu)! (a dog) obstructing the path (of a traveller) indicates robbers on the way. (A dog) holding a piece of bone in the mouth (being seen in front indicates) fruitlessness (of the effort). Similarly (a dog being seen) holding a rope or rag in the mouth is sinful. (A dog being seen) as holding the shoes as well as full of meat in the mouth is also beneficial. (A dog being seen) as holding the hair or any filthy substance in the mouth is inauspicious. (A dog) urinating and going in front (of the traveller) would bring fear. If (one sees a dog) urinating and going to an auspicious place or tree or to an auspicious substance (it indicates) the accomplishment of the task for that person. O Rāma (Paraśurāma)! Jackals and other (animals) should also be known (to indicate) the same (result) as a dog.

21. The lowing of the cows should be known as auguring fear for the master. (If a cow lows) in the night it would be indicating fear from thieves. (If it) wails (it forebodes) death.

22. If a bull bellows in the night it would be for the welfare of the master. A bull let loose in the night would confer victory on the king.

23. The cows belonging to a person that were given as gift (indicate) security (if found) eating (as they wish). (The cows) that had withheld showing affection to the calves are known to be (indicating) miscarriage (in the family).

24. (The cows) that pound the earth with their feet and are frightened bring fear. (The cows) that have wet skin, horripilation and earth stuck to the horns are auspicious.

25-31. It should be told in the same way in the case of the she-buffalos and others by those knowing (the science). A saddled horse (being seen) as ridden by another (other than the appointed person) forebodes evil. (A horse being seen) as plung-
ing into the water and tumbling over the ground is not desirable. A horse that (is seen) sleeping without a good cause causes misfortune. (If a horse) has aversion to barley and balls (of grains) all of a sudden it is not commended. Bleeding from the mouth and trembling of the body are also not commended. (If a horse) plays with cranes, pigeons and the sārikās (a species of birds), one should indicate death. A horse licking the leg with the tongue with tear-filled eyes forebodes ruin. (If a horse) scratches the earth with the left foot or sleeps during the day (lying) on the left side, it does not confer good. The horse that passes urine once (a day), that is looking drowsy, does not allow to be ridden and that returns home frantically if ridden upon, indicates impediment for the journey. (It indicates the same result) if it touches the left side (of its body). (The horse) that neighs (on seeing) the enemy warrior and touching its leg brings victory.

32-35. If an elephant courts (openly) in a village it would ruin the country. If a she-elephant after delivering a calf runs amuck (it forebodes) the death of the king. (If an elephant) does not allow itself to be ridden or frantically returns home after being ridden or ichor flows from the elephant, it foretells the death of the king. (An elephant) crossing its left foot with its right foot and entwining its right tusk with its trunk is auspicious. A bull or a horse or an elephant entering the enemy forces is inauspicious. If clouds get broken (suddenly) and rain excessively, (the king) would get his army routed.

36. The tumbling down of the umbrella at the time of a travel or during the war on account of adverse asterisms and planetary conditions or the wind blowing against (the forces) forebodes fear.

37. Contended men and favourable planets are the characteristics for (foreboding) victory. The warriors being attacked by the crows and demons (forebodes) the destruction of the army. The east, west, north-east and north are the excellent and auspicious directions.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND THIRTYTHREE

The propitious periods for undertaking an expedition

Puṣkara said:

1-3. I shall describe all kinds of journeys relating to a sovereign. A journey should be abandoned when the Venus has set or is in a weak house or debilitated or in the house of an enemy or retrograde or malefic. One should avoid a journey when the Mercury is retrograde, the presiding planet of the quarter or any other planet (in a similar position), is under the vaidyṛti, vyatipāta, nāga, šakuna, catuśpada and kintughna.

4. One should avoid undertaking journey under (the influence of) vipat (tāra), naidhana, pratyari, as well as the janma, the gandā and the void lunar day.

5. The north and the east are said to be having the same virtues. In the same way the west and south are of the same virtues.

6. One should not cross the obstacle that has risen from the north-west to the south-east. Sundays, Mondays and Saturdays are not auspicious (for a journey).

7-10. (The asterisms) kṛttikā and others (for journey) in the east, (the asterisms) māghā and others (for journey) in the south, (the asterisms) anurādhā and others (for journey) in the west and (the asterisms) jyeṣṭhā and others (for journey) in the north are all commendable. I shall describe the measure of the shadows (cast by the sun on different days. It is said to be twenty for the Sun, sixteen for the Moon, fifteen for the Mars, fourteen for the Mercury, thirteen for the Jupiter, twelve for the Venus and eleven for the Saturn. These are said (to be valid) for all actions. One should not set out on a journey under his native ascendant and in the direction of the rainbow.

11. One should march on an expedition after meditating on lord Hari for victory if the omens and other things are good. I shall describe the circle (of twelve primary kings) to be thought about that would offer protection to the king.

1. This and the next one are among the twenty-seven yogas or combinations.
2. This and the following three are some of the eleven divisions of a day called karaṇas.
3. This and the next three are the astral indications.
4. This is one of the twentyseven yogas.
12. A kingdom is said to consist of seven constituents—the king, minister, fort, treasury, punishment (law), allies and township.

13. One should destroy all those who obstruct (the normal course) of the seven constituents of a kingdom. Efforts should be made by the king to make all these circles develop.

14-15. The kingdom over which a king exercises direct control would be the first circle. The feudatories of that kingdom should be known as the enemies. If they are attached (to the paramount lord they) should be known as friends. The next (circle is) the allies of the enemy. The next (circle) should be known as the ally of the ally. The next (circle would be) the enemy of the ally of the ally.

16-20. Those in front have been described. Tell me those who are behind. Then there would be the enemy in the rear. A king whose kingdom lies next but one is said to be the next one (friend in rear). A hostile king would be the next one (friend of the rear enemy). That which is adjacent to the former is said to be the next one (friend of rear friend). O Brahmin! This is (the way of maintaining order) by an independent king that has an enemy and is desirous of conquering (the same). O Excellent among men! It is not possible to declare that it is settled. One is said to be an intermediary that is capable of punishing and favouring. A mighty king that would be able to punish and favour all is said to be neutral. No one is really one’s enemy or ally. One is an enemy or an ally on account of some reason. I have described these twelve circles relating to a king.

21-25. Enemies are known to be of three kinds—ancestral, personal and artificial. Each one of the preceding class among them are (known to be) stronger (than the succeeding ones). One that is a personal enemy is considered by me as artificial. An enemy in the rear of an enemy and his hostiles would be one’s friends. A king should subdue his hostile king in the rear by means of strategies. The ancient authorities commend the extinction of an enemy with (the help of) an ally. An ally may become an enemy after being a feudal. A king wishing to vanquish an enemy should himself destroy him if it is possible for him to do. There will not be any fear from an enemy when the glory is waxing. A king desiring to conquer righteously should exercise
control over the world in such a way that the people do not feel
grief-stricken and trust him.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND THIRTYFOUR

The six expedients used by the king

Puṣkara said:

1. I have already described (the political expedients of) conciliatory measures, creating dissensions, bribery (to win the enemy) and punishment. I have described the punishment (to be made by the king) in his own country. I shall (now) describe (the punishment to be meted to a person living) in a foreign country.

2. Punishment is said to be of two types—public and private. Public punishment (consists of) looting and the destruction of villages (of the enemy country), destruction of the food grains and setting fire. (The private punishment consists of) killing by poisoning or setting fire or by engaging several men, dishonouring pious men and poisoning waters.

3-7. O Bhārgava (son of Bhṛgu)! I have described the mode of executing the punishment. Listen! I shall describe when (the king) should be indifferent. A king should make peace (with his enemy) if he thinks that by his battle in the battle-field there would be bad consequences. One may be indifferent (when he would find) the conciliatory measures as securing the position (of the enemy), paying a bribe would be squandering money and creating dissension would have punishment as the consequence. One may resort to indifference (if he is sure) that 'this person is not capable of doing any harm to me' and 'I am not capable of causing any harm to him'. In that case the king should humiliate the enemy (by being indifferent).

8-14. I shall describe the strategies of illusion (to be practised by a king). The enemy should be agitated by false portents by sending extensive lighted torches (tied to) the tails of strong birds in the camp of the enemy. Then the fall of the meteor should be shown to them. In this way many other portents also should be shown. The enemies should thus be agitated by
different (kinds of) deception. The astrologers and ascetics should proclaim the fall of the enemy. A king that desires to conquer the earth should agitate others by the above (proclamation). The favour of gods should also be proclaimed to others. A king should declare (to his men) “We have received increased strength and you strike without fear; all others have been routed”, when the battle has begun. War-cry and great commotion should be made saying that the enemy has been routed. (It should also be proclaimed); “The king has been blessed by the gods profusely and is ready for the battle”. I shall describe Indrajāla (a kind of stratagem in war).

15. A king should exhibit the four divisions of the army (such as the infantry, cavalry, men mounted on elephants and chariots) (to delude the enemy) that the gods had sent them for aid. Showers of blood should be shed on the enemy.

16. Severed heads of the enemy should be exhibited on (the terrace of) palaces. I shall describe six expedients, among which war and peace are most excellent.

17. Making peace, war, expedition, halt, seeking shelter and duplicity are said to be the six expedients.

18-25. Making peace is known to be a treaty. War is offending (the enemy). Expedition is said to be the march against the enemy by the one that desires to conquer. It is said to be ‘the halt’ when (a king) remains in his own territory (mobilising his forces) for the war. Mobilisation of half the army in the enemy country is said to be ‘seeking shelter’. It is said to be duplicity on account of resorting to indifference or neutral position. A king should seek a treaty with an equal (person) or not of lower strength and more powerful. A powerful king should make a war with (a king of) inferior strength. In that case he should take a stronger (king) as an ally when he is not having an enemy in the rear. A king should mobilise his army when he could easily intercept the work of the enemy, though he is not free from an enemy in the rear. One who is strong enough could mobilise half of his army in the territory of the enemy even though he may have an enemy in the rear. An alliance with another king is said to be the worst of all expedients a king fighting with a stronger adversary is compelled to do. It is said to bring many a long and tedious marches, loss of many lives and expenditure. A king should have an alliance only when he would
have great benefits later. Moreover, he should have an alliance only when he has been deprived of all his strength.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND THIRTYFIVE

The daily duties of a king

Puṣkara said:

1-2. I shall describe the perpetual daily duties of the king. The king should put an end to his sleep with the songs and music of the panegyrist when two muhūrtas (fortyeight minutes) are still left in the night. He should then see spies in such a way that they are not known as his own men by anybody.

3. He should then hear the report about the income and expenditure as laid down. After having eased, the king should go to the bath-room.

4. The king should then bathe preceded by cleansing the teeth. After having done the twilight worship and the repetition (of the sacred syllables) (the king) should worship lord Vāsudeva (Viṣṇu’s manifestation as Kṛṣṇa).

5. He should then offer unto the fire holy (twigs). Libations should be offered to the ancestors. Accompanied by the blessings of brahmans, he should then give a cow (as gift) together with gold.

6. He should then see his face in the mirror after having adorned himself and besmeared (his body with sandal-paste). (He should also then see his face in clarified butter kept together with gold. The king should then hear about (the nature of) the day etc.

7. (He should then take) medicines prescribed by the physicians. He should then touch the auspicious things. He should then see the preceptor and go to the court after having been blessed by him.

8. O Fortunate one! He should then see brahmans, ministers, counsellors and others presented by the door-keeper.

9-13. After having heard the traditional history and things to be done, he should determine the business (to be done). He
should then look into civil disputes and have counsel with the counsellors. He should not have the counsel with a single person or with many or ignorant men or untrustworthy men. He should also not make public the secret (counsel). The counsel he had should be given effect to promptly so that the state may not get affected. The secret counsel is considered to be guarded well by a king by his postures. Wise men gather secrets from the postures of others. A king gets prosperity by following the words of astrologers, physicians and counsellors, because they sustain the king. After having had the counsel (he should do) physical exercises with discs, chariot and weapon.

14. He should then bathe in tanks not inhabited by living creatures and see lord Viṣṇu that has already been worshipped. He should then see fire into which oblations have been made and also see brahmins that have been worshipped well.

15-17. After having adorned himself he should take food after having fed beings and after having tested the food duly. After having taken food, he should chew betels and rest lying on the left. He should then have inquiry in the sacred texts. After having met the warriors and seen the granary and the armoury he should do the evening twilight worship. He should then think of the tasks to be done, send spies, eat food and spend time in the harem with instrumental music and being guarded by others. A king should do thus daily.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND THIRTY-SIX

The rites preceding the march of a king

Puṣkara said:

1-5. I shall describe rites to be performed before commencing a march. When a march of a king has to begin after seven days, (lords) Hari (Viṣṇu) and Śambhu (Śiva) should be worshipped as well as lord Vināyaka (the elephant-faced god, lord of impediments) with sweet balls and other things (on the first day). After having worshipped the guardian (deities) of (different) directions, (the priest) should lie
down (on a bed). He should then worship gods either (remaining) on the bed or in front of them. He should then think of Manu. "Obeisance O Śambhu (conferer of good) ! to the three-eyed, dreadful and conferer of boons. Obeisance to the dwarf (manifestation of lord Viṣṇu), the formless lord of dreams. O Master ! Lord of the lords ! Bearer of the trident ! One riding the bull ! O Eternal one ! Let me know in my dream while I sleep, the good or evil (to befall me). (The impressions) in the waking state (maybe driven) far away." The priest should thus utter these sacred syllables (on the second day).

6. He should worship the guardian (deities) of the quarters, Rudras and the lords of directions on the third day, the planets on the fourth day and the two Aśvins (divine physicians) on the fifth day.

7-14. Then (the gods on the way (of expedition) and the sacred rivers (presided over) by those gods should be worshipped. Offerings (should be made) to gods dwelling in heavens, atmosphere and earth. The group of goblins and (gods) Vāsudeva and others should be worshipped in the night. (Worship should be) made to (goddesses) Bhadrakāli and Śrī. One should pray to all gods. "May gods Vāsudeva, Saṅkarṣaṇa, Pradyumna and Aniruddha, Nārāyaṇa (Viṣṇu), Abjaja (born in the lotus, Brahmā), Viṣṇu, Nārasimha (manifestation of lord Viṣṇu), the boar (manifestation of lord Viṣṇu), O Rāma ! Śiva, Iśa (Iśāna), Tatpuruṣa, Aghora, Satyaja, the Sun, Moon, Mars, Mercury, Jupiter, Venus, Saturn, Rāhu, (the ascending node of Moon), Ketu (descending node of Moon), Gaṇapati (lord of goblins), Senānī (son of Śiva and Pārvati) (leader of the celestials against the demon Tāraka), (goddesses) Caṇḍikā, Umā (consort of Śiva), Lakṣmī (consort of Viṣṇu), Sarasvatī (goddess of speech), Durgā a form of Pārvati), Brahmāṇī (consort of Brahmā), the Rudras (forms of Śiva, eleven in number), (the celestials) Indra and others such as the

1. This and the preceding three are the four forms of lord Viṣṇu.
2. This and the next four are the five forms of Śiva.
3. Obviously a mistake for Sadyaja denoting Sadyojāta.
Fire-god, serpents, Tārkṣya (Eagle, vehicle of lord Viṣṇu) and other celestials dwelling in heavens, atmosphere and earth be for my victory. Let them crush the enemies in the battle after having accepted offerings (made by me). O Gods! I have sought your refuge together with sons, mother and servants. Obeisance to you! After going to the rear of the enemies destroy them. I will offer more than that I have given after returning from the battle.”

15-21. On the sixth day, the king should bathe for victory just as the bath at the coronation. Lord Trivikrama (manifestation of lord Viṣṇu as a dwarf and taking three strides humiliating king Bali) should be worshipped on the seventh (day), the day of expedition. The weapons and vehicles should be worshipped with the sacred syllables prescribed for nitrājana (rite of purification). The following sacred syllable should be uttered (in the ear of the king) with the sounds of auspiciousness and victory. “May the celestials dwelling in heaven, atmosphere and earth be bestowers of longevity on you. May the success of gods be attained by you. Let your (expedition) be the expedition of gods. May all gods protect you”. After having heard this, the king should proceed. After having taken the bow together with the arrow with (the recitation of the sacred syllable) dhanurnāga¹, (the king) should place his foot in the direction of his enemy after having repeated (the sacred syllable) tad viṣṇoh². (After having set) his right foot, he should place thirty steps in different directions such as the east in due order. He should duly climb the elephant, chariot, horse and the animal carrying the burden. After having climbed he should move on along with the sounds of musical instruments without looking back. After having gone (a distance of) a kroṣa (two or two and a half miles) he should halt and worship gods and brahmans. He should move to the foreign country protecting his own army.

22-23. After having reached the alien country (enemy’s domain) the king should protect the guardian (deity) of the country. He should worship deities and should not destroy their properties. He should not humiliate the natives of that

1. Could not be identified.
2. RV._ 1.22.20.
country. After having returned to his metropolis again after having gained victory, the king should worship gods and make gifts.

24-27. If there is a battle on the second day, the elephant, horse etc. should be bathed and lord Nṛsiṁha (manifestation of lord Viṣṇu) should be worshipped. The royal insignia such as the umbrella etc., weapons and the goblins should be worshipped) in the night. After having worshipped lord Nṛsiṁha and all vehicles in the morning, (the king) should see the sacrificial fire kindled by the priest. After having made oblations into the fire, the king should worship brahmins. After having taken the bow and arrow he should mount the elephant and move. He should walk in the country of the enemy without being noticed (by anybody) (and find) the nature (of the enemy). He should cause a small army of men spread extensively.

28-35. A small army as the mouth of a needle can stand against many. The arrangement of the army is of the form of animals and things such as the garuḍa (the king of birds), crocodile, circle, vulture, semi-circle, vaṭravyūha (a strong impenetrable array), cart (shaped), the sarvato-bhadra circular (array) and stūcivyūha (as a needle). An army in one of the above arrays should be arranged in five parts—the two composing its two principal wings, the two forming its sides to protect the wings and the fifth one would be the main body. A battle should be fought with one or two of the above parts. The remaining three parts should be stationed only for their protection. A king should never be in arrays. If the main force is destroyed, (the whole army) will be routed. A king should not himself fight. A king should remain at a kroṣa (about two or two and a quarter miles), behind the army. It is said that a broken army could be resustained by that. One's stay is not laid down if the main army has suffered a defeat. The soldiers in the array should not be set up too close or too wide apart, so that there may not be any clash of their weapons mutually.

36-43. One who wants to break the hostile army should do so only with collective strength. So also the enemy should protect it from being broken with the collective strength. That division of a hostile army among many divisions, should be
first attacked and broken through (by the commander) as he desires. O Brahmin! There should be four soldiers to guard each foot of an elephant. There should be four cavalry and an equal number of armoured soldiers for guarding a chariot. (There should be) an equal number of bow-men as the armoured soldiers in front of the armoured soldiers in the battle. Behind bow-men, the cavalry and the chariot-fighters and then the soldiers mounted on elephants should be set up by a king. He should look after the duties of the infantry, elephants and horses with effort. Bold men should be placed in front. Only a division of the army should be shown. Cowards should not be placed in front because that would break the work of driving away the enemy. The bold men remaining in the front would enthuse cowards in the battle. Men of tall stature with acquiline noses, not having squint eyes, with well-blended eyebrows, irascible, fond of quarrels, contented, happy and lustful are known to be bold.

44-48. Carrying the wounded and the dead from the battlefield, offering water to the elephants in each war, bringing weapons (to the soldiers) are said to be the work of the soldiers. Protecting their own army from the enemies desiring to break, breaking the collected force (of the enemies) are the works of armoured men. Making (the enemies) turn away from battle is the task of bow-men. It is said that the chariot of a wounded person should be led away to a distant place. It is stated that the work of the chariot-warriors is to frighten the enemy army. The duties of men mounted on elephants are to break through the collected force of the enemy, to gather soldiers got split in the army of the self and the destruction of walls, arches, battlements and trees.

49. The ground for the infantry to fight is known to be uneven and that for the cavalry and chariot as even. The battlefields for the elephants are pointed out as wet.

50-55. After having arranged the arrays thus and having the Sun behind and the Venus, Saturn, guardian deities of the quarters and the gentle breeze being favourable, all the warriors should be encouraged by repeating their names and the (achievement of their) clans (and pointing out) gain of prosperity on success and gain of heaven for the dead. After conquest over the enemies one gets pleasures. There would be supreme
position for the dead. There is no way of requital for the food taken from the master equal to (sacrificing in) the battle. They would be washed of their sins as blood flows from the bold warriors. The endurance of pain due to wounds is the excellent penance. Thousands of celestial women attend on a man killed in the battle. One's master gets (the result of) the deeds (done) by those who run away after being defeated (in battle). It is said that such people get the fruits of killing a brahmin at each one of their step. The gods would be lost for one who deserts his companions in the battle-field.

56-60. It is said that the brave who do not retreat in battle would get the benefit (of performing the sacrifice) of āsvamedha. If the king is righteous he would be victorious. He should fight with men of equal valour. Men mounted on elephants should be fought by men mounted on elephants. Retreating men, spectators, those not having weapons and those that have fallen should not be killed. One should do treacherous warfare when one is fatigued, sleeping, is crossing half the river or forest and on bad days. Raising up arms one should cry that the enemies have been defeated. "We have got the ally with abundant strength. The king (of the enemy forces) and the commander have been slain or the (hostile) king had retreated." One may kill easily the retreating warriors.

61. O One well-versed in righteousness! incense that stupefies the enemies should be burnt. The banners and other paraphernalia and the musical instruments making frightening sounds should be made use of.

62-65. After having gained victory in the battle, one should worship gods and brahmins. In a battle won by the minister, the gems (acquired by the minister) should be made over to the king. The wives of a defeated king would not belong to anyone else (but to that defeated king). The wives of the defeated king should be protected (by the conquering king). A king should honour a hostile king defeated in the battle and treat him as his own son. He should not fight with him again. He should honour the customs and manners (of that country). Then after having entered his native country, he should enter the palace when a fixed star is ruling. He should worship the deities etc. and protect the families of warriors. He should divide the booty got from the battle among his servants. The
procedure for commencing a military expedition has thus been described to you. It gives sure success for the king.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND THIRTYSEVEN

A hymn in praise of goddess Śrī (Lakṣmi) for the sake of success

Puṣkara said:

1. Indra made the prayer to (the goddess Śrī (Lakṣmi)) in days of yore for securing the kingdom. A king should similarly do that prayer for the sake of victory.

Indra said:

2. I make obeisance to the mother of all worlds, that is born of the ocean, the (goddess) Śrī (Fortune), that has eyes like the lotus that is waking up after sleep and that person dwelling on the chest of lord Viṣṇu.

3-4. O Goddess! You are the success. You are the Svadhā (food offered to the manes), the Svāhā (oblations). You are ambrosia. (You are) the purifier of the world. You are the twilights, night, lustre, wealth, memory, faith and Sarasvatī (the goddess of speech). (You are) the sacrificial knowledge, supreme knowledge and secret knowledge. O Auspicious one! O Goddess! You are the knowledge of the soul and the conferer of the benefit of emancipation.

5. You are the metaphysics, the three Vedas and the science of administration. O Goddess! The Beautiful! This has been filled by your beautiful worldly forms.

6. O Goddess! Who else other than you would rest in the body composed of all sacrifices of the mace-wielding Lord Nārāyaṇa, the god of gods whom the yogins contemplate.

7. O Goddess! All the three worlds were forsaken by you and the Earth was almost lost and resuscitated by you now.

8. O Most Fortunate One! Men would always get wives, sons, house, friends, grains, wealth etc. on account of your glances.

9. O Goddess! It is not impossible for men seen by your
glances to get beauty, health, fortune, destruction of the enemy
beside happiness.

10. You are the mother of all beings; and Lord Hari (Viṣṇu), the god of gods, is the father. O Mother! This world of movable and immovable beings is pervaded by you and lord Viṣṇu.

11-12. O Purifier of all! Do not forsake honour, treasury, granary, house, attendants, body and wife. One resting on the chest of lord Viṣṇu! Do not desert children, circle of friends, cows and ornaments.

13. O Spotless one! Those men forsaken by you would be forsaken at once by nobility, truth, purity and other qualities such as good conduct.

14. Men seen by you would at once be endowed with all qualities such as good conduct, the fortune of good family etc. even though they be without good qualities.

15. O Goddess! Whoever is seen by you would be praiseworthy, possessing good qualities, fortunate, belonging to a good family, wise, valiant and victorious.

16. O Consort of lord Viṣṇu! The Sustainer of the universe! All qualities such as good conduct shed their excellence at once in men from whom you have turned your face.

17. Even the tongue of Brāhinā is not capable of describing your qualities. O Goddess Lotus-eyed! Be gracious. Never forsake us.

Puṣkara said:

18-19. Being thus adored, (goddess) Śrī (Lakṣmī) conferred on Indra the desired boon (such as) firmness of sovereignty and success in the battle etc. It confers enjoyment and emancipation on those reciting or hearing the hymn. Hence one should always read and listen to the hymn on (goddess) Śrī (Lakṣmī).
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND THIRTYEIGHT

The ethics narrated by Rāma

Agni said:

1. I have narrated the ethics told by Puṣkara. Listen. I shall now narrate the ethics narrated by Rāma to Laksmana for victory and that would increase piety etc.

Rāma said:

2. Wealth should be acquired by rightful means. It should be developed and guarded. It should be given to a deserving person. These are the four obligatory acts of a king.

3. Humility is the cause of statesmanship. Humility is the resultant of determination from scriptures as well as the control of senses. The king should guard the earth endowed with these.

4-5. Scriptures, knowledge, fortitude, dexterity, proficiency, reticence, energy, eloquence, generosity, endurance at the time of distress, greatness, purity, amity, renunciation, truthfulness, gratitude, good family, good conduct, self-control are the qualities for gaining fortune.

6. The elephant (in the form) of senses running uncontrolled in the forest of diverse pleasures should be controlled with the goad of knowledge.

7. A king should give up the aggregate of six things, namely, lust, anger, greed, delight, pride and arrogance. The king who rejects these would be happy.

8. A king being endowed with modesty should contemplate on metaphysics, the three Vedas, emissary and polity with those well-versed in these and those practising them.

9. The knowledge about true nature of things is got through metaphysics. Virtue and vice rest on the three Vedas. Material prosperity and misfortune depend on emissary and justice and injustice on polity.

10. Abstaining from killing or causing injury to beings, courteous language, truthfulness, purity, kindness, and forbearance are the general virtues of the religious students.

11-13. One should show compassion to all beings and practise codes of conduct. Courteous words, compassion, charity and protection of one that has sought refuge are the acts of good
people agreeable to pious men. Which king would do impious acts for the sake of the body that is encompassed by misery and disease and that is liable to get destroyed today or tomorrow? One should not oppress the poor people desiring his own happiness.

14-15. A poor man being oppressed kills the king by means of his anger. A king desiring his own good should conduct with more humility than that shown to a respectful kinsman with folded palms. One should always speak only in a pleasing manner to friends and foes.

16. Those who speak pleasingly are gods and those who speak harsh are animals. One should always worship gods with cleanliness and get purified with piety.

17-18. The preceptors (should be respected) as gods and friends as one’s own selves. The preceptor (should be pleased) by bowing down. The favourable pious men (should be pleased) by doing true gestures and services. The gods (should be pleased) by good deeds. A friend should be attracted by courteousness and kinsmen by showing respect.

19-22. The wife and servants (should be pleased respectively) by (showing) affection and (making) gifts. The rest of the people (should be won) by (showing) compassion. Not reviling the acts of others, maintaining to do one’s duties, kindness towards the poor, sweet words towards all, helping a true friend even by (sacrificing one’s) life, receiving warmly the person that has come to the house, making a gift (according) to one’s ability, forbearance, absence of pride in prosperity, not jealous at other’s prosperity, not speaking words hurting (the feelings of) others, practising the vow of silence, maintaining the bondage with kinsmen, keeping even attitude towards one’s own men and taking actions conducive to welfare are the acts of greatmen.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND THIRTYNINE

The duties of a king

Rāma said:

1. The king, ministry, kingdom, fort, treasury, army and allies helpful to one another are said to be the seven constituents of a kingdom.
2-16. The sovereignty is the most important means of a kingdom. It should hence always be protected. Good descent, good conduct, (young in) years, good quality, compassion, quick action, consistency, truthfulness, service to the aged, gratefulness, being fortunate, intellect, possessing an unwicked retinue, able to exhibit his valour, faithfulness, foresightedness, zeal, purity, generosity, modesty and virtuousness are the qualities of a pious man and a king. A king, seeking his own good, should make those belonging to a good family his attendants, be not cruel, but capable of winning the people and pure. A king should be eloquent, confident, possessing good memory, distinguished, strong, self-controlled, a leader, well-versed in polity and the different branches of fine arts, capable of facing an attack, capable of remedying all evils, one who knows the movements of hostiles, one who knows the principles of peace-making and war; capable of knowing the secret counsels (of the hostiles), knower of opportune time and place, one that takes goods in the proper way and distributes to the proper person, free from wrath, greed, fear, doing evil, haughtiness and fickleness, free from harassing others, calumny, jealousy, envy and untruth, fortunate (in getting) the counsel of the aged, able, showing his amiable manners and one that is fond of good qualities which are known to confer prosperity. Men of noble descent, virtuous, brave, learned, attached, those who would implement the rules of punishment should be the ministers of the king. The minister should moreover be having good physique, a native of the country, belonging to a good family, endowed with good conduct and knowledge in arts, eloquent, courageous, possessing good eye-sight, enthusiasm, discrimination, devoid of rigidity and fickleness, friendly, capable of enduring hardship, virtuous, possessing (the qualities, of) truthfulness, good nature, firmness, perseverance, dignity, good health, able, having retentive memory, firm devotion (to the king) and not creating enmity (with other kings). Good memory, good application of the mind conducive to gain, decisive knowledge, firmness and guarding the secret counsels are the virtues of a minister. The royal priest should be proficient in the Vedas and codes of punishment.

17-23. The priest should do the expiatory and welfare-yielding rites as laid down in Atharvaveda. The wise king
should examine the fitness of these ministers with the help of experts. The two qualities of having a clear sight and skill should be examined. He should know about the family and the integrity from his own people. The three qualities—ability in service, knowledge and endurance should be examined. So also the boldness, and their pleasure in conversation should be known. Their eloquence, truthfulness, enthusiasm, greatness, endurance for hardship, firmness, loyalty and steadiness in distress should be noted. The king should know their devotion, friendship and honesty from their conduct. Likewise their strength, good nature, health, good conduct, not being fickle-minded and not exhibiting their enmity (should be known) from their companions. Their gentleness and meanness should be known (from their acts) in his presence. Everywhere the virtues of them (practised) not in his presence should be gauged from results.

24-25. A region having good crops, meritorious, endowed with minerals, beneficial for cows, having plenty of water having holy cities, enchanting, abounding in elephants, having water courses and not depending on rains is commended for abundant prosperity.

26-27. It should abound with śūdras, artisans and merchants and have great enterprises and agriculturers. (It should abound with men) fondly attached (to the king), hating the hostile king, capable of enduring hardship. It should contain people who have come from different countries and who are pious, possessing cattle and strength. Such a country is commended. The head should be wise and not addicted to any vice.

28-30. The fortress should be built on hills having a river or desert or forest (as a boundary) covering a large area and having a deep moat, high walls and gateways. The fort should contain water, grains and treasures to stand a long siege. Those surrounded by water, mountain, forest, desert and archers are six (kinds of forts)\(^1\). The forts should be replete with choice things, righteously acquired since the time of forefathers that would stand a heavy drain for the furtherance of righteousness etc.

31-37. (The servants should be descendants) of their forefathers’ (servants), subservient, salaried, known for their valour,

\(^1\) It mentions only five names.
belonging to a good family, able, possessing knowledge about omens. (The army of the king should be) armed with different kinds of weapons, conversant with different types of warfare, possessing varied kinds of warriors, having horses and elephants duly sanctified, which has endured hardships in battle and sufferings in expeditions etc. Those who administer justice should be undivided and mostly drawn from the kṣatriya community. One that is proficient in yoga, good-natured, possessing a strong army, conversing affectionately, able to wait patiently for the outcome, not divided and belonging to a good family should be befriended. Approaching from a distance, uttering words having clear meaning and agreeable to the heart and doing good deeds are the three ways of acquiring friendship. One gets three kinds of fruits such as piety, enjoyment and prosperity through the friend. The son of a friend, a newly acquired friend, an ancestral friend and one protected from distress are known to be the four kinds of friends. Truthfulness and other things and similar pleasure and pain are the qualities in the friend.

38-41. I shall describe the conduct of those who serve (the king). A servant should serve the king (to the best of his ability). Ability, good disposition, firmness, forbearance, ability to endure hardship, happiness, good conduct, enthusiasm are ornaments for the servants. A servant should serve the king to the best of his ability for the agreed period. He should give up visiting the place of enemies, doing cruel acts, haughtiness and jealousy. A servant should not exchange harsh words with his superiors. He should not publicise the confidential matters and the secret councils of his master. He should desire the prosperity of the affectionate king. He should desert a king that is not affectionate.

42. Dissuading the king from doing evil deeds and persuading him to do good deeds (are said to be) the good conduct in brief for the relatives, friends and servants.

43-45. The king, like the god of rain, should be sustainer of all good. He would take a part of the earnings from the sources of one’s earning. He should employ efficient men to be in charge of all deeds. A good king should protect eight things such as agriculture, trade, fort, bridge, elephant stable, mines,
ocean (the source of gems) and the abodes of the downcast and thus follow a good code of conduct.

46. There is danger for the subjects from the (following) five sources such as the soldiers, thieves, subjects, king’s officers and the greed of the king.

47. The king should take tax after having taken note of this danger at the proper time. He has to protect his own body and the external body, the kingdom.

48. He should punish those deserving punishment and protect himself from poison as well as his wives and sons from the enemies. He should never trust them.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FORTY

_The six expedients used by a king_

**Rāma said:**

1-5. A king should think mainly about the circle of twelve kings. The enemy, friend, ally of an enemy, ally of an ally, ally of an ally of the enemy are known to be at the front of the conqueror. An enemy in the rear, a king whose kingdom lies next but one, the allies of these two is the circle (of kings) of a king desiring to conquer. One who is beyond the enemy and the invader is the neutral. One is a master in favouring the united and the suppression of the divided. One who is beyond this circle of kings and possessing a greater strength is known to be a neutral. One is a lord in favouring the allies and the annihilation of the divided. I shall describe the treaty, battle, vehicle, seat etc.

6-9. One should make a treaty with the strongly opposed for one’s welfare. Treaties are said to be sixteen—_kapāla, upahāra, saṅkāya, saṅgāta, upanyāsa, pratikāra, saṁyoga, puruṣāntara, adṛṣṭa-nara, ādiṣṭa, ātman, upagraha, parikrama, chinna, paradāśana and skandhopaneya_. Reciprocally beneficial, mutual amity, being related to each other and making presents (as token of friendship) are the four principal treaties.
10-14. One should not make treaties with the twenty people such as a child, an old man, one ill since a long time, an excommunicated relative, a coward, cowardly people, greedy people, one who has renounced the world, one excessively fond of worldly things, one devising many schemes, a despiser of gods and brahmans, an ill-fated one, one who speaks ill of fate, one suffering from famine, one having a discontented army, one having many enemies within the country and one who had become free in course of time and one swerved from adhering to truth and virtuous life. They should always be fought. A war is the result of mutual offence of men (hostile kings).

15-18. One aspiring the prosperity for himself, one being oppressed by another and one having favourable position, time and strength should begin war. Taking possession of kingdom, women, suzerainty, knowledge and strength, pride, honour, loss of fortune, destruction of knowledge, one's soul force and the virtue, that is due fate, dishonour on account of a friend, the destruction of a relative, cessation of the favour of (natural) elements, disturbance among the circle of monarchs, intense attachment for the sake of one are the causes for hostility.

19-24. Enmity is said to be of five kinds—through the co-wife, on account of one's abode, on account of wife, that arising from one's expression and that due to an offence. It should be amended by (suitable) expedients. A king should not engage in any of the following sixteen kinds of war, such as giving meagre result, yielding absolutely nil result, of uncertain result, that vitiating the existing order, proving fruitless in the long run that which affects in the long run and the existing order, with an army mobilised by enemy whose strength is not known, being undertaken for the sake of an ally or for the (recovery of a) woman or that (lasting) for a long time, or with brahmans, with one equipped with an untimely providence, with (an enemy) supported by a mighty friend, when it yields some result only at that moment but with no fruit in the long run and that which bears fruit in the long run but no benefit at that very moment. A king should undertake a task that would bear fruit at that moment and also in the long run.

25-32. One should wage war when one's forces are happy and strong and the enemy forces are of contrary nature. One
should commence a battle when the friend, an ally and a neighbouring king are firmly attached to him and that of the enemy is the contrary. A military expedition is said to be of five kinds by experts such as an open foe, as an ally (if one of the combatants), as united force, as occasional and remaining neutral. Like the expedition, halt is also of five kinds according to the ability of mutually (combating forces) of the enemy and the invader. One should inform his arrival to (the commander of) the stronger of the two opposing forces remaining without taking the side of either of them and like the eye of the crow remain un-noticed. One should join the stronger one when the hostilities begin. When both of them suspect his feigned neutrality and would dislike the engagement, one should himself attack the enemy that is more antagonistic. When a king with his army is routed by the powerful enemy and does not find a strategy, he should practise truthfulness and noble virtues of the ancestors. He should visit the powerful ally frequently, stay by his side, view things as he does and show gratitude for the support extended. The code of conduct for those seeking refuge has been heard.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FORTYONE

The four means conciliation etc.

Rāma said:

1. The power of counsel is commended than the power of greatness and enthusiasm. Kāvya (Śukra), the preceptor of demons), possessing greatness and enthusiasm was conquered by the priest of the celestials (Bṛhaspati).

2-4. One should not have a counsel with untrustworthy and foolish persons. How can a scheme that is impossible to begin be made to bear the fruit without toil. A counsel is laid down as of five kinds—knowledge of the unknown, ascertain-ment of that known (already), removal of doubt relating to an ambiguous matter in politics, (determination) of the right time
and place of action and helpful means, and remedial measures against misfortunes.

5. The marks of success in the acts are the cheerfulness of the mind, faith, efficiency of the means, aid and effort.

6. Pride, negligence, lust, prattling in sleep and enjoying pleasures with the beloved women break the secret counsel.

7-13. A person who is bold, having good memory, eloquent well-versed in the (wielding of) weapons and in the sciences, and one accustomed with the work deserves to become a messenger of the king. A messenger is said to be of three types such as one that discharges duty efficiently, one that does moderately and one who just conveys the message. (Each one of the succeeding one) is inferior by a quarter based on the ability (of the respective ones). One should not enter the city of the enemy and his assembly without having (previous) acquaintance. One should abide the right time and should fall upon (the enemy) after knowing (the opportune moment). One should know the weakness of the enemy as well as his treasury, friends and strength. He should also know the likes and dislikes from the looks and gestures (of the enemy). (An enemy) should make four-fold eulogies of both the sides (i.e. the master and the enemy). He should live with good spies having the guise of ascetics. An ambassador would be an open spy. A spy in disguise is of two kinds. Spies would be in the guise of a merchant, agriculturist or mendicant and the like. When the effort of the messenger has become fruitless, the king should attack the distressed enemy. One should take into account the natural calamity (that has befallen the enemy) and fall upon him.

14-24. Because it destroys the good fortune on account of bad policy it is said to be misfortune. Conflagration, water, diseases (epidemics), famine and hell are the five calamities due to divine agency. The rest are due to human agency. The misfortune due to divine agency should be subdued by means of human effort and appeasing rites. The misfortune due to human agency should be removed by means of expedients based on the rightful living. Deliberation, the reaping of the fruits of deliberation, following a course of action for future contingencies, the income and expenditure of the state, enforcing laws, the prevention of (the encroachment by) the enemy, (taking) remedial steps for the calamity and the protection of
kingdom and the king are the duties of a minister. Hence one beset with misfortune would ruin kingdom. Gold, grain, clothes and vehicle would be through the subjects. In the same way other things (are got through the subjects). If the subjects are having misfortune (all the above) are destroyed. Citizens of the city etc. help to protect subjects having misfortune as well as the treasury and law if it is sought. (The duties of feudatory chiefs) are to put down disturbance, help the sovereign in war, protection of people and taking note of the allies and foes. A king would perish on account of the fault of the vassals and suffer misfortune. Treasure enables a king to pay his servants, to win him friends and subjects, to aid the purposes of virtue and desire, to attend to the renovation of forts. If that is having misfortune, it would ruin the king. The king is dependent on the treasury. The enforcement of law is a means to create friends and foes, to acquire land and gold, to conquer enemies, to accomplish a work quickly that would take long time. If that is affected it would ruin the king. An ally would collect together allies, destroy the enemy and help him with money etc. If that is affected, that would destroy the king.

25-27. The king having a vice would destroy the affairs of the state. The vices of a king are the use of harsh words, (inflicting) cruel punishment, wasteful spending of revenue, drinking, (excessive enjoyment of the company of) women, hunting and gambling. Idleness, obstinacy, pride, intelligence and duplicity are the defects of a minister as already pointed out. Drought and epidemics etc. are the misfortunes of a country.

28. Shattered machines, walls and ditches not equipped with weapons and possessing a depleted army are the defects of a fort.

29. One nearly drained, not filled regularly, not being accounted, not accumulated, made waste and situated at a far off place are the defects in treasury.

30-33. Being obstructed, scattered, not honoured, disrespected, not existing, afflicted with disease, tired, arrived from a distant place, newly recruited, much reduced, disappointed, repulsed much, abound with hopes and disgust, deceived, having wives, having grievance within, break in the supply of provisions of different kinds, the base being made void, divided by
the hostile (king), deprived of a leader and bribed by the hostile king at the rear are said to be the defects of an army.

34. An ally suffering adverse fate, attacked by the enemy forces, having lust, rage etc. and energy would be (considered as) an enemy.

35-41. Lavish spending of money, inflicting harsh words and punishment on account of anger, due to lust, hunting, gambling, drinking and women (are the vices of a king). Harsh words create the estrangement in the world and havoc. Punishment is a means (to achieve) things difficult to accomplish. A king should remove it with care. A king that inflicts punishment and harsh words would agitate the subjects. The agitated subjects resort to the enemy. Multiplication of enemies would be for your destruction. A wasteful expenditure of wealth to a greater extent in order to defile one is said to be extravagance in spending by the learned in political science. By drinking one becomes ignorant, by hunting one gets destroyed by the enemy. One should wander in the forest that is guarded doing hunting in order to remove hardships due to victory. The destruction of virtues, wealth, life and quarrels etc. would be on account of gambling. Delay and affliction to virtue and wealth would result from the defect of association with women. On account of the vice of drinking (there would be) destruction of life, indecision relating to things to be done and not to be done.

42-46. One who knows the (mode of) laying the capital and the opportune moments would conquer the enemy. The dwelling of the king alongwith the treasury should be in the midst of the royal capital. The artisans, friends, unhospitable foresters and the main division of the army should be placed surrounding the royal dwelling. The army should be placed ready at a corner under the lead of the commander. They should roam about the quadrangular points in a circle during the nights. Information relating to one's self should be known (through spies) moving about the borders (of the country). All should leave and enter the city being noticed. The seven (political) expedients such as conciliation, gift, dissension, punishment indifference, conjuring and deceit should be instituted for accomplishing them.

47-51 Conciliation is of four kinds such as the expression of gratitude, recollection of the relationship between one another,
use of soft words and seeing and submission of the self with the words "I am yours", when (the other person) had come. The making of a gift of wealth to one that has come (is of three kinds such as) excellent, medium and inferior. The making of a gift is of five kinds (such as) giving back (the gift), accepting (the gift) received, making a novel gift, accepting a gift by his own choice, giving and returning. Dissension is of three kinds by experts knowing dissension (such as) destroying amity, creating a thrill of fear, inducing dissension between the two. Punishment is of three kinds (such as) killing, confiscating the property, and imposing hardship.

52-53. (Punishment is also of two other kinds such as) public and secret. The public enemies (should be punished) in public. In cases in which the people would get agitated by killing in public, (killing by poisoning) the food is commended. The enemies (of the public should be killed) by employing special black rites or with weapons etc. A member of the brahmin community alone should not be killed even after being under control after conciliation.

54-58. A good person should do conciliation (speaking) sweet words as if besmearing the heart, looking (at the person) as if feasting and taking in his form as if ambrosia. One duped with false hopes, desirous (of getting) wealth, one being invited and insulted, one having contempt for the king, one superseded in honour, one thinking much about his virtue, one whose virtue, desire and riches have been cut off, one that is angry, one having self-respect, insulted, one rejected without any cause, appeased even though had enmity, one whose wealth and wife have been taken, one deserving to be honoured but not honoured and such men permanently remaining in the enemy camp and are to be suspected should be divided.

59-62. (A king) should honour those that have come (from the enemy side) with presents and pacify those on his own side. Winning affection by conciliatory measures, showing threats, and honouring and buying the allegiance of principal men are stated to be the means for dissension. One having a frustrated ally is ruined like the timber eaten by an insect. (A
king) possessing the three kinds of regal power\(^1\) and one who knows the proper place and time should subjugate his enemies by (means of) force. The ruler of a neighbouring country who is favourably disposed should be pacified in the event of his being befriended by mighty allies. The greedy and poor (should be won) by making a gift. Other friends (should be won by pointing out) danger from others. The wicked (should be won) by threats of punishment and the sons, brothers and others by conciliatory measures. The chieftains of the army, the warriors (and) the heads of provinces (should be controlled), the vassals and foresters by making gifts and (causing) dissension (among themselves). The offenders (should be put down) by (means of) dissension and punishment.

63-68. After having propitiated the images of gods the male should dress as the female and illusions should be made by men such as the forms of goblins, meteors, monsters and vixens, assuming the desired form, showering of weapons, fire, stones and water, (and showing) the divine phenomena such as darkness, wind, fire, and cloud. Bhīma (one of the Pāṇḍavas) killed Kicaka\(^7\) (son of king of Virāṭa) assuming the form of a woman. It is said to be indifference when one does not dissuade another from unfair battle or plight just as Hiḍimbā (the demoness that married Bhīma) remained indifferent towards his brother (when he was fighting with Bhīma). Indrajāla (stratagem) such as clouds, darkness, rain, fire, mountain, wonders, the banners of a large army causing fright and mirage-like picture of being torn and spread should be shown in order to frighten the enemies.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FORTY-TWO

Statesmanship for a king

Rāma said:

1-6. After having worshipped gods and arranging six divisions of the army (the king) should march against the enemy. (The six divisions of the army are) the central force, the front, the rear, the auxiliary, hostile and the pioneer.

1. These are the supreme position of the king, the strength of a good council and energy.
Each (division) of the (above) forces are more important (than the succeeding ones). (The same holds good in the case of) reverses also. The commander-in-chief should go to such places as the rivers, mountains, forests and forts wherever there may be danger, with the army in array consisting of six divisions, machines, treasury, foot-solders, cavalry, chariots and elephants. The leader (of the forces) should march at its head being surrounded by best warriors. The queen, king, treasury and the excellent warriors of the army should be placed in the middle. The cavalrymen (should be) on the two sides, the chariots by the side of the cavalry and the elephants by the side of the chariots. The pioneer forces (should be by the side) of the elephants. Then the commander-in-chief should go slowly behind all with a fully equipped army encouraging the dejected.

7-13. A marching army should be set in (the array of) a crocodile and in (the array of) a hawk with raised wings or a śūci or viravaktra¹ in case of danger in the front. In case of fear behind, (an array in the form of) the cart (should be made). (In case of fear) on the sides, (an array) known as vajra (should be made). If there is danger on all sides one should set up (the array known as) sarvatobhadra. (A commander) should guard his army (while passing through) a cave, mountain forest, river and dense forest. (He should also guard) when the army has to go a long way, when it is tired, when it suffers hunger, thirst or adversity, when it is affected by ill-health, famine and epidemics, when attacked by robbers. (He should also protect the army) from marshy land, dust storm and watery place. He should see that they are neither scattered nor gathered together on the way. (He should also guard them) while sleeping, eating their food, while staying at an unfit place, when they are not well-placed, when they have been scared by robbers, fire and fear and when they have been struck by rains and wind. When the army of the enemy (is in a similar position) it should be struck. One should have an open encounter (with an enemy) only when the grounds and time are favourable and one is strong. On the contrary (one should do) treacherous warfare. When they (enemies) are attacking, the bewildered should be killed.

¹. Types of arrangement of the army.
14-17. (An enemy) on another's soil (could be won) from staying in one's own soil. (An enemy) in one's own soil (could be won) by means of sowing seeds of dissension. (An enemy) subject to the wrath of his people should be made captive by employing the foresters and others and killed. They can also be conquered by employing extremely brave warriors. (One may also employ) dissension, bribe or (may) draw away. By appearing in front of (the enemy) the king would become a sure object of their aim. Then (the enemy) should be killed by extremely brave warriors by striking swiftly with a strong force. Brave warriors could be set in an array in front or at the back (and the enemy) could be killed. It has been explained by these two (methods) as to how to attack the two enemies on the adjacent sides in a treacherous warfare. If the front part (of the hostile army) is in an unfavourable land, the rear portion should be attacked swiftly.

18-22. If the front and rear are both unfavourable (one should strike) on the sides in the same way. After having fought with the vanguards, allies (of the enemy) and the pioneers, one should attack the fatigued, slow and the one whose aid has been cut off without causing fatigue for his force. In the alternative, one should defeat by employing the pioneer force or the allies. Or, one should feign defeat and attack (the enemy) that is complacent that he has won by resorting to good counsel. One should destroy the enemy force when it is resting in the camps, barracks, villages, fields and among subjects without protection. Otherwise the cattle of the enemy should be seized and then the army on their way to reach the goal. Or the hostile army fatigued on account of overnight vigil fearing an attack and sleeping during the day overcome by sleep should be attacked (to gain victory).

23-27. In the alternative (a hostile army) sleeping during the night without any fear (should be attacked) by (employing) elephants or with men armed with swords. The functions of (men on) elephants are proceeding in front of the marching army, entry into forest fortification, division of the united (hostile) army, collecting together a divided army, causing right, breaking the doors (of the fort) and the protection of the treasury. Division of an undivided army and effecting the union of friendly forces are the task of (the men on) chariots. The
functions of cavalry are to reconnoitre the forests, different directions and the highway, guard the transport of provisions, follow the retreating army, attend to tasks requiring quick action, follow the weak and attack the last columns and rear (of the hostile army). (The functions) of infantry are to bear always the weapons, inspecting the camps and the highways and to remove (obstructions).

28-33. The ground (suitable) for infantry should not be very uneven or abound with thick rows of trees, ant hills, bushes and thorns and should have (provision for) escape. The ground (suitable) for cavalry should have scanty trees, should be quickly traversible, firm, without sand and not be marshy and have (provision for) escape. The ground (suitable) for the chariot should not have trees, fields, mire, trees causing obstruction, creepers and mire. The ground for the elephant are hills difficult to cross having streams. (A king should march) setting the army in an array consisting of different (segments) such as chest etc. It is known as the rear of the army. It is capable of serving the needs of the king. An array not having this (the division) would appear as if it has been segmented. A wise king desiring to conquer should not fight without having (the array with) the divisions. The treasury would remain with the king. A kingship would be suzerainty over the treasure.

34-48. The soldiers should be paid (rewards) on gaining victory. It is not proper to give only a little. A lakh (should be given) on the death of (the enemy) king and half that when the son of that king is killed. Similarly (the soldiers) should be paid when the (enemy) commander-in-chief is killed or at the killing of the elephant etc. Otherwise (the soldiers) should fight in such a way that the infantry, cavalry, (men on) chariots and elephants do not get affected when the battle has been completed. (The soldiers) should fight without confusion. Confusion causes melee. One should employ an elephant in battles causing great confusion. Three infantry soldiers would be equal to fight a cavalryman. Three such cavalrymen should be employed (to combat) a single elephant (man). Fifteen infantry men would guard (each) foot (of the elephant). It is laid down that an arrangement known as an anika (a unit) of the elephants should be made for (guarding) the chariot. There should be nine elephant men. The vulnerable point of such an army is
said to be of five kinds. An array should be set by this division of the army. The chest, sides and wings are said to be (three) divisions. An array is said to have seven parts such as the chest, sides, wings, centre, back (hip), rear and the edge by those well acquainted with (the arrangement of) arrays. The array (called) guru consists of chest, sides and wings together with the rear. That of sukra is devoid of two sides. The commanders should remain being surrounded by excellent warriors. They should fight without any faction defending one another. Excellent warriors of the army (should be) at the centre. A commander (of an army) is the life of a battle. It would be destroyed if it is without a commander. The powerful elephants should be placed at the chest (of an array), the chariots on the sides and horses on the wings. This array is said to be breaking the central force. An army of horses at the centre, an army of chariots on the sides and an army of elephants on the wings is known to be an array of breaking the inner (force). Station the cavalry in the place of chariots, the infantry in the place of cavalry (in the above order) or place elephants everywhere in the array in the absence of chariots. (There is another view). If there is more than the required army it is said to be abadha.

49-59. (An array called) bhoga consists of arranging (the army) in concentric circles. (An array called) danda is of many kinds. (I shall describe them) to you. Listen. (An array) spread horizontally would be (called) danda. (The array called) bhoga is in the form of a wave. (The array called) manḍala (would be) in perfect circle. The asamhata (class) (would be) in concentric circles. (The other arrays such as) the pradara, dṛḍhaka, asahya, cāpa, kuṣṭi, pratiṣṭha, supratīṣṭha, īyena, vijaya, sañjaya, viśālā, vijaya, sūci, sthūṇākarna camūmukha, sarpaśya and valaya are all invincible and modifications of (the array called) danda. They have the following characteristics—extending on both sides, extending on one side, extending in one wing, extending on both wings, three others of the contrary nature. (The array) pratiṣṭha extends on the wing and chest (and) the other supratīṣṭha is the contrary. (The arrays called) sthūṇā- pakṣa and dhanyā pakṣa, dvisthūṇa and danda after that (are of) doubled units at the end or an additional wing or of the reverse of another. They should be known to have the characteristics
of two or four columns of soldiers in order. (The arrays known as) gomātrikā, ahisaṅcāri, takaṭa and makara are said to be variations of the (array) bhoga. So also (the array called) pāripālavan-gaka. (The array called) yugorasya (consists of) two wings in (the array) daṇḍa. (The array of the form of) cart is contrary to that. (The array of the name) crocodile is of mixed nature. (The array) ṭeṣa (is marked) by the rows of elephants. (The arrays) sarvatobhadra and durjaya are the modifications of the array (called) maṇḍala. That which has openings on all sides is the first one and that having the eight army units is the second one. (The arrays known as) ardhaandrakā (of the shape of half the moon) and ārdhvaṅga (elevated parts) (are formed) by the combinations of (different) divisions of (the class known as) the vajra. In the same way (the arrays known as) karkaṭṛgī (the pincers of a crab), kākapāda (the feet of a crow) and godhikā (lizard) are known from their difference in shape (consisting) of three, four and five units of army.

60-67. Seventeen kinds of arrays could be formed from the (array called) daṇḍa. Two from the maṇḍala (class), six from the asaṅghāta and five from the bhoga (are combined) in a battle. (The structures of the above said battle arrays) may be modified by omitting a wing or two wings. Otherwise (a squadron) may be taken from the chest (of the army) and placed around the edges. After having attacked the boundary army in the front with the army forming the wings, one should strike the army at the hip with (the army at) the boundaries and attack with that comprising the chest. The routed soldiers of a hostile army as well as the reserves should be completely destroyed and one's own should be expanded. The main part (of the hostile army) should be attacked with double that of the main and the reserve force (of the hostile army) with the main. A compact (hostile) army should be scattered with a strong contingent of elephants. If (the hostile army) is (in the array) daṇḍaka with the flanks, wings and chest (drawn up) then (a general) should employ the (array) daṇḍa and quickly show the position. (The array called) pradāraka would be by the addition of two wings to the daṇḍa. If it is added with wings and flanks it is known as dyḍha. The array that is increased by (adding) two flanks is known to be asahya. The (array) khaṭaka (consists of) keeping the flanks and wings down and attacking with the troops at the chest.
68-72. The array valaya is said to be (the union of) two danḍas capable of breaking the enemy. The (array) durjaya (consists of) four valayas that is capable of routing the enemy forces. By changing the arrangement of elements (troops) on the flanks, wings and chest of (the array) bhoga (we get the arrays) sarpacāri and gomūtrikā. The array śakata is of the shape of a cart. The reverse is said to be the array amara capable of destroying the enemies. The arrangement (of troops) on the sides, wings and chest would be in the same way as the (array) maṇḍala. The divisions (called) cakra, padma and others are variations of the maṇḍala. In the same way the arrays sarvatothadra, the excellent vajrākṣa, the crow-shaped one, the half moon, śṛṅgāṭaka (resembling the junction of four roads) and acala of the forms corresponding to their names should be formed according to one’s convenience that would prevent the enemy forces.

Fire-god said:

73. O Brahmin! Rāma1 reached Ayodhyā after killing (the demon) Rāvaṇa. Lakṣmaṇa (brother of Rāma) killed Indrajit (son of Rāvaṇa) in days of yore by means of statesmanship narrated by Rāma.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FORTYTHREE

Physiognomy of men and their indications

Fire-god said:

1. O King! Ethics were described by me to Rāma. I shall now describe the characteristics of men and women as described by Samudra to sage Garga formerly.

Samudra said:

2-7. I shall describe the good and bad characteristics of men and women. O Virtuous one! A man having (the signs and features symbolised by the terms) ekādhika⁶, dviśukla (two whites), trigambhira (three depths), tritrika (three triads or nine virtues), tripralamba (three elongated organs), a spreading in three, threefolds (of skins), trivinata (having bends at three

1. One of the manifestations of lord Viṣṇu.
2. These terms are explained below in verses 7 ff.
places), *trikālajña* (knowing the three periods of time) and *trivipula* (broad organs at three places) would be possessing good characteristics. Similarly, (one possessing) four marks (on four different parts of the body), or four equal parts of the body, or cubits four frontal teeth (of commendable size), dark complexion of four, in four (parts of the body), sweet smells at the four (joints of the body) and four (specific organs) of short stature, five (parts of the body) small and long, six (parts) raised, eight bones (strong), seven (parts) glossy, nine (parts) clean, nine (parts like) the lotus, ten (parts like an) array and of the form of the fig tree, fourteen pairs (of parts) equal and sixteen eyes is commended.

8-15. (The term) *ekādhika* stands for virtue together with (the goals of life) righteousness, attainment of riches and pleasures. (The term) *dvīstukla* (signifies) the whiteness of teeth and the eyes except the two pupils. (The term) *trigambhira* (denotes) depth in the ear and navel and (the term) *tritrika* the virtues of absence of envy, compassion, forbearance, endowed with auspicious deeds, purity, desire, liberality, ease and valour known as one triad of virtue. (The term) *tripralamba* (denotes) a person that would have the testicles and arms long. One who has spread by his radiance, fame and fortune on the quarters, country and his own class (is said to be) *trikavyāpi*. A person that has three folds on the belly (is said to be) *trivalimān*. Listen to me. I shall describe the man having three bends. (He is the person) that bows to the gods, brahmans and preceptors. One who knows the suitable time for (the practice of) virtues, attainment of riches and pleasure is said to be the knower of three periods. One who has a broad chest, forehead and face (is said to be) *trivistira*. The two hands and two feet bearing (the marks of) banners, umbrellas etc. (are deemed to be bringing good). The fingers, chest, back and hip that are equal are commendable. The commendable height (of the human figure is) four cubits. Four (frontal) teeth having moon-like lustre (is meant by *caturdamstraḥ*). I shall describe the four black things. The two pupils of the eyes, the two eye-brows, the beard and hair (are the four) black (things).

16-26. The absence of bad smell in the nostril, mouth, perspiration and armpits (is *caturgandha*). The four short* things
are short penis, neck and the two shanks. The finger-joints
nails, hair on the head, teeth and skin (are the five) minute,
(parts). The two cheeks, two eyes, forehead, nose and the space
between the breasts (are the five) long parts. The chest,
shoulders, nails, nose, face and the back of neck (are the six)
raised parts. The seven parts that are glossy are the skin,
hair on the head, teeth, hair on the body, one's sight nails
and speech. (The eight bones that are strong are those in)
the two knees, two thighs, back, bones of the hand and
nose. The nine parts that are clean are the two eyes,
two nostrils, two ears, penis, anus and face. The ten (parts
of the body) of men of the lustre of a lotus that are commended
are the tongue, two lips, palate, eyes, hands, feet, nails,
tip of the penis and face. The hand, foot, face, neck, two
ears, heart, head, forehead, belly and back, the ten that are
broad (like an array) are praiseworthy. One is said to be of
the form of a fig (tree) if the inter-space between the two middle
and index fingers of the extended arms is equal to the height.
The two feet, ankles, buttocks, sides, groins, testicles, breasts, ears,
lips, thighs, shanks, hands, fore-arms and eyes are the pairs of
fourteen organs that are equal in general for a man. One that
sees with the fourteen branches of learning and the two eyes is
said to be having sixteen eyes. One with extremely dry body
with exposed veins and emaciated, smelling badly (is deemed to
be) unfortunate. The person with contrary (characteristics)
and pleasing look is commendable. The voice of a lucky man is
sweet. His gait resembles that of an elephant in rut. He
has two hairs from the same root. It gives protection from fear
at once.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FORTYFOUR

The characteristic features of women

Samudra said:

1-6. A woman that is beautiful in all her limbs, having the
gait of an elephant in rut, having heavy thighs and hips and
possessing a look like that of a longing pigeon is commendable.
One that is having luxurious dark hair, slim, not having hairs
on the body, beautiful, feet touching the ground evenly, and having a pair of breasts closely pressing each other (is also deemed to be lucky). The navel spiralling right to left, the private organ resembling the leaf of the fig (tree), ankles having a dip in the middle and (the dip in) the navel is of the measure of (the head of) a thumb (are also commendable). One that is not having an elongated abdomen (is also praiseworthy). One whose hairs are not soft is not good. One that is not having the name of an asterism, tree and river, one that is not fond of quarrels, one that is not greedy and one that does not speak harsh is auspicious and is honoured by the celestials. One that is having her cheeks of the colour of the madhūka flower, one that is not (having the body as) sinewy and abound with hairs, not having the eyebrows close to one another (is also commended). Even if one is crooked if she bestows her affection on the husband (she is deemed to be) the life of the husband even if the good characteristics are not present. If the quality of attraction is present other qualities (would also be present). One whose little toe does not touch the earth is verily the death itself.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FORTYFIVE

*The characteristics of the royal fan, bow and sword*

*Fire-god said:*

1-6. The handle of (the royal) fan (should be of) gold. The royal umbrella made of the feathers of hamsa, peacock, parrot or the feathers of crane is praised. It should not be made with mixed feathers. (An umbrella) of a brahmin (should be) of square shape and that of a king (should be) circular and white. (There should be) three, four, five, six, seven or eight joints on the handle (of umbrella). The auspicious seat of the king (should be made) with (the wood of) the kśira trees of fifty inches long. Its breadth should be three cubits and decorated with gold and other things. O Excellent brahmin! The bow (is made of three materials) iron, horn or wood. The three materials for the bow-string are the bamboo fibre, hide and wood. Four
cubits would be the excellent measure of a bow. It is said to be mediocre if equal and inferior if less than that. Materials should be added at the middle part for the sake of the grip of the fist.

7-13. O Brahmin! the tip of the bow made of horns or iron (should be having) minute edge (covered) by hides. The edge (should be) like the creeper, (like) the eye-brow of a beautiful damsel and should be fastened well. O Brahmin! One should make the bow separately made of the horn or iron or (the two) mixed. A good bow should suitably be decorated with particles of gold. A bow that is crooked, broken and with incisions is not commended. Gold, silver, copper and black iron are remembered (to be the materials) in (making) a bow. A bow (made of) horns of a buffalo, a tarabha (a fabulous animal) or rohiqa (a kind of deer) are auspicious. A bow (made of) sandal, cane, sāla, dhavala and kakubha (trees) (are good). The most excellent bow is that made of bamboos cut and collected in the autumn. The bow should be worshipped with the sacred syllables called trailokyamohana (captivating the three worlds) (used) for the swords. The arrows (may be made) of iron, bamboo or reeds. (They should be) straight and gold-coloured and bound by sinews. (They should have) good feathers. (They should have) gold feathers that are good. (They should) be cleaned with oil and be of good colour. One should worship weapons, bows and other things before starting an expedition or the royal consecration.

14-27. The king (should also worship) those carrying banners and weapons and the astrologers. Lord Brahmā performed a sacrifice on the banks of celestial Ganges on the peaks of the Meru (mountain). When he was contemplating at the sacrifice he saw the demon Loha (that causes) obstruction. As he was thinking about that, a great mighty form appeared from the fire in front of him. He bowed down to the lord (Brahmā) and the celestials greeted him with joy. Lord Hari took the sword (called) Nandaka from the demon as requested by the celestials. The lord seized it slowly and it became unsheathed. The sword was blue (in colour) with gem (studded) handle. Then the demon became (endowed with) hundred hands. That demon made the celestials run away in the battlefield by means of the mace: The body of the demon was
cut by lord Hari with the sword and (the parts of) the body fell on the earth and all of them became pieces of iron on account of their contact with the (sword) Nandaka. After having killed him lord Hari gave him a boon (saying) “Your holy body would become (the material) for weapons on the earth”. On account of the grace of lord Hari, Brahmā also worshipped lord Hari with the sacrifice without obstruction. Then I shall describe the characteristics of a sword. Swords that are produced at (the places) Khaṭi and Khaṭṭara are known to be worthy of being seen. Those belonging to (the region called) ‘Rṣi’ (would be capable of) cutting the body. Those produced from Sūrpāraka would be strong. Those got from Vaṅga are sharp and capable of cutting. Those produced from the country Aṅga are sharp. Sword (of the length) of fifty inches is said to be excellent. Half of that measure is known to be medium. One should not bear a sword shorter than that length. O Noblest one! It is said to be extremely worthy to wear a sword that is long and that which makes a sweet sound like that of a bell. A sword having the tip resembling the lotus flower or round is commended. Swords having the colour of the tip of a karavira leaf, the smell of ghee and the lustre of the sky (are also good). Spots at equal intervals of an inch on the swords are commendable as on the liṅga. Those resembling the colour of a crow or owl and of an uneven shape are not auspicious. One should not see his face reflected in the sword. One should not touch the sword after eating (without washing the mouth). One should not disclose the value and quality of a sword. One should not place the sword under the head in the night.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FORTYSIX

The testing of gems

Fire-god said:

1-7. I shall describe the characteristics of gems. The gems that are to be worn by the kings are diamond, emerald, ruby, pearl, sapphire, mahāntila (a kind of sapphire), lapis lazuli,
**gandhaśayaka (?),** moon-stone, sun-stone, crystal, *pulaka, karke-tana,* topaz and the *jyotirasa.* Crystal, *rājapatta* (an inferior kind of diamond) and *rājamaya* are auspicious. O Brahmin! Ruby, *gaṇjā,* conch-shell of a variety, *gomeda, rudhirakṣa* (holy beads and the marking nut (are auspicious). O Excellent brahmin! *Dhūli* emerald, blue vitriol, lead, *ṭilu,* coral *girivajra (?)* the gem (found) in the serpents, auspicious diamond, *ṭīṭṭibha (?), piṇḍa (?), bhrāmara* (a kind of stone?) and *utpala*—(these) gems set in gold (and worn) would confer prosperity and success. Inward lustre, free from impurities and good formation of the shape (are the characteristics of good gems).

8-15. Such gems could be worn. Those not having lustre, impure, cracked and containing pebbles inside should not at all be worn. It is commendable to wear the diamond. The diamond that could be carried away by water, that is unbreakable, without impurity, of hexagonal shape, has the lustre of the rainbow, light and (brilliant) like the sun is auspicious (to wear). Similarly an emerald possessing the hues of the plumes of a parrot, glossy, radiant, without impurity and containing minute particles resembling powdered gold is auspicious. The rubies got from crystal mines would be extremely red and spotless. Those got from (the place) Kuruvinda are naturally red. and those got from sulphur mines are of dark brown (colour). The pearls got from oysters are free from impurities. O Sage! Those got from the conch-shells are superior to them. (The pearls) obtained from the tusks and temples of the elephants, those got from the boars and fish and those found in the bamboos and clouds are excellent. Rotundity, whiteness, transparency and heaviness are the (good) qualities in a pearl. A good sapphire shines in the milk, spreads more lustre and tinge of its own colour. It should be declared as invaluable. The lapis lazuli of red-blue (colour) is excellent and should be used in a necklace and other (ornaments).
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FORTYSEVEN

The characteristics of a site for building

Fire-god said:

1-3. I shall describe the characteristics of a building site for the brahmins and others. They are white, red, yellow and black (soil) in order (for the four castes). A building site should have the smell of ghee, blood, cooked rice and wine in order (for the four castes). (They should also) taste sweet, pungent and acid and other secondary tastes in order. (The ground) should be cleared of kusa, reeds, kasa (a kind of grass) and durya (a kind of grass having razor-like edges) after having dug out pieces of iron etc. and worshipped the brahmins.

4-9. Sixty-four squares should be made. Lord Brahman (occupies) the four central squares. The presiding deity (of the two squares) on the east of those (squares) is said to be lord Aryaman. God Vivasvan is (on the two squares) on the south. God Mitra is (on the two squares) on the west. Gods worshipped on the angular points are: God Mahidhara (Pthvividhara) is on (the two squares on) the north. Apas and (Apas) Vatsa are on the south-east. God Savitri, Savita, Jaya and Indra (are respectively) on the south-west and west. God Rudra and (personification of) disease are on the north-west. (The gods worshipped) outside on the east and other directions from the angular squares are Mahendra, Satya and Sheva on the east. Crikhsata, Aryaman1, Dhrti and Gandharva on the south, Puspadanta, Asura Varuna and Yajna2 on the west and Bhallata Soma, Aditi3 and Dhanada on the north. Naga is the lord on north-east. Similarly, the first and the last are said to be the lords in each one of the eight directions.

10-15. Parjanya is the first god. The second one is Karagraha. (The other gods are) Mahendra, Ravi, Satya, Bharga and Gagana. Pavana (should be worshipped) in the east, (gods) Antariksa and Dhanevara in the south-east and the celestials Mrga and Sugrivaaka in the south-west. Roga and Mukhya (should be worshipped) in the north-west, Puṣpa,

1. Yama and Bṛṅgarāja in other texts.
2. Śeṣa in other texts.
3. Caraka, in other texts.
Kubera as well as Gṛhakṣata, Yama, Bhṛṣa, Gandharva and Nāgapaitṛka on the south, Dauvārika, Sugrīva, Puṣpadanta, the demon, the (presiding deity of) water (should be worshipped) in the west. The pulmonary disease that emaciates (men) and Nāgarāja (the king of the serpents) (should be worshipped in the north). (The gods) Mukhya, Bhallāta, Moon, Aditi, Kubera, Nāga, Fire (god), the excellent Indra and Sun (god) (should be worshipped) in the east. Gṛhakṣata and puspa (are worshipped) in the south, the outstanding Sugrīva in the west and Puṣpadanta and Bhallāta at the northern door.

16-23. A stoneslab or a brick should be laid on the ground and worshipped with the mystic syllables (as follows) and the celestials should be worshipped. O Daughter of (the sage) Vasiṣṭha! Gladden us with wealth and progeny. O Victorious one! Heir of sage Bhārgava (Parāśurāma)! Bring victory to the progeny. O Heir of (sage) Aṅgirasa! The Satisfied one! Fulfil my desires. O Auspicious one! Heir of sage Kāśyapa! Make my mind good. O One endowed with all seeds! One surrounded by all gems and herbs! O Bright one! Rejoicing one! Daughter of (sage) Vasiṣṭha! Be pleased here. O Daughter of Prajāpati! Goddess on the quadrangle on the earth. O Goddess of Good fortune and Good demeanour! Auspicious one! Daughter of (sage) Kāśyapa! Be pleased in (this house). O One worshipped by great masters and adorned with incense and flowers! O Goddess that makes one get prosperous! O Daughter of (sage) Bhārgava! May you be pleased in this house. One not mutilated! Unbroken one! Complete one! Daughter of the sage Aṅgirasa! I establish you on this brick. Confer on me the desired (things). One that is held by sovereigns, chieftains and owners of houses! May you be one that increases the progeny, wealth, elephants, horses and cows. (A brick or) stone should similarly be laid at the entrance to the house (for the first time).

24-31. A plakṣa tree would be auspicious on the north and the vata (tree) on the east of the house. Udumbara on the south and the asvattha on the west are excellent. A garden should be laid on the left (of the house). Dwelling in such a house is good. The trees planted and grown should be watered morning and evening in the summer, alternate days in the winter and each
night in the rainy season if the ground gets dried. They should be sprinkled with cold water mixed with the paste of *vidaṅga* (a medicinal herb used as a vermifuge). If the fruits get destroyed, (the trees should be sprinkled with water mixed) with (the paste of) horse-beans, black-gram, green gram, sesameum and barley. Sprinkling of cold water together with ghee is always (beneficial) for (the trees bearing) fruits and flowers. Sprinkling water with fish makes the trees grow. The powdered excrement of the sheep and goat (mixed with) the powdered barley and sesameum, beef and water should be buried in the ground for seven nights and then sprinkling that would make all the trees bear fruits and flowers abundantly. Sprinkling mango trees with cold water mixed with fish is commended. The gentle kick of the *aśoka* (tree) by women with their feet is also commended. Date palms, coconut and other trees grow well by (adding)salt. Sprinkling with water mixed with vidaṅga (herb) and fish would be beneficial for all trees.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FORTYEIGHT

_Benefit of worshipping lord Viṣṇu with flowers and leaves_

_Fire-god said:_

1-6. (Lord) Viṣṇu would confer success in all ventures by worshipping (him) with flowers. (The flowers for worship are): mālati, mallikā, yūthi, pāḍalá, karaviraka, pāvanti, atimukta, karṇikāra, kuraṇṭaka, kubjaka, tagara, nipa, vāna, barbara, mallikā, aśoka, tilaka, kunda (and) tamālaka would be good for worship. The leaves of bilva, sami, bhṛṅgarāja, tulasi, and vāsaka (are deemed good) for worship. The ketaki leaf and flower, lotus and red lotus and others (are also good). But the arka, unnattaka, kāñci, girimallikā, kauṭaja, śālmuli and kaṇṭakāri flowers are not at all good for the worship. The bathing of lord Viṣṇu with a prastha (measure) of ghee would be equal) to the benefit (of making a gift) of a crore of cows. (By doing so) with aḍhaka one would become a king. One would ascend heavens (by bathing) with ghee and milk.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FORTYNINE

The science of archery

Fire-god said:

1-5. O Brahmin! I shall describe the science of archery in four sections. It is said to be of five kinds resting on the warriors on chariots, elephant, cavalry and infantry. It is said to be of five kinds such as those projected by a machine, thrown by the hand, those cast (by hands) and retained, those permanently retained (in the hand) and boxing. (The weapons) are said to be of two kinds—ordinary weapons and missiles. They are again stated to be of two kinds by the divisions (such as) curved and conceit. (The weapons projected) by means of a sling or bow or other such contrivances are said to be projected by a machine. Stones and weapons such as the iron clubs are stated to be (weapons) thrown by the hand. (Weapons) such as the prāsa (dart) would be known as (the weapons) cast and retained. Swords and other (weapons) are those permanently retained. Personal combat without weapons (is the last one).

6-8. After surmounting the difficulties, (the king) desiring to fight should engage fit men (for the purpose). Battles (fought) with the bows (and arrows) are excellent, those with darts are mediocre, those with swords are inferior and those fought with hands are still inferior to them. A brahmin is said to be the preceptor in archery for two castes. A Śūdra has the right to fight in case of an emergency if he had undergone training. The people of mixed castes belonging to that country should render assistance to the king in the battle.

9-19. If the thumbs, calves, palms and feet are kept closely pressed against each other, the position (is said to be) samapada from its characteristic feature. It is said to be vaisākha if one stands on the outer toes and the two knees are held in a straight and motionless posture and the distance (between the two soles) is three vitasti (twelve añgulas). It is known as maṇḍala if the two knees look like a row of hamśas and (the feet are) four vitasti apart. It is stated to be ṛṣiṁha when the right thigh and knee are held motionless and (appear) like the plough and are five vitasti apart. If the same is changed (to the left) it is known to be prayāṭīṁha. If the left leg would be curved and the right
would be straight and the two calves and the legs remain fifteen aṅgulas apart, the posture would be (known as) jāta (on the whole) extending to twelve aṅgulas. If the left knee would be straight and the right knee extended well or the right knee is curved and motionless and the feet together with the knee are four cubits apart, it is said to be vikaṭa extending to two cubits. If the knees (are kept down) twice (as much) and the two legs are raised, that posture is said to be vikaṭa. The feet are a little turned round, firm and equal to four cubits. It is properly seen to extend to sixteen aṅgulas. O Brahmin! With this posture (known as) svastika one should first bow down holding the bow by the left hand and the arrow by the right hand.

20-29. One that loves his bow should remain in the (postures) vaisākha or jāta or firm or extended and put the string on the bow. The lower tip of the bow and the striking part of the arrow should be fixed on the ground. O One practising good austerities! It should be raised with the hands by means of the curved fore-arms. That bow and arrow of a person is excellent which has a space of twelve inches between the bow and the feathered part of the arrow. The string should be made neither too long nor too short. Holding the bow (in line) with the navel and the quiver on the back, the bow should be raised with the left hand between the eye and the ear. The arrow should be taken with the right fist to the edge of the breast. (Then the string) should be put on and quickly drawn to its full capacity. (It should not be stretched so much as to be) within or beyond or above or below or curved or raised or shaking or extremely obstructed. It should be parallel, firm and straight like a rod. After having covered the mark with the right fist, the archer (should stand) with his chest raised and bent in the shape of a triangle, the shoulders stooping, the neck without motion, and the head poised erect as a peacock. The space between the forehead, nose, face, shoulder and the elbow should be equal. The space between the chin and shoulder is known to be three aṅgulas.

30-37. The interval between the chin and shoulder is said to be three aṅgulas in the first, two aṅgulas in the second and one aṅgulas in the third (kind of bow). After having taken the feathered end of an arrow with the thumb and the index finger and then with the ring and middle (finger of the right hand),
it should be drawn fully such that the arrow gets completely stretched. After having begun in this way, the arrow should be released in the proper manner. O Man of good conduct! The target that has been seen (by the eyes) and covered by the fist should be split with the arrow. After releasing (the arrow) the left hand should be thrown back quickly. O Brahmin! It is known as excision. It should be known by you. An expert in the archery should keep the elbow down while drawing (an arrow), above while releasing and be in line with the target in the middle (state). Those who are well-versed in (the science of) archery know it as the excellent. The superior kind of arrow is known to be twelve musṭis\(^1\), the mediocre of eleven musṭis and the inferior one of ten musṭis. A bow of four cubits is excellent, that of three and a half cubits is mediocre and that of three cubits is said to be inferior always by the infantry men. The same is said to be excellent in (the case of) cavalry, chariot and elephant.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FIFTY

*The science of archery*

*Fire-god said:*

1-7. Then a brahmin should get ready the weapons such as the mace, bow etc., wash them well free from flesh and place them on the sacrificial ground. Then after having collected the arrow, furnishing himself with an armour and remaining composed he should get the quiver and bind it firmly on the right shoulder. Even though there may not be any definite aim, that arrow that has been placed in it in that position should be lifted from the quiver with the right hand. Then the arrow together with the hand that be lifted should be placed (on the bow) and held. The middle-part of the bow should be held with the left hand. After having made his mind diverted of all anxieties, the feathered end of the arrow should be placed on the string

---

1. The breadth of the clenched fist.
After holding firmly in the (position known as) *simhakarna* evenly with the feathered end, the fruit of the left that rested on the left ear should be borne (?) The covers should be borne with the left middle finger. One who knows the procedure should fix his mind on the target and (hold the arrow) with (the right) fist on the right side of the body and discharge covers.

8-12. (One that practises to shoot an arrow) should place a pole as the target in line with the fold on the forehead. The circular mark (of the extent) of sixteen *aṅgulas* should be struck after pulling (the arrow). After having discharged such an arrow, one should then practise (discharging) fire-brands with that. One should place the arrow again and again with the middle finger. One should strike from the quiver at the target perceived by the eye (imagining) as a square on the right. One that is in the first stage should practise to pierce (the target) in a square. Then he should practise to aim quickly, turning round and to pierce that below or above. When (the targets are) at the position of being pierced the bow (should be lifted) from its position and the hands should threaten with varied sounds of invincible (nature) (?)

13-19. O Brahmin! Among those (objects) to be struck (by a bow-man), two (kinds) are known to be *dṛṣṭha* (requiring firm hand), two are known as *Duṣkara* (difficult to hit) and two as *citraDuṣkara* (extremely difficult to hit). That which is not below and hard is stated to be requiring firm hand. That which is below as well as that which is above is said to be *Duṣkara*. That which is between the head and the zenith is known as *citraDuṣkara*. Thus after having known the position of the objects to be hit with the right and left, a hero (archer) should first make progress. Then one would be the conqueror of the target. This is said to be the rule that has been laid by those well-versed in that. It is said that one would have more mobility from that practice. The target that comes within the purview of the arrow should be aimed at firmly. One should strike at once, break, pierce and cause distress to that which is whirling round, that which is moving and that which is extremely steady. One who is well-versed in the performance of actions should practise this way after knowing that. One that has learnt the application would conquer (the lord of) death by means of his mind, eyes and look.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FIFTYONE

The method of using a noose

Fire-god said:

1-6. One that has controlled the hand, conquered the mind and obtained proficiency in (hitting) the target perceived should board the chariot after getting the specified perfection. A noose should be ten cubits (long), round and such as to be held in the hand. The thread (of the noose) should be made either of cotton or muñja (grass), tendon, arka (plant) or hide. It may be made of any other strong (material) well twined with thirty (pieces). A wiseman should make the noose well-rounded. The instructors should always provide a place for that on the sides. Having gathered it with the left hand it should be lifted with the right-hand. After having made (the noose) into a loop, it should be whirled round the head and thrown quickly on a person covered by the armour and quiver. One that is well-trained should be employed after having made him proficient to use the noose on the (horsemen) galloping, capering and running away.

7-12. After having conquered the enemy, he should be made a captive in the proper manner. The sword should be hanging on the left side on the waist. (The sheath) should be held firmly by the left (hand) and (the sword) should be drawn out (from the scabbard) with the right hand. The circumference of a dart should be six angulas, its height seven hastas and it (be made) of iron. Armours are of different kinds. It should be half the hasta, equal, spreading across and upwards. It should be fitted in the proper manner. Listen to me as I describe. After having made the person stand with the quiver and armour on his body, one should take the new, strong club in the right hand, move nine angulas and strike. By this (blow) the head (of the enemy) would certainly be destroyed. (Otherwise) he may be struck down with both hands. After having done thus without strain, one is said to accomplish the death of the person. I have already described how to cause the distress of the arms for the sake of the movement.
CONTENTS

PART III

CHAPTERS

252. The mode of wielding the swords, maces etc. 651
253. The description of the administration of justice 653
254. Debts and their repayments 659
255. Description of rules relating to disputes and different kinds of ordeals 661
256. Description of the procedure for division of properties 666
257. Settlement of disputes relating to the boundaries of fields 670
258. Punishment for making defamatory speeches and committing other offences 675
259. The application of the mantras of the Rgveda 683
260. The use of the hymns of Yajurveda 695
261. The use of the hymns of Sāmaveda 704
262. The use of the hymns of Atharvaveda 707
263. Appeasing rites for portents 710
264. Worship of gods to ward off the effects of portents and mode of offering the Vaiśvadeva ball 713
265. The sacred bathing of the deities 716
266. The mode of performing the ceremonial bathing to wash off obstacles 718
267. Ceremonial bathing known as Māheśvara and other kinds of ablutions 719
268. Mode of worshipping Indra, doing nīrājanā (relating to King’s expedition) and other rites 722
269. The sacred formulas for the consecration of the umbrella and other royal insignia 725
270. A hymn to Viṣṇu that destroys Evil 728
271. The different recensions of the Vedas 730
272. The meritoriousness of making gifts of the different Purāṇas 732
273. The description of the solar race 735
274. Description of the lunar race 738
275. Description of the dynasty of Yadu 740
276. The manifestations of Lord Viṣṇu 744
277. The narration of the lineage of Aṅga 747
278. The description of the lineage of Puru 748
279. The description of the potent remedies 751
280. The remedies for all the diseases 757
281. The description of the characteristics of the different tastes and the qualities of the herbs 761
282. Description of horticulture 764
283. The remedial herbs for all the diseases 766
284. Narration of sacred formulas that are medicinal 770
285. The accomplished recipes that would revive the dead 772
286. Collection of medical recipes 778
287. The treatment of the diseases of elephants 781
288. The diseases of the horses and the management of the horses 784
289. The characteristics of the horses and the treatment of the diseases of the horses 789
290. Propitiatory rites for curing the ailments of horses 794
291. Propitiatory rites for curing the ailments of elephants 795
292. The greatness of cows and their welfare 798
293. Different kinds of mantras and their nomenclature 802
294. The characteristics of different kinds of serpents 807
295. The medical treatment for a serpent bite 811
296. The five constituents of the worship of Rudra 814
297. The remedial mantra that would remove poison 817
298. The treatment for the poison due to snakes such as the gonasa and others 818
299. Recipes for the diseases of infants 820
300. Description of the mantras which remove the baneful influences of planets 826
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contents</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>301. The mode of worship of Sun</td>
<td>830</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302. Description of different kinds of potential mantras and herbs</td>
<td>832</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303. The propitiation of the letters of one's limbs to ward off evil</td>
<td>835</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304. The mode of worship of Śiva with the mantra of five syllables</td>
<td>837</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305. The fiftyfive names of (Lord) Viṣṇu and their greatness</td>
<td>840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>306. Description of the mantras to be repeated to ward off evil incantations etc.</td>
<td>843</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307. Description of the mantras that would stupefy the three worlds</td>
<td>845</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308. On the mode of worship of goddess Lakṣmī and others that confer immense benefits</td>
<td>849</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309. The mode of worship of Tvaritā</td>
<td>852</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310. The narration of the spell relating to Tvaritā</td>
<td>854</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311. The location of the basic mantras of Tvaritā and her worship</td>
<td>858</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FIFTY-TWO

The mode of wielding the swords, maces etc.

Fire-god said:

1-4. Bhrāntam, udbhṛntam, āvidēham, āplutaṁ, viplutaṁ, srta, samāptam, samudirnāṁ, śyenapātam, ākulam, uddhūtam, avadhūtam, savyām, daksinām, anālakṣita, visphoṭa, karāla, indramahāsaka, vikarāla, nipāta, vibhisana, bhayānaka, samagra (the entire), ardha (half), tṛtiyāṁśa (one-third), pāda, pādārdha, vārīja, pratyāltiḥam, álīḍham, varāham and lulitam are known to be the thirty-two kinds of employment of the sword and armour in a battle.

5-6. Parāvṛttam, apānṛttam, grhitaṁ, that known as laghu, ūrdhvaśiptam, adhakṣiptam, sandhārītam, vidhārītam, śyenapātam, gajāpātam and grāhagrāhyam are the eleven ways of manipulating a noose.

7. Great men hold that the five ways of casting a noose are: extending in a straight line, long, broad, horizontal and whirling.

8. The uses of a disc (are): cutting, piercing, felling, whirling and severing.

9. May you know that the uses of a spear are: slapping, thrashing, cleaving, frightening, incarcerating and, the sixth, striking down.

10. O Excellent Brahmin! It has been declared that an iron club (TOMARA) (is used) in striking the eyes, the arms (and) sides (of the enemy) and should be countered with an arrow of the defendant.

11-12. O Brahmin! It has been declared that a mace (GADĀ) is used for the acts (such as) ḍhata, gomūtra, prabhūta, kamalāsana, ūrdhva-gātra, vāmanamita, daksinamita, āvyāta, parāvyāta, pādodbhūta, avapluta, hamsamardda and vimarda.

13. The use of a battle-axe is said to be karāla (dreadful), avaghāta (sharp blow), damśa (cutting), upapluta (leaping),
ksiptahasta (that has been released from the hand), sthita (remaining in the original position) and śūnya (void).

14. O Brahmin! The use of a mudgara (mace) is for striking, cutting, pounding, causing deluge and killing.

15. The uses of a bhindipāla (sling) are for samśrānta, viśrānta and govisarga and sudurdhara (that is extremely unbearable). The same are the uses of a lagūda (club).

16. O Excellent Brahmin! The uses of a mace (VAJRA) are for (striking) with the end, with the middle, turning back and commanding. The same (are the uses) of a paṭṭiṣa (a kind of spear with sharp edge).

17. Taking away, cutting, killing, piercing, anointing, felling and snapping are indicated as the uses of a sword.

18. The functions of a sling are indicated to be frightening, protecting, killing and helping a big fighting column. The same are the functions of a machine also.

19-30. The methods of using the mace (GADĀ) should be known as total discharge, stimulating, throwing upwards in the posture of a boar, using the hand and the back of the hand, standing with the right knee being advanced and the left leg retracted, (holding) with one hand, (holding) by the back of the hand, (holding) with two hands, with the arms thrown round as in embracing, discharging from the hip, raising upwards, striking on the chest, striking on the forehead, bhujāvīdhamana (?), raising with the hand, lifting skywards, striking at the feet, injuring the feet, pressing the body together, putting an end, total destruction of the body, striking after raising up, blowing, intermittently (striking), wielding in the left or right (hand), enabling to cross, enabling to protect, (like a) stick, fettered like the braid of hair, agitating, transversely locked up, removal, frightening speed, good looking, attacking like lion or elephant or an ass. The modes of wrestling are drawing (the enemy), drawing apart the base of the hands, the turning about of the neck, the breaking of the back, the terrible one, revolution, reversion, the manner of slaughtering animals, ajāvika (?), hitting the feet, slapping (as done with the arms), discharging from the hip, resting on the shoulder, (using) the earth as a contrivance, striking at the chest and forehead, open conquest, raised one, as a wave, moving transverse, riding an elephant,
casting down, not having the face turned aside, the path of the celestials, downward path, moving haphazardly, consistent, striking with a club, casting down, tearing the earth, locking up in the knees, locking up by the arms, embracing by the body, the terrific one, backwards, together with water, shining one and enclosed with the arms. At the time of the battle, (the warriors) should be ready with the weapons, elephants and other (divisions).

31-33. Two soldiers (should be) bearing excellent goads, one of them on the neck (of the elephant) and the other on the shoulder and two archers and two (soldiers) carrying the sword on the elephant. Three cavalry men should be there (to defend) a chariot or the battle-front or the elephant man. It is said (that there should be) three archers to guard the cavalry. Armoured men should be employed for the protection of the archers. Whoever goes for a war after having worshipped the weapon with the respective sacred formula or (the sacred formula known as) the one captivating the three worlds, would conquer the enemies and would govern the earth well.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FIFTY-THREE

The description of the administration of justice

Fire-god said:

1-4. I shall describe the administration of justice that gives the discriminative knowledge of justice and injustice. It is said (to comprise) four feet, four places and four means. That which is beneficial to four (classes of men), extends to four (different parties) and benefits fourfold. In the same way (it is said to comprise) eight parts and hundred divisions. (It has) three sources, two sorts of statements, two parties and two kinds of issues. The codes of law, justice, conduct and the command of the king are the four feet in the administration of the justice. (Among these) each subsequent one is the means
for the previous one. Therein righteousness rests on truth. A law suit (rests) on the witnesses.

5. The conduct of a person (rests) on the opinion of the people. The decree (depends) on the command of the king. Since (a legal case) could be decided by the means such as the conciliation (and the like), they are said to be the four means.

6-12. Since it is protecting the four institutions (such as the student life), it is said to be beneficial in four ways. Because (the suit) encompasses the plaintiff, witness, assessors and the king, one-fourth each, it is said to be encompassing four-fold. It is said to be the instruments of four kinds, because it accomplishes the four—righteousness, material prosperity, fame and esteem of man-kind. The king with the attendant, courtiers, scripture, astrologer, scribe, gold, fire and water are stated to be the eight accessories (in a law-suit). It is said to be having three sources because it results from the three such as lust, anger and greed. Hence these three are the cause of a law-suit. The cause of the law-suit are two such as apprehension and firm disquisition. Among these, apprehension is known from association with six things and the genuine (fault) from the preceding events of six kinds. Because the suit has two sides it is said to be having two openings. Among these (two), the first one is the plaintiff and the other one is the defendant. The two courses are said to be that which has happened and the guise.

13. (The term) debt (denotes that admitted) by a person as payable or that denied by him as not payable or that which is given as gift (to another).

14. One’s own property placed out of trust (with another) without any doubt is said by wise men to be a trust that is a matter of dispute.

15. The place where the merchants and others collectively transact business (called) the active occupation is known to be a matter of dispute.

16. If one wants to take back that he has paid (to another), that is called the withdrawing of a gift and is known to be the matter of dispute.

17. Having agreed to do service (to another), if one refuses
to do so, it (is known as) refusal to do service and is said to be a matter for dispute.

18. The wage of a servant is said to be coming under the head of debts and the non-payment (of the same) is deemed to be a matter of dispute.

19. If one sells the entrusted property of another or the lost (property of another) after having got it or having stolen it without the knowledge (of the owner), it is known to be selling of another's property.

20. After having sold the goods for money if (the goods) are not made over to the buyer, it is non-delivery of sold (articles) and is a matter for dispute.

21-22. If a purchaser opines that the articles bought are not good after having bought (it is also a disputable thing). That condition of a wicked (assuring) good conduct is said to be conventional practice. The transgression of the conventional practice is said to be a matter for dispute.

23. The dispute that arises in respect of the right over the land that has been determined by a bridge or a field or drawn boundaries is said to be that (dispute) arising from the land.

24. Where the marriage rite of men and women is declared that is named as the union of women and men and is a matter for dispute.

25. That which is termed the division of the ancestral (property) by the sons is said to be the partition of the property and a matter of dispute by the wise men.

26. A rash act done by those haughty of their strength is said to be a crime and is declared as a matter for dispute.

27. It is said to be an abusive language that (is spoken) out of hostility with reference to the country, caste and family and the like with gestures.

28. It is said to be an assault if injury (is inflicted) on other’s bodies with hands, feet, weapons and destructive materials such as the fire.

29. It is said to be divine gambling (when it is played) with dice, vajra (diamond) and rod etc. It is termed as animal gambling (if it is played) with animals, and birds kept for pleasure.
30. That dispute is again known to be a miscellaneous one if it does not rest on anything. The violation of the command of the king as well as not carrying out that command (also constitute an offence).

31. Thus disputes are of eighteen kinds and there are one hundred divisions of these. These hundred divisions (of disputes) are stated to be due to difference in the acts of men.

32-37. A king should examine the disputes with the help of learned brahmans without becoming angry. The courtiers (jurists) should be disposed equally towards the enemies and friends. They should not be greedy and they should be proficient in the scriptures. When such men cannot be found, a brahmin should be engaged with (the help of) the courtiers. Judges swerving from the codes of law and the like out of attachment, greed or fear should be punished separately. The fine is double as that for a quarrel. If a person that has been annoyed by others by following a method that is contrary to the codes of law and practice, informs the king, that is (known to be) a matter for dispute. The year, month, fortnight, day, name, caste and the marks (on the body) should be recorded by the complainant as known to him in the presence of the defendant. The reply of the defendant after having heard (that of the complainant) should be recorded in the presence of the complainant. Then the complainant should record (the arguments) that would accomplish his statement. He would get success if it is established or the contrary if otherwise.

38-46. These are the four steps indicated (by experts) in disputes. Without having settled a plaint, (the court) should not accept a cross-suit. One should not take up a case rejected by another (tribunal). A counter-suit could be made only in the case of a quarrel or violence. An appropriate bail should be collected from both (the parties) in deciding optional cases. One should pay (a fine of) equal amount to the king for the denial of an established matter. Double the fine has to be collected for a false plaint from the plaintiff. Cases of rash acts, theft, abusive language, pronouncing a curse and disappearance of women should be examined at once. It has been said that in other cases, they may be (put off to a different) time optionally. One that wanders from one place to another, one that
licks the corners of the mouth, one whose fore-head perspires, one whose face gets discoloured and one who by his nature gets changed in his thought, speech and physical actions is said to be a defamer for a plaint and witness. (A witness) (uttering) words of ambiguous import, uttering voluntarily something (not being summoned), falling down (when questioned), not telling something when summoned is known to be punishable if he is rich. Among the witnesses of both the sides, the witness of the plaintiff (should be heard first). When the examination of the plaintiff is completed, (the examination) of the defendant would be done. If the dispute is between members of the same clan, the younger should be punished.

47-49. The king should conduct the proceedings with respect to money paid or property or riches of a rich man after removing the fraud by (employing) the messenger. The king should confiscate all treasures, if it is concealed wholly or partly. All such properties should not pass over to the sovereign unless voluntarily offered (by the parties). In the case of conflict between two law codes in deciding a suit, equity relevant to the suit (should be considered as) stronger.

50-51. The codes of law are deemed to be stronger than the science of wealth. The documents, actual enjoyment and the witnesses are said to be evidences (in a law suit). An oath is prescribed in the absence of one of these. The later incidents are stronger in all the law suits.

52-59. The preliminary (events) are stronger in the case of a mortgage, gift or purchase. (The ownership) of a ground taken possession of forcibly by another with the knowledge of the rightful owner could be disputed only within twenty years. The wealth enjoyed by another (could be disputed by the legitimate owner) only within ten years, except in the case of a mortage, an encroachment, a property held in trust, wealth belonging to an idiot or an infant, or treasures or wealth belonging to the sovereign, to a woman or a brahmin. One who sells away a mortgaged property should pay the value to the owner of the property and pay an equal amount of fine or that befitting his ability to the king. Possession is title, even in the absence of (proof of) continuous enjoyment. But possession without (proof of) even a little enjoyment has no strength (for
the title). An enjoyment with good possession (of a property) becomes valid. An enjoyment without proper possession could not be valid. The possession made by the trespasser should be recovered by a suit. It would be of no avail that the present possessor had got it from the son or the son’s son of the original trespasser. In the case of the death of the possessor, the value of the property should be recovered from the property left by him. An enjoyment without a sound possession could not be a valid reason (against that). (The king) should prevent the encroachment by force or deceit.

60-62. A transaction done by a woman or in the night or inside a room or outside or made by an enemy (as well as that done) by a drunkard, lunatic or one addicted to evil, an infant or a frightened one or one that is defective is not valid. The king should cause (the mortgager) to return to the mortgagee the property mortgaged. If not possible, an amount equal to the property should be paid. The king should pay to the village headman the property stolen by a thief.

63-66. The interest relating to (a loan for which interest accrues) every month is one eightieth (of the amount lent). Otherwise the interest should be two, three, four or five (per cent) in the order of the castes (to which they belonged). It is seventieth part in the case of animals and women, eight times in the case of food, four or three or two times in the case of dress, food grains, gold and other things. If (the money is lent) to a person of a different village, (it should be) ten (per cent) and if beyond the ocean, (it should be) twenty (per cent). (Members of) all castes may pay (rates of) interest of their choice. A king would not be censurable by paying money to those in need. One that would go to the king after having obtained (a loan) would be liable for punishment and that money should be confiscated.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FIFTY-FOUR

Debts and their repayments

Fire-god said:

1-4. A debtor may pay the borrowed money to a creditor in instalments. One has (to pay) to the king after paying to a brahmin first. It is said that the debtor should be made to pay ten per cent of the loan by the king (as fine). In case the debtor had realised his money back, five per cent (of the amount) should be made payable (to the king). (A debtor belonging to) the low caste and impoverished should be made to work in lieu of the debt. A brahmin (debtor) who is impoverished should be made to pay leisurely after the betterment. The money that the creditor does not accept when offered, should be deposited with an arbitrator and it would cease to bear any interest.

5. One that inherits a property, as well as the wife of a deceased person that inherits the property should be made to pay the (incurred) debt. The debt of a sonless owner of a property (should be paid) by the person that inherits the property.

6-7. The debt that is incurred on an undivided family for the sake of the family should also be paid similarly (by the person that inherited that property). When the head of a family is dead or had gone abroad, (it should be done similarly). The wife (is) not (bound to repay) (the loan incurred by the husband or the sons and the father (is not bound to repay) the loan incurred by the son. The husband need not repay the loan incurred by the wife unless it has been (taken) for the sake of the family.

8. The husbands of the women of the gopa (a guard), saumādika (a distiller and seller of spirituous liquors), satīsra (an actor or dancer), rajaka (a washerman) or vyādkha (a hunter) (castes) should repay the loan incurred by them because their livelihood is dependent on them (those women).

9. The wife need not repay any other loan except that (incurred by her husband) with her consent, or that incurred jointly with her husband or that incurred by herself.

10. When the father has gone abroad, is dead, overpowered by misfortune, the loan (incurred by him) should be paid by
the sons and grandsons. If (the loan incurred by the father) is not known (to the son), (it should be paid) on being established by the witness.

11. The son need not repay the debt incurred by the father by drinking or wenching or by way of the balance of fine inflicted by the court or by making improper gifts.

12. A loan should be got by a member of the undivided family against the surety of the brothers, the husband and wife, the father or the son.

13. A surety consists in being a witness, or in giving a guarantee (for the repayment of a debt). When a property is pledged by a person that has no right of possession, the sons of that mortgager should be liable to repay (the incurred loan).

14-16. The sons of the deceased persons who had been sureties as witnesses or as guarantors, need not pay that money. But those who had induced to make the payment should pay (in similar cases). In case if there were many guarantors to an advance made, the guarantors should be made to pay their respective shares. A creditor will have the choice (of realising his dues) from any one of the sureties of the joint bond. A debtor should pay double the amount to his surety, in case if the latter pays the loan with the knowledge of the debtor.

17. If the hypothecated thing is one's own progeny or the wife or cattle or grains, double the amount (has to be paid to redeem). It is said that four times that in the case of dressing material and eight times that in the case of condiments (has to be paid to redeem).

18. A mortgage shall be forfeited if that is not redeemed by paying double the amount. (The right for redemption) would cease at the lapse of the period agreed upon at the time of the mortgage. But it would not cease if enjoyments of the proceeds have been aged upon.

19-20. Interest need not be paid on a thing left as a deposit or in a deposit that has been left for enjoyment. (If the mortgaged property) is lost on account of any reason other than fate or the king, it should be restored (to its original state). On the acceptance of the hypothecated property (by the mortgagee), it becomes valid. If (the mortgaged property) being governed, gets deteriorated, a different property should
be mortgaged. Otherwise the creditor should be paid money (in lieu of it).

21. Money borrowed by pledging one’s character, should be repaid together with interest. Money borrowed on a solemn affirmation should be returned double (that).

22-24. (A mortgaged property) should be released (by the mortgagee), when it is sought for. Otherwise he would be liable for punishment. If the money-lender belongs to one’s own family (and advances money on the security) of one of his coparceners, he should be looked upon as a mortgagee. The value (of that property) should be determined according to the market at that time and it should remain without any interest. The property may be sold without (the consent) of the debtor in his very presence, if the debt on the mortgage gets doubled. The mortgaged property should be released if double the amount is produced (by the debtor).

23-27. A packet that has been entrusted with another without disclosing its contents is (said to be) a deposit and it should be returned in the same condition. If it (the contents of that packet) has been destroyed by (the acts of) the king, fate or the robbers, it need not be restored. If that is found after search and the custodian returns it after being urged (to do so), (the custodian) should be punished to pay an amount equal to that. If the custodian wilfully derives benefit (from that), he is punishable and should pay together with the benefit. The same rule (holds good) in the case of deposits such as yācita, āhita and nyāsa.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FIFTY-FIVE

Description of rules relating to disputes and different kinds of ordeals

Fire-god said:

1-2. There should be five or three witnesses such as those who are ascetics, munificent, born in noble families, truthful, virtuous, honest, having progeny, wealthy and regular in per-
forming the *pañcayajña*. They may all belong to the same *jāti* or *varṇa* or from all (the castes).

3-7a. Those who are not suitable to be witnesses are women, old men, children, cheats, intoxicated, lunatics, injured, actors, heretics, men of the writer caste, those having defective sense organs, those that take food from degraded persons, relatives or friends or enemies (of the persons contesting the dispute) and thieves. All people are deemed to be witnesses in cases of thefts, violence and rashness. A virtuous man accepted by both the parties may be a witness. A person that refuses to answer the questions relating to a loan in which (interest) at the rate of ten per cent (has been allowed) should be made by the king to pay the full amount (together with interest) within fortysix days. The vilest person that does not depose the facts even though he is aware of them, is (considered) as equivalent to the sins of false witnesses and is also liable for similar punishment.

7b-10a. The witnesses (of the plaintiff as well as the defendant) should be questioned in the presence (of the parties) (as follows): “A person making a false statement would incur all (the sins) that would accrue to the sinners, deadly sinners, incendiaries and the murderers of women and children. You also know that the few good deeds that you had done in hundreds of your previous births, would befall that person whom you defeat by fraud.”

10b-13. In the case of conflict of evidences (among the witnesses), (one should accept) the statements of the numerous. (If the statements of the witnesses of both the sides) are equal, then that of the virtuous (should be accepted). In the case of conflict (among the views) of the virtuous, the statement of more virtuous should be accepted. That person whose witnesses make the truthful declaration, would become the winner. That plaintiff whose (witnesses) are different (from the above), his

1. These are the five obligations that a person has to discharge daily—the act of the religious instruction, offering water to the manes, oblations for the gods, oblations to the goblins and entertaining the guests.

2. The word *jāti* denotes the castes in general and the word *varṇa* denotes the four principal castes.
defeat is certain. When a set of witnesses have deposed, if
more virtuous men or double (the previous number) make
statements against that, the previous witnesses become false
witnesses. Then the forgers and (false) witnesses should be
punished separately.

14-15. The punishment would be double that of the (fee
for) litigation. A brahmin (witness in similar circumstances)
should be banished (from the country). A person that conceals,
on account of his ignorance, the statements of evidences heard
from others, should be fined eight times. A brahmin (in similar
circumstances) should be banished (from the country). A false
statement may be made only when a brahmin (stands) to be
capitally punished.

16-19. If a property has been accepted after mutual con-
sent of two parties, the loan-bond should be endorsed by the
witness in the presence of the creditor. That bond should bear
(the details such as) the year, month, fortnight, date, name,
caste, one's own clan, and the name of one's fellow-student,
one's own name and that of the father etc. When the bond has
been completed, the debtor should enter his name in his
own handwriting (and also write), "I, so and so, son of so and
so, fully agree to the statements made above." Then the wit-
tnesses also should write their names after (having written) the
names of their fathers (and write) "I, so and so, son of so and
so, put my name as a witness".

20-21. An unlettered debtor should cause (the writer of
the deed) to write his assent. A witness (that does not know
how to read and write) (should cause his assent to be written)
by another witness in the presence of the other witnesses. Then
the scribe of the deed should write "I so and so, son of so and
so, being requested by both the parties have written this deed"
and then write the deed.

22. A deed that has been written in the handwriting of
the mortgager is valid even without the attestation by the
witnesses, except in (cases) where undue compulsion had been
made.

23. The debt mentioned in a deed has to be discharged
by the three men (the debtor, the son or grandson). A mort-
gage remains in force until the pledge is not redeemed.
24. A new deed has to be written when the old one has been taken abroad or the original writing has been forged or lost or erased or seized or torn or mutilated or burnt.

25-27. One should record in his own hand, things that are explanatory of ambiguous terms, on the back of the deed, such as total, receipt, investigation, indication, relation, addition and means. The creditor should endorse all that he has received from the debtor with his own mark. A deed should be destroyed after paying the debts and another deed of release should be executed. It should duly be attested by the witnesses, if the original one was also made in the presence of witnesses.

28-31. The balance, fire, water, poison and holy water are the divine ordeals (to test) one's innocence. These ordeals (should be instituted) in cases of great offences when the accuser agrees to undergo punishment. Or one may be made to undergo the ordeal, and the other to undertake the agreement to undergo punishment. They may be made to undergo an ordeal even without the agreement in cases of treason and sin. One should not carry the ploughshare, the balance, or the poison for matters of less than a thousand (coins). In the case of treasons one should always agree to carry (these ordeals to show their) innocence. The balance and other (ordeals) are instituted in the case of (matters) exceeding one thousand and the holy water (is instituted) even for minor (offences). If it is lesser than that and the innocence has been established in the ordeal, one should pay fifty (coins). If the offence has been proved, one has to be punished.

32. (The accused) that has bathed together with the dress and observed fast should be called up and made to carry all the ordeals in the presence of the king and brahmins.

33. The balance is for women, boys, the aged, the blind, the lame, brahmins and the sick. The (ordeals of) fire, water and seven *yava*⁴ (weights) of poison are for the *śūdra*.

34. (The accused) that is resorting to the balance is weighed by those conversant with balances. After the balance comes to rest, line is drawn and (the accused) is taken off.

1. a kind of grain.
35-37. (The accused should begin the ordeal thus): "The Sun, the Moon, the Wind, the Fire, the Sky, the Earth, the Waters, the Heart, the god of Death, the Day, the Night, the two Twilights\(^1\), as well as the god of Virtue know the acts of man! O Balance! You are the abode of truth. You were created by the gods in olden days. Speak the truth. O Auspicious one! Deliver me from suspicion. If I am a sinner, O mother! Then lead me downwards. If I am pure then take me upwards."
Thus one should address the balance.

38-42. One should mark the hands of a person that has rubbed rice, and then place seven leaves of the holy fig tree (on those hands) and (fix them) with a string wrapped as many times. (Then he should be made to utter as follows): "(O Agni!) O Purifier! You reside in all beings. O Truthful one! speak the truth like a witness about my good deeds and sins." After he has said this, (the judge) should place a red-hot, round ball of iron weighing fifty palas on both his hands. After he has taken that, he should walk slowly through the seven circles. The inner space of the circle is known as sixteen anagulas (four finger breadth). After he has released the fire and rubbed rice (between his hand), the one that is not burnt gets (freed) as innocent. If the ball falls in between or if there is doubt, he should carry it again.

43-45a. (One should say as below in the water ordeal): "You are the most holy among the holy. O Purifier! You purify the accused. O Varuṇa! (You) protect me with the truth." Having addressed (the water) thus, one should enter the water holding onto the thighs of a man standing in water upto his navel. His innocence would be established, if one bringing back an arrow simultaneously discharged, finds him fully dived (into the water).

(In the case of the ordeal of poison one should address the poison as follows):

45b-47a. "O Poison! the son of Brahmā: One established in truth and Virtue! Deliver me with your truth from this curse. You become ambrosia for me." After having said

1. In the morning and in the evening.
thus, he should take the sārṅga\textsuperscript{1} poison that is got from the Himalaya mountain. His purity should be declared if he could assimilate (the poison) without vomiting.

47b-50. (Alternatively), one should collect the waters for bathing dreadful gods after having worshipped them. (He) should proclaim (that he has not done the crime) and drink three handfuls of that water. He should be deemed undoubtedly pure if no dreadful malady afflicts him within fourteen days. Truth, vehicles, weapons, cattle, grain and gold, the feet of the gods and preceptors and the consecrated tanks are the easy oaths proclaimed for minor matters.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FIFTY-SIX

Description of the procedure for the division of properties

_Fire-god said:_

1-2. A father that desires to partition (his properties), should divide (them) either equally among his sons, or (set apart) a greater portion for the eldest son. The wives that had not been given private property by their husbands or fathers-in-law, should be given a share in the division, if equal divisions are made (for the sons).

3. After having given a little (of the share) to the wealthy that does not wish to have (the share then), the division (should be made afterwards). Unequal divisions made by the father (should be held as) legal.

4. The sons should equally divide (among themselves) the liabilities of their father afterwards. The outstanding debts of the mother (should be borne by) the daughters, if they had no progeny.

5. That which one has earned (by his effort) without the destruction of the paternal property, (that acquired) from friends (as a gift) and through marriage, cannot be claimed by the co-partners (for a share).

\textsuperscript{1} The poison got from the śṛṅga plant.
6. The benefits of a common property should be divided equally. The sons of different fathers (forming an undivided family) should take their shares according to (the shares of) their fathers.

7. Both the father and the son would be entitled to equal shares in the property or wealth of the land acquired by the grand-father.

8. If a son is born to a man through his wife of his own caste after the division of the property, a share should be set apart, even after the settlement of the accounts after it is seen.

9. One should not give to the co-parcenrs an ancestral property that was lost and recovered by him, as well as that acquired by (his own) skill.

10. The property that has been given to one by his parents would be his own. But the mother also would have an equal share in the property that has been divided by the grand-father.

11. Marriage of the unmarried sisters should be done by the brothers already married (in the event of the death of the father) by giving a fourth part of their share.

12. The sons of a brahmin father would be eligible for four, three, two or one share respectively according to the caste (of their mothers). (Similarly) the sons of a warrior caste (would be eligible) for three, two or one shares and that of a tradesman for two or one shares.

13. The property that has been wrongly taken possession of by somebody and divided should again be equally divided. That is the practice.

14. A son got by one not having a son by niyoga through another's wife inherits the properties of both the parents. He (is allowed) by the codes of law to do the obsequies (of his father).

15. A son born to one through his lawful wife (is called) aurasa (legitimate). A daughter’s son (is deemed) to be ranking

---

1. A practice prevalent in ancient times which permitted a childless widow to cohabit the brother or any near kinsman of her deceased husband to raise up issue to him.
equally with him. A son begotten through the wife of a man by one belonging to his own gotra (clan), or by anyone else, is known as kṣetraja\(^1\) (a legitimate son).

16. A son clandestinely begotten in the (paternal) house (of a woman) is known to be born in secret. A son born to a virgin (is known as) kānina and is held to be the son of the maternal grandfather (girl’s father).

17. A son born (of a married woman by another), whether she had menstruated or not, (is known as) paunarbhava. A son given as adoption by his mother or father would be a dattaka (an adopted son).

18. A son sold by them (his original parents) is known as krita (bought). A son adopted without the consent of his parents would be (known as) artificial. A son offering himself (as a son) to another is (known as) dattātman (one that offers himself). A son in the womb (at the time of his mother’s marriage) is known as sahoḍaja (son of a woman pregnant at marriage).

19. A son deserted (by his father) and becoming a filial (of another) is known as apaviddha (abandoned). (All these) are eligible to offer cakes (at the obsequies) and to inherit their shares. Among these, the subsequent ones (are eligible) if the preceding ones do not exist.

20-21. I have described to you the injunctions in the case of sons (born of the parents) of the same castes. A son got by a śūdra out of lust through a slave girl would be entitled to have a share (in the property of his deceased father). On the decease of (his father), his brothers should give him half a share. Such a person should take the entire property (after the death of the father) in the absence of any brothers or son of sisters.

22-23. The wife, daughters, parents, brothers; their sons, one born in the same gotra, a relative, a disciple and co-students (are deemed as heirs to a sonless man), each one of the latter being eligible in the absence of the former. This rule (holds good) in the case of those died without progeny belonging to all the castes.

---

1. One of the twelve kinds of sons allowed by the law for inheritance; the others being, aurasa, paunarbhava, dattaka, krita, kṛtrima, sahoḍaja, apaviddha, gūḍhātpanna, kānina, svayamādatta and taudra. (See Manu IX. 158-60. 166-80)
24. The preceptor, the good disciple, the fellow religious student of the same religious order are duly the heirs to the properties of a vānaprastha (forester), ascetic and a religious student.

25. A coparcener and a brother may give to a coparcener or a brother that is born or may take away from a coparcener or a brother that is dead.

26. The coparcener not born of the same womb should not inherit the property of one not born of the same womb. A coparcener not born of the same womb should not inherit the property of one born of different mother.

27-28. A degraded person, his son, a eunuch, a lame person, a mad man, a dull person, one suffering from incurable diseases should be entitled for maintenance but not a share (in the ancestral property). The sons of these (persons), those born of the same womb and those born to a different mother not having any of the above defects (are permitted) to get their share. The daughters of such persons are to be maintained until they are got married.

29. The wives of men not having sons should be maintained if they follow pious paths. But those (wives) that are unchaste and infidels should be banished.

30. The wealth of women is said to be that given by the father, mother, husband, brother and that presented to her near the fire and the ādhivedanika.¹

31. The presents made to a woman by her relatives at the time of her marriage would be inherited by her relatives in the event of her death without progeny.

32. The wealth of a woman not having progeny (would belong) to the husband after her death (applicable to) all the four castes such as the brahmins etc. The daughters (would be the legal heirs) if they had delivered a child. Otherwise it would go to the father.

33. One who takes away the property given to his daughter is liable to punishment. (He) is bound to defray the expenses incidental to her marriage and maintenance. In the event of her

¹. Property, gifts etc. made to a first wife upon marrying a second.
death, he may take away that given to her after checking the two expenses (mentioned above).

34. A husband need not return the wealth of his wife in the event of (it being spent to meet) a famine, religious observance, illness or on account of imprisonment.

35. One should pay an amount of wealth to his second wife equal with what he has done to his first wife. If he has not given to the first wife already, he should pay a half now.

36. In case that share has been kept as a secret, the division has to be made on being attested by his own people and relatives as witnesses. This should be known as the method by which the division of the house and property and that relating to the dowry (is made).

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FIFTY SEVEN

Settlement of disputes relating to the boundaries of fields

Fire-god said:

1-2. In the event of a dispute relating to the boundary of a field, the guards, the assembly of elders, cowherds, the tillers of the bordering lands and all the foresters should lay down (the boundaries) demarcated by coal, husks, trees, mounds, ant-hills, slopes, bones, and pile of stones.

3. Four or eight or ten guards wearing (garland of) red flowers and red dress should be there in each village for laying the boundaries.

4. (Those that make a) false statement (relating to the boundaries of a field) should be punished with the madhyamasā-hasa.¹ In the absence of men familiar with the fields or the marks of identification, the king himself should demarcate.

5. The same procedure is known (to be applicable) in the case of groves, temples, villages, reservoirs, gardens, houses and channels of rain water.

1. One of three kinds of penalties or modes of punishment.
6. If one transgresses the boundary or encroaches into (another’s) field or removes the boundary, that person is to be punished with the *adhma* or *uttama* or *madhyama* (*sahas*).¹

7. A minor encroachment should not be obstructed if it is for the sake of a bridge that benefits (all). (Similarly) one that encroaches another’s field for a well occupying a little space and providing copious water (should not be obstructed).

8. If a bridge is built in a field without informing its owner, the owner will have the right to its use after it is completed. The king (would have the right to its use) in the absence of an owner.

9. One who does not cultivate or employ (someone) to cultivate in a field that has been tilled should not be given the fruits of the cultivation and the field should be made over to another (for cultivation).

10-11. The owner of a she-buffalo that (trespasses on another’s field and) causes destruction of the grains, should be fined eight *māsas* (a particular weight of gold). (The owner) of a cow (should be fined) four (*māsas*), of a shegoat two (*māsas*) (for the same offence). (They should be levied) twice that told above, if they sit (and watch) them grazing in the pasture land. The same amount (of fine) has to be levied as that for the she-buffalo, if an ass or camel (trespasses into another’s field).

12. The owner of the field would get the same quantity of grains that has been destroyed (as above). The keeper (of the animal) should be beaten and the owner of the cow should get the punishment already described.

13. But it is not objectionable (if the grazing is done) on a field laying along the roadside, or at the end of the grazing grounds of a village if done unintentionally. But if it is done wantonly, (the concerned person) deserves to be finished like a thief.

14. The cows let loose by strong bulls, (the cow) that has delivered (a calf), the cow that has strayed and those that have the keeper should be freed (i.e. not to be punished). (So also cows) injured accidentally or by the king (should also not be punished).

1. Three kinds of fines of varying proportions.
15. The cowherd should return the cows in the evening as entrusted to him (in the morning). A paid servant is bound to pay (the price of the animals) that were killed or lost (in his custody) by his negligence.

16. A cowherd is to be punished in the event of a cow being killed on account of his negligence. In such cases, he has to pay a fine of half of thirteen pānas (pāna is a particular coin) to the master and also (restore a similar) animal.

17. The pasture land should be set apart (at a place) according to the wish of (the people of) the village or being beneficial to the land and the king. A brahmin may collect grass, fuel and flowers from any land as if it were his own.

18. The extent of the interspace between the village and the field should be one hundred dhanus,\(^1\) while that between the market-town (and the field) should be two hundred (dhanus) and that between the city (and the field should be) four hundred (dhanus).

19. If a property is sold to another without disclosing its defects, then (the purchaser) has the right to take it at a lower price. If it is sold at a higher price than its real value (the excess amount has to be returned). If it is sold without defining the boundaries, (the disposer is considered) as a thief.

20. (A man) who has found out a lost and stolen (article) should cause the thief to be apprehended. But if there was a lapse of time and (was found) at a distant place, (the owner) should himself apprehend (the thief) and hand him over (to the authorities).

21. (The purchaser) gets free after showing the seller (of a stolen property). The owner (would get) the property. The king (would get) the fine. The purchaser would get his money back from the seller.

22. Allowance should be made for wear and tear by way of addition or enjoyment (for an article). If it exceeds the limit, a five-fold fine (should be paid) to the king.

23. A man who recovers or takes back a stolen or lost article from another, without intimating the king should be fined (to pay) ninetysix pānas.

---

1. One dhanus is equal to four times the length of the fore-arm.
24. A lost or stolen article recovered by the customs officers or sentinels (should be given) to the owner if it is less than a year (after its loss) and thereafter (it should be) with the king.

25. One should pay (as interest) four panas for a single hoofed animal, five for a slave, two for a buffalo, camel and cow and one fourth of that for a goat and sheep.

26. One may give away (his possessions), except his wife and son, for interest, without causing hardship to his own family members, if not objected to by any of them. If he does not have the progeny, he may give all his possessions.

27. The acceptance (of a property) should be made public, especially of an immovable property. After having given the promised thing that is payable to one, one should not take it back.

28. A person who gives the seed, iron, vehicle, gem, woman, milch animal and a man should wait for ten, one, five, seven days, a month, three days and a fortnight respectively (for interest).

29-31. In the case of gold (that does not get) reduced in fire as well as silver, (interest would be) two palas for (every) hundred palas, eight palas in the case of tin and lead, five in the case of copper and ten for iron. Interest (would be) ten (palas) for hundred for wool and cotton. For mediocre quality it is known to be five palas and in extremely thin varieties it is three palas. The wastage is known to be a thirtieth part (of the original weight) in the case of embroidered and woollen mixed material. No allowance for decay or interest in the case of silk and barks (garments).

32. The experts should declare with certainty the allowance to be made (on things) after knowing the place (of origin) of the things, the season, the wear and tear and the strength of the materials.

33-34. One who has saved the life of his master and has been forcibly made a slave by thieves and sold should be made free (by the king) even by paying a ransom. A religious mendicant who has renounced his order is a slave of the king until his death. For the (four castes), men of the next natural order of castes alone could be a slave, but not of the reverse order.
35. A pupil who has completed his studies should stay for the stipulated period at the house of his preceptor and has to serve him for the food got from him.

36. The king should allot a frontal place to the brahmins (in his city), provide for their livelihood by means of the three Vedas and tell them, “May you adhere to your own duty”.

37-38. One who adheres to the work agreed upon without conflicting with one’s own duties should also be protected by the king with care. One who transgresses the discipline laid down by the king, who swindles the property of the society and who breaks an agreement should be deprived of all his possessions and banished from the country.

39. Everyone should follow the words of those who preach for the welfare of the society. One who does the contrary should be made to pay the first (sāhasa) fine.

40. One who is entrusted with a task relating to the society should offer (to the king) all that he gets. If he himself does not offer, he should be made to pay a fine eleven times (that collected by him).

41. Those who think of public service should be learned in the scriptures and not greedy. (All) should follow the words of those who speak for the welfare of the society.

42. The same rule (holds good) in the case of guild of traders, assembly of interpreters of the scriptures and those professing other religions. The king has to maintain the separate entities of these and govern the former profession.

43. One who does not do a work after having received the wages (for the same) should pay double the amount (as fine). (If the amount) has not been taken, one has to pay an equal amount (as fine). The supplementary grants (given to the servants) should be retained by them.

44. One who gains by trade, cattle or grains without obtaining the previous permission should be made to pay one tenth (of the gain as fine) by the king.

45. It is the discretion of the employer to pay (an employee) if one does work for more than the stipulated period and does work beyond the country that was stipulated. More (money) should be paid if more work has been done.
46. One's wages would be commensurate with the work done by him. If both the parties find it untenable, it should be done as laid down in the scriptures.

47. A carrier should restore to the owner, the article that he was carrying but was lost due to causes other than the government or accident. One who causes obstruction to a public carrier should pay double the amount of the wages.

48. If the carrier abandons the goods at the start, or on the way or on half the way, (he) would be required to pay one seventh or one fourth or the entire wages respectively.

49-53. If the stake at gambling is in the multiples of hundreds, then the king's share would be five hundred (panas). If they are cheats and swindlers, then the king should take one thousand panas. The manager at the gambling house should run it properly and pay the king's share as laid down. The defeated person should be made to deposit the amount that is payable to the victor. One should hear the true words (of the gamblers) patiently. When the king has obtained his share in the reputed society of the gamblers, he should put the defeated in the midst of the gamblers to pay the fine. If not, he should not. They are who see and the witnesses in such transactions. Those who indulge in false die and fraudulent ways should be banished by the king along with the marks (on their person). There should be only one leader of the gambling house in order to know the cheats (in gambling). The same is the procedure in gambling with fighting animals and betting after setting animals to fight.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FIFTY-EIGHT

Punishments for making defamatory speeches and committing other offences

Fire-god said:

1. If a person abuses the sick and men having defective organs, by means of lampoons, whether true or untrue or otherwise, he should be fined thirteen and a half panas.
2. The king should levy a fine of twentyfive (pañas) on one that abuses another (with the words) "I copulate with your sister or (I copulate with your) mother".

3. A punishment should be awarded after due consideration of the higher or lower caste. (A man of the higher caste committing adultery (on women) of the lower caste (should be levied) half (the fine) and (a man of the lower caste committing adultery) on (women) of the higher caste (should be levied) double (the fine).

4. The men of lower orders of castes censuring the men of the next higher order should be levied double or three times the fine. But in the case of censures made by men of the higher orders on those of lower orders, half the fine should be levied.

5. The fine (that should be levied) on a capable person uttering words threatening the injury of the hands, neck, eyes and thighs (of another) should be levied (the sāhasa) fine. It is half the fine, if it relates to the foot, nose, ear and arms.

6. An incapable person who says as above should be levied a fine of ten pānas. So also a capable person should give surety for the safety of that person.

7. The middle sāhasa fine should be levied on that person who abuses one ascribing degrading sin (to him). The first kind of sāhasa should be levied on one who ascribes (another) with minor sin of second degree.

8. The highest sāhasa (should be levied) for offences villifying the brahmins, kings and gods. Middle (sāhasa) (should be levied for offences villifying) one's own relatives and the members of the village assembly and the first (sāhasa) (for speaking ill of one's own) village or country.

9. In the case of charge of murder without witness, (the judge) should pronounce (the judgement) after considering the marks, reasoning and written testimony, in order to safeguard (himself) from being misled by false marks.

10. The fine for touching (another) with ashes, mud or dust is said to be ten pānas and for touching with filth or the heels or spitting, double (that).

11. (For offences against women) of one's own (caste) single (fine should be levied) and twice that in the case of other women as well as of higher castes. The fine is half in the
case of (offences against those) belonging to lower castes. (For offences done) under delusion or the influence of liquor, (there is) no punishment.

12. The organ of a non-brahmin that inflicts pain on a brahmin should be cut off. First (sāhasa) punishment (should be presribed) for one who raises (one's arms and strikes a brahmin) and half that (fine) if one touches.

13. If the hand and the leg are held and pulled, the fine is ten and twenty (panas) respectively. If (several men) one by one (hold and pull), the scriptures (prescribe) the middle sāhasa for all of them.

14. The fine for pulling the feet or hair or the garment or hand is ten panas. The fine for causing affliction or pulling or dragging after putting cloth around or placing foot (on a person) is one hundreded (panas).

15. One who causes misery by means of a log of wood etc. and (if there be) no blood (injury), should be fined thirtytwo panas. Double that (is the fine), if blood is seen.

16-17. The middle (sāhasa) fine is levied for breaking hand, foot and teeth and cutting ear and nose. Similarly one causing injurious wounds, (one who) strikes fatally, (one who) impairs (organs of) movement, eating and speaking, (one who) pierces eyes etc., and (one who) breaks neck, arm and thigh (should be punished with) middle sāhasa.

18. If many persons (jointly) assault a man, each one of them (should be levied) double the (amount of) fine laid down before. Articles (forcibly) taken away after a quarrel should be returned and the fine is said to be double.

19. A person who causes grief should pay the cost of recovery (of the article) and the fine is said to be the same as laid down in the case of a quarrel.

20. A ferry-man collecting a land-toll should be punished (to pay) ten panas. A brahmin (going to dine) at the neighbour's house uninvited, (shall be liable) for the same punishment.

21. One has to be fined five, ten, twenty and sixty panas respectively for assaulting, piercing, cutting and breaking the house (of another person).
22. One should be fined sixteen *pañas* for having thrown into another's house, an object, that would cause misery or death to another. The abettor should be fined the middle *sāhasa*.

23. One should duly be fined two *pañas* onwards for having caused misery or bleeding injury or breaking the limbs of the body of a small animal.

24. (One should be fined) the middle (*sāhasa*) and should pay the price for having cut off the genital organ (of an animal) or having killed it. In the case of bigger animals, in these instances, the fine would be double (the above).

25. The fine is forty (*pañas*) for lopping the branches, trunk of the tree or the whole tree that is growing and providing sustenance.

26. One who causes another to indulge in a violent act shall have to pay double the fine and one who says that he would pay (if fine is imposed) and causes another to do (a violent act) (shall be required to pay) four times (that fine).

27-28. It has been fixed that, a person who reviles or shows disrespect to a respectable person, one who beats the wife of his brother, one who does not give the promised gift, one who breaks the summer-house built in the midst of water and one who injures the neighbours, shall be fined fifty *pañas*.

29-32. One who copulates with a licentious widow, one who assaults (another) uttering abuses, one who abuses (another) without any reason, a man of the low caste touching the men of higher castes, a *śūdra* (a man of the fourth caste) eating the meal at the time of the ceremony of a mendicant and in the divine and ancestral ceremonies, one who makes an improper oath, an incompetent person who does the act of a competent person, one who castrates the bulls or small animals, one who hides a well-known matter, one who destroys the foetus of a servant woman, one who disregards any one of the following—father, son, sister, brother, husband or wife, preceptor and pupil, that has not been degraded, shall be fined a hundred (*pañas*).

33. A washerman who wears the dress of others (given to him for washing) should be fined three *pañas*. It is ten *pañas* if
he sells them or requests others to take (them) without any charges.

34. One who deals with those who make false (marks) on weights and measures and make counterfeit coins should be fined the highest (sahasā).

35. The coin-tester who declares the genuine as counterfeit and the counterfeit as genuine should be fined the first (sahasā).

36. A physician who gives wrong medical treatment to birds and animals, men (in general) and men of royal (household), should be punished with the first, middle and the highest fine respectively.

37. (An officer) who keeps in custody a man that should not be kept incarcerated and allows an untried (criminal) to escape, should be fined the highest (sahasā).

38. One who steals an eighth part (of the real weight) of an article, by means of (false) scale or (fraudulent) measurement, should be fined twentytwo paṇas, no matter, whether (the real weight) has been increased or decreased by that fraction.

39. One who mixes low-standard (material) in medicines, oils, salts, perfumes, grains and molasses etc. should be fined sixteen paṇas.

40. A thousand (paṇas) is said to be the fine (to be imposed) on the artisans who collectively (indulge) in affecting the value (of the goods) (or cause) the decrease or the increase of the wealth.

41. It is considered to be profitable for the traders to sell or purchase everyday, goods that are dependent on the king.

42. A trader should take five per cent profit on indigenous goods and ten percent (profit) on foreign goods that are bought and sold immediately.

43. (A trader), after having added the incidental expenses relating to the goods, to (the price) of the goods, should settle its price with the seller or purchaser.

44. A trader not delivering the goods to the purchaser from whom the cost has been collected, should be made to pay (the amount) along with the profit or the profit (allowed) on the foreign (goods) if (the goods) have come from the foreign (country).
45. Goods that are sold (already) could (again) be sold, if the previous purchaser has not taken delivery (of the goods). The defects in the goods due to the purchaser's fault should be borne only by the purchaser.

46. In the case of any damage to the goods caused by political disturbances or natural calamities, or due to non-delivery at the desired time, the consequences have to be borne only by the seller.

47. The fine payable by a seller for the damage or the apparent damage to goods sold through his agent would be double the value of the cost (of the goods).

48. A trader who has purchased the goods without the knowledge of the decrease or increase (in their prices) should not reopen the negotiation. In case he does so, he should be punished (to pay) one sixth (of the value of the whole stock).

49-50. The profits and losses of traders trading as partners for the sake of profit, (should be divided) proportionately to their shares in the capital, or according to agreement made (at the commencement of the business). (A partner) should make good the loss sustained by him on account of doing the prohibited thing or doing a thing that he has not been asked to do or on account of folly. A partner who has saved (the goods) from destruction is eligible to get one tenth (of the value of the goods).

51. The king shall take a twentieth part (of the value) of the abandoned goods as tax. The contraband (goods) fit for royal use and sold (to someone) should go to the king.

52. A deceitful purchaser or seller giving out false measures and going away from the toll office should be fined eight times (the value of the goods).

53. Relatives and rightful heirs who have come should get the properties of a person on his death or his settlement abroad and the king (should get) in the absence of them (the legal heirs).

54. The (following) injunctions have been laid down for the officiating priest and ploughman: They should eschew dishonesty. They should not be greedy. They should get the task done by (employing) another in the case of (personal) incapacity.
55. A thief is apprehended by constables on finding the stolen property in his possession, by (his) foot-print, his past crime and dirty clothes.

56-57. Others that hide their caste, name etc. should also be held on account of suspicion. Persons addicted to gambling, wenching and drinking and those who turn pale and speak in a dry and broken voice (should also be held). Those who enquire about the properties and houses of others, those who wander in disguise, those who spend (much) without income, those who sell lost goods (should also be held).

58. If one who is held on suspicion for theft cannot expiate (himself), he should restore the stolen property. He should be punished as a thief.

59. Stolen (articles) should be recovered from the thief and he should be put to death by different (methods). A brahmin (convicted of theft) should be branded and banished from his country.

60-61a. The headman of a village should be held responsible for murder and theft, if (the criminal) has not left his jurisdiction. He should be brought to account in the village where he sets his foot. Similarly five or ten villages within a radius of two miles (of the place) (are held responsible).

61b-62a. Those men who abduct the captives, horses and elephants and those who murder violently should be put on the (iron) stake.

62b-64. A stealer of clothes and a pick-pocket should be deprived of both the hands (i.e., hands should be cut off). (Or) for the latter offence, one hand and leg should be cut off. (Putting) a thief or a murderer to death by means of giving food or stimulant, (or by means of) fire, water, mantra or weapon is known as excellent punishment. The highest (sāhasa) (should be) the punishment for causing abortion/miscarriage by means of a weapon.

65. The highest or the lowest (fine) (should be imposed) on those who kill a man or a woman. A woman who kills a man by giving poison should be fastened to a stone and thrown into water.

66. A woman who kills by giving poison or setting fire to
her preceptor or offspring should be deprived of her ears, hands, nose and lips and killed by (employing) cows.

67. Incendiaries of fields, dwelling houses, forests, villages, pasture lands and threshing floors and a person who has had intercourse with the king’s wife should be burnt by fire fed on straw placed around.

68. A man should be caught by the hair when he is having adultery with other women. The highest (sahasā) is the fine if (the woman belonged) to his own caste and middle fine (is prescribed) if (the woman belonged) to the lower caste.

69a. (But) if (the woman) belonged to the higher caste (than the adulterer), the man should be killed and the ears of the woman should be cut off.

69b-71a. One who forcibly removes the garments covering the waist, breast, navel and braids (of a woman), and one who engages in conversation (with a woman) at an inappropriate place and time and who stays with her (similarly) (is liable to be fined). If it is prohibited for a woman, she has to pay (a fine) of one hundred (pañas) and (if for a man), he (has to pay) two hundred (pañas). (In spite of the prohibition if they indulge in the above crimes), they have to be fined as in the case of adultery.

71b. A person mating with an animal shall be fined one hundred (pañas), and (one mating) with a woman of low caste or with a cow (shall be fined) the middle (sahasā).

72. A person (who mates) with a slave girl or a maid-servant held in captivity, though otherwise fit for cohabitation, should be fined fifty pānas.

73. The fine is said to be ten pānas if one forcibly copulates with a slave girl. One who mates with a woman of the last caste and a woman mendicant should be fettered and banished (from the country).

74. A person who adds or omits in copying the royal edict or one who releases a seducer should be fined the highest (sahasā).

75a. One who pollutes a brahmin (by mixing) forbidden food, should be fined the highest (sahasā).

75b-76a. One who deals in counterfeit gold and one who
sells unclean meat should be maimed and fined the highest (śāhāsa).

76b-77. An owner who releases the wild boars and horned cattle, though he is capable (of keeping them penned), should pay the first śāhāsa (as fine). (If it is accompanied) by shouting, (the owner should pay) double (the fine). (A man) who calls an innocent man a thief should be made to pay a fine of five hundred (pañās).

78-79. One who utters undesirable words against the king, one who abuses the same, one who sells things connected with a dead body, one who beats his preceptor, one who divulges his (preceptor's) mantra, should be banished (from the country) with his tongue cut off. The fine for a person who rides the carriage or sits on the seat of the king, is the middle śāhāsa.

80. The two eyes should be plucked out in the case of a person who acts hostile to the king or the nation. A śūdra living like a brahmin (should be) fined eight hundred (pañās).

81. If one has been defeated in the proper way, thinks that he is unconquered, he should be defeated (again) when he comes and should be punished (to pay) double the (amount of) fine.

82. A king who has fined a person unjustly should offer the amount to (lord) Varuṇa1 and pay thirty times (the amount) to the brahmīns.

83. Piety, wealth, fame, esteem of mankind, favour, love of the subjects and permanent residence in heaven, dispensing justice even as (people) watch are the seven qualities of a king.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND FIFTY-NINE

The application of the mantras of the Rgveda

Fire-god said:

1. I shall (now) describe to you the application (of the mantras) of the Rg (veda), Yajur (veda), Sāma (veda) and

1. Lord of ocean and righteousness.
Aṭṭhaṅga (veda) that yield enjoyment and emancipation when repeated and (are used for making) oblations (as) described by Puṣkara to Rāma.

Puṣkara said:

2. I shall (now) describe the (religious) rites (relating) to each one of the Vedas. You listen first to the application of the Rg (veda) that would yield enjoyment and emancipation.

3. The repetition of the Gāyatri (mantra)\(^1\) especially with (the practice) of prāṇāyāma (regulated breathing), (while remaining) in the water as well as at (the time of making) oblations confers the fulfilment of heart’s desires.

4. O Brahmin! The repetition of the Gāyatri ten thousand times by a man eating only in the night and bathing many times (during the day), destroys all the sins then and there.

5. One who repeats (the mantra) a lakh times while eating the oblations, becomes fit for emancipation. The praṇava (the syllable Om) is identical with the Supreme Braman and its repetition destroys all the sins.

6. One who repeats the syllable Om while remaining in waist-deep water and drinks the water becomes free from all sins.

7. (The praṇava consists of) three mātras (syllabic instants), three Vedas, three gods (Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Śiva) and three fires.\(^2\) The mahāvyāhṛtis\(^3\) are the seven worlds\(^4\). An oblation made with these destroys all the sins.

8. Gāyatri is the most excellent (among the mantras fit) for repetition. The mahāvyāhṛtis are also of similar nature. O Rāma! The aghumārṣaṇa (sūkla)\(^5\) (destroyer of sins) should be repeated (while remaining) in the water.

9-11a. The hymn agnimile purohitam\(^6\) (is sacred) for the Fire-god. One should repeat (this hymn) over a year holding

---

1. RV. 3. 62.10.
2. The three sacrificial fires—gārhapatya, dhavanīya and dakṣīṇa.
3. The syllables bhūḥ, bhūah, svāḥ, mahaḥ, janaḥ tapaḥ and satyam.
4. The same as in footnote 2 above.
5. RV. 10.190.
6. RV. 1.1.1.
the fire on the head, (performing) oblation three times (a day) with soma (juice), living on alms and without lighting the fire (for cooking). Then the seven rks (hymns) known as Vāyu etc. should be daily repeated devoutly. Thus one will realise all his desires.

11b. One who desires to improve his memory should repeat the hymn known as sadasaspatim\(^1\).

12-13a. These nine hymns (beginning with) anvayo yan\(^2\) are said to be destroyers of death. One who is a captive or being obstructed should repeat (the hymn) sunahsepan \(ṛṣiṃ\)\(^3\). One becomes free from all sins (by this). One who is sick becomes free from sickness.

13b-14. One who is desirous of (gaining) permanent pleasures and the friendship of the wise Purandara (Indra) should repeat daily the sixteen hymns (beginning with) indrasya.\(^4\) One who repeats (the hymn) hiranyastūpaṃ\(^5\) will cause affliction to the enemies.

15-16a. One who repeats (the hymn) ye te panthāḥ\(^6\) will be safe on his journey. One who praises lord Ṣtāna with six Rudra hymns everyday or one who offers oblation to Rudra will have greatest peace.

16b-17a. One who extolls the rising Sun with (the hymn) ‘ud’\(^7\) and offers water with folded palms seven times will be able to dispel his mental grief.

17b-18. One who repeats the half hymn duśantam\(^8\) ending with yadvipra will get his sin destroyed within seven nights. One who desires health or one who is sick should repeat (the hymn) praskannasyottamam\(^9\).

---

1. RV. 1.18.6.
2. Not traceable.
3. Not traceable.
4. RV. 1.32.1.
5. Probably RV. 10.149. 5a.
6. RV. 1.35.11a.
7. See Bloomfield, *Vedic Concordance* p. 261.
8. RV. 1.50.13.
19-20. One who repeats the half hymn uttamastasya\(^1\) in various postures will get long life; if it is repeated at midday one will get radiance; if (repeated) at sunset one will afflict his enemies. One who repeats the hymns na vadhaḥ\(^2\) will destroy his enemies.

21. One who repeats the eleven supaṇa\(^3\) hymns will accomplish all the wishes. One who repeats (the hymn) ādhyātmikī ka\(^4\) will get emancipation.

22-23. (One who repeats the hymn) a no bhadra\(^5\) will get long life. One should look at the rising moon with (the repetition of) the hymn tuam soma and worship with the twig in the hand. He will certainly get garments. One who desires (long) life should always repeat the hymn of Kautsa (beginning with) imām.\(^6\)

24. By glorifying the Sun at midday with (the hymn) apanaḥ sūtecaḥ\(^7\), one gets freed from sin like (a bow) when the arrow is discharged.

25-26. One’s pathway becomes safe by the repetition of (the hymn) jātavedasa\(^8\). One gets free from all fears. That person enjoying auspicious things will get houses. This (hymn) destroys the bad dream of the previous night. One should repeat (the hymn) pramandina\(^9\) and (a woman) who is delivering a child will do so with ease.

27. A man will get free from all sins after bathing with (the repetition of the hymn) upannindram\(^10\) and offering clarified butter as oblation (while repeating) the seven Vaiśvadeva (hymns).

28-29. One who repeats (the hymn) imām\(^11\) always will get all his desires fulfilled. One who fasts for three nights and

---

1. Not traceable.
2. Not traceable.
3. Cf. RV. 105.1a.
5. RV.1.89.1a.
7. RV. 1.97.1a.
8. RV. 1.99.1a.
10. Could not be traced.
offers the twigs of *udumbara* (tree) dipped in clarified butter with (the repetition of) the two (hymns) *mā nastoka*¹ etc. after becoming pure will cut all the fetters of death and live free from disease.

30-31a. One who having glorified Lord Śambhu with (the repetition of) this hymn with arms raised, binds the tuft into a knot while repeating the hymn *mānastoka*, no doubt, becomes invincible by all beings.

31b-32a. One should worship the Sun daily at the three twilights with (the repetition of the hymn) *citram*² holding the twig. Thus he will get the desired wealth.

32b-33. One will destroy the entire bad dream and get good food by the repetition of (the hymn) *atha svapna*³ in the morning and noon everyday. (The hymn) *ubhe pumān* is said to destroy the demons.

34. One who repeats the hymn *ubhe vāsā*⁴ will get all the pleasures. A person repeating (the hymn) *na sāgan*⁵ will escape from the murderer.

35. One who repeats (the hymn) *kayā šubhā*⁶ will attain caste-excellence, and (the hymn) *imāṃ nyasomām*⁷ will give all the pleasures.

36. Conveying obeisance with (the hymn) *pitaḥ*⁸ one will always acquire riches. Oblation made with ghee with (the repetition of the hymn) *agni nayā*⁹ also shows the path.

37. One who repeats *susīkṣa*¹⁰ will always get a progeny of heroes. One is able to destroy all poisons by (the repetition of) the hymn *kaṃkato na*.¹¹

---

1. RV. 1.114. 8a.
2. Same as above.
3. RV. 1.115.1a.
5. Could not be traced.
6. RV. 1.165.1a.
7. Could not be traced.
8. Could not be traced.
9. RV. 1.189.1a.
11. RV. 1.191.1a.
38. One will get all the pleasures by (the repetition of) the hymn *yo jāta*. One will get an excellent friend by (the repetition of) the hymn *gānānām*.

39-41a. (One should repeat) the hymn *yo me rājan* that destroys bad dream. One who commences a journey and faces an unpraiseworthy or praiseworthy enemy should repeat the (hymn) *kwidaṅga*. One will enjoy all the desired pleasures by repeating the excellent hymn *ādhyātmika* consisting of twenty-two verses on the full and new moon days.

41b-43. One should offer an oblation of clarified butter with concentrated (mind) repeating the hymn *kṛṇusva*. One will take away the lives of enemies and destroy even the demons (by this). One should worship daily the Fire (god) with the hymn *pari*. The Fire (god) having a face on every side Himself protects that person on all sides. One should look at the Sun, (remaining) pure and (repeating) the (hymn) *hamsaḥ śucīsad*.

44-47. A man about to cultivate a field should offer oblations of pot-boiled porridge at the centre of the field as laid down with the five (hymns) *svaṁ svāhā*. A farmer should derive his plough in the appropriate manner (and offer oblations) to (the gods) Indra, Maruts, Parjanya and Bhaga. One should then worship Indra and these deities with perfumes, garlands and prostrations (after having worshipped) the ploughshare (saying) (the yoke) has been fastened for the sake of grains. Agriculture will thus always thrive and the work relating to sowing (the seeds), cutting, threshing and ploughing will yield profuse results.

48-49. One will get the desired things from the Fire (god)
by (the recitation of) the hymn *samudrāt*. One who worships the Fire (god) with the two hymns (called) *viśvānara*, surmounts all difficulties, gets undiminishing fame, abundant wealth and unsurpassed victory.

50. One gets the desired riches by propitiating (the Fire god) with (the hymn) *agne tvam*. A person desirous of having progeny should repeat the three hymns of Varuṇa daily.

51-52. (Each) morning, one should recite the three *svasti* hymns, whereby one (will) always secure great prosperity. By the recitation of (the hymn) *svasti panthām* one will have safe journey. One who desires to conquer (should repeat the hymn) *vanaspati*, (by which) enemies will be laid down with disease. (By the recitation of the same hymn) a woman having a dead foetus will have a good delivery.

53. One who is desirous to get rain should employ the hymn *acchāvada* after fasting and wearing wet clothes. It will rain in no time.

54. A person who desires to have a cow should repeat (the hymn) *manasaḥ kāma*. One who desires to have progeny should bathe (reciting the hymn) *kardamena*, after becoming pure and practising vow.

55-56. A man who wants to acquire kingdom should bathe with (the repetition of the hymn) *āsvapūrṇām*. A brahmin should bathe (standing) on a deer-skin as laid down. A king (should bathe standing) on a tiger-skin and a man of the merchant class on a goat (skin) in the same way. It has been declared that ten thousand oblations (should be done) in each case.

---
1. RV. 4.58.1a.
2. Cf. RV. 186.1b and 7.76.1b.
3. RV. 5.24.1a.
5. RV. 5.51.15a.
6. RV. 6.47.26a.
7. RV. 5.83.1a.
8. RV. khila 5.87.10a.
9. RV. khila 5.87.11a.
10. RV. khila 5.87.9a.
57. If a person desires to have (the herds of cattle) always undiminishing (in his cowpen), he should worship the cow, the mother of the worlds, in the cowpen with (the recitation of) the hymn āgāvo\(^1\).

58. A king should consecrate the (royal) drum with the three (hymns beginning with) upa\(^2\). (By this) he will get radiance and strength and rout the enemy.

59. One who is surrounded by the demons should repeat the hymn rakṣoghnam\(^3\) holding grass in the hand. By repeating the hymn ye ko ca jama\(^4\) one will gain long life.

60. One should consecrate the constituents of his army by the hymn jimūta\(^5\) first like a linga. Then the king will destroy the enemies in the battle.

61-62. One will gain undiminishing wealth by (the recitation of) the three hymns (beginning with) āgneya\(^6\). One may fix goblins by (the repetition of) the hymn amivaha\(^7\) in the night. One should repeat this hymn in danger, difficulty, when caught in a fort, taken as a prisoner, while setting out some time, while running away, or when held as a captive.

63-64a One should fast for three nights with self-control, boil sweat gruel and cast one hundred oblations with that with (the repetition of) the hymn tryambaka\(^8\) in honour of (Lord) Śiva. One will thus live happily for hundred years.

64b-65. One should worship the rising Sun and the Sun at the middle (of the day) after bathing and with the hymn taccakṣuḥ\(^9\) if one desires to have long life. The hymn (called) indra soma,\(^10\) (when repeated), is said to destroy the enemy.

66. A person who has lost his vow by mistake or on account

---

1. RV. 6.28.1a.
2. Cf. Bloomfield, Vedic Concordances pp. 2 64-68.
3. RV. 10.82.1a.
4. Could not be traced.
5. RV. 6.75.1a.
7. RV. 7.55.1a.
8. RV. 7.59.12a.
9. RV. 7.66.16a.
of association with the vrātyas\(^1\), should fast and offer oblation with clarified butter with (the recitation of the hymn) tvamagnে vratap\(\text{\textae} 2\).

67. A person who repeats the hymn aditya\(^3\) and samrāja\(^4\) will get victory in debate. One will become free from great fear by (the repetition of) the four (hymns beginning with) mahi\(^5\).

68. One will get all the pleasures by the repetition of the hymn yadi hyetat\(^6\). One will destroy his enemies by the repetition of the fortytwo aindra\(^7\) hymns.

69-70. One gets good health by repeating (the hymn) vācāmahi\(^8\). A person who eats food repeating the two (hymns) sanno bhava\(^9\) after becoming clean and controlling the senses and touches the heart with the hand will not be attacked by diseases. One will destroy the enemy by offering oblations with (the hymns) uttamedam\(^10\) after bathing.

71. One will get food by making oblation with the hymn sanno' gnir\(^11\). One will get free from the defects of the quarters (on journey) by (repeating) the hymn kanyāvārasrī\(^12\).

72. One is able to subjugate the whole universe by the repetition (of the hymn) yadetya kavya\(^13\) at (sun) rise. One's speech gets refined by the repetition of (the hymn) yadvāk\(^14\).

73. One will get good speech by repeating (the hymn) vāco vidam\(^15\). The pāvamānya\(^16\) hymns are considered to be most sacred.

---

1. A man of the first three classes who has lost caste owing to the non-performance of the principal purificatory rites enjoined.
2. RV. 8.11.1a.
5. RV. 1.22.13a.
6. Could not be traced.
7. Could not be traced.
8. RV Khila 5.6.7.
9. RV Khila 10.37.10.
10. Could not be traced.
11. Cf. RV. 7.35.4.
12. RV. 8.91.1.
13. Could not be traced.
14. RV 8.100.10.
15. Could not be traced.
74. The thirty vaikhānasa\(^1\) hymns are considered to be extremely sacred. O Foremost among the sages! the parasva\(^2\) hymns are said to be sixtytwo.

75. The sixty-seven hymns—svādiṣṭayā\(^3\)—are declared as destroyers of all sins, purifiers and conferrers of welfare.

76. The six hundred and ten hymns of pāvamānyā\(^4\) when repeated and used for making oblations will enable one to conquer the dread of death.

77. One should repeat (the hymns) āpo hiṣṭha while standing in the water to destroy the fear of sin. A man passing through a desert should repeat (the hymn) pradevanna\(^5\) after the control (of senses).

78. When one is haunted by the fear of death, one will get (the end of) his life quickly. One should repeat the single hymn prāveyābhi\(^6\) mentally in the night.

79. (If it is repeated) at dawn or at sunrise one will get victory in gambling. One who has lost his way will find his way by (repeating the hymn) mā pragāma\(^7\).

80-81a. If one thinks that the life of a friend of himself is running out, he should bathe and touch the head of the friend (reciting the hymn) yatteyan\(^8\) thousand times for five days. He will thus find him long-lived.

81b-82. A wise man should offer a thousand oblations with ghee with (the repetition of the hymn) idam medhya\(^9\). One who desires to have cattle (should do it) at the cowpen and one who desires riches, at the crossroads. One who repeats (the hymn) vayah suparna\(^10\) will acquire wealth.

---

1. Could not be traced.
2. Cf. parasya RV. 8.75.15.
3. RV. 9.1.1a.
4. See 73.2.
5. RV. 10.9.10a.
6. Could not be traced.
7. Could not be traced.
8. RV. 10. 75.1.
9. 'RV. 4.5.6.
10. Kaṇha Sam. 9. 19a; TB. 2.5.8.3a.
83. One will become free from all sins by the repetition of (the hymn) havisyanthiyam. His diseases will get cured and the digestive power increased.

84. (The hymn) yā osadhayaḥ (when repeated) is a means of securing prosperity and curing all the diseases. One who wishes to have rain should employ (the hymn) bhraspati ṛtī.

85. (The hymns) sarvatra and pratiratha are known (to confer) supreme peace. (The recitation of the hymn) sūta saṅkāśyapaṁ daily is commended for a person desirous to have progeny.

86. A person who (recites the hymn) aham rudra becomes an eloquent speaker. The learned person who recites (the hymn) rāti ṛtī in the nights is not born again.

87. The person who recites the Ṛatrīśūkta in the night spends the night safely. By doing the recitation of (the hymn) kalpayaṇī daily (one will be able to) destroy the enemies.

88. (The recitation of) the great Dākṣaiṇa hymn confers longevity and radiance. A person who has undertaken a vow should recite (the hymn) uṭa devā, that will destroy the diseases.

89. When there is fear from fire, one should recite the hymn ayamagne jani. One should repeat (the hymn) aranyāṇi in the forests to destroy the fear therein.

90. (One who recites the two hymns) with devotion to

---

2. MS. 2.7.13a: 93.1.
3. Taitt. Sam. 1.8.22.2a.
4. Could not be traced.
5. Could not be traced.
6. Could not be traced.
9. Could not be traced.
10. Could not be traced.
11. Could not be traced.
14. Cf. RV. 10.146.1a; TB. 2.5.6a.
15. Could not be traced.
(goddess) Brāhma (the goddess of speech) (and makes use of) brāhma and sādvarī (the two herbs) together with water or ghee separately will gain intelligence and wealth.

91. One who desires to conquer his enemy in the battle (should recite the hymn) māsa. (The repetition of the hymn) brahmaṣaṃgīnḥ samvidānām prevents the death of the child in the womb.

92. After getting pure one should recite the hymn apaihi, that destroys (the effects of) bad dreams. One gains supreme concentration by the repetition of (the hymn) yeneda.

93. (The recitation of the hymn) mayo bhūrdava is an excellent means of securing the welfare of the cattle. One will ward off sorcery or jugglery by (the repetition of) this (hymn).

94. One should repeat (the hymn) mahi triṇāmavaro'stu for securing one's welfare on his journey. One should repeat (the hymn) aṅgaye vidviṣaṇ, which will destroy the enemies.

95-96. The presiding deities of the houses should be worshipped with the hymn vāstoṣpate. The procedure relating to the repetition has been told. That relating to the oblation has to be known as different. The (prescribed) fee has to be paid at the end of the oblation. (There will be) expiation of the sin by (offering) an oblation. The oblation done with food appeases by the offer of food and gold as gift.

97-99. The blessings of brahmans will be unfailing. One should bathe outside in every case. Oblations made with the white mustard, barley, grains, milk, curd, ghee and the twigs of the kṣirasvēṣa-s, yield all the pleasures. The twigs of thorny (trees), black mustard, blood, poison and stone (are used as oblation) in incantation. Saktu, milk, curd, food collected as

1. Could not be traced.
2. Could not be traced.
5. Taitt. Sam. 7.4.17.1a.
6. Ma. 1.5.4a; 70.7; 1.5.11; 79.9.
7. Could not be traced.
8. Taitt. Sam. 3.4.10.1a.
9. The four trees—nyagrodha, udāmba, aśvattha and madhūka
10. The flour of barley first fried and then ground.
alms, fruits and roots are the food while offering an oblation. Thus the use of the hymns of Rgveda has been explained.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SIXTY

*The use of the hymns of Yajurveda*

Puṣkara said:

1-2. I shall describe the use (of the hymns) of Yajur (veda), that yield enjoyment and emancipation. Listen to me: O Rāma: The great vyāhrtis\(^1\) are considered to be preceded by the syllable om. They destroy all sins and yield all pleasures. A wise man should worship the gods with thousand oblations of clarified butter.

3. O Rāma: This confers the desired pleasures. One who desires peace should offer (oblation) with barley. (One should offer) with sesamum for the destruction of sin.

4. (One should offer oblation) with grains and white mustard that will confer all the pleasures. (Offering oblations) with the twigs of udumbara (tree) is commended for one who desires cattle.

5. One who desires food (should offer oblation) with curd and one who desires peace (should) with milk. One who desires plenty of gold (should offer oblation) with the twigs of apāmārga.

6. One who seeks a maiden should offer oblation of jāti flowers that have been strung together in pairs and soaked in ghee. One who desires to have (governorship over) a village should offer (oblations of) sesamum and rice.

7. The oblations (of the twigs) of śākhoṭa, vāṣā and apāmārga (trees) (are commended) for bringing (others) under control. O Son of Bhṛgu (Paraśurāma): (oblation) of twigs mixed with poison and blood (should be made) for causing the death of one after becoming sick.

---

1. The syllables bhūḥ, bhuvā, svāh, mahaḥ, janaḥ tapaḥ and satyam.
8-9. One who is angry (should act) perfectly in the above manner in order to kill his enemies. O Brahmin: After having made an image of the king made up of rice one should offer a thousand oblations. The king will thus be subjected to one’s control. Flowers (are to be used) by one who desires clothes. (The offering of) dūrva (grass) destroys disease.

10. It is laid down that strong scents (should be used) by one who desires to gain the splendour of a realised soul. Oblation should be offered with the ash of husk and thorns in retaliatory enchantments.

11-12. (In incantation) to cause animosity, the wings of a crow and owl (should be offered). O Brahmin! One should offer the ghee of a black cow to fire at (the time of) the lunar eclipse and partake of it after having mixed it with the residue of powdered vacā (a kind of aromatic root) after incantation a thousand times. This will make him intelligent.

13-14a. A peg of eleven inches made of iron or khadira (tree) should be buried in the house of the enemy after repeating (the hymn) dvīsata vadho’sī. This act of magical incantation for (the destruction of) the enemy has been narrated to you.

14b-15. By the recitation of (the hymn) cakṣusya one will get back lost eyesight. (The repetition) of the section (of the hymn beginning with) upayujata will procure food. One will be free from difficulties by offering oblation of dūrva (grass) (with the recitation of the hymn) tantaṇapāgne sat.

16-18. Oblation made with curd and clarified butter (with the recitation of the hymn) bheda jamaṣi will cure the sickness of domestic animals. Oblation (made with the recitation of the hymn) tryambakam yajāmahe will increase one’s fortune. (One who makes an oblation with this hymn) pronouncing the name of a maiden will secure that maiden. One who repeats

---

1. Vāj. Sam. 1.28.
2. Cf. cakṣusmatīya svāhā TB. 3.10.7.1.
3. Could not be traced.
5. Vaj. Sam. 3.59.
6. Taitt. Sam. 1.8.6.2a.
(this hymn) daily when he is stricken with fear, will get free from fears. By making an oblation with the dhūtūra flower along with ghee (repeating this hymn), one will get all the pleasures. O Rāma! One who makes an oblation with guggulu (a fragrant gum resin) (with the recitation of the hymn) will see Śaṅkara (Śiva) in the dream.

19-20. One will get long life by repeating the section yuñjate mana¹. (The repetition of the hymn) viṣṇorarātām² destroys all the obstacles. It is capable of destroying demons. It also confers victory. (The repetition of the hymn) ayam no agniḥ³ yields victory in battle.

21-22. (The hymn) idamāpaḥ pravahata⁴ (when repeated) while bathing is capable of destroying sins. If one buries an iron nail of ten inches length at the threshold (of the house) of a maiden with (the repetition of the hymn) viśvakarmannu havis⁵ she will not be given (in marriage) to somebody else. One who makes an oblation with (the repetition of the hymn) deva-savitāḥ⁶ will get food.

23-24. O Knower of virtue! The excellent brahmin who desires strength should do oblation with sesamum, barley, rice and (twigs of) apāmārga with (the recitation of) agnau svāhā (oblations to fire). O Brahmin! One will win the affection of the people by making a mark (on the forehead) with gorocana (yellow pigment got from the belly of cow) after having made the incantation (of the sacred syllable) a thousand times.

25-28. The repetition of the Rudra (hymns)⁷ is capable of destroying all the sins. The oblation (made with that hymn) accomplishes all tasks and ensures peace everywhere. O Bhārgava! Knower of virtue! when the goats, sheep, horses, elephants, cows, men, kings, children, women, villages, cities and countries are being attacked or afflicted by diseases, when

1. Vāj. Sam. 5.14a; Taitt. Sam. 1.2.13.1a.
2. Vāj. Sam. 5.21; Taitt. Sam. 1.2.13.3.
3. Vāj. Sam. 5.37a; 7.44a; Taitt. Sam. 13.4.1a; 4.46.3a.
4. RV. 1.33.22a; Vāj. Sam. 6.17a.
6. Vāj. Sam. 9.1; 11.7; 30.1; Taitt. Sam. 1.7.7.1; 4.1.1.2.
7. namas te rudra manyavo Taitt. Sam. 4.5.1.1a; Vāj. Sam. 16. 1a.
there is the outbreak of plague and there is fear from the enemies, then (the offering) of oblation with Rudra hymns with sweet porridge and ghee (will confer) supreme peace.

29-30. One gets free from all sins by offering oblation with pumpkin and ghee (with the Rudra hymns). Excellent man! One gets free from (the sin of) killing a brahmin by eating the flour of barley, barley or alms in the night and bathing for a month outside. One will get everything by offering oblation with (the repetition of) the hymn madhuvatā¹.

31. One will certainly get children by offering oblation (with the recitation of the hymn) dadhikrāṇa.² Similarly (oblation made) with ghee (with the recitation of the hymn) gṛtjavatī³ will give life.

32. (The recitation of the hymn) svasti na indu⁴ would destroy all difficulties (and the hymn) tha gāvakḥ praṇayadhvam⁵ would increase the strength.

33-34. A thousand oblations made with ghee (with this hymn) will ward off ill-luck. (Oblations made) with (the twigs of) apāmārga and rice (with the recitation of the hymn) srvaṇa devasya tvā⁶ will without any doubt free one quickly from the deformities inflicted by incantation. One would get gold by (oblations) with the twigs of palaśa with (the hymn) rudra ṭāṭī⁷ (Rudra protect).

35. One should offer oblations with rice with (the recitation of the hymn) śiva bhava⁸. (The repetition of the hymn) yāh senā⁹ removes the fear of thieves.

36. O Brahmin! One who makes a thousand oblations with black sesame with (the recitation of the hymn) yo asmably-

---

¹ Taitt. Sam. 4.2.9.3a; 5.2.8.6.
² Taitt. Sam. 1.5.11.4a; 7.4.19.4a.
³ Cf. Taitt. Sam. 4.4.12.5a.
⁴ RV. I.89.6a; Vāj. Sam. 25.19a; MS. 4.9.27a; 140.1.
⁵ AV. 20.127.12a; Kāṭh. Sam. 35.5a.
⁶ Could not be traced.
⁷ Could not be traced.
⁸ Vāj. Sam. 11.45a; Taitt. Sam. 4.1.4.2a.
⁹ Could not be traced.
amayātiyaḥ will become free from deformities caused by incantation.

37. One will get food by offering an oblation of food with (the recitation of the hymn) annapate. The repetition of (the hymn) hamsaḥ sukṣad (while remaining) in the water destroys sins.

38. (The repetition of the hymn) caivaḥ śṛṅgāḥ (while remaining) in the water will remove all sins. By the repetition of (the hymn) devā yajña one will be respected in the world of Brahmā.

39. One will obtain the favour of the Sun by offering oblation with clarified butter with (the repetition of the hymn) vasanta. The rites relating to (the use of the hymn) suparnoṣi are the same as for the (seven) vyāhritis.

40. One will get released from bondage by repeating namah svāhā three times. By repeating (the hymn) drupada three times (while remaining) in the water will destroy all sins.

41. The sacred formula iha gāvaḥ prajāyadvam is capable of sharpening the intellect when oblations are offered with clarified butter, curd, milk and sweet porridge.

42. Oblations made with leaves and fruits with (the recitation of the hymn) tataṁ yo confers health, wealth and long life.

43. (The recitation of the hymn) oṣadhitṛa pratimodadham while mowing and cutting will give returns. Oblations made with sweet porridge (with the repetition of the hymn) aśvāvat will secure peace.

---

1. Vāj. Sam. 11. 80a; Taitt. Sam. 4.1.10.3a.
2. Taitt. Sam. 4.2.3.1a; 5.2.2.1.
3. Vāj. Sam. 10.24a; 12.14a; Taitt. Sam. 1.8.15.2a; 4.2.1.5a.
4. Vāj. Sam. 17.91a; MS. 1.6.2a; 87.17.
5. Cf. devā yajṇam nayantu RV. 1.40.3d; MS. 4.9.1d; 120.10.
6. Vāj. Sam. 10.10; Taitt. Sam. 4.3.3.1.
7. Vāj Sam. 10.4; 17.72; Taitt. Sam. 4.1.10.5; 6.5.3; 5.1.10.5.
8. See note to verse 1 above.
9. Cf. G. Dh. 27. 9.
11. Kaṭh. Sam. 33. 3a.
12. Taitt. Sam. 5.7.2.3c.
13. RV. 10.97.3a; Vāj. Sam. 12. 77a.
14. RV. 9.63. 18b; Vaj. Sam. 8. 69b.
44. One will be released from bondage by (the repetition of) the sacred formula tasmā. One will get excellent dress by (repeating the hymn) yuvā svādāh.

45. (The recitation of the hymn) mučantar mā sadhikā is capable of destroying all the enemies. Oblation of sesamum (while reciting the hymn) mā mā hṁsiḥ is capable of destroying enemies.

46. (Oblations of) ghee and sweet porridge (with the repetition of the hymns) namo' stu sarvasarpebhyo and kṛṇudhiṁ rāja destroys magic incantations.

47-49. One can control an epidemic in a village or country by making ten thousand oblations of pieces of dūrdā grass with (the recitation of the hymn) kāndat kāndat. One who is suffering from a disease will be cured and the grief-stricken (will become free) from grief (by this). O Rāma! A person who offers a thousand twigs of udumbara (tree) as oblation with (the recitation of the hymn) madhumāno vanaspatī will get wealth. One will also get great fortune and victory in litigation.

50-51. One will make the gods rain by offering oblations (of the same) with (the recitation of the hymn) apāṁ garbham. O Knower of virtue! By making oblations of curd, ghee and honey (with the repetition of the hymn) apāṁ pinva one will make it rain heavily. (The repetition of the hymn) namaste rudra destroys all misfortunes.

52-53. (The above hymn) is also said to ensure all peace and destroy great sins. One who is afflicted by a disease is protected by (the repetition of the hymn) adhyavocat. It is also capable of destroying demons, increasing fame, long life and

---

1. Cf. RV. 10.9.3a; Taitt. Sam. 4.1.5.1a.
3. RV. 10.97.16a; Vaj. Sam. 12.90a.
4. Tait. Sam. 1.2.2.2.
5. RV. Kh. 7.55.10a; Tait. Sam. 4.2.8.3a.
6. RV. 7.32.9b.
7. Tait. Sam. 4.2.9.2a.
8. Tait. Sam. 4.2.9.3a.
9. Tait. Sam. 4.1.4.3b.
10. Tait. Sam. 4.3.4.3.
11. Tait. Sam. 4.5.1.1a.
12. Tait. Sam. 4.5.1.2a.
strength. One will be happy by scattering white mustard and repeating this (hymn) on the journey.

54-55a. O Knower of virtue! One will get long life and undiminishing food by worshipping daily the sun morning and evening unweariedly repeating (the hymn) asau yastāmro¹.

55b-56. Weapons are consecrated by the six (hymns) pramuñca dhanvanas². It will frighten enemies in battle. One need not entertain any doubt. (The repetition of the hymn) mano mahāntam³ confers peace on children.

57. One should offer oblations of black mustard soaked in pungent oil (with the repetition of) the seven sections (beginning with) namo hiranyabāhavé⁴ that will destroy enemies.

58. One becomes a sovereign by offering oblations of a lakh lotuses with (the recitation of the hymn) namo vāḥ kirikebhyo⁵. By similar (offerings) of bilva (leaves) (one will acquire) gold.

59. One will obtain wealth by oblations of sesamum with (the repetition of) imā rudrāya⁶. Oblations with dūrva grass (will make one) free from all diseases.

60. (The hymn) āstuḥ tiṣāṇa⁷ (is used) in the protection of weapons. O Rāma! It is said to destroy all the enemies in battle.

61. O Brahmin! Knower of virtue! One thousand oblations of clarified butter with (the repetition of) the five (hymns) rāja sāma⁸ will cure the eye disease (of a person).

62. The oblation (done with the hymn) śanno vanaspate gehe⁹ will destroy the defects of a building. One will not earn enmity

¹ Tait. Sam. 4.5.1.3a.
² Tait. Sam. 4.5.10-2a.
³ Tait. Sam. 4.5.10.2a.
⁴ Tait. Sam. 4.5.2.1.
⁵ Tait. Sam. 4.5.9.2.
⁶ Vaj. Sam. 16.48a.
⁷ Tait. Sam. 4.6.4.1a.
⁸ Could not be traced.
⁹ Could not be traced.
with anyone by offering oblations of clarified butter (with the repetition of) *agnī ṛṣi*.  

63. One will gain victory by the oblation of fried paddy (with the hymn) *apāṅ-phenā*. He who has defective sense-organs will get sound ones by the repetition of (the hymn) *bhadra*.  

64. (The hymn) *agniṣṭa prthivi ca* (is) an excellent charm. One who repeats the hymn *adhwana* will be victorious in litigation.  

65. (The hymn) *brahma rājanyām* accomplishes the task (when repeated) at its commencement. One will be free from disease by the oblation of ghee a lakh times (with the repetition of the hymn) *sanvatsarośi*.  

66. (The hymn) *ketum krṣvan* will confer victory in battle. (The hymn) *indrojanīrītā* ensures fair play in battle.  

67. The hymn *dhanvanā gā* is excellent for the bow wielder. The hymn *yuṣjita* is known (to be used) in consecrating (the bow).  

68. The hymn *āhiratha* should be used for the consecration of arrows. *Bahvīṇāṁ pitā* is said to be the hymn for consecrating quiver.  

69. *Yuṣjanti* is said to be the hymn for arranging horses. (The hymn) *āśuḥ śisāna* is said (to be used) while commencing a journey.

---

1. TS. 1.3.14.7a.  
5. Tait. Sam. 1.7.8.1.  
7. Vaj. Sam. 27.45 or TB. 3.11.1.14.  
8. Tait. Sam. 7.4.20.1a.  
9. Could not be traced.  
10. Tait. Sam. 4.6.6.1a.  
11. Could not be traced.  
12. Could not be traced.  
13. Tait. Sam. 4.6.6.2a.  
15. Tait. Sam. 4.6.4.1a.
70. The hymn viśnoḥ krama¹ (is said to be) excellent for one who boards a chariot. (The hymn) ājaṅghanti² is said (to be used) for whipping the horses.

71. One should repeat (the hymn) yah senā abhitwari³ when facing the army of the enemy. The war drums are beaten with (the recitation of the hymn) dundubhya⁴.

72-73. One will become victorious by offering oblations earlier with these hymns. A wise man who offers one crore oblations with (the recitation of the hymn) yamena dattam⁵ will soon produce a chariot that will give victory in the battle. The ceremonies relating to (the hymn) ā kṛṣṇa⁶ are similar to that of the vyāhṛtis (bhūḥ etc.).

74. One will get the composure of mind by the repetition of (the hymn of) śivaśaṅkalpa⁷. One will get fortune by making five lakh oblations (with the repetition of the hymn) pañcana-dyāḥ⁸.

75. One should wear a golden (plate) after making incantations one thousand times with the hymn yad ābadhnān dākṣāyaṇā⁹. It will ward off the enemies.

76. One will not have the fear of thieves by throwing stones and lumps of earth in all the four directions in the house (after repeating the hymn) imam jivebhyaḥ¹⁰.

77. (The hymn) pari me gāmaneṣata¹¹ is excellent for charming. One who has come to kill will be subdued.

78. O Knower of Dharma! A person will be brought under one’s complete control soon by giving him food, betels, flowers and other things charmed (with this hymn).

---

1. Tait. Sam. 1.6.5.2.
2. Tait. Sam. 4.6.6.5a.
3. Could not be traced.
5. Tait. Sam. 4.6.7.1a.
6. Tait. Sam. 3.4.11.2a.
7. Could not be traced.
8. Vāj Sam. 34.11a.
9. Vāj Sam. 34.52b.
10. Vāj. Sam. 35.15a.
11. Vāj. Sam. 35.18a.
79-80. (The hymn) *tanno mitra* always confers peace everywhere (when repeated). One will be able to charm the entire world by making oblations of all grains (with the repetition of the hymn) *gārāndāṃ tvā gānapatiḥ* at the junction of four roads. The hymn *hiranyavarṇāḥ śucayaḥ* (is used) in consecration.

81-82. (The hymn) *tanno devir abhiṣaye* (is) excellent for conferring peace. There is no doubt that one will appease the planets and get their grace by offering oblations of clarified butter in parts (to the respective planets) with (the repetition of) the hymn *ekacakra*. One who makes oblations of clarified butter with the two (hymns) *gāo bhago* will get cows.

83. (The hymn) *pravādāṃśah sopat* is used in the propitiatory rite in the house. (The hymn) *devabhyo vanaspati* is prescribed (for use) in the rite for the consecration of a tree.

84. (The hymn) *tad viṣṇoh paramah padam* is known to be the *gāyatri* for (Lord) Viṣṇu. It is capable of destroying all the sins and granting all the pleasures.

---

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SIXTY-ONE

*The use of the hymns of Sāmaveda*

*Puṣkara said:*

1. I have described the use of (the hymns of) *Yajur* (*veda*). I shall (now) describe the use of (the hymns of) *Sāma* (*veda*). One will get all the pleasures by repeating the *vaishnavi* hymns.

---

1. RV. 1.90.9a; Vāj. Sam. 36.9a.
2. Tait. Sam. 2.3.14.3a.
3. Tait. Sam. 5.6.1.1a.
4. RV. 10.9.4a.
5. Cf. TA. 1.11.7c.
6. RV. 6.28.5a.
7. Could not be traced.
8. MS. 4.13.7a: 208.10.
9. Tait. Sam. 1.3.6.2a.
2. One pleases (Lord) Śaṅkara (Śiva) by repeating the chāndasi (Śāman) hymns well. One will get the grace by repeating the skāndi and pātri hymns.

3. (The repetition of the hymn) yata indra bhayaṁmahē⁴ is capable of destroying the harmful effects (of incantations). One who has broken the vow of continence will be released (from the fault) by repeating (the hymn) agnistigmena⁵.

4. (The repetition of the hymn) paritoṣāṁ ca³ is known to be capable of destroying all sins. One who has sold (a thing) that should not be sold, should repeat (the hymn) ghṛtavati⁴.

5-6. (The hymn) adyā no deva savitaḥ⁵ is known to be capable of destroying bad dreams. O Rāma! The foremost of Bhrigus! It is laid down that the girdle may be tied with the remnant of the ghee that has been sprinkled with (the hymn) abodhyagniḥ⁶ as laid down, in the case of the women who have a miscarriage.

7. Then it should be tied on the wrist of the child that is born, with (the repetition of the hymn) somam rājānam⁷. This will make the child free from all diseases.

8-9. By the use of sarpasāma⁸ one will not have the fear of serpents. A brahmin will not have any fear from weapons by tying the satāvari (a herb) after making a thousand oblations with (the hymn) mādyā toṁ vādyate⁹. One will get plenty of food by making oblation (with the hymn) dirghatamaso'rika¹⁰.

10. One who repeats (the hymn) samamadhyāyuṇti¹¹ will not die of thirst. One will not get a disease by repeating (the hymn) toamimā oṣadhiḥ¹².

---

1. SV. 1.274a; 2.671a.
2. Tait. Sam. 4.6.1.5a; SV. 1.512a.
3. Cf. parito śiṅcatē SV. 1.512a.
4. SV. 1.378a.
5. SV. 1.141a.
6. SV. 1.73a; 2.1096a.
8. Could not be traced.
9. Could not be traced.
10. Could not be traced.
11. Could not be traced.
12. RV. 1.91.22a.
11. One will become free from fears by repeating (the hymn) *devavrata* on the journey. Oblations offered with (the hymn) *yadindro munaye tvā* increase fortune.

12. O Rāma! Collyrium applied to the eyes (with the hymn) *bhago na citra* will increase fortune. There need be no doubt.

13-14. The repetition (of the hymn) *indreti varga* will also increase fortune. A man who seeks the love of a woman should make her listen to (the hymn) *pari priyā divāḥ kaviḥ*. O Rāma! There need be no doubt that she will love him in return. (The repetition of the hymns) *rathantara* and *vāmadevya* increases the divine splendour.

15. A child should be fed with the powder of *vaca* soaked in ghee daily with the repetition of (the hymn) *indramidgāthino*. It will give him good memory.

16. There is no doubt that one will get progeny after repeating (the hymn) *rathantara* and offering oblations. The hymn *mayi śriḥ* has to be repeated for the increase of fortune.

17. The repetition of the eight *vairūpya* (hymns) daily confers fortune. One will get all the desires fulfilled by repeating the *saptāṣṭaka* (hymns).

18. One who worships cows daily morning and evening (with the repetition of the hymn) *ganyoṣuṇo* unweariedly will always have cows in his house.

19. One who offers a *drona* (a measure) of barley soaked in
ghee into fire (with the repetition of the hymn), vāta āvātu bhaṣajani¹ as laid down will ward off all spells.

20-21a. Oblations of sesamum with (the repetition of the hymn) pṛa dāino dāso² destroys witchcraft. (Repeating the hymn) abhi tvā pūrva pītayeva³ followed by the syllable vaṣāṭ while offering oblations made with perfumed fuel will yield victory in battle.

21b-24. A wise man should make good figures of elephants, horses and men with flour and represent the chief men of the enemy with oily cakes of flour and cut them into pieces with a knife. Then the knower of the sacred formulas should offer oblations (with these cakes) soaked in mustard oil with wrath while reciting the hymn abhi tvā sūranonumah.⁴ The wise man gets victory in battle by this act. The hymns gāruḍa⁵, vāmadeya⁶, rathantarā⁷ and brhadṛatha⁸ are without any doubt said to destroy all sins.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SIXTY-TWO

The use of the hymns of Atharvaveda

Puṣkara said:

1. The application of the hymns of Sāma (veda) has been described. I shall describe to you (the application) of (the hymns of) Atharva (veda). One gets peace by offering oblations with the hymns of the peace class.

2. One will get rid of all the diseases by offering oblations to (the gods of) the remedial class. One will get free from all sins by offering oblations to (the gods of) the trisaptiya class.

¹ SV. 1. 184a; 2.1190a.
² SV. 1.51a; 2.867a.
³ SV. 1.256a; 2.923a.
⁴ SV. 1.233a; 2.30a.
⁵ Could not be traced.
⁶ MS. 4.9.11:132.10.
⁷ See p. 706, note 6.
⁸ Tait. Sam.2.3.10.2.
3. One will never get fear by offering oblations to (the gods of) the protection class. O Rāma! one will never be born by offering oblations to (the gods of) the aparājita (unconquered) class.

4. One will ward off untimely death by offering oblations to (the gods of) the life-giving class. One will get welfare everywhere by offering oblations to (the gods of) the welfare class.

5. One will get united with good fortune (by propitiating the gods of) happiness and armour group. One will remove the defects of a building by offering oblations to the class of deities presiding over the foundations of a house.

6. In the same way one will remove all the defects by offering oblations to (the gods of) the Raudra class. Oblations (are to be offered to) these ten classes in eighteen propitiatory (rites).

7-9. (The goddesses) Vaiśnavī, Śānti, Aindrī, Brāhmī, Raudrī, Vāyavyā, Vārunī, Kauberī, Bhārgavī, Prājāpatyā, Tvaṣṭrī, Kaumārī, Vahnīdevatā, Mārudaṇḍa, Gāndhārī, Śānti Nairṛtakī, Śānti Āṅgirasī, Yāmyā and Pārthivī (are the eighteen propitiatory items) that yield all pleasures. The recitation (of the hymn) yāstō mṛtyuḥ¹ conquers death.

10. One will never be afflicted by serpents by offering oblations with (the hymn) suparnastvā! (The hymn) indrena dattam² confers all the pleasures.

11. (The hymn) indrena dattam³ is capable of destroying all obstacles. The hymn imā devā⁴ is an excellent all appeasing (hymn).

12. (The hymn) devā maruta⁵ confers all the pleasures. (The hymn) yamasya lokāt⁶ is excellent for removing (the effects of) bad dreams.

---

1. AV. 3.11.8c.
2. AV. 4.6.4a
3. Tait. Sam. 2.3.10.2b.
4. See note 3 above.
5. Could not be traced.
6. Could not be traced.
7. AV. 19.56.1a.
13. (The hymn) *indrasca pāncavanijjā* is excellent for profit in trade. Oblations offered with (the hymn) *kāmo me vājī* increase the fortune of women.

14. Oblation offered a lakh times with (the repetition of the hymn) *tubhyamena jarimān* and with (the hymn) *agne gobhir nā* will promote the intellect.

15. Offering oblation with (the hymn) *dhruvam dhruvēṇā* will ensure the acquisition of land. The repetition of (the hymn) *alaktakajiva* will ensure prosperous agriculture.

16. (The hymn) *ahām te bhagā* increases fortune. (The hymn) *ye me pāsāḥ* secures release from bondage.

17. Oblation offered with the repetition of (the hymn) *sapatvahan* destroys enemies. (The hymn) *tvamuttamām* is capable of increasing fame and intellect.

18. (The hymn) *yathā mṛgamati* increases the good fortune of women. (The hymn) *yena cehaśam* is advantageous for conception.

19. (The hymn) *ayām te yonīḥ* is favourable for progeny. (The hymn) *sivāḥ sivābhiḥ* increases good fortune.

20. (The repetition of the hymn) *bṛhaspatirnāḥ paripātu* secures safety on the journey. (The hymn) *muṇcāmi tvā* is said to ward off untimely death.

---

1. 'Could not be traced.
2. 'Could not be traced.
3. AV. 2.28.1a.
4. Tait. Sam. 2.4.5.1a.
5. AV. 6.87.3b; 7.94.1a.
6. 'Could not be traced.
7. 'Could not be traced.
8. 'Could not be traced.
9. 'Could not be traced.
10. 'Could not be traced.
11. 'Could not be traced.
12. 'Could not be traced.
13. AV. 3.20.1a.
14. RV. 1.187.3b.
15. AV. 7.51.1a.
16. AV. 3.11.1a.
21. One who masters the ātharvaśīkṣas⁴ becomes free from all sins. I have described to you some procedures relating to some important hymns.

22-24a. The first material for oblations is the twigs of trees suitable for such rites. O Bhārgava! Clarified butter, rice, white mustard, unbroken rice, sesamum, curd, milk, darbha (grass), dūrṇā (grass), bilva (leaves) and lotuses are always said to be the materials that promote peace and prosperity.

24b-25. O Knower of righteousness! Mustard oil, blood, poison, twigs of thorny (trees) should be used in magic incantations. One who knows the employment should repeat the sage, deity and metre (relating to the hymns).

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SIXTY-THREE

Appeasing rites for portents

Puṣkara said:

1. The śrisūkta of each Veda is known to be capable of increasing fortune. The fifteen hymns (beginning with) hiranyavarṇām harinirṇām² (are considered to be conferring) fortune.

2. The four hymns ratheśvaksēṣu vṛṣabhā⁵ in the Yajur (Veda) (are said to confer) fortune. The Sāma hymns sravantīyam⁴ is the śrisūkta in the Sāmaveda.

3. In the same way, (the hymn) śriyam dhātarmayi dhehi⁶ in the Atharvaveda is said (to be conferring fortune). One who repeats the śrisūkta with devotion and offers oblation gets fortune.

4. One will get fortune by offering oblations of lotuses, bilva (leaves), clarified butter and sesamum. The puruṣasūkta⁶ is the same for each one of the Vedas. It gives everything.

1. The Atharvaṇa hymns.
2. RV. Kh. 5.87.1a.
3. Vidh. 65.7.
5. Āp. Śr. 6.20.2.
6. RV. 10.90.1a.
5. If libation of water is presented with (the recitation of) each one of the hymns, it will make one free from sin. One will destroy his sins by offering flowers to Viṣṇu with each one (of the hymns) after bathing.

6. One would get all the pleasures by giving away a fruit with each one (of the hymns) after bathing. By the repetition of the Puruṣasūkta major and minor sins are destroyed.

7. One gets everything by repeating the kṛcchra (hymns) and offering oblations (with them) after becoming clean by bathing. Three other appeasing (hymns) besides the eighteen appeasing (hymns) are excellent.

8-10. Āmṛtā, abhayā and saumyā destory all the calamities. Āmṛtā (is governed) by all the gods. Abhayā (is governed) by Brahmā and Saumyā by all gods. Any one (of them will) confer all the pleasures. O Foremost among Bhṛgus! The wristlet with the Varuṇa (hymn) is to be prepared for the abhayā appeasement. Similarly stāvakāṇḍa is for the wristlet for āmṛtā and conch for saumyā. In order to accomplish (the desired results) the respective hymns of the deities should be used for the wristlets.

11-13. These are capable of destroying the calamities relating to the heavens, atmosphere and earth. Listen to me! (I shall describe) the supernatural events relating to the heavens, atmosphere and the earth. You learn from me that (the phenomena) relating to the heavens are caused by the ruling asterisms of the day. (Those) of the sky are the fall of a meteor, scorching glow in the directions, the halo around the sun or moon, (the appearance of) fairy towns and rains. (The phenomena) relating to the earth are the extraordinary events affecting the movable and immovable things and earthquake.

14. The portent will not bear any fruit if it rains within seven days. A portent without any appeasement within three years is very dangerous.

15-16a. The images of gods will dance, shake, glow, shout, weep, perspire and laugh. (These are portents.) The changes in the images can be pacified by worshipping (Lord) Prajāpati (Brahmā) and offering oblations.

16b-17. When there is blaze in a country without fire,
with loud noise and without fuel that burns, that country will be tormented by kings. O Son of Bhṛgu! The change in the fire is appeased with the hymns of Fire (god).

18. When the trees bear fruit out of season, ooze out milk and blood, one should do the appeasing rite for the portents after worshipping (Lord) Śiva.

19-20a. Both excessive rains and draught are considered to give rise to famine. Rain occurring consecutively for three days out of season is known (to be a portent) of danger. The change in (the pattern of) rain is nullified by the worship of Parjanya (Rain god), Moon and Sun.

20b-21. If rivers recede from the cities or come near them, if they flow gushing forth or get dried up, then the Varuṇa hymn should be recited as also in the case of deterioration in the (state of) the reservoirs.

22-23a. The women may deliver prematurely or may not deliver at the appropriate time. They may deliver children with deformities or deliver twins etc. One should worship the women and brahmans in the case of such deviations in the delivery (as above).

23b-25a. If a mare or she-elephant or cow gives birth to twins or to deformed younger or to ones different from the species, it will die within six months. In the case of deformed youngs there will be danger from hostile forces. The recitation and oblation as well as worship of brahmans should be done (in such cases).

25b-26a. If vehicles run without being yoked (to steeds), if (vehicles) yoked (to steeds) do not run, or trumpet sounds (are heard) in the sky, then it forebodes great impending danger.

26b-30a. If wild animals and birds enter village and those of village enter forest; land (animals) enter water and water (animals) enter land, vixens howl at the threshold of a palace, cocks crow at prādoṣa (the time preceding the nightfall); vixens howl at the residence or at the rising Sun; dove enters the house, carnivorous birds stoop down on the head; bees make sweet (sound); crows mate in sight; strong arches of palace,
garden, door-ways, corridor and mansions fall without an obvious cause, it forebodes evil. (It forebodes) the death of the king.

30b-31. If the quarters are filled by dust or smoke, if (the country is) under the influence of the descending node, if spots in the moon and sun are visible, or if the stars and planets are not to be seen, it also indicates fear.

32. Where the fire does not glow, the waterpots ooze, there is the fear of death and witchcraft as the result of the portents. The portent is appeased by the worship of brahmans and gods, recitation of hymns and offer of oblations.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SIXTY-FOUR

Worship of gods to ward off the effects of portents and mode of offering the Vaiśvadeva hāl

Puṣkara said:

1. I shall describe the mode of worshipping the gods and other rites that destroy (the effects of) portents. One should offer respectful water of libation to (Lord) Viśṇu with the three (hymns beginning with) āpo ii śthā after having bathed.

2. O Brahmin! Water for washing the feet (should be offered) with the three (hymns beginning with) hiranyavarna. Water for sipping (is offered with the recitation of the hymn) śanna āpo and for bathing with (the hymn) idamāpaḥ.

3. Perfumes (are offered) with the three (hymns) ratha akṣa and dress with (the hymn) yuva. Flowers (are given) with (the recitation of the hymn) puspavatī and incense with (the hymn) dhūpośi.

1. RV. 10.9.1a.
2. RV.Kh. 5.87.1a.
3. AV.1.6.4a.
4. RV. 1.23.22a.
5. Rathe akṣaṇu, AV. 6.38.3a.
7. RV. 10.97-3b.
8. Cf. dhūr asi, Tait. Sam. 11.4.1.
4-6. (The hymn for offering) the lamp is tejo'si and for the madhuparka, dadhi. O Foremost among men! The eight hymns (beginning) with hiranyakarbhaha are said to be (used) in offering eatables (to gods), cooked rice, drinks, perfume, chowrie, fan, shoe, umbrella, chariot and seat. Whatever other thing has to be offered should be accompanied by the recitation of (the hymn) of (god) Savitṛ. The purusasūkta should be repeated and oblations should be offered with the same (hymn). 

7. In the absence of an image (of Lord Viṣṇu) (the deity should be invoked) on the altar or in water or in a pot full (with water) or on the banks of a river or in a lotus. One would thus accomplish the propitiation by worshipping (lord) Viṣṇu.

8-12. Then the oblations should be offered to the glowing fire with the entire food being collected and offered with earnestness after cleaning the ground, sprinkling water and spreading sand and kuṣa grass. (One should say) (obeisance) to Vāsudeva, to the lord, to the master, to the immutable, to the Fire (god), to Soma, to Mitra, to Varuṇa and to Indra. O Fortunate one! Obeisance to Indra and Fire (god), the Viśvedevas and to the lord of the beings. Oh! Rāma! Then (one should say) (obeisance) to Anumati, to Dhanvantari, to Vāstośpati, to the goddess, to the Fire that accomplishes the sacrificial rite. After having made the oblations (thus) with the names ending in the dative case, a part of the offering is given away as gift.

13-14. O Son of Bhṛgu! Knower of righteousness! Takṣa and Upatakṣa towards the east, then the horses and the hairs

1. Tait. Sam. 1.1.10.3
2. Consisting of curd, clarified butter, water, honey and candied sugar.
4. RV. 10.121.1a.
5. RV. 10.90.1a.
6. This and the following three are different celestial gods.
7. A particular group of deities ten in number and supposed to be sons of Viśvā.
8. A female deity.
9. The physician of the gods.
10. The deity that presides over the foundation of a house.
(on the south), Nirundhi and Dhūmrīṅkā (on the west) and Asvapantī and Meghapatnī (on the north) are the names of all those (to be worshipped) all around (in a circle).

15-16. The Fire-god and other gods should be located in (the places of) the goddesses. O Son of Bhṛgu! (goddesses) Nandinī, Subhāgyā, Sumaṅgilī, Bhadrakāli, Sthūnā, Śrī, Hīranyakeśī and Vanaspati are worshipped.

17-22. Offering is made to Dharma and Adharma at the door, Dhruva at the centre of the house, Mṛtyu outside, Varuṇa at a reservoir, the goblins outside (the house), the god of wealth at the house, Indra and companions on the east, Yama and his attendants on the south, Varuṇa and his companions on the west and Soma and his attendants on the north. (Offering) is made to Brahmā and his attendants at the centre. (Offerings) should be made in the sky, above, on the floor and on the earth during the day (for the spirits) that wander during the day and in the night for those that wander during the night. Offering should be made (to the spirits) morning and evening daily outside. Then offering of balls of rice is made (for the manes). It should not be done in the evening.

23-28. Offering is first made to (the dead) father, then to the grandfather and great-grandfather, then to one’s mother, paternal grandmother and paternal great-grandmother. The manes should thus be worshipped on the kuśa (grass) having their tips facing the south. The offerings of balls of rice to the crows are made with the repetition of the sacred formula stating ‘let the crows partake in the directions of east, west, north-west, south and south-west’. (Similarly) the ball of rice to the dogs is offered (with the repetition of the sacred formula, ‘I am offering the ball of rice to the dogs in the family of Sun that are black and of variegated colours. May it protect me always on the path to the next world’). (Then offerings are made to the cows with the following words:) ‘Accept this oblation of mine, O cows, the daughters of the celestial cow, that are good for all, holy, destroyer of sins and the mothers of the three worlds’. After having offered the food to the cows and bidding adieu, one should offer the alms. After having worshipped the guests and the poor, the householder should himself eat. One should say, ‘Om bhūḥ’ oblations. Om bhuvaḥ oblations. Om svahaḥ oblations.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SIXTY-FIVE

The sacred bathing of the deities

Fire-god said:

1. Listen to me. I shall describe the bathing that accomplishes all objects and that is propitiatory. A wise man should bathe the planets and (Lord) Viṣṇu on the banks of a river.

2. One who is afflicted by fever as well as one who is afflicted by planets causing obstacles (should bathe it) in a temple. One who desires to acquire knowledge (should bathe it) on (the banks of) a tank or in the house and one who desires victory (should do the sacred ablution) at a sacred place.

3. A woman who has a miscarriage should be bathed in a lotus tank, and one whose issue dies after birth should bathe in the presence of an atoka (tree).

4. One who desires to have flowers, one who desires to have progeny and who desires to have a house and other fortunes (should bathe) respectively at a place abounding in flowers, an ocean and in the presence of (the image of Lord) Viṣṇu.

5. Bathing in (the asterisms) stravaṇa, revati and pūṣya is meritorious for all. One who wishes to do the ceremonial bathing has to observe a purificatory vow for seven days prior to that.
6-8a. (The herbs) punarnavā, rocāṅgā, satāṅga, gurunītvak, madhūka, the two sorts of rajani, tagara, nāgakeśara, ambari, maṅjiśṭhā, māṁśi, yāsaka, kardama, priyaṅgu, mustard, kuṣṭha, balā, brāhma, saffron and the five things got from a cow should be mixed with the flour of barley and rubbed (on the body). One should then bathe.

8b-11a. (Lord) Viṣṇu should be worshipped on the pericarp of a circle, (Lord) Brahmā on the right side and (Lord) Śiva on the left side. (Lord) Indra and others should be drawn from the east onwards in order together with their weapons and associates. Bathing circles should be drawn in the different directions and the intermediary directions. (Lords) Viṣṇu, Brahmā, Iśa (Śiva), Śakra (Indra) and others and their weapons should then be worshipped and oblation offered. One hundred and eight twigs, sesameum and ghee (are offered) to each one (of the gods).

11b-13. The pitchers bhadra, subhadra, siddhārtha, amogha, citrabhānu, parjanya and sudarśana that give prosperity should be placed on the ground. (The gods should be invoked in them as follows): “May the Aṅvins, Rudras, Maruts, Viśvedevas, Demons, Vasus and Munis and other gods get pleased and enter these pitchers.”

14-16. The herbs jayantī, vijayā, jayā, satāvarī, satapuspā, viṣṇukrāntā, aparājīta, jyotiṣmati, atibalā, sandal, uṣira, keśara, musk, camphor, bālaka, patraka, tvak, jatīphala (nutmeg), clove, earth and the five things got from a cow should be put into the pitcher. Then the person (who desires to have the ceremonial bath) should be made to sit on the auspicious seat and bathed by brāhmins.

17-18. Then oblations should separately be offered to the gods with the sacred formulas used in the anointing of kings. Then the final oblation should be made and the fee paid to the preceptor. In olden times (Lord) Indra was able to kill the demons being (thus) bathed by the preceptor. (I) have described (to you) the bathing of the guardians of the directions (that give) victory in the battle and other things.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SIXTY-SIX

The mode of performing the ceremonial bathing to
wash off obstacles

Puṣkara said:

1-6a. I shall describe the bathing that would be beneficial
for those afflicted by (the evil spirit called) Vināyaka. The
spirit Vināyaka was commissioned by (Lords) Keśava (Viṣṇu),
Īśa (Śiva) and Pitāmaha (Brahmā) as the leader of the
attendants in order to frustrate the work of men. One who is
possessed by Vināyaka dreams as if he is bathing in water
excessively, sees shaven heads, rides the demons (in a dream)
and as he goes thinks that he is being followed by others. The
fruitless beginning (of a task) leads to frustration and (the
body) emaciates without any reason. A girl does not get a
(suitable) bridegroom, a married woman does not get pro-
geny, a brahmin does not become a preceptor and a pupil does
not get instruction. A trader does not get profit and a culti-
vator, the produce. A king does not get a kingdom. In such
cases a (ceremonial) bath has to be done.

6b-9a. (It should be done) on an auspicious seat in (the
asterisms) hasta, pūrya, astvīni, mṛgaśīrṣa and śravāṇa. Levigated
powders of white mustard mixed with clarified butter, all herbs
and perfumes should be besmeared on the head (of the person
concerned). He should be bathed with (the waters in) four
pitchers into which all herbs have been put. Earth brought
from stables of horses and elephants, anthill and confluence of
rivers as well as resin got from a cow, perfumes and guggulu
should be put (into the pitchers).

9b-17. (The bathing is done with the repetition of the
following sacred formulas) “Sahasrāksam satadārām ṛṣibhiḥ
pāvanam kṛtani1. I bathe you with the waters that have been
made holy by the sages. May the removers of sins protect you.”
Bhagam te vaṇo rājā bhagam sūryo bṛhaspatiḥ bhagamindraśca vāyusca
bhagam saṃtarṣayo daṇḍiḥ2. “May Varuṇa, the Sun, Bṛhaspati,

1. YDh. 1.280a.
2. YDh. 1.281a.
Indra, Vāyu and the seven sages give you wealth.” “May the misfortune that sticks to your hair, the parting line of the hair, head, fore-head, ears and eyes always be removed by the water.” Then the preceptor should hold the leaf of the darbha (grass) on the left hand and pour the mustard oil on the head of the person that has bathed with a ladle made of udumbara (tree). Then oblation should be made holding the kusa grass on the head with the left hand (repeating) the names Mita, Sammita, Śālaka, Kaṇṭhaka, Kuśmāṇḍa and Rājaputra together with (the word) oblation, the sacred formulas for oblation and obeisance. Then after having spread the kusa (grass) everywhere at the crossroads, one should offer cooked and uncooked rice, meat, food, large quantities of raw fish, coloured flower, wine, mūlaka, cake, sweet cake of flour, garland of āṇḍavikā (?), curd rice, sweet porridge (pīyasa), piṣṭaka (a cake made of any grain), modaka (a kind of sweetmeat in the form of balls) and treacle on a winnowing basket.

18-20. Then Ambikā (mother goddess; consort of Śiva), the mother of Vināyaka, should be worshipped after having offered dāravā (grass), mustard and flowers and the final oblation is made. (The following request is made): O Fortunate one! You give me beauty, fame, good fortune, progeny, wealth and all desired things. The brahmmins should be fed and a pair of clothes should be given to the preceptor also. One would get the fruit of his action and wealth after worshipping the (spirit) Vināyaka and the planets.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SIXTY-SEVEN

Ceremonial bathing known as Māheśvara and other kinds of ablutions

Puṣkara said:

1. I shall describe the bathing (known as) Māheśvara that has been described by Uṣanas (preceptor of demons) to Bali, the king of demons, in olden days and that would promote the victory of a king and others.
2. When the sun has not risen the votary should be bathed on a seat with (the waters of) pitchers (with the repetition of the following words): Oṁ obeisance to Lord Rudra and to Bala besmeared with ashes of grey colour. Victory! Victory! Trample down all the enemies of a weak man in wars and arguments. Oṁ! Crush down all the (hostile) marchers. Let that god who desires to burn (all the worlds) at the end of the yuga (period), and who having terrible form (accept) this worship. Let that god having thousand rays and white (in complexion) protect your life. May that (Lord) Śiva, the destroyer of Tripura\(^1\), who resembles the samvartaka\(^2\) fire and is of the form of all the gods, protect your life; likhi, likhi, khili oblations. After bathing, oblations should be done with sesamum and rice with (the repetition of the above) sacred formulas.

3. After having bathed with the pañcāmṛta\(^3\), the trident bearing lord should be worshipped. I shall describe (to you) the other kinds of ablutions that would always be for your victory.

4. Bathing with ghee is said to be excellent for the lengthening of life. (Bathing) with cow-dung would be (conferring) fortune. (Bathing) with cow’s urine would destroy the sins.

5. (Bathing) with milk would be (giving) strong intellect and with curd, would further fortune. One would be destroying the sins by bathing with kuśa grass and would get all the things by bathing with the five things got from a cow.

6. One would get everything (by bathing) with śatamūla. One would destroy the sins (by bathing) with the waters (touched by) the horns of a cow. One would get everything by bathing with palāśa, bilva, lotus and kuśa (grass).

7-8. Bathing with vaća, two varieties of haridrā and musta (is spoken as) excellent for killing the demons. One would gain long life, fame, righteousness and intellect by ablation with washings of gold. It would be auspicious (to bathe) with the

---

1. The three cities of the demons Tārakākṣa, Kamalākṣa and Vidyumālin.
2. The fire that destroys the universe at the end.
3. The five sweet things—milk, sugar, ghee, curd and honey.
washings of silver and copper. One would gain victory and fortune respectively by bathing with the washings of gems and all perfumes.

9. One would gain health and excellent fortune respectively (by bathing) with water containing fruits and water with dhātrī. One would get wealth and fortune respectively (by bathing) with sesamum and white mustard and priyaṅgu.

10. (One would gain) wealth (by bathing with water containing) lotus, blue lotus and kadamba. (One would gain) strength (by bathing) with the water containing (the twigs of) the balā tree. Bathing with the water that has washed the feet of (Lord) Viṣṇu is the best among all kinds of ablutions.

11-13a. (At the time of bathing) one should repeat the hymn ekakāmāya¹ alone duly. A band made of (the herbs) kuśtha, pātha, vacā, suṇṭhi, conch and iron etc. should be tied round the wrist with (the repetition of) the hymn ākrandayati.² Lord Hari (Viṣṇu) is the master of all desires. One would enjoy all the pleasures by worshipping Him.

13b-14. By bathing (the image of Lord Viṣṇu) with ghee and milk and worshipping Him, one would get rid of biliousness. By offering an oblation of five kinds of pulses one would get free from dysentry. By bathing (the image) with the five things got from a cow, one would get rid of rheumatism.

15-16. Bathing with dvīsneha (ghee and water) with intense devotion would remove derangement of phlegm. Ghee, oil and honey (is said to be) the trirasa (three fluids mixed together) that is excellent for bathing. Ghee and water mixed for bathing (is said to be) dvīsneha, Ghee and oil (mixed for bathing is said to be) samala. Bath water with honey, the juice of sugar-cane and milk is known to be trimadhura (three sweet things).

17-18. Bath water with ghee, juice of sugar-cane, oil and honey (is known to be) trirasa (three fluids) (good) for wealth. An unguent of the three white (things)—camphor, uśtra (a fragrant thing) and sandal (should be used for bath). Sandal, agallochum, camphor, musk and saffron are the five unguents for (Lord) Viṣṇu that yield all the pleasures.

1. Could not be traced.
2. Cf. RV. 6.47.30a.
19. The three fragrant things are camphor, sandal and saffron. Musk, camphor and sandal (used as an unguent) yield all the pleasures.

20-22. Nutmeg, camphor and sandal (are said to be) the three cooling things. O son of Bhṛgu! The five colours are indicated as yellow, blue, white, black and red. Blue lotus, lotus and jāti (flowers) (are spoken to be) the three cool things (that are commended) for the worship of (Lord) Viṣṇu. Saffron, red lotuses and red lilies are the three red things. Men would get peace by worshipping (Lord) Viṣṇu well by (showing) incense, lamp, etc.

23. One would duly get all peace by worshipping the planets with the gāyatri (hymn) after offering a lakh or crore oblations of sesamum, clarified butter, barley and other grains in a square sacrificial pit (done) by eight or sixteen brahmans.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SIXTY-EIGHT

Mode of worshipping Indra, doing nīrājanā (relating to King’s expedition) and other rites

Puṣkara said:

1-2. I shall describe the rites to be performed by the kings in the course of a year. On (the day of) the birth-asterism He (Lord Viṣṇu) should be worshipped. The Sun, Moon and other gods should be worshipped every month at the time of sun’s entry into one of the signs of the zodiac. Agastya should be worshipped at the time of the rise of Agastya (Canopus). (Lord) Hari (Viṣṇu) should be worshipped for four months. Festivities should be had for fifteen days in connection with the lying down to sleep and waking up from sleep (of Lord Viṣṇu)².

1. RV. 3.62.10.

2. These are respectively the periods corresponding to June-July and September-October.
3-5. A mansion should be made ready (by the king) on the east of his army camp in the bright fortnight of the month (ruled by the asterism) Proṣṭhapāda (i.e. Bhādrapada—September-October) for (worshipping) Indra from the first lunar day. The banner of Indra should be raised therein, (Lord) Indra and (his consort) Śacī should be worshipped (therein). Those two and the flag-staff should be led to the proper place accompanied by the sounding of musical instruments on the eighth day. He should fast on the eleventh day, raise the flag staff (on the twelfth day) and worship the flagstaff, as well as the Lord of celestials (Indra) and Śacī in a pitcher covered by a cloth etc. (repeating the following words):

6-12. "O Indra! You flourish! Conqueror of the enemies! Killer of (the demon) Vṛtra! Punisher of the demon Pāka! Lord of lords! Most fortunate one! You have come to the earth. You are the master, the eternal one and one who is bent on the welfare of all the beings. You are a person who has endless lustre and splendour. You are the one who increases fame and victory. May these gods increase your lustre. O Śakra (Indra)! One who causes good rain! May (the Lords) Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Maheśa (Śiva), Kārtikeya (son of Śiva), Vināyaka (son of Śivā), (the twelve) Suns, (the eight) Vasus, (the eleven) Rudras, the Śādhyas, the Bhriguś, the (different) quarters, group of Maruts, the protectors of the world, planets, the Yakṣas (a kind of semi-divine beings), the rivers, the oceans, (goddesses) Śrī (the consort of Viṣṇu), Earth, Gaurī (consort of Śivā), Caṇḍikā (a form of the consort of Śiva) and Śarasvatī (goddess of speech; consort of Brahmā) increase your radiance. Hail O Indra! Consort of Śacī! May auspicious things accrue to me daily by your victory. Always extend thy grace to the kings, brahmins and people. May the earth abound in grains by your grace. May there be prosperity without any obstacle. May calamities come to an end."

13-16a. After having worshipped Indra with (the above) sacred formulas, one will conquer the earth and reach the heaven. (The picture of) Bhadrakāli (a benevolent form of the consort of Śiva) should be drawn on a cloth on the eighth day of the bright fortnight in the (month of) Āśvina (October-November) for victory. In the same way, the weapon, bow,
banner, umbrella, the insignia of the king such as the arms (should be worshipped) with flowers. After remaining awake in the night, the offering should be made. (She) is again worshipped on the second day. O Bhadrakāli! Mahākāli! Durgā! Remover of all difficulties! Conqueror of the three worlds! Caṇḍī! Be successful in (conferring) peace on me!

16b-20. I shall describe the mode of performing the nirājanā (rite). A chamber should be got ready in the northeastern direction. Three arches should be erected therein and the gods should be worshipped daily. The worship should be done from the moment Sun leaves (the asterism) Citrā and enters (the asterism) Svāti and stays therein. (The gods) Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Śambhu (Śiva), Śakra (Indra), Fire-god, Wind-god, Vināyaka and Kumāra (the two sons of Śiva), Varuṇa, Dhanada (god of wealth), Yama (god of death), Viśvedevas (a group of gods) and the eight elephants of Vaiśravasa (son of Viśravā) such as Kumuda, Airāvana, Padma, Puṣpadanta, Vāmana, Supratīka, Aṇjana and Nila, should be worshipped in the chamber.

21-23. The priest should offer as oblation clarified butter, twigs, white mustard and sesamum. After worshipping eight pitchers, the excellent horses and elephants should be bathed with them. The horses should be bathed (first) and the balls of rice offered. Then the elephants should be led out first through the arches but should not be made to cross the principal gateways etc. Then all should set out. The insignia of the king should be worshipped in the chamber. After having worshipped (Lord) Varuṇa on the west, the offering to the spirits should be made in the night.

24-26. When the Sun has entered (the asterism) Viśākhā, the king should stay in the hermitage. The chariot should be specially decorated on that day. The royal insignia that has been worshipped should be placed in the hands of the respective men. O Knower of righteousness! An astrologer should then consecrate the elephant, horse, umbrella, sword, bow, war

---

1. Lustration of arms, a kind of military and religious ceremony, performed by kings or generals before they set out.
drum, flag staff and flag (of the king). After consecration they should be made to be carried on the elephant.

27-30. The astrologer and priest should then ride the elephant. (The king) should ride the consecrated horses and set out through the arch. After setting out he should ride the elephant and go out through the arch. After having offered the oblation, the king riding the elephant and remaining calm should circumambulate (the city) thrice as the collection of fire-brands illuminate the different quarters of space, the fourfold army keep company and the entire army shout (victory). After doing this, (the king) having offered water with the palms should go back to the palace. This is the appeasing rite (called) nitrājanā that would make (a king) prosper and kill the enemy.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SIXTY-NINE

The sacred formulas for the consecration of the umbrella and other royal insignia

Puṣkara said:

1-3. I shall describe the sacred formulas for (the consecration of) the umbrella and other things, the worship of which (would confer) victory and other things. "O One with great intellect! One having the splendour of jasmine! One having the lustre of snow, jasmine and moon! You be glorious by the true words of Brahmā, Soma, and Varuṇa and the power of the Sun. May you shield the king for the achievement of success and promotion of health in the same way as the cloud covers the earth for its welfare.

4-9a. O Horse! You were born in the race of the Gandharvas (a kind of semi-divine beings). May you not become a defiler of the race. You be glorious by the true words of Brahmā, Soma and Varuṇa and the power of Fire (god) as well as the splendour of the Sun, the penance of the sages, the
continence of Rudra (Śiva) and the strength of the Wind (god). You remember that you are of royal birth. You remember the kaustubha gem. May you not incur the sin that would accrue to the killer of a brahmin, or to a patricide or to a matricide or to a person who utters a lie for the sake of (gaining) a land or to a man of the warrior-class who turns his back (upon the battle), although you may swiftly move that way. O Horse! May you not meet with adversity in the battle or on the road. May you be happy together with your master after killing the enemies in the battle.

9 b-13. O Banner of Indra! Suparṇa of great valour has taken his position on you. The lord of birds, Son of Vinatā, One (seated) on the banner of Nārāyaṇa (Viṣṇu), A progeny of (sage) Kaśyapa, One that carried away the nectar, The Enemy of the serpents, the Vehicle of (Lord) Viṣṇu, Immeasurable one, Unassailable in the battle, Destroyer of the enemies of the celestials, One having great strength, One having swift speed, One possessing a huge body, One who drinks the nectar, The winged one, One who has the swiftness of Māruti (son of Wind, Hanumat) is always present in you. You have been fixed by (Lord) Viṣṇu, the lord of lords, for the sake of Indra. May you always give me victory, prosperity and strength. (You) protect the warriors together with their horses, armours and weapons. You burn our enemies.

14-23. Kumuda, Airāvata, Padma, Puṣpadanta, Vāmana, Supratīka, Afījana and Nila\(^1\) are the eight (elephants) of divine origin. Their sons and grandsons constitute eight forces. You remember Bhadra, Manda, Mṛga and Saṅkīrṇa that have been born in the different forests and have become great elephants. May the (eight) Vasus, (eleven) Rudras, (twelve) Ādityas, the group of Maruts protect you. O King of elephants! Protect the master! May the obligation be discharged! (Lord) Indra, the lord of the celestials, riding the Airāvata (the elephant of Indra) and wielding the (weapon) thunderbolt following you, protect you. May you gain victory in the battle and march always in good state. May you get the strength of Airāvata (elephant of Indra) in the battle. May

---

1. Supposed to guard the quarters.
you get wealth from Soma, strength from Viṣṇu, splendour from Sun, speed from wind, firmness from mountain, victory from Rudra and fame from Lord Purandara (Indra). May the elephants protect you in the battle. May the quarters in the company of Aśvins (the two physicians of the gods) and Gandharvas (semi-divine beings) protect you in all the directions. May the Manus (the first representative of man-kind), Rudras, Vāyu, Soma, the great sages, Nāgas (serpents), Kinnaras (semi-divine beings), Gandharvas (semi-divine beings), Yakṣas (semi-divine beings), the hosts of spirits, planets, goblins with Ādityas, the Lord of the goblins with the (divine) mothers, Indra, Skanda (son of Śiva) the commander-in-chief (of the celestials) and Varuṇa resting in you burn all the enemies. May the king gain victory.

24–28a. May the festoons used by the enemy for decoration everywhere, fall down being struck by your splendour. In the same way as you have shone at the time of killing (the demon) Kālanemi,1 the destruction of Tripura2, the battle with Hiranyakaśipu3 and the killing of all the demons, may you shine now. You remember the opportune moment. May the enemies of the king be destroyed quickly. (May the enemies) be conquered by different kinds of terrible diseases and weapons. May (the names) Pūtanā, Revatī, Lekhā and Kālarātṛi that we have read (as terrible forces) burn all the enemies quickly with your help.

28b–33. (O sword !) You have been created by the god of gods, the trident-bearer, (Lord) Śarva (Śiva) out of the essence of the world at the great sacrifice in which everything was offered. The destroyer of the enemies! Remember the foremost form of Nandaka (the sword of Lord Kṛṣṇa). One having a dark complexion like the petals of blue lotus! Dark one! Destroyer of bad dreams! (Lord) Brahmā has declared the following as your eight names: asih, viśasanāh, khadgaḥ, tikṣṇadhāraḥ, durāsadaḥ, śrīgarbhaḥ, vijayaḥ and dharmapālaḥ. Kṛttikā is your asterism. Lord Maheśvara (Śiva) is

1. A demon killed by Viṣṇu.
2. The three cities destroyed by Śiva.
3. A demon killed by Viṣṇu.
your preceptor. Gold is your body. Janárdana (Viṣṇu) is your lord.

34. O Armour! You cause (the enemy forces) to feel ashamed in the battle. I will have fame in the army today. O Sinless one! Protect me, worthy of being protected by you! Obeisance to you.

35-38. O War drum! You cause the hearts of enemies to tremble by your sound. You act in such a way that you may achieve victory for the king’s army. Just as the excellent elephants get delighted on (hearing) the sound of the (colliding) clouds, in the same way (let us) rejoice on (hearing) your sound. You bring us joy. Just as the rumbling clouds cause fright in women, so also let our enemies get frightened by your sound in the battle. (These) should always be worshipped with sacred formulas. They should be employed for victory etc. Every year (Lord) Viṣṇu should be anointed with ghee and water. The king should be given the ablution by an astrologer and priest.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SEVENTY

A hymn to Viṣṇu that destroys Evil

Puṣkara said:

1. O Foremost among brahmins! This (hymn) Viṣṇupañjījara was prescribed by Brahmā for the protection of Śiva, who was desirous of destroying Tripura in olden days.

2. It was told by Vāgīśa (Bṛhaspati, the preceptor of the celestials) to Indra, who was making efforts to kill (the demon) Bala. I shall describe its form. You listen to that which will give you victory.

3-4. (Lord) Viṣṇu is stationed in the east bearing the disc. (Lord) Hari (is stationed) in the south bearing the mace. (Lord) Viṣṇu (remains) in the west bearing the bow. (Lord) Viṣṇu (is stationed) to my north bearing the sword. (Lord) Hṛṣīkeśa is in the angular points and (Lord) Janárdana in the inter-spaces. (Lord) Hari (is stationed) on the earth in the
form of a tortoise and (Lord) Narasimha (man-lion form of Viṣṇu) in the sky (above) me.

5. This sharp-edged and stainless Sudarśana disc (of Viṣṇu) revolves. His garland of rays is imperceivable. “May you kill the evil spirits and those who wander in the night.”

6. This mace has the lustre of the flames given out by the Sun. It is capable of destroying the demons, goblins, spirits and female spirits.

7. May the bow of Vāsudeva (Viṣṇu), that is striking suddenly, kill all my enemies, such as birds, men, kūsmāṇḍa and the spirits of the dead.

8. Those who have been shaken by the shining lustre of the stroke of the sword, let those assembed (enemies) be subdued at once, like serpents by Garuḍa (vehicle of Viṣṇu).

9-12. May the kūsmāṇḍas, yakṣas, demons, the night wanderers, spirits of the dead, Vināyakas, cruel men, jambhagas (jackals ?), birds, lions and other animals, serpents and others become good being struck by the sound of the conch of Viṣṇu. Those that take away my thinking faculty, those men who affect my memory, those who affect my strength and splendour, those who cast their shadow, those who affect my pleasures, those who destroy my traits, may those kūsmāṇḍas get destroyed by the sound of the disc of (Lord) Viṣṇu.

13. May my intellect, mind and sense-organs be healthy by the singing of (the glory of) lord of lords, Vāsudeva.

14. May (Lord) Janārdana, Hari, be behind me, in my front, on the south and north and at the angular points. One that makes obeisance to (the Lord) Janārdana, one worthy of worship, Iśāna, endless and undecaying will not have grief.

15. Just as (Lord) Hari is the Supreme Brahman, that Keśava is above the form of the universe. May my three kinds of inauspiciousness get destroyed by the truth of singing the name Acyuta (undecaying).
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SEVENTY-ONE

The different recensions of the Vedas

Puṣkara said:

1. The number of hymns of the Ṛg (veda), Yajur (veda), Sāma (veda) and Atharva (veda) that yield all (the desires) and confer the four ends of the human life is one lakh.

2. (The Ṛgveda) is divided into two branches, Sāṅkhya-yāna and Āṣvalāyana. The brāhmaṇas (of this Veda) (contain) two thousand one hundred and ten hymns.

3. The Ṛgveda is considered as the authority by the Dvai-pāyanas and others. The hymns of the Yajurveda number one thousand nine hundred and ninetynine.

4-5. Their branches are one thousand eightysix. The branches of the Yajur (veda) are (known as) Kāṇvī, Mādhyan-dīni, Kaṭhī, Mādhyakaṭhi, Maitrāyaṇī, Taittiriya and Vaiśam-pāyanā.

6-8a. The first (branch) of the Sāmaveda is known as Kauthuma and the second as Atharvaṇāyani. The songs of this Veda consist of āranyaka, uktha and āṭha. The extent of the (Sāmaveda) is said to be a collection of nine thousand four hundred and twentyfive.

8b-9a. Sumantu, Jājali, Ślokāyani, Saunaka, Pippalāda, Muṇjakēsa and others (are those who represent the branches) of Atharva (veda).

9b-10. The Lord (Viṣṇu) in the form of (sage) Vyāsa divided the ten thousand and six hundred hymns and one hundred Upaniṣads into different recensions. (Lord) Viṣṇu also made the divisions of the Epics and Purāṇas.

11-12. The bard Lomaharṣaṇa got it from Vyāsa. Sumati, Agnivarca, Mitrayu, Śāṁśapāyana (Śāṁśapāyana ?), Kṛtvatrata and Śāvanṇi were his disciples. Śāṁśapāyana and others were the makers of the collection of Purānic texts.

13. The Brahma (purāṇa) and other Purāṇas are eighteen. (They are known to be) learning relating to (Lord) Hari

1. Righteousness, material prosperity, pleasures and beatitude.
(Viṣṇu). (Lord) Hari remains in the form of learning in the great Purāṇa (called) Agni.

14. One would get enjoyment and emancipation by worshipping and praising Him, who is immanent, transcendent and bears the gross and subtle forms.

15. (That) all-pervasive, triumphant (lord) wishing for prosperity is of the forms of Fire, Sun etc. (Lord) Viṣṇu, that is the mouth of the gods in the form of the Fire (god), is the supreme state.

16. The embodiment of sacrifices is praised in the Vedas and Purāṇas. The Āgneya-purāṇa is the greatest of the forms of Viṣṇu.

17-22. The composer and listener of the Āgneya-purāṇa is (Lord) Janārdana (Viṣṇu). Hence the Āgneya-purāṇa is great as that made up of all the Vedas. It is of the form of all learning, meritorious, of the form of all knowledge and excellent. It is of the form of all the beings and of (Lord) Hari (Viṣṇu). (It is meritorious) for the men who read and listen to (its narration). It gives knowledge to those who seek knowledge. It yields material prosperity to those who seek material prosperity. It confers kingdom on those who desire to have kingdom. It yields righteousness to those who seek righteousness. It confers heaven on those who seek heaven. It blesses those who seek progeny with progeny. It gives cows to those who seek cows. Those who seek a village would be blessed with a village. Those who desire pleasures would be getting pleasures. It gives all good fortune. It gives good qualities and fame to men. Those who seek victory would get victory. It gives all things to those who seek everything. Those who desire emancipation would be blessed with emancipation. The Āgni-purāṇa destroys the sins of sinners.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SEVENTY-TWO

The meritoriousness of making gifts of the different Purāṇas

Puṣkara said:

1-2. (The Purāṇa) that was narrated by Brahmā to Marici in olden days in fifty thousand verses (is said to be) Brahma-purāṇa. One who desires to attain heaven should write and give it as a gift on the full moon day in (the month of) Vaiśākha (May-June) together with water and a cow. The Padma purāṇa that contains twelve thousand verses should be given (on a similar day) in (the month of) Jyeṣṭha (June-July) together with a cow.

3-4a. (Sage) Parāśara narrated the Vaiṣṇavapurāṇa based on the accounts of the Varāhakalpa in twenty thousand verses. One who makes a gift (of the same) together with water and a cow in (the month of) Āśāḍha (July-August) would reach the place of (Lord) Viṣṇu.

4b-5. The Vaiyavīya (purāṇa) (that contains) fourteen thousand (verses) (is) dear to (Lord) Hari (Viṣṇu). The Wind god has narrated the righteous way in this (Purāṇa) with reference to (the incidents of) the Śvetakalpa. It has to be copied and given as a gift to a brahmin together with the molasses and a cow (on the full moon day) in (the month of) Śrāvaṇa (August-September).

6-7. It is said to be the Bhāgavata (purāṇa) in which the virtues have been explained with reference to the ēyātra (mantra) and also the killing of the demon Vṛtra during the Śrāvasvatakalpa has been described. It should be given as a gift in (the month of) Pṛṣṭhapadi (September-October) together with a golden lion. It contains eighteen thousand (verses).

8-9a. It is said to be the Nāradiya (purāṇa) consisting of twenty five thousand (verses) in which (the sage) Nārada described the virtues based on the Brhatkalpa. One can have the supreme attainment by making a gift (of the same) (on a full moon day) in (the month of) Āśvina (October-November) together with a cow.

1. There are thirty-two kalpa periods each equal to 432 million years of mortals.
2. RV. 3.62.10.
9b-10a. The Mārkaṇḍeya (purāṇa) (contains) nine thousand (verses) in which there is a discussion of righteousness and unrighteousness relating to the enemies. It should be given as a gift (on the full moon day) in (the month of) Karttiika (November-December).

10b-11. That (Purāṇa) is Āgneya that was spoken by the Fire-god to (sage) Vasiṣṭha. (It contains) twelve thousand (verses) and imparts all knowledge. It should be copied and offered as a gift in (the month of) Mārgaśīra (December-January). It yields everything.

12. The Bhaviṣya (Purāṇa) (contains) fourteen thousand (verses). It had its origin from the Sun. (Lord) Bhava (Śiva) narrated it to Manu. It should be offered as a gift in (the month of) Pausya (January-February) together with molasses etc.

13-14a. The Brahmavaivarta (purāṇa) was narrated by Śāvarṇi (Manu) to (sage) Nārada (dealing) with the history of Rathantara and the boar (manifestation of Viṣṇu) in eighteen thousand (verses). One who gives it in (the month of) Māgha (February-March) as a gift would reach the world of Brahmā.

14b-15. The Liṅga (Purāṇa) is that in which the great Lord (Śiva) residing in the fiery liṅga in the Āgneyakalpa described the virtues in eleven thousand (verses). One who makes a gift of the same in (the month of) Phālguna (March-April) together with sesamum and cow would have the vision of (or attain to) Śiva.

16-17a. The Varāha (purāṇa) was narrated by (Lord) Viṣṇu in fourteen thousand (verses). The account of the boar (form of Viṣṇu) was propagated by (Lord) Viṣṇu on the earth (assuming the form) of a man. (One who makes a gift of it) together with a golden (image of) eagle in (the month of) Caitra (April-May) would reach the place of (Lord) Viṣṇu.

17b-18a. The great Skānda (purāṇa) was narrated by (Lord) Skanda in eighty-four thousand (verses) on the virtues in the Tatpuruṣa kalpa. One should make a gift (of the same).

18b-19a. The Vāmana (purāṇa) narrates the story of (Lord) Hari (Viṣṇu) relating to Dhaumakalpa in ten thousand (verses)
dealing with the virtues and material prosperity should be given (as a gift) during autumnal equinox.

19b-20a. The Kūrma (purāṇa) was narrated by the tortoise (form of Lord Viṣṇu) in eight thousand verses in connection with (the story of) Indradyumna in the nether world. It should be given (as a gift) together with a golden (image of) tortoise.

20b-21a. The Matsya (purāṇa) was narrated by (Lord Viṣṇu in the form of a) fish to Manu at the beginning of the kalpa (period). It should be given (as a gift) at the time of the equinox together with a golden (image of) fish.

21b-22a. The Garuḍa (purāṇa) was narrated by (Lord) Viṣṇu in the Tārkṣakalpa describing the birth of Garuḍa (the vehicle bird of Lord Viṣṇu) from the universal egg. It should be given (as a gift) together with a golden (image of) hanisa (swan).

22b-23a. The Brahmāṇḍa (purāṇa) is that in which (Lord) Brahmā described the greatness of the universe in twelve thousand (verses). It should be given (as a gift) to a brahmin.

23b-26. The reciter of the (Mahā) bhārata should be honoured with clothes, perfumes, garlands and other things after the completion of each parvan (each one of the eighteen divisions) and brahmins should be fed with sweet gruel. After (the recitation of) each parvan is complete cows, land, village, gold and other things should be given (as gift). After (the recital of the text) of Bhārata is complete, a brahmin and the Samhitā texts should be worshipped. Then the book should be wrapped in silken cloth and kept at a sacred place. (Lords) Nara and Nārāyaṇa¹ and the books should be worshipped with flowers and other things. The recitation should be completed by making gifts of cows, food, land and gold and feeding (the brahmins).

27-29. Great gifts should be made and different kinds of gems should be given. Two or three māṣakas (a particular weight of gold) should be given every month. It is laid down that gift (should be given) to the reciter at the commencement of the solstice. O Brahmin! The reciter should be worshipped by all

¹. Originally regarded as identical but in mythology and epics considered as distinct beings, Arjuna being identified with Nara and Kṛṣṇa with Nārāyaṇa.
the listeners. One who makes a gift of the Epics and Purānas (in the above manner) after worship would get long and healthy life and would attain emancipation and heaven.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SEVENTY-THREE

The description of the solar race

Fire-god said:

1-4. I shall describe to you the genecalogies of the solar and lunar races and of other kings. (Lord) Brahmā was born from the (navel) lotus of (Lord) Hari (Viṣṇu). (Sage) Marici was the son of (Lord) Brahmā. (Sage) Kaśyapa was born from Marici and Sun from Kaśyapa. He (Sun) had three wives—Saṁjñā, Rājñī and Prabhā. Rājñī was the daughter of Raivata. She gave birth to a son (called) Revanta. Prabhā (gave birth) to Prabhāta through the Sun. Saṁjñā, the daughter of Tvaṣṭṛ (Viśvakarman) (gave birth) to a son (called) Manu. The twins Yamunā and Yama were born (to Rājñī). Chāyā gave birth to Sāvarṇi, Śani, Tapaśi and Viṣṭi. Saṁjñā gave birth to Vaivasvata Manu and again the Aśvins.

5-6. Vaivasvata Manu had eight sons best of all but not equal to him—Ikṣvāku, Nābhāga, Dhṛṣṭa, Śaryāti, Nariṣyanta, Prāṁṣu, Karuṣa and Pṛṣadhra. They were of great prowess and lived in Ayodhyā.

7. Ilā was the daughter (of Manu). Purūravas (was born) to her through Budha. That Ilā (again) became Sudyumna (a male) after delivering Purūravas.

8-10a. The three kings Utkala, Gaya and Vinatāśva were from Sudyumna. The country of Utkala was given to Utkala, the western part (of the earth) to Vinatāśva and all the quarters to the foremost king Gaya (with his capital at) Gayāpurī. Sudyumna obtained Pratiṣṭhāna by the words of

1. For an account relating to Saṁjñā and Chāyā See Liṅg. P. 65. 3-14.
Vasiṣṭha. After getting the kingdom, Sudyumna gave it away to Purūravas.

10b-11. Śakas (were) the sons of Nariṣyanta. Ambariṣa, a devotee of (Lord) Viṣṇu (was the son) of Nābhāga and a protector of the people. The race of Dhārṣṭaka (was) from Dhrṣṭa. Sukanya and Ānarta (were the sons) of Śaryāti. King Vairohya (was the son) of Ānarta.

12-16. Kuśasthali became the domain of Ānarta. The virtuous Raivata, known as Kakudmin was the eldest among the hundred sons of Reva. He got the kingdom of Kuśasthali. He heard the science of music from Brahmā in the company of his daughter. In moment of the god passed ages of the world of mortals. He returned to his city hurriedly surrounded by the Yādavas. He made the beautiful Dvāravatī (Dvārakā) having many doors (as his capital) guarded by the Bhojas, Vṛṣṇis and Andhakas led by Vāsudeva and others. He gave away (his daughter) Revati of spotless beauty in marriage to Baladeva. Then he performed penance on the peak of the Sumeru mountain and reached the abode of (Lord) Viṣṇu.

17. Nābhāga had two sons, that were Vaiśyas, who became brahmins (later on). Kārūṣas (were born) from Karuṣa, who were of the warrior caste that were invincible.

18. Prṣadhra became a śūdra on account of killing the cow of his preceptor. Vikukṣi, the divine ruler, was born from Ikṣvāku, the son of Manu.

19-20. Kakutstha was born from Vikukṣi and Suyodhana was his son. Pṛthu was his son. Viśvagāśva was the son of Pṛthu. His son was Āyus. Yuvanāśva was his son. Śrāvanta was born from Yuvanāśva. The city of Śrāvanti in the east (was his capital).

21. Bṛhadaśva was born from Śrāvanta. Kuvalāśva was the next king. He got the name Dhundhumāra (as he killed a demon) named Dhundhu₁ in olden days.

22. The three kings Dṛḍhāśva, Daṇḍa and Kapila (were the sons) of Dhundhumāra. Haryaśva and Pramodaka (were born) from Dṛḍhāśva.

₁. See Vi. P. IV. 2 40.
23. Nikumbha (was born) from Haryaśva and Sanḥatāśva from Nikumbha. Akṛśāśva and Raṇāśva were the two sons of Sanḥatāśva.

24. Yuvanāśva (was the son) of Raṇāśva. Māndhātr (was born) from Yuvanāśva. Purukutsa was (born) from Māndhātr. Mucukunda (was his) second (son).

25. Trasadasyu and Sambhūta¹ (were born) from Purukutsa through Narmadā. Sudhanvā was (born) from Sambhūta. Then Tridhanvā (was born) from Sudhanvā.

26. Taraṇa (was born) from Tridhanvā and Satyavrata (was) his son. Satyaratha (was born) from Satyavrata. Hariścandra (was) his son.

27-29. Rohitāśva (was born) from Hariścandra. Vṛka was (born) from Rohitāśva². Bāhu (was born) from Vṛka and Sagara from Bāhu. His dear (wife) Prabhā was the mother of sixty thousand sons. (His other wife) Bhānumatī³ (gave birth) to Asamañjasa from that king by the grace of the pleased (sage) Aurova. The sons of Sagara were burnt by Viṣṇu (Lord Viṣṇu in the form of sage Kapila) as they were digging up the earth. Amśumān (was born) from Asamañjasa. Dilipa was (born) from Amśumān.

30. Bhagiratha (was born) from Dilipa. He brought down the Ganges (from the heaven). Nābhāga (was born) from Bhagiratha and Ambariṣa from Nābhāga.

31. Sindhudvīpa (was born) from Ambariṣa. Śrutāyu is known to be his son. Rtuparna (was born) from Śrutāyu. Kalmāṣapāda (was) his son.

32. Sarvakarmā (was born) from Kalmāṣapāda. Anaraṇya was (born) from him. Nighna (was born) from Anaraṇya, Anamitra (from Anaraṇya) and Raghu (from Anamitra).

33. Dilipa was (born) from Raghu. Aja (was) the (next) king (born) from Dilipa. Dirghabahu (was born) from Aja and Kāla and Ajāpāla were (born in order).

1. Differs from Vi. P. IV. 3. 17 Anaraṇya was born from Trasadasyu.

2. The list here omits certain names. See Vi. P. IV. 3. 25.

3. The names of the wives of Sagara differ from Vi. P. IV. 4. 1.
34-35. Then Daśaratha was born. He had four sons who were all partial manifestations of (Lord) Nārāyaṇa (Viṣṇu). Rāma was the eldest among his (sons). That foremost of the Rāghus was the ruler at Ayodhyā and the Killer of (the demon) Rāvaṇa. (Sage) Vālmiki composed his life accounts after hearing that from (sage) Nārada.

36. Kuśa and Lava, the furtherers of the family, (were) the sons of Rāma through Sītā. Atithi was born from Kuśa. Niṣadha (was) his son.

37. Nala was born from Niṣadha. Nabha was born from Nala. Puṇḍarika was (born) from Nabha. Then Sudhanvā was born.

38. Devānīka (was born) from Sudhanvā and Ahināśva was his son. Sahasrāśva (was born) from Ahināśva and Candraloka was born then.

39. Tārāpiḍa (was born) from Candraloka. Candraparvata (was born) from him. Bhānuratha (was born) from Candragiri (parvatā). Śrutāyu was his son. These are known to be the descendants of the Ikṣvāku family that bore (the name of) the Solar race.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SEVENTY-FOUR

Description of the Lunar race

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the Lunar race. It would destroy the sin of one who reads it. Brahmā was born from the navel-lotus of (Lord) Viṣṇu. (Sage) Atri was the son of Brahmā. (Soma was born) from Atri.

2-5. Soma performed the Rājasūya (sacrifice) and gave away (the suzerainty over) the three worlds as the fees (for the priest). When the final (bathing) was finished, the wives of the mortals who desired to look at his (beautiful) form served him being tormented by the arrows of the god of love. (Goddess) Lakṣmī deserted (lord) Nārāyaṇa. Sinivāli, Dyuti,
Puṣṭi, Prabhā, Kuhū, Kīrti, Vasu and Dhṛti respectively deserted Kardama, Vibhāvasu, the undecaying Dhātā, Prabhākara, Haviṣmān, (the husband) Jayanta, Mārica Kaśyapa and (husband) Nandī and entertained Soma alone then.

6-7. Soma also bestowed his affection on them as if they were his wives. The husbands of these (women) were not able to curse him or (punish him) with the weapons, although he had done a misdeed, as he had obtained suzerainty over the seven worlds by means of his penance.

8-10. Being influenced by their submission his mind faltered. Soma seduced hastily the glorious Tārā, the wife of Bṛhaspati (the preceptor of the celestials) and thus insulted the son of Aṅgiras (Bṛhaspati). On account of this (incident) there was the battle well-known as Tārakāmaya (involving the celestials) between the celestials and the demons causing great destruction to the world. Brahmā (intervened and) prevailed upon Uśanas (preceptor of the demons) (to shed his wrath) and entrusted Tārā to (the care of) Aṅgiras (Bṛhaspati).

11. Guru (Bṛhaspati) finding her pregnant said to her “Shed the child in the womb”. The child that was delivered was effulgent and said “I am the son of Moon”.

12-13. Thus Budha was born from Soma. Purūravas was his son. The nymph Urvaśī deserted heaven and was enamoured of him. O Great sage! The king spent fifty-nine years with her.

14. There was only one fire in days of yore which was made into three by him.¹ Purūravas practised yoga and reached the world of the Gandharvas.

15. Urvaśī (wife of Purūravas) gave birth to the kings Āyus, Dṛḍhāyus, Aśvāyus, Ghanāyus, Dhṛtimān, Vasu, Divijāta and Satāyus².

16-19. Nahuṣa, Vṛddhaśarman, Raji, Darbha and Vipāpmā were the sons of Āyus. Raji had a hundred sons known as Rājeyas. Raji having obtained a boon from (Lord) Viṣṇu killed

---

¹ For a detailed account see Vi. P. IV. 6. 77-94.
² Sons are said to be only six in the Purāṇas and MBh.—Āyu, Dhimān, Amāvasu, Dṛḍhāyu, and Satāyu. See MBh. Ādi. 75.24-25.
the demons on the request of the celestials. He gave the status of a son to Indra and bestowed his kingdom on him and ascended the heavens (to fight with the demons). But the kingdom of Indra was usurped by the wicked sons of Raji. Bṛhaspati deluded the sons of Raji and restored that (kingdom) to Indra by means of performing the appeasing (rites) of the planets. Then they (the sons of Raji) became the followers of their own dharma.

20. Nahuṣa had seven sons—Yati, Yayāti, Uttama, Udbhava, Pañcaka, Śaryāti and Meghapālaka.

21-23. Yati, even as a boy, contemplated on (Lord) Viṣṇu and attained Him. Then Devayāni, the daughter to Śukra (the preceptor of the demons), became the wife of Yayāti. Then Śarmiṣṭhā, the daughter of Vṛṣaparva (became the wife) of Yayāti and had five sons. Devayāni gave birth to Yadu and Turvasu. Śarmiṣṭhā, the daughter of Vṛṣaparva (gave birth) to Druhya, Anu and Pīru. Yadu and Pīru, among them, (became) the founders of dynasties.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SEVENTY-FIVE

Description of the dynasty of Yadu

Fire-god said:

1. Yadu had five sons—Nilāṇjika, Raghu, Kroṣṭu, Śatajit and Sahasrajit and Sahasrajit was the eldest among them.

2. Śatajit had three (sons)—Haihaya, Reṇuhaya and Haya. Dharmanetra (was the son) of Haihaya. Saṁhana (was the son) of Dharmanetra.

3. Mahimā was (the son) of Saṁhana. Bhadrasenaka (was born) from Mahimā. Durgama was (born) from Bhadrasena. Kanaka was (born) from Durgama.

4. Kṛtavīrya, Kṛtāgni, Karavīraka and Kṛtajjas were the four (sons) of Kanaka. Arjuna (Kārtavīryārjuna) (was born) from Kṛtavīrya.
5-9. Suzerainty over the seven continents of the earth, (possession of) thousand arms and invincibility by the enemy in the battle and certain death at the hands of (Lord) Viśṇu in case of leading an unrighteous life were conferred on (Kārtavīrya) Arjuna who was doing penance. That king Arjuna performed ten thousand sacrifices. By the remembrance of him (his name) there was no loss of property in the kingdom. The kings would not certainly attain the position of Kārtavīrya by (doing) sacrifices, (giving) gifts, (performing) penances, by valour and by learning. Among the hundred sons of Kārtavīrya (the following) five (were) foremost—Śūrasena, Śūra, Dhṛṣṭo-kta, Kṛṣṇa and Jayadhvaja. (Jayadhvaja) was a great king among the Āvantayas.

10-11. Tālajaṅgha (was born) from Jayadhvaja. The sons of Tālajaṅgha formed the five branches of the Haihayas—Bhojas, Āvantas, Vitihotras, Svayaṁjātas and Šauṇḍikeyas. Ananta was (born) from Vītihotra. Durjaya (was) king from Ananta.

12. I shall describes the race of Kroṣṭu in which (Lord) Hari Himself was born. Vṛjinīvān (was born) from Kroṣṭu. Svāhā was (born) from Vṛjinīvān.

13. Ruṣadgu (was) the son of Svāhā and Citraratha (was) his son. Śaśabindu (was born) from Citraratha. He was a great monarch and a staunch devotee of (Lord) Hari.

14-15. Among the ten thousand intelligent, handsome, wealthy and radiant sons of Śaśabindu, Pṛthuśrava was the foremost. Suyajñaka was his son. Uṣanas (was) the son of Suyajña. Titikṣu (was) the son of Uṣanas.

16-18. Marutta was (born) from Titikṣu. Kambalabarhiṣa (was born) from him. (Rukmakavaca was born from him). Fifty (sons) were (born) from Rukmakavaca (among whom) Rukmeṣu, Pṛthurukmaka, Havis, Jyāmagha and Pāpagha (were) most prominent. Jyāmagha was a hen-pecked husband. Vidarbha was (born) from Jyāmagha through Sevyā. Kauśika, Lomapāda and Kratha (were) his sons. From the excellent Lomapāda, Kṛti (was born) and Cidi (was) the son of Kauśika. His successor kings were hence known as Caidyas.

19. Kunti (was born) from Kratha, the son of Vidarbha.
Dhrṣṭaka (was the son) of Kunti. Nidhṛti (was the son) of Dhrṣṭa. His (son was) known as Udarka. Vidūrathā (was his son).

20. Vyoma (was) the son of Daśārha (Vidūrathā). It is said that Jīmūta was (born) from Vyoma. Vikala was the son of Jīmūta. Bhīmaratha (was) his son.

21. Navaratha (was born) from Bhīmaratha. Drḍharatha was (born) then. Śakunti (was born) from Drḍharatha. Karambhaka (was) from Śakunti.

22. Devarāta was from Karambha. Devakṣetra was his son. (A son) by name Madhu (was) from Devakṣetra. Dravarasa was from Madhu.

23. Puruhūta was from Dravarasa. Jantu was his son. Sātvata, the Yādava king of good quality, (was) the son of Jantu.

24. Bhajamāna, Vṛṣṇi, Andhaka and Devāvṛdhā were the four (sons) of Sātvata. Their races were renowned.

25-26. Bāhya, Vṛṣṭi, Kṛmi and Nimi were (the sons) of Bhajamāna. Babhru was from Devāvṛdhā. The following verse is sung about him: “We hear his virtues sung close by (in the same way) as we had heard from a distant place. Babhru is the foremost among men and (considered) by the celestials as equal to Devāvṛdhā.”

27. Babhru (had) four sons. (Those were) kings and devotees of (Lord) Vāsudeva (Hari). (They were Kuhura, Bhajamāna, Śini and Kambalabarhiṣ.

28. Dhrṣṇu (was the son) of Kuhura. Dhrti (was) the son of Dhrṣṇu. Kapotaramā was from Dhrti. Tittiri (was) his son.

29. Nara (was) the son of Tittiri. Candanaadundubhi (was) his (son). Punarvasu (was) his son. Āhuka (was) the son of Āhuki (wife of Punarvasu).

30-33. Devaka was born from Āhuka and Ugrasena was born then. Devavān and Upadeva are known to be the sons of Devaka. They had seven sisters. (Devaka) gave them in marriage to Vasudeva. They were Devakī, Šrutadevi, Mitradevi, Yaśodharā, Śridevi, Satyadevi and Surāpi. Ugrasena had nine sons among whom Kaṁsa was the eldest, (the others being) Nyagrodha, Sunāman, Kaṅku, Śaṅku (the protector of earth), Sutanū, Rāṣtrapāla, Yuddhamuṣṭi and Sumuṣṭika.
34. Vidūratha, the chief among the charioteers (was) the son of Bhajamāna. The powerful king Śūra was the son of Vidūratha.

35. Śoñāśva and Śvetavāhāna (were) the two sons of that mighty monarch. Śamī, Satrūjīt and others were the five sons of Śoñāśva.

36-37. Pratikṣetra (was) the son of Śamī and Bhojaka (was the son) of Pratikṣetra. Hṛdika (was) the son of Bhoja. Hṛdika had ten sons—Kṛtavarmā, Śatadhanvā, Devārha, Bhīṣaṇa and others. Kambalabarhis (was born) from Devārha. Asamaujas was (then born from Kambalabarhis).

38-39. Sudarṣṭra, Suvāsa and Dhrṣṭa were (born) from Asamaujas. Gāndhāri and Mādrī were the wives of Dhrṣṭa. Sumittra was born to Gāndhāri. Mādrī gave birth to Yudhājit. Anamitra and Śini (were the descendants) from Dhrṣṭa. Devamīḍhūṣa (was born) then.

40-43. Nighna (was) the son of Anamitra. Prasenaka and Satrājīt (were the sons) of Nighna. When Prasena was wearing the vamantaka jewel got from Sun god by Satrājīt and wandering in the forest, a lion killed him and carried away the gem. The lion was killed by Jāmbavān (the king of bears) and Jāmbavān was conquered by (Lord) Hari (Viṣṇu). He got the jewel and Jāmbavatī (the daughter of Jāmbavān) and went to the city of Dvārakā (on the western coast of India in Gujarāt). (He) gave (the gem) to Satrājīt. Śatadhanu killed him (Satrājīt). The famous Kṛṣṇa killed Śatadhanu, recovered the gem and entrusted the gem to Akrūra in the presence of Bala (deva) and the Yadava chiefs.

44. Kṛṣṇa thus got rid of the false accusation on him that he had killed Satrājīt. One who reads (this account) would go to the heaven. Satyabhāmā (the daughter of Satrājīt) became the wife of Kṛṣṇa.

45. Śini was born from Anamitra. Satyaka (was) the son of Śini. Sātyaki was born from Satyaka. Dhuni was (born) from Yuyudhāna (Sātyaki).

46. Yuyandhara (was) the son of Dhuni. Svāhaya was (born from him). He was invincible in battle. Ṛṣabhā and Kṣettrakā (were) his (sons). Śvaphalkaka (was born) from Ṛṣabhā.
47. Akrūra (was) the son of Śvaphalka. Sudharivaka (was born) from Akrūra. Vasudeva and others (were born) from Śūra. Prithā (Kuntī) was the wife of Pāṇḍu.

48. Yudhiṣṭhira was born to Kuntī (wife) of Pāṇḍu, from Dharma (god of virtue), Vṛkodara (Bhīmasena) from Vāya (Wind god), Dhanañjaya (Arjuna) from Indra and Nakula and Sahadeva to Mādri (the other wife of Pāṇḍu).

49-51. (Bala) rāma, Sārāṇa and Durdama (were born) to Rohiṇī from Vasudeva. Susenaka was born first to Vasudeva through Devaki. (The other sons were) Kṛttimān, Bhadrasena, Jārukhya, Viṣṇudāsaka and Bhadradeha. Karna killed these six children. Then Bala (rāma), Kṛṣṇa, Subhadrā, that speaks sweet and Cārudeśa (were born). Sāmba and others were the sons of Jāmbavatī from Kṛṣṇa.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SEVENTYSIX

The manifestations of Lord Viṣṇu

Fire-god said:

1-2. (The patriarch) Kaśyapa manifested as Vasudeva and Aditi (his wife) as the excellent Devaki. Kṛṣṇa was born to Devaki and Vasudeva being endowed with penance for the sake of the protection of righteousness, removal of unrighteousness, protection of the celestials and others and the destruction of the demons and others.

3-5a. Rukmiṇī, Satyahāmā, Satyā, Nāgnajitī, Gāndhāri, Lakṣmaṇā, Mitravindā, Kālindī, Jāmbavatī, Susīlā, Mādri, Kauśalyā, Vijayā, Jayā and others were the sixteen thousand wives (of Kṛṣṇa) among whom Satyabhāmā served (Lord) Hari (Kṛṣṇa).

5b-6. Pradyumna and others were born to Kṛṣṇa through Rukmiṇī, Bhima and others through Satyabhāmā, Sāmba and others through Jāmbavatī and thus were among the one hundred thousand sons of that wise man.
7-9. Yādavas were eighty thousand that were protected by (Lord) Kṛṣṇa. Pradyumna (son of Kṛṣṇa) had Aniruddha, who was fond of war, as his son through Vaidarbhī. The mighty Yādavas Vajra and others (were the sons) of Aniruddha. Thus there were three crores and sixty lakhs of Yādavas. He (Kṛṣṇa) appeared for the destruction of the demons that afflicted men. (Lord) Hari (Viṣṇu) is born as a mortal in order to regularise the duties of men.

10. There were twelve battles between the celestials and the demons for the sake of their (legitimate) portions. The first (war of Viṣṇu was in) the man-lion form. The second war (was) as a dwarf.

11. The battle (fought) as the boar (was) the next one. The fourth one was for the churning of the nectar. The sixth one was the battle involving all the celestial bodies for the sake of resuscitation.

12. (The seventh one was the destruction of) the three cities. (The eighth one was for) the destruction of (the demon) Andhaka. The ninth one (was) the killing of (the demon) Vṛtra. The deadly (poison of) hālāhala was conquered (in the tenth one). (The demon) Kolāhala (was subdued in the next one).

13. (The next one was) the form as the man-lion, the protector of the celestials in olden days, that pierced the chest of (the demon) Hiraṇyakaśipu with his nails and made Prahlāda the king.

14. In (the dispute between) the celestials and the demons, (the Lord) was born of Kaśyapa and Aditi as a dwarf, deceived the powerful (demon) Bali and restored the kingdom to Indra.

15. The manifestation as a boar (was made by Lord Viṣṇu) and the demon Hiraṇyakṣa was killed, protecting the celestials thus. He lifted up the earth that got submerged and was praised by the celestials.

16. (The mount) Mandara was made the churning rod, (the serpent) Vāsuki as the string and (the ocean) was churned by the celestials and the demons. The ambrosia (that was obtained) was given to the celestials.

17. The celestials were in the same way protected at the time of the battle of the stars after preventing Indra, Guru, the
celestials and demons (from a combat) and thus the Lunar race was made to flourish.

18. (The sages) Viśvāmitra, Vasiṣṭha, Atri and Brahmā protected the celestials in the battle after warding off the demons that were having infatuation and hatred.

19. Lord Hari (Viṣṇu) was the refuge of (Lord) Iśāna (Śiva) that had (Lord) Brahmā as the charioteer of the earth, the chariot. The protector of the celestials and the destroyer of the demons burnt the three cities.

20. (Lord) Rudra (Śiva) was attacked by (the demon) Andhaka desirous of carrying away Gaurī (consort of Śiva). (Lord) Hari, who was fond of (his beloved) Revatī killed the demon Andha.

21. (Lord) Viṣṇu became the foam of the water at the time of the battle between the celestials and the demons and killed (the demon) Vṛtra that afflicted the celestials, and protected the virtues of the celestials.

22. (Lord) Hari, (manifested as) Paraśurāma, conquered the demons such as Śālva and protected the celestials after killing the wicked kṣatriyas (kings).

23. Madhusūdana (the destroyer of demon Madhu) took away the demon of Ḥālaḥala poison from Maheśvara and destroyed the fear of the celestials.

24. The demon Kolāhala was conquered by Him at the battle of the celestials and demons. All the celestials were protected by (Lord) Viṣṇu by protecting righteousness.

25. The kings, princes, sages and the gods are the manifestations of (Lord) Hari, whether (their names) have been narrated or not (in the traditional list).
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SEVENTY-SEVEN

The narration of the lineage of Aṅga

Fire-god said:

1. Varga (was) the son of Turvasu. Gobhānu was his son. Traiśāni was (born) from Gobhānu. Karandhama (was the son) of Taraiśāni.

2. Mārutta was (born) from Karandhama. Duṣyanta (was) his son. Varūtha was (the son) of Duṣyanta. Gāṇḍīra (was born) from Varūtha.

3. Gāndhāra (was born) from Gāṇḍīra. The mighty five peoples—Gāndhāras, Keralas, Colas, Pāṇḍyas and Kolas (were born) then.

4. Druhyu and Babhrusetu¹ (were the sons of Gāndhāra). Purovasu (was born) from Babhrusetu. Then Gāndhāra (was born) and Dharma from Gāndhāra. Gṛṇta was (born) from Dharma.

5. Vuduṣa (was born) from Gṛṇta. Pracetas (was born) from him. He had a hundred sons (among whom) Ānadra, Sabhānara, Cākṣuṣa and Parameṣuṣa (were foremost).

6. Kālānala (was born) from Sabhānara. Śrījaya, was born from Kālānala. Puraṅjaya (was the son) of Śrījaya. Janamejaya was his son.

7-8. Mahāśāla (was) his son. Mahāmanas was his son. O Brahman! Uśīnara (was) from him. He had then a son Nṛga through (his queen) Nṛgā, (a son) Nara through (his queen) Nārā and (a son) Kṛṇi (through) Kṛṇi. Suvarata was born (to him) through Drṣadvatī.

9. Pṛthudarbha, Viraka, Kaikeya and Bhadraka were the four sons of Śibi. There were prosperous regions in their names.

10. Titikṣu was born from Uśīnara. Ruṣadratha (was born) from Titikṣu. Paila was (born) from Ruṣadratha. Sutapā (was) the son of Paila.

11. The great ascetic Bali (was born) from him. Aṅga, Vaṅga, Mukhyaka, Pundra and Kaliṅga (were the sons) of Bali. Bali, the ascetic, (generated them) by means of his power.

1. Given as two separate names and subsequent names also differ. See Vi. P. IV. 17.
12. Dadhivâhana was (born) from Aṅga. Diviratha (was the next) king after him. Dharmaratha (was born) from Diviratha. Citraratha (was) his son.

13. Satyaratha (was born) from Citraratha. Lomapâda (was) his son. Caturaṅga (was born) from Lomapâda. Prthulâkṣa (was) his son.

14. Campa was (born) from Prthulâkṣa. Haryaṅgaka was from Campa. Bhadraratha was from Haryaṅga. Brhatkarman (was) his son.

15. Brhadbhânu was born from him. Brhâtmavat (was) from Brhadbhânu. Jayadratha was from him. Brhadratha (was born) from Jayadratha.

16. Viśvajit (was born) from Brhadratha. Karna was from Viśvajit. Vṛṣasena (was the son) of Karna. Prthusena was his son. These are the kings born in the race of Aṅga. Describe me the race of Puru.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SEVENTY-EIGHT

The description of the lineage of Puru

Fire-god side:

1. Janamejaya was (born) from Puru. Pracînavân was his son. Manasyu was from Pracînavân. Vitamaya (was) the (next) king from him.

2. Sundhu was from Vitamaya. Bahuvidha was the son of Sundhu. Samyāti (was) from Bahuvidha. Rahovâdi¹ (was) his son.

3-4. Bhadrâśva (was) his son. Bhadrâśva had ten sons—Rkṣeyu, Kṛṣeyu, Sannateyu, Ghrṭeyu, Citeyu, the noble Sthanḍilceyu, Dharmeyu, Sannateyu (?), Kṛṭeyu and Matinâra.

5. Tamsurodha, Pratiratha and Purasta were the sons of Matinâra. Kaṅva was (born) from Pratiratha. Medhâtithi was from Kaṅva.

¹ Names differ from VI. P. IV. 19.
6-8. Duṣyanta, Pravīra, Sumanta and Vīra (were) the four (sons) from Taṁsurodhā. Bharata was (born) from Duṣyanta through Śakuntalā. The descendants known as Bhāratas were mighty. When the sons of Bharata were lost on account of the wrath of the mother, then the Maruts (gods) brought Bharadvāja, son of Bṛhaspati and made (him) to meet (Bharata). Vitatha was born as a consequence of rituals (done by Bharadvāja).

9-11. That Vitatha also generated five sons—Suhotra, Suhotṛ, Gayā, Garbha and the great Suketu. Kapila had two sons—Kauśika and Grītṣapati. The brahmins, warriors, tradesmen were the sons of Grītṣapati. The Dīrghatamas were the sons of Kāśi (Kauśika ?). Dhanvantari was (born) then. Ketumān was his son.

12. Hemaratha (was born) from Ketumān. He was well-known as Divodāsa. Pratardana (was) from Divodāsa. Bharga and Vatsa (were born) from Pratardana.

13. Anarka was from Vatsa. Kṣemaka was born from Anarka. Varṣaketu (was) from Kṣemaka. Vibhu is remembered (to be) from Varṣaketu.

14. Ānarta was the son of Vibhu. Sukumāraka (was the son) of Vibhu. Satyaketu (was born) from Sukumāra. Vatsabhūmi (was born) from Vatsaka.

15. Bṛhat (was) the son of Suhotra. Ajamīḍha, Dvimīḍha and the brave Purumīḍha were the three sons of Bṛhat.

16. The valorous Jahnus was born to Ajamīḍha and Keśini. Ajakāśva was born from Jahnus. Balākāśva (was) his son.

17. Kuśika (was the son) of Balākāśva, and Gādhi, the Indra, (was born) from Kuśika. Satyāvatī (was) the daughter of Gādhi and Viśvāmitra his excellent son.

18-20. Devarata and Katimukha were the sons of Viśvāmitra. Śunaḥśepa (known also as) Aṣṭaka (was) the other (son). Śanti was born as son to Ajamīḍha through Niśin. Purujāti (was born) from (Su) Śanti. Bāhyāśva (was born) from Purujāti. The five kings Mukula, Śṛṇjaya, Brhadiṣu, Yavīnara and Kṛmila (were) from Bāhyāśva. They were known as the Pāñcālas.
21-23. (The descendants) of Mukula, (known as) the Maukulyas were brahmins endowed with property. Cañcāśva was born from Mukula. Cañcāśva had the twins—Divodāsa and Ahalyā. Śatānanda (was born) from Śaradvāta through Ahalyā. Satyadhrīk (was born) from Śatānanda. Then a pair, Kṛpa and Kṛpī, (were born from Satyadhrīk). Maitreya (was born) from Divodāsa and then Somapa (from Maitreya). Pañcadhanus (was born) from Śrīnjaya. Somadatta was his son.

24. Sahadeva (was born) from Somadatta. Somaka (was born) from Sahadeva. Jantu was from Somaka. Prśata (was) the son of Jantu.

25. Drupada (was) from Prśata. Dhrṣṭadyumna (was) from him. Dhrṣṭaketu was his son. Rkṣa was born to Ajamīḍha through Dhūminī.

26. Saṁvaraṇa was born from Rkṣa. Kuru (was) then (born) from Saṁvaraṇa. He migrated from (the city of) Prayāga and founded (the kingdom of) Kurukṣetra.

27. Sudhanvā, Sudhanu, Parikṣit and Arimejaya (were the sons) of Kuru. Suhotra was from Sudhanvā. Cyavana was born from Suhotra.

28-29. Seven other sons such as Bṛhadṛatha, Kuśa, Vīra, Yadu, Pratyagṛaha, Bala and Matsyakāli, were born through (his queen) Girikā by propitiating (the sage) Vasiṣṭha. Kuśāgra was from King Bṛhadṛatha. Vṛṣabha was born from Kuśāgra and Satyahita was his son.

30. (His son was) Sudhanvā, Ürja was his son. Sambhava was (born) from Ürja. Jarāsandha (was) from Sambhava. Sahadeva was his son.

31. Udāpi (was born) from Sahadeva. Śrūtaśarma (was born) from Udāpi. The righteous Janamejaya was the descendant of Parikṣit.

32. Trasadasyu (was born) from Janamejaya. Suratha, Śrutasena, Ugrasena and Bhīmasena (are) the names of the sons of Jahnu.

33. Janamejaya had two sons Suratha and Mahimān. Vidūratha was born from Suratha. Rkṣa was born from Vidūratha.
34. Bhīmasena was the son of Rkṣa the second. Pratīpa (was) from Bhīmasena. Śantanu (was the son) of Pratīpa.

35. Devāpi, Bālhika and Somadatta (were born) from Śantanu. Somadatta, Bhūri, Bhūriśravas and Śala were born from Bālhika.

36-38. Śantanu had Bhīṣma through Gaṅgā and Vicitravīryaka through Kālī (Satyavatī). Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana begot Dhṛtarāṣṭra, Pāṇḍu, and Vidura through the wife of Vicitravīrya. Yudhīṣṭhīra, Bhīmasena and Arjuna were the three sons of Pāṇḍu through Kuntī and Nakula and Sahadeva through Mādrī by divine agency. Saubhadrā (Abhimanyu born to Subhadrā) (was the son) of Arjuna. Parīkṣit (was born) from Abhimanyu.

39-40. Draupadī was the wife of the Pāṇḍavas. Through her Pratīvindhyā was born to Yudhīṣṭhīra, (Śrutāsena) from Bhīmasena, Śrutakirti from Dhanañjaya (Arjuna), Śrutāvarnā from Sahadeva and Śatānika was the (son) of Nakula. Ghaṭotkaca was another (son) of Bhīmasena through Hiḍimbā.

41. These are the past and future kings. There is no count of their numbers. O Brahmin! They have gone along with the passage of time. Lord Hari (Viṣṇu) is really the time. Hence one should worship Him. Hence one should offer oblation to fire intended for Him that would yield all the desires.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND SEVENTY-NINE

The description of the potent remedies

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the science of medicine, that was propounded by lord Dhanvantari to Suśruta, the essence that would revive the dead.

Suśruta said:

2. Describe to me the science of medicine that would cure

1. See verse 25 for Rkṣa, the first.
the diseases of men, horses and elephants and also the potent combinations and potent charms that would revive the dead.

Dhanvantari said:

3-7. One that is having fever should be made to fast by the physician protecting his strength and then feed him with gruel made of fried paddy and dry ginger. The patient having thirst at the end of the fever (should be given) water boiled with musta (cypserus rotundus), parpaṭa (oldenlandia), usira (the fragrant root of a plant), sandal, udicya (a kind of perfume) and dry ginger. After six days, (the patient) may be made to drink pungent food certainly. After the disorder has subsided, (medicated) oil should be rubbed (on the body). Then purgative should be given. Old nivāra (rice grown without cultivation), saṣṭika (a kind of rice), red paddy and pramodaka (a kind of rice) and similar things and barley converted into any form are the favourite (food) at (the time of) fever. Green gram, maśūra (a kind of pulse), chick-pea, horse-gram, saussurea, aḍhaka (a kind of pulse), nāraka (?), karkoṭaka (a kind of paddy), kaṭolbaka (?), snake-gourd, neem together with the fruits, parpaṭa and pomegranates (could safely be used by a patient) having fever.

8. An emetic is commended in the case of downward hemorrhage and a purgative in upward (hemorrhage). The six constituents except the dry ginger (should be given) as the drink.

9-10. Flour of barley, wheat, fried paddy, barley, Śāli (a kind of rice), maśūra, makuṣṭha (a kind of rice), chick-pea, green-gram and eatables (made) of wheat mixed with ghee and milk are beneficial. Honey and the juice of vra (a kind of drug) are good. Eating old śāli rice is beneficial in dysentery.

11. The food that does not cause excessive (motion), and that mixed with the barks of lodhra (a kind of tree) are commended. One should avoid taking food that causes excess of wind. One should always make (extra) efforts in (treating) the enlargement of spleen.

12. (Those suffering from dropsy) should take fried barley with milk. Vāstaka (chenopodium album) mixed with ghee,

---

1. These are musta, parpaṭa etc. noticed in verse 4 above.
wheat, śali rice and bitter things are beneficial for those having dropsy.

13-14a. Wheat, śali rice, green gram, cow's urine, rkṣa, khadira, abhayā, paīcakola (the five spices—long pepper etc.), venison, neem, dhātri (a variety of myrobalan), snake-gourd, the juice of citron, nutmeg, dried radish and saïndhava (a kind of rock-salt) (are good for dropsy).

14b-16. Water (boiled) with khadira is commended as a drink for those affected with leprosy. (Similarly) maśūra (a kind of pulse) and green-gram (with water should be given) for drinking. Old śali rice may be eaten. The juice of venison (mixed) with neem and parpaṭaka and vegetables, vidāṅga (embelia ribes), black pepper, musta, kuṣṭha, lodhra, natron (are also good). Paste of red arsenic and vacā (a kind of aromatic root) with (cow's) urine cures leprosy.

17-19a. Cakes, kuṣṭha, kulmāṣa (black barley) and barley etc. are beneficial for diabetes. Things made out of cooked barley, green gram, horse-gram, old śali rice, vegetables that are bitter and astringent, bitter green things, oils (extracted) from sesamum, sīgru (the leaves of a kind of tree), vibhitaka (a kind of myrobalan) and iṅgudi and greengram, barley, wheat and grains stored for a year (are also good).

19b-21. The juice of venison is commended as food for those suffering from pulmonary consumption. Horse-gram, green-gram, black pepper etc. and dry radish compounded with venison or cakes or bird's flesh or compounded with curd and pomegranade juice, dressed with the juice of citron, honey, grapes and vyosā (dried ginger, long and black pepper) and cooked barley, wheat and śali rice should be given as food to an asthma patient.

22. Decoction made of the ten kinds of drugs (such as brhati etc.), bala, rāśnā and horse-gram should be drunk with cakes in order to get relief from breathing (difficulty) and hiccough.

23. One should take dry radish, horse-gram, mūla (the root of long pepper) and juice of venison mixed with cooked barley, wheat and śali rice and old uṣira.

24. One who is having a swelling should eat molasses
together with *pathyā* (the long pepper) or molasses with dry ginger. Both buttermilk and *citraka* (a kind of root) are excellent remedies for diarrhoea.


27-28a. Purgatives should be given to those having heart disease. Long pepper is beneficial for those having hiccup. Buttermilk, gruel made from the fermentation of boiled rice, spirit distilled from molasses together with cold water (are also beneficial). *Muktas*, natron and wine are commended in any distemper due to drunkenness.

28b-30a. A person who has been injured (on the chest) should drink lac together with honey and milk. Wasting diseases could be cured by eating the essence of meat and by protecting the digestive power. One should eat red *sāli*, *nīvāra* and *kalama* varieties of rice, cooked barley, meat, vegetables, natrum and *saṭi*.

30b-31. In the same way *pathyā* (is beneficial) for piles. Its scum (should be used) with buttermilk and water. *Musta* should be repeatedly used. Ointment with turmeric and *citraka* should be applied. Modified forms of boiled barley, *sāli* rice, *vāstūka* (chenopodium album) and natrum (are also beneficial).

32. Water-melon, cucumber, and wheat mixed with milk, (juice of) sugarcane and ghee are commendable for painful discharge of urine. Scum and wine etc. (are commended) for drinking.

33-34. Fried paddy, flours of fried barley, honey, flesh roasted on a stick, brinjal and gourd are drinks for remedying vomiting. Cooked *sāli* rice, water and milk simply heated or boiled (would be beneficial for the same). Pills of *musta* and molasses held in the mouth would remove thirst.

35-37a. Modified forms of cooked barley, cakes made of dried radish, vegetables, snake-gourd and tender shoots of cane would remedy the stiffness of thigh. One should take food consisting of old wheat, barley, *sāli* rice together with soup made of green-gram *ādhaka* and *masūra* (different kinds of
pulses), sesamum, juice of venison, saindhava (a kind of rock-salt), ghee, grapes, dried ginger, āmalaka (a kind of myrobalan) and black pepper.

37b-38. One who is having a dry spreading itch (should use) juice of pomegranate together with candied sugar, honey and grapes. Red paddy, wheat, barley, green-gram and other such light (eatables are also beneficial). Kākamāri, shoots of cane, vāstūka and natrum (may also be used).

39. Water, candied sugar and honey are commended for remedying acute gout. Dūvā (a kind of grass) soaked in ghee is beneficial in nasal diseases.

40. Oil made up of the juice of bhṛṅgarāja (a kind of shrub) or the juice of dhātri (a variety of myrobalan) (may be used) as sternutatory in all diseases relating to the head.

41-42. O Brahmin! The eating of sesamum and drinking cold water and eating cold food are said to strengthen teeth and also give supreme satisfaction. Gargling with sesamum oil would also strengthen teeth. The powdered viḍānga (mixed with) goat’s urine is used in destroying all worms.

43. The fruits of dhātri (a variety of myrobalan) and clarified butter are excellent as an ointment for head for the destruction of all diseases relating to head. The food should consist of oily and hot things.

44. Filling ear with oil or the urine of goat is excellent for the destruction of pain in ear. O Brahmin! All kinds of oysters (may also be used).

45-48. A wick made by compounding red chalk, sandal, lac and buds of mālati (a kind of jasmine flower) would cure the whiteness in eye. Vyosa (dried ginger), long pepper and black pepper) mixed with the triphalā (the three myrobalans taken collectively), and water with blue vitriol would cure all eye diseases. The collyrium of blue vitriol will also produce the same result. (If collyrium) fried in ghee, ground on a stone together with lodhra, sour gruel and natrum is sprinkled, it would be beneficial in all the diseases of eyes. Application of ointment of red chalk and sandal is commended for the external eye. One should always use triphalā (the three kinds of myrobalans) for curing the diseases of the eyes.
49-51a. One who desires to have a long life should take (a mixture of) honey and clarified butter every night. Milk and ghee boiled with the juice of satāvari are known to be the givers of vitality. Similarly kalambikās, black-gram, milk and ghee increase vitality. Triphala is known to be the giver of long life (when used) with madhuka as before. (The same) together with the juice of madhuka would arrest all senile degeneration.

51b-52. O Brahmin! Ghee heated with vacā would destroy the defects due to goblins. Food offered to manes would give intellect and secure all objects. A decoction made of the paste of balā is beneficial when besmeared.

53. Oil together with rāṣuṇā and sahacaya (is good) for deranged wind. Food that does not cause excessive phlegm is commended for abscess.

54. Flours of fried barley made into balls as well as amlā are commended (for making the abscess) to ripen. The pulverised neem (is used) to make (the ripened abscess to) open and for healing.

55. The treatment of women after delivery consists mainly of offering oblations to all the creatures. The use of amulet for women after the delivery as well as for animals is always beneficial.

56-60a. Chewing the leaves of neem is the remedy for one bitten by a snake. The (shoots of) palmyrah, keśva, old oil, old barley and old ghee (are also good for the same). A fumigation with the plumes of peacock with ghee (is good) for one bitten by a scorpion. A plaster of the seeds of palāśa ground with the juice of arka (plant) (is also beneficial). Black pepper or yellow myrobalan with the three kinds of myrobalans (is beneficial) for one bitten by a scorpion. If the juice of arka (plant), gingelly oil, flesh and molasses in equal proportion is drunk, it would at once destroy the poison due to (the biting of) a dog that is difficult to cure. The root of rice (if ground) with equal part of trivṛt (three kinds of myrobalans) and clarified butter and drunk, it would destroy quickly the poisons due to snakes, and other insects even if they are very powerful.

60b-61. (A mixture of) sandal, padmaka, kuṣṭha, latāmbu (?), āśtra, pātalā, nirguṇḍi, tārvā and selu (?) would destroy the poison due to spiders. O Brahmin! Molasses and dried ginger are
commended as eliminator (of toxic matter) from head.

62. Nothing excels oil or ghee for anointing, as a drink or as diuretic. Fire is the best sweating agent. Cold water is the best astringent.

63. The trivṛt (the three myrobalsans) is the best purgative. So also madana is the best emetic. Oil, clarified butter, and honey are the best remedy for (deranged) wind, biles and phlegm, as diuretic, and emetic.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND EIGHTY

The remedies for all the diseases

Dhanvantari said:

1a. Diseases are considered to be (of four kinds such as), relating to the body, relating to the mind, arising accidentally and arising naturally.

1b-2a. Fever, leprosy and the like (are considered) to be relating to the body. Anger etc. are considered to be relating to the mind. Those that are due to a blow etc. (are known) as accidental. Hunger, old age and the like (are known) as natural.

2b-3. One should give ghee, molasses and salt along with gold to a brahmin on a Sunday in order to get rid of the diseases relating to the body and those that are accidental. One who makes a gift of oil for bathing to a brahmin on a Monday would become free from all diseases.

4. Oil should be given on Saturday. One who makes a gift of food with cow’s milk in the (month of) Āśvin (October-November), (would also get rid of the diseases). One who bathes the liṅga (representative symbol of Lord Śiva) with ghee and milk would become free from diseases.

5. One should offer unto fire dūrvā (grass) dipped in the three sweet things (sugar, honey and clarified butter) with (the recitation of) the gāyatrī (mantra). One should bathe and make the offering in that asterism in which one got the disease.
6. A hymn to (Lord) Viṣṇu would remove the diseases that are mental. Listen to me. (I shall describe) the defects (of the humours) wind, bile and phlegm as well as the ingredients of the body (such as blood).

7. O Suśruta! The food that is eaten gets two forms after leaving the stomach. A part becomes secreted and the other, the constituent fluid of the body.

8. The part that is secreted is the impurity such as feces, urine, sweat, rheum of the eyes, the mucus of the nose, the ear-wax and the bodily impurity.

9-10a. From the constituent fluid, serum (is formed) which again is turned into blood. Flesh (is formed) from blood and then fat and bones from fat. Sap (is formed) from bones and then semen. From semen, complexion and strength (are got).

10b-11a. One should render treatment (to a patient) after examining (the nature of) the country, the disease, the strength, the stamina, the season and the nature (of the patient). Then the strength of the remedy (should also be examined).

11b-14. One should reject the rikta1 days, Tuesdays and Saturdays and baneful (combination) (and begin treatment) after worshipping (Lord) Hari (Viṣṇu), a cow, a brahmin, the Moon and the Sun and the celestials. O Learned one! Listen to this sacred formula (that has to be recited) before commencing the treatment. “May (the gods) Brahmā, Dakṣa, Aśvins, Rudra, Indra, the Earth, the Moon, the Sun, the Wind, the Fire, the sages, the collection of herbs and the hosts of spirits protect you. Let this medicine be like the elixir of life of the sages, the nectar of the gods and the ambrosia of the outstanding serpents.”

15-16. A country abounding in trees and having plenty of water is known as anūpa (marshy) and would produce (excess of) wind and phlegm. (A country) that is devoid of (the above features) (is known as) jāṅgala (rural or picturesque). A country that has trees and water in moderate proportion is known as sādhāraṇa (ordinary). (The country known as) jāṅgala produces excessive bile. The sādhāraṇa (type) is known as moderate.

1. The fourth, ninth and fourteenth days of a lunar fortnight.
17. It is said that wind is dry, cool and unsteady, bile is hot like the three kinds of astringents and phlegm is steady, acid, unctuous and sweet.

18. They get increased by things having the same (qualities) and get abated by things having the opposite (qualities). Things that have sweet, sour and saline taste generate phlegm and destroy wind.

19. Those that are pungent, bitter and astringent produce wind and destroy phlegm. Similarly those that are pungent, sour and saline are known to increase bile.

20. Those that are bitter, sweet and astringent destroy bile. This is not the effect of the taste but only of its chemical action.

21. O Suśruta! Those that are stimulant and hot destroy phlegm and wind. Those that are cold destroy bile. They (the herbs) exert their influence according to their qualities.

22. It is said that phlegm gets collected, deranged and subsided in winter, spring and summer respectively.

23. O Suśruta! wind is said to get collected, deranged and subsided in the nights of summer, rainy season and autumn (respectively).

24. Bile is said to get collected, deranged and subsided in the rainy season, autumn and fore-winter (respectively).

25. The three (seasons)¹ beginning with the rainy (are said to be) visargas. The three (seasons)² beginning with winter and ending with summer (are) ādāna.

26-31a. The visarga relates to the moon and the ādāna is stated to be relating to the fire. The moon going round the three seasons such as the rainy etc. by turns produces the three tastes—sour, saline and sweet in order. The sun going round the three seasons such as winter and the like increases the three tastes—bitter, astringent and pungent flavours in order. As the duration of night increases, the strength of men also increases. When they decrease, (the strength) also decreases. During the beginning, middle and end of nights, eating, days and one's

¹ Rainy season, autumn and fore-winter.
² Winter, spring and summer.
age, phlegm, bile and wind get deranged. They are said to get collected before the beginning of their derangement and get appeased after their derangement.

31b-34a. O Brahmin! All the diseases are caused by excessive eating or not eating or forcing or retaining the flow (of urine etc.). Two parts of the body should be filled with food, one part with drink and one part should be left free for the wind etc. to work. A remedy is only that which is the opposite of the cause of a disease. This is what should be done. I have described to you the essence.

34b-36a. (Though) it is said that phlegm, bile and wind have their places above and below the umbilical region and the regions of the anus and the buttocks (respectively) in the body, they are capable of coursing through the entire body. Especially wind (can do so). Heart is at the centre of body and it is known to be the place of mind.

36b-39a. It is said that a man of windy temperament would be emaciated, have scanty hair, be fickle-minded, garrulous, have uneven wind, and feel flying in the air in his dream. A man of bilious temperament is said to be having untimely grey hair. He would be irritable and would perspire copiously. He would be fond of sweets and would see glowing things in dream. A phlegmatic man would have strong body and firm mind. He would be brilliant. He will have glossy hair on the head. He would see clear water in dream.

39b-40a. O The foremost among the sages! Men of windy, bilious and phlegmatic temperaments are known to be tāmāsa (inactive), rājas (passionate) and sāttvika (virtuous) (respectively).

40b-43a. Raktaśīta (haemoptysis) is caused by excessive coition and engaging in doing hard (physical) work. The wind in the body gets deranged on account of eating bad food or on account of grief. O Brahmin! Bile gets deranged on account of internal heat, eating hot food, making a journey as well as due to fear. Phlegm gets deranged due to excessive drinking of water, eating heavy food and lying down after eating. A lazy man also gets his phlegm deranged.

43b. After knowing the diseases caused by (humours) wind
and the like from their characteristics, one should remedy them (as below).

44. The characteristics of the disease due to the (deranged) wind are—pain in the bones, bitter taste in the mouth, parched state of feeling in the mouth, yawning and bristling of the pair.

45. A disease due to (deranged) bile is marked by yellowness in the nails, eyes and veins, bitter taste in the mouth, thirst and burning heat (in the body).

46. The characteristics of disease due to phlegm are languor, flow of water (from the mouth), heaviness (of the body), sweet taste in the mouth and longing for heat.

47. (Eating of) oil and hot food, anointing the body with oil and bathing and drinking of oil and the like would appease (deranged) wind. Clarified butter, milk, sugar and the rays of the moon and the like would counter (deranged) bile.

48. The oil of the three myrobalans together with honey and doing exercises etc. would remove (deranged) phlegm. Contemplation on (Lord) Viṣṇu and His worship would appease all the diseases.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND EIGHTY-ONE

The description of the characteristics of the different tastes and the qualities of the herbs

Dhanvantari said:—

1. Listen to me! I shall describe the tastes and the other characteristics and merits of the herbs. A physician who knows the properties of the herbs, such as taste, strength and flavour, will be able to save kings and other people.

2. O One possessing powerful arms! The tastes such as sweet, sour and saline are stated to come from the moon. The tastes—bitter, astringent and pungent—are (known to be) from fire.
3. The herbs have three flavours—bitter, sour and saline. The strength (of the herbs) is said to be of two kinds—hot and cold.

4-5a. O Foremost among the brahmins! The effect of the herbs is indescribable. Those that are sweet, astringent and bitter are said to be having cold potency. The rest are stated to be hot.

5b-6. Although guḍuci has the bitter taste, it is hot on account of its high potency. O One who shows respect! Pathyā, though an astringent, is (considered) hot. Although meat is sweet, it is said to be hot.

7. The saline and sweet tastes would become sweet flavour. The sour things that are hot are also said to become so. The rest would have pungent flavour.

8. One has to determine the drugs that have got modified in their potency and flavour from their efficacy. Honey, although sweet, is said to be pungent in flavour.

9. (The herb) should be boiled with water, sixteen times its proportion, until it comes down to four times the proportion. This is the general rule for (preparing) a decoction wherever (something else) has not been stated.

10-12. The decoction (thus prepared) (should be composed) of water alone. In a decoction prepared with oil, it should be four times that of the drug. A wise man should take equal quantity (of water) to that of the herb. Then the herb and oil should be added. Oil should be one-fourth the measure of the substance. The herb that is free from water would be (known as) extraction in oil. The process of preparing decoctions of the herbs in oil has been explained. O Suśruta! (The method of preparation) of the lambative is also similar.

13-15a. The decoction that is clear and having little medicinal ingredient would be as above described. (The dosage) for pulverised drugs is stated to be an aksa (a particular measure of weight equal to 16 māsas) and four palas (a particular weight) for the decoction. This measure is said to be middling. There is no hard and fast rule about the dosage. O Fortunate one! The measure of the dosage has to be decided according to the age, time, strength, digestive power, place, herb and disease.
15b-16a. Those tastes are known to be saumyāḥ which increase the quality of the ingredients. Those that are madhurāḥ are specially known to increase the quality.

16b-17a. That substance which has the qualities in equal proportion to the defects would be for betterment. The opposite would subdue the effect.

17b-20. O Foremost among men! There are said to be three functions in this body, such as, eating, sleeping and coition. One has to pay attention to these always. One would get destroyed if there is no indulgence or is over-indulgence (in any one of these). An exhausted body has to be strengthened. Obesity of a person should be reduced. The middle type has to be protected. These are considered to be the three different types of bodies. Gratification and non-gratification are said to be the two courses of action. One should moderately eat (food) that is good (for health) after the food already taken had been digested.

21-24a. O Foremost among men! The remedies are classified into five groups—juice, levigated powder, the distilled, the cold and decoction. Juice is known to be that got by pressing. Levigated powder is got by pulverising the drug after heating. The distilled is that got after boiling. The cold one is that allowed to cool the previous night. Decoction is that distilled immediately after boiling. There are one hundred and sixty ways of doing so. One who knows the ways would become inconquerable. That person is skilled in the preparation of mixtures.

24b. The purity of food is for the sake of digestion. A good digestion is the root cause of the strength of men.

25-30a. One should eat the three myrobalans together with the rock-salt, that would give good complexion to a king. (One would get similar benefit by using) the juice of venison together with rock-salt or curd or small quantities of milk. One whose constitution is windy should eat (a food) that has either more juice or the same proportion of juice. It is said that massaging (the body) (should be done) in summer. In winter it should be in equilibrium. It is known to be of middling type in the spring. The intense massaging in the summer is first done on the skin and then on the muscles, veins, blood and the body.
The bones would get strengthened and become fleshy. A wise man should massage well the shoulders, arms, shanks, knees, collarbones and the chest as before as if (one is attacking) an enemy. After having massaged the joints well, one should stretch them slowly without making a violent jerk.

30b-33. One should not do any physical exercise while the food still remains undigested nor after taking food, nor after drinking (water). One should never do any exercise in the half of the prahara\(^1\) after a quarter part of the day. One should bathe in cold water (only) once. Bathing in tepid water would remove fatigue. One should not forcibly retain the breath in the heart. Physical exercises would remove the (excessive) phlegm. Massaging would remove the (excessive) wind. Bathing would remove the excessive bile. (One should not) expose his body to sunlight or enjoy the company of women (after doing exercises). Men should not do exercises affecting one's body under the sunlight.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND EIGHTYTWO

Description of horticulture

Dhanvantari said:

1. Now I shall describe the science of medicine relating to trees. It is good to have a plakṣa (tree) on the north, a banyan tree on the east, a mango (tree) on the south and a holy fig tree on the west.

2-4a. (It is better) to have thorny trees on the south near the house. A garden should be near the house. Blooming sesame plants should be gathered and the trees should be planted after worshipping a brahmin and the moon. The five fixed asterisms svāti, hasta, rohini, straṇa and mūla are commended for planting the trees.

1. An eighth part of a day.
4b.-5. (The trees) should be planted such that they are fed by rivers or should be made to be on the banks of a tank. (The asterisms) hasta, magha, anurâdhâ, avini, puṣya and jyeṣṭhâ as well as satabhiṣak and the three uttaras (uttarâphâlgunt, uttarâśâdha and uttarabhâdrapada) are good for beginning (the construction) of tanks.

6-7a. It should be done after worshipping (lords) Varuṇa, Viṣṇu and Parjanya. (Trees such as) arīṣṭa, usoka, punâga, sirīṣa, priyaṅgu, plantain, jambû, bakula and pomegranate (should be planted) as above.

7b.-9. The planted trees should be watered morning and evening in the summer season, on alternate days in the winter season and in the night in the rainy (season) if the earth has become dry. (Trees planted) twenty cubits apart are (deemed as) excellent and sixteen (cubits) apart are (deemed as) medium. There should be minimum twelve cubits (distance) in between one tree and the other. Trees (planted) densely would not bear fruits. They should first be pruned with a cutter.

10. (The trees) should be sprinkled with cold water mixed with a paste of viḍâṅga and ghee. If the fruits get destroyed, (cold water should be sprinkled) with (a paste of) horse-gram, black-gram, green-gram, barley and sesamum.

11-12. One should always sprinkle cold water with ghee for (getting abundant) fruits and flowers. Sprinkling with the excrements of sheep and goat and pulverised barley, sesamum allowed to be soaked in meat and water for seven nights would also increase the bearing of fruits and flowers in all the trees.

13. Sprinkling with the washings of the fish would also increase the growth of the trees. Fish and meat mixed with the viḍâṅga and rice would make (them) bear fruits. This would universally control the diseases of all the trees.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND EIGHTYTHREE

The remedial herbs for all the diseases

Dhanvantari said:

1. A decoction of simhi, sați, two kinds of niśā (turmeric) and vatsaka is commended for all types of infantile dysentery as well as defects due to mother’s milk.

2. One should lick pulvcrised śṛṅgi, kṛṣṇā and atibalā together with honey. (Otherwise) ativśa alone would remove the cough, vomiting and fever of a child.

3-5a. Vacā should be taken by children together with clarified butter, or with milk or with oil. The child should drink yāṣṭikā or taṅkha flower together with milk. This would improve speech, complexion, longevity, intellect and beauty of the child. Vacā, agniśikhā, vāsā, dried ginger, kṛṣṇā (long pepper), turmeric, yasti and rock salt should be given to a child in the morning for drinking. It would develop the memory.

5b-6a. A decoction of devadāru, mahāśigru, the three myrobals and payomuca made into a paste with long pepper and honey would remove all worms.

6b-7. The juice of the three myrobals, bṛhṛga and viśva soaked in honey, clarified butter, goat’s milk and cow’s urine is beneficial in the diseases of children. The juice of dūrvā (a kind of grass) when inhaled is excellent remedy for bleeding of the nose.

8. (Similarly) filling the ear with the juice of garlic, ginger and śigru (would remedy the bleeding of the ears). Extracts of ginger and nutmeg in oil would remove intestinal colic and also the diseases of the lips.

9. The outer skin of the nutmeg, dry ginger, pepper, long pepper and turmeric would remove the urinary defects. A paste of mustard made into a decoction in milk dissolved in oil would remove toothache.

10. The coriander water, coconut, cow’s urine, betelnut and dry ginger made into a decoction and used for gargling would remedy the defects in the tongue.

11. The juice of nirguṇḍikā with the paste of lāṅgali prepared in oil when inhaled would destroy gaṅḍamāḷa and gaḷogāṇḍa.
12. One should rub (the affected part of the skin) with the leaves of arka, pūtikā and snuhi together with cow’s urine. (By this one would destroy) all the defects of the skin.

13. Vākūcī and sesamum eaten for one year is a cure for leprosy. Pathyā, bhallātaki and a lump of molasses in oil would also conquer leprosy.

14. One suffering from piles should drink buttermilk together with the powders of yūthikā, vahni, turmeric, the three myrobalans and vyosā or should take abhayā with molasses.

15. One suffering from a urinary ailment should take a decoction of the (three) myrobalans, a variety of turmeric and viṣa or the juice of the emblic myrobalan or the paste of turmeric with or without honey should be used.

16. A decoction of vāsā mixed with castor oil would remove acute gout. The drinking (of the juice) of long pepper would cure enlarged spleens.

17-20. One who has an abdominal disorder should take black pepper that has been soaked well in the milk of snuk or should drink milk mixed with the paste of rucya, dantya, agnividadāṅga and vyosā. The granthika, ugra, mustard, long pepper and viḍāṅga soaked in ghee (and allowed to remain) in buttermilk for a month would remove diarrhoea, piles, jaundice, enlargement of spleen and worms. The decoction of the three myrobalans, amṛtā, vāsā, tiktabhūnimbaja together with honey would remove jaundice with acidity. One who is having acute gout should drink a potion of vāsā together with molasses and honey. Or (one may drink) milk in which varī, grapes, balā and dried ginger have been dissolved.

21. One who is suffering from consumption should lick (the compounded powders of) varī, vidāri, pathyā, the three (kinds of) balās, vāsaka and svadāṇāṣṭra together with honey and clarified butter.

22. The essence of the bark of pathyā, sigru, karaṇja and arka together with honey and rock salt would cure abscess as well as (help) ripening of the intestines.

23-24. Anointing a wound with trīrt, jivati, dantī, maṇjiṣṭhā, the two varieties of turmeric, tārkṣaja and neem leaves is commended for fistula. An ointment of pulverised rughāta, turmeric,
shellac mixed with ghee and honey, and vāsa would be an antiseptic and arrest its spread.

25. Oil boiled with syāma, yaṣṭi, turmeric, lodhra, padmāka, utpala, sandal and black pepper, and distilled in milk would heal a wound.

26. Burnt ashes of the leaves of black holy basil and cotton, nutmeg, rock-salt and turmeric made into a paste and boiled in oil in a copper vessel would be a good remedy for ulcers.

27. Kumbhisāra mixed with milk should be heated in fire and applied on the wound. It could also be cured by sprinkling with the chops of coconut and ghee.

28. Dried ginger, ajamoda, rock-salt and bark of tamarind in equal proportions together with mustard in the same proportion should be drunk with butter-milk or hot water. It would cure dysentery.

29. In the case of dysentery that is longstanding and accompanied by constipation, discharge of blood and pain, one should be made to drink water boiled with vatsaka, ativiṣā, dried ginger, bilva and musta.

30. One suffering from any type of colic should drink warm water saturated with rock-salt burnt in charcoal. Alternatively (one may take a mixture of) rock-salt, asafoetida, long pepper and mustard in the same way.

31. Kaṭunrohiṇi, long pepper, āṭaṅka and powdered fried paddy made into a paste with honey that is filtered through a cloth and held in the mouth would remove thirst.

32-33. A decoction of pāthā, dārvī (a variety of turmeric), skin of nutmeg, grapes and the three kinds of myrobalans together with honey if gargled would remedy sore-mouth. A decoction of long pepper, ativiṣa, tiktendra, dāru, pāthā and payomuc boiled with (cow’s) urine (taken with) honey would remove all throat affections.

34. Drinking of a decoction of pathyā, gokṣura, dusparsa, rājaupkṣa and śilābhit together with honey would remedy painful discharge of urine.

35. A decoction of bamboo bark and varuna would remove stone in the bladder. One who is suffering from elephantiasis should take the decoction of sākhotaka together with honey and milk.
36. Oil made with blackgram and the milk extracted from the bark of arka (as well as) rock-salt mixed with honey would be remedy for the diseases of leg. Clarified butter similarly (would cure) jālakukkūtaṇa.1

37. Powder of dried ginger, natron and asafoetida mixed with the juice of dried ginger boiled with ghee would remove sickness and this decoction is known to be efficacious in improving digestion.

38. One who is having enlargement of spleen should drink buttermilk together with juices that aid digestion such as natrum, agni and asafoetida, or with vida and dipyaka.

39. A decoction of emblic myrobalan, snake-gourd and greengram together with clarified butter would cure dry spreading itch. Dry ginger, dāru and navā made into a decoction with milk together with the urine of a cow also (would remove swelling).

40. Decoction of dry ginger, pepper, long pepper, kṣāra and the three myrobalans would remove swelling. (Similar effect is had by using) treacle, sīgru and triyṛt together with pulverised rock-salt.

41. A decoction of triyṛt and the three myrobalans together with treacle would act as a purgative. A decoction of vacā and three kinds of myrobalan with milk would be an emetic.

42-44. One hundred palas (a measure of weight) each of the three myrobalans soaked in the essence of bhṛṅgāja mixed with ten parts of vidaṇga and iron filings and twentyfive palas of satāvati, gudūci and agni should be licked with honey, clarified butter and sesame oil. (One would be) free from aging and greying of hair. He would live a hundred years free from all diseases. The three myrobalans with honey and sugar is capable of destroying all diseases.

45-46a. Taking mustard together with honey, ghee, pepper, the three myrobalans, pathyā, citraka, dry ginger, gudūci, musali-raje and treacle would remove disease and make (one live) for three hundred years.

46b-48a. The japā flower (dried) and made into a powder and then into a ball should be put in water. The oil of the

1. A disease of the leg.
paste with water would be like ghee. By the incense (of the above) one that is old would see things as variegated. One would see as before by the incense of mākṣika.

48b-49. If camphor, oil (extracted) from leech and frog and root of pāṭali are ground well and anointed on the two feet, one could walk on the fire after arranging and raising of the grass (?) and provide entertainment to the spectators.

50-51. (The scope of medicine) is stated to fall under six heads such as poison, (influence of) stars, ailments (in general), violent deaths, minor (ailments) and love potents. It leads to two kinds of accomplishments. Sacred formulas meditation, medicine, conversation, mudrā (postures of the hand) and sacrificial worships are the means therein. The four goals (of life) have been narrated. One who reads (the same) would reach heaven.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND EIGHTYFOUR

Narration of sacred formulas that are medicinal

Dhanvantari said:

1. The syllable ‘om’ and others confer longevity, health and heaven. The syllable ‘om’ is the foremost sacred syllable and one becomes immortal by repeating the same.

2. The gāyatri (mantra) is the supreme sacred formula. One gets enjoyment and emancipation by repeating the same. The formula “Om, Salutations to (Lord) Nārāyaṇa” shall accomplish all things.

3-6a. (The sacred formula) “Om, Salutations to (Lord) Vāsudeva” yields all (things). The formula “Om hrūṁ, obeisance to (Lord) Viṣṇu” is the foremost medicine. The celestials and demons became prosperous and free from sickness by (repeating) this (formula). It is benevolent for the beings. The dharma (mantra) is a great remedy—“Virtue, one who does virtuous deeds, and
(mantras). "Conferer of prosperity, lord of prosperity, abode of prosperity, bearer of wealth, the abode of wealth, lord of prosperity, the supreme prosperity"—One would obtain prosperity by (the repetition of) these (words).

6b-7a. "One who loves, bestower of desires, desire, the governor of desires, Hari, happiness, consort of Lakṣmi" are the names of (lord) Hari, (which should be repeated) for (gaining) pleasures.

7b-8. "Rāma (one that makes us pleased), Paraśurāma (the Rāma, with the battle-axe), Nṛsiṁha (the man-lion form of lord Viṣṇu), Viṣṇu, Trivikrama (the lord that measured three spaces with three strides)" are the names that are to be repeated by those who desire to conquer. One who desires to acquire knowledge should repeat daily the name "Puruṣottama" (foremost among beings).

9. (The repetition of the name) Dāmodara (one having a string around the belly, denotes lord Kṛṣṇa) would remove bondage. (The repetition of the name) Puṣkarākṣa (lotus-eyed) would cure eye-disease. (The name) Hṛṣikeśa (the lord of the sense-organs) would remove fear. This has to be repeated while preparing medicines.

10-11. The name 'Acyuta' (the changeless one) is an immortal one and confers victory in the battle. One who begins to cross a water-course (should repeat the name) Narasimha (man-lion form of Viṣṇu). One who desires to have welfare in the east and other directions should remember "Cakrin (the bearer of the disc), Gadin (the wielder of the mace), Śāṅgin (the bearer of the bow), and Khadgin (the bearer of a sword)". (One should repeat) the name 'Nārāyaṇa' at all times. (The repetition of the name) Nṛsiṁha (man-lion form of Viṣṇu) would remove all fear.

12. (The repetition of the name) "Garuḍavāhana" (one having the eagle on the banner) would remove poison. The name "Vāsudeva" (son of Vasudeva) has to be repeated always. One should repeat (the names) 'Ananta' (endless) and 'Acyuta' (changeless) while storing grains etc. and while going to sleep.

13. (One should repeat) 'Nārāyaṇa' when getting a bad dream and (the term) 'Jalāśāyin' (one who reposes on the water) when there is outbreak of fire etc. One who desires to
gain knowledge (should repeat the name) Hayagrīva (one having the neck of a horse, denotes a form of Viśṇu). (One who desires) to gain progeny (should repeat the word) Jagatsūti (the progenitor of the universe). (The name) Balabhadrā (the elder brother of lord Kṛṣṇa) (should be repeated) during acts of valour. This single name accomplishes things.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND EIGHTYFIVE

The accomplished recipes that would revive the dead

Dhanvanntari said:

1. I shall describe to you the infallible recipes that would revive the dead. They were expounded to me by (the sage) Ātreya. They are divine and are capable of curing all diseases.

Ātreya said:

2. A decoction of the five roots, such as those of bilva, (is an excellent remedy) for fever due to (deranged) wind. Otherwise (a decoction of) the root of long pepper, guḍūci and dry ginger is purifying.

3-4. (A decoction of the herbs) emblic myrobalan, mustard, black pepper and vaññi would cure all fevers. Bilva, agnivantha, ṣyonaka, Kāśmari, pāṭalā, sthirā, trikanṭaka, prśniparnī, bhṛhati and kaṇṭakārikā are remedies for fever, indigestion, pain on the sides (of the body) and cough. The root of kuṣṭa (grass) (should also be added to this).

5. Guḍūci, parpaṭi, musta, kirāta and dry ginger should be given in fever due to (deranged) wind and bile. This is known as pañcabhadra (the five beneficial things).

6. A decoction made of trīrī, viśāla, kaṭukā, the three myrobalans and āragavadha is a purifier, loosens the bowels and has to be drunk to get relief from all fevers.

7. Devadāru, balā, vāsā, the three myrobalans, vyāsa, padmaka, and viḍāṅga with an equal proportion of candied sugar made into a powder would conquer five kinds of cough.
8-9. Daśamūli, saṭṭi, rāśā, long pepper, bilva, paśkara, śṛṅgita, emblic myrobalan, bhārgī guḍūcī, nāgavallī and barley compounded well and a decoction prepared from that should be drunk. It would remedy cough, diarrhoea, (pain) on the sides, hiccup and difficult breathing.

10. The three kinds of salts (as well as) madhuka together with honey, long pepper together with sugar, and nāgara together with treacle would remove hiccup.

11. Kāravya, jāṭi, pepper, grapes, hog-plum, pomegranate, natrum, treacle and honey would remedy all kinds of loss of appetite.

12. One should be made to drink the juice of śṛṅgavera (ginger) together with honey. It would remedy loss of appetite, difficult breathing and cough. It would also remedy catarrh and excess of phlegm.

13. (The root of) banyan, śṛṅgi, red earth, (the bark of) lodhra, pomegranate, madhuka and honey should be taken with the scum. It would remove thirst and arrest vomiting.

14. Guḍūcī, vāsaka, lodhra and long pepper together with honey would remedy fever accompanied by thirst, cough and expectoration of phlegm together with blood.

15. Likewise the juice of vāsaka, the juice of tāmraja mixed with honey, and pepper infused in the juice of the śīrṣa flower would also be beneficial.

16. (The pulse called) masūra removes all kinds of pain. (The washings) of rice would remove excess of bile. Nirguṇḍī, śāriva, selu and ankola would remove poisons.

17. Dry ginger, amṛtā, kṣudrā, paśkara and grānthikā made into powder should be taken with decoction of long pepper when one suffers unconsciousness and intoxication.

18. Asafoetida, natrum and vyosa (dry ginger) and pepper (each weighing) two palas, an āḍhaka (a measure) of ghee soaked in four parts of cow’s urine would remedy insanity.

19. Śaṅkha flower, vaca and kusṭha soaked in the juice of brāhma destroys long-standing epilepsy and insanity. It is also excellent for improving memory.

20-25a. The ghee made up of the five products got from a cow has also similar effects. The same with mustard is a
remedy for leprosy. Snake-gourd, the three myrobalans, neem, guḍūcī, dhāvani, vrṣa and karaṇja boiled with ghee destroys leprosy and is known as vajraka (potent remedy). Neem, snake gourd, vyāghra, guḍūcī and vāsaka should be taken ten palas each and pounded well. (The mixture) should then be heated in water vessel (with water) till it is reduced to one fourth (of its original volume). It should then be soaked in one prastha (a measure) ghee and boiled with the three myrobalans. This ghee is known as paṅcatiktaka (five bitter things). This ghee is capable of curing leprosy. This excellent recipe would cure eighty varieties of diseases due to (deranged) wind, forty (diseases) due to (deranged) bile, twenty (diseases) due to (deranged) phlegm as well as cough, catarrh, piles, wounds and other diseases just as the sun (would remove) darkness.

25b-26a. One should sprinkle a wound with the decoction of the three myrobalans and the juice of bhṛṅgarāja for the cure of the venereal disease.

26b-28a. The powder of the leaves of snake-gourd and the five particles of the skin of pomegranate should be pounded with gaja (a variety of pepper) and the powder of the three kinds of myrobalans. Oil boiled with the three myrobalans, grains of iron, yasti, mārkava, blue lotus, pepper and rock-salt would remedy vomiting when used for bathing.

28b-29a. Oil boiled with milk, juice of mārkava, two prasthas each of madhuka and utpala made into one guḍava (a measure), if used as sternutatory would arrest greying of hair.

29b-30. The two compounds—neem, snake-gourd, the three kinds of myrobalans, guḍūcī, khadira and vrṣa as well as bhūnimba, pāhā, the three kinds of myrobalans, guḍūcī and red sandal would remedy fever, leprosy, tumour and the like.

31. A decoction prepared from snake-gourd, amṛta, bhūnimba, vāsā, ariṣṭaka, parpaṭa and bark of khadira would appease the fever due to tumour.

32. The datamūli, chinnaruhā, mustard, dāru, punarnava, sigru and dry ginger are beneficial for (remedying) fevers, abscess and swelling.

33-34. Besmearing with (a paste of) madhūka and neem leaves would clean the wounds. A decoction of the three myrobalans and the leaves of khadira, dārvi, nyagrodha, atibalā, kusa
(grass), neem, and mūlaka are beneficial in cleaning (wounds). The juice of karaṇja, ariṣṭa and nirguṇḍi would destroy the parasites of wounds.

35. Besmearing with a paste (made up) of dhūtaki, sandal, balā, maṅgā, madhuka, blue lotus, dārvi and meda mixed with clarified butter would heal a wound.

36. Guggulu, the three myrobals, dry ginger, pepper and long pepper in equal proportions mixed with ghee would heal wounds due to affected arteries and painful fistula.

37. The yellow myrobalan boiled in cow’s urine with oil and salt should be used every morning. It would remove excess of phlegm and wind.

38. A decoction of dry ginger, pepper, long pepper and the three myrobals should be drunk with alkali and salt as a purgative in (deranged) phlegm and wind. It arrests the increase of phlegm.

39. The decoction of long pepper, the root of long pepper, vacā, citraka and dry ginger should be drunk to remedying constipation.

40. One should drink the great remedy—rāśnā, guḍūci, root of castor and devadāru in case of rheumatism (that affects) all the limbs, joints, bones and marrow.

41-43. Otherwise one may drink a decoction of daśamūla together with dry ginger and water. By the use of a decoction of dry ginger and goḵṣuraka every morning one would get back digestive power that has been impaired and would get relief from rheumatic pain in the hip. The oil extracted from the roots, leaves and branches of prasārini, an extracted juice or paste or powder or decoction of guḍūci would relieve one from acute gout when used for a long time.

44-45a. Long pepper and castor-oil may be used. One would conquer quickly acute gout accompanied by burning sensation by drinking snake-gourd, the three varieties of myrobals, tiṟakatuka and amṛta boiled with mustard or treacle.

45b-46. Rheumatic pain would be relieved at once by (drinking) guggulu in warm water or drinking guḍūci with the three myrobals in water together with balā, punarnava, castor seed, the two kinds of ṛhatti, goḵsura, asafoetida and salt.
47-50a. A kārṣīka (a measure of weight) each of the root of long pepper, the five kinds of salts, long pepper, citraka, dry ginger, the three varieties of myrobalsan, triyṛt, vacā, two sorts of alkali, śādvala, danti, svarṇakṣiri and viṣāṅkā (should be ground well) and kola (a measure of weight) measure of pill should be drunk with jujube. (This would remedy) swelling. It is an excellent remedy with triyṛt for indigestion and enlargement of the abdomen etc. Milk together with dāru, vārsābhū and dry ginger would be excellent for removing swelling. Sprinkling with a decoction of arka, vārsābhū and bhūnimba would remove swelling.

50b-51. Piles would go without any doubt if the clarified butter boiled with three parts of ashes of dry ginger, pepper and long pepper mixed with palāśa dissolved in water is used. Viśvakṣena, lotus flower and nirguṇḍi boiled with salt would also have similar results.

52-53a. Oil (prepared) with viḍaṅga, anala, rock-salt, rāṣṭā, agrakṣara and dāru boiled with four times water saturated with a pungent material would remove inflammation of the glands of the neck and would remedy goitre if used as an unguent.

53b-54a. Decoction of taśi, kunāga and valaya together with the juice of kṣira boiled with the paste of pāryasyā, long pepper and vāsā would be beneficial for consumption.

54b-55. (A compound of) vacā, vid, mustard, dry ginger, asafoetida, kuśtha, agni dipyaka (mixed in the proportion of) two, three, six, four, one, seven parts and a fiftieth part respectively, if drunk would destroy tumours in the abdomen, (abdominal) colic and coughs.

56. Pills made of pāṭha, nikumbha, pepper, dry ginger, long pepper, the three kinds of myrobalsan and agni boiled with cow’s urine would remedy abdominal tumour, spleen and the like.

57. Vāsā, margosa, snake-gourd and the three myrobalsan would destroy (deranged) wind and bile. Powdered viḍaṅga if licked with honey would destroy worms.

58-59a. The yellow myrobalan together with viḍaṅga, rock salt, kṣāra (alkaline salt) and cow’s urine (will also produce the same effect). The barks of taliṅki, jujube, rose apple, pīyāla,
mango and *arjuna* (trees) soaked in honey and taken with milk separately would arrest haemorrhage.

59b-60a. Equal proportions of the juice of *bilva*, mango (bark), *dhātakī*, *pāṭhā*, dry ginger and *mocā* when taken with treacle or butter-milk would arrest severe dysentery.

60b-61a. The drinking of a decoction of *āngeri*, *kola*, curd water, dry ginger and *ksāra* (an alkaline salt) together with ghee would remove pain due to inflammation of anus.

61b-62a. *Vidanga*, *atīvīrī*, *musta*, *dāru*, *pāṭhā* and *kalinga* (taken) together with black pepper would cure dysentery (accompanied by) swelling (of the limbs).

62b-63. One would live for a hundred years happily by eating two yellow myrobalans (everyday) together with sugar, rock-salt and dry ginger or long pepper, honey and treacle. The same would be the result of taking the three kinds of myrobalans and long pepper together with honey and clarified butter.

64. One should lick powdered emblic myrobalan soaked in (the juice of) the same with honey, clarified butter and sugar and drink milk if desirous of enjoying women.

65-66. Powdered black gram, long pepper, *tāli* (a variety of rice), barley and wheat in equal proportion should be fried with long pepper. One should eat them and drink sweet milk with sugar. (Such a person) would gain strength to enjoy women ten times like a sparrow.

67. *Maṅgā*, *dhātakī* flower, *lodhra* and blue lotus should be given to women together with milk. It would remedy *pradara* (a disease) of women.

68-69a. (A mixture of) *bija*, *kauraṅṭaka*, *madhuka*, white sandal, the roots of lotus and blue lotus, sugar and sesame is excellent for arresting miscarriage and causing pregnancy.

69b-70. An unguent of *devadāru*, *nabha*, *kuṣṭha*, *nalada* and dry ginger mixed with sour gruel and oil would remedy headache. If rock salt mixed with water is poured (into the ear) after gently heating and filtering through a cloth, it would remove ear-ache.

71. The juice of garlic, ginger, *sigrī* or plantain (may be taken) separately. One may drink them with (the mixture of)
balā, śatāvari, rāsnā and amṛtā together with sairiyaka (?).

72-74a. Clarified butter together with the three myrobalans is an excellent remedy against blindness. One should drink ghee boiled with the three myrobalans, dry ginger,* pepper, long pepper and rock-salt. It would strengthen eyesight, loosen bowels, strengthen heart, stimulate digestion and remedy cold. The filament of blue lotus together with cowdung and water is (known as) collyrium. It would be beneficial for day or night blindness.

74b-77. Yaśtimadhu, vacā, long pepper and seeds of kutaja made into a paste mixed with a decoction of neem is a good emetic. Glossy and greasy barley water should be given as a purgative. If it is (used) otherwise it would impair the digestion, make the body heavy and cause loss of appetite. A pulverised (compound of) mustard, rock-salt and long pepper should be drunk with warm water. This is an excellent purgative that would remedy all diseases. This is known as nārāca (destructive). The infallible compositions that have been expounded by Ātreya to the sages are capable of curing all diseases and are declared by Suśruta as conferring all boons.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND EIGHTYSIX

Collection of medical recipes

Dhanvantari said:

1. I shall describe the recipes of medicines that would conquer death, confer longevity and cure diseases. The three myrobalans and amṛtā together with honey and clarified butter would cure disease and would make one live for three hundred years.

2. (One who uses) one pala, half a pala or a karsa (a measure of weight) (would enjoy) the full span (of life). One who uses the oil of bilva as sternutatory for a month (would live) for five hundred years and (would become) a poet.

3-4. (The use of) sesamum and bhallātaka would overcome
disease, premature death and senility. One would overcome leprosy by (using) a decoction of five parts of powdered vākucī with the waters of khadira for six months. (Otherwise) powder of nilakurũṭa may be used (for the same). One who eats khaṇḍadudāha together with milk or honey (would live for) a hundred years.

5. One who uses a pala (weight) of honey, clarified butter and dried ginger in the morning would conquer death. One who drinks milk with the powder of māṇḍakī would overcome old age and live long.

6. One who drinks milk with a kṛṣa of uccāśa and honey would conquer death. One would overcome disease and death (by using) nirguṇḍi together with honey, clarified butter or milk.

7. One should drink a kṛṣaka of the oil of palāśa together with honey for six months. Milk may be drunk afterwards. This would make one live for five hundred or a thousand (years).

8-9a. One should drink the juice of the leaf of jyotिषmati and the three myrobalans together with milk. Similarly a pala (weight) of the pulverised satāwarī together with honey and clarified butter or nirguṇḍi with honey, clarified butter and milk would overcome disease and death.

9b-10. Five parts of pulverised neem boiled with the decoction of khadira (used) with a kṛṣa (weight) of the juice of bhrṛṅga would make one overcome disease and become immortal. One who drinks milk after taking rudanti with clarified butter and honey would conquer death.

11. One should take a kṛṣa (weight) of the powder of yellow myrobalan boiled with the juice of bhrṛṅgarāja together with ghee (or) honey. He would live for three hundred years and conquer disease.

12-14. (One would live) for five hundred years (by using) a kṛṣa (weight of) vārāhikā, juice of bhrṛṅga, oxide of iron, satāvari together with clarified butter. Powdered kārta (gold filings) and satāvari boiled with (the juice of) bhrṛṅgarāja (used with) honey and clarified butter would make one live for three hundred years. Mango, amṛti, trivolt in equal proportion (and) sulphur purified with the juice of kumārikā (are made into pills). (One who uses) two (such) pills together with clarified
butter would live for five hundred years. A *pala* (weight) of *aśvagándhā* used with oil, clarified butter and treacle would make one (live for) a hundred years.

15. Drinking a *pala* (weight) of pulverised *punarnava* or *aśoka* together with honey, clarified butter and milk would remove one’s ailment.

16. One who uses the sesame oil with honey as sternutatory will live for a hundred years (retaining) the black hue of the hair. One would live for a hundred years by drinking a *karsa* (weight) of *aśa* together with honey, clarified butter and milk.

17. After taking mustard with treacle, ghee and sweet things etc., one who eats rice mixed with milk would have black hair, be free from disease and live for five hundred years.

18. One who drinks a *pala* (weight) of pulverised *kūśmāṇḍikā* together with honey, clarified butter and milk and eats rice mixed with milk for a month would live for a thousand years without any disease.

19. The powder of *śalāka* together with the juice of *bhṛṅga*, honey and clarified butter would make one live for a hundred years. A *karsa* (weight) of the oil of *kaṭutumbi* (used) as a sternutatory would make one live for two hundred years.

20. The use of the three myrobalans, long pepper and dried ginger would make one live for three hundred years. If the same is compounded with *śatāvarī* it would make one strong and live for one thousand years.

21-24. Pills should be made with *citraka*, dried ginger, *viḍāṅga*, iron oxide, *bhṛṅgarāja*, *valā*, the five kinds of neem, *khadira*, *nirgundī*, *kaṇṭakārī* and *vāsaka* boiled with *varṣābhū* or its juice. This powder together with ghee or honey or treacle or water is an excellent compound. It should be consecrated with the formula “*Om hūṁ sa*”. It would be a recipe for reviving the dead and overcoming disease and death. The collections of recipes were made use of by the celestials, demons and sages. (I shall describe) the science of medicine relating to the elephants (that) was narrated by (sage) Pālakāpya to the king Anaga.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND EIGHTYSEVEN

The treatment of the diseases of elephants

Pālakāpya said:

1-3. O Lomapāda! I shall describe to you the characteristics of the elephants and the treatment (of their diseases). Those that have long trunks, deep breath and are of enduring type are commended. Those that have twenty or eighteen nails, those that exude ruti (even) in winter, those that have an elevated right tusk, those that have wide ears resembling the cloud, with minute dot like (marks) on the skin should be maintained. Those that are short and have bad features should not be maintained.

4-5. (Similarly it is not advisable to capture) the she-elephants that bear the foetus on their sides and those that are stupid. The elephant that has (good) complexion, good nature, strength, appearance, beauty, firmness and speed would conquer enemies in the battle. The elephants add beauty to the army camp and the army.

6a. A king could gain victory by the diligent (employment) of elephants.

6b-7. In the case of all the fevers (of elephants), they should be anointed. Bathing them after anointing them with ghee or oil would remove the wind (in the body). The shoulders should be treated by the kings as indicated in the case of the fevers (of elephants).

8. O Brahmīns! Cow’s urine together with ghee and the two varieties of turmeric (are commended) for jaundice. An infusion (with the above remedy) soaked in oil is commended for constipation.

9-10. Vārūṇī (a kind of liquor) mixed with five kinds of salts should be given for drinking. An elephant should be fed with balls of (mixture of) vidānga, the three myrobalans, dried ginger, pepper and long pepper and salt in the case of fainting. He should be made to drink honey and water. The head should be anointed with oil for headache. A sternutatory is also commended.
11. The diseases affecting the legs of an elephant should be treated by anointing with oil. Then it is laid down that they should be cleansed with the paste of sediments of oil.

12. An elephant that is suffering from shivering should be fed with the juice of the flesh of peacock and tīttiri (partridge) mixed with long pepper and pepper.

13. A morsel comprising tender bilva, lodhra, dhātaki together with sugar should be given to an elephant suffering from dysentery.

14. Ghee mixed with common salt should be given as sternutatory in the case of numbness of the trunk. (Otherwise) long pepper, dried ginger and the cumin-seed boiled in the rice or barley gruel together with musta grass (could be given).

15-16a. The juice of the flesh of a pig should be given for ear-ache. Oil boiled with the ten kinds of roots, the horse beans, tamarind and kākamāci would remove the pain due to stiffness of the neck caused by fetters.

16b-17. Ghee mixed with the eight kinds of salts made into a paste should be given for drinking in the case of retention of urine. Otherwise a decoction of the seeds of trāpuṣa (may be given). An elephant should be made to drink a decoction of the bark of neem or uṟsa.

18-19. Cow’s urine and vidiṅga are commended for worms in the intestines. Milk boiled with dried ginger, long pepper, grapes and sugar is (an excellent) drink for curing the wounds. The juice of the flesh is also good. Rice and green gram boiled together and mixed with dried ginger, pepper and long pepper is commended for loss of appetite.

20. Oil mixed with trivṛt, dried ginger, long pepper and pepper, agnidanti, arka, ṛyāmā, milk and bigger variety of long pepper would remedy the enlargement of spleen.

21-22a. All sorts of disorders that arise could be remedied by means of loosening, enema, anointment, application of oil, drinks and oily enemas. One could be given yaśṭika with tārada (a kind of beans) together with the soup of green gram for drinking.

22b. Besmearing with tender bilva is commended in the diseases (known as) kaṭu.
23. Viḍaṅga, indrayava, asafoetida, sarala and the two varieties of turmeric could be given in the form of balls in the forenoon to remedy all kinds of colics.

24. The main meal for them should be composed of (the rice varieties known as) saṣṭika, vrihi and śāli. (The meals) consisting of barley and wheat are (considered as) mediocre. The other kinds (of food) are (deemed as) inferior for the elephants.

25. Barley and sugarcane increase the strength of the elephants. Dried barley would derange the humours of the elephants.

26. Drinking of milk is commended for an elephant that is emaciated on account of rutting. The juice of flesh that has been cooked with the substances that are stimulants is good.

27. In the event of severe injury in the war, balls of (flesh of) crows, hens, cuckoos and owls (could be given) mixed with honey.

28. An incense (consisting of) pepper, fish, viḍaṅga, alkaline salt, juice of kośātaka and turmeric ensures victory in the battle for the elephant.

29. (A liniment consisting of) long pepper, rice, oil, honey of different kinds applied along the eyelids is commended as sharpening the eyesight.

30-31a. Feces of a sparrow and a pigeon, the resin of the kṣira tree and the liquor (known as) prasannā are the excellent collyrium. Such a collyrium applied on the eye would make the elephant destructive in the battle.

31b-32a. Blue lotuses, musta and tagara made into a paste with water in which rice has been washed is an excellent cooling agent for the eyes.

32b. (Once in a month) the grown-up nails should be cut. (They) should be bathed with oil once in a month.

33. The bed of an elephant would be powdered dry cow dung. It is commended that (the elephants) should be anointed with clarified butter in the autumn and summer.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND EIGHTYEIGHT

The diseases of the horses and the management of the horses

Dhanvantari said:

1. I shall describe the essence of (science relating to) the management of horses and the treatment of their diseases. In order to achieve dharma, artha (virtue) and kāma (enjoyment and prosperity) (a king) should acquire (good) horses.

2. (The asterisms) aśvinta, śravaṇa, hasta and the three uttaras (uttarāśādha, uttarāphālguna and uttarabhādrapada) are commended for the first ride on the horses.

3. The early winter, winter and spring are commendable for riding the horses. The riding of the horses in the summer, autumn and rainy season is forbidden.

4-6a. One should not whip the horses severely or with other kinds of sticks or at an improper place. One who rides a horse at a place abounding in nails, thorns and bones, on a rugged ground, on a sandy and muddy ground and spoilt by pits and falls without knowing the temper (of the steed) and without the saddle would be carried away by the horse even as he is seated on its back.

6b-7a. There may be an excellent person among the learned, a fortunate one who knows the behaviour (of the horse) and is able to ride without any instruction on account of his practice and application.

7b-12a. The different gods are assigned on (the different parts of) the body of the horse that has been consecrated, and faces the cast, commencing with the syllable om and ending with 'obeisance' with the respective bija in order. (Lord) Brahmā (is assigned) in the mind, (Lord) Viṣṇu in the strength, Vainateya (vehicle bird of Viṣṇu) in valour, the Rudras on the sides, Guru in the intellect, the Viśvedevas in the vital parts (of the body), the Moon and the Sun in its glances and eyesight, the two Aśvins (the celestial physicians) on the ears,

1. The mystical letter forming the essential part of the mantra of a deity.
the Fire (god) on the stomach, Svadhā in the sweat, the (goddess of) speech on the tongue, Wind (god) on speed, the vault of the heaven on the back, all the mountains on the tip of the hoof, the asterisms in the pores of the hairs, the digit of the moon in the heart, the Fire-god in the lustre, the goddess of love on the buttocks, the lord of the world on the forehead, the planets in the neighing, Vasuki (a foremost serpent) on the chest.

12b. One who is to ride (the horse), should fast, worship the horse and recite (the following mystic words) in the right ear (of the horse).

13-19. "Oh! Horse! You are a Gandharva prince! You listen to my words. You are born in the family of Gandharvas. Do not become a defiler of the family. O Horse! Remember your creed by the true words of the brahmins, of Soma, of Garuḍa, of Rudra, of Varuṇa, by the strength of Pavana (Wind-god) and by the radiance of the Fire-god. You remember that you are the son of a paramount sovereign. You remember the promise (you had made at the time of churning the ocean). You remember the daughter of the ocean (Goddess Lakṣmī). You remember the kaustubha jewel. You were born in the divine family at the time of the churning of the milky ocean by the celestials and the demons. You keep up your promise. You were born in the family of horses. You become my eternal friend. O Friend! You listen to this well. You be ready as my vehicle. You be victorious. You protect me and bring me success in the battle. In olden days the demons were destroyed by the celestials riding on your back. I will now ride on you and conquer the army of the enemy."

20. After having repeated (the above prayer) into the ears (of his steed) the rider should confuse the enemy, saddle the horse and ride (the horse). (This would give him) victory in the battle.

21. Generally the defects in the horses are produced in their bodies. The excellent riders should convert them into good qualities with much effort.

22. The good qualities that are due to the ability of the riders would appear as natural.
23. Other riders would destroy even the natural qualities. Some know the good qualities. Some others know their defects. One is fortunate who knows (the qualities as well as the defects in) a horse. A stupid one is he who does not know both.

24. Even though one is a good judge, he is not commended if he does not know how to manage a horse, does not know the means (at the time of an emergency), acts rash, is of irritable nature and engages in excessive punishing at the vulnerable points.

25. One who knows the means (of handling an emergent situation), one who knows the temper (of the horse), one who is pure, one who removes the defects and takes the (good) qualities is always an expert in all acts (engaging the horses).

26. One who has entered the riding ground holding the bridle should ride his steed either from his right or left.

27. An excellent horse should not be whipped at once after mounting. Whipping causes fright and fear would produce confusion.

28. The rider should conduct (the horse) in a gallop in the morning holding the rein. (He should conduct the horse) slowly in the evening holding the rein but without handling it.

29. (The following are the four political expedients): stroking is said to be conciliation, isolation (from the other steeds is) division, whipping with the whip and other things (is) punishment and biding time (is reckoned as) gift.

30-31. Each succeeding one should be employed when each preceding one fails. While riding a horse, (the bridle) should be placed without touching the tongue. The reins with hundreds of threads should be entered at the tip of the mouth. (The horse) should be made to forget (that) and then one may ride. One should (ride) slowly if the reins have become loosened.

32. If the tongue of the horse is ulcerated, the joint on the tongue should be released. The tight hold should be released till the horse does not give up its jumping.

33-36. The cuirass should be tied when the steed is released. (A horse) that has a raised face by nature should have its cuirass made loose by the foremost rider and then mounted with a sportive look. One that would make the left fore-leg (of
the steed) joined with the left rein, would get the hinder-leg seized. By that the right one (also controls). One that practices in this way with the left rein, the two feet (would be controlled). Then the foot would be held from the left itself. If the fore-feet are released, one would become firmly seated.

37. The left fore-leg should be tied with the rein to the left hind-leg (of a horse) of mischievous habit. It should be ridden by holding the left rein.

38. The nature of the horse is to turn round its face again. It is not on account of tying the legs of the horses thus.

39. After having looked at a trusted horse and after having taken a firm seat on the saddle, (the horse) should be made to touch his leg with the face by holding (the rein). Such a (posture known as) lokana is beneficial.

40. The rein is clasped after pulling and firmly pressing with the legs. It is said to be vakkana if the two legs are bound.

41. It is considered as motana if there is binding of the legs with the rein and letting it go by freeing the fore-legs.

42. A wise man should know the loss of consciousness and destruction for a horse and the fourth rule, namely, the motana, is laid down.

43. A horse whose leg does not touch the ground in a small circle, that foot should be restrained by means of motana and vakkana.

44. It is said to be saṅgrahana when it is held with exertion and when one goes slowly holding it after fastening well on the seat.

45. After striking on the side by kicking (the horse) that has distracted mind while one remain on the seat, the rein is drawn and held by the foot. It is known as grāhya-kaṇṭaka-pāyanam.

46. If a horse stands on the feet and hurts the rear legs, it is known as khalikāra (hurting).

47. It is known as gahana (intensified), if (the horse), that is in any one of the motions¹, is held after striking with a stick or with the leg as desired.

¹. The trot, the gallop or the canter.
48. It would be *ucchvāsana* (exhalation), if the horse is hurt and taken through a quadrangle by means of a different bridle by cheering.

49. It is considered to be *mukhavyāvartana* (turning the face away), if the nature (of a horse) to turn its face and move towards the place (from which it has been taken out), is restrained and held.

50. After restraining by any one of the three (ways) in order, it should be controlled by taking to the courses such as the circles and the like in order.

51. A wise man should relax and ride a horse that raises its head from its knee onwards. One should rise a horse till its limbs are light.

52. A horse that is soft at its shoulder, light at its face and flexible at its joints, when it becomes controlled by the rider, then it should be tamed.

53-54a. The hinder leg should not be freed when (the horse) becomes quiet. Then it should be drawn forward with the hands by means of the bridle. The horse stands with the part about the hips becoming normal, the neck raised, and face on level.

54b-56. If (the horse) keeps the hinder legs on the ground and the fore legs lifted up and runs very fast, one should hold the bridle with the fist and stop it. If the horse does not stop when suddenly pulled thus and if it shakes its body, it should be stopped by taking it in a circular path. The horse that casts off the shoulder should be stopped by means of the bridle.

57. The cowdung, salt and (cow’s) urine boiled with mud is besmeared on the body as a remedy for bites of flies, etc.

58. The scum of boiled rice should be given by the rider to (the horses) belonging to the *bhadra* and other breeds. The bites of tiny insects make the horse feel indolent and hungry.

59. A horse should be trained in such a way that it would become tamed. Horses would perish if they are made to run much. They do not get practice if not made to run. If the faces become white, (the horses) should be made to run.

60-61a. After having pressed the horse well with the two knees (one should ride the horse) with a firm fist. *Gomūtra,*
kuṭilā, venī, padmamandala, and (padma) mālika are well known as the pāñcolūkhaśikā.

61b-62a. Similarly saṅkṣipta, vikṣipta, kuścita, yathācita, valgita and avalgita are said to be six kinds of phases (of a horse). The path would be hundred dhanus (a measure of length equal to four cubits) or eighty or ninety (dhanus).

63. (Horses are said to be of four varieties such as bhadra, manda, mrga and saṅkirna.) The (type of horse known as) bhadra could be trained well, the manda variety, (by making use of) a stick. (The type) of horse (known as) mrga (is classified) taking the shank of a deer (as the basis). The above characteristics would be found mixed in the saṅkirna class.

64-65a. The horse that eats sugar, honey, and fried rice and has a good aroma is said to be clean and belonging to the brahmin class. The horse that belongs to the warrior class would be lustrous, meek and clever. (If the above qualities are found in lesser proportions it is known as the vaisya class.) (The horse that is) impure, unsteady, dull, ugly, foolish and wicked (is said to belong to) the śūdra (class).

65b-66. The horse that would show saliva when being held by the bridle, should be driven in phases by holding and loosening the rein. I shall describe (to you now) the characteristics of the horses etc. as expounded by (the sage) Śālihotra.¹

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND EIGHTYNINE

The characteristics of the horses and the treatment of the diseases of the horses

Śālihotra said:

1-5. O Suśruta! I shall describe the characteristics of the horses and the treatment of the diseases. A horse with lesser number of teeth, one devoid of teeth, one that is having dread-

1. Śālihotra is credited with the authorship of works on veterinary science.
ful appearance, one that has a black palate and black tongue, one that is born as a twin, one that has no testicle, one that has a cleft-hoof, one that has a horn, one that is tricoloured, one that has the colour of a tiger, one that has the cojor of an ass, one that has the colour of ash, one that is not having a good colour, one that has a hump, one that has white patches (on the skin), one that is (often) ridden by the crows, the voice of which resembles that of an ass, one whose eyes resemble those of a monkey, one that has black manes, one whose anus is black, one whose nostrils have a black hue and are pointed, one that has the colour of a tittiri (bird), one that has unequal legs having white patches on the foot, one that is devoid of fixed rings and has rings indicating inauspiciousness, should be avoided.

6. The pairs of curls of hair on the skull, uparandhra (flanks), head, chest, forehead and neck of a horse are (deemed to be auspicious.

7. The curls of hair at the corner of the mouth, forehead, the root of the ear, the throat, root of the forelegs, neck are auspicious. (The curls of hair) at other (places) are inauspicious.

8. The horses which resemble the colour of a parrot, indragopa (a kind of insect), moon and a crow and those which have a golden colour and are glossy are always commendable.

9. One should dismiss all the hopes of conquest where the horses of the kings have long necks, broad eye-corners and auspicious short ears.

10. A horse or an elephant which is guarded confers good and confers misery otherwise. Those horses are excellent and are gandharvas which increase the fortune and progeny.

11a. A horse is offered as an oblation in the aśvamedha (a horse-sacrifice) on account of its purity.

11b-13a. A morsel composed of uṣa, neem, bhranti, gudūci, māksikā, simhā and gandhakari anointed on the head (of a horse) or asafoetida, root of puṣkara, nāgara with sour vetasa, long pepper and saṁdhava (a kind of rock salt) with hot water would remove the pain (in the stomach).

13b-14a. A decoction of dried ginger, ativād, musū, ananta
and *bilva* leaves would remove all kinds of dysentery if given as a drink.

14b-15a. A horse would become free from fatigue by drinking a potion composed of goat’s milk, *pariyaṅgu* and *sāriva* (?) with profuse (quantity of) sugar.

15b-16a. Oily emetic is to be given for the horse in a *dronikā* (an oval basin of wood). It should penetrate the sinews of the viscera. It would make it feel comfortable.

16b-17a. A ball of pomegranate, the three myrobalans, dried ginger, pepper and long pepper with equal proportion of molasses should be given to the horses. It would cure the harassing cough.

17b-18a. The juice of *uṣa* together with *priyaṅgu*, *lodhra* and honey should be given to a horse for drinking. Or the five *kola* etc.¹ (should be given) with milk. It would cure the cough.

18b-19a. It is beneficial to give emetics at first in all the kinds of diarrhoea. Then anointing with oil, rubbing with fragrant unguents, besmearing medicated oil, giving sternutatory and besmearing with unguents should be done in order.

19b. The process of treatment for horses afflicted by fever is with water only.

20. Anointing with the roots of *lodhra* and *karaṇya*, *mātu- luṅga*, *agni*, dried ginger, *kuṣṭha*, asafoetida, *vaśā* and rāsnā would cure swelling.

21-22. A horse which drinks *maṇjiśṭhā*, *madhuka*, grapes, *bhātt*, red sandal, the seeds and roots of wild cucumber, *sṛṅgāṭaka* and *kaśeruka* boiled with goat’s milk and then cooled together with sugar and abstains from food would become free from passing of blood in the urine.

23. Anointment with *kaṭutaila* of the affected parts (of a horse) is commended in the case of swelling in the wrist, cheek or throat or stiff-neck.

24-25a. (A horse) that is affected by stiff-throat would have probably swelling in the region of the throat. A sternutatory with mustard, *vahni*, rock-salt, juice of holy basil, black pepper and asafoetida (is given).

¹. The five spices such as the long pepper, etc.
25b-26a. Besmearing a paste of two varieties of turmeric, *jyotismati, pāṭhā*, black pepper, *kuṣṭha, vacā* and honey mixed with molasses and (cow’s) urine is beneficial in paralysis of the tongue.

26b-27a. Paste made with sesamum, *yasṭi*, turmeric, neem leaves mixed with honey and clarified butter is a remedy for ulcers.

27b-28a. The horses which limp on account of whipping and feel extreme pain should be fomented with oil. It would remove the pain quickly.

28b-29a. The same procedure as in the case of ulcers (is to be followed) in the case of a hurt or deranged state of the humours or one caused by whipping. A decoction of the barks of *asvattha, udumbara, plakṣa, madhūka* and *vata* with profuse quantity of water in comfortable heat would cure the ulcers.

29b-31. Oil prepared with a decoction of *satāhuṇā*, dried ginger, rāṣṇā, *maṇjiṣṭhā, kuṣṭha* rock-salt, *devadāru, vacā*, two varieties of turmeric and red sandal mixed with *guḍūci* and milk is used for smearing, as emetic and sternutatory and as unguents in all cases when there is oozing of blood at the eye-corners (of a horse) suffering from eye-disease caused by leeches.

32-33. Decoction of the barks of *khadirā, udumbara* and *asvattha* mixed with equal parts of emblic myrobalan, *durālabhā, tiktā, priyangu*, saffron and *guḍūci* is beneficial in case of a limping one (horse), a wound of the tendon, or of an ear or a dry tumour.

34a. In the case of a fast developing derangement of a humour, it is desired that it is broken at once.

34b-35a. Rubbing with cowdung, *maṇjiṅkā, kuṣṭha*, turmeric, sesamum and mustard ground with cow’s urine would remedy itching.

35b-36a. A decoction of the above mixed with honey and cooled should be given through the nostrils together with sugar and *asvakarna*. It would remedy the haemoptysis.

36b-37a. Salt should be given to the horses on every seventh day. The liquor *vārunī* should be given to them as an additional drink after they had eaten as above.
37b-38a. (A decoction) with jivantiya, madhura, mrdvikā, sugar, long pepper and padmaka should be given as a substitute drink in the autumn.

38b-39a. (A decoction made) with viḍaṅgā, long pepper, coriander, satāhvā, lodhrā, rock-salt and citraka (should be given) to horses as a substitute drink on the advent of winter.

39b-40a. A substitute drink in the spring would be with the herbs lodhrā, priyaṅgu, mustā, long pepper and dried ginger mixed with honey. This would remedy (the deranged) phlegm.

40b-41a. Wine together with the potent herbs priyaṅgu, long pepper, lodhrā and yaṣṭi together with molasses should be given as the substitute drink in summer.

41b-42a. A substitute drink on the advent of the rainy season would be (decoction made of) stick of lodhrā, salt, long pepper and dried ginger mixed with oil.

42b-44. The horses should be given ghee to remedy the (deranged) bile in the summer, increase of the blood in the autumn and loosening of the feces in the rainy season. The horses which have excess of phlegm and wind should be given oil to drink. Any evil consequence of the abuse of oil (should be remedied) by making them dry (to remove fat). Food consisting of barley with butter-milk for three days would make them shed (excess fat).

45. Clarified butter in the autumn and summer, oil in the cold and spring (seasons) and through the syringe in the advanced winter is desired to be the restraining (remedy).

46. Food that is heavy and that would increase the phlegm, exercise, bathing, hot (sun) and wind are prohibited for a horse which has been given oil to drink.

47. Horses should be bathed and made to drink only once on the advent of the rains. On an extremely stormy day drinking only once is commended.

48. When heat and cold are blended in a season, (horses) should be made to drink twice and bathe once. In the summer they should be bathed and led to drink thrice and should be allowed to plunge (into the water) for a long time.

49-50. Four āḍhakas (a measure) of barley without the husk should be given (to the horses). They may also be given
bengal gram, orhi (a kind of paddy) and green gram. In a whole day and night (a horse may be fed) ten and a half tulás (weight) of barley and eight tulás of dried (grains) or four (parts) of vyosa¹ (dried ginger).

51-52. Dūrvā (a kind of grass) would remedy (the deranged) bile, barley (would remedy) the cough, mustard, the congestion of phlegm and arjuna (would set right) breathing. So also māna (?) (would rectify) loss of strength. The horse that takes a meal of dūrvā (grass) would not be affected by diseases due to (deranged) wind, bile, phlegm or their combined action.

53-54. Vicious horses should be tied with two ropes on each side to posts behind them at a distance of a dhanus (four cubits). They may stay in places (stables) where (hay) has been strewn and the ground has been fumigated. Barley should be placed therein. The place should be well-lit and protected well. Animals such as the goats and monkeys as well as cocks should be kept in the stables of horses.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND NINETY

Propitiatory rites for curing the ailments of horses

Śālihotra said:

1. O Suśruta! Listen to me. I shall describe the three kinds of propitiatory rites for the horses—the daily, the periodical and optional (rites) that would cure the diseases of the horses.

2. After having worshipped Śrīdhara (a form of Viṣṇu), Śrī (consort of Viṣṇu) and Uccaiḥśravas, the chief among the horses, on an auspicious day, one should offer ghee as oblation with (the recitation of the formula) Sāvitra (Gāyatrī).

3-6a. Then fees should be paid to the brahmins. Then the horses would increase. The propitiatory rite (should be done)

1. The reading vapusmataḥ in the veṅk. edn. does not fit in.
on the fifteenth (lunar) day of the bright fortnight in the (month of) *āsveyuk* (October-November). It should especially be done outside (the stable). (Lord) Varuṇa (water-god) should be worshipped. (A mystic) diagram should be drawn and (the image of) the goddess (placed at the centre) should be surrounded by branches (of trees). Pitchers filled with all flavours and covered by cloth should be placed at the cardinal points. After offering oblations of barley and clarified butter, the horses and the Aśvin gods¹ should be worshipped. Fees should be paid to the brahmins. Listen to me! (I shall now describe) the periodical (rites).

6b-8. One should worship (Lord) Viṣṇu, (goddess) Śrī (Lakṣmī), (Lord) Brahmā, (Lord) Śaṅkara, (Lord) Soma (Moon), (Lord) Āditya (Sun), the Aśvin gods, Revanta and Ucchaiṣtravas (the horse of Indra) in the (constellations) Capricorn etc. for the horses with lotuses. The guardian deities of the cardinal points (should be worshipped) on the petals. Pitchers (should be dedicated) for each one of the (above) deities (and worshipped) on the altar at the auspicious place. After having fasted, oblations of sesameum, unbroken rice, clarified butter and white mustard should be made a hundred times for everyone of the gods. This act would ward off the diseases of the horses.

**CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND NINETYONE**

*Propitiatory rites for curing the ailments of elephants*

Śālihotra said:

1. I shall describe the propitiatory rites that would destroy the deseases of elephants. One should worship (Lord) Viṣṇu, (goddess) Śrī and the elephant (Airāvata) of Indra on the fifth (lunar) day.

¹ A pair of celestial gods believed to have been born to Sun through a nymph in the form of a mare.
2-5a. (Similarly one should worship) Brahmā, Śaṅkara (Śiva), Viṣṇu, Śakra (Indra), Vaiśravaṇa (god of wealth), Yama (god of death), Moon, Sun, Varuṇa (Water-god), Wind-god, Fire-god, the Earth, the Sky, Śeṣa (the serpent couch of Lord Viṣṇu), the mountains and the eight elephants which guard the cardinal points such as Virūpākṣa, Mahāpadma, Bhadra, Sumanasa, Kumuda, Airāvata, Padma, Puṣpadanta, Vāmana, Supratīka and Añjana. Oblation should then be made and fees paid (to the brahmins). The elephants which are sprinkled with the propitiatory water would multiply. Listen to me! I shall describe the periodical rites.

5b-7a. In a lotus diagram (drawn) on the ground outside the city at the constellation Capricorn etc. of the elephants or at the north-eastern (angular point), (Lord) Viṣṇu should be worshipped at the centre, (goddess) Lakṣmī in the filament, (gods) Brahmā, Bhāskara (Sun), the earth and then (Lord) Skanda (son of Śiva), the sky, (Lord) Śiva, the Moon and Indra and his weapons on the petals in order.

7b-8a. (The weapons) such as the thunder-bolt, spear, rod, club, noose, mace, spike and the lotus should be worshipped on the periphery of the outer circle (of the diagram). The Sun and the pair of Aśvins should be worshipped at its centre.

8b-11. The eight Vasus and the Sādhyas (a class of celestials) (should be worshipped) at the petals at the southern and the south-western ends. The celestials, (the sages) Āṅgirasa and others, the Bhṛgus and the Wind-god (should be worshipped) at the north-western (petal), the Viśvedevas at the southern (petal) and the Rudras at the north-eastern (petal). The gods should be worshipped at the outer periphery of the exterior circle. The sages who composed the aphorisms, (goddess) Vānī (Sarasvatī, goddess of speech), the rivers and mountains (should be worshipped) on the east etc. The great spirits should be worshipped at the angular points such as the

1. Airāvata, Puṇḍarika, Vāmana, Añjana, Puṣpadanta, Sārvabhauma and Supratīka are the standard names of the elephants of the cardinal points. The text here reads additional names.
north-east and the like. The lotus, disc, mace and conch (which form) the four sides (enclosing) the circle (should be worshipped).

12-14. Pitchers (should be placed) at (each one of) the four entrances (at the east etc.) and banners on (the angular points such as) the south-east etc. Four ornamental arches (should be erected at the entrances). The elephants Airāvata and others (should be invoked to guard the entrances). Separate containers with herbs (should be placed) on the east and other directions for the gods. After having offered a hundred oblations with clarified butter and worshipped the elephants, one should circumambulate them. After having worshipped the elephant, fire-god and the gods at the outer periphery, the worshippers would go home. Fees should be paid to the brahmins as well as the physicians of the elephants.

15-20. An astrologer should then mount the female elephant and utter in its ear. After having done the propitiatory rite in this eternal king of elephants, one should recite the (following) mystic words: "O! Fortunate one! The king has made you the chief among the elephants. The king would worship you with perfumes, flowers and excellent attendants. Then the people would worship you by his order. The king has to be protected by you in the battle, on the way and in the house. Abandoning your animal nature you remember your divine nature. In olden days, at the time of the battle between the celestials and demons, the celestials created the divine elephant. The elephant called Ariṣṭa that was born to Airāvata (elephant of Indra) inherited the splendour of the divine elephants. O King of elephants! You attain that splendour endowed with divinity. May you be blessed with virtues! You protect the king in the battle."

21. The king should (then) mount (the elephant) that has been consecrated thus. Excellent warriors bearing weapons should follow it.

22. Again in a lotus diagram (drawn) outside (the shed) on the ground, the guardians of the cardinal points and others should be worshipped. Bala (deva), Nāga, the earth and (goddess) Sarasvati (should be worshipped) in the filaments.
23. After having worshipped the small drum at the centre with perfume, garlands and unguents, oblations should be made and a pitcher filled with sweet juice should be given to a brahmin.

24. Then the superintendent of the elephant, the guard of the elephant and the astrologer should be worshipped. A small drum should be given to the superintendent of the elephant and he should make it sound. It should produce auspicious and loud sounds. He should sound this while remaining on the buttocks (of the elephant).

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND NINETYTWO

The greatness of cows and their welfare

Dhanvantari said:

1. A king should protect cows and brahmins. I shall describe the propitiation of cows. Cows are sacred and auspicious. The world is sustained by them.

2. Their feces and urine are the excellent destroyers of poverty. Stroking of a cow and the water from its horns would destroy multitudes of sins.

3. The urine and feces of a cow, milk, curd, clarified butter and rocanā (yellow pigment got from a cow) are the six constituents that are excellent and when drunk they would prevent bad dreams etc.

4. (Go) rocanā is capable of nullifying poison and demons. One who feeds the cow with a morsel of food would go to heaven. In whose house cows are ill-kept, that person would go to hell.

5-6a. One who gives a morsel of food to a cow belonging to another would go to heaven. One who does good to a cow would reach the world of Brahmā. One who makes a gift of a cow, one who sings her praise and one who saves her life would elevate his family. The earth becomes pure by the breath of cows. Sins get destroyed by their touch.
6b-8. The urine of a cow, the feces, milk, curd, clarified butter and the water in which kusa (grass) (has been dipped) (being taken) and a night's fasting would purify even a vile person. It was practised by the gods in days of yore to destroy all inauspiciousness. If each one of the above was practised for three days, it was known as the mahasani tapan. This is capable of fulfilling all the desires (of a person) and destroying all that is inauspicious.

9. It was (known as) krochātikāchra, if one lived on milk for twentyone days. The excellent men (who practised it) would become stainless, would get all the desires fulfilled and attain heaven.

10-11. One should drink hot urine, hot ghee, and hot milk, each one for three days and consume air only for the next three days. This vow known as taptakāchra would destroy all sins and confer the world of Brahmā. It is known as sitakāchra if done with cold things (as above). It was described by Brahmā. It would yield the world of Brahmā.

12-13a. One should bathe in the urine of a cow, maintain himself with milk and move with the cows eating after they had eaten. It is known as govṛata. One would become free from the sins in a month. He would attain the world of cows and reach heaven.

13b-14a. One who mutters the gomati vidyā (a sacred formula) would reach the excellent world of cows. Therein he will enjoy music, dance and the company of nymphs in the celestial car.

14b-18. Cows are always fragrant. They give out the perfume of guggulu (fragrant resin). They are the sustainers of beings. Cows are the supreme conferrers of welfare. The excellent food for gods is the clarified butter from cows. They pour out and utter purity for all the beings. They satisfy the immortals in heaven with the clarified butter purified by mystic formulas. Cows are connected with sacrificial rites such as agnihotra of the sages. Cows are the excellent refuge of all beings. They are supremely holy and are exceedingly auspicious. Cows are the steps leading to heaven. They are the perpetually blessed ones.
19. Obeisance to cows! To the fortunate ones! To the fragrant ones! Obeisance to the daughters of Brahmā! Obeisance to the holy ones!

20-22. One family has been made into two (such as) brahmins and cows. The sacred formulas remain on one side and clarified butter on the other. The entire universe is supported by gods, brahmins, cows, holy men and chaste women. Hence they are always considered to be the fittest to be worshipped. Wherefrom (cows) would drink is known to be a sacred spot. Cows are really the Ganges and others. The greatness of cows has been told. Listen to me! I shall now describe the treatment (of their diseases).

23. Oil mixed with rock salt and decoction of śṛṅgavera, bala and māmsa, together with honey should be used for the diseases affecting the horns of cows.

24. Oil prepared with mañjiṣṭhā, asafoetida and rock salt or garlic alone should be used in all kinds of pain in the ears.

25. Besmearing a paste of the roots of bilva, apamarga, dhātaki, pātalā and kuṭaja at the base of the teeth would remove the pain therein.

26. O Rāma! Ghee heated with the ingredients used for removing tooth-ache is known to remove the disease of mouth. Rock-salt (is used) for the diseases of tongue.

27-28. Śṛṅgavera, the two varieties of turmeric and the three kinds of myrobalans (are useful to remedy) the stiffness of neck. The three myrobalans mixed with ghee given as a drink to cows is commended in heartache, stomachache, rheumatic complaints and pulmonary diseases. The two varieties of turmeric and pāṭhā may be given for dysentery.

29. Śṛṅgavera and bhārgī may be given for the diseases of the digestive organs and the pulmonary capillaries, cough and asthma.

30. Priyaṅga together with salt should be given for joining the broken (bones). Oil that removes wind, when heated with madhuyasthī (would cure) biliousness.

31. Mustard mixed with honey (would be the remedy) for (deranged) phlegm. (For the diseases) of the flesh, the same with the dust of pustaka (would be the remedy). One should
apply oil, clarified butter and haritāla on wounds from which blood oozes out.

32-34. Blackgram, sesamum, wheat, cow's milk and ghee made into a ball with salt gives nourishment to the calves. It would give strength to the young bulls. Fumigation would destroy the affliction due to evil planets. Fumigation with devadāru, vacā, mānsi, guggulu, asafoetida and mustard is beneficial for cows against pain due to evil planets. After fumigation a bell should be tied to cows.

35. If a cow is fed with atvagandha and sesamum it would increase its strength and make it yield profuse milk. For a bull that is maintained in the house, oil-cake (would be) the elixir.

36. The goddess of fortune should always be worshipped in the feces of the cows on the fifth (lunar day) for peace. (Lord) Vāsudeva (should) also (be worshipped) with perfumes etc. A different propitiatory rite will be described now.

37. (Lord) Hari (Viśṇu) should be worshipped on the fifteenth day of the bright fortnight in (the month of) atvayuk (October-November). (Lord) Hari, Rudra, Aja (Brahmā), Sun, (goddess of) Fortune and Fire-god (should be worshipped) with ghee.

38-39a. After feeding cows with curd and worshipping (them), one should circumambulate the fire. One should also arrange for a bull-fight accompanied by singing and instrumental music outside (the place). Salt should be given to cows. Brahmins (should be paid) the fees.

39b-43. In the periodical (propitiatory rite) (Lord) Viśṇu should be worshipped at the centre of a lotus (diagram) on the ground along with (goddess) Śrī on the (occasion of Sun's transit through) Capricorn etc. The celestials should be worshipped in the filaments in the (different) directions. The Sun, the Subhadrāja (born as fortunate) and Bali, the Bahurūpa should be worshipped outside. The Sky, Viśvarūpa, Siddhi, Rddhi, Śānti, Rohiṇī (should also be worshipped). The guardian cows of the cardinal points—east etc., the Moon and Īśvara (should be worshipped) in the filaments. The guardian deities of the cardinal points (should be worshipped) in the pitchers (placed) on the petals of the lotus. Oblation should be made
unto the fire with the twigs of the ksira tree, mustard and unbroken rice a hundred times each. Gold and bronze should be given away to brahmins. Cows should then be worshipped and released for the sake of peace and to be endowed with milk etc.

Fire-god said:

44. Śālihotra narrated the veterinary science relating to the horses to Suśruta. Pālakāpya narrated the science relating to the elephants to Aṅgarāja.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND NINETYTHREE

Different kinds of mantras and their nomenclature

Fire-god said:

1. Listen to me! I shall describe the science relating to the mystic formulas that would yield enjoyment and emancipation. O Brahmin! The mystic formulas containing more than twenty letters are known to be mālāmantra-s.

2. The mystic formulas having more than ten letters (and less than twenty) are designated as arvāgbija-s. These yield results in the old age, while the mālāmantras in the youth.

3-5a. The formulas having more than five letters yield fruits always. The other formulas belonging to the group of mantras are of three kinds such as feminine, masculine and neuter. The feminine mantras end with (the term) Svāhā (consort of Fire). The neuter mantras end with (the term) obeisance. The rest are masculine. They are commended (to be used) in charms to subjugate and to drive away (evil). The feminine (mantras) (are used) to destroy diseases due to mean acts, while the neuter ones in other cases.

5b-7. Mantras (are also classified as) āgneya (fiery) and saumya (pleasing). They should be repeated at the beginning and end of the asterisms and the halves. The āgneya mantra is generally laid down as having the asterism at the end and the fire and the ether (in greater proportions). The rest (are said
to be) saumya. The two (varieties of mantras) are commended to be used in cruel and good deeds (respectively). The āgneya mantra may perhaps be saumya by the addition of 'obeisance' at the end. Saumya mantra (would also) in the same way (be) āgneya by the addition of the syllable phat.

8. A mantra would not accomplish (the result) if it is either asleep or awakened. The sleeping state (of a mantra) is when there is powerful (breath through the nostrils and the waking state when the breath) flows through the right (nostril).

9. By the inversion (of the letters) of an āgneya mantra one would get (the letters) of a saumya mantra. One should ascertain the waking state of both (the mantras) and the day for both.

10-14a. The mantras, whose letters are presided over by baneful asterisms and constellations, should be avoided. In order to acquire kingdom, the vowel letters which are inimical to the component letters of one's name, should be first arranged in due order. "May you go and fill the abode of the king". Thus the script is made ready. The vowels should be arranged in the different asterisms in order ending with the (asterism) Revati. The chambers should be marked as the siddha-s (successful, such as the ninth, the first and the fifth chamber), the sādhyā-s (successful in time, such as the sixth the tenth and the second chamber), the susiddha-s (extremely successful, such as the third, the seventh and the eleventh chamber), and the ari (hostile, such as the fourth, the eighth and the twelfth chamber) and the character of each mantra in relation to the name of the individual to whom it should be imparted, should be calculated therefrom.

14b-15. One accomplishes merely by the repetition of the siddha (mantra). The sādhyā (mantra) (could accomplish) by the repetition, worship and making an oblation. The susiddha (mantra) would accomplish by mere contemplation. (The mantra known as) ari would destroy the votary. A mantra full of baneful letters of the alphabet is condemned by all.

16. After having been duly initiated, ending with the ceremonial bathing and after having had the exposition of the tantra from the preceptor, one has to practise the desired mantra got from the preceptor.
17-18a. A person who is bold, competent, pure, devoted, bent on repetition, contemplation and the like, accomplished, who practises penance, is intelligent, knows the *tantra*, speaks the truth and is capable of restraining and blessing (the disciple) is said to be a preceptor.

18b-19. A disciple (should be) calm, restrained, clever, studied, celebate, and eating food fit for oblation. He should do service to the preceptor. He should be eager to accomplish. He (should be) instructed. He (should be) like a son, modest and capable of giving money.

20-21a. A *mantra* should be imparted by the preceptor. When it is accomplished the preceptor should repeat it a thousand times. A *mantra* that has been heard accidentally, or got by fraudulent means or by force or written on a leaf or (got) in the form of a *gāthā* (a verse) would not bear any fruit.

21b-23a. One who practises a *mantra* by means of several acts such as repetition, oblation, worship and the like, attains success by little practice. There is nothing which cannot be achieved by means of a *mantra* that has been perfectly practised. What to say about a person who has practised many *mantras*. He is really Śiva Himself.

23b-24a. A *mantra* (consisting) of a single letter bears fruit after repetition for ten lakh (a million) times. The repetition is reduced as the number of letters (in the *mantra*) is increased. In this way one has to flock together the other *mantras*.

24b-25. The *mantras* containing letters twice or thrice the *bīja mantras* should be repeated like a *mālāmantra*. A *mantra* should be repeated a hundred and eight or a thousand times if the number of their repetition has not been specified. It is known that the number of libations and anointments is in general a tenth part of the number of repetitions.

26. For one who is not able to repeat, ghee (would be the material) for libation, in all the cases, if the material has not been specified. The number of repetitions of the component (*mantras*) would be a tenth as that of the main *mantra*.

27. When the *mantras* are repeated according to their potency, the presiding deities of the *mantras* yield the desired (fruits). They get pleased with the contemplation, oblation and worship etc. of the votary.
28. The muttering of a *mantra* is ten times more meritorious than their loud repetition. Repetition with the tongue (within the mouth) is hundred times (meritorious). The mental (repetition) is known to be a thousand times (more meritorious).

29. One should begin the repetition of a *mantra* facing the east or looking downwards. All the *mantras* should begin with the *prāṇava* (the syllable *Om*). One should restrain from conversing and eat the prescribed food.

30. One has to repeat the *mantras* remaining seated. He should look at his preceptor and the (favourite) deity alike. The places (suited for the practice) are a solitary cottage, temples and (banks of) rivers and tanks.

31-34. One who wants to gain perfection (in a *mantra*), should live on rice-gruel, cakes, milk or *havisya* (that is to be offered to fire) food. The votary should worship the presiding deity of the *mantra* on the lunar days and week-days such as the eighth and fourteenth days of the dark fortnight and eclipses etc. Dasra (*Aśvinī devatā*), Yama (*God of Death*), the Fire-god, Dhātr (*Brahmā*), the Moon, Rudra, Jupiter, Diti, the serpents, the Pitṛs, Bhaga, Aryamā, the Sun, Tvaṣṭṛ, the Maruts, Indra, the Fire-god, Mitra, Indra, Nirṛti, the Water, Viśvedevas, Hṛṣikeśa (name of Viṣṇu), the Winds, the god of water (*Varuṇa*), Ajaikapād (one of Rudras), Ahirbudhnya (one of the Rudras), Pūṣan are the deities of (the asterisms) Aśvinī and others.

35-36a. The fire-god, Dasra (*Aśvinī devatā*), Umā (consort of Śiva), Nighna (*Vināyaka* ?), Nāga (serpent), the Moon (*Candra*), the Sun, the divine mothers, (goddess) Durgā, the presiding deities of the cardinal points, Kṛṣṇa, Vaivasvata (god of death), Śiva, the Moon (*Śaśāṅka*) and the Pitṛs are the presiding deities of the lunar days.

36b-40. Hara (*Śiva*), Durgā, Jupiter, Viṣṇu, Brahmā, Lakṣmī and Kubera are the presiding deities of the days of the week. I shall describe the assignment of the letters (on the different parts of the body). The letters constituting the five groups (of consonants such as *ka, ca, ta, ta* and *pa*), should be assigned on the tips of the grown up hair, eyes, the pair of ears, nose, cheeks, lips, teeth, head, mouth, arms, feet, joints, sides,
back, navel and heart in order. The letters \text{ya} and others should
be assigned on the heart. Skin, blood, flesh, fat, bone, marrow
and semen are the seven essential ingredients (of the body).
The regent of the letters beginning with \text{rāsa} (essential juice)
and ending with \text{payas} (milk) should be written.

41-42. Śrīkanṭha, Ananta, Śūkṣma, Trimūrti, Amare-
śvara (Indra), Agniśa, Bhāvabhūti, Tithiśa, Sthāṇuka, Hara,
Daṇḍiśa, Bhautika, Sadyojāta, Anugraheśvara, Akrūra and
Mahāsenā are the presiding deities to be worshipped.

43-46. The deities Krodhiśa, Caṇḍa, Pañcāntaka, Śiva,
Rudra, Kūrma, Tri-netra, Caturānana, Ajeśa, Śarmā, Someśa,
Lāṅgali, Dāruka, Ardhanāriśvara, Umā, Kānta,Āśādhi, Daṇḍin,
Atri, Mina, Meṣa, Lohita, Śikhi, Chagalaṇḍa, Dviraṇḍa,
Mahākāla, Bālin, Bhujaṅga, Pināki, Khadgiśa, Baka, Śveta,
Bṛgu, Laguḍi, Iśākṣa, Kṣaya and Sarṇvarta (are also to be
assigned).

47. After having written (the names of) the Rudras
together with their consorts at first, then ending with obeisance,
they should be assigned in order. Then the \text{aṅga-mantras} should
be located. All the \text{mantras} with their constituents are capable
of yielding perfection.

48-51. These \text{aṅga-mantras} should be completed with the
hrilekhā and vyoma and located. Then the heart and other
parts of the body should be associated with the \text{aṅgamantras}.
‘Obeisance’ would be for the heart, \text{svāhā} (oblation) for the
head, \text{vaṣat} for the tuft, \text{hun} for the armour, \text{vausat} for the eye
and \text{phaṭ} for the weapon. Eye need not be included when the
five \text{aṅgas} are uttered. Where there is no \text{aṅgamantra} (for a
\text{mantra}), the location should be made in the self and repetition
is made a million times. After having located in order the
goddess Vāgīśī and the other gods mentioned, sesamum should
be offered to the fire. The goddess of letters who bears the
garland of letters, a pitcher, a book and a lotus would bestow
the ability to compose poetry. One should do the assignment
at the beginning of an act. All the \text{mantras} become spotless and
yield perfection by (the grace of) the divine mothers even if
one is not a poet.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND NINETYFOUR

The characteristics of different kinds of serpents

The Fire-god said:

1. The different species of serpents, their nature, the ten places (in the body at which a bite would be fatal), the remedial action, (the resultant) impurity and the behaviour of the (person) bitten (by the serpent) are said to be the seven characteristics.

2-3. Śeṣa, Vāsuki, Takṣa, Karkoṭaka, Abja (Padma), Mahāmbuja (Mahāpadma), Śaṅkhapāla and Kulika are the eight chief serpents. They have ten, eight, five, three, three and hundred heads in order. Every two of these serpents are said to be brahmins, ksatriyas, vaiśyas and ādīras in order.

4-8. (The serpents) born in their family (are) five hundred from whom innumerable serpents came into being. (The serpents are of three kinds such as) the pāṇi, mandali and rājila being windy, bilious and phlegmatic respectively. The variety known as vyantarā has these humours mixed. The serpents are known as having hoods. They bear (the signs of) cart-wheels, ploughshares, umbrellas, svastikas and goads. (The serpents known as) gonasas move slowly. They are long and bear different kinds of rings. (Those known as) rājilas are variegated, glossy and (can fly) across and upwards with their wings. The vyantarās (would have) mixed marks. (They are again classified) into four kinds as earthy, watery, fiery and windy and are divided into twentysix kinds. The gonasas are sixteen kinds, the rājilas, thirteene and the vyantarās, twentyone. Those which are born at an unspecified time are known as the vyantarās.

9-12. Their impregnation lasts for four months beginning with the three months commencing from Āṣādha. Two hundred and forty eggs are laid. The serpents swallow their young without showing any distinction such as the males, females and hermaphrodites. The eyes get opened in seven days. The outer (skin) becomes black after a month. After twelve days its faculty gets developed. The teeth appear on seeing the Sun. The teeth karālt, makari, kālarātri and yamadātikā (grow) in twenty to
thirtytwo days. There are the venomous teeth on the left and right sides.

13-14. They discard their (outer) skin after six months. They would live for one hundred and twenty years. Seven serpents (among the eight mentioned earlier) preside over the days and nights of days such as Sun-day and the like. Among them six (preside over) every week. Kulika (is the lord) of all the junctions of periods. Kulika may exercise its influence jointly with either Śaṅkha or Mahābja (Mahā-padma).

15. One nādikā (24 minutes) in between the two is the period of the Kulika. It is a malignant period in all the circumstances and especially in the serpent bite.

16-18a. The asterisms Kṛttikā, Bharaṇi, Svātī, Mūla, the three pūrvas (pūrvapālgunī, Pūrvāśādha and Pūrvabhādrapada), Aśvinī, Viśākhā, Ādrā, Magha, Āśleṣa, Citrā, Śravāṇa, Rohiṇī, Hastā, Saturdays and Tuesdays among the days, the fifth, eighth, sixth as well as fourth, ninth and the fourteenth lunar days are malignant. The four twilight periods and malignant yoga (periods) as well as the (malignant) constellations are bad.

18b-20a. There would be a single or a couple or many bites (of the serpents). The bites are of four varieties—pierced, cut, apprehended and concealed. The bites in which there are three or two incisions or a single incision, pain, profuse bleeding and a bite in the leg in the night accompanied by (swelling) resembling (the shape of) a tortoise are directed by Yama (i.e. sure to be fatal).

20b-21a. A bite accompanied by burning and itching sensation (at the mouth of the bite), swelling and pain in the neck, gruelling pain and knotty (swelling) (should be known) to have the poison spread (in the body). If it is otherwise it should be taken as free from poison.

21b-25. It is inauspicious if one is bitten in a temple, an uninhabited house, an ant-hill, a garden, a hole, at a crossroad, in a cremation ground, on the bed of a river, at the confluence (of a river) with the ocean, in an island, at the meeting point of four roads, on the terrace of a building, in a flower, on the summit of a hill, at the mouth of a hole, in an old well, in a dilapidated house, on a wall and on the trees such
as the śīgru, ślesmātaka, aksa, jambā, udumbara, vena and vata (the fig tree) as well as on a demolished compound, or at an aperture of the human body, face, heart, arm-pit, collar bone, palate, bone of the forehead, neck, head, chin, navel and feet. A messenger (who is sent to convey the news to the snake-charmer) is auspicious, if he has a flower in his hand, speaks well, is intelligent, belongs to the same sex and caste (as that of the person bitten), wears white dress, has no blemishes and is pure.

26-28. One who enters through the side door, one who carries a weapon, one who has erred, one who has a down-cast look, one who wears decoloured dress, one who has the nose etc. in his hand, one who stammers, one who holds a dry piece of wood, one who feels depressed, one who holds sesameum in his hand and clothes, one who wears a wet dress, one who wears black or red flowers on his tuft, one who presses the nipple, one who cuts the nails, one who touches the buttocks, one who scratches (the earth) with the foot (toe), one who pulls out his hair and one who cuts the grass are inauspicious messengers.

29. The sex of the person bitten should be known as male or female or hermaphrodite from he flow of the breath forcibly through the left or right or both the nostrils of the self (the snake-charmer) or the messenger.

30. One should indicate that part of the body as having been bitten which the messenger touches (when he meets the snake-charmer). It forebodes evil if the messenger moves his legs. If one has his (foot) raised without movement it indicates good.

31. If the messenger has an animal by his side (when conveying the news), it augurs good. If he is found with anything else it forebodes evil. If the animal that is present paces here and there, it forebodes bad. But (if it paces here and there) when the messenger is conveying (the message), it augurs good.

32. If the speech of a messenger is faulty at the beginning or middle, it is extremely ominous. The period that the venom would last could be known from the distinctions at the end of his speech.

33-34. The alphabets are divided into two groups—the vowels beginning with 'a' and the groups of letters beginning
with 'ka' (ka, ca, ṭa, ta and pa). The group forming the vowels is known as vasumān. The four letters of the consonants are sacred to the Wind-god, Fire-god, Indra and Water respectively. The fifth letters belong to hermaphrodite. The vowels are sacred to Indra and water (alternatively).

35. The presence of letters sacred to Wind and Fire (gods) at the beginning of a speech of the messenger is not good. (The presence of a letter sacred to) Hari (Indra) is mediocre. (The presence of) letters (sacred) to Varuṇa (god of water) is commendable. (The presence of) hermaphrodite (letters) is extremely ominous.

36. An auspicious sentence (heard as the messenger) departs or the thundering of a cloud or the trumpeting of an elephant are auspicious. The circular movement (of birds) or crying from a fruit or tree on the left side is (also) auspicious.

37. Sounds such as music etc. would be auspicious. Such things would accomplish the result. Worthless words or words expressing a calamity, a wailing sound, a scream heard from the right (side), a sneezing (are bad omen).

38-39a. The sneezing of a courtesan, a king, a virgin, a cow, an elephant, muraja (a musical drum), a banner, milk, clarified butter, curd, water from the conch, umbrella, bheri (a kind of musical drum), fruit, the celestials, rice, gold and silver are fruitful if one comes across them on his way.

39b-40. (The sight of) an artisan holding a burning log of wood, one who is clad in dirty clothes carrying a load, one who carries an axe, a jackal, a vulture, an owl, one having the matted hair, oil, skull and cotton is to be warded off. (The sight of) ash (brings in certain) loss.

41. The malady due to poison is of seven kinds depending on the movement (of the poison) from one essential ingredient of the body to another. A poisonous bite (first) reaches the forehead, then the eyes, then the face. From the face it reaches the nerves associated with speech and other essential ingredients (such as the blood etc. of the body).

1. They are the blood, flesh, fat, etc.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND NINETYFIVE

The medical treatment for a serpent bite

Fire-god said:

1-2. I shall describe to you the treatment of a (poisonous) bite by means of mystic formulas, meditation and herbs. "Om; Obeisance to lord Nilakaṇṭha¹ (Śiva)". The repetition of this (mantra) would be an antidote for poison. Liquid cowdung with clarified butter should be drunk as a life-saving medicine. Poison is said to be of two varieties—the poison due to animals such as the serpent, rat etc. and that due to the plants such as the śrīga etc.

3-4. Lord Brahmā is represented by the soft vowels and those known as lōhita and capable of protecting represent Lord Śiva. This (the following) is a mantra (bearing) the name of the bird Tārksya (eagle, vehicle of Viṣṇu) consisting of letters (sacred to it).

Oṃ! Burn! A person of great intellect! is for the heart. Garuḍavādala is on the head. To Garuḍa the crest-bird of heaven is for the tuft. "O Garuḍa! One who destroys the poison! One who pierces! You frighten and trample down" (is the mantra) for the armour. "One whose command none can dispute! hum! phat" (is the mantra) for the weapon. "One who bears a dreadful appearance! One who frightens all! You frighten all! Burn. Burn them into ashes. Oblations" (is) for the eye. (In order to worship Garuḍa with the above mantra) a lotus (diagram) is contemplated in the heart. The seven constituent elements (of the body are assigned therein). The vowels are arranged in the petals pointing to the eight cardinal points. The letters are located in the filaments etc. The fire (is located) near the pericarp (of the lotus). Then the snake-charmer should mentally remember it on the palm of the left hand. The letters should then be assigned on the thumb and other (fingers). Thus the constituent parts of the mantra of the bird are distributed.

¹. As he has drunk the deadly poison that came out of the milky ocean as it was churned.
5-7. Then (Lord) Indra, the presiding deity of the earth, of yellow colour, is assigned in a quadrilateral of the form of a mace. The white-coloured (Lord) Varuṇa, the presiding deity of water, (is assigned) in a semi-circle like the half of a lotus. (Lord) Fire, the presiding deity of lustre, (is assigned) in a svastika figure (inscribed within a triangle). (Lord) Wind, (is assigned) in a circle with a dot, bearing a black garland. These are assigned respectively in the middle of the fingers beginning with the thumb in their respective places covered by golden (images of) Gāruḍa.

8-10. The four letters of the mantra (should be contemplated) as having a good halo of similar radiance. They should be located in the formless ether, presided over by (Lord) Śiva of the form of the subtle principle of sound. The first letter (of the mantra) should be located on the middle fold of the little finger. The first letters of the serpents are also located as being present in their own spheres. The first letters of the earth and other elements are located on the last mark of the thumb etc. Then a wise man should locate the proximate qualities such as the subtle principles and the like on the fingers.

11-14. By the touch of this Tārkṣya (mantra) assigned on the hand all kinds of poisons would be destroyed. Then the letters of the mantra of the bird should be located in the halos in the regions of the umbilicus and the joints of the body. It is excellent to have it as two fingers long. A wise man should contemplate Tārkṣa (the Eagle), who pervades the cosmic universal egg, who wears the serpent ornament known as the candra reflecting the blue hue of his dreadful beak and who has the great wings from the knee (to the navel) as golden coloured, from the navel (to the neck) as snow-coloured, from the neck (to the hair) as red like the saffron and from the ends of the hair as black. There would thus be a charm for a poison from the statement of a charmer who is pervaded by (the letters of) the Tārkṣya (mantra).

15-20a. A blow with the fist, thus charged with the Tārkṣya (mantra), would remove poison. Raising the hand charged with the Tārkṣya (mantra) and passing over (the place of bite) the five fingers, and by having a look at the person
intoxicated, one would arrest the spread of the poison. One should arrest the spread of the poison by the repetition of the (following) mantra: “This bhūbija (mantra), the lord of the five letters has descended from the sky. I shall arrest the excessive poison.” By reversing the bhūbija, the resultant mantra, “Flood, Flood, Yama!”, well-accomplished, would remove the poison. This would raise one like a stick, by bathing him with water after repeating (this mantra) well. Similar result could be obtained by hearing the sound (produced) by a conch or bherti (war drum) after repeating (this mantra) properly. (This mantra) with the inversion of (the components of) earth and splendour would burn (the poison). This mantra with the inversion of (the components of) earth and wind would transfer the poison.

20b-24. The practitioner of this charm possessing the shape of the figure of Garuḍa, should practise this act inside his own house with the components of earth, fire, moon and water. The repetition of this (mantra) in the abodes of Garuḍa and (Lord) Varuṇa would destroy the poison. This is said to be the holy jānudaṇḍī. It would destroy all poisons and ward off fever, diseases and untimely death by bathing and drinking (the water consecrated by its repetition) marked with the components of (the syllables) svadha and śri. “Oh! Bird! Bird! Great bird! Great bird! Vi! Vi! Oblations! Oh! Bird! Bird! Great bird! Great bird! Kṣi! Kṣi! Oblations!” These two mantras of the king of birds are capable of destroying poison by chanting. (The gāyatrī mantra of Garuḍa is): “We contemplate the king of birds. We meditate on the lord of the birds. May that Garuḍa prompt us (our minds)”. Then “Kāla and Lāṅgali”, the (mantra) of Nilakaṇṭha (blue-necked, an epithet of Śiva) bearing the insignia of tooth and stick should be assigned on the chest, neck, tuft etc. on the body in front of the fire after consecration. Hara! Hara! Obeisance to the heart! To the head, for Nilakaṇṭha, to the tuft! Oblation to one who drank the poison kālakūṭa\textsuperscript{1}! Then the armour on the neck. (Obeisance) to the three-eyed lord wearing the hide of

1. The poison that came out from the milky ocean when it was churned.
elephants (present) in (the region of) the eye! The faces of the Lord from the east onwards (should be then contemplated) as having (the colours of) white, yellow, red and black.

25-29. The Lord should be contemplated *as offering protection and boon and holding the bow and the serpent in His hands.* (Goddess) Gaurī and (Lord) Rudra (are contemplated) as His presiding deity above and on the left. After having assigned the letters of the mantra on foot, knee, private organ, navel, heart, neck, face, head, hands, fingers beginning with the thumb, fore-finger and folds (on the fingers) and then all of them should be assigned on the thumb. After having contemplated thus, (they) should be bound quickly with the mudrā (formation made with the fingers), (in the shape of) a spike. The little finger should be held by the thumb. The other three are stretched out quickly. (This is that mudrā.) The left hand (is used) for destroying the poison and the right hand in other acts. "Oṁ! Obeisance to Lord Nilakaṅṭha! Ciṅ! To the clear-necked! Ciṅ! (Obeisance) to the omniscient neck! Ciṅ! Cast down! Oṁ! Oblations! (Obeisance) to the clear-necked, blue-necked! To the destroyer of more than one or all poisons! Obeisance to (Lord) Rudra-Manyu!" The poison gets destroyed by rubbing with this (mantra) or by repeating in the ear or by (wearing) the sandal. There is no doubt. (Lord) Blue-necked, the great lord should be worshipped by following the rule laid down for the worship of Rudra. One would destroy the poison and disease by doing worship according to the rules of Rudra (worship).

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND NINETYSIX

The five constituents of the worship of Rudra

Fire-god said:

1-2. I shall describe the five constituents of the worship of Rudra. It is the most excellent that confers everything. The
śivasāṅkalpa (resolve for Śiva) is the heart. The Puruşasūkta is the head. (The hymn) adhyāyah sambhūta is the tuft. The hymn (called) āṣu is the armour. The tatarudriya (hymn) is the weapon. These are the five constituents in the worship of Rudra.

3-4a. After having assigned the five constituents and contemplating Him, the Rudra hymns are repeated in order. The hymn (beginning with) yajjāgrata is known to be repeated mentally. The sage (of that hymn) is śivasāṅkalpa (resolve) and the metre is said to be triṣṭubh (consisting of 11 syllables in a quarter).

4b-5a. (For the hymn) sahasraśṛṣṭā for the head the sage is Nārāyaṇa. The deity (of this hymn) is the supreme soul. The metre is known to be triṣṭubh.

5b-6. The sage for the hymn adhyāyah sambhūta is the person going to the north. Irīṣṭubh is the metre for the first three hymns, anuṣṭubh for the next two and triṣṭubh for the last (hymn). The deity for this (hymn) also is the supreme soul.

7-8. Indra is the lord for the twelve hymns beginning with āṣu. Irīṣṭubh is said to be the metre and Pratiratha, the sage. The deities are separate for each one of the verses in the hymn of seventeen verses. The deity of the constituent part is Puruvit. The metre of the remaining deities is said to be anuṣṭubh.

9. Indra is the deity for (the hymn) asau yastāṃraḥ. Purulīṅga is the deity for the constituent parts. Paṅkī is the metre. The deities of the constituent parts are vital.

10. Parameṣṭhin is the sage for all the hymns of the Rudrādhvāyā. For the three hymns commencing with

1. RV. 10.90.1a.
3. Could not be traced.
4. Same as Rudrādhvāyā.
5. Could not be traced.
6. RV. 10.90.1a.
7. See 1 above.
8. Could not be traced.
9. VS. 16.6a; TS.4.5.1.2a.
10. The hymns beginning with namaste rudra maṇḍyaṃ:
    VS. 16.1a; TS. 4.5.1.1a.
‘devānāṁ kutsasya’, Prajāpati is the sage.

11. For the two (hymns beginning with) mano, Umā is the single deity and Rudra for rudrāṣca. Ekarudra is the deity for the first anuvāka (name of a section of the collection of hymns).

12. Gāyatra is the metre for the first (hymn), anuṣṭubh for the (next) three verses and pañkīti and anuṣṭubh for the (subsequent verses).

13. Then jagati is the metre for the (next) two (verses) The Rudra (hymns) are eighty. The Hiraṇyabāhūs are three. “Obeisance to Thee! O Kirika” is one.

14. Rudra is the deity of the five hymns of the twenty mantras of the Rudrānuvāka. Brhatī is known to be (the metre) of the first hymn.

15. The second one is a rāk. The next three are in jagati (metre). The third one is a tristubh. Then the next four are yajur (mantras) in anuṣṭubh. One will gain perfection by means of the dhīrā (hymns).

16-17. One would be able to destroy the poison, disease and the enemy with (the repetition of) (the mantra) trailokyamohana (one that stupefies the three worlds). “Iś, śrim, hrim, hrūṁ! Obeisance to (Lord) Viṣṇu, the stupefier of the three worlds.” One could (also) destroy the poison and disease with the Nṛṣimha (mantra) in the anuṣṭubh; “Oṁ, haṁ, iṁ! I make obeisance to the fiercely brave great Viṣṇu, who is glowing and who has His faces on all sides. He is the frightening Nṛṣimha, who is benevolent and is the destroyer of death.”

18-19. This is the mantra of five parts that accomplishes all things. The two mantras having twelve and eight letters are capable of destroying poison and disease. (The goddesses) Kubjikā, Tripura, Gaurī and Candrikā are capable of destroying poison. The mantras relating to them also would remove poison and make one gain good health. Similarly the mantras relating to Sun, (Lords) Vināyaka (the elephant-faced god) and Rudra (would give) everything always.

1. Could not be traced.
2. Cf. RV. 10.57 3a.
3. Could not be traced.
4. om nama bhagavate vāsudevāya.
5. om nama nārāyanāya.
CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND NINETY SEVEN

The remedial mantra that would remove poison

Fire-god said:

1-2. “Oṁ, obeisance to Lord Rudra! You cut down venom! (Obeisance) to the wielder of an axe of fire in his hand! Obeisance to Lord Rudra in the form of the bird (Garuḍa)! You make the bitten person get up! Shake him up! Make him converse! Rouse up the person bitten by the serpent! Make him dangle! Bind him! Release him! Oh! The Excellent Rudra! You go, strike, bend, make noise and frighten and destroy the poison with your fist! Ṭha! Ṭha!”

The poison gets destroyed by the repetition of the mantra of the bird. “Oṁ! Obeisance to Lord Rudra! Destroy all kinds of poison—vegetable or animal, artificial or natural, primary or secondary! Destroy different kinds of poison! Destroy the venom in the bitten person! Subdue! Eject! You become free from poison by the showers of darkness in the form of the clouds. Destroy! Go forth! You neutralise the poison by ejecting it.” The poison would be controlled with the repetition of this mantra. “Oṁ! Throw away! Oṁ Throw away! Oblations! Oṁ, hrāṁ, hriṁ, khiṁ, saḥ, ṭhaṁ, drauṁ, hriṁ, ṭhaḥ!” Being accomplished by the repetition, one would be able to bind the serpents always. One could accomplish all things (by the repetition of the mantra): “Obeisance to the beloved of milk-maids” having one, two, three or four letters and having the disc of Kṛṣṇa as the fifth part.

3-4a. “Oṁ, obeisance to Lord Rudra, the lord of ghosts! Listen! Make sound! Make to rotate! Release! Stupefy! Manifest! Enter! Golden bird! Rudra makes known! Ṭha!” This mantra known as the agitator of hell would destroy the poison when repeated. A person bitten by a snake should cauterize with log or stone for subduing the poison immediately after being bitten. The bitten part of the body should be cauterized with burning red lotus etc.

4b-5a. The drinking or besmearing or collyrium of the three pungent things—seeds of sīrīṣa flower, arka flower and kṣtra seeds would destroy the poison.
5b-6a. There is no doubt that the white pepper mixed with the essence of the sirîṣa flower would remove poison when drunk or used as sternutatory or collyrium.

6b-7. The three pungent things, kośātaki, vacâ and asafoetida mixed with the milk of sirîṣa and arka and the mesâ mixed with water would remove the poison when used as a sternutatory. The powder of asafoetida and all parts of ikśvāku used as a sternutatory would remove the poison.

8. The expressed juice of indrabalâ, agnika, drona, tulasi, devikâ and sahâ mixed with the powder of the three pungent things when eaten would remove the poison. The five parts of the sirîṣa eaten on the fifth (lunar day) of the dark (fortnight) would remove the poison.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND NINETYEIGHT

The treatment for the poison due to snakes such as the gonasa and others

Fire-god said:

1. O Vasiṣṭha! Listen to me! I shall describe to you the treatment for (the poison due to) gonasa and others (snakes). Hṛṁh, hṛṁh oblations to the stainless bird! A charmer would remove the poison due to mandalin (a kind of snake) by eating the betel leaf (after consecrating it with the above mantra).

2. Garlic, asafoetida, kuṣṭha, agni, dried ginger, pepper and long pepper (are remedies) for poison. The milk of snuhi and clarified butter from the cow would remove the poison due to a class of snakes called ahi, when it is drunk for a fortnight.

3. When one is bitten by (the snake called) rājila, he should drink pepper with rock-salt. Clarified butter, honey and cow-dung water (taken) with puritaki would remove poison.

4-6a. Thick milk and clarified butter together with pepper should be drunk with honey. Pepper, dried ginger and long pepper, the feather of a peacock, the bone of a cat and the hair of a mongoose in equal parts should be powdered after
soaking with the milk of a goat. Fumigation (with the above powder) would remove all kinds of poisons. The hair (of mongoose), nirgunḍi, and kola with same proportion of garlic burnt with the leaf of (the plant) muni and boiled with sour gruel (could be used for fumigation to remove poison).

6b-7. Rats are of sixteen kinds. One should drink the juice of cotton together with oil (to remove the poison due to them). The phalini flower will also destroy the affliction due to the rats. Eating of molasses together with nāgara would also remove that poison and the loss of appetite.

8-11a. There are twenty ways of treating (this poison). The group (of remedies) for removing the poison due to a spider etc.: padmaka, pārta, kuśṭha, uṣira, sandal, nirgunḍi, sārikā and selu should be made into a paste and applied for affliction due to the spider. The leaves of guṇjā, nirgunḍi and ankola, dried ginger, the two kinds of turmeric, the kernel of karaniya made into a paste and applied (would also remedy that poison). Listen to me! (I shall describe) the remedy that would remove the poison due to a scorpion. A paste of the mixture of maṇjiṣṭhā, sandal, dried ginger, pepper, long pepper and the flowers of śirśa and the white water-lily used in four ways such as ointment and the like would remove (the poison due to) a scorpion.

11b-12. Om obeisance to Lord Rudra! Civi! Civi! Cut! cut! Kiri! kiri! Break! Cut with the sword! Pierce with the spear! Severe with the disc! Om hṛum phat. When (the herb) is given after the repetition of the (above) mantra, it would destroy the poison due to an ass and others (animals). The three myrobalans, uṣira, musta water, māṃsi, padmaka and sandal being drunk together with goat’s milk would remove the poison due to an ass and others (animals).

13. Five parts of śirśa (together with) dried ginger, pepper and long pepper would remove the venom due to the centipedes. The neck of the śirśa and its kernel would remove the poison due to a rat.

14-15. The dried ginger, pepper and long pepper together with clarified butter and made into a paste with the root of long pepper would remove the poison. (A mixture of) alkali, dried ginger, pepper and long pepper, vaca, asafoetida, vidanga,
rocksalt, ambasṭha, atibala and kuṣṭha would remove the venom due to all insects. A combination of ṣaṭi, dried ginger, pepper and long pepper, treacle and milk would remove the poison due to a dog.

16-18. Oṁ, obeisance to Subhadrā! Oṁ, obeisance to Suprabhā! You have been told by Brahmā that you should absorb the seed of the herbs which are taken by people without (adhering to) the instructions. After having made obeisance to them and the herbs later, the barley grains should be scattered with the fist. This mantra should be repeated ten times. Then obeisance should be made to that herb. (One should say) “I lift you, the one looking upwards” and take the herb.

19-21. “Obeisance to the lion among men (eminent man)! Obeisance to the cowherd! O Kṛṣṇa! You yourself have admitted that one (who takes your name) will not be defeated in battle”. May the medicine be successful for me! Obeisance to Vaidūrya mother! O Gaurī! Protect me therein from all venoms! O Gāndhāri! O Cāṇḍāli! O Mātaṅgini! Oblations to the illusive energy of Hari! This is the mantra to be used before (administering) the medicine in the case of a vegetable poison. If there is burning sensation after taking a medicine, the patient should be made to drink cold water together with the root of lotus; ghee and honey should be taken if poison persists even then.

CHAPTER TWO HUNDRED AND NINETYNINE

Recipes for the diseases of infants

Fire-god said:

1-2. I shall describe the science relating to (the diseases of) children that would destroy the evil spirits that seize children. The Pāpinī (sinister) spirit possesses the child on the day of its birth. (The child) would have trembling of the body. It would not take food and would toss about its neck. These are the reactions due to the above (spirit). It would also take away the strength of the mothers.
3-5. (An offering consisting) of fish, meat, wine, edibles, perfumes, garlands, incense and lamps (should be made to appease this spirit). The child should be besmeared with a paste of dhātaki (a variety of myrobalan), lodhra, mañjīṣṭhā, tāla and sandal. The spirit known as Bhīṣanī (frightful) (would seize the child) on the second night after birth. An incense made of mahisākṣa (should be offered to drive the spirit). A child possessed by this spirit would have cough with hard breathing and writhing of the body again and again. The body of the child should be besmeared with urine of goat together with black pepper, apāmārga and sandal. An incense made of cow’s horn, tooth and hair should be offered. Offering (should be made to the spirit) as before.

6-7. The spirit Ghaṇṭālī (possesses) on the third (night after the birth). (The affected child) would cry repeatedly, yawn and make sounds. It would exhibit fear with convulsions. It would not have appetite. The child should be besmeared with a paste of keśara (filament of a flower), aṅjana, the tooth of a cow and tusk of an elephant together with goat’s milk. An incense consisting of nakharājī and leaves of bilva should be offered. Offering (should be made to the spirit) as before.

8-9. The spirit (known as) Kākolī (possesses) on the fourth (night after the birth). (The child would have) convulsion, loss of appetite, frothing, and would turn to look in the different directions. An offering (to the spirit is made) with kulmāsa and spirituous liquor. The body should be besmeared with (the scrapings of) the tusk of an elephant, the slough of a serpent and the urine of a horse. Fumigation should be done with (the vapours of) turmeric (and) neem leaves fanned by the hair.

10-11a. (The monstress) Hamsādhikā (would affect the child) on the fifth (night). It is marked by yawning, breathing upwards and clenched fists. Offering (to the spirit) should be made with fish and the like. The child should be besmeared with (the scrapings) of goat’s horn, balā, lodhra, śilā and tāla.

11b-12. The monstress Phaṭkārī (takes possession of the child) on the sixth (night). (The child would exhibit) fear, fainting and excessive weeping. It would not take food and have convulsions. The offering (is made to the spirit) with fish
etc. (The body of the child) is besmeared with turmeric, guggulu, kuṣṭha, (scrapings of) tusk of an elephant etc., and fumigation is done with the same materials.

13-19a. A child is afflicted by (the spirit) Mūktaṅgī on the seventh (night). There would be foul smell, yawning, exhaustion, excessive weeping and coughing. Fumigation should be done with tiger’s nails. (The body of the child) should be besmeared with vacā, cow-dung and cow’s urine. The spirit (known as) Śrīdaṇḍī (afflicts the child) on the eighth (night). (The afflicted child) would look in different directions, move the tongue, cough and weep. Offering is done as before with fish etc. Fumigation and besmearing is done with hīṅgula, vacā, mustard and garlic. The frightful monstress Urdhvagrāhī (affects the child on the ninth day). (The affected child) would get agitated, have upward breathing and bite its clenched fist. Fumigation is done with red sandal, kuṣṭha etc. and the child is besmeared (with the same). Fumigation is done with the hair and nails of a monkey. The monstress Rodanī (affects the child) on the tenth day. (The affected child) would always weep, (the body) would smell sweet and turn blue. Fumigation is done with neem (to appease) the terrible monster. (The body) should be besmeared with turmeric and the juice of sarja (a kind of tree). Offering should be made outside (the house) with fried grains, kulmāsa and barley. Fumigation and other such acts should be done in this manner until the thirteenth day (after the birth).

19b-22a. The terrible monster (known as) Pūtanā takes possession of the child that is one month old. The (afflicted child) weeps like a crow and breathes heavily. The body would have the smell of urine. The eyelids would close. Such a child should be bathed with cow’s urine. Fumigation is done with the tooth of a cow. (The spirit should be appeased) by giving yellow clothes, red garland, red sandal, oil lamp, three kinds of sweet porridge, wine, sesamum and four kinds of flesh. Such an offering should be made for seven days at the foot of a karaṇja (tree) in the direction of Yama (south).

22b-23. (The female spirit) Mukiṭa (would seize the child) two months old. The body (of the child) would get cold. There would be vomiting, parching of the mouth and other
things. Flowers, incense, cloth, sweet cake, cooked rice, lamps and (things) of black colour (should be offered). Camphor and fumigation (also should be shown).

24-26a. (The female spirit) Gomukhī (possesses) in the third (month). (The afflicted child) would sleep (long), pass urine and motion (in excess) and cry. (This spirit should be appeased) by offering barley, priyaṅgu, meat, kulmaśa (a kind of grain), vegetables, cooked rice and milk in the morning. Fumigation (should be made) with clarified butter at midday. (The child) should be bathed with (water mixed) with (the leaves of) five kinds (of trees). (The spirit) Piṅgalā would afflict (the child) in the fourth month. The body (of the child) would become chill, have putrid smell and be parched. That child would certainly die.

26b-27a. (The spirit) Lalānā (would seize the child) in the fifth (month). It would make the body weary. Blood would come out through the mouth. The stools (would be) yellow in colour. Offerings of fish and the like are made in the south (in order to appease that spirit).

27b-28a. (The spirit) Paṅkajā (would seize the child) in the sixth month. (Crying and modified) voice (are) the symptoms. Offering (to appease the spirit) is done with fish, meat, wine, cooked things, flowers and perfume and the like.

28b-29. (The monstress) Nirāhārā (would seize the child) in the seventh (month). (The child would have) fetid smell and the like and have toothache. Offering (is made) with flour-paste, wine and meat. (The name of the spirit that would seize the child) in the eighth (month) is Yamunā. There would be boils, desiccation and the like. One should not do medical treatment for that.

30. (The spirit) Kumbhakarṇī (afflicts the child) in the ninth (month). The afflicted child would have fever and would vomit and cry. Offering should be made with meat, kulmaśa (a kind of grain) and wine and the like in the north-eastern (direction).

31. (The demoness) Tāpasi (seizes the child) in the tenth (month). The symptoms are: the child would refrain from (taking) food and have the eyes closed. (The monstress is
appeased) with (the tying of) a bell, (fixing) a banner and offering of wine and meat together with flour, on a level (ground).

32-33a. The demoness Rākṣasī (afflicts the child) in the eleventh (month). It would affect the eyes etc. There is no medical treatment (for that). (The spirit) Caṃcalā (would seize the child) in the twelfth (month). There would be heavy breathing. (The child) would exhibit fear etc.

33b-34a. (The monstress) Yātanā (would affect the child) in the second year (after birth). (The child would have) pain and would cry. Offering is made with sesamum, meat, wine etc. As before bathing and other (practices are done).

34b-35. (The monstress) Rodani (would seize the child) in the third (year). (The body would) tremble. (The child) would cry and pass urine (mixed) with blood. Cooked rice mixed with molasses and sesamum cake (should be offered) to the image (of the monster) made of sesamum flour. It is bathed with sesamum. Fumigation (should be done) with five varieties of leaves and the bark of rājaphala (a kind of fruit).

36. (The monstress) Caṭakā (would afflict the child) in the fourth (year). There would be swelling (in the body), fever and exhaustion in all the limbs. Offering (to appease is made) with fish, meat, wine, etc. Bathing and fumigation (are also done).

37-38a. (The monstress) Caṃcalā (would seize the child) in the fifth year. (The child would have) fever, fear and exhaustion in the limbs. Offering (is done) with meat, cooked rice and the like. Fumigation (is made) with the horn of a ram. Bathing should be done with the water in which the leaves of the trees—palaśa, udumbara, asvattha, vata and bīlva (have been put).

38b-39a. (The monstress) Dhāvanī (would afflict the child) in the sixth year. (The child would have) desiccation, insipidity and exhaustion in the body. Offering should be made for seven days. Fumigation and bathing with bhūrīgaka is done before that.

39b-40a. (The spirit) Yamunā (would possess the child) in the seventh year. (The child would have) vomiting, speech-
lessness, fits of laughter and weeping. Offering consists of meat, sweet gruel, wine and the like. (Then there should be) bathing and fumigation.

40b-41a. (The spirit) Jātadevā (would possess the child) in the eighth year. (The child) would not take food and would cry. Offering (should be done) with kṛṣara (sesamum and rice mixed), cakes and curd etc. Bathing and fumigation (should also be done).

41b-42a. (The monstress) Kālā (would seize the child) in the ninth year. (The child would make) sound by beating the arms, would roar and (exhibit) fear. The offering would be with sesamum mixed with rice, cakes, flours, kulmāsa (a kind of grain) and sweet gruel.

42b-44. (The spirit) Kalahāṃsi (would possess the child) in the tenth year. There would be burning sensation, emaciation and fever. Offering should be made with the paulika cake (a kind of cake) and curd rice for five nights. Fumigation with nimba and besmearing with kṛṣṭha (is done to appease the spirit). The possessive spirit Devadūti (seizes the child) in the eleventh (year). (The child would utter) harsh words. Offering and smearing (are done) as before. (The spirit) Balikā (would possess the child) in the twelfth (year). There would be hard breathing. The offering and smearing (are) as before.

45-47. (The spirit) Vāyavi (would possess the child) in the thirteenth (year). The face and external organs would become emaciated. Offering (consists of) red-coloured cooked rice, incense, flowers etc. (The child) should be bathed with the five (kinds of) leaves. Fumigation (should be done) with rāji, and neem leaves. (The monstress) Yakṣīṇī (would possess the child) in the fourteenth (year). Colic, fever and burning sensation are the effects (due to this spirit). Offering (is made) with meat, eatables etc. Bathing for the appeasement (of the spirit is done) as before. (The spirit) Muṇḍikā (would possess) in the fifteenth (year). Discharge of blood is due to this (spirit). The mother (of the child) should always be attended to in such cases.

48. Vānarī (would seize the child) in the sixteenth (year). The child would fall to the ground, sleep always and have
fever (under the influence). Offering (is made) with sweet gruel etc. for three nights. Bathing etc. (are done as before).

49. Gandhavati (would possess the child) in the seventeenth (year). The body (of the child) would tremble and the child would cry much. Offering (should be made) with kulmāśa etc. Bathing, fumigation and smearing etc. (are done) as before. (The spirit) Pūtanā exercises her influence during the day and Sukumārikā during the whole year.

50. Oṁ! Obeisance to all the mothers. Consume! Consume the affliction that has got united with the child! Attack! Attack! Explode! Explode! Agitate! Agitate! Seize! Seize! Manifest! Manifest! Thus Siddharūpa announces. Take away! Take away! Make the female or male child or the woman or man free from defect from the seizure of all the spirits. O Cāmunḍā! Obeisance to the goddess! Hṛūṁ! Hṛūṁ! Hṛūṁ! Drive away (all) the evil spirits! Hṛūṁ! Let the possessors go elsewhere by another way. (Lord) Rudra makes known (thus). This mantra would yield the desired result in all the cases of seizure of children by evil spirits.

51. Oṁ! Obeisance to the Goddess! O Cāmunḍā! Make the male or female child free. Accept the offering! Be victorious! Be victorious! Dwell! Dwell! This mantra that protects is read in all instances of offering being made. May (the gods) Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Śiva, Skanda, Gaurī, Lakṣmī, and the Ganas protect and release the child from the affliction due to burning sensation.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED

Description of the mantras which remove the baneful influences of planets

Fire-god said:

1-2. I shall describe the mantras which would remove the baneful influences of planets and crush the planets. There would be five kinds of insanity due to joy, desire, fear, grief,
eating food items which have contrary qualities and are not clean, and the wrath of the preceptor and gods etc. These are caused by the three defects (of deranged humours), their combined effect and external things.

3-5a. On account of the wrath of Rudra, the gods became the several planets. The planets would seize men and women at a river, ocean, tank etc., mountain, garden, bridge, confluence of a river, a deserted house, an entrance to a hole and a lonely tree in (any one of the following states): one who has slept, a pregnant woman, a woman about to commence her menstrual period, and one who bathes naked after the menstrual period.

5b-8. Disrespect, enmity of men, obstacles, change of fortune, transgression of the codes of conduct relating to the gods and elders, fall from a mountain, tree and the like, brushing aside the hair on the head frequently (are the symptoms of evil influences of the planets). A person possessed (by planets) would weep, dance, have red eyes, be deformed, be agitated, suffer from pain and burning sensation, be affected by hunger and thirst and have headache. A person possessed by a planet that desires for a victim would request (saying) “Give! Give!” A man possessed by a planet having excessive desire would desire for women, garlands, enjoyment and bath.

9. (The mantras) of the great Sudarśana (disc of lord Viṣṇu) that pervades the sky, twig-shaped nose, Pātālanāra-simha and the like and the Cāṇḍīmantras are capable of subduing the planets.

10-12a. One should worship the lord who is fond of pṛśnīt (an aquatic plant), asafoetida, vacā and bunch of śīrṣā (flowers). (One should worship Him) who is the supreme person, who bears the noose, goad, rosary, human skull, who holds (in his hand) a club with the skull, lotus and mace, who has four faces, who is on a lotus amidst inner and outer staffs with skull in the orb of the Sun together with the Sun and others should be worshipped and water for sipping should be offered to the Sun who has risen.

12b. Venus (should be contemplated) as having the form of breath, poison, fire, a brahmin, pitcher and hṛlekhā (knowledge ?).
13-14. "Bhūr bhūvah svaḥ" for Arka (Sun) and Jālinī the family mace (are used in the worship of Sun). The Moon (is contemplated as) seated on the lotus, having light red complexion, wearing red clothes, spreading radiance in the universe, lofty, holding lotuses in his two hands and having all the limbs adorned. Moreover the heart and other limbs (should be contemplated) as red, benevolent, conferring boons and holding lotuses.

15-16. Mars (should be contemplated) as resembling a multitude of lightning, wearing white clothes, beautiful and light red in complexion. Mercury (is also contemplated) in the same manner. Jupiter (is contemplated) as yellow, Venus as white, Saturn as dark, Rāhu (the ascending node) as resembling charcoal and Ketu (the descending node) as grey. They (should be contemplated as having) the left hand (placed) on the left thigh and the right hand (placed) on the right thigh and knee.

17. The first letters of their names would be their bijas (the mystical letter forming the essential part of the mantra). The two hands are purified with (the mantra of) the weapon. Then (the letters) should be assigned on (the fingers) beginning with the thumb, the palm, the two eyes as pervading the heart and the other (limbs).

18. One should contemplate the life force and carry out the location of the three basic letters (of the mantra) in the limbs. The vessel should be sprinkled with (the mantra of) the weapon and filled with water with the basic (mantra).

19. After having placed incense, flowers, unbroken rice and dūrvā (grass), the offering should be sanctified. One should then sprinkle that (water) on oneself as well as on the materials for worship.

20. Then one should contemplate the absolute, pure, essence (that confers) supreme happiness. One should then (mentally) set up the seat etc. in the centre and in the different directions with (the mantras of) the heart.

21. One should (offer the worship) on the seat and in the (main) directions as well as the intermediate directions with (the mantra of) the heart. (One should contemplate) the heart-lotus on the seat and the eight female energies in the filaments.
22-23. One should worship (the goddesses) Diptā, Sūkhmā, Jayā, Bhadrikā, Vibhūti, Vimalā, Asighatavidyutā and Sarvatomukhi and the seat with the syllables vāṁ, vim, vum, vūṁ, vem, vaim, vom, vaum and vam and then worship the Sun with (the syllable) vah. Oh! One who practises austerities! Water for drinking and other formalities should be offered with (the mantra of) the heart and the six accessories after having invoked.

24. The two ‘kha’ syllables, the two danḍins, the two Candaś, the marrow together with the teeth, māṁsadiṅghā (?), jaradavāyu (?) etc. of the Sun that confer all the things (should be worshipped) with (the mantra of) the heart.

25. The heart etc. should be worshipped in the south-east, north-east, south-west and north-west, extending up to the pericarps with their respective mantras. The weapon with the eye (should be worshipped) in the forepart of the directions.

26. (The planets) Moon, Mercury, Jupiter and Venus should be worshipped in the directions commencing with the east. In the case of diseases caused by planets, one should do the sternutatory, unguent etc. with āśni, asafoetida, vacā, cakra (?), śīrṣa and garlic together with the goat’s urine.

27. One pala each of pātha, mustard, vacā, śigru, rock-salt and dried ginger, pepper and long pepper ground well and mixed with an āḍhaka (a unit of measure) of goat’s milk and the ghee prepared. (The use of this) would remove all (the defects due to) the planets.

28. One should drink the water mixed with the vṛṣṭika (a herb), ali, phali, kuṣṭha, the salts and śāṅgaka. It would destroy epilepsy.

29-31. One should drink the decoction made with vidārti, kuṣa, kāsa and sugarcane mixed with milk and boiled (as a remedy for the same). (Similarly) clarified butter boiled with essence of yaṣṭika, droma and kūmānda (would be a remedy). So also ghee of the five things got from a cow (would do good). Listen to me about the combination that would remove the fever. “Oṃ! Let us know (the nature of) the deity that has the weapon to reduce (all the things) to ashes. Let us meditate on (that god having) single tusk. May fever make us meditate
on that." One should lick (a paste made of) long pepper, pepper, turmeric, rāsnā, oil extracted from grapes and molasses.

32. One who has breathing trouble should lick bhāngi (hemp) and yasti with honey and clarified butter. Or else one should lick pāthā, tiktā, kaṇā and bhāngi with honey.

33. Dhātri, visvātā, kṛṣṇa, musta, kharjūra, māgadhi and pivara (?) would destroy hiccup. The three should be licked with honey.

34. One should drink the juice of kāmali, jira, māṇḍāki, turmeric and dhātri (one of the myrobalan). Long pepper, pepper dried ginger, padmaka, the three myrobals, viḍānga, devadāru, and the powdered rāsnā taken in equal proportions would remedy cough.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND ONE

The mode of worship of Sun

Fire-god said:

1-3. "Śayyā (bed), Daṇḍi, Ajeśa, Pāvaka, the four-faced" is the basic (mantra) that accomplishes all the desires. It is said for the sake of (gaining) power. The (bija (basic)) should contain long vowels. The constituents should be evenly set in the bija (mantras). Each collection of mantras would have five parts such as the khāta, sādhu, viṣa, bindu and sakala. Each one has a separate great merit. The gana (should be worshipped as follows) : "Obeisance for the sake of victory. (Obeisance) to the one having one tusk! To the elephant-faced! One having big belly and hands!" These five constituents are common for all (the mantras). One would accomplish his desires by repeating a lakh times.

4-6. "(Obeisance) to the head of the ganaś (goblins), to the leader of the ganaś, to the lord of the ganaś, and to the one who sports with the ganaś." The image should be worshipped as before with the five constituents in the directions which are the petals. (Obeisance) to one having curved trunk, single tusk, big belly and elephant face. (Obeisance) to the dreadful one, to
the lord of obstacles and to the one of grey complexion. One should worship these (gods), the lords of the worlds, in the (main) directions and the intermediary directions by (showing) the mudrā formed by inserting the two thumbs in between the (two) middle and index fingers of the clenched fists. One should (contemplate the god) as having four hands filled with modakas (ball-shaped sweets) and bearing a club, noose and goad. One should worship (the god) as holding the eatables with his tusk, as red in complexion, as holding a lotus and as surrounded by a noose and goad especially on the fourth day (of a lunar fortnight) and in general everyday.

7. (If the oblation) is done with the root of white arka (plant) it would confer all desires. (If it is done) with sesamum, ghee, rice, curd, honey and clarified butter one would get prosperity and power to subdue.

8. Lord Mārtandaabhairava (the Sun god) (who) affects the skin, blood, breath and the vital energy, (who is) the cause of virtue, material prosperity, desires and emancipation (and who is) covered by the orb (is contemplated).

9-13a. (He should be worshipped such that) His five forms (are represented by) the short (syllables) and the limbs by the long (syllables). The Sun-god possessing a red complexion as the sindūra (vermilion) and having His consort on His left (is worshipped) in the north-east. Mars, Saturn, Rāhu, Ketu and others (are worshipped) in the angular points south-east etc. After having bathed as laid down, the Sun-god should be worshipped preceded by (the offer of) respectful water. At the end of the worship, a garland of flowers should be offered to the dreadful effulgent (form) in the north-east. Lighted (lamp), rocanā (the yellow orpiment got from the cow), saffron, water, red perfume and unbroken (rice), sprout (of the paddy), bamboo-seed, barley, śāli (a kind of paddy), ṣyāmaka (a kind of grain), sesamum and mustard together with japa flower should be offered. Then they (should be collected) in the vessels and should be held on the head. Then one should prostrate bending his knees on the ground and dedicate the offering to the Sun-god.

13b-14a. After having worshipped the planets with nine pitchers sanctified with their respective mystic syllables, one
should bathe for appeasing the planets. After the repetition of the syllable sacred to Sun-god, one will get all (the things).

14b-15. The *bijam mantras* together with *agni, doṣa* and *bindu*, that confer victory in battle, should be located from head to foot. The basic (*mantra*) is worshipped by (showing) the *mudrā*. After having performed the assignment on the different limbs, one has to imagine himself as the Sun-god.

16-18. (The Sun-god) should be contemplated as yellow-coloured in incantations practised for death as well as for stupefying the senses, as white for the sake of satisfaction, as black for achieving the destruction of the enemy and as the colour of the rain-bow for stupefaction. One who is always bent on doing ablation, repetition (of the *mantras*), contemplation, worship and oblation would become resplendent, invincible, prosperous and gain victory in the ocean etc. After having located (the *mantra* of the Sun) in the betel etc. and after repetition (of the *mantra*), one should offer *uśraka* (the fragrant root of a plant). A person who touches with the hand in which the *bijā* (*mantra*) has been located would certainly charm (the person).

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWO

Description of different kinds of potential mantras and herbs

*Fire-god said:*

1. The chief *mantra*, that is (known as) Sarasvatī (Goddess of learning), that which has the letters that have the directive at the end of the oblation (is) "For speech, deed, united to the side, white, and for the sake of the child is deemed to be the ship."

2. A person who repeats this collection of *mantra* a lakh times would become a wise man. The supreme (*mantra*) of the heart for Indra is "Atri, together with fire, vāma, eye and dot (*bindu")."

3-4a. (Lord) Indra having yellow complexion and wielding the thunderbolt and lotus should be invoked and worshipped.
Ten lakh oblations of clarified butter and sesame should be made and (the image) should be anointed with that. (By doing so) a king would recover the lost kingdom and progeny etc.

4b-6. (Lord Śiva) is known to be with the female energy Hṛllekhā and possesses doṣa, agni, daṇḍi and daṇḍa. After having propitiated (Lord)Śiva, one should repeat (the mantra of) the female energy on the eighth and fourteenth (lunar days). (The goddess should be contemplated) as bearing disc, noose and goad and as showing protection and conferring boons. One would gain prosperity, poetic skill and progeny by doing oblation etc. “Om, hrim, omi obeisance to (god of) desire, to the one beneficial to all the beings, to the one who stupefies all the beings, to the one who makes the hearts of all the beings glow. Come and take a place in myself (repeated).” Om. One would subjugate the entire world by the repetition of this mantra etc.

7-9. “Om, hrim, Oh ! Cāmuṇḍā ! Burn(?) and cook (?) such and such a person. You bring him under my control (repeated). Ṭha ! Ṭha ! This mantra of (goddess) Cāmuṇḍā that would subjugate has been told. The genital parts should be washed with the decoction of the three myrobalans. (It) would subjugate (the partner). Similarly a wife should smear with aśva-gandhā, barley, turmeric and comphor (with the same results). (So also) long pepper, eight grains of rice, twenty numbers of pepper, besmeared with the juice of bṛhati would keep (the husband) under one’s control till death. Besmeared with the root of kaṭira and trikaṭu mixed with honey would also have similar results.

10-12a. A paste made of sandal wood, fruit, karabhā, māgadhi, madhuka and honey besmeared would bring prosperity to the couple. The juice of kadamba and honey mixed with sugar and besmeared in the vagina (will also yield the same fruit). Pulverized sahadevi, mahālakṣmi, putrajīvi and kṛtānjali thrown on the head would subjugate the world.

12b-13. One prastha (a measure) of the decoction of the three myrobalans, two kudāvas (a measure) each of the juice of bhrṅga, hema and doṣa and an equal (measure) of honey got from musk-rat boiled with ghee (and mixed with) turmeric dried in the shade, when besmeared, would delight (the couple).
14. One who drinks daily vidārī, uccaṭā, māṣa and pulverized sugar mixed well with milk could cohabit with a hundred women.

15-16a. A woman, who desires to have a son, should drink the roots of aśvattha (holy fig), bamboo, darbha (grass), vaiṣṇavi, śri, dūrā (grass) and asvagandha mixed with powdered gulma, māṣa, sesameum, vṛkhi paddy together with milk.

16b-17a. The fibrous roots of kaunti and lakṣmi, dhātri, vajra, lodhra and the sprouts of vata (banyan tree) should be drunk by a woman during her menstrual period together with clarified butter and milk for the sake of (getting) a son.

17b-18. A woman who desires to have a son should drink milk together with the root of śri (bilva) and the shoots of banyan. Alternatively she may use the juice of bilva, shoots of banyan and devi as sternutatory or she may drink the root of bilva and lotus ground with milk together with the root of holy fig tree in abundance.

19. Tarala with milk and the fruits and the tender branches of the cotton tree, the tip of the apāmārga flower and fresh buffalow milk would have the same effect.

20-21. Four kinds of compounds are said (to be beneficial) for the sake of progeny by using the three kinds of herbs. Sugar, utpala flower, aksa, lodhra, sandal and sārivā should be given with rice-water for abortion. One may alternatively lick fried rice, yasti, sugar and grapes together with honey and clarified butter.

22. A woman would have comfortable delivery if a paste of the fibrous roots of aṭaṛuṣa, lāṅgalt and kākamāci are besmeared separately below the navel.

23-26. One should drink (the juice of) red or white japa flower in the case of discharge of blood and semen. The eating of the filament, the root of brhat, gopi, yasti, grass and utpala mixed with goat’s milk and oil would make the hair grow. When the hairs begin to fall, this would make them firm.

A prastha (measure) of emblic myrobalan and the juice of bhṛṅga and an ādhaka (measure) of oil and milk (boiled with) oil and aṅjana fruits is beneficial for hairs, eyes and head.

If khārt (quantity) of turmeric, the bark of rājaṣvksa, root of tamarind, rock-salt and lodhraka are drunk it would remove
quickly the swelling of the belly of the cow. "Om, obeisance to the lord having three eyes! Subdue! Subdue! culu (2), mili (2)! Break (2)! One that regards the cattle! In the disc! Hrūm phat! You protect the cattle in this village (2)! Appease (2)! (The lord) having bell-like ear, the leader of a host of army, the warrior is said to be having great strength. May that lord of the world who is capable of destroying the epidemic diseases protect me. These mantras in the form of a verse which are capable of protecting the cows should be located.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THREE

The propitiation of the letters on one’s limbs to ward off evil

Fire-god said:

1. It is known to be the period of pāusṣa when the Moon reaches the natal asterism and the Sun occupies the seventh house. One has to examine one’s breath then.

2. The throat and the lips move from their position, the nose (becomes) bent and the tongue (becomes) black. That person would live for seven days only.

3-4a. (The following is the mantra for warding off this evil consequence): "taro meso miṣum danti naro dirgha ghanā rasah, to kruddholka, maholka, virolka, ulka and sahasrolka." This is the eight-syllabled mantra of (Lord) Viṣṇu.

4b-7. These should be located in the folds of the eight fingers beginning with the little finger. The eight letters of (the eight) asterisms represented by the eight folds beginning with the first fold on the middle finger should be located in order on the head. The asterism (is located) on the index finger, the lagnas on the thumb as also with the middle finger. In the same way the letters of the asterisms etc. are located on the palm and thumb. (The letters of the mantras should be contemplated) —as red, white, tawny, green, golden and (the remaining) three as white. These letters having the above colours and set with their true state should be located in order at the heart, face, eyes, head, feet, palate, private organ and hands.
8. After having assigned the principal letters on the hand and body, the location of the constituent parts. The location on (the image of) the deity should be done as in the case of oneself except (that) the hand (is not involved).

9-12. The letters located in the different places such as the heart should be worshipped with incense and flowers. The virtues etc., fire etc. and unrighteousness etc. are located respectively on the body, seat and the lotus. The three orbs of the Sun, Moon and Fire pervading the filaments (of the lotus) should be located in order with their distinctions. The qualities sattva etc. and the female energies Vimalā, Utkarṣiṇī, Jñāna, Kriyā, Yogā, Prahvī, Satyā and Īśānānugrahā (are to be located) in the filaments therein in order. After having worshipped the yogic seat at the centre, (Lord) Hari should be invoked and worshipped.

13. The five practices of worship such as water for washing the feet, arghya (respectful offering), water for sipping, yellow clothes and ornament are all offered with the principal (mantra).

14. The images of (gods) Vāsudeva (a form of Viṣṇu) and others, namely four¹, should be worshipped in the four (principal) directions. (Goddesses) Śrī (Lakṣmī), Sarasvatī, Rati and Śānti should be worshipped in the intermediary directions.

15. The conch, disc, mace, lotus, pestle, sword, tāṅga (bow) and the garland of wild flowers should duly be worshipped in the principal and intermediary directions.

16. After having worshipped Tārkṣya (eagle vehicle of Lord Viṣṇu) outside in front (of the Lord), Viṣvaksena and Someśa should be worshipped outside at the centre and Indra and other attendant gods outside the enclosure. One would obtain everything by this worship.

¹ Vāsudeva, Pradyumna, Aniruddha and Saṅkarṣaṇa.
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FOUR

The mode of worship of Śiva with the mantra of five syllables

Fire-god said:

1. "Mēṣaḥ, Samyānā, viṣam, sājyaṃ, asti, dirghodakaṃ, rasah." This is the mantra sacred to (Lord) Śiva that confers good.

2-4. After having worshipped the asterisms etc. well one would gain the status of the celestials etc. (Lord) Śiva, the embodiment of knowledge, the Supreme Brahman and the highest intellect (should be contemplated) in one's heart. Brahmā and other gods are born of His power and are only His manifestations. The letters of the mantra (gave rise) to the five elements, their respective mantras and their respective matter. Prāṇa and other (vital) winds, the five organs of sense and five organs of action, everything are (the manifestation of) Brahman, namely, the five letters. Similarly we have the embodiment of eight syllables.

5-8. The place of initiation sanctified by the mantra should be washed with (the five things got from a cow). The essential articles for worship (should be taken to the place) and (Lord) Śiva should be worshipped as laid down. After having practised the location of the mantras on the mind image and the limbs, rice should be scattered. Then the porridge should be made ready and the milk boiled. Then it should be divided into three parts. One part should be dedicated (to the god), the second should be given as oblation and the third should be taken by the preceptor and the pupil. After rinsing the mouth and accomplishing the transformation, the preceptor should give the disciple a twig of the kṣtra tree for (cleansing) the teeth after sanctifying it with (the mantra of) the heart. After having cleaned the teeth and washed the mouth, he should throw it on the ground.

9-11. It (indicates) good if it falls in the northern or western direction from the east and bad otherwise. The wise (preceptor) should make it dry by tying the tuft of the disciple who has come and make him lie down on the sacrificial altar on the bed of darbha (grass) together with himself. At dawn the pupil should meet the preceptor who has slept well and let him know (the dream he had). Then worship (should be done)
supreme principle. Then the preceptor should regenerate the pupil by the process of (tantric) creation. After having located (the supreme principle) in the pupil, he must be led circumambulating. After bringing him to the western door, (the preceptor) should make (the pupil) throw (the flowers) held in the folded hands. On whatever place the flowers fall that name should first be given (to the pupil).

36b-41. By the side of the sacrificial shed a pit should be dug up in such a way that it has the navel and girdle. The fire of Lord Śiva should be generated and worshipped. It should again be worshipped by the pupil. (Then the preceptor) should absorb the pupil in his own self after contemplation by means of the process of dissolution. Again regenerating him, darbha (grass) consecrated with the repetition of mantras should be placed in his hand. The principles such as the earth and others should be offered to the fire with (the repetition of the mantras of) the heart and others. After having offered hundred oblations for each one (of the principles), one should do oblation with the principal (mantra) of (the principle of) sky. After having offered the final oblation, one should offer eight oblations with (the mantra of) the weapon. (After having performed) the rite of atonement for the sake of purification, it should be completed with the residual offering. Then a consecrated pitcher should be worshipped well and the pupil bathed on the seat. (Then the preceptor) should instruct the pupil in the ceremonial practice and (the pupil) should pay respect to his preceptor by (offering) gold and other things. Thus the initiation into the five syllables relating to (god) Viṣṇu and others has been narrated.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIVE

The fiftyfive names of (Lord) Viṣṇu and their greatness

Fire-god said:

1. A person who repeats the fiftyfive names of (Lord) Viṣṇu would get the fruits of repeating the mantras and the
worship (with these names) at the sacred places (of pilgrimage) would have undiminishing fruits.

2. Puṇḍarikākṣa (lotus-eyed) (should be contemplated) at Puṣkara, Gadādhara (one who wields the club) at Gayā, Rāghava (Rāma as the scion of Rāghu) at Citrakūṭa and Daityasūdana (the destroyer of the demons) at Prabhāsa.

3. Similarly Jaya (the victor) (should be worshipped) at Jayantī, Jayanta (one who gains victory) at Hastināpura, Vārāha (manifestation as boar) at Vardhamāna and Cakrapāṇi (one who holds the disc) at Kāśmīra.

4. (One should contemplate) Janārdana (one that removes the difficulties of people) at Kubjāmra, Keśava at Mathurā, Hṛṣīkeśa (lord of the senses) at Kubjāmra and Jaṭādhara (one who bears the matted hair) at the place where the Ganges enters the plains.

5. (One should contemplate) Mahāyoga (one who ardently practises Yoga) at Śālagrāma, Hari at the Govardhana mountain, Caturbāhu (one having four arms) at Piṇḍāraka and Śaṅkhin (the holder of the conch) at Śaṅkhadvāra.

6. Vāmana (the Dwarf manifestation) (is worshipped) at Kurukṣetra, Trivikrama (the conqueror of three worlds) at (the river) Yamunā, Viśveśvara (the lord of the universe) at (the river) Śoṇā and Kapila (propounder of the Śaṅkhya philosophy) on (the banks of) the eastern ocean.

7. (One should repeat the name of) Viṣṇu (on the shore of) the great ocean at the confluence of the river Ganges with the ocean, Vanamāla (the bearer of garland of wild flowers) at Kiṣkindhā and Deva (lord) at Raivatakā.

8. Mahāyoga (the great yoga) (is contemplated) at Kāśi, Ripuṇḍaya (the conqueror of enemies) at Virajā, Ajita (the unconquered) at Viśākhayūpa and Lokabhāvana (the creator of the world) at Nepāla.

9. One should know that (one has to repeat the name) Krṣṇa at Dvārakā, Madhusūdana (the slayer of the demon Madhu) at Mandara (mountain) and Ripuhara (the destroyer of enemies) at Lokākula and one should think of Hari at Śālagrāma.

10. (One should repeat the name) Puruṣa (the Supreme person) at Puruṣavaṭa, Jagatprabhu (the lord of the world) at
Vimala, Ananta (the endless) at the Saindhava forest and Śāṅgadhārin (the wielder of the bow) at Daṇḍaka (forest).

11. Śauri (the hero) (should be contemplated) at the whirlpool (called) Utpala, Śriyāḥpati (the consort of Lakṣmī) at (the river) Narmadā, Dāmodara (having the enlarged belly) at Raivataka and Jalaśāyin (one who reclines on the water) at Nandā.

12. It is known that (one has to repeat the name) Gopiśvara on (the shore of) the Sindhu ocean, Acyuta (unswerving) at Māhendra (hill), Devadeveśa (the lord of gods) at the Sahya mountain and Vaikuṇṭha (one who has united the earth etc.), at the Māgadha forest.

13. (One should repeat the name) Sarvapāpahara (Destroyer of all sins) at the Vindhya (mountain) and Puruṣottama (the foremost among men) in (the region of) Oḍhra. One should know the universal soul (residing) in one's heart. The recitation (of these names) confers enjoyment and emancipation.

14. (One has to contemplate) the Vaiśravana (the great fig tree) at every fig tree, (Lord) Śiva (the auspicious) at every quadrangle, Rāma on every mountain and Madhusūdana (the slayer of the demon Madhu) everywhere.

15. One who contemplates the Supreme spirit on the earth and sky, the god having eagle in the banner in (the great sage) Vasiṣṭha and Vāsudeva (epithet of Kṛṣṇa) everywhere would get enjoyment and emancipation.

16-17. One would obtain all (the desires) by the repetition of these names of (Lord) Viśṇu. The (performance of) ancestral rites, (offering) gifts, repetition (of the names of god) and (offering of waters of) libation in all these sacred places will have manifold (benefits). One would become verily the Brahman after one's death. One who reads or listens to this (will become) free from impurity and will obtain heaven.
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIX

Description of the mantras to be repeated
to ward off evil incantations etc.

Fire-god said:

1-2. Stupefaction, dissension, ruin, destruction, delusion, death and illness are known to be (due to) evil incantations. Listen to me! I shall describe the means of getting relief from them. Ṫṃ obeisance to lord Unmattarudra (intoxicated Rudra)! Stupefy (2)! Make (him) wander (2)! Threaten such and such a person! Hurl him aloft (2) with anger! Ḥūṃ, phat, tha (2): One should do oblation with honey with the twigs of dhūrta in the funeral fire after repeating (this mantra) three lakh times at night in a Cremation ground. (By this) the enemy would be wandering always.

3. (After having made) a black image (of the enemy) with red chalk, if it is pierced in the throat or heart with golden needles after repeating (the above mantra), the enemy would die.

4. One who wants to destroy (his enemy) should throw pulverized tail of the ass, funeral ash, brahmāṇḍī and markaṭī on the house or head of the person.

5-7a. (I shall describe the method of worshipping the disc in the thousand-petalled lotus.) "Bṛghu, ether, glowing fire, bṛghu, fire armour, phat" (is for the armour). One (should) thus (worship) in the thousand-petalled (lotus). "Ḥūṃ, phat, to the disc (ācakrāya) oblations" is for the heart, (ḥūṃ phat) to the disc (vicakrāya) for the head, (ḥūṃ phat) to the disc (śikhācakra) of the tuft (for the tuft), (ḥūṃ phat) to the disc (vicakra) for the eye, (ḥūṃ phat) to the disc (saṅcakra) for the weapon and (ḥūṃ phat) to the glowing disc (jvalācakra) as before for the bow. (By worshipping) the disc in this way (with the constituent mantras), it would remove all the afflictions due to evil incantations and accomplish all (the desires). The letters of this (mantra) should be located on the head, eyes, mouth, heart, genital organ and feet.

1. The number 2 after the words indicates repetition of the respective words.
7b-9a. (One should contemplate the Sudarśana disc personified as) seated on the lotus, resembling the colour of fire, having large teeth and four hands, (holding) the conch, disc, mace, lotus, brush and goad in his hand, holding the bow, having reddish brown hair and eye and pervading the three worlds by means of the spokes (of the disc). If the navel is pierced with its fire, the diseases and (afflictions due to) the planets would get destroyed.

9b-10. One should draw two discs. They should be yellow. They should be bearing the disc. The spokes should be red and their inter-spaces black. The periphery should be white and the outer line black. The inter-space should bear the colour of silver.

11-12. After having brought a pitcher with water first, it should be placed in front and the Sudarśana (disc of Lord Viṣṇu) placed there. One should offer oblation in order to the disc on the south. Clarified butter, twigs of apāmārga, unbroken rice, sesamum, mustard, sweet gruel and clarified butter from the cow (are the materials that are offered). (One should do oblation) one thousand and eight times.

13-14. The remaining (part) of each one of the materials after the oblation should be put into the pitcher by one who knows the mode of performance. A ball made of these offerings should be placed in the pitcher. (By doing so) (Lord) Viṣṇu and others would enter that (pitcher). Then offering should be made in the south with the residual water with (the repetition of) the mantra "Obeisance to the retinue of (Lord) Viṣṇu who appease everything. May they accept. Obeisance for peace!"

15-16a. (It may also be performed differently). One may inscribe (the disc) on a plank, place a vessel filled with milk and perform oblation with the twigs of palāsa and kśtra (trees) in the different directions engaging brahmins. These two oblations done after offering appropriate fees (to the priests) would destroy the spirits, etc.

16b-17. Evil incantations would be removed by writing on leaves soaked in cow’s milk and without leaves. (One has to do oblation) with dūrvā (grass) for (prolonging) life, with lotus flowers for prosperity, with (twigs of) udumbara for progeny,
with clarified butter at the cow-shed for cattle and with (the twigs) of all the trees for intellect.

18. Oṁ, kṣauṁ! Obeisance to Lord Narasiṁha! To one who has the flames as the garland, one who has effulgent teeth, one who has fiery eyes, one who is the annihilator of all the demons! To one who destroys all the spirits! To one who destroys all fevers! Burn (2)! Cook (2)! Protect (2)! Hūṁ phaṭ! This mantra of Narasiṁha (the man-lion manifestation of Lord Viṣṇu) removes all sins. Its repetition would remove evil incantations, (evil influences of malignant) planets, epidemics, poisons and diseases. One could arrest the force of water and fire (by rubbing over the body) the ground marrow of a frog (after the repetition of the above mantra).

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVEN

Description of the mantras that would stupefy the three worlds

Fire-god said:

1-2. I shall describe to you the mantra that would stupefy the three worlds and would accomplish the four ends of human life. Oṁ, śrīṁ, hṛīṁ, hṛūṁ, oṁ obeisance! Oh! Foremost among men! The prototype of foremost among men! The abode of Lakṣmī (goddess of fortune)! One who agitates the entire world! One who opens the hearts of all women! One who intoxicates the three worlds! Burn (2), Make glow (2), Dry up (2), Kill (2), Arrest (2), Melt (2), Attract (2) the hearts of the maidens of the heaven and earth! Oh! The most fortunate one! The giver of all good fortunes! Conferer of desires! (You) kill such and such a person (repeated)! You pierce with the disc, mace, sword and all the weapons! Cover (2) with the noose! Strike with the goad (2)! Hasten (2)! Why do you tarry till accomplishing my desire! Hūṁ, phaṭ, obeisance. Oṁ, foremost among men! One, who intoxicates the three worlds! Hūṁ, phaṭ! Obeisance to the heart!
Attract ! Oh ! One of great strength ! Hūṃ, phaṭ to the weapon! Oh ! lord of the three worlds ! You kill, pierce, and bring under my control the hearts of all men ! Hūṃ, phaṭ ! To the eyes ! Oh ! stupefier of the three worlds ! The lord of the sense organs ! Incomparable one ! One who attracts the hearts of all women ! (You) come (2) ! Obeisance ! The location of the auxiliary (mantra) pervading the limbs and eyes should also be done as described for the principal (mantra). After having worshipped, repeating (the mantra) fifty times and anointing one thousand times, (the preceptor) should prepare porridge in the divine fire and do hundred oblations in the fire in the pit.

3-4. Curd, ghee, milk, porridge, clarified butter and boiled milk (should be offered) separately. Twelve oblations (should be made) with (the repetition of) the principal (mantra). (Then one should offer) unbroken rice and sesamum a thousand times and barley, the three sweet things (sugar, honey and clarified butter), flower, fruit, curd and twigs a hundred times. After having offered the final oblation, (the preceptor) should make the disciple drink the porridge together with ghee.

5-6a. After having fed the brahmans, the priest should be pleased (by paying the fee). Then the mantra would get accomplished. After having bathed and rinsed (the mouth) as laid down, (the votary) should go to the sacrificial chamber restraining his speech. He should sit in the padmāsana (sitting posture with legs crossed) and dry up his body as laid down.

6b-11. The sudarśana (disc) that destroys the demons and removes the obstacles in the (different) directions should be placed at first. Then one should contemplate the principal (syllable) 'yam' that is at the centre of the navel. It is of the nature of the terrific wind. It is conceived as absolving all the sins from the body. After having contemplated the principal (syllable) raṃ situated in the lotus of the heart, one should burn with (its) flames spreading above, below and across in the head. Then after contemplation the body should be flooded with the ambrosia that flows out and in through the path of susumna (one of the arteries in the body). After purifying the body thus, one should do prāṇāyāma (regulated breathing) three
times with the mantra. Then the energy should be located in
the hand, head, face, genital organ, throat, heart, belly, the
(different) directions and everywhere in the body. The supreme
lord (endowed) with all (good) characteristics should then
be contemplated in the lotus of the heart after being invoked
from the orb of the Sun through the aperture in the crown of
the head with (the repetition of) the tāra (mantra) : “We know!
To the stupefer of the three worlds! May we meditate on the
lord of remembrance, may (Lord) Viṣṇu lead us to reflect on
that.”

12. After (having done) the soul-worship, (the votary)
should sprinkle (water) on the materials for worship and the
pure vessel. After having done the soul-worship as laid down,
the deity should be worshipped on the ground.

13-17. (Lord) Viṣṇu should be contemplated as riding the
eagle and as remaining on a lotus over a seat composed of
one’s deeds etc. (He should be imagined as) having beautiful
limbs, having attained the beauty appropriate to the youthful
age, the reddish-brown eyes reeling with intoxication, lofty,
agitated by love, adorned with divine flowers, dress and un-
guents, having a smiling face, being surrounded by many
attendants of different kinds, as compassionate to the beings,
beautiful, having the lustre of one thousand sons, bearing the
five weapons, one who has attained the desires as known from
his eyes, having two or four hands, one surrounded by divine
women and one who is affectionately looking at the face of his
consort. One should worship Him as bearing the disc, conch,
bow, sword, mace, pestle, goad and noose commencing with
invocation and ending with the request to leave.

18-19. (Goddess) Śrī (consort of Viṣṇu) (should be ima-
gined) as seated on the left thigh and shank (of the lord) and
as embracing the consort with her hand. (She should be con-
templated) as having a well-built body, holding a lotus and
chowrie in her hand and endowed with the Śrīvatsa (mark)
and Kaustubha (gem). One should worship (Lord) Hari
(Viṣṇu) as wearing a garland, yellow garment and as endow-
ed with the disc etc. Om! Sudarśana! The great lord of discs!
Dreadful for the wicked! Cut (2)! Tear (2)! Devour mighty
spells (2)! Eat (2)! Catch hold of the spirits (2)! Hūm phat
om oblations to one who remains in the water! One as sharp as the sword! Cut (2)! Obeisance to the sword! To the bow with the arrow hūṁ, phat! "We contemplate the union of the elements. We meditate on the four-fold principles. May that Brahman lead our mind (to meditate) on that." Oh! Fire that destroys the world (Saṁvartaka)! The embodiment of breath! You recoil (2)! Hūṁ phat oblations! O! Noose! Bind (2)! Attack (2)! Hūṁ phat! One has to worship these weapons on the hands with their respective mantras.

20-22. One has to worship Tārksya (the eagle vehicle of Viṣṇu) in the pericarp (with the mantra) "Om! To the king of birds! Hūṁ phat!" Then the presiding deities of the limbs (should be worshipped) as laid down. The female energies (should be worshipped) at the places of Indra and others and Tārksya and others as holding chowries. Indra and others should be worshipped first and the energies at the end by the priest. Lakṣmī and Sarasvatī (should be contemplated) as yellow, Rati, Prīti and Jayā as white, Kīrti and Kānti as white, and Tuṣṭi and Puṣṭi as black (and worshipped) as laid down. (One should worship) upto the guardian deities of the worlds and then Lord Viṣṇu for the sake of gaining one's desired fruits.

23. After having repeated the mantra, one should contemplate (the lord), offer oblation and do consecration. Om, śrīm, kṛṇ, hṛṇ, hūṁ obeisance to Viṣṇu, the stupa-sier of the three worlds! As before one would get all his desires by doing this worship.

24-26. One should please the sammohani (vidyā) (the stupa-sier) daily with water and flowers. The principal part of the Trailokyamohana (the stupa-sier of the three worlds) is "Brahmā, Śakra (Indra), Śrī (Lakṣmī) and Daṇḍī." One would get long life by repeating (the mantra) three lakhs times and offering oblations (with the mantra) one lakh times with bilva (leaves), clarified butter, rice, fruits, perfumes and dāva (grass). (Lord Viṣṇu) being pleased with anointment, oblations and other acts with that (vidyā) would confer all the-desired things. Om, obeisance to Lord Varāha (Boar manifestation of Lord Viṣṇu)! To the lord of (the three worlds) Bhūḥ, Bhuvaḥ, Svāḥ! Grant me the suzerainty over the earth! Oblation to the heart! One
would get long life and kingdom by repeating (the above mantra) ten thousand times daily together with the pañaṅga¹ (five parts of the body).

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND EIGHT

On the mode of worship of goddess Lakṣmi and others that confer immense benefits

Fire-god said:

1. (The mantras) “chest, together with fire, beautiful woman, Daṇḍi, Śrīḥ (goddess of fortune)” gives all prosperity. Obeisance! O! greatest fortune! O! great prosperity! O! One having a lustre as the powerful lightning! Obeisance to the goddess of prosperity! O! Victorious! O! Mighty one! Bind (2)! Obeisance! Hūṁ! One having a big body! One holding the lotus in the hand! Hūṁ phat! Obeisance to Śrī! To Śrī, phat, obeisance to Śrī! To Śrī, the conferer of prosperity! Obeisance! Oblations śri-phat!

2. The constituent parts of this (mantra) are said to be nine. One should resort to one of these. It would confer prosperity if repeated three lakh or one lakh times with rosary beads or lotus (seeds).

3-4. One would get wealth by worshipping Śrī in the temple of Śrī or Viṣṇu. One has to do oblation with rice soaked in clarified butter in the fire (kindled with) khāḍira (twigs). (By this) the king would be under one’s control. One will have more and more growth and prosperity. Bathing done with mustard would destroy the (evil propensities of) planets.

5-9a. Oblations done with the bilva (leave) (with the repetition of) Śrī (mantra), would increase one’s wealth. Then one has to contemplate the mansion of Indra having four doors in his heart. One should contemplate (the energy) Balākā,

1. The obeisance conveyed by the touching of the ground simultaneously with the two arms, the two knees, the head, chest and the eyes.
short and black sporting (and guarding) at the eastern entrance
with the two hands held upwards holding white lotus flowers,
(the energy) Vanamālini of white (complexion) at the southern
entrance with the hands held upwards holding red lotus flowers,
Vibhiśikā, the messenger of Śrī, having green (complexion),
at the western entrance, with Her two hands lifted upwards
holding white lotus (flower). Śāṅkarī (should be contemplated)
at the northern entrance.

9b-14a. One should contemplate Vāsudeva, Saṅkaraṇa,
Pradyumna and Aniruddha in the lotus petals carrying conch,
disc and mace. They are of the colours of collyrium, milk, saffron
and gold and wear good dress. One should contemplate the
elephants such as Guggulu, Kuruṇṭaka, Damaka and Salila
(having) the colour of silver, in the different directions such as
south-east etc. in the petals. (These elephants should be imagi-
ned as) bearing golden pots. Śrī should be contemplated in the
pericarp as having four arms, two of which are raised upwards
and hold lotus. (She is also conceived as having the following
characteristics) : golden coloured conferring protection and boons
with the right and left hands respectively, besmeared with white
sandal, wearing a silvery garland and carrying the weapon. One
would get all (his desires) by contemplating as above and wor-
shiping Her together with Her attendants.

14b-15a. (The worshipper of Śrī) should not wear the
drona and lotus flowers and the leaf of the bilva tree on the head.
So also salt and embolic myrobalan are prohibited on the eighth
and twelfth days (of the lunar fortnight) in order.

15b-16. Taking (only) sweet porridge one should repeat
the trisūkta1 and anoint (goddess) Śrī with (the repetition of)
that (hymn). One has to contemplate mentally as doing the
rites beginning with the invocation and ending with the dismiss-
sal and worship Śrī. One would gain prosperity by doing obla-
tions separately with (the twigs of) bilva, clarified butter, lotus
and sweet porridge.

17-24. "Poison, buffalo, the destructive fire at the end of
the world, Rudra, the effulgence, the two bakas." "Om hrim the
slayer of the great buffalo-demon! Tham! Thāḥ!" (is the

1. Designation of the hymn hiranyavarṇāṁ hariṇīḥ 'RVkh. 5.87.1a.
principal mantra (of Durgā, a form of the consort of Śiva).

"Obeisance to the lioness (that killed) the buffalo (demon). O ! Enemy of the (buffalo) demon ! Make (the enemy) whirl round (2) ! Hūṁ, phaṭ, tha tham ! Make the buffalo (demon) neigh (2) ! Hūṁ slay the buffalo (2) ! O ! Goddess ! Hūṁ ! The slayer of the buffalo (demon) ! Phaṭ !" This is said to be the Durgāhṛdaya (the heart of Durgā). Together with its accessories it is capable of accomplishing all the things. One should worship that goddess and the seat in the middle of the accessories thus: Om hṛm ! O ! Durgā ! Durgā ! Protector ! and oblations". Obeisance to Durgā ! Obeisance to Varavarṇī, Āryā, Kanakaprabhā, Kṛttikā, Abhayapradā, Kanyakā and Surūpā (excellent complexion, noble, golden-coloured, offering protection, virgin and having good form respectively). These forms (of the goddess) should be worshipped on the leaves with the principal syllables in due order. (One should also worship the weapons) disc, conch, mace, sword, bow and arrow. One should worship this (goddess) Durgā, the tranquil one in the world, on the eighth day (of the lunar fortnight). This association with Durgā would increase longevity, prosperity, favour of master and victory. Oblation and sesamum with (the repetition of) the Īśāna mantra after the worship (of Durgā) would enable one to gain control. (Oblation made) with lotuses would ensure victory. One desirous of appeasement (should do oblation) with dūrvā (grass). One will gain strength (by performing oblation) with (the twigs of) Palāśa. Death, dissension etc. would be caused (by offering oblation) with the wings of the crow. This mantra would remove all the difficulties such as evil influences due to malignant planets, evil incantations and fear etc. "Om ! O ! Durgā ! Protector ! Oblations !" This (mantra) together with the accessories of the victorious Durgā is said to be able to protect. One should contemplate the goddess as black, having three eyes, four arms, bearing the conch, disc, lotus, spike, sword and trident and as having a wrathful form. One would gain victory in battle. One (who wants to have) victory of sword etc. should worship Her. "Om obeisance to the Goddess having a garland of flames, surrounded by flocks of female eagles move ! Oblations to the protector !" One should repeat this mantra for (gaining victory in) battle. The combatant would conquer his enemies.
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND NINE

*The mode of worship of Tvaritā*

_Fire-god said:_

1. I shall describe (to you) the constituent _mantras_ (relating to the worship) of Tvaritā that is capable of conferring enjoyment and emancipation. "_Om_ obeisance to the the supportive energy! _Oṃ hrim puru_ (2) obeisance to great lion! _Oṃ_ obeisance to the lotus! _Oṃ hrim hrūm khecachekṣah! Strīm oṃ hrūm kṣaṁ hrūm phat!_ Obeisance to (goddess) Tvaritā! _Khe ca_ obeisance to the heart! _Cache_ obeisance to the head! _Chekṣah_ obeisance to the tuft! _Kṣatri_[r] obeisance to the armour! _Strīm hrūm_ obeisance to the eye! _Hrūm khe_ obeisance to the weapon _phaṭ!_ " _Oṃ! We known the Tvaritā-vidyā. Let us meditate on the tūrṇavidyā. May the goddess prompt us (to meditate) on her._"

(This is the Gāyatrī mantra for the goddess Tvaritā.) Obeisance to the conferrer of prosperity. Obeisance to the syllable _hrūm_! Obeisance to the syllable _oṁ_! _Oṃ khec_ obeisance to the heart! Obeisance to the one who is able to fly! _Oṃ_ obeisance to the fierce one! _Kṣa strīm_ obeisance to the armour! Obeisance to the cutter! Obeisance to the thrower! Obeisance to the woman of the form of the syllable _hrūm_! To the one that gives safety! To the victor! To the conqueror! Protect! _Oṃ_ be firm by the command of (Goddess) Tvaritā _vāṣṭ_! This is the incantation known as Tvaritā. It is known as Totalā and Tūrṇā.

2-3a. After having touched the head, forehead, throat, heart, navel, genital organ, thighs, knees, shanks and feet (with the _mantra_) in order and thus complete the location spread over the whole body.

3b-6. The goddess has to be contemplated as having the form of daughter of the mountain, huntress, supreme, conferring boons and protection, having the peacock feather on the head, having the tender sprout as the upper garment, seated on lion throne together with an umbrella of peacock plumes, the dark-complexioned goddess wearing the garland of wild flowers, having the brahmin class of serpents as the ear ornament, the _kṣatriya_(class of serpents) as the bracelets, the _valiṭya_ class of serpents as the girdle

1. The goddess conferring benefits quickly.
and *ṛṣala* (fourth class) class of serpents as the anklets. Then one should repeat that mantra ten lakh times.

7. In days of yore the lord took the form of a hunter and (the goddess) Gaurī also (took a) similar (form). One has to repeat (the mantra of the Goddess). One has to contemplate and worship Her for accomplishing all (the things) and for the removal of poison etc.

8-10. (Goddess Tvaritā) has to be worshipped in a lion seat (having) eight (petals). Gāyatrī, Prāṇītā, *humākāra* etc. and Phāṭkārī are located in the petals in the east etc. in front of the Goddess with the principal mantra of Śrī. Their colours and weapons are as those of the guardians of the quarters. Phāṭkārī should bear the bow. Jayā and Vijayā should be worshipped as at the entrance holding golden staff. Kiṅkarā, Barbarī, Muṇḍī and Lagudī (should be worshipped) outside them.

11-15. After having worshipped (them) thus, one has to accomplish (them) with materials. Oblation should be made in a sacrificial pit of the shape of the female organ of generation. One would gain gold (by doing oblation) with white grains, increasing prosperity with wheat, all accomplishments and the destruction of *tti* with barley and sesamum, insanity of the enemy with rosary seeds, death (of the enemy) with (the twigs of) silk cotton tree, gain of wealth and grains with rose apple, satisfaction (pleasure) with blue lotuses, abundant prosperity with red lotuses, great prosperity with *kunda* (a kind of jasmine), disturbance in the city with *mallikā* (a kind of jasmine), goodwill of people with white lilies, birth of a son with *aśoka* (a kind of flower), an auspicious and beautiful woman with *pāṭalā* (trumpet flower), long life with mango (flowers), fortune with sesamum, prosperity with *bilva*, wealth with *campaka* (flowers), desired (object) with *madhuka* (flowers) and omniscience with *bilva* (leaves).

16-17. One would get all things by the repetition (of the mantra) three lakh times or by doing oblation or contemplation or worship. After having worshipped with the *gāyatri* in a circle, (one should offer) twenty-five oblations. A person who offers three hundred oblations with leaves with the principal (mantra)

---

1. These are six: excessive rain, drought, locusts, rats, parrots and foreign invasions. See *Apte SD* p. 96.
would become initiated. After having taken the five things got from a cow, one should take porridge. (This is the procedure) always.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TEN

The narration of the spell relating to Tvaritā

Fire-god said:

1-5. I shall describe (to you) the worship of Tvaritā by another method that would yield enjoyment and emancipation. One has to worship the Goddess in a diagram of the shape of a thunderbolt drawn with dust. One has to draw a lotus inside it. One has to contemplate the Goddess and draw quickly eight thunderbolts in the (main) directions and the intermediate directions and also draw pathway, entrance, ornamental arch and secondary decoration. (One has to worship the Goddess) as having eighteen hands and Her left shank placed on the lion. Two-fold fee should be offered at Her pedestal. (She should be worshipped) in the sacrificial pit in the form of the thunderbolt as being adored by serpents, and as holding the sword, disc, mace, spike, arrow and mace in the right hands and as conferring boons and as holding the bow, noose, arrow, bell, threatening posture of the first finger, conch, goad and thunder-bolt in the left hands and as offering protection.

6. If one worships this form, one’s enemy would die, one would win a kingdom with ease, gain long life, become the ruler of a kingdom and gain perfections such as supernatural powers.

7-8b. There are the seven nether regions below, which are as destructive as the destructive fire at the end of the world. The syllable Īōm and others denote (the space) beginning with the heaven and ending with the primordial egg. One has to whirl round water with (the repetition of) the syllable Īōm (and repeat) “Totalā, Tvaritā” then. (Then) one has to whirl round water with (the repetition of) the syllable ‘ta’ (and repeat) “Totalā, Tvaritā” then.
8c-18. I shall introduce the (method of writing the mantra). The group of vowels should be written on the ground. (The next group) would be the ‘ka’ group (belonging to) the palatal class. The third (letter) is (the letter belonging to) the tongue and palate. The fourth (letter) is (the letter belonging to) the palate and the tip of the tongue. The fifth (letter) is that of the tongue and teeth. The sixth one consists of eight letters. The seventh one is of mixed group of letters. (The eighth one consists of) the ša group of letters (known as) sibilants. The mantra should be constructed then. The first (basic syllable) should begin with the sixth vowel and end with last of the letters of ूष्मा (sibilants) together with bindu (the nasal sound marked by a dot). Then the second (letter) among the palatals is compounded with the eleventh vowel. Then the combination of the (letters belonging to) the tongue and palate would be the first simple (basic syllable). The second (letters) of the same (group of letters) should be compounded below. Then the first letter among the palatals should be compounded with the eleven vowels. Then the second letter among the sibilants is coupled from below. The second letter among the sibilants coupled with the sixteenth vowel should be compounded below with the first letter belonging to the union of the tongue and dental region. Then the second letter belonging to the mixed group should again be coupled below. Then the second letter among the sibilants combined with the fourth vowel and yoked with the first letter of the palatals should be coupled below. Then the last among the sibilants together with the bindu (the nasal sound) is coupled with the eleventh vowel. Then the letter formed by the union of the (two) lips is joined with the fifth vowel. Then the second of the palatals is joined with (the letter belonging to) the tip of the tongue. Then the first letter of the fifth group should be combined with half-vowel and thus the mantra is constructed. One should repeat (the above mantra coupling) with the syllable ॐ at the beginning and obeisance at the end. One has to add ‘oblation’ (at the end) in acts of offering oblation in fire. (The rite of location of the above mantra should be done as follows) : “ॐ, ह्रि, ह्रुि, ह्राक (let it permeate) the heart. हाम हाक (let it permeate) the head. ह्रिम, burn, burn would be (for) the tuft. हुलु, hulu is for the
armour, \textit{Hrūm}, \textit{śrīm}, \textit{kṣūm} is said to be the \textit{mantra} for the three eyes. \textit{Kṣauṃ}, \textit{haṃ}, \textit{khaṃ}, \textit{hūṃ}, \textit{phaṭ} is for the weapon. The secret auxiliaries are assigned before (the above location is done).

19-26. Listen to me! I shall describe the constituent parts of the \textit{mantra} relating to (the worship of Goddess) Tvaritā. The first two (letters in the \textit{mantra}) are said to be the heart. The third and fourth are said to be the head. The fifth and sixth are said to be the tuft and the seventh and eighth as the armour. The pupil (of the \textit{mantra}) would be the eye. It has the characteristic (of containing) nine and half letters. It is known to be (the \textit{mantra} of) Totalā (Tvaritā). Then (the worship of) Vajratuṇḍā (would be described). There are ten syllables in (Her worship). \textit{Kha}, \textit{kha}, \textit{hūṃ} (obeisance to) Vajratuṇḍā, the messenger of Indra. \textit{Khecari! Jvālin! Jvālā! kha! kha are the ten syllables for Jvālinī (glowing) Śabarī (huntress)! Bhīṣaṇī (frightening)! kha! kha! grow! are (the syllables) for Śabarī. \textit{Che! Chedani} (one that cuts)! Karālinī (terrible)! \textit{kha! kha! are for Karāli. Śravadravapalavani (one who floods the ear and the liquid)! kha kha (is for) the messenger Plavaṅgi for the sky. Strikālakāra (one who creates women and time)! Dhunāni (one who agitates)! is for Śvāsi (the Goddess possessing the swiftness of breath). Kṣepakṣa! Kapila! Harṣa (is for) the messenger called Kapila. \textit{Hrūm!} Tejovatī (one having lustre)! Raudrī (terrible one) and Mātaṅgi (huntress) (are for) the messenger of Rudra. \textit{Puṭe puṭe kha kha khaḍga} (to the sword) \textit{phaṭ} (for) Brahmadūtikā (messenger of Brahma). Ten syllables of (the \textit{mantra} of) Vaitālinī have to be discarded like the cloud and straw. (This is the method) for locating (the \textit{mantras} relating) to the heart and the like. A wise man should locate (the \textit{mantra} of) the eyes at the centre.

27-31. Beginning with the leg and ending with the head, beginning with the head and ending with the leg, and beginning with the navel, heart and neck and (ending) in the feet, knees, thighs and genital organ the location is done. The votary should contemplate the \textit{vajramandala} above and the basic beginning syllables above and below that and then the cow of the form of a moon that showers ambrosia as entering (the brain) through the aperture in the crown of the head. The votary should locate the first basic syllable (a) in the head, face, neck,
heart, navel, genital organ, thigh, knee, feet and (the fingers) such as the fore-finger again and again. One who visualises the body made up of the basic syllables as flanked above by the moon and the lotus below would not die. He would not suffer from diseases or fevers. One should locate the Goddess thus and worship Her repeating hundred and eight times.

32-41. I shall describe the postures such as the Prāṇītā and the like. (The postures called) Prāṇītās are known to be of five kinds. The two hands are interlocked and the thumbs are put over that. Then they are placed on the head, the two fore-fingers resting on the head. This is known to be the Prāṇītā. That is then brought to the region of the heart. The twice-born know (the Prāṇītā) to be an excellent one in which the little and middle (fingers) are turned upward and endowed with the basic syllables. When the tip of the thumb is placed beneath the middle finger and the fingers are mutually resting on the middle (part) of the fore-fingers, it is said to be the Bhedanī. This (mudrā) held in the navel region and the thumbs raised upwards is known as the great mudrā Karāli. The same located in the heart of the votary and the middle finger resting on the aperture on the head and raised upwards is said to be the Vajratuṇḍa. It should be placed on the vajradeśa (the part of the body known as vajra) and the wrist should be locked up by the two hands stretching the three fingers (of each hand); it is said to be the Vajramudrā. The postures such as Daṇḍa (club), Khadga (sword), Cakra (disc) and Gadā (mace) are known to have the (respective) shape. Three fingers (are stretched) and held upwards and (their bases) are touched by the thumb. It would be Trīśūla (trident posture). If the middle finger is held upwards it is said to be Śakti (spear). Thus there are twenty-eight postures of the hand such as Śara (arrow), Varada (bestowing boon), Cāpa (bow), Pāśa (noose), Bhāra (weight), Ghanṭā (bell), Śaṅkha (conch), Aṅkuśa (goad), Abhaya (offering protection) and Padmam (lotus) (having the respective shape). The five Prāṇītā mudrās such as Grāhaṇī (one that seizes), Mokṣaṇī (one that liberates), Vālīnī (one that sets fire to), Amṛtā (ambrosia), and Abhayā (that offers protection) should be employed in the worship and while offering oblation.
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND ELEVEN

The location of the basic mantras of Tvaritā and Her worship

Fire-god said:

1-8a. I shall describe the (rite of) initiation etc. after having located in a lotus (diagram) furnished with (a diagram of) lion and thunderbolt. (The Tvaritā-mantra for this is): “Hē hē, hūti, Vajradanta (one having the tooth like the thunder-bolt)!
puru, puru, lulu, roar, roar here! Obeisance to the lion seat!”
There should be four lines running across and vertical. A wise man should draw nine squares (formed by these lines). Only the squares in the directions should be taken and those in the in between directions should be destroyed. Outside the angular points of the chambers there should be eight outer lines. The outer line should be divided into two so that the middle horn of the vajra occupies the middle of the outside of the outer chamber. The outer line would be curved. A wise man should divide it into two. The central chamber would have a radiant lotus having yellow petals. One should draw the thunder-bolt and sword above (the lotus) with black dust. The outer square should be adorned with the sign of a thunder-bolt. The votary should add four signs of thunder-bolt at the entrance. (If it is done so) the centre of the lotus and the left line will be on the same line. The centre as well as the petals (should be made) red. Initiated women (should be worshipped) in this circle. (By this) one would conquer the kingdoms of others and recover (the lost) kingdom quickly.

8b-12a. O! Twice-born! The image (of the Goddess) illumined by the praṇava (syllable om) should be commissioned with the syllable hum. After repeating the basic syllable as if it had occupied the (regions of) the wind and sky, a person (should worship) it as the first one. One should worship it again in the pericarp. After having worshipped each one of the syllables from the beginning thus in the cyclic order, one should worship the subordinates of the mantra in the middle of the petals, Nirṛti in the south-east (corner), the eye at the centre, the weapons in the directions and Rakṣaṇa in the genital organ. Five offerings of oblations at the filaments on the left and right side should be worshipped with their respective mantras.
12b-18. The eight guardian deities of the world should be located outside the central circle. The respective names should be added to the last syllable of the agni mantra split by the sixth vowel and permeated by the fifteenth (letter). One should worship (the Goddess) in (the image of) the lion in the pericarp (of the lotus) with perfume and other things for prosperity. It should be surrounded by eight pitchers consecrated with (the repetition of the mantras) one hundred and eight times. After having repeated the (mūla) mantra eight thousand times and the subordinate mantra a tenth of that (number), one should offer the oblation in the fire-pit. (Then the fire) should be stirred with the fire mantra. The fire should be placed with (the mantra of) the heart. Then the Goddess should be contemplated as remaining at the centre of the fire. Then the oblations for the garbhādhāna¹, punsavana² and jātakarma³ are made. (The oblation) with (the mantra of) the heart (would be) one hundred (times). The fire should thus be generated at the centre of the fire-pit. The fire of the Goddess would glow with the final oblations made with the mantra. Then oblation should be made with the principal mantra a hundred times and a tenth of that with the subordinate (mantra). Then it should be dedicated to the Goddess. Then the disciple should be ushered in.

19-23a. After striking with (the repetition of the mantra of) the weapon, the secret subordinate (mantras) should be located in the disciple. The disciple should be bound with the subordinate (mantras) and then charged with the subordinate (mantras). Then the disciple should be made to throw a flower. He is then led to the sacrificial pit. One hundred oblations should be made with the principal mantra with barley, grains, sesamum and clarified butter. The first oblation (is intended for) the state of a plant, the next one for the state of reptiles (like the serpents), and (the subsequent oblations are) for the states of being a bird, animal and human beings, mortals, Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Rudra. The concluding oblation would be

1. Rite for impregnation.
2. Rite performed prior to the movement of the foetus for the sake of getting a male child.
3. Rite performed soon after the birth of a child.
at the end. The disciple would become initiated by a single
oblation. (The disciple) would have the authority in this way.
Listen to me! I shall hereafter describe (the way to gain)
liberation.

23b-30. The votary who remains steadfast at the feet of
Lord Sadāśiva (always benevolent) and on the Sumeru should
offer one thousand oblations for improper and proper acts
composed. That yogin will not be stained by dharma (righteous-
ness) and adharma (unrighteousness). He could attain the
supreme place of liberation from which he would not return.
Just as water poured into (larger quantity of) water becomes
merged as water, so also the mortal becomes one with (Lord)
Śiva. Consecration should be made with the pitchers. One would
gain victory, kingdom and all the things (by such a worship).
One should worship Kumāri and Brāhmaṇī (obviously the
divine mothers). Fees should be paid to the preceptors and others.
After having worshipped, one thousand oblations should be
offered everyday with sesamum or clarified butter. The prop-
itiated Goddess would confer the desired things, abundant
riches and anything else that is desired. (A person) who repeats
the mantra a lakh times would become the master of a treasure.
(A person) would get the kingdom by repeating (the mantra)
twice (that) and become a Yakṣīnī (a semi-divine being) by
repeating thrice (that). (A person) would get the position of
Brahmā (by the repetition) four times (that number) and then
gain the place of Viṣṇu. (A person who repeats it) six times
(that number) would gain great powers. (The person who
repeats it) one lakh times would get rid of his sin. The repetition
ten times would purify the body. (The repetition) a hundred
times (would confer) the fruits of bathing in the sacred water.

31-36. (Goddess) Śīgrā (Tvaritā) should be worshipped on a
cloth or in an image or on the altar. It is said that hundred,
thousand or ten thousand are the counts for the repetition (of
the mantra) or oblation (with that). After having repeated thus
as laid down one should offer oblation one lakh (times) with
the fat and flesh of a buffalo or goat or the body of a man.
After having done the oblation with sesamum, barley, fried
paddy, paddy, wheat, mango, śṛiṇhala (bilva) together with
clarified butter, one should practise austerities. Equipping him-
self with sword, bow, arrow and the like at midnight, (the votary) should dress himself with a single (piece of) cloth of varied colours or red or yellow or black or blue. He should worship the Goddess with the same (materials). Then the wise man should set out in the southern direction and offer the victim at the entrance with (the repetition of) the dūtīmantrā. (It should be done) at the entrances or a single tree or in the cremation ground. If it is done so a king would enjoy all pleasures and the entire earth.
THE
AGNI PURĀNA
PART IV

TRANSLATED AND ANNOTATED BY
N. GANGADHARAN

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS • DELHI
CONTENTS

CHAPTERS

312. The occasions for the use of the Tvaritā-mantra and the benefits 863
313. The mantras relating to the worship of different gods 865
314. Mantras relating to the worship of Goddess Tvaritā 868
315. Narration of mantras relating to paralysing, captivating etc. 871
316. Narration of different kinds of mantras 872
317. The different kinds of mantras of Śiva 873
318. The mode of worshipping Gaṇapati, accomplishing all things 876
319. Mode of worshipping Vāgîśvarī (Goddess of speech) 878
320. The different mystic diagrams 879
321. The appeasing rites relating to Aghorāstra 883
322. The appeasing rite employing the mantra of the weapon of Paśupati 885
323. The mantra of the weapons of Aghora and the six constituents 887
324. Appeasing rite for lord Śiva 891
325. The benefits of wearing the rosary beads and the counting of the formulae with them 894
326. Description of the mode of worshipping Goddess Gaurī for gaining enjoyment, emancipation etc. 896
327. The greatness of establishing a liṅga and worship with the accessories 899
328. The rules of prosody 901
329. An abridgement of rules of prosody relating to the Vedic metres 902
330. An abridgement of the rules of metres 902
331. Metres of different kinds 905
332. The metres of un-equal characteristics in the four quarters 908
333. Description of metres having equal characteristics in the alternate quarters 910
334. Description of metres having similar characteristics in the four quarters 911
335. The tabular representation of long and short vowels of different metres 915
336. Description of phonetics 915
337. Description of the characteristics of a kāvya 918
338. Description of the different types of drama 921
339. Description of the santiments, emotions, hero etc. 923
340. Description of diction and mode 927
341. Description of the actions and movements of the limbs 928
342. Definition of dramatic representation 930
343. Definition of the embellishment of words 933
344. Description of the embellishment of sense 939
345. The embellishments of sound and sense 942
346. Investigation into poetic excellences 944
347. Investigation into poetic blemishes 946
348. List of mono-syllabic words 950
349. The pratyāhāras and fundamental rules in grammar 953
350. The forms of completed euphonic combinations 954
351. Perfected forms of inflection in the nouns 957
352. Narration of the finished forms of the substantives in the feminine 966
353. The finished forms of substantives in the neuter 968
Contents

354. The relation between a noun and a verb in a sentence 970
355. Different kinds of compounds 973
356. The rules governing the formation of taddhīta (secondary nominal bases) 976
357. The formation of the primary nominal bases by adding primary affixes known as unādi, beginning with affix u 980
358. The completed form of the verbs after adding the conjugalational signs etc. 981
359. The finished forms after adding the kṛt affixes (primary affixes added to verbs) 985
360. The synonyms of group of words denoting the celestial region and the nether world 986
361. The indeclinables 996
362. Words having many meanings 1001
363. The words denoting earth, city, forest and herbs 1005
364. Words denoting men and four classes of men 1013
365. Words relating to the class of brahmins 1017
366. Words relating to kṣatriya, vaśyast and other classes 1018
367. The class of words dependent on the substantives for their genders 1024
368. Constant dissolution, occasional and total dissolution 1028
369. The description of absolute dissolution and the process of creation 1030
370. The constituent parts of a body 1034
371. The description of hells 1037
372. The major and minor religious observances (yama-s and nīyama-s) 1041
373. Description of āsanās (different physical postures) and control of breath 1044
374. Contemplation 1046
375. Fixing-up of the mind in the object of contemplation 1049
376. Deep meditation (samādhi) 1051
377. Knowledge of Brahma 1055
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>378.</td>
<td>Knowledge of Brahman</td>
<td>1057</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>379.</td>
<td>Knowledge of Brahman again</td>
<td>1059</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>380.</td>
<td>Knowledge of non-dual Brahman</td>
<td>1062</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>381.</td>
<td>The essence of the Bhagavadgītā</td>
<td>1068</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>382.</td>
<td>The Yamagītā</td>
<td>1073</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>383.</td>
<td>The glorification of the Agnipurāṇa</td>
<td>1077</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INDEX                                                        1085
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWELVE

The occasions for the use of the Tvaritā-mantra and the benefits

Fire-god said:

1-3. I shall describe the application of the (Tvaritā) Vidyā that would bring about success in matters pertaining to dharma and fulfil worldly desires. One who knows the mantra divided and spread over nine squares in the regular and reverse order as a whole and divided in combination with karnā-vikarna(?) and then by their parts combined in the different triangular forms together with the image of the Goddess would know the mantras that confer success as well as the manifold external applications.

4-10. The mantras are manifold in different scriptures. It is difficult to find (the description of) their application therein. The first would be long. It is not described in the early hours of the morning. (The mantras) having a single letter, two letters and three letters would be applied. (The mystic diagram) should be divided by four lines each drawn horizontally and vertically. Thus there would be nine chambers. These (letters) should be established in the central region clockwise and then the order is split. One who finds the order by means of combination of the order that votary would have all the desired things in his folded hands. The three worlds would be at his feet. He would get the earth consisting of nine sections. The votary should write the principle of Śiva all around on the skull or on a rag (got) from the cremation ground after he has come out. The name should then be written on it at the centre or on the pericarp. It should then be fumigated with the burning charcoal of khādira (tree). Then a piece of birch-bark should be held under the feet. (By this process) one would be able to bring under his control the entire universe together with the movable and immovable things in seven days.

11-12. (Otherwise) the name (of the enemy) should be written inside a thunderbolt (shaped) diagram drawn inside (a circle
having) twelve spokes sanctified with (the principle of) Sadāśiva ('always auspicious'). (Alternatively) (the name should be written) on a wall, or a plank or a stone slab with turmeric. There would be paralysis of the face, the arrest of movement and the arrest (of the movement) of the army.

13-17. A wiseman should write (the name of the adversary) with poison and blood inside a diagram of a club in the middle of a hexagon on a skull in the cremation ground and add (the principle of) the Goddess. This would kill the enemy struck in the cremation ground in no time. It will also ruin the kingdom. The name of the enemy should be written on a disc. The Goddess should be invoked on the blades of the disc. The enemy would be destroyed by means of his name. A person should write the principal letter (of the mantra) of Tārksya in the middle part of the sword. Then the name of the enemy should be written with the ashes (collected) from the cremation ground. One would be able to win a country. One should strike with the ashes of a dead person. (The mantra of) Śiva should be used in creating desension, division and death. The Tāraka and Netra (mantras) should be employed in propitiatory and nourishing (rites).

18-21. This is the application (known as) dahanādi (capable of) captivating even Śākinī (an attendant of Goddess Durgā). (The diagram) having the Vārunī (mantra) at the centre and endowed with Vakratunḍa (bent tusk) would no doubt destroy the diseases such as leprosy and the like. Repeating the Karāli (mantra) set up (as spreading) from the middle and ending with the northern direction would guard one’s own amulet. The same should be coupled with the principle of Śiva and directed against the opponent. Then it should be located in (the directions) beginning with the west. This would destroy sufferings due to fever. (If the location is done) commencing with the north and ending with the middle, it would cause heaviness in the body. (If it is done) beginning with the east and ending with the middle, it would make (the body) light in a moment.

22-25. After having written this on the bhūrja leaf (with resin) endowed with the marks of thunderbolt, one should add the principal letters of the mantra. This would offer protection to the bodies etc. If it is encircled by engraved gold, this amulet
would annihilate death. The same worn (on the body) would (remove) obstacles, sins and subdue enemies. (It) would (also) confer good fortune and longevity. No doubt, it would give victory in gambling and battle even if the army of Indra (is to be fought against). This amulet is one like the (gem) cintāmaṇi and would confer progeny on barren women. One would be able to conquer other kingdoms, (recover one's own) kingdom and gain sovereignty over the earth. By repeating (the syllables) phat, strīm, kṣe, hūṁ a lakh (number of times), one would gain control over the yaksas (semi-divine beings) and others.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTEEN

The mantras relating to the worship of different gods

Fire-god said:

1-2. I shall describe the mode of worshipping (lord) Vināyaka (the lord of obstacles). One should first worship the energy of the pedestal. One should worship the eight (things) such as the virtue and the like on the stem. The pericarp, filaments etc. (of a lotus) and a lotus representing the three qualities (should be worshipped). Then (the Goddesses) Jvalini, Nandā, Suyasa, Ugrā, Tejovati and Vindhyavāsinī should be worshipped.

3-6. (The different) forms of Gaṇapati should then be worshipped (as follows) : "Victory to gaṇa' would be for the heart. (Obeisance) to one having single tusk that is strong (is) for the head. (Obeisance) to the one having immovable ears (is) for the tuft. (Obeisance) to the elephant-faced (is) for the armour. The assignment should end with 'hūṁ phat'. (Then the following) eight (forms of Gaṇapati should be worshipped): Mahodara (big-bellied), Danḍahasta (one that holds the club in the hand), Jaya (victorious), Gaṇādhipa (lord of the Gaṇas), Gaṇanāyaka (leader of the Gaṇas), Gaṇeśvara (lord of the Gaṇas), Vakratuṇḍa (one having bent trunk) and Ekadanta (one having single tusk) should be worshipped in the east (and other directions); one that is fierce, Lambodara (big-bellied) "Gajāvaktra (having
elephant face), Vikaṭanāmā (known as dreadful) and Vighna-
nāśana (the destroyer of obstacles) should be worshipped in the
east (adding the syllable) hūṁ, Dhūmravarna (grey-coloured),
Mahendra and others (should be worshipped) outside (the
diagram). This is the mode of worshipping the lord of obsta-
cles.

7-12. I shall describe the mode of worshipping (Goddess)
Tripurā. (One should worship first) Asitāṅga (black-coloured
one), Ruru, Caṇḍa (wrathful), Krodha (angry one), Unmatta
(intoxicated), Kapāli (one wielding the human skull), Bhiṣaṇa
(the dreadful one), Saṃhāra (the destroyer) and Bhairava
(the terrible one) in order. (The Goddesses) Brāhmaṇī, Hrasyā,
Bhairava, Brahmāṇī, Saṃmukhā and Dirghā (should be
worshipped). The four celebates—Samayaputra, Yoginīputra,
Siddhaputra and Kulaputra should be worshipped in
(the angular points such as) the south-east and others. Hetuka,
Kṣetrapāla, Tripurānta, Dvitiyaka, Agnivetāla, Agnijihva,
Karāli, Kāmalocana, Ekapāda and Bhīmākṣa should be
meditated as the seat of the pretas and worshipped with (the
(mantras) āim and kṣem. Goddess Tripurā, seated on a lotus seat,
holding a book and offering protection (with the right hand)
and a garland and conferring boons with the left hand (should
be worshipped with) the two (mantras) āim, and om. The loca-
tion in the heart etc. is also done with the principal (mantra).
It is a perfect net (that yields) the desired (result).

13-16. The name (of the enemy) should be written at the
centre of (a diagram of) an eight-petalled (lotus drawn) on the
ground. (Or it should be written) on a piece of cloth at the
cremation ground with a charcoal from the cremation ground.
Or an image (of the enemy) should be made with charcoal of
the funeral pyre ground well. After contemplation (the incan-
tation) should be placed inside the stomach (of the image) and
it should be bound with blue thread. Then there would be the
magic incantation. Om, obeisance! O Fortunate One! Jvā-
lamālinī (one having the flames as a garland)! One surrounded
by flocks of eagles! Oblations. A person who goes to the battle
after repeating (this) mantra would become victorious. Om, śrīṁ
hrīṁ, kūṁ obeisance to Śrī. One has to worship Goddess Ghrṇinī
belonging to the sun on a square (drawn) in (the directions)
commencing with the north. (Goddesses) Ādityā, Prabhāvatī, Hemādri, Madhurā and Śrī (should be propitiated). Oṁ, hṛim obeisance to Gaurī. This mantra of (Goddess) Gaurī would yield all things when (it is used) for doing oblation, meditation, repetition and worship.

17-20. A person who prays to the Goddess of red complexion, having four arms and holding a noose and conferring boons with the right hand and holding a goad and offering protection (with the left hand), after contemplation of Her form, would live for a hundred years. He would be a wise man. There would not be fear due to thieves and enemies. An angry person would become graceful by drinking the water charmed with the mantra in the battle. A collyrium or mark (made with the same) would make one get poesy at the tip of his tongue. The repetition of that mantra at the time of coition would captivate (the concerned person). (One would captivate a person) by looking at the genital organ after the repetition of the mantra. (A person would be captivated) by the touch (after the repetition of the same). One would accomplish all things by doing oblation with sesamum. A person who eats food that has been charmed seven times (with the above) would always (get) fortune.

21-22. This mantra is a form of Ardhanārīśa (hermaphroditic form of lord Śiva), as well as (Goddess) Lakṣmī, (lord) Viṣṇu and others. One has to repeat (the mantras of Goddesses) Anaṅgarūpā, Madanātūrā, Pavanavegā, Bhuvanapālā, Sarvastiṣhādā, Anaṅgamadānā and Anaṅgamekhalā for (gaining) fortune.

23-24. (The syllable) hrim, the vowels and (the letters) ka etc. should be written at the centre and on the petals of a lotus or on a hexagon or on a pot. (A person that looks at women after doing thus) would captivate the women. Oṁ, hrim, chūm, O Nityaklinnā (ever moist)! O Madadravā (one who exudes intoxicating fluid)! Oṁ, Oṁ. This principal mantra after location on the six limbs (the two shanks, two arms, head and middle) (and then written) on red-coloured triangle (and worn on the body) would have great power to melt (the heart), make happy and agitate.

25-26. (Goddess) Nityā (should be worshipped) at the centre as well as (the angular points such as) the north-east to-
gether with the noose, goad, skull, the wish-yielding tree, lute and red-coloured (?). (Goddesses) Nityā, Abhayā, Maṅgalā, Navavirā, Maṅgalā (?), Durbhagā, Manonmanī and Drāvā should be worshipped in the (directions) commencing with the east.

27-28. ᪇룬, hṛim obeisance to Anaṅga¹ (without a body). ᪍ runes, hṛim, hṛim, obeisance to Smara (one that makes one to remember), (obeisance) to Manmatha (one that agitates the mind), to Māra and to Kāma. The five (forms of God of love) should be contemplated as holding a noose, goad, bow and arrows and as in the union of Rati (Goddess of love) (and her companions) Viratī (non-attachment), Prīti (pleasure), Viprīti (displeasure), Matī (thought), Dhṛti (firmness), Vidhṛti (fickle-mindedness), and Puṣṭi (nourishment). ᪍ runes, chaṃ, O Nityaklinnā (ever moist) ! Madadravā (exuding intoxicating liquid) ! ᪍ runes, ᪍ runes, a, ā, i, u, ū, r, ṛ, l, ḷ, e, ai, o, au, am, aḥ, ka, kha, ga, gha, ṅa, ca, cha, ja, jha, ṇa, ṇa, ṇa, ṇa, ṇa, ṇa, ṇa, ṇa, ṇa, ṇa. ᪍ runes, chaṃ oblations to Nityaklnnā and Madadravā, The energy of support and the lotus (should be worshipped) on the lion and the Goddess in the heart and other (limbs). ᪍ runes, hṛim, Gaurī (white coloured) ! The consort of Rudra (Śiva) ! Yogeśvari (mistress of faculties) ! ᪍ runes, phaṭ oblations.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FOURTEEN

Mantras relating to the worship of Goddess Tvaritā

Fire-god said :

1-3. ᪍ runes, hṛim, hrūṃ, khe, che, kṣaḥ, strim, hrūṃ, kṣe, hṛim, phaṭ obeisance to (Goddess) Tvaritā. After doing the nyāsa (location of the mantra) (Goddess) Tvaritā possessing two or eight arms should be worshipped. The energy of support and lotus (should be worshipped) in (a diagram of) a lion and the Goddess and the heart etc. (should also be worshipped). Gāyatrī (per-

¹. This and the following four names denote the God of love.
sonification of the mantra) should be worshipped in a circle in the east (and other directions) (showing) the pranitā (mudrā). (The Goddesses) Huṁkārā, Khecari, Caṇḍā, Chedāni and Kṣepeṇi (should also be worshipped). Huṁkārā, Kṣemakārī and Phāṭkārī should be worshipped at the centre. Jayā and Vijayā (should be worshipped) at the entrance. The servant (should be worshipped) in front of them.

4-10. (One should do) oblations with sesamum with (the repetition of) the ṣvāhītis in order to get all things. Obeisance to Ananta1! Oblations. Obeisance to Kalikā! Svadhā. Oblations to King Vāsuki. Vauṣaṭ to Śaṅkhapāla. Vaṣaṭ to Takṣaka always. Obeisance to Mahāpadma. Oblations to Karkoṭauāgā phat. Obeisance to Padma. (The diagram of) nigrahacakra (the magic circle that causes obstruction) should be drawn on one’s clothes, or a piece of cloth or on the body, or the birch-bark (leaf) or on a slab or on staffs. The name of the sādhya (the object to be accomplished, namely, the enemy) (should be written) in the middle chamber and (the syllables) om, hrīm, kṣum on the chambers on the east and other (directions). The thorns and Kālarātrikā (should be written) in the north-east, west etc. and (lord) Yama (the lord of death) outside. (The following mystic couplet should be written on the other chambers):

Kālināravamālī kālināmākṣamālinī
māmodetat tadomomā rakṣata sva sva bhakṣa vā
yamapāṭaṭayāmaya maṭamo taṭamo ṭamā
vāmo bhūrivabhūmeyā taṭariśvaśvari taṭa.

(The syllable) vam (should be located) outside the chamber of lord Yama and (the syllable) tam that has the potency to kill.

11-12. (The above verse should be written) with crow’s quill at the cremation ground or the junction of four roads with a mixture of lamp soot, the resin of neem, marrow, blood, poison, charcoal, and pīṅgaladhārā (?) and placed under a pitcher. Otherwise it should be placed in an ant-hill. The spell (placed) under a bibhitaka tree is capable of destroying all the enemies.

13-16. The anugrahacakra (a circular figure that confers

1. This and the following are the names of different serpents.
grace) should be written on a whiteleaf or on the bhūrja (bark) with shellac or saffron or red sandal. The name (of the enemy) should be written in the central chamber on the earth and the wall. (The mantra) Om hamsa and the paṭṭiśa (a kind of spear) should be written in the region of the west. The charm of (Goddess) Lakṣmī and Śiva and others should be written in the north-west etc. in order. (The mystic verse is):

śrīḥ sāmamomā sā śrīḥ sānau yājñe jñeyā nausā
māthā lilā láli vāmā yājñe jñeyā nausā māyā
Śīgrā (should be worshipped) outside where the six 'lilā' (is placed). The pitcher is also (placed) outside. Śīgrā is outside where jñeyā is placed. (The syllable) raṁ is in the different direction. The pitcher would be outside.

17. The wheel of lotus on a lotus (figure) would conquer death, convey (a person) to heaven and (give) firmness. It is the foremost appeasing rite among such rites. It confers fortune etc.

18-22. (In the wheel known as) Rudra, there should be chambers of the number of Rudras (i.e. eleven). That (mantra) should be written therein beginning with the syllable om and ending with hrūṁ phaṭ, the first letters of the vidyā being written at the end. This is known as the pratyaṅgirā which accomplishes all the desired objects. In (a circle having) eighty-one chambers, the first letters (of the vidyā) (should be located) such that they would be from the beginning to the end and the name (of the enemy should be added) ending with vasāṭ. This is (known as) a different pratyaṅgirā (vidyā) which would accomplish all tasks. The nigraha and anugraha (obstruction and grace) circles should be drawn to have sixty-four chambers. This is (known as) amṛti vidyā (reviving). (The syllables) kṛṁ saḥ hūṁ with the name (of the enemy) at the centre and the syllable phaṭ at the beginning (written) on a leaf should be encircled by three syllables of kṛṁ. This (charm) worn with (a mark of) a pitcher will kill all enemies and yield all things. If (this mantra) is repeated in the ear letter by letter or as a daṅḍaka (a group of letters), it would destroy poison.
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTEEN

Narration of mantras relating to paralysing, captivating etc.

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe to you (the mantras and acts) relating to paralysing, stupefying, captivating, ruining the enemy, neutralising the (effects of) poison and diseases and causing the death (of an enemy).

2-4. A twice-born should draw (the figure of) a tortoise of six inches (length) on a birch-bark by (the act of) tādana and then locate the mantra on the face and four feet. The syllable kriṁ should be written on the four feet, the syllable hriṁ at the centre of the face, the vidyā (mantras) on the belly and (the name of) the person concerned on the back. After having encircled it with the mālamantras (garland of letters), it should be placed over a brick. It should then be covered with the back of a tortoise and then charmed with the karāla (mantra).

5-8. After having worshipped the great tortoise (manifestation of Viṣṇu), (the votary) should sprinkle water on the feet (of that form). After having thought of the enemy, (the votary should) kick seven times (on the ground) with the left foot (of the tortoise). It would cause paralysis to the enemy. One should assume a terrible form by having change in the complexion of the face and write the garland of mantras. Om! One who paralyses the face of the enemy! An embodiment of desire! One that stands with arm discharging an arrow! Hriṁ phem, Phetkarini! Paralyse (2ⁱ) the face of my enemies given by the gods! Paralyse (2) the face of all my enemies! Om, hūm, phem, Phetkarini! Oblations! Phat! After having written the mantra, one would gain great strength at the end of its repetition. One should draw (the figure of) a tree and the trident on the right hand with the left hand. The mantra of lord Aghora (a form of Śiva) should then be written. One would paralyse the enemies in the battle. Om, obeisance to the Fortunate One! O Bhagamālīni! Agitate (2)! Throb! O Nityaklinnā! melt (2), hum saḥ! Embodiment of the syllable kriṁ! Oblations. One who wears a mask with the resin with (the repetition of) this (mantra) would stupefy the world.

1. The figure indicates repetition of the preceding word.
9-13a. \textit{Om}, \textit{phem}, \textit{hām}, \textit{phaṭ} \textit{Phetkārīṇī} ! \textit{Hrim}, burn (2), stupefy (2) the three worlds. \textit{O} Guhyakālikā ! Oblations. One would captivate the king and others by making a (forehead) mark with this (\textit{mantra}). The dust (under the feet) of a donkey mixed with the \textit{sūtaka} fluid and the menstrual blood of a woman should be thrown on the bed (of a person) in the night. This would cause enmity. The hoof and horn of a cow, the hoof of a horse and the head of a serpent (charmed as before and) thrown into the house (of a person) would cause the ruin of the enemy. The root of the yellow \textit{karavira} together with mustard (would be potent) to cause death. The blood of a serpent and a musk-rat together with \textit{karavira} would also produce similar result. A lizard, bee, crab and scorpion are ground well and thrown into oil. One who anoints with that (oil) would get leprosy. \textit{Om} (obeisance) to the nine planets. Conquer (2) my enemies. Kill (2) (them). \textit{Ām}, \textit{som}, \textit{mām}, \textit{bum}, \textit{cum}, \textit{om}, \textit{ṣam}, \textit{vām}, \textit{kem}, \textit{om} oblations.

13b-14. After having worshipped (the planets) with hundreds of \textit{arka} (flowers), this should be placed in a cremation ground. The planets should be drawn on a birch-bark or in an image for the ruin of the enemies. \textit{Om} Kuṇjarī, Brahmanī! \textit{Om} Mañjarī, Māheśvari! \textit{Om} Vetālī, Kaumārī! \textit{Om} Kāli, Vaiṣṇavi! \textit{Om} Aghorā, Vārāhi! \textit{Om} Vetāli, Indrāṇī, Urvāśi! \textit{Om} Vetāli, Caṇḍikā! \textit{Om} Jayāṇī, Yakṣini! O Nine Mothers! eh! Seize (2) my foe. After having written the name of the enemy on a birch-bark, if it is worshipped in the cremation ground, (the foe) would die.

\section*{CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTEEN}

\textit{Narration of different kinds of mantras}

\textit{Fire-god said:}

1-5. The syllable \textit{hām} is at the beginning. Then the letters \textit{khe}, \textit{ca}, \textit{che}, and the \textit{visarga} that is outside the group of conson-

1. The discharge at the time of the birth of a child.
ants (are added). It ends with strīm, hūm, kṣepa and phaṭ. This vidyā is known as subduing all things. It also destroys the poisons of serpents. Om, khe, che should be practised to revive a person bitten by a deadly serpent. Om, hūm, ke, kṣaḥ should be used to destroy poison and enemies. Strīm, kūṁ, phaṭ is (the mantra) to be used for conquering sins and diseases etc. Khe, cha is the application for removing evil obstacles. The application of hūm, strīm, om would captivate women. The application of khe, strīm, khe, cha should be used for captivating and conquest. Aṁ, hrīm, śrīm, sphem, kaim, kṣaun, Bhagavatī! Ambikā! Kubjikā! sphem, om, bham, tam subjugate. Obeisance to Aghora on the face! Brāhm, brām, kili, kili, vicēa, sphaun, hem, sphūm, śraun, hrīm, aṁ, śrīm. This vidyā of Kubjikā is known to accomplish all the things. I shall describe to you again the mantras narrated by (lord) Īśa (Śiva) to (lord) Skanda.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTEEN

The different kinds of mantras of Śiva

The Lord said:

1. (The mantras) of Śiva are divided into eight kinds, such as sakala (endowed with parts), niśkala (without parts), śūnya (void), kalāḍhya (abounding in parts), khamaḷāṅkṛta (adorning the sky), kṣaṇa (suppressing), kṣaya (destroying) and śiva (benevolent). The letters which lay inside and belong to (the regions of) the throat and lips (should be present in them).

2. O Guha (name of Kumāra, son of Śiva and Pārvatī)! There are eight kinds of the benevolent (manatra) known as para (supreme). The form of the word Sadāśiva is efficacious for accomplishing all things.

3-8a. (The forms) of the vowels are Amṛta, Aṁśumat, Indu, Īśvara, Ugra, Ūhaka, Ekāpāda, Oja and Auṣadha. Aṁśumat (among these) is capable of subjugating. (The forms) of the letters ka to kṣa are: Kāmadeva, Śiṅkhandī, Gaṇeṣa, Kāla, Śaṅkara, Ekanetra, Dvinetra, Triśikha, Dirghabāhuka, Ekapād, Arddha-
candra, Balapa, Yoginīpriya, Śaktiśvara, Mahāgranthi, Tarpaka, Sthānu, Dantura, Nidhiśa, Nandī, Padma, Śākinīpriya, Mukhabimba, Bhīṣaṇa, Kṛtānta, Prāṇa, Tejasvi, Śakra, Udadhi, Śrīkaṇṭha, Simha, Śaśāmka, Viśvarūpa and Narasimha (representing) kṣa.

8b-11a. (The syllable of) Viśvarūpa should be made to be pervaded by the syllables of Sūrya (Sun). After having coupled the syllable of Śaśi (Moon) with Arṇśumat, (the syllable of) Īśāna pervaded by (the syllable of) Ojas should first be raised up. (Among the above names), the third should be known as (Tat)Puruṣa, the fifth as Dakṣiṇa, the seventh as Vāmadeva, the next one as Sadyojāta and the ninth as coupled with the rasa (bija). This is known as the brahmaṇaṁcaka (the five brahmans).

11b-14. All the mantras begin with the syllable om and end with (the name in) the fourth case and obeisance. (The first one is presided over by) Sadyojāta. The second one is the heart together with the subordinate one. The fourth should be known as the head known by the name Īśvara. Ěhaka should be known as the tuft endowed with Viśvarūpa. Its mantra is known to be the eighth. The eye is considered as the tenth. O Śikhidhvaja (Kumāra, having peacock as the banner)! The weapon is said to be the Moon known as Śiva. Obeisance, oblation, vaṣat, hūm and phaṭka is the order.

15-17. I shall describe the prāśāda mantra (the benevolent one) relating to the heart etc. belonging to phaṭka. One should raise the (syllable) known as Rudra from Īśāna adorned with Arṇśu that remains above the group in the region of head pervaded by Auṣadha. It has half-crescent nāda (nasal sound) upwards having two dots in the middle. Viśvarūpa is at the end bent thrice. This is the prāśāda mantra capable of accomplishing all the things.

18-21a. After having raised the syllables of the tuft ending with the syllable phaṭ placed on the half-crescent, it is known as Kāmadeva that flows (and is verily) the great Pāṣupata weapon that destroys all evils. I have described the prāśāda (mantra) endowed with parts. I will describe (the mantra) without parts now. (This consists of)Auṣadha, Viśvarūpa, Rudra, orb of Sun, coupled with nāda of the form of half-moon, without designa-
tion and bent. The niṣkala (mantra) confers enjoyment and emancipation. It is always benevolent because it is endowed with five parts.

21b-31. (The mantras) that are void (consist of) Aṃśumat, Viśvarūpa and divested of Brahmāṅga (class of letters). Its form is the essence. It destroys obstacles when worshipped by boys and ignorant men. Aṃśumat coupled with Viśvarūpa and situated over the Uhaka is the mantra known as kalāḍhyā (fully endowed with parts). It is always used in the worship in the same way as the mantra with parts. The khamalaṅkṛta consists of Narasimha (mantras) situated in Kṛtānta pervading above the radiant life force, coupled with Aṃśumat and pervaded by Uhaka above and below. It is composed of half-moon nāda adorned by Brahmā and Viṣṇu. The Udādi (mantras) and Narasimha should be divided with the vowels of Surya. The other subsidiary rites should be done as before. The first letter is that which is known as Ojas, coupled with Aṃśumat that is to be raised. The foremost among the second letter is the Aṃśumat pervaded by Aṃśu. Similarly the Aṃśumat (pervading) the Īśvara is capable of conferring emancipation. The Uhakas are pervaded by Aṃśu and (followed by) Varuṇa, Prāṇa and Taijasas (syllables). It is known as the fifth one. The next one is the Kṛtānta. The Aṃśumat (coupled with) Udaka and Prāṇa is raised as the seventh one. The Padma is pervaded by Indu. The Nandīśa is coupled with Ekāpāda. The first one is added at the end. (That is known) as Kṣapanaṅka consisting of ten syllables. The third, fifth and seventh would number half of it. The Sadyojāta would be the ninth, the kṛd and other (mantras) (taken) from the second. The mantras consisting of the (above said) ten syllables should end with phat. This astra (mantra) should be raised.

32-34. The subordinate mantras (in the above) should be coupled with obeisance. It is not done in any other way. From the second to the eighth are considered as the Vidyeśvaras (the lords of the mantras)—Ananteśa, Sūkṣma, Śivottama the third, Ekamūrti, Ekarūpa, Trimūrti the next one, Śrikaṇṭha and Śikhaṇḍi are known to be the eight Vidyeśvaras. The ends of the mantras from that of Śikhaṇḍi to the end of Ananta are said to be the embodied form.
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND EIGHTEEN

The mode of worshipping Gaṇapati, accomplishing all things

The Lord said:

1-2. The Viśvarūpa (syllable) should be raised and placed above the Tejas. Then the Narasimha and Kṛtaṇta are placed below one below the other. The pranava (om) should be placed below that and the Udaka below that. The Anśumati that remains in the Viśvamūrti, the letter of the throat and lip region and the pranava (om) (should be below that).

3. The first four letters should end with obeisance. It should then be coupled as before with the anāgamantras adding also the syllables of Sūrya and Viśvarūpa, the cause.

4. The syllable om should be raised first and the luminous form without a second one should be repeated. The Ghoraghoratara (terrible one) (should be repeated). That form should then be remembered.

5-6. After having made the cāja sound twice, the (syllable) om should be repeated. Then one has to repeat twice ‘burn’ and then twice ‘vama’. After having stated ‘kill’ twice, one should repeat hūm phat at the end. This would be the mantra of the weapon for (lord) Aghora. I shall describe the gāyatri (mantra) (sacred to the same deity) now—“We know the true self of (lord) Maheśa. We meditate on the supreme god. May that auspicious god kindle our (mind) to that.” This gāyatri (mantra) is capable of accomplishing all things.

7-14. One has to worship (lord) Gaṇa (Gaṇapati) when one sets on a journey or in battle etc. for prosperity. One has to draw (the figure of a lotus having three petals inside a triangle on a fourth part of a square place divided into twelve chambers. On its back (back of the lotus) steps and pathway (should be drawn) having (the mark of) a horse on (each) petal. There should be silken cloth for footrest together with eight lotuses having three petals. The platform should be made above that measuring a fourth part. (The figure) should have a door containing (a figure of) a lotus. The side door from the chamber should be made pale. The circle drawn with doors and side-doors would destroy obstacles. The central lotus should
be red. The lotuses outside that should (also be red). The pathway should be made white. The doors (should be coloured) as one wishes. The pericarp as well as the filaments would be yellow in colour. This circle is known as destroying obstacles. (Lord) Gānapati should be worshipped. The first name would be that of (lord) Śiva together with Indra and others. The head is struck with Tatpuruṣa. Oṁ is the first (syllable) with obeisance at the end.

15. (The gods) Gaja (elephant), Gaajasīra (elephant-headed), Gāṅgeya (son of Gāṅgā), Gaṇanāyaka (lord of the Gaṇas), Trirāvaṛta (turned round thrice), Gaganaga (one who travels in the sky), Gopati (a leader) (should be worshipped) in the first row.

16-22: Vicitrāṁśa (one possessing strange characteristics), Mahākāya (one having a big body), Lambostha (having a hanging lip), Lambakarnaka (one having drooping ears), Lambodara (big-bellied), Mahābhāga (very fortunate one), Vikṛta (having strange appearance), Pārvatī-priya (one who is dear to Pārvatī), Bhayāvaha (frightening), Bhadra (auspicious), Bhagaṇa (the cluster of asterisms), Bhayasūdana (one that destroys fear) are the twelve (to be worshipped) on the ten rows. Devatāsā (frightening the celestials) (should be worshipped) on the west. Mahānāda (one having a great sound), Bhāsvara (one having lustre), Vighnarāja (lord of obstacles), Gaṇādhipa (lord of the Gaṇas), Udbhāta (the pre-eminent one), Svanabhā (self-originating), Caṇḍa (wrathful), Mahāsūnda (one having a big trunk), Bhimaka (the terrible), Manmatha (captivating the mind), Madhusūda (the destroyer of Madhu), Sundara (beautiful one), and Bhāvapuṣṭaka (one that nourishes one’s thoughts) (should be worshipped). (Lord) Brahmeśvara (lord of Brahmat), Brāhma, Manovṛtti (mental attitude), Sanilaya (well-absorbed), Laya (absorption), Dūtyapriya (fond of being a messenger), Laulya (extremely desirous), Vikarnā (having a strange ear), Vatsala (affectionate), Kṛtānta (the destroyer) and Kāladaṇḍa (death) (should be worshipped) on the north. A sacrificial pitcher should be worshipped as before. The mantra should be repeated ten thousand times. Oblation should be done one tenth of that number. When the other (mantras) are repeated oblations should be made ten times.
After having performed the final oblation, one should do the consecration. One would accomplish everything. A person should honour the preceptor by (giving) land, cows, horse, elephant, clothes and other articles.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND NINETEEN

Mode of worshipping Vāgīśvari (Goddess of speech)

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the worship of (Goddess) Vāgīśvari (Goddess of speech) in a circle. The mantra (made up of syllable of) Ěhaka together with (that of) Kāla added with the letters (would be the mantra for the Goddess).

2-4. O Niṣāda (hunter) (denotes Kumāra)! The mantra (for Goddess Vāgīśvari) should be used like that of the Moon and Sun. No letter need be assigned. One should contemplate (the Goddess) as having the complexion of jasmine and moon, embodying the fifty letters ¹ (of the alphabet), adorned with garlands of pearls and flowers, (holding the postures of hand) offering boons and protection and holding books and possessing three eyes. One should repeat the garland of letters from ‘a’ to ‘kṣa’ remembering as pervading (the body of the Goddess) upto the tip of the head and the ends of the shoulders.

5-10. The preceptor should make a circle for the sake of initiating (the disciple) in a mantra. A lotus (figure) that is good (for the worship of the Goddess) should have twelve tips divided into two parts. One should make ready the pathway and steps. There should be eight lotuses on the cross-road. The pathway and steps should be provided outside also. There should be doors in two squares. Similarly the side-doors, the construction of angular points and two strips of cloth should be done. The nine lotuses (should be) white. The pericarp of the lotus (should have) the hue of gold. The filaments should be variegat-

1. The letters a to kṣa of the Sanskrit language.
ed. The angular points should be filled with red (-coloured substance). The inner space between the lines of the sky (should be painted) black. The doors should be of the measure of the elephant of Indra. (Goddess) Sarasvatī (should be contemplated) at the centre of the (above) lotus. (Goddess) Vāgīśī (should be contemplated) on the eastern lotus. (Goddesses) Hṛlekhā, Citravāgīśī, Gāyatrī, Viśvarūpā, Śāṅkārī, Rati and Dhṛti (should also be worshipped). (The syllable) hrim and the respective syllables (should be worshipped) in the east and other (directions). (The Goddess) should be contemplated as (Goddess) Sarasvatī. Oblations (should be done) with clarified butter from the milk of a tawny cow. One would then become a Śaṅskṛta and Prākṛta poet and one who is well-versed in the science of poesy and other things.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTY

The different mystic diagrams

The Lord said:

1-5a. O Guha1! I shall describe to you the Sarvato-bhadra2 (that which confers good from all sides). A wiseman should worship the favourite Goddess of energy on the east at (the time of) the equinox. Then he should hold the thread east-west having the middle point between (the asterisms) Citrā and Svāti and mark at its centre after causing it to move gently. Two points on the north and south should be marked from its middle point. The two points should be brought in line with the middle point after having moved (the string) gently north-south. The junctions of angular points should be marked such that one would have one hundred and fifty divisions. Thus a quadrangle would be formed by causing the four lines to move gently. The auspicious Bhadra diagram should be drawn in that.

1. denotes Kumāra, son of Śiva and Pārvati.
2. a kind of mystical diagram.
5b-8a. (The quadrangle) should be divided into eight squares. The pathways and doorways should be made in two squares each. The cupola should be proportionate to the measure of the lotus. The excellent angular joints should be formed by turning round two squares. The lotus should be (painted) white, the pericarp yellow, the filaments variegated, the pathway red and the door having the hue of Lokeśa (Lord of the world). The angular point (should be) red. (This is the lotus to be drawn) in the case of a daily rite. Listen to me! (I shall describe the mode of drawing) a lotus for an occasional (rite).

8b-9. There are two varieties of lotus (diagrams), (the diagram) that does not touch and (the diagram) that touches, which confer enjoyment and emancipation. That which does not touch (is intended) for those who desire for release (from worldly existence). That which touches is of three (kinds)—young one, middle one and old. (These three) yield the fruits and perfection according to their respective names.

10-14. Lines should be drawn in the different directions as well as the directions in between in the place for the lotus. Five circles should be drawn (having dimensions) equal to that of the lotus. There should be nine lotuses around the pericarp in the first (circle). The second (circle) should have twenty-four pericarps. There should be a union of petals, the tip of the petal resembling the temple of an elephant. The fifth should be of the form of the sky. This is known as contiguous (type of) lotus. In the uncontiguous one, the tip of the petal should be divided into four from the bottom. After having discarded two parts, a petal should be set with one-eighth of the remaining. The petals should be anointed with the line at the union from the base. This would be Vyṛddha class on the left and right.

15-17a. In the alternative one should whirl round from the middle of the union to form a semi-circle. The two unions and the foremost line (should be made into circles). This would form a young type of lotus. One should turn it from behind with half the measure of the union line. This lotus having pointed tip known as youthful class is capable of conferring enjoyment and emancipation. The bāla class of lotus is known as of two kinds—mukta and vyṛddha useful in subjugating (one's enemy) etc.
17b-22. A ground measuring nine cubits should be made ready as having nine central points with parts possessing mantras. A lotus (should be drawn) at the centre having a banner at the centre and a door proportionate in size to that of the lotus. Leaving its neck portion and the adjacent parts, a pathway should be made outside. The pathway should have five parts. There should be ten parts around that. Lotuses (should be drawn) in the eight directions and the directions in between. The lotus at the entrance should have a pathway. A pathway of five foot (breadth) adorns outside that. The door and the neck (should measure) like that of the lotus. The frontal and neck (should measure) a foot. The cupola should be made a foot. There should be three doors in the (different) directions. The angular joints will have three chambers. Two chambers would bear the mark of a mace. The central lotus (should be) white (and other lotuses should be) yellow, red, blue, whitish yellow, smoky, red and yellow conferring emancipation.

23-24a. One should worship Śiva, Viṣṇu and others in the eight lotuses on the east etc. After having worshipped Indra and others at the centre of the edifice, the weapons in the lotuses and (lord) Viṣṇu and others in the external pathway, one would get (the fruits of performing) the aṣvamedha (sacrifice).

24b-30a. One should draw a great circle in connection with the investiture of the sacred thread on the idol etc. A piece of ground (measuring) eight cubits should be divided into eight chambers. There should be a lotus in two chambers at the centre and the pathway in one chamber. Eight blue lotuses should be marked in the different directions and the spaces in between. Thirty blue lotuses without the union of petals (should be drawn) measuring the same size as the central lotus. There should be a pathway behind occupying a chamber. There should be (the figure of) svastika-s above that. As before the pathway outside should be in eight (chambers) divided into twenty parts having (the figure of) svastikas in two chambers. The doors and the boundaries should be proportionate to the lotus. The angular point, the pathway and the lotus in the circle should be red, yellow and blue respectively. O Guha! the svastika (figure) etc. of varied colour are capable of fulfilling all the desires.
30b-33. (The circle having) five lotuses should measure five cubits. It should be wholly divided into ten parts. The pathway (should occupy) two chambers of the lotus, and the tablet (in one chamber). There should be four lotuses at the cardinal points. There should be a pathway on the rear in one chamber or two chambers. The doors should be endowed with boundaries and adjacent spaces. There should be a lotus at the centre. In this circle consisting of five lotuses, (the lotus) in the east (is) white and yellow, the lotus in the south (is) of the hue of lazuli, the lotus in the west (is) of the colour of jasmine, the lotus in the north (is) of the colour of a conch and all the rest of varied colour.

34-37. I shall describe a circle of ten cubits which yields all the desires. It should be a four-sided one divided into ten parts. The door would occupy two chambers. As (described) earlier (there should be) a lotus at the centre. I shall now describe (the circle known as) the destroyer of obstacles. After having made (ready) a place (measuring) four cubits, a circle measuring two arms length (should be drawn). The pathway (should measure) only a cubit. It should be made to contain many figures of svastika. The doors should measure a cubit. There should be circle containing lotus (figures) in the cardinal points. Five white coloured lotuses (should be drawn). God without any attributes should be worshipped at the centre. The heart (and other limbs) (should be worshipped) in the east and other directions. The weapons should be worshipped in the directions in between (these directions).

38-41. As before the five Brahmans (forms of Śiva should be worshipped). I shall describe the support of intellect. A place should be divided into hundred parts and a lotus (should be drawn) in fifteen parts. (Figures) of eight liṅgas should be drawn in the (eight) directions. The girdle should occupy a part and the boundary would be in two chambers. The preceptor should provide decorative festoons etc. making use of his creative thinking. There are one thousand four-hundred and forty circles for the gods Hari, Śambha and Sun and the goddess.

1. Verse number 40 is cryptic and has not been translated.
42-48. Listen to me! I shall describe the decorations and marks to be made in (a place) divided into seventy (parts). Fifteen, one, three and five (chambers) in the cardinal points should be erased. The temple of liṅga should be made above in two chambers on the sides. A lotus should be drawn in two chambers at the centre. A lotus should be drawn in one chamber on either side of the liṅga. By destroying the six lines of the decorations the remaining (would form lines) for (lord) Hari. After having erased the two squares above, it is said to form the auspicious aśṭaka (having eight parts) of (lord) Hari. It is decorated by erasing four lines and possessing beam like (lines). Then the lotus for a seat is made in twenty-five (chambers). After having retained two chambers on each side, the eight secondary decorations are made. The diagram sacred to the goddess is big at the centre and small above. There should be a lotus at the centre in nine chambers and four chambers in the cardinal points. The remaining thirteen chambers form a circle resting on one’s intellect. That one having one hundred and sixty petals based on one’s intellect (is intended) for Hara (Śiva) and others.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYONE

The appeasing rites relating to Aghorāstra

The Lord said:

1. (The propitiatory) rite for the weapons has to be done first. It is capable of yielding the results in all actions. The weapons relating to (lord) Śiva and others should be worshipped at the centre. The thunderbolt and others (weapons) (should be worshipped) from the east onwards in order.

2. One would gain victory in battle etc. by worshipping five discs in (a place measuring) ten cubits. In the worship of the planets the Sun (has to be worshipped) at the centre and the Moon and others (planets) in the east and other directions.

3-4. All the planets (would be beneficial) as if they are in
the eleventh house, by their worship. I shall describe (the rite of) appeasing the weapons that would destroy all the portents, remedy the baneful influences of planets and crush the epidemics and enemies. One should repeat (the mantra sacred to) the weapon of Aghora\(^1\) that would burn the impediments.

5-6. (The repetition of the mantra) a lakh times would destroy (the baneful influences of) the planets. (One should do) oblations with sesamum (to nullify) portents. (In the case of portents occurring) in the sky one should do (oblation or repetition) half a lakh times which would destroy the portents. It is beneficial to do oblation with ghee a lakh times in the case of portents relating to the earth. All types of portents are nullified by doing oblation with ghee and guggulu (fragrant gum-resin).

7. There is no doubt that diseases (get cured) by performing oblation with ḍūrva (grass), unbroken rice and clarified butter and bad dreams get destroyed (by doing oblation) one thousand times.

8. The evil effects of the planets would get nullified (by doing oblation) with ghee mixed with japā (flower) ten thousand times. Oblation performed with ghee ten thousand times would appease the afflictions due to Vināyaka (an evil spirit).

9-10. The spirits and goblins would be appeased by (the oblation of) guggulu ten thousand times. (One would get good results) by offering oblations with ḍūrva (grass), clarified butter and unbroken rice when a giant tree falls down or a serpent or a heron perches on the house or while one enters the forests etc. One would get good results by offering oblations with sesamum and clarified butter when a portent or earthquake occurs.

11-12a. (Oblations done) with guggulu ten thousand times would be beneficial if the trees ooze out blood. Oblations made with sesamum and clarified butter half a lakh times (would be beneficial) when (the trees) bear flowers and fruits in improper season, (when there is) unrest in the country, (when enemies) invade the country and epidemics affect the bipeds etc.

---

1. One of the five forms of Śiva.
12b-13a. It is said that rite of appeasement should be done
ten thousand times in order to appease the epidemics in eleph-
ants, in order to strengthen the tusk of the female elephants and
when the elephants are found rutting.

13b.-14a. When there is a miscarriage of the foetus at an
improper time, or when the child perishes after birth, or when
the children are born deformed or when one undertakes a jour-
ney, one should do oblations ten thousand times.

14b-15a. Oblations done with sesamum and clarified butter
one lakh times would yield excellent results, half that number
(would yield) medium results and a quarter of that number
(would yield) poor results.

15b-c. Similar to the repetition (of the mantra) oblation
done (with the mantra) would confer victory in battle. One
should repeat (the mantra of) the weapon of Aghora after mak-
ing the (mental) location (of the mantra on the limbs) and
contemplating the excellent five-faced (lord).

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYTWO

The appeasing rite employing the mantra of the weapon of Paśupati

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe first the appeasing rite and repetition
with (the mantra) of the weapon of Paśupati. If it is repeated
with phat at the end it would remove one’s misfortune. Om! Obeisance to the lord! to great lord of the flock! to one posses-
sing matchless prowess and strength! to one having fifteen eyes!
to the person having varied forms! to one who possesses
different kinds of weapons! to one having blood besmeared all
over the body! to one who is blended with a mass of collyrium!
to one who is fond of the cremation ground and goblins! to one
who removes all impediments! to one who confers all perfec-

1. Aghora is one of the five faces of lord Śiva; the other faces are:
Iśāna, Tatāpurūsa, Vāmadeva and Sadyojāta.
tions! to one who is gracious to the devotees! to one who has
innumerable faces, arms and feet! to the one who has attained
perfection! to one who frightens the goblins! to one who causes
commotion in Śākinī (female attendant on goddess Durgā)! to
the person who controls the diseases! to one who destroys the
sins! to one who has the Sun, Moon and Fire as the (three)
eyes! to one who is the armour of (lord) Viṣṇu! to one who
(holds) the sword and thunderbolt in the hand! to one who
has the club of Yama and the noose of Varuṇa (the lord of the
West and upholder of moral law)! to the one holding the tri-
dent of Rudra! to the person who has the burning tongue! to
the person who drives away all diseases! to one who controls
the plants! to one who annihilates the malicious serpents! Om
Phat to the black and brown! Phat to the person having the
sound hūm as the weapon! Phat to one holding the thunderbolt
in the hand! Phat to the spear! Phat to the club! Phat to Yama!
Phat to the sword! Phat to lord of north-west! Phat to Varuṇa!
Phat to the noose! Phat to the banner! Phat to the goad! Phat
to the mace! Phat to Kubera (lord of wealth)! Phat to the tri-
dent! Phat to the hammer! Phat to the disc! Phat to the lotus!
Phat to the serpent weapon! Phat to Īśāna! Phat to the club
weapon (called khetaka)! Phat to the headless trunk! Phat to
the weapon, the headless trunk! Phat to the weapon, the skeleton!
Phat to the weapon, the feather of a peacock! Phat to the weapon,
the sharp knife! Phat to the weapon Brahmāstra! Phat to the
weapon Śaktyastra! Phat to the weapon of the Gaṇa (attendant
of lord Śiva)! Phat to the accomplished weapon! Phat to the
weapon pilipiccha! Phat to the weapon of the Gandharva (semi-
divine being)! Phat to the weapon of mūruvā (a kind of grass
from which strings and girdles of kṣatriyas are made)! Phat to
the weapon of the right! Phat to the left! Phat to the weapon of
the west! Phat to the weapon of mantra! Phat to the weapon of Śa-
kinī (female attendant of Goddess Durgā)! Phat to the weapon
of yogini (another female attendant of Goddess Durgā)! Phat
to the weapon, the club! Phat to the weapon, the great club!
Phat to the weapon, the serpent! Phat to the weapon of Śiva! Phat
to the weapon of Īśāna! Phat to the weapon of (Tat) puruṣa!
Phat to the weapon of Aghora! Phat to the weapon of Vāmadeva!
Phaṭ to the weapon of Sadyojāta! Phaṭ to the weapon of the heart! Phaṭ to the great weapon! Phaṭ to the weapon of Garuḍa (vulture vehicle of lord Viṣṇu)! Phaṭ to the weapon of the demons! Phaṭ to the weapon of the Dānavas (demons, progeny of Danu)! Phaṭ to the weapon of the man-lion form (of Viṣṇu)! Phaṭ to the weapon of Tvaṣṭṛ (a celestial god)! Phaṭ to all the weapons! nāḥ phaṭ! vaḥ phaṭ! paḥ phaṭ! phaḥ phaṭ! maḥ phaṭ! śriḥ phaṭ! hraḥ phaṭ! (region) bhūḥ phaṭ! (region) bhuvah phaṭ! (region) svah phaṭ! (region) mahaḥ phaṭ! (region) janah phaṭ! (region) tapah phaṭ! Phaṭ all worlds! Phaṭ all nether worlds! Phaṭ all principles! Phaṭ all life forces! Phaṭ all nerves! Phaṭ all causes! Phaṭ all the Gods! hṛim phaṭ! śrim phaṭ! hṛūm phaṭ! śrūm phaṭ! āṃ phaṭ! lāṃ phaṭ! Phaṭ to indifference (for worldly pleasures)! Phaṭ to the weapon of illusion! Phaṭ to the weapon of desire! Phaṭ to the weapon of the guardian of the field! Phaṭ to the weapon, the sound hūm! Phaṭ to the weapon of the Sun! Phaṭ to the weapon of the Moon! Phaṭ to the weapon of lord of obstacles! Gaum gauṃ phaṭ! Khroṭ Khrauṃ phaṭ! Hroṭ hrauṃ phaṭ! Cause to roam about (2) phaṭ! Burn (2) phaṭ! Cover (2) phaṭ! Uproot (2) phaṭ! Threaten (2) phaṭ! Revive (2) phaṭ! Drive away (2) phaṭ! Destroy all misfortunes phaṭ!

2-3. The repetition (of the above) even once would destroy all the impediments. One would destroy all the portents by repeating hundred times and would be victorious in the battle etc. One would accomplish even that one could not accomplish by doing oblation with ghee and guggulu (fragrant gum-resin). One would have all (kinds of) peace by reading this weapon of (lord) Paśupati (lord of flock of beings).

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYTHREE

The mantra of the weapons of Aghora and the six constituents

The Lord said:

1-2. Death, diseases and other things are controlled by (the repetition of) the mantra “Om hṛūm haṁsa”. One has to bring
into effect appeasement and nourishment by doing a lakh of oblations with dūrvā (grass). O Six-faced one! Appeasement of portents, (un-natural flowering of) the trees and those relating to gods, sky and the earth (could be done) with (the repetition of) the prāṇava (om) or māyā (mantra). "Om! obeisance! O Ganges! Kāli! Kāli (one having dark complexion)! Mahākāli! Mahākāli (the great dark-complexioned one)! One who eats flesh and blood! One having red and black face! Bring the men under control! Oblation! Om!

3-5a. After having repeated (the mantra) one lakh times and offering oblations one-tenth (of that number) one would become the accomplisher of all tasks. One would subjugate Śakra (Indra, the chief of the celestials). One need not say about (its influence on) the mortals. This mantra is capable of making (the votary) invisible, captivating and paralysing (others). It brings the enemies under control and confuses the intellectual faculties of the enemies. This mystic learning is the Kāmadhenu (wish-yielding divine cow) when repeated seven times.

5b-6. I shall describe the foremost formula which would captivate enemies, thieves and others. One should remember (this formula) revered by (lord) Hara (Śiva) in the case of all kinds of great apprehensions. After having repeated one lakh times (one should do) oblation with sesame which would accomplish (the task). Listen (to me)! (I shall describe the formula of) deliverance: Om! The plough-bearer! The trident-bearer! Come! Protect me with the truths of (gods) Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Rudra! Oblations to Lord of speech!

7-9. (Goddess) Śivā (consort of Śiva) is known as Durgā because (She) saves (people) from adversity. Om! Fierce bearer of the skull! Gnash the teeth! Gnash! Destroy (2) Mysterious one! Phat Hrim! The rice grains should be consecrated with this excellent formula after repeating thirty times and given to thieves. (It would establish their) innocence if the chewed cud ejected (by them) is white. Om! One having glowing eyes! One shining with dark-brown matted hair! One who drives away!

1. denotes Kumāra, son of lord Śiva and Pārvatī.
2. the letters ā, i, u, r, ṛ, ṭ, kha, ma, ya, kṣa, hrūṁ, kliṁ
One who frightens the three worlds! Cut (2) ! Roam about (2) ! Attract (2) ! Break (2) ! Twist (2) ! Burn (2) ! Cook (2) ! Thus Rudra, who accomplishes, makes known! I shall bring back the person possessed by spirit even if he has gone to the heaven, region of the gods or sporting in the summit! Accept (2) the offering I am giving! Oblations! After having offered the victim to the guardian of the ground and (the performance of the rite) of locating the planets, (the enemy) would be subjugated. The enemies would get destroyed. The enemy forces would be routed in the battle.

10-13. One would nullify three kinds of poisons by the location of the hamsabija.1 After having made equal proportion of aguru, sandal, kustha, saffron, naga kesara, naka and devadaru and mixing with honey, one should fumigate the clothes etc. of an idol. This would bring good result in discussion, charms, adorning women and quarrels. (The same fumigation) is consecrated with mayamantra2 in the case of selection of a bride and for fortune. A person who looks at a person after wearing a mark on the forehead with the yellow pigment (got from a cow), naga puspa, saffron and arsenic (and uttering the syllable) hrim would subjugate him.

14-17. Pulverised satavari drunk with milk would help (a man) to get a male child. Pulverised naga kesara boiled with ghee would also help (a man) to get a male child. Similarly one would get a male child by drinking the seeds of palasa. Om! O Càmunḍa! Rise up! Make (this person) yawn (2)! Charm (2)! Subjugate this person (2)! Oblation! This is the twentysixth formula that is accomplished. After having (made an image) of the lady (to be subjugated) with the earth (got) from the banks of a river and writing the name on an arka leaf with the juice of the unmatta (plant) and having urinated, (the formula) should be repeated. Then the lady would be subjugated.

Om, kṣun, saḥ, vaṣaṇ. This formula (known as) the great conqueror of death gives nourishment when repeated and used for doing the oblation.

1. The letters ma, ya, ra, sa and ha
2. containing the letter hrim etc.
Oṁ, hamsaḥ, hrūm, hrūm, sa, hraḥ, saṁ, skaiḥ consisting of eight syllables (is known as) a formula that revives the dead and brings victory in battle.

18-21. The formulae beginning with Iśāna and others confer virtues, pleasures etc. (Lord) Iśāna (Śiva) is the lord of all formulae, lord of all beings. He is the lord of Brahmā. May that Brahmān, (lord) Śiva always be benevolent to me! Oṁ I know (the lord) Tatpuruṣa. I meditate on (lord) Mahādeva (the great god). Hence that Rudra incite us. Oṁ obeisance to those who are not fierce, to those who are fierce, to those who are most fierce and to all the manifestations of Rudras. Oṁ obeisance to Vāmadeva! Obeisance to the seniormost! Obeisance to the most excellent! Obeisance to Rudra! Obeisance to Kāla (time)! Obeisance to Kalavikaraṇa! Obeisance to Balavikaraṇa! Obeisance to the strong one! Obeisance to one who controls strength! Obeisance to one who controls all the beings! Obeisance to one who disturbs the mind! Oṁ I resort to (lord) Sadvyojāta! Obeisance to Sadvyojāta!

On the lord of the beings (2)! On the lord of eternal being! Be manifest in me. Obeisance to the god proceeded from the eternal being.

I shall describe the six formulae which are accessories to the five Brahman (formulae). Oṁ! Obeisance to the Supreme! to the granter of desires! to the Supreme lord! to the lord of communion! to the lord produced out of communion! to the doer of all things! Do (2)! True (2)! Lord of beings (2)! One manifest from the eternal beings! Vāmadeva! Doer of all things! Destroyer of sins! Always benevolent! One who is pleased! Obeisance to you! Oblations.

(The formula of) the heart, which yields all things, consists of seventy letters. Oṁ! Śiva! Obeisance to Śiva! Śiva! Oṁ! Oblations to the glowing (energy) in the heart is (the formula for) the tuft. Oṁ! One who is verily of the nature of benevolence! One possessing great splendour! Omniscient! O Lord! Turn round! One who is most fierce! One having a dark armour! Obeisance! One having a great armour! Bind (2) the heart by the command of Śiva! Whirl round (2)! Pulverise! One who holds the subtle thunderbolt! One who has the strong
noose! One whose strong body bears the bow and thunderbolt!
You enter my body and paralyse all the evil forces (2)!

The armour consists of one hundred and five letters. Om!
To the Vigour (of the lord) Om! Make the eyes quiver (2)!
One having subtle form(2)! Pierce (2)! Pierce intensely (2)!
Cover (2)! Vomit (2)! Kill (2)! Hūm, phat (is the) weapon
of Aghora.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYFOUR

Appeasing rite for lord Śiva

The Lord said:

1-3. I shall describe the appeasing rite for Śiva which is
preceded by the collection of formulae of Aghora. It is
the lord of seven crores (of formulae). It is fierce. It is
capable of destroying sins such as killing a brahmin etc. It is
the abode of both excellent as well as ordinary achievements.
It destroys portents pertaining to the celestial region, sky and
earth. It devours poisons, spirits and goblins. It confers all the
desires. It is an expiation destroying a host of sins. It destroys
misfortune and difficulties.

4-7. After having located Ekavīra, the five faces should
always be contemplated. (The face should be contemplated
as) white in (the rites of) appeasement and nourishment, red
in (the rites of) subjugation, yellow in (the rites of) paralysing,
smoky in (the rites of) uccāṭana (a kind of charm for expulsion)
and black in (the rites of) attracting (a person). One should
worship the thirty-two letters for confounding (an enemy). The
formula should be repeated thirty lakh times and the oblation
should be done one-tenth (of that number). Gum resin mixed
with amṛtā would accomplish all things. There is no other
formula superior to the Aghora formula that would give enjoy-
ment and emancipation. (By this repetition) one who is not a
religious student would become a religious student and one who
has not had his ablution after completing studies would have
that.
8. The weapon of Aghora and Aghora are the two excellent formulae. One who repeats (the formulae) or does oblation (with them) or worships would rout the army of the enemy in the battle.

9-13. I shall describe (the rite of) appeasement of Rudra which is beneficial and which accomplishes all the desires. For the sake of progeny, for removing the malignant influences of the planets, for removing poison and curing diseases, for controlling famine and epidemics, for removing (the effect of) bad dreams, for gaining army and kingdom, for the destruction of enemies (it should be performed). When trees bear flowers untimely and for controlling all spirits (the formula should be used). (The word) obeisance should be used for worship, ending with oblation for making the oblation, the syllable vasyat for strengthening and vasyat for nourishment. In the place of 'ca' letter two times, the union of that class (of names) is made.

Om! Obeisance to Rudra and to you and to the bull. (Obeisance) to one who does not leave, to unborn one, to the prime entity, to the worshipful, to Isana and to one possessing valour. (The following) five (are worshipped) in the north. (Obeisance) to the omnipresent, to the dreadful one, to one having distorted features, one who does not have any change in the form,

(Worship is made) for the sake of removal in (the principle of) kala and water in the south-western direction.

Obeisance to Ekapiṅgala, to Svetapiṅgala (and) to Krṣṇapiṅgala. Obeisance to Madhupingala. (Obeisance) to Madhupiṅgala in self-restraint. (Obeisance) to Ananta, to Ārdra, to Śuṣka (dry) and to Payogana in the principle of kala (time). To the dreadful one, to the most dreadful one in the two principles of māyā (illusion). To the thousand-headed one, to the thousand-mouthed one, to the thousand-handed and footed one and to the thousand liṅga in the principle of learning. One should locate on the right petal from thousand-eyed. To Ekajata, Dvijatā, Vijatā, to the form of Svāhā, to the form of Svadhā, to the form of vasyat, to the six Rudras. O Guha! these are situated in the leaf of fire in the principle of Isa. To the lord of goblins, to the lord of beings, to the lord of Umā and to the lord of
time. The six are to be worshipped in the eastern petals in the principle called Sadāśiva. To Umā, bearing a dreadful form, Om ! do (2), Ruhiṇi (2) ! You are Rudra, God of the celestials, Viśākha ! Kill (2), burn (2), cook (2), churn (2), ituru (2), aru (2), and suru (2). Remember the appeasement of Rudra. O Kṛṣṇapiṅgala ! Obeisance to the lord of the universe, the lord of the untimely goblins. (Goddess) Umā and (god) Mahēśvara should be worshipped in the pericarp in the principle of Śiva. Om to one pervading the sky, to the form of the sky, to omnipresent Śiva, to the endless, to one without anyone to govern, one who is not resorted, to Śiva. These nine terms are said to pervade the sky in the principle of Śiva. Obeisance to the eternal one! to the one seated on the yogic altar! to the eternal yogin! to the person having contemplation as food! Om obeisance to Śiva! Lord of all (beings)! One having Isāna as the head! One having Tātpuruṣa and others as the five faces! O Guha! The five chambers on the eastern petal in the principle of sat should be worshipped! To one having Aghora as the heart! To one having Vāmadeva as the secret organ! To one embodied as Sadyojāta! Om obeisance! To one extremely secret! To one who conceals! To one who does not have death! To one who presides over death! To one of the form of radiance! in the leaf (presided over) by Fire, in the principle of oblation! in the principle of knowledge! in the south! To the supreme lord! To the sentient and insentient! To the sky-pervading one! The splendour of the prime splendour! in the principle of illusion in the south-west! in the principle of time in the west! Om, dhr, dhr, nānā, vāṁ, vāṁ! Deathless one! Born of death! Benevolent one! The supreme soul! Great god! Master of good feelings! Great splendour! Presiding deity of yoga! Release, release, churn, churn! Om! O Sarva (everything) (2)! Om Bhava (The source) (2)! One who bestows happiness on all beings! In the son of Wind (god) and in the man of restraint in the north! One who is manifest in the presence of all! One who is above Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Rudra! One who is not worshipped! One who is not worshipped! One who is not extolled! The witness (2)! Come! Come! O Sun! O Fire (2)! O Knowledge (2)! Sound! Subtle one (2)! Benevolent one (2)! Giver of
all things. ! Om ! Obeisance to Śiva. Om obeisance to Śiva. Om ! Obeisance. One should worship, offer oblation and repeat (the above formula) in the prākṛta principle in the north-east. It would remedy all afflictions due to planets, diseases and incantations and accomplish all things.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYFIVE

The benefits of wearing the rosary beads and the counting of the formulae with them

The Lord said:

1-3. One should wear a garland of rosary beads even or uneven (in number) and firm. One may wear beads having single face, three or five faces or as available. Beads having two, four or six faces, unbroken and having sharp thorns are commendable. One should wear the four-faced (bead) on the right hand and the tuft etc. (By this) one not observing celibacy would become a celibate, and a person not observing religious ablution would get the vow fulfilled. Otherwise one should wear a golden ring after having worshipped with the formula of Śiva.

4-7a. (They are divided into four) classes (gocaras): Śiva, Śikhā, Jyoti and Sānitra. Gocara means the family. A person who has been initiated is to be known from that. The Prājāpatya, Mahipāla, Kapota and Granthika (belong) to the Śiva (class of beads). The Kuṭilas, Veṭālas, Padmas and Hamsas (belong) to the Śikhā class (of beads). The Dhrtarāṣtras, Bakas, Kākas and Gopālas belong to (the class of beads) known as Jyoti. The Kuṭikas, Sārathas, Guṭikās and Dāṇḍins (belong) to the family of Sānītri. Thus there are four varieties in each one of these (classes).

7b-13. I shall describe the constituents of the formulae by which the formula would yield perfection. The formula should be written on the ground omitting the kūṭa and ṣaṇḍa (class of letters). The component letters of the formula should be separa-
ted (one by one) and the nasal sound should be added separately. (The letters) in the name of the votary should be separated. The letters (in the name) of the votary should be added at the beginning and end of the formula. (These letters) from the name (of the votary) should be reckoned as siddha (successful), sādhya (capable of being accomplished), susiddha (successful easily) and ari (hostile). A formula having the siddha (letters) at the beginning and end would give hundred percent results immediately. (A formula having) susiddha (letters) at the beginning and end should be deemed (to have the same result) as the siddha (letters). (A votary) should avoid at a distance the ari (letters) at the beginning and end. The siddha and susiddha (formulae) should be used for (rites of) same nature and the ari and sādhya (should also be used) similarly. The presence of thousands of hostile (letters) in the middle would not be a defect in a formula having siddha (letters) at the beginning and end.

14-17a. In the well-known formulae such as māyā, prasāda and prāṇava, there are no divisions. The formula presided over by Brahmā (is known) as Brahmavidyā. Those known as vaiṣṇava (pertaining to Viṣṇu) are sacred to Viṣṇu. The formulae of Rudra are called Vīras. Those pertaining to Indra are dear to Śvāra. Those presided over by the serpents would make the serpents motionless. Those relating to the Yakṣas (a kind of semi-divine beings) are fond of ornaments. Those sacred to the Gandharvas are excessively (fond of) music etc. Those relating to the demons are dreadful. (The formulae) of the goblins are covered by filth. One should examine a formula and then impart (it).

17b-20a. (There are) formulae beginning with one letter and ending with phat up to those having fifty letters. The formula (known as) bālā consists of twenty letters. That (known as) Rudra consists of twentytwo (letters). The formulae having more than that number up to three hundred (letters) are known as vrddha (expanded). The letters beginning with a and ending

---
1. See p. 888 fn. 2.
2. the syllables həm, həm.
3. the syllable om.
with ha represent the white and dark fortnights. Among the ten vowels omitting the anusvāra (nasal sound) and visarga (aspirated sound) the shorter (vowels) represent the phases of the white fortnight and the longer ones those of the dark fortnight.

20b-21. (The incantations) for peace etc. (should be practised) when (the Sun) has risen. Those for subjugation (should be done) when (the Sun) is on the move. The incantation for creating dissension (should be practised) when (the Sun) has completed the revolution at the twilight periods and those for stupefaction (done) at sunset. The spells for peace (should be practised) when (the wind) flows through the Iḍā (one of the arteries) and those for attracting (a person) (should be done) when (the wind flows) through the piṅgalā (one of the arteries).

22-23. (Charms) for destruction and driving away (and such other results) (should be practised) at the time of the equinox. The incantations are thus of five kinds. The principle of earth (remains) on the lower part of the lip, lustre above, water in between, ether on the sides, wind outside and the great lord pervading everywhere. One has to practise the spell for paralysing in the earth (principle), appeasement in water, subjugation etc. in (the principle of) light, (spell) for driving away (a man) in (the principle of) wind and the auspicious moment in (the principle of) ether.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYSIX

Description of the mode of worshipping Goddess Gaurī for gaining enjoyment, emancipation etc.

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe the (mode of) worship of Umā (consort of Śiva) for fortune and conferring enjoyment and emancipation. (I shall also describe) the meditation of the formula, the
mystic diagram, the mudrā¹ and the oblation which are the means (for the same).

2-6a. After having drawn Citrabhānu (Bhairava form of Śiva), Śiva and Kāla together with Great Energy, Iḍā (one of the arteries) is drawn together with the lord and the modification. The second (circle) should have the door and words which please (goddess) Gaurī (synonym of Umā). The principal formula of (goddess) Gauri should be made to end with fourth case (dative). Om, hrim, sah, saum obeisance to Gaurī (is the formula). Six inches should be endowed with the three letters appropriate to the group. The seat (should be spread out) with praṇava (syllable om) and the image (of the goddess) with (the formula of) the heart. The syllables of water, time and Śiva in the formula should be raised. The life (syllable) should be endowed with long vowels and (location on) the six parts of the body (should be made). (The consecration of) the seat should be made with the praṇava and the consecration of the image with the formula of the heart.

6b-7. O Child! Thus I have described to you (according to) the Yāmala. I shall explaining to you (according to) the Ekāvira now. The basic syllable consisting of those of (lord) Śiva and the goddess devoid (of the syllables) of heart are spread out endowed with the order of creation with (the syllables of) vahni,² māya³ and kṛṣānu.⁴

8-10a. (The goddess) Gaurī should be worshipped in (an image made of) gold, silver, wood or stone. In the alternative (the goddess may be worshipped) in Her unmanifext form in five balls at the centre and the (four) angular points. (The goddesses) Lalitā, Subhagā, Gaurī and Kṣobhanī (should be worshipped) in order beginning with the south-east. (The goddesses) Vāmā, Jyesṭhā, Kriyā and Jñānā should be worshipped in the circle beginning with the east. The unmanifest form of (lord) Śiva (should be worshipped) on the left side together with the pedestal.

---

¹. Holding the fingers interlocked in a particular position representing different things.
². The syllable t.
³. See p. 888 fn 2.
⁴. The syllables qa, ra and ram.
10b-13. (In the worship of the manifest form of the goddess) (the goddess should be worshipped) as manifest with two eyes, the syllable oṁ (containing the three letters), pure and being present with (lord) Śaṅkara (Śiva). Two lotus seats (should be provided). (She may be endowed) with two arms or four arms. She may be riding a lion or wolf or have eight or eighteen hands. (She may be wearing) a garland and rosary beads. (She may wear) a bunch of lotuses on the neck. She may be holding an arrow or bow with the right hand and a book, betel-leaf, club, offering protection and a kamaṇḍalu (waterpot) with the left hand. One should place in each one of these (hands) Gaṇeśa, mirror and an arrow.

14-19. In the alternative (the goddess) should be made in Her manifest and unmanifest form. The deity is invoked on the pedestal by (showing) the padma mudrā (posture of the hands formed as a lotus). It is said that liṅga mudrā (posture representing the liṅga shape) is for (invoking) (lord) Śiva. For (invoking) both, the āvāhāni mudrā (invocation posture) (is to be used). The posture for invoking the goddess is yoni (female generative organ). The mystic diagram (for the worship should be) a square. A lotus having three petals occupying the central four chambers should be made within that square. A triangle in two squares in the middle and a half crescent in double that space (should be made) in order. The entrance should be double that as well as double that of the approach to the door. (There should be) three doors in each one of the three directions. In the alternative (the goddess) may be worshipped on a bhadraka (lotus diagram) or on the ground after having established (the goddess) and worshipped Her with the five things got from a cow and the five sweet things. (A votary) should offer red flowers and offer hundred oblations with the five sweet things and clarified butter facing the north. Then the final oblation (should be made). (The votary) would accomplish all the desired things. After having offered a victim, three or eight girls should be fed. The offering made to the goddess should be given to the devotees of Śiva and should not be taken by oneself.

20-22a. (By this worship) one desirous of getting a daughter would get a daughter, a person not having a son would get a son, an unfortunate woman (would get) fortune and the king
(would get) a kingdom and victory in battle. By (repeating the formula of the goddess) eight lakh times, a votary (would get) efficacy of speech and the gods would come under his control. (The votary) should not eat without offering (to the goddess). One should worship with the left hand especially on the eighth, fourteenth and the third (lunar days).

22b-26. I shall describe the worship of (lord) Mṛtyuñjaya (the conqueror of death; a synonym of Śiva). (The god) should be worshipped inside a pitcher. The praṇava (the syllable om) should be used for the oblation. The lustre of the god would be had by this (method). The basic formula (should be) ending with vaisaṭ. (The votary) should show the kumbhamudrā (posture of the fingers representing a pitcher). Oblations should be made with milk, dūrvā (grass), clarified butter, amṛtā, punarnava, sweet porridge and cake. The formula should be repeated ten thousand times. (The god should be contemplated as) having four faces and four arms, holding pitchers in two hands and offering boons and protection by two (others). (The god) should be (mentally) bathed with the kumbhamudrā. One who partakes the auspicious herbs sanctified with the formula would have healthy life, fortune and long life. When contemplated, He would destroy untimely death and when worshipped (would confer) wonderful results.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYSEVEN

The greatness of establishing a liṅga
and worship with the accessories

The Lord said:

1-5. The austerities are completed after having worshipped Satya and others, the presiding deities of austere observances. Ariṣṭa, the lord of the thread (of a rosary) is capable of nullifying misfortune. (A string) having golden and gem (beads) (confers) fortune. (A string) containing beads made of) great conches is for causing death. (A rosary) (containing) conch-shells is for a charm (while) that one (having) pearl beads increases
progeny. (A rosary having) crystal (beads) confers fortune. (A rosary having) rudrākṣa confers emancipation. A rudrākṣa of the size of a dhātri fruit is excellent. The mental repetition (may be done) with the central bead or without the central bead in the string. The repetition should be done using the ring finger and the thumb. While doing so one should not cross the central bead. When the rosary has fallen down by mistake, one should repeat (the formula) two hundred times.

6-7a. A bell possesses (the sounds of) all the instruments. Hence sounding it confers wealth. The liṅga (the emblem denoting lord Śiva) and the abode (of the deity) should be cleansed with cow-dung, cow’s urine, earth from the ant-hill, ashes and water.

7b-10a. O Skanda! The formula ‘Obeisance to (lord) Śiva’ is capable of accomplishing all things. These five syllables are commended in the Vedas. The six syllables⁴ are commended in the world. Lord Śambhu (Śiva) is present at the end of ‘Om’ like the seed of a (holy) fig tree as a seal. It is known that ‘Obeisance to Śiva’ is the designation of Īśāna and others in order. One would acquire the collection of formulae by repeating the six syllables. ‘Om’ obeisance to Śiva’ is the excellent formula.

10b-12. (The votary) should worship the liṅga with this (formula) since (lord) Śiva dwells in the liṅga for the sake of conferring His favour on the people and since He is the conferrer of virtues, desires, wealth and emancipation. A person who does not worship the liṅga does not become a fit person to get virtues etc. One would get enjoyment and emancipation by worshipping the liṅga. Hence one should worship (Him) so long as he lives. One should never eat without worshipping Him. It is better to discard one’s life (than not to worship Him).

13. (One would become) Rudra by worshipping Rudra, Viṣṇu by worshipping Viṣṇu, Sūrya by worshipping Sūrya and the goddess etc. by worshipping the goddess.

14. One would acquire a crore times more benefits by establishing the liṅga than what one would acquire by doing sacrificial rites, penances and offering gifts, visiting sacred places and reading the Vedas.

1. The five syllables with the syllable om.
15. One who worships the earthen liṅga during the three twilights with bilva, would redeem one hundred and eleven generations of his family and would attain heaven.

16. A person should build a temple according to his capacity. The small or big (temple) (built) by a poor or a rich person would have equal benefit.

17. On account of the transitory nature of one’s life one should set apart two parts (of his wealth) for the sake of virtuous deeds and one part of the wealth for maintaining his life.

18. A person who builds a temple would redeem twentyone generations of his family and gain wealth. One would get manifold benefits (by building a temple) with earth, wood, brick and stone etc.

19. A person who builds a temple of God with eight bricks, would reach heaven. Even one who builds a temple with dust in sport would acquire wealth.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYEIGHT

The rules of prosody

Fire-god said:

1-3. I shall describe1 (the rules of) prosody in order as laid down by Piṅgala making use of the basic letters. There are eight gaṇas (classes), viz. maṇa, naṇa, bhagana, yagana, jagana, ragana, sagana and tagana made up of the letters ma, na, bha, ya, ja, ra, sa and ta. Each one of these gaṇas is formed by three syllabic instances. All the three syllables may be long or short or the first or middle or final syllable may be long or short. A syllable is long or short according as the vowel at the end is long or short. A short vowel becomes long when it is followed by a nasal sound or visarga (aspirated sound) or a conjunct

1. The Purāṇa summaries very briefly and does not give a clear definition. Hence the translation has been rendered in such a way as to make it clear.
consonant or a jīhvāmūliya\(^1\) or a upadhmāniya\(^2\). Thus the gaṇas are
eight according to tradition.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYNINE*

An abridgement of rules of prosody relating to the Vedic metres

Fire-god said:

1. The Gāyatrī and the Goddess are of equal (number of)
letters in the section on metres. It would have fifteen letters.
(The metre called) Prajāpati (consists of) eight letters.

2. (The metre) Gāyatrī (used) in the Yajurveda (consists of)
six letters and that in the Sāmaveda would have twelve
letters. It would have eighteen letters in the Rgveda. Two more
letters are added in the Sāmaveda.

3. The fourth quarter in the Rgveda and all the quarters in
the Prajāpati would get lengthened. There would be increase of
one syllable each in the rest. The Āsurī would drop one (letter).

4. (The metres) Uṣṇik, Anuṣṭubh, Brhatī, Paṅkti, Trisṭubh
and Jagatī should be known as gradually (increasing). All
these Gāyatris (are known as) Brahma.

5. If groups of three (of the above) are added each one
would be the name (of the metres) of the Rgveda and Yajurveda.
They should be written in a square of sixty-four chambers.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTY**

An abridgement of the rules of metres

Fire-god said:

1. When a quarter does not have the sufficient letters it
has to be filled with iya etc. The Gāyatris are known to have

\(\begin{align*}
\text{1. A term applied to the visarga before } k \text{ and } kh \text{ and also to } r, l \text{ and the}
gutturals.}
\text{2. The visarga before the letters } p \text{ and } ph.
\end{align*}\)

*This chapter sums up second chapter of Piṅgala.
**This chapter sums up the third chapter of Piṅgala.
eight in a quarter. The Jagāti (would have) twelve in a quarter. 
Virāṭ is said to have ten.

2-5a. The Triṣṭubh has eleven letters in a quarter. There 
are also others having Ekapāda¹ (one foot) etc. (Gāyatra 
metre) consists of four feet, six letters in each foot. In some 
places it has seven letters. The Pratiṣṭhā (gāyatṛi) has three feet 
(having eight, seven and six letters respectively). Vardhamāna 
consists of three feet having six, eight and eight letters respecti-
vely. (The Pratiṣṭhā gāyatṛi) has three feet having six, eight 
and seven letters. The Nāgīgāyatṛi (consists of) three feet hav-
ing nine, nine and six (syllables) respectively. Vārāhī (would 
have) six, nine and nine (letters). The third one (Virāṭ gāyatṛi) 
having two feet (would have) twelve and eight (syllables) and 
that having three feet (would have) same syllables as Triṣṭubh 
(i.e., eleven syllables each).

5b. The Uṣṇik metre is described in the Vedas (as having 
eight syllables in two feet (and twelve syllables in the third 
foot).

6-7a. (The variety of) Uṣṇik (known as) Kakub (would 
have) three feet (consisting of) eight, twelve and eight letters. 
Pura-uṣṇik would have three feet having twelve, eight and 
eight letters. the Paro-uṣṇik would be the next (having eight, 
eight and twelve syllables). A metre with four feet (having seven 
syllables is also Uṣṇik).

7b-8a. (The metre) with eight letters in each one of the 
four feet would be Anuṣṭup. It may have three feet also some-
times. It may have eight, twelve and twelve letters. If the 
middle and end (of a Jagāti is a Gāyatra it is also Anuṣṭup).

8b-11. Bṛhatī would be one foot Jagāti and three feet 
Gāyatṛi. (If the first Jāgata foot is) third (and others Gāyatṛi) 
it is Pathyā (Bṛhatī). (If the first Jāgata foot is) second (and 
others Gāyatṛi) it is Nyaṅkusārini (Bṛhatī). The same is known 
as Skandho-grīvī according to Krauṣṭuki. Thesame is known as 
Urobrḥatī according to Yāska. (If the Jāgati foot is) at the 
end (and the rest are Gāyatra) it is Upariṣṭād-bṛhatī. (If the 
same Jāgati foot is) at the beginning (and the rest are Gāyatra) 
it is Purastād-bṛhatī. In some (texts) there would be four feet

1. one foot, two feet etc.
with nine syllables each (also known as Brāhatī). In some places (it would have eight letters. Mahābrāhatī is constituted of three Jāgatī feet. The same is Satobrāhatī according to Bhaṇḍīla¹.

12. If the first two of the four feet (are Jāgatī and the other two Gāyatrī) it is Paṅkti. (Another variety of Paṅkti) is Sāthapaṅkti.² Even if it is in reverse order (it is Satahpaṅkti)³. (If the first two feet are Jāgatī) it is Prastāra-paṅkti. (If the Jāgatī occurs) in the last two feet it is Āstāra-paṅkti.

13. The Akṣarapaṅkti consists of four feet having five letters in each half of each foot. Padapaṅkti consists of five feet (having five letters in each). (If the first foot has) four letters, (the second) six letters and the last three (five letters) (it is also Padapaṅkti).

14. It would be Jagatī-paṅkti if it has six (Gāyatrī) feet (and Pathyā-paṅkti) if it has five feet. It is said to be Jyotis-mati Jāgatī if it has one foot (Gāyatrī and the other three) Triṣṭuph.

15. The Purastād-Jyotiḥ (triṣṭup) consists of (Gāyatrī) in the first (the remaining three being Triṣṭup). The Madhya-Jyotiḥ consists of (Gāyatrī) in the middle (and Triṣṭup preceding and succeeding). Upariṣṭājyotiḥ (consists of three Triṣṭups and a Gāyatrī) at the end.

16. It is known as Saṅkumati (gāyatrī) (if it has one foot having five letters and three having six letters). Kakudmati (consists of) six (letters in one foot and the usual number in other feet). (The metre) would be (known as) Pipilikamadhyamā if it has (eight letters in the first and third and three in the middle) in the three feet.

17. If the case is otherwise (i.e. it has few letters in the first and the third and many in the middle) it is (known as) Yavamadhyā. It is known as Nicṛt if (a Gāyatrī having twenty-four letters) has one letter less. If the same (Gāyatrī) has two letters less it would be Virāṭ.

18-22. If (the Gāyatrī) has two additional letters it would be Svarāṭ. In case of doubt (in the case of metre having twenty-

¹. The Chandaḥ Sūtra III. 36 reads as Tāṇḍin.
². having first and third as Jāgatī.
³. i.e., having first and third feet Gāyatrī and the rest Jāgatī.
six letters whether it is Gāyatrī Svarāt or Uṣṇik Svarāt), it should be decided on the basis of the first foot. The deities of the metres are: Fire-god, Sun, Soma, Brāhaspati (preceptor of the celestials), Varuṇa (lord of ocean and morality), Moon, and Viśvedevas. The musical notes sādja, ṭaṭabha, gāndhāra, madhyama, pānćama, dhaivata, niśāda (should duly be associated with the metres). (The metres beginning with Gāyatrī are) duly white, variegated, tawny, black, blue, red and white. The compositions are of the colour of gorocana (yellow pigment got from a cow). The metre called Jyotiḥ is black (coloured). The gotras (of the metres beginning with the Gāyatrī) are said to be Agnivesya, Kāśyapa, Gautama, Āṅgirasa, Bhārgava, Kauśika and Vāsiṣṭha.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYONE

Metres of different kinds*

Fire-god said:

1. (The metre) Utkṛti consists of one hundred and four letters. One should drop four letters (step by step) (and get other metres). They would respectively be metres abhi, saṁ, vi, āṇi and pra etc. (prefixed) to Kṛti separately.

2. Then (there would be metres) such as Kṛti, Atidhṛti, Dhrī, Atyaṣṭi, Aṣṭi, Atiśakvari, Śakvari, Atijagati and Jagati.

3-4. The metres described hereafter are classical. The Vedic metres beginning with Triṣṭup (in the Vedas) (would be noticed in the same way in the classical). Triṣṭup, Paṅkti, Brhati, Anuṣṭup, Uṣṇik and Gāyatrī are said (to be the metres). Supratiṣṭhā (twenty letters), Pratiṣṭhā (sixteen letters), Madhyā (twelve letters), Atyukta (eight letters) and Uktā (four letters): thus each one has lesser (number of) letters.

5. The fourth part (of a Gāyatrī having twenty-four letters) would be a foot. The Gaṇacchandas¹ is described now.

---
¹This chapter sums up the fourth chapter of Piṅgala.
1. See ch. 328. vv. 1-3.
The *ganas* are made up of four syllables. They may be a *guru* (long syllable) at the beginning, middle or end or two long syllables (or four short syllables).

6. Four syllabic instants and five *ganas* (groups) are said to be the characteristics of the Āryā (metre). When there are seven and a half *ganas* in one half (of a verse) it is Āryā. The other half also (would be similar). (In the Āryā the odd) are not *jagana* (having long syllable in the middle).

7. The sixth (*gana*) would be a *jagana*. (The sixth) may be having all short syllables. When it has all short syllables the foot begins with the second word. (When it is long syllable in the middle or all short syllables) and the seventh (is all short) (the foot begins with) the first (letter). If in the second (half), the fifth (*gana* be all short) (the foot begins with the first letter of the first half).

8. If in the second half the sixth (*gana*) (be either long in the middle or all short), the short vowel (is introduced). The variety of Āryā is known as Pathyā if it has three *ganas* (in a foot) in the last half and first.

9. Vipulā (is the next variety) (having no pause in the three *ganas* in the last or first half or both). Capalā is that where the second and the fourth (*ganas*) are long in the middle, (the first is long at the end, the third is two long syllables, the fifth long at the beginning and the rest as usual). Mukhapūrvikā has the characteristics of Capalā in the first half.

10. In the Jaghanacapalā, (there are the characteristics of Capalā) in the second half. Mahācapalā (has the characteristics of Capalā) in both (the halves). Giti is that where the first half is similar.

11. Upagiti is that where the second half is similar. Udgiti is said to have the order reversed. Āryāgiti (has) eight *ganas* in the (first) half. The metres regulated by prosodical instants (are described) now.

12. Vaitāliya (metre) has seven (syllabic instants) in the first and the second quarter and sixteen *lakāras* (one *mātrā* syllables) in the second and fourth and there should be *ra, la* and
ga at the end of both the foot. (If the Vaitāliya) has an additional long syllable (it is known as) Aupacchandasaka.

13-15. The Pāṭalikā has bhagaṇa (and two long syllables) at the end in addition to the above (characteristics). (The lakāra) that has not been described so far (in the above should not be mixed) with the next. The second and third foot in the above should not be employed separately. Prācyavṛtti is shown (now). When in the second and fourth feet, the first lakāra gets mixed up, it is (Prācyavṛtti). If the first lakāra gets mixed up with the third in the first and the third feet, it is Uḍīcyavṛtti. If the above characteristics are found together in the same it is Pravṛttaka. When all the feet (in the Vaitāliya) have the characteristics of the first and third (letters), it would be Cāruhāsinī. When all the four feet possess the characteristics of the second and fourth (letters), it would be Aparāntikā.

16. It is said to be Mātrāsamaka when there are sixteen lakāras (one mātrā syllable) ending in guru. (At the end one of the two is made guru and the ninth is a lakāra). When there are twelve lakāras and the ninth (retains its own form in a quarter) (it is called) Vānadvāsikā.

17. (Where in all the four quarters) the fifth and the eighth (are lakāras and the rest as laid down) (it is) Viśloka. Where the ninth lakāra remains as also the fifth and eighth it is Citrā. If it gets mixed with the next (i.e. the tenth) it is Upacitrā. Pādākulaika is the next (metre).

18-19. (Where there are sixteen lakāras in a quarter it is known as) Gityāryā. (When the two halves of Gityāryā) are reversed (i.e. one half is all short and the other half is all long) it is Śikhā. When the first half is all short (and second half is all long) it is Jyoti. When the first half is all long (and the second half is all short) it is Saumyā. Cūlikā is said to be having (twentynine lakāras in the first half and) thirty one (in the second half) and a long syllable at the end. The number of syllables should be deducted from the number of mātrās so that the remainder would be gurus (long). The number of gurus

---

1. The Purāṇa reading Gopucham is obviously incorrect.
2. The Chandasūtra reads Āpatalikā.
3. The text in the Purāṇa is corrupt.
(long) should be subtracted from the total number of mātrās so that the remaining would be laghu (short).¹

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYTWO*

The metres of un-equal characteristics in the four quarters

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the equal, half equal and unequal (metres), the three (divisions) of the classical metres. (The equal metres have the same characteristics in all the four quarters, the half-equal in two quarters and the unequal have different characteristics in all the four). The number of half-equal metres are arrived at by multiplying the number of equal metres with the same number.

2. (The number of) unequal metres (is got by multiplying the number of half-equal metres with the same number). (The number of pure half-equal metres is got by) deducting (the number of the equal metres) from the number (of half equal metres). (The metre is known as) Samānī where it ends with a long and short syllable. The Pramāṇī (metre) ends with a short and long syllable. The Vitānaka is different from the above (two).

3. It would be Vaktra metre (by adding four syllables) at the beginning of a quarter (of an Anuṣṭūp). (In it after) the first (syllable) there should not be sāgāna and nagāna² (and repha in the second and fourth quarters). (One may use) some other gaṇas except the above. The yagāna should come after the fourth (syllable of a quarter). In the Pathyāvaktra (metre), jagāna (comes after the fourth syllable) in the second and fourth quarters.

4. According to others, it is Pathyā metre when it has the

---

¹ The Purāṇa reading is corrupt here.
² This chapter corresponds to Pingala ch. V. Sūtras 1-31.
２ See ch. 328, vv 1-3 for the gaṇas.
characteristics contrary to the above. It is Capalā, if there is naganā after the fourth letter in the first and third quarters. It is Vipulā, when yaganā is everywhere in the second and fourth quarters and the seventh syllable is short. According to Saitava (ācārya)\(^1\), the seventh syllable should be short in all the quarters.

5. If there is bhaganā or naganā or taganā (instead of yaganā in the first and third quarters after the fourth syllable), it is Vipulā. Many varieties of the Cakra class have been described. When four letters are added to each one of the quarters, the metre is Padacaturūdhvam.

6. The metre is Āpiḍa, if there are two long syllables at the end (of each one of the quarters). If two long syllables occur at the beginning (of each one of the quarters), it is Pratyāpiḍa.\(^2\)

7-8. In the Āpiḍa, when the first (pāda) is interchanged (with the second) it is Mañjarī, (when interchanged with the third) it is Lavali\(^3\) and (when interchanged with the fourth) it is Amṛtadhārā. Udgatā is described now.\(^4\) It has (ten syllables)—sa(gaṇa), ja(gaṇa), sa(gaṇa) and la(ghu) (in the first quarter) (ten (syllables)—na(gaṇa), sa (gaṇa), ja(gaṇa) and ga (long syllable) (in the second quarter) (eleven syllables)—bha (gaṇa), na (gaṇa), ja (gaṇa) and la (short syllable) (in the third quarter) (thirteen syllables)—sa (gaṇa), ja (gaṇa), sa (gaṇa), ja (gaṇa) and ga (long syllable). When (in Udgatā), the third (quarter) has (ten syllables)—ra (gaṇa), na (gaṇa), bha (gaṇa) and ga (long syllable) it is Saurabha. Lalita (consists of) two na (gaṇas) and two sa (gaṇas) (in the third quarter) (in Udgatā).

9. Upasthitapracupita\(^5\) has ma, sa, ja and bha (gaṇas) and two gas (in the first quarter), sa, na, ja and ra (gaṇas) and ga (in the second quarter), two na, sa (gaṇas) (in the third) and three nas, ja and two ya (gaṇas) (in the fourth).

---

1. The Purānic reading is corrupt.
2. The text wrongly reads gaṇādika instead of gaṇādaṁ.
3. The text wrongly reads Lavanī.
4. The text reads wrong.
5. The text is corrupt.
10. In Upasthitapracupita, when there are two nas, sa, two nas, na again and two sas in the third quarter, it is Vardhamâna. Šuddhavirādârśabha\(^1\) is said to have ta, ja, and ra (gaṇas) (in the third quarter) (in the Upasthitapracupita). Then I shall describe the half-equal metres.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYTHREE*  

Description of metres having equal characteristics in the alternate quarters

Fire-god said:

1. The metre Upacitraka (consists of) three sas, la, and two gas (in the first quarter), three bhas and two gas (in the second) (and the third and the fourth like the first and second). Drutamadhyā is said to have three bhas and two gas (in the first quarter), na, two jas and ya (in the second quarter) (and the third and fourth like the first and second quarters).

2. Vegavatī has three sas and ga (in the first quarter), three bhas and two gas (in the second). Bhadravirât has ta, jas, ra and gas (in the first quarter), and ma, sa, ja and two gas (in the second quarter).

3. (When the first quarter) has sa, ja, sa and ga and (the second quarter) has bha, ra, na and two gas it is Kērumati. Äkhyāniki has two tas, ja and two gas (in the first quarter) and ja, ta, ja and two gas (in the second quarter).

4. Viparitākhyāniki has ja, ta, ja and two gas (in the first quarter) and ta, ta, ja and two gas (in the second quarter). Hariṇaplutā\(^2\) has three sas, la and ga (in the first quarter), na, bha, bha and ra (in the second quarter).

5-6. Aparavaktra\(^3\) consists of two nas, ra, la and ga (in the

---

1. The text is corrupt.  
2. This chapter corresponds to Piṅgala ch. V, sūtras 32-45.  
3. The Purāṇa wrongly gives Hariṇavallabhā.  
4. The Purāṇa reads Aparākramam.
first quarter) and na, ja, ja and ra (in the second quarter). (Puṣpitāgrā has two nas, ra and ya (in the first quarter) and na, ja, ja, ra and ga (in the second quarter). Yavamati has ra, ja, ra and ja (in the first quarter) and ja, ra, ja and ra (in the second quarter). Śikhā consists of twentyeight (short letters) and a long syllable at the end (in the first quarter) and thirty letters and a long syllable at the end in the second quarter. (The third and fourth quarters are also similar.) (The metre) Khaṇja has got the characteristics reversed. Metres of similar characteristics (in the four quarters) are described now.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYFOUR*

Description of metres having similar characteristics in all the four quarters:

Fire-god said:

1. Yati (caesura) is said to be the break or pause (at the end of a quarter). (The metre) Tanumadhya (has) ta and ya (in a quarter). Kumāralalita has ja, two sas and ga (in a quarter) (the pause occurring at the end of every three and four syllables). Citrapadā is known to have two bhas and two gas (in a quarter).

2. Vidyumnālā has two mas and two gas (in a quarter). (The pause occurs after every four syllables.) Māṇavakrīḍitakā would be had with pha, ta, la and ga. (The pause occurs after every four syllables.) Halamukhi has ra, na and sa (in a quarter). (The pause occurs after three and six syllables.)

3. Bhujaṅgaśiśusuta has two nas and ma (in a quarter). (The pause occurs after seventh and second syllables.) Harīsa-rutā consists of ma, na and two gas (in a quarter). Śuddhavirāṭ

---

1. The Purāṇa reads Puṣpitā.
2. The Purāṇa reads Panamati.
3. The Purāṇa is corrupt.
4. The text is very corrupt.
has ma, sa, ja and ga in every quarter. (The pause occurs at the end of a quarter.)

4. Pañava has ma, na, ya and ga (in every quarter). (The pause occurs after every five syllables.) Mayūrasārini has ra, ja, ra and ga (in every quarter). (The pause occurs at the end of a quarter.) Mattā has ma, bha, sa and ga (in a quarter). (The pause occurs after fourth and sixth syllables.) Upasthitā has ta, ja, ja and ga (in a quarter). (The pause occurs after every second and eighth syllables.)

5. Rukmavati has bha, ma, sa and ga (in a quarter). (The pause occurs at the end of a quarter.) Indravajrā has two tas, ja and two gas (in a quarter). (The pause comes at the end of a quarter.) Upendravajrā consists of ja, ta, ja and two gas. (The pause occurs at the end of a quarter.) Mixed varieties are formed by (Indravajrā and Upendravajrā) coming alternatively at the beginning and end.

6-7. Dodhaka has three bhas and two gas. Śālinī consists of ma, ta, ta and two gas. The pause occurs after every four and seven syllables. Vātormī consists of ma, bha, ta and two gas. (The pause occurs after) every fourth and seventh syllables. Bhramaravilasitā has ma, bha, na, la and ga. (The pause occurs) after fourth and seventh syllables. Rathoddhatā has ra, na, ra, la and ga.

8. Svāgatā has ra, na, bha and two gas. Vintā has two nas, sa and two gas. Śyenī consists of ra, ja, ra, la and ga. Ramyā has ja, ra, ja and two gas.

9. (The metres belonging to) the Jagatī (class are now described). Varṇāṣṭhā consists of ja, ta, ja, and ra. Indravamsā has two tas, ja and ra. Toṭaka is said to have four sas.

10-11. Drutavilambita would be with na, bha, bha, and ra. Puṭa has two nas, ma and ya. (The pause occurs after) the eighth and fourth syllables. Jaloddhatagati consists of ja, sa, ja and sa. (The pause occurs) after every sixth syllable. (The metre) Tata is said to have two nas, ma and ra. Kusumavicitra has na, ya, na and ya. Cañcalākṣikā would have na, na ra and ra.

1. The reading in the text is wrong.
2. Piṅgalacchandās VI. 32 reads Vilāsini.
3. having twelve syllables in a quarter.
4. The Pūrāṇa reads Calāmbikā.
12. Bhujaŋgaprayāta has four ya (gaṇas). Sravini has four ra (gaṇas). Pramitāksarā has sa, ja and two sas. Kāntotpīḍā has bha, ma, sa and ma.

13. Vaiśvadevi consists of two maṣ and two maṣ. (The pause occurs after the fifth and seventh syllables.) Navamālinī consists of na, ja, bha and ya in each quarter. The Atijagāṭi (metres) are described now.

14. Praharśini has ma, na, ja, ra and ga. The pause is after the third and tenth (syllables). Rucirā has ja, bha, sa, ja and ga. It has pause after the fourth and ninth (syllables).

15-16. Mattamayūra consists of ma, ta, ya, sa and ga. The pause is after the fourth and ninth (syllables). Gaurī has three nas, sa and ga. Asambādha has ma, ta, na, sa and ga. It has pause after the fifth and ninth syllables. Aparājitā would have two nas, ra, sa, la and ga. (It has pause after every seven syllables.)

17. Praharanaṅkalitā has two nas, bha, na, la and ga. Vasantatilakā contains ta, bha, two jaṣ and two gaṣ. It is Simhoṇnatā (according to) the sage (Kāśyapa). It is Uddharśini according to Saitava.

18-20. Candrāvantā has four nas and sa. The same is (known as) Mālā, if it has the pause after sixth and ninth letters. The same would be Maṇiguṇanikāra (if it has pause after the eighth and seventh syllables). Mālinī has two nas, ma and two yaṣ. The pause is after the eighth and seventh (syllables). Rṣabhagajavilasita has bha, ra, three nas and ga. The pause is after seventh and ninth (syllables). Śikhariṇī has ya, ma, na, sa, bha, la and ga. Prthvi consists of ja, sa, ja, sa, ya, la and ga. It has pause after the eighth and ninth syllables. Thus they have been described by Piṅgala before.

21. It would be Vamśapratrapatita, (if a quarter has) bha, ra, na, bha, na, la and ga. The pause occurs after the tenth (and seventh syllables). Harini has na, sa, ma, ra, sa, la and ga. It has pause after every sixth, fourth and seventh (syllables).

22-23. Mandākrāntā has ma, bha, na, ta, ta and two gaṣ. It

---

1. The Purāṇa wrongly reads aṅga denoting six.
2. The Purāṇic text is corrupt.
3. The Purāṇa has not defined this metre.
4. The text is corrupt.
has pause after the fourth, sixth and seventh (syllables). Kusumita-labhālī (has) ma, ta, na and three yas. It has pause after the fifth, sixth and seventh syllables. (The following is based on the Vedic metre) Atidhṛti. Śārdūlavikṛḍita consists of ma, sa, ja, sa, two tas and ga. The pause comes after the twelfth and seventh (syllables).

24. (The following metres are based on the Vedic metre) Krṭi. Suvadanā has ma, ra, bha, na, ya, bha, la and ga. The pause comes after the seventh, seventh and sixth (syllables). (The metre) Vṛṭta has ga and la in order.

25. (The following metre is based on the Vedic metre Prakṛti.) Srādhārā consists of ma, ra, bha, na and three yas. The pause comes after seven, seven, seven syllables. Bhadraka has bha, ra, na, ra, na, ra, na and ga. (The pause occurs after) the tenth and twelfth (syllables).

26. (The following are based on the Vedic metre Vikṛti.) Aśvalalita consists of na, ja, bha, ja, bha, ja, bha, la and ga. (The pause occurs after) the eleventh (and twelfth syllables). Mattākṛḍā has two mas, ta, four nas, la and ga. (The pause comes after) the eighth and fifteenth (syllables).

27. (The following is based on the Vedic metre Saṅkṛti.) Tāṇḍī has bha, ta, na, ma, two bhas, na and yā. (The pause comes after) the fifth, seventh and twelfth (syllables). (The following is based on the Vedic metre Abhikṛti.) Krauṇacapadā consists of bha, ma, sa, bha, four nas and ga. (The pause comes after) the fifth, fifth, eighth (and seventh syllables).

28-30. (The following metres are based on the Vedic metre Utkṛti.) Bhujaṅgavijṛmbhita has two mas, ta, na, ra, sa, la and ga. The pause comes after the eighth, twelfth and seventh syllables. (The metre) called Apavāhaka similarly has ma, six nas, sa and two gas. The pause occurs after the ninth, sixth, sixth (and fifth syllables). (The Daṇḍakas are now described.) Daṇḍaka has two nas and seven ras (in a quarter). (The first variety of Daṇḍaka) is Caṇḍaṃvṛṣṭiprapatata. (It has twentyseven syllables in

1. The Purāṇa reads Samudraka.
2. The text is corrupt here.
3. The text reads Upahāra.
4. The text reads Caṇḍavṛṣṭipraghātaka.
a quarter). Other varieties (of Daṇḍaka) such as Vyāla, Jīmūta etc., would be had by adding one ra (each time) (to the original Daṇḍaka).

The remaining varieties are known as Pracitā. The tabular representation (of long and short vowels) of Gāthā (etc.) are described (now).

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYFIVE*

The tabular representation of long and short vowels of different metres

Fire-god said:
1. That which has not been described in the treatises on metrics is known as Gāthā. All syllables in a quarter would be long. The next one is made one (mātrā) less and the rest the same as the previous.
2. If the mark in the middle of (the metre) to be known is equal, the first letter would be short. If it is unequal it is long. If should then be made as half unequal. If it is the reverse the first letter would be short. When two are desired one will be reduced.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYSIX

Description of phonetics

Fire-god said:
1. I shall describe the phonetics. The letters are either sixtythree or sixtyfour. The vowels are twentyone. The consonants are twentyfive.

*The Purāṇa summarises the first sūtra and the concluding sūtras 24-34 of Piṅgala ch. VIII. The verses are very cryptic. Verses 3 and 4 have not been translated.
2-3. (The letters) *ya* and others (the semi-vowels and sibilants) are known to be eight. The twin sounds are four in number—such as the nasal sound, *visarga, ka, pa*. The letter *i* is known as (produced) by touching light. It is a protracted sound.

4. (The origin of the letters is described now.) The soul together with the internal organs and those in the abdomen and throat contacts the intellect and joins the mind with a desire to speak.

5. The mind impels the bodily fire, which urges the air to move. The air moving with the chest produces the sound (called) *mādhrā*.

6. The Gāyatrī metre at the time of morning ablution is recited in that (sound). (The air) moving in the throat gives rise to the (sound) *madhyama* that which is associated with Triśūbh for the midday ablution.

7-8. The air that reaches the head produces the (sound) *tārā* fit for reciting Jāgatī for the third (evening) ablution. The same wind moving upwards strikes against the head, reaches the mouth and produces the letters. These are divided into five (groups) on the basis of the articulation, period (of utterance), place (of articulation), efforts (to utter) and the sense conveyed.

9. Chest, throat, head, root of the tongue, teeth, nose, upper lip and palate are the eight places (of articulation) of the letters.

10. The articulation of the sibilants (*ś, s, s* and *k*) are of eight kinds such as innate nature, expansion, *śa, sa, ra, jihośmula* (the *visarga* before *k* and *kh*) and *upadhmaniya* (the *visarga* before *p* and *ph*).

11. The letters *u* and the like are excellent for combining compositions of metrical nature. The vowels at the end should be known to be of similar nature. Whatever else remain are the explicit sibilants.

12-13. A man incurs sin by pronouncing (letters) from wrong places (of articulation), by inauspicious and defective articulation. Similarly a person incurs merits. A person who employs good sounds, well articulated, according to the treatises and acquired from auspicious sources with a clean mouth shines in the (world of) Brahmā.
14. A person should not use harsh and indistinct letters, nasals, labials excessively with stammering and split tongue.

15. The letters should be uttered in such a way that they are not indistinct and are not mutilated. A person rejoices in the world of Brahmā by employing the letters properly.

16. The sounds are (divided into) three classes (such as) udāṭṭa (accentuated), anudāṭṭa (grave accent) and śvarīta (intermediate). They are distinguished as short, long and protracted on the basis of the period (of their pronunciation).

17-18. The letters a and ku¹ are from the throat, i and cu are from the palate, u and pu are the labials, the letters ṛ, ṭu, ra and sə are the cerebrals, and ḷ, tu, la and sa are the dentals. The sound hvaḥ is said to be from the root of the tongue. Learned men remember vah as labio-dental. (The sounds) e and ai are gutturo-palatials. O and au are remembered to belong to the gutturo-labials.

19. The gutturals a, ã, i, e etc. would have half a mātrā value. (The letters) which share the places of articulation are known to be not capable of being combined.

20. The vowels (are known to be) produced not by touch and the letters ya etc. by partial touch. These are known to be consonants not produced by touch. The other consonants are produced by touch. I shall explain the important among them. (The letters) aan and aḥ are nasals. (The letters) ha, jha and sa are known to have the bellowing sound.

21. The letters ya etc. possess partial sound. Kha, pha etc. are aspirated. The cara is known to have little aspiration. This is said to be long.

1. The letters ku, cu, ṭu, tu, pu stand for the four letters in the respective group.
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYSEVEN

Description of the characteristics of a kāvya

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the embellishments of poetry and drama and the like. The constituents of speech are sound, word, letters and sentence.

2. Whereas the three are obtained in the sentences of the treatises (sāstra) and epics, word is predominant in the treatises and the meaning is dominant in the epics.

3-5a. Kāvya is different from these two because the power of denotation is dominant (there). It is difficult to be born as a man in this world and (acquiring) knowledge is more difficult. Being a poet is still difficult. Poetic genius, originality of ideas and power of discrimination are still more difficult. The entire sāstra sought by people who are not learned does not materialise.

5b-6. The collection of letters falls into groups such as primary letters, secondary, the aspirated and the fourth. Words (are divided into two) on the basis of distinction as nouns and verbs. Sentence in brief is a series of words possessing a delightful sense.

7. Kāvya is that where literary embellishments are displayed and which possesses literary merits and is free from blemishes. The sources of (poetry) are the Vedas and the world. A kāvya not originated from the above sources could be understood from the import of the words.

8. Sāmskṛta (language) is for the gods and others. There are three varieties of Prākṛta for men. Kāvya etc. are known to be of three kinds—prose, poetry and mixed.

9. Prose is (defined as) unmetrical combination of words. It is divided into three: Cūṇaka, Utkalikā and Gandhivṛtta.

10. What is known as Cūṇaka has short compounds and does not have very soft words. (The same) with long compounds would be Utkalikā.

11. Gandhivṛtta would have medium arrangement of words and absence of very difficult compounds. (It possesses) semblance of metrical form.
12. The prose *kāvyā* is said to be divided into five—Ākhyāyikā, Kathā, Khaṇḍakathā, Parikathā and Kathānikā.

13-15a. It is known to be Ākhyāyikā where there is an eulogistic account of the ancestors of the author, a detailed description of the abduction of maidens, fight, separation and other calamities. It should be replete with *rti* (diction), *vr̥tti* (style) and *pravṛtti* (power of words). Its story is divided into Ucchvāsas (chapters). It should contain Cūṇakā type of prose at the end. It may (employ) Vaktra or Aparavaktra (metre).

15b-17. It is designated as Kathā where the poet briefly praises his ancestors in metrical composition, where there is another episode while introducing the main theme. There would not be any division. Sometimes there would be (divisions called) lambakas. Khaṇḍakathā is contained in Kathā in catuṣpadi (verses in four lines). Parikathā (is a combination of the characteristics of the two (Kathā and Ākhyāyikā).

18-19. The hero is known to be a minister, merchant or a brahmin. Pathos should be known (to be the sentiment) of the two. Love in separation is of four kinds. The first one is not obtained (here). It follows the story. Parikathā is known so because of its mixed characteristics of Kathā and Ākhyāyikā.

20. Kathānikā (is defined as beginning with) the (sentiment of) terror embodying sentiment of love and (sentiment of) wonder at the end. It is accomplished with good sense and is free from bombastic (expressions).

21-23a. Padya is (a metrical composition) of four lines. It is divided into two—Vṛttta and Jāti. Vṛttta beginning with Ukthā and ending with Utkṛti is regulated by the number of letters. Jāti is that where the syllabic instants are counted according to Kāśyapa. According to Piṅgala Vṛttas (are divided) into three—equal (quarters), half-equal and unequal. It is the ship of knowledge for those desirous of crossing the deep ocean of Kāvyā.

23b-27. The family of poetry (consists of) Mahākāvyya, Kalāpa, Paryābandha, Viśeṣaka, Kulaka, Muktaka, and Kośa. A Mahākāvyya is divided into sargas (cantos) and is begun with Sanskrit and those of similar nature are not avoided. The equivalent (Prākr̥ta) does not become a blemish. The theme has its
origin from historical incidents or other real incidents. It may
describe council of states, sending of emissaries and marching
(of soldiers) in battle-array. It should not be very elaborate. It
should be composed in equal (sama) (metres) such as Śakvari,
Atijagati, Atiśakvari, Triṣṭubh, Puṣpitāgrā and Vaktra. Muktā
describes different incidents not having short cantos.

28-29a. (One canto may be composed) in the Atiśakvari
and Aṣṭi (metres), another in mixed metres, whereas some other
canto (may be composed) in the Mātrā. The last canto (may
be employed) for praiseworthy (matter). This optional rule is
very much condemned. Hence good people do not respect it
especially.

29b-32. (Poetry) should be adorned with description of
cities, seas, mountains, seasons, (the rise of) the moon and sun,
hermitages, trees, gardens, sports in the water, drinking bouts
and amorous dalliances, sending of female emissaries, the
accounts of unchaste women, darkness, pleasant breeze and
delineation of other vibhāvas (condition that produces a state of
mind). It should contain all styles, power of words, bhāvas
(states of mind), dictions, sentiments, qualities and embellish-
ments. That is why (it is called) a Mahākāvya and its com-
poser a great poet.

33. The sentiment is its very life even though verbal
ingenuity may be predominant here. (It gains) a body from the
sentiments in the eloquent expressions being accomplished with
special efforts.

34-36. The fruit of the all-pervading fourfold object of
human existence has been explained through the medium of
the hero. Kalāpa is composed in the same metre throughout
and is soft on account of the Kaisikī vṛtti (style). Here the
sentiment is incipient love and sojourn abroad. It is Viṣeṣaka
when it contains (mention of) attainment etc. and (is composed)
in Sanskrit or any other (language). Kulaka would have many
couplets. It (is also known as) chained. Muktaka consists of
single verses and is capable of gaining the admiration of good
people.

37-38. Kosa is full of elegant verses of great poets. It is
divided into (sections called) Vrajaśī pleasing to the learned men. Where there is power comparable to splendour and in which there is a difference of the metre in a canto, (it is known as) the mixed. It is known to be (divided into) two—Vapu and Prakīrṇaka. Prakīrṇaka can be heard (read) and represented on the stage by all kinds of expressions.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYEIGHT

Description of the different types of drama

Fire-god said:

1-4a. (Drama consists of) twentyseven types—Nāṭaka, Prakaraṇa, Ḍīma, Īhāmṛga, Samavakāra, Prahasana, Vyāyoga, Bhāṇa, Vīthi, Aṅka, Troṭaka, Nāṭikā, Saṭṭaka, Śilpaka, Karna, Durmallaikā, Prasthāna, Bhāṅkā, Bhāṇī, Goṣṭhī, Hallishaka, Kāvya, Śrigadita, Nāṭyarāsaka, Rāsaka, Ullāpyaka and Preṅkhana.

4b-7a. The general and particular (are) the two courses for the characteristics (of a drama). The general (relates) to all topics. The other one exists in certain (topics). After the preliminary function (relating to the drama) is finished, the two (come into operation). The general (relates) to both place and time, sentiments, emotions, excitants and ensuants, gesticulations, act and position because they pervade all through. The particular is to be employed as the occasion (arises) and the general is described first.

7b-10a. Drama is said to be the means of attaining the threefold ends of life. The preliminary function is its instrument and course of action in the proper way. There are thirtytwo components beginning with benediction. Salutation to gods, praise of preceptors, and the blessings etc. of cow, brahmins, kings and others are sung. The stage-director (is introduced) after the benediction. This is set in (all) the dramas.

1. The text wrongly reads Brahmā.
10b-11a. (The poet) should indicate the following five—the successive order of the teachers, the praise of the lineage, the power of the poet, the relation and the purpose of the kātyā.

11b-17a. It should be known by learned men as the Prologue (Āmukha) in which an actress or a jester or an attendant converses with the stage-director using charming expressions befitting the purpose with mutual objections or doubts relating to the subject matter. It is also (known as) Prastāvanā. Pravṛttaka, Kathodghāta and Prayogātiśaya are the three divisions of Āmukha arising in the elements of the germ (of the plot). It is known as Pravṛttaka where the stage-director describes the timely entrance of a character with reference to the time that has commenced. It is said to be Kathodghāta (opening of the story) in which the characters enter taking up the remark or the sense of a remark of the stage-director. It is said to be Prayogātiśaya (superseding of a performance) in which the stage-director describes a particular contrivance in the midst of the proceedings and a character enters thereafter.

17b-18. The incident is said to be the body of the dramas and others. ‘Established’ and ‘Fancied’ are known to be its two kinds. The ‘Established’ is found in the scriptures and the ‘Fancied’ is the creation of the poet.

19-20. The Arthapraṇāṣṭis (the leading sources in a drama) are five—the germ, drop, episode, an intervening episode and denouement. The endeavour is also of five kinds—the beginning, effort, prospect of attainment, certainty of attainment and attainment of fruit in order.

21. The opening, progression, development, pause and conclusion are also the five junctures in order.

22. That which is described only a little spreads in many ways and which ends with the fruit is said to be the germ.

23. That is said to be the opening in which there is the germination of the germ giving rise to various matters and sentiments conforming to the body of the poetic composition.

24-25. The composition of the desired theme, continuity of the narrative, interest in the representation, concealment of that which should be concealed, narration as a wonderful thing and making explicit the thing that is to be made explicit—(These are the objects of the components of the juncture). The
poetic composition (bereft of the divisions of the juncture) is not excellent in the same way as a crippled person.

26-27. Even a little incident does not occur without (reference to) the place and time. Hence the place is described (now) because of the employment of these two (in a drama). Bhārata is among the countries and the three yugas beginning with the Kṛtayuga with reference to time. There is no rise of happiness or grief without these two for beings anywhere. And contextual narration of creation and others while (describing) creation does not become a defect.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYNINE

Description of the sentiments, emotions, hero etc.

Fire-god said:

1-2. The Supreme Brahman, who is imperishable, eternal, unborn and mighty is said to be the single consciousness, effulgence and Supreme Being in philosophy. Bliss is natural to him. Sometimes it is manifested. The manifestation of this is called consciousness, charm and sentiment.

3. Its first modification is known as self-consciousness. Conceit (is produced) then and the three worlds get exhausted in that.

4. Pleasure (proceeds) from conceal and this attains gratification on account of (contact with) the transitory (feelings) etc. in general and is declared as the (sentiment of) love.

5-9a. Comic (sentiment) and others which are verily its other varieties, whose characteristics are exhibited by their respective special permanent moods by being expanded by the qualities such as goodness, have their origin from the Supreme Soul. The erotic (sentiment) is produced from attachment. The (sentiment of) wrath is born from fierceness. The heroic (sentiment) is born from haughtiness. (The sentiment of) disgust is said to be originated from revulsion. The comic (sentiment) is
produced from the erotic (sentiment). The sentiment of pathos (is) from fury. (The sentiment of) wonder arises from heroism. (The sentiment of) fright would be from disgust. Among the sentiments of love, humour, pathos, fury, heroism, fright, disgust, wonder and tranquility, four sentiments are self-developed (as described above).

9b-11. The goddess of speech does not shine without sentiment like the goddess of wealth without renunciation. The poet alone is the creator in the boundless course of poetry. The universe changes in the way (he) likes. If the poet is impassioned in his poetry, the world becomes verily full of sentiment. If the poet is detached, indeed it becomes manifested as devoid of sentiment.

12-13a. There is no (poetic) sentiment devoid of emotion. There is no emotion devoid of sentiment. (The poets) bring into being the sentiments and the sentiments are being produced by these (emotions), (namely), the eight permanent emotions beginning with love, stupor and the like and the transient emotions.

13b-15. Love is said to be the feeling of happiness in respect of (the object) agreeable to the mind. Laughter is said to be the expansion of the mind through mirth etc. (People) describe fear as mental affliction (arising) from seeing a picture etc. Disgust is censure of things which bring misfortune. Wonder is the expansion of the mind (arising) from seeing things pre-eminent.

16-22. The eight (transient emotions) such as stupor (are) from goodness, passion and ignorance. Stupor is a resistance of effort (paralysed state) brought about by excessive fear or love. Perspiration is water from the body originating from internal agitation accompanied by fatigue and attachment. The internal horripilation (is) the heaving of the body (caused) by joy etc. Broken speech originates from joy etc. and hoarse voice (is caused) by fear etc. Grief is said to be the distress of the mind (caused) by the destruction of the desired (thing) etc. Anger is the awakening of fierceness resembling contradiction. Enthusiasm is said to be the sense of gaining the desired goal. Trembling is declared as the stupefaction arising from the agitation of the mind. Change of colour is the reverse of splendour arising
from grief etc. Tear is known as the water from the eyes produced by sorrow, happiness etc. Loss of consciousness is the cessation of (the working) of the sense-organs due to fasting etc. The depression of the mind arising from indifference (to worldly things) is said to be despair. Debility (is) physical langour from mental suffering and the like from the body.

23. Indifference arises from dependence on doubt. Envy is jealousy. Intoxication (is) the infatuation of the mind arising from the use of wine etc.

24. Weariness (is) exhaustion arising from the inner body caused by excess of work. Aversion of the mind towards acts such as love etc. is said to be indolence.

25. Miserable state is due to deviation from goodness. Thought is contemplation of objects. Perplexion is said to be not finding the mode of doing (a thing).

26. Recollection would be the reflection of an enjoyed thing. Opinion (is) ascertainement of purpose brought about by knowledge of reality.

27. Bashfulness (is) certain shrinking of the mind arising from passion and the like. Fickleness would be unsteadiness. Joy is the pleasure of the mind.

28. Excitement is the distress of the soul caused by the hope of remedy. The loss of intellect in those to be done is said to be stupidity.

29. Equanimity is the elevation in wealth on the attainment of the desired end. Pride is contempt for others and attitude of supremacy of the self.

30. Impediment caused by fate and the like in respect of the desired object is despondency. An unsteady condition caused by desire when the desired end has not been gained is longing.

31. Absent-mindedness (is) immobile condition causing benumbing of the senses and the mind. Terror (is) repeated surprise in the mind (caused) by opposition and the like in war.

32. Intolerance (is) non-pacification of anger. Awakening (is) the rise of consciousness. Dissimulation is the concealment coming under the range of gesture and appearance.

33. Harshness of vehement verbal attack arising from anger is known to be fierceness. Conjecture is examination
and determination. Disease (is) the impediment of the mind and body.

34. Madness (is) incoherent utterances and the like caused by passion and the like. Tranquility (is) the cessation of passion of the mind by means of the knowledge of reality and the like.

35-38. The emotions and sentiments should be employed by poets in poetry and the like in which (the emotions of) love and the like are developed. (The means) by which they are developed is known as excitant. It is of two kinds—supporting and enhancing. The supportive excitant is that on which the group of emotions such as love subsists. It is produced through (the medium of) the hero and the like. The hero is known to be of four types—brave and noble-minded, brave and haughty, brave and sportive and brave and tranquil. (The hero is also classified as) faithful, gallant, sly and saucy (on the basis of his relationship with one heroine or more).

39-40. Comrade (Pithamarda), Companion (Vita) and Jester (Vidushaka) are the three minor heroes who help the hero in love as pleasure companions. The comrade is without resource. The companion is beautiful and belongs to the same country. The jester is the provider of mirth. The heroes and heroines (are of) eight (types) (as described in verse 37).

41. According to Kausika, (the heroine may be) one’s own or belonging to another or remarried, and general but not remarried. Thus there are many types.

42. The enhancing excitants are those which excite the feelings in the subsisting excitants by (means of) different kinds of refinement.

43. The sixtyfour (fine) arts are divided into two according as they begin with action or music. Jugglery, memory, and perhaps jester and the aids to jester (are included) in these.

44-45. The ensuant is known to be only the exertion of the mind, speech, intellect and the body arising from recollection, desire, hatred and effort of the learned and caused by the excited and accomplished emotions of the supportive excitant. Moreover this is experienced and certainly arises (after love etc.) and hence defined here.
46. The exertion of mind is said to be characterised by the occupation of the mind. This is also known to be twofold as relating to men or women.

47. Those relating to men are eight—beauty, vivacity, grace, steadiness, equanimity, gallantry, magnanimity and dignity.

48. Beauty (prevails) in contempt for inferiors and emulation of superiors. (It is) heroism. (It is) the cause of dexterity and the like. Beauty occurs in mental virtue in the same way as a house becomes beautiful.

49-50. The excitan ts of women are said to be (of) twelve (kinds)—(primary indication of) emotion, its manifestation (a little), its decided manifestation, brilliance, loveliness, lustre, sweetness, heroism, boldness, generosity, firmness and gravity. The primary indication of emotion arises from a little of joy and the little manifestation is the sportive indication of emotion.

51-54. The exertion of speech would be the appropriateness of speech. It is indeed (of) twelve (kinds): conversation, excessive utterance, sorrowful speech, repeated speech, question and answer, evasion, sending a message, expounding, pointing out truth, description of something else, instruction and dissimulating (speech). This process is for the understanding. It is said to be the exertion of good intellect. It has three divisions, namely, diction, mode, and perseverance.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTY

Description of diction and mode

Fire-god said:

1. Diction (is essential) for a good knowledge of speech. It is of four kinds—Pāñcālī, Gaṇḍadeśīyā, Vaidarbhi and Lāṭaja (respectively belonging to the regions Pāñcāla, Gaṇḍa, Vidarbha and Lāṭa).
2-4. The Pāncālī is endowed with metaphorical expression. (It is) soft (and has) shorter compounds. The Gauḍiyā is a loose composition having long compounds and not having many metaphorical expressions. The Vaidarbhī is not a very soft composition. It is devoid of metaphorical expressions and is free from compounds. The Lāṭiyā (is) a clear composition not having too many compounds. This is also devoid of much metaphorical expressions.

5. The mode is uneven in the actions (of a drama). It has been established as fourfold—Bhārati, Ārabhaṭī, Kauśikī and Sātvatī.

6. The diction Bhārati is said to be known so because it was formulated by Bharata. It is predominantly verbal, (consists) generally (of actions) of men but also of women and has expressions in Prākṛta.

7-9. Bhārati has four components: Vithi, Prahasana and Prastāvanā of the drama and the like. The sub-divisions of Vithi are thirteen: Udghātaka, Lapita, the second, Asatpralāpa, Vāksreni, Nālikā, Vipāna, Vyāhāra, Trimata, Chala, Avaskandita, Gaṇḍa, Mrdava and Aṅcita, the thirteenth.

10. Prahasana is the speech ridiculing the ascetics and the like. Ārabhaṭī is known to be abounding in trickery, witchcraft, war and the like. (It is of the varieties) Saṅkṣiptaka, Avapāta and Vastūthāpana.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYONE

Description of the actions and movements of the limbs

Fire-god said:

1. The exertion of the body is regarded as the particular gesture relating to the limbs and subordinate limbs and as their action. The former generally relates to women.

1. The amended reading is Avalagita.
2. The amended reading is Vāgycōl.
3. The amended reading is Avasyandita.
4. The printed text wrongly reads ucita.
2-5a. It is (divided) into twelve—sportiveness, playful gesture, cessation (of care in dress etc.), amorous play or movement, amorous agitation consisting of laughter, weeping, etc., involuntary expression of affection towards the lover, repulse of lover’s caresses, indifference towards a beloved object (*bibboka*), that which arises from tenderness (*lalita*), affected by passion or emotion, pleasure-giving pastime and amorous sport. Sportiveness (is) the imitation of the gesture of the beloved person in a hidden abode. Playful gesture is said by good people as exhibiting some peculiarities a little. *Kilaṅgaṇita* is the combination of laughter, weeping and the like. *Bibboka* is some kind of perturbation. *Lalita* arises from tenderness.

5b-6a. The head, hand, chest, side, loin and foot (are) successively (known) as the limbs and the creeper-like (tender) eyebrows and the like as the minor limbs.

6b-7a. (There cannot be) the use of the limbs and minor limbs without the exertion born of effort. It is straight and indirect sometimes.

7b-9a. The head is known (to move) in thirteen ways—trembling, shaking, gentle shaking (*dhūta*), violent shaking (*vidhūta*), excessive movement (*parivāhita*), agitated, tossed, graceful, contracted, turned round, raised upwards, bent downwards and rolling.

9b. The movement of the eyebrow should be known as sevenfold (such as) lowering, knitting etc.

10. The glance (is said) to be threefold as being related to the sentiment, the permanent (feeling) and the transitory (feeling). It is divided into thirtysix kinds, among which eight arise from sentiments.

11. The function of the pupil is ninefold—moving, rolling and the like. (The actions of) the nose are known to be six. (Those of) respiration are said to be nine.

12. The actions of the lower lip are of six kinds. The actions of the chin are of seven kinds. Those of the face beginning with perturbation are of six kinds. (The actions of) the neck are known as of nine kinds.

---

1. The text explains only five among these.
13-19a. The hand is employed as unfolded and folded by the character. One banner, three banners, scissor-edge, half-moon, opening up, parrot-beak, fist, pinnacle, wood-apple, club-edged (?), needle-pointed, lotus bud, snake-hood, deer-head, kāṅgulaka, alapadma, round pillow, bee, swan-mouth, swan-wing, pincers, blossom, spider and cock are the twentyfour of the unfolded hands. Those of the folded hands are thirteen—slightly folded or open pigeon, crab, svastika. kāṭakavardhamāna¹, asaṅga², niṣadha, swing, flower-casket, crocodile, elephant tusk, bahista-ṃbha³ and vardhamāna.

19b-20. The chest may be of five kinds, such as a little curved and straight⁴ etc. The belly is threefold—not very slender, slender⁵ and full. The actions of the sides are five. The actions of the shank are also five. The action of the feet in dance and the like in a drama is known to be manifold.

---

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYTWO

Definition of dramatic representation

Fire-god said:

1-2. Dramatic representation should be known by learned men as carrying forward the sense (of the drama). It arises in four ways resting on internal feeling, speech, limbs and bringing out (the feeling). Stupor and the like are the internal (feeling). The speech is the beginning of speech. That relating to the limbs is the exertion of the body. The internal feeling is the operation of the exertion of the intellect.

3. The employment of sentiment and the like arising from

¹ The text reads kāṭaka and vardhamāna. Cf. NS IX. 8-10 reading these two as one.
² utṣaṅga (lap). Cf. NS IX.
³ Cf. NS IX. given as avahittha (dissemination of internal feeling).
⁴ The text wrongly reads nairāna. Cf. NS IX.
⁵ The text reads khaḍa for khalla in NS X.
conceit are being described now. Independence of all kinds (of gesticulation) is meaningless without this.

4. The erotic (sentiment) is said to be twofold, namely, love in union and love in separation. Both these are again twofold, namely, concealed and manifest.

5. The erotic (sentiment) known as love in separation is fourfold—incipient love, jealous anger, sojourn abroad and pathos.

6. The other kind is different from these in four ways and has the characteristic of increased enjoyment. But it does not surpass the former.

7. It arises in men and women. Love accomplishes it. All internal emotions except the change of colour and loss of consciousness (are) in it.

8-9a. The erotic (sentiment) thrives (aided) by piety, wealth, pleasure and emancipation on particular supportive (excitants) and (becomes) uninterrupted by their peculiarities. The erotic (sentiment) should be known as twofold consisting (of the mode) of speech and the act of decoration.

9b-11a. The comic (sentiment) is said to be fourfold¹—smita, smile in which the teeth are not visible, hasita, in which the tips of the teeth are slightly visible and the eyes are dilated, vihasita, that is sonorous, upahasita, that is crooked², apahasita², that is with sound and atihasita, that is without sound.

11b-12. The sentiment known as pathos is of three kinds—arising from violation of virtue and originating from loss of wealth. While sorrow is the permanent (emotion), pleasure is considered the dominant (emotion) of the former two (sentiments of erotic and comic).

13. The sentiment of wrath is threefold—by means of limbs, dress and speech. Its accomplishing factors are anger, perspiration, horripilation and trembling.

14. The heroic (sentiment) is threefold—heroic in libera-

---

1. The purāṇa mentions only four divisions but defines six as in NS VI. 51-52.
2. The purāṇa wrongly reads jihoa instead of jihma.
3. Wrongly printed as pāpahasita.
lity, heroic in virtue and heroic in battle. Enthusiasm is said to be the cause of its accomplishment.

15. The sentiment called terror which arises at the commencement (of an action), follows the heroic (sentiment) only. Fear is its accomplishing factor.

16-17a. (The sentiment of) disgust is said to be twofold—agitating and distressing. The agitating (type) would arise on account of stink\(^1\) and the like and the distressing (type) by means of blood and the like. Aversion gives rise to it and the sattvika element recedes in it.

17b-19a. The elements which add beauty to poetic compositions are said to be the embellishments. These embellishments are threefold—(tending to embellish) word, meaning and both. Rhetoricians declare those which are capable of embellishing word by means of proficiency and the like as embellishments of word.

19b-21. The nine, namely, chāyā, mudrā, ukti, yuktī, gumphānā, vākavākyya, anuprāsa, citra and duṣkara should be known as the embellishments of words because of the absence of commixture. There, chāyā (reflection) is the imitation of the utterance of others. It is again fourfold—imitation of popular saying, clever speech, childish utterance and intoxicated raving\(^2\) (matīa).

22. The proverb (ābhāṇaka) is a popular saying and they are common to all. That which follows the proverb is said to be the lokokticchāyā by the wisemen.

23. The clever are the cultured. Expert knowledge of fine arts is culture. That which delineates it is said to be the Chekotkitchāyā by poets.

24. All understand childish speech as the utterance of the ignorant. The imitation of the childish speech hence merely imitates this kind of speech.

25. The vulgar speech of the intoxicated is similarly (composed of) confused letters. That which is similar to this is called matioktitchāyā which even surpasses the intoxicated speech.

26. That which exhibits the power of the poet in its particular purpose (is called) mudrā because it affords pleasure. This is also (known as) repose in our opinion.

---

1. Text wrongly reads pluti instead of pūti.
2. The textual reading is wrong.
27. That issaid to be ukti (expression) in which some reasonable sense pleases the heart of good people because of some precept relating to the affairs of the world.

28. Ukti (expression) is sixfold— injunction and prohibition, restricted and unrestricted, and alternative and exclusive.

29-30. Combination is termed so by the wisemen because of its being made for connecting the two, word and sense, which are mutually unconnected. It is sixfold—inflected word, meaning of inflected word, sentence, meaning of sentence, context and amplification.

31. Stringing is the practice of composition within the scope of a word, meaning and their order. It is threefold based on imitation of word, succession of meaning and regular arrangement.

32-33. Vākovākyā is a sentence containing question and answer. It is twofold on the basis of the classification as straight speech and crooked speech. The first of these is natural speech. It would be of two kinds according as it is preceded by a question or not. But, crooked speech is intonation or occurs by indirect speech. Hence it is twofold.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYTHREE

Definition of the embellishment of words

Fire-god said:

1-2. Alliteration is the repetition of letters in (inflected) word and sentence. The class of letters of repetition is twofold—single letter and many letters. Five kinds of mode are produced from the repetition of a single letter—sweet, soft, mature, graceful and harsh.

3-4. The consonant letters of the sweet (madhurāvytti) should occur below the last letters of the (respective) consonant classes: the letters na and pa should be separated by short vowels, coupled with letter na and should be joined with hard aspirates and sibilants. The varga-varṇas (letters ka, ca, ṭa, ta and pa) should
not be repeated in more than five ways. They are not to be followed by short syllables.

5. The soft one abounds in (the use of) \textit{ra} and \textit{la}. In the mature one, (the letters) \textit{pa}, \textit{na} and (other) consonants are joined with (the letter) \textit{ra} at the head. But neither the cerebral nor the fifth (letters of the consonants are joined).

6-10a. The remaining (letters) would be present in the graceful one. The harsh one is said to be that in which the sibilants are joined with the very same letters. There is abundant repetition of vowels excepting the letter \textit{a}. The \textit{anuvāra} and \textit{vis-sarga} are also constant in harshness. The sibilants are combined with \textit{ra}. (The letters) \textit{a} and \textit{ha} are also abundantly joined for harshness. (They are also joined with) the semi-vowels, \textit{na} and \textit{ma}. Otherwise, if the conjunct is a hindrance, a hard consonant (is used) as the first letter for harshness. But the fifth one is not favoured. The harsh one is employed in censure and imitation of words.

10b-11a. Karṇāṭi, Kauntali, Kaunti, Vāmanāsikā, Drāvāṇi\textsuperscript{4} and Mādhavī\textsuperscript{5} (are) respectively (characterised) by the semivowels and sibilants.

11b-17. That which has repetition of many letters conveying different meanings is \textit{yamaka}. It is of two kinds—contiguous and non-contiguous. The contiguous one (has the letters) in close succession. The non-contiguous one (has the letters repeated) with intervals. These two become fourfold on account of two kinds of differences in the position (of the letters) and the (metrical) foot. (The first kind is) of seven varieties according (as \textit{yamaka} occurs) in one, two and three at the beginning, beginning of the foot, in the middle and at the end (of the metrical feet). The other kind occurs in six ways when the commencement of one, two or three metrical feet is similar in each successive foot with reference to each preceding one. The third (variety)

1. The printed text reads \textit{va}.
2. The reading \textit{antasthābhinnamābhyaṇca} in the printed text has been changed to \textit{antasthābhinnamābhyaṇca}.
3. The correct reading seems to be \textit{Vāmanāsikā}.
4. Obviously wrong reading for \textit{Drāvāṇi}.
5. Obviously wrong reading for \textit{Mādhavī}.
is threefold (according as yamaka) occurs at the beginning, in
the middle and at the end of (the metrical) foot. Other yamakas
are many. The prominent ten are: pādāntayamaka, kānciyamaka,
samsargayamaka, vikrāntayamaka, pādādiyamaka, āmredita, caturvyara-
sita and mālāyamaka.

18. The repetition of a word is twofold according as it is
independent or dependent on others. Thus men know the repeti-
tion of words which have different purposes.

19. The compounded (repetition) arises from the compou-
dning of two repeated words. The uncompounded (repetition)
arises from the absence of compounding between the two words
from dissolving the compounds in one part of the metrical foot.

20. The repetition of a sentence is said to be possible in
this way. Alliteration is thus the foremost among the embellish-
ments by virtue of its fitness though being short in the middle.

21. That alliteration, where the similarity of sound is enjoyed
by means of any vr̥tti (mode), having uninterrupted sequence
of words, is charming.

22-23a. Citra (picturesque Kāyya) is said to be a compo-
tion of words exciting curiosity in a learned assembly. It
is of seven different varieties—Praśna, Prahelikā, Gupta, Cyuta,
Datta, Cyuta and Datta combined and Samasyā arising from
union of different meanings.

23b-24. That is Praśna (query) in which a reply is given
having similar arrangement of letters. It is twofold according to
the difference of reply to the question asked by one or two. The
query asked by one, again, is indeed twofold according as it is
compounded or uncompounded.

25-26a. Prahelikā (riddle) consists of words having even
two meanings concealed. It has two kinds—verbal and meaning-
ful. The meaningful arises from the comprehension of meaning
and the verbal from the knowledge of word. Prahelikā is said to
be of six kinds.

26b-27a. That is Gupta (concealed) in which even a part
of a sentence remains concealed and the resultant meaning for
which there is expectancy by that part is not wholly true. It (is)
also (called) Gūḍha (covert).

1. Obviously wrong reading for samudgayamaka.
27b-28. Where there is the appearance of a different sense by means of dropping a part of a sentence etc. and there is expectancy raised by that part, it is known as Cyuta (dropped). It is fourfold arising from the dropping of the vowel, consonant, bindu (anusvāra) and visarga.

29. That is said to be Datta (added) in which a second sense is suggested, even though a part of the sentence is given. Its varieties are considered to be the same as in the previous by means of vowels and the like.

30. It is said to be Cyutadatta (dropped and added) in which there arises a different sense even when another letter is inserted in the place of the removed syllable.

31. That is Samasyā (union) in which one verse involves good puns and is composed of various verse fragments. (It arises) from the blending of the composition of others and of one’s own.

32-33a. Duṣkara (difficult) is that (which is) constructed with very great difficulty, indicating poet’s ability and producing great delight in clever persons in spite of tastelessness. It is threefold from niyama (restraint), vidarbha¹ (variation) and bandha (structure).

33b-34a. Niyama (restraint) is considered to be the fulfilment of promise of the poet, who is delighted for his composition. It is threefold according as it (is regulated) by position, vowel and consonant.

34b-35a. Vikalpa (variation) is so called from the reverse and natural order (of letters). The reverse and natural order arises from word as well as sense.

35b-37a. The skillful composition (of different kinds) of the forms of various well-known objects by means of arrangement of letters repeated in many ways is said to be bandha (structure). It is (divided into) eight (varieties)—Goṁūtrikā, Ardhabhrāmaṇa, Sarvatobhadra, Ambuja, Cakra, Cakrabhjaka, Daṇḍa and Muraja.

37b-39a. (Goṁūtrikā) would have similar alternate syllables in each metrical foot in each half (of a verse). Goṁū-

¹. Obviously vikalpa. See verse 34b.
trikā (zigzagging like the cow’s urine) is twofold—the first kind is said to be Atvapada (horse foot) by others. The last kind of Gomūrrikā is also called Dhenu (cow) and Jālabandha (net structure). An arrangement of these is made by two halves and by half metrical feet.

39b-47. That is indeed Sarvatobhadra (good in every direction) where (i) the letters are arranged one below the other in successive order, (ii) the letters are arranged one below the other up to the fourth feet, and (iii) (the letters are arranged) from the fourth foot onwards the half foot in the reverse order. It is threefold—Sarasruha (lotus), Catuspatra (four-petalled) and Vighna, both of which are four-petalled. The uppermost (letters) of the first foot are the letters of the three feet. They occur indeed at the end of all feet. The last two letters of the preceding foot are at the beginning of the succeeding foot in the reverse order. The last two letters of the last foot (are in the same order) at the beginning of the first foot. This would be in (the lotus of) four petals. But there would be three letters in the lotus of eight petals. On the other hand, it is alternate, if it is a single letter, in (the lotus of) sixteen petals. A series of letters in the form of the petals should be drawn above the pericarp in the lotus of four petals and then made to enter the pericarp. One letter should be written in the pericarp and letters two at a time in the cardinal and intermediate (points) in the lotus of eight petals. The entrance and exit (of letters) should be made in the cardinal (points). The insertion of similar syllables (is done) in the middle of dissimilar letters occurring in the rows of petals on all sides in the lotus of sixteen petals.

48-52. Cakra (wheel) is twofold—consisting of four spokes and six spokes. The first one among these has the first and fifth letters in the quarter of the first half as similar. The fourth and eighth letters of the odd and even foot are in order in its northern, eastern, southern and western spokes. The four halves of the (two) feet should be in the nave. Its first letter should be taken as far as the last spoke, the remaining two feet (being)

---

1. The text is wrong. It has been corrected as tasyodakprāgavākpratyaga-raṣu
in the circumference. It is said to be the Brhat-cakra (big wheel), if the third letter at the end of the fourth foot and the first two letters are similar, if the tenth letters of the three feet are similar, if there are six letters at its beginning and end and if (a letter) is separated by two letters in the last foot.

53-54. (The two) feet are written one by one gradually in the two front spokes. But the tenth letter should be drawn in the nave and the fourth foot in the circumference. The first, last and tenth letters of the verse are similar. The first and the last (letters) of the two even feet (are also similar). The first, fourth and fifth letters of the first and fourth feet are similar.

55-58. If the third (foot) is produced by reversing the second and the petals are arranged, it is the Daṇḍa (staff). (It is known as) Cakrābyaka (lotus-wheel), if the second and seventh (letters) are similar in the first petal of a composition, (if) the succeeding two petals are similar by the two second (letters in each), (if) the second, sixth, fourth and fifth letters are similar in the two halves, (if) the first and the last feet, the seventh letters of the extreme halves are also similar. Then one should arrange the fourth and fifth similar (letters) in order. Similarly the two fourth (similar letters) of the krama feet at the end of the petals should be arranged.1

59-61. The first and the last of the two halves are similar in Muraja (drum). The letter occurs in the half-foot according to the natural or reverse (order). Muraja (drum) shape is obtained thus. The last is set in such a way that the fourth becomes the first.*

62. The second (variety of) Cakra (circle) is accomplished with Śārdūlavrikṣṭa.2 The Gomūtrikā (bandha) (is composed) in all the metres. But other bandhas (are set) in Anuṣṭubh3.

63. If the names of the poet and the poetic composition are not found in these, friends become delighted and enemies also do not feel depressed.

64-65. The arrow, bow, sky, sword, club, lance, meeting

---

1. This line is not intelligible.
*Verses 60-61 are cryptic and the idea conveyed is not clear.
2. Metre consisting of ma, sa, ja, sa, ta, ta (gānas) and ga.
3. Consisting of eight syllables.
place of two, three or four roads, thunderbolt, mace, goad, chariotwheel, food of the elephant, pond and knife are (the different) bandhas (patterns in which verses are composed). Others (bandhas) should be known by the wisemen similarly.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYFOUR

Description of the embellishment of sense

Fire-god said:

1-2a. The embellishment of sense is said to be the beautifying of senses. Even the beauty of words is not charming without that. The goddess of speech is just like a widow without the embellishment of sense.

2b-3a. It is of eight kinds—svar̄pam (natural form), sādṛtyam (similarity), uprekiśā (fancy), atiśaya (exaggeration), vibhāvanā (imagination), virodha (contradiction), hetu (cause) and samam (evenness).

3b-4. The very nature of things is said to be the natural form. It is said to be twofold such as, innate and adventitious. The innate (is) natural and the adventitious is occasional.

5. Similarity is (the presence of) common attributes. It is indeed fourfold: Upamā (simile), Rūpakam (metaphor), Sahokti (description of the common action of two different objects as coexisting) and Arthāntaranyāsa (corroboration).

6-9a. It is named as Upamā (simile), in which, there exists a standard of comparison and a subject of comparison. The course of affairs proceeds by taking even a slight identity and the separate entity exists although possessing internal similitude. It is of two kinds—by compounding or not compounding the counter-parts (of comparison). The compounded (arises) from the compounding of the correlated expression and the latter is otherwise. The compounded is threefold—by (the compound

1. The reading dvicatuska seems to have sense instead of dvicaturtha in the text.
ing of) the word indicative of simile, (of) the word (expressive) of the subject of comparison and (of) both of these. The last one is of three kinds.

9b. Eighteen kinds of simile are distinguished.

10. The Dharma (attribute) and Vastu (object)-upamā is that where the common attribute is expressed or implied, (depending) on the prominence of dharma (attribute) or vastu (object).

11-12. Where the two (objects) having the (common) attribute are compared reciprocally, it would be Parasparopamā (mutual simile). When their (comparison) is reversal of what is well known, it would be Viṣparitopamā (reversed simile). Niśyamopamā (restrictive simile) is that in which (the resemblance) is restricted (to one excluding others). Aniyamopamā (unrestrictive simile) would be from (the resemblance found) in others as well.

13-14. Samuccayopamā (cumulative simile) consists of the mention of multitude of other attributes. When difference is indicated in spite of similarity of many attributes, it is (known as) Vyatirekopamā (simile of contrast), because distinction is spoken of. It is the Bahupamā (multiple simile) in which there is comparison with many similar (objects).

15. When the attributes are different for each standard of comparison it is indeed Mālopaṃ (garland of simile). If comparison is made by modifying the standard of comparison, (it is known as) Vikriyopamā (simile of modification).

16. That is well known as the Abhishtopamā (hypothetical simile) in which comparison is made by the poet by superimposing something non-existent in all the three worlds on the standard of comparison.

17. It is Mohopamā (illusive simile) in which, the subject of comparison is declared as identical with the standard of comparison, after imposing the standard of comparison on the subject of comparison. (It has) a mistaken statement.

18. Santāyopamā (simile by doubt) (arises) from the uncertainty of the real nature of both the entities having common attributes. Niścayopamā (determinative simile) (arises) from determining the subject of comparison after having doubted it.
19. Vākyārthopamā (simile of the sense of the sentence) arises from a comparison of verily the meaning of the sentences. Asādhiārthopamā (absolute simile), (which is) extraordinary, (occurs) when there is a comparison of a thing with itself.

20. When a subject of comparison is (a standard of comparison) of another it is considered as Anyasyopamā (simile of another). It is (known as) Gamanopamā(1) (simile of succession) when the subject of comparison of a thing becomes the standard of comparison of another in regular succession.

21. Upamā (simile) is again known to be of five kinds: praise, censure, fancied, similar and little similar.

22-23a. It is known by the name Rūpaka (metaphor), in which the subject of comparison is identified with the standard of comparison after the perception of the similarity of attributes. Or, Rūpaka is indeed Upamā itself in which the difference (between the standard and subject of comparison) is concealed.

23b. Sahokti (connected description) (arises) from the description (of objects) having similar attributes as being simultaneous.

24a. Arthāntaranyāsa (corroboration) arises when there is a posterior similarity (of a preceding statement to the succeeding one).

24b-25a. It is said to be Utpreksā (poetic fancy) where the condition of a sentient being or otherwise, which occurs in one way, is conceived (as occurring) differently.

25b-26a. It is named as Atiśayokti (hyperbole) wherein the attribute of an object, that has passed beyond ordinary limits, is described. It is twofold on the basis of possibility and impossibility.

26b-27a. That is said to be Visēṣokti (special utterance) where the imperfection in the quality, genus, action and the like (of an object) are perceived just for the purpose of showing (its) speciality.

27b-28a. That is Vibhāvanā (presumption) where a different cause or naturalness is presumed excluding a well known cause.

1. The printed text wrongly reads Gaganopamā.
28b-29a. It is said to be *Virodha* (contradiction) where there is realisation, by adjustment, of congruity between two incongruous things, with a previous contradiction.

29b-32. *Hetu* (cause) is that which accomplishes the object desired to be accomplished. It is produced in two (ways) such as *kāraka* (efficient) and *jñāpaka* (indicative). The efficient cause occurs before and (the other) after the production of an effect. These two kinds known as the precedent and antecedent arise from the controlling relation of cause and effect or identity. There is difference in the indicative one such as the perception of a flooding river. The rule of inseparable connection arises from the perception of inseparable connection.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYFIVE

*The embellishments of sound and sense*

*Fire-god said:*

1. An embellishment of both sound and sense adorns the two simultaneously just as a necklace laid in one place (adorns both) the breast and neck of a woman.

2. Six varieties of it are explicitly in existence, namely, *Praśasti, Kānti, Aucitya, Saṅkṣepta, Yāvadarthatā* and *Abhivyakti.*

3-4a. *Praśasti* (eulogy) (is) skillful speech (employed) for the act of melting the subtle (heart) as if it is subservient. It is of two kinds on account of the distinction as *Premokti* and *Stuti.* A friendly speech and a panegyrical are the synonyms of *Premokti* and *Stuti* (respectively).

4b-5a. *Kānti* (loveliness) (is) the fitness of the expressed (sense) and the expressive (word) agreeable to all the minds. (In that) the diction is befitting the theme and the mode to the sentiment.

5b. The propriety arises from strong and soft compositions.

6. *Saṅkṣepta* (brevity) (is) the comprehension of many meanings by means of few expressive words. *Yāvadarthatā*
(correspondence) is neither deficiency nor excess of the word and the theme respectively.

7-9a. *Abhiyakti* (manifestation) (is) explicitness. It has also two (sub) divisions, *Sruti* and *Aksēpa*. *Sruti* (direct hearing) is the word that gives up its own meaning. It is of two kinds—*Naimittiki* (occasional) and *Pāribhāṣiki* (technical). Technicality is convention. Hence arises the Technical. (The two) are again each divided as *Mukhyā* (primary) and *Ausp-acārika* (metaphorical).

9b-10a. That is Metaphorical by which a word whose function deviates from its own primary sense expresses, for certain reason, a sense which is not primary.

10b-12a. It is Indicatory and Qualitative by association with indication and qualities (respectively). Indication is said to be the apprehension (of a secondary sense) always associated with the expressed sense. Indication is regarded as fivefold arising from connection with the primary sense, proximity, cohesion, contrariety and association through action.

12b-13. The Qualitative (is) endless in view of the endlessness of qualities in accordance with the desire of the speaker. It is known here as *Samādhi* (transference) in which the attribute of one object is transferred to another by a person complying with worldly limits.

14-16. That is *Aksēpa* (interdiction), on account of which the vital essence not available from direct hearing (of the word) becomes manifest. It is also (known as) *Dhvani* (suggestion), since it is implied by suggestion by means of word and sense, where the (suggested) sense (appears) by subordinating1 its own (expressed sense). That is said to be *Aksēpa* (interdiction) where there is an apparent denial of the desired sense in order to convey something special.2 Again, this (is known as) *Aprastutastotra*3 (indirect praise) where there is a praise of another object deviating from the object on hand.

17. Because of brevity of expression that is termed by the wise as *Samāsokti* (brevity of speech), where another object

---

1. The reading is taken as *upasarjanam* instead of *upārjanam*.
2. The reading should be *viṣeṣa* instead of *viṣeṣo*.
3. The textual reading *atra stutam stotram* is obviously incorrect.
having common characteristics is suggested, when one object is described.

18. *Apahnuti* (concealment) (consists of) conveying another sense by concealing something. That is *Paryāyokta* (periphrasis) which is stated in a different way. Hence *Dhwani* (suggestion) is, indeed, *the name* of any one of these.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYSIX

Investigation into poetic excellences

*Fire-god said*:

1. Poetry, even though embellished, does not produce pleasure, if it is devoid of *gūṇas* (excellences). A necklace would only be burdensome to women, if their bodies are not beautiful.

2. It cannot be said that excellence would only be the absence of defect. Excellence such as *Śleṣa* (coalescence) and the like and defects such as *Gūḍhārtha* (obscurity of sense) and the like have been distinguished from one another.

3. An excellence is that which confers great charm to poetry. It exists in two forms such as general and particular.

4. That which is common to all is considered to be the general. The general (excellence) is threefold relating to word, sense and both.

5-6a. The excellence (of word) is that which relates to the word, the body of the poetry. The excellences of the word are sevenfold, namely, *Śleṣa* (coalescence), *Lālitya* (smoothness), *Gāmbhirya* (depth), *Saukumārya* (softness), *Udārata* (richness of expression), *Sati* (purity) and *Yaugiki* (derivative).

6b. That is said to be Coalescence in which there is a closely coalesced arrangement of words.

1. The reading *dasa bhāva* has been corrected as *dosābhāva*.
2. Probably the Ritis.
3. The reading *kāyaysārtram* is better than *kāyam sartram*.
7. Smoothness is declared as that in which a letter that is already combined in the words by means of (substitution such as) guna, adeśa and the like is never euphonically combined.

8. The wise name it as Depth which is a composition chiselled by special characteristics and which contains elevated words; others (name) the same as Susābdatā (grammatical correctness).

9. Softness consists of words mostly of unharsh letters. Elevatedness consists of elevated words and is endowed with praiseworthy epithets.

10. Splendidness (Ojas) (is) abundance of compounds. It is the life of prose etc. From the Highest Being to a clump of grass, manliness (comes) by ojas alone.

11-12. That is said to be the Excellence of Sense which brings out the excellence of a described object by whichever word. There are six varieties of it, viz., Mādhurya (tranquility), Samvidhāna (contrivance), Komalatvaṁ (softness), Udāratā (elegance), Praudhi (maturity) and Sāmayikatva (being conventional).

13. The gravity of appearance even in anger (and) deep state of composure is Tranquility. Contrivance (consists of) the effort for the accomplishment of an expected object.

14. An arrangement of words free from rigidity appearing after setting aside laxity (of structure) is (known as) Softness.

15. The excessive gracefulness of intention which indicates the characteristic of the disposition of being aimed at explicitly is the Elegance of Gunā.

16. That is declared Maturity in which there are mature reasonings impregnated with logical reasonings bringing about accomplishment of what is intended.

17. The apprehension of the sense in the demonstrated conclusion of something independent or dependent (is known as) ‘Being Conventional’.

1. The text wrongly reads as padya.
2.arthaguna seems to be better than the reading artha guna.
3. The reading raddhāntaḥ samayo mataḥ seems to be better than bhāvyāntaḥ samayogataḥ of the printed text.
18-19a. That which embellishes both word and sense is known by the name 'the Excellence of Both'. Prasāda (lucidity), Saubhāgya (loveliness), Tathāsaṅkhya (relative enumeration), Praśastatā (praiseworthiness), Pāka (ripeness) and Rāga (tint) are its six (varieties) divulged in their manifoldness by the wise.

19b-20. Lucidity is glorified as consisting of words possessing very well-known sense. That which, when expressed, suggests some eminent attribute, is declared by the wise as Saubhāgya (loveliness) or Udāratva (elegance).

21-22a. Tathāsaṅkhya (is) Relative Enumeration extended to similar things. Praiseworthiness is the description of even a terrible object by means of a word not terrible, when there is an occasion.

22b-23. A certain high maturity is said to be Ripeness. It is of four kinds, viz., as the ripeness of grape and that of coconut water etc. That is indeed the ripeness of grape in which there is sweetness both at the beginning and the end.

24-25. It is glorified as Tint which is a special characteristic for the purpose of poetic composition. It excels even the natural grace (when) put to constant practice. It is again of three varieties: yellow, saffron and indigo. That which is within the range of its own characteristics is to be recognised as the particular (Excellence).

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYSEVEN

Investigation into poetic blemishes

Fire-god said:

1. Blemish causes distaste in the refined men. It is sevenfold as applied to one, two and three of the speaker, the denoter and the denoted.

2-3. The speaker is certainly the poet therein. He is also known to be fourfold: suspicious, insolent, ignorant and learned. The denoter is that which affects the meaning on the ground
(for employment) and technicality. Its subdivisions are two: word and sentence. The characteristics of both have been stated.

4. Grammatical incorrectness and reconditeness are the only two defects of word. Wisemen know grammatical incorrectness as repugnance to the science of word.

5-6a. Reconditeness is said to be the non-employment by the well-versed. It is fivefold: Chāndasatva (Vedic usage), Avispaṭatva (lack of clarity), Kaṭatva (unpleasantness), Asāmayikatva (not being conventional) and Grāmyatva (vulgarity).

6b-9. Chāndasatva is that which is not found in the spoken language. Lack of clarity arises from lack of understanding. Obscurity of meaning, Perversion of meaning and Ambiguity are varieties of Lack of clarity. It is known as obscurity of meaning in which the sense is understood with difficulty. Perversion of meaning again is wrong perception of the meaning of a word other than that intended. Non-conformity to established meaning and Incapability (of expressing the intended meaning) approach this only. Ambiguity is said to be the doubtful nature of the expressed (meaning).

10-11a. Without causing distress to good people, faultiness attaches to unpleasantness which comprises difficult pronunciation. Not being conventional consists of deviation from convention. The sages named it Neya.

11b-12. Vulgarity is the damaging apprehension of a low meaning. It is threefold: arising from the expression of an intended vulgar sense, recollection (of the same) and from close resemblance (of an expression) with the word expressive (of that sense).

13. Defect of meaning is twofold: general and particular. The blemish that relates to many is said to be the general.

14. The general (impurities) are five, namely, Kriyābhrāṁśa (dropping of the verb), Kārakabhrāṁśa (dropping of the case-endings), Visandhi (lack of euphonic combination), Puraraktatā (tautology) and Vyāstasambandhatā (confused connection).

15. The dropping of the verb is the absence of the verb. Dropping of the case-endings again is the absence of cases begin-
ning with the subject. Lack of euphonic combination is the deficiency of the same.

16. It is twofold: deficient euphonic combination or repugnant. The repugnance of euphonic combination (arises) from difficulty in reading or from the appearance of a different sense.

17-18. The continued repetition of an expression is Tautology. It is also twofold: repetition of sense and repetition of word. The repetition of sense is also twofold: by making use of a chosen word and by means of a different word. In the repetition of a word, a word is repeated and not the sense.

19-21. The confused connection (is) improper connection that arises from the intervention (of a word). It is, indeed, threefold—arising from the implication of a different connection, from the occurrence of a different connection and in the absence of both of them, from internal intervention. Each one of these is, again, twofold by means of the intervention of a word or a sentence. Of the word and the sentence, the meaning\(^1\) is what is expressed, because it is intended to be conveyed. The expressed is divided into two, viz. already-developed or yet-to-be-developed.

22-23. The incapability of the cause is the state of causing obstacle to the intended. (It occurs in the following forms): inconclusiveness, contrariety, absence of invariable concomitance, being liable for a valid opposite argument, union of untimely reason, non-existence in the subject, non-existence in similar instance and existence in contrary instance.

24. The eleven kinds of meaninglessness do not become painful to those who are competent in poetry. They do not become defects in difficult compositions.

25. Obscurity of meaning does not make the knowers of defects in difficult compositions feel distress. Vulgarity does not annoy by being admitted by people (in general) and in technical works.

26. There is no blemish in the dropping of the verb because (the ellipsis) of the verb could be supplied. The dropping of

---

1. The correct reading is *vacyamartha*. 
the case (becomes possible) when the case is supplied by means of implication.

27. Non-occurrence of euphonic combination does not affect in the (case of a) praṇghṛya\(^1\) (vowel). Absence of disagreeable euphonic combination that arises from difficulty in reading does not become unpleasant in harsh utterances and the like.

28-29a. The repetition of a word and confused connection are good in alliteration. It is not a defect in understanding the sense. It is also not tarnished by (the defects) such as the inversion of order and the like of the case ending, number and gender. There is no distress for the wise in these.

29b. There is difference in number between the standard of comparison and the object of comparison there.

30-33. The right practice of the poets is glorified as the (poetic) convention, where there is (comparison) of many with one and many with many, which is good. It is twofold: general and particular, similar to excellence. That which is well known from the absence of dispute among famous knowers of established truth is considered as the general convention of poets. According as all the knowers of truth or only a few agree faultlessly, the general is twofold. The other (namely, the particular), arises from defective doctrine, such as the error of some people.

34-35a. Some sage has the knowledge of reasoning. Some (has) transitory (consciousness) of the created beings. Some (has) self-manifestation\(^2\) of knowledge. Similarly, there is grossness of known objects and uncertainty of words for the Arhats (Jains).

35b-36a. The Śaivas (devotees of Śiva), Vaiṣṇavas (devotees of Viṣṇu), Sauras (devotees of Sun god), who know the established truth, opine that Brahman is the cause of the world. (The cause is associated) with Pradhrāṇa (Primordial) for the Sāṅkhyaṣ.

36b-40. It is said to be the particular, in this world of speech, that people moving together and perceiving mutually,

1. That which is not governed by the rules of sandhi or euphony and is permitted to be written and pronounced separately.
2. The reading sa praṇaśītā seems to be better.
3. The followers of the Sāṅkhya philosophy, promulgated by Sage Kapila.
fasten upon. This being divided, is also known as twofold, according as being accepted as unreal and being non-accepted as real. That which gets affected by the means of knowledge such as perception and the like, is known as the unreal. That is to be accepted by the poet as the manifestation of knowledge. That alone which accomplishes an action with purpose, is (taken to be) the highest truth, out of ignorance. Brahman alone is the real, the highest truth, from knowledge. (Lord) Viṣṇu is the cause of creation and the like. He is embodied of words and embellishments. Knowledge is Parā (superior) and Aparā (inferior). One is released from birth by knowing it.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYEIGHT

List of mono-syllabic words

Fire-god said:

1-2. I shall describe the mono-syllabic (words) ending with the letters (of the alphabet). (The letter) "a" (denotes) (lord) Viṣṇu and negation. "Ā" (means) Brahmā, a sentence as well as a boundary. "Ā", when used as an interjection would also be (an expression of) anger and affliction. "I" (signifies) (God of) love. "I" (denotes) Rati (the wife of God of love) and Lakṣmi (Goddess of wealth and consort of Lord Viṣṇu). "U" (signifies) (lord) Śiva (and) "U", the demons and others.

3. "R" (denotes) a word and "R", (the deity) Aditi (the mother of Āditya). (The letters) I and Ī (respectively) (denote) Diti (the mother of the demons) and Guha (son of Śiva and Pārvati). "E" (denotes) the goddess and "ai" would mean Yogini (female attendant of the Goddess). "O" (signifies) Brahmā and "au", Mahēśvara (Lord Śiva).

4-5. "Am" (denotes) the God of love and "ah" a commendable thing. "Kā" (stands for) Brahmā and others (and) "ku" contemptible thing. (The letter) "kam" signifies void, the senses and a sword. A Gandharva and (lord) Vināyaka (lord of obstacles) (are denoted by the letter) "gam". "Go" (signifies) a song
and the singer. ‘Gha’ stands for a bell, a small bell and the like and beating. (The letter) ‘ṇa’ signifies desire and Bhairava (a terrible form of lord Śiva).

6. ‘Ca’ (stands for) the wicked (and) stainless. ‘Cha’ (indicates) division and ‘ji’, conquering. ‘Jam’ (denotes) a song and ‘jha’, commendable. (The letter) ‘ṇa’ (signifies) strength and ‘ṭaḥ’, singing.

7. ‘Tha’ (denotes) the orb of Moon, (lord) Śiva and tying. ‘Pa’ is regarded (as signifying) Rudra, sound and fear. ‘Dha’ (denotes) a drum and sound.

8. ‘Na’ (means) extraction and ascertainment. ‘Ta’ (signifies) a thief and the inside of the tail. ‘Tha’ (denotes) eating, ‘daḥ’, cutting, sustaining and ornamentation.

9. ‘Dhāḥ’ (signifies) Brahmā and the dhūtṝa (flower). ‘Na’ (stands for) a collection and correct course of action. ‘Pa’ is known (to denote) a garden. Pha’ is regarded (as signifying) a squall.

10. ‘Pha’ (stands for) phūkāra (blowing with the mouth) and fruitlessness. ‘Bi’ (denotes) a bird and ‘bhaṁ’, the asterism. ‘Ma’, would (mean) Goddess of wealth, measure and mother. ‘Ya’ (stands for) a sacrifice, traveller and a brave person.

11. (The letter) ‘raḥ’ (denotes) Fire (god), strength and Indra. (The letter) ‘la’ is said (to denote) the creator. ‘Vi’ (signifies) separation and ‘Va’, Varuṇa. ‘Saḥ’ (means) lying down and ‘sam’, happiness.

12. ‘Saḥ’ (denotes) excellence and ‘ṣaḥ’, the past. ‘Sa’ (means) Lakṣmī (the goddess of fortune) and ‘sam’ is regarded (as representing) locks of hair. ‘Ha’ (denotes) sustenance and Rudra (a form of Śiva). ‘Kṣa’ (stands for) the warrior class and regarded as the alphabet (imperishable).

13. (The letter) kṣa (denotes) (lord) Nṛsiṃha, Hari and the guardians of the land (and entrance). A sacred formula of one syllable (should be deemed as) the deity (itself whom it represents) and it confers enjoyment and emancipation.

14. The formula (running as) ‘kṣaum obeisance to Hayāsi-rasī’ confers all knowledge. The letter ‘a’ and the other letters

1. The horse-headed form assumed by Lord Viṣṇu to rescue the Vēdās.
described above are also) formulae. (They are known as) mātykāmantras and are excellent.

15-16. These (deities of the mātykāmantras) and the nine Durgā—Bhagavati, Kātyāyani, Kausikī, Caṇḍikā, Pracaṇḍā, Sūranāyikā, Ugrā, Pārvatī and Durgā. Om, we may know (the Goddess) Caṇḍikā, let us meditate on the goddess and may (Goddess) Durgā lead our mind to that. Then the worship should be done in the proper way together with the six accessories. The gaṇa should be an aspirate.

17-18. Then (the goddesses) Ajitā, Aparājitā, Jayā, Vijayā, Kātyāyāni, Bhadrakāli, Maṅgalā, Siddhi and Revati and the accomplished (deities) Vaṭukas should be worshipped. The nine guardian deities Hetuka, Kāpālika, Ekapāda and Bhīmarūpa (should be worshipped) in the middle.

19-20. Hrīm! O Durgā! (2) Protector! Oblations for the sake of perfection of the formula. Then (goddess) Gaurī, Dharma and others and the female energies (such as) Skanda should be worshipped. Prajñā, Jñānā, Kriyā, Vācā, Vāgīśi, Jvālinī, Kāminī, Kāmamālā, the energies of Indra and others should be worshipped.

21-23a. "Om gam" oblations" (is) the basic formula. "Gam, obeisance to Gaṇapati (lord of the Gaṇas)" (is) the accessory formula. The six accessory (worship should be done). They are Raktaśukla (red and white), Dantakṣa (having axis like tusk), Parāsūtakaṭa (powerful axe), Samodaka (having the sweet ball cake), Gandhādi (fragrance etc.), and Gandholkāya (to the person having a fragrant stick) in order. The elephant (god), the great lord of the Gaṇas (attendants) and having a magnificent incense stick should be worshipped. Oblation to Kūṃśaṇḍa, to the single-tusked one, to the destroyer of the three cities, to the black-teethed one, to one whose dreadful laughter startles (all), to one having elongated nose and face, to one having the lotus in the tusk, to Megholka, to Dhūmolka, to one having curved trunk, to the lord of obstacles, to the fierce and dreadful one, to one having the gait of the elephant of Indra, one having the serpent-lord (Vāsuki) as a necklace, to one bearing the crescent moon, and the lord of the Gaṇas (attendants). After having worshipped with these formulae ending with oblations and with
(the performance of) the oblations with sesamum, one would get wealth.

23b-24a. The formulae may, in the alternative, consist of the letters beginning with ka and with the subtle syllable and ending with obeisance separately having two ras and two faces and two eyes.

24b. I shall describe now the grammar that was imparted by Skanda to Kātyāyana.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYNINE

The pratyāhāras and fundamental rules in grammar

Skanda said:

1. O Kātyāyana! I shall describe the essence of grammar that is of the form of perfected words for imparting to the beginners.

2. Pratyāhāras etc. are the notations facilitating the function of the treatise, Aiṃ ṛk, eon, aiauc, hayavara, lan, nāmanānanānān jhabhaṇi, ghadhadhas, jabagajadās, khapachenahacatav, kapay, saṣasar, haḷ are (the fourteen) pratyāhāras. In the enumeration, the consonant at the end is indicatory. The vowel would be (read with) the nasal. The first letter being taking together with the indicative letter at the end, would become the denotative of the letters which occur in between such as an, eḥ, aṭ, yah, chau, jham, bhas, ak, ik, an, in, yan, with the letter na coming afterwards. (Similarly we have) an, yam, ṅam, ac, ic, aic, oy, may, jhay, khay, jav, jhau, khau, cav, sav, as, haṭ, vaṭ, jhaṭ, al, haḷ, vaḷ, raḷ, jhaḷ and al the pratyāhāras.

1. Several letters or affixes are comprehended as one syllable by means of combining the first letter of an aphorism with its final indicatory letter or if several aphorisms are comprehended, the final letter of the last member is combined with the first such as ṛk etc. denoting aiṃ etc.
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTY

The forms of completed euphonic combinations

Skanda said:

1-5. I shall describe the forms of finished combinations\(^1\) (of vowels and consonants). First (I shall describe) the combination of vowels.

- daṇḍa + agram = daṇḍāgram
- sā + āgatā = sāgatā
- dadhi + idām = dadhīdam
- nāḍī + ḫate = nadihate
- madhu + udakāṁ = madhūdakāṁ
- pīṭṛ + ṛṣabha = pīṭṛṣabha

The letter ' ḫ' also becomes similar.

- (hotṛ + īkāra = hotṛkāra)
- tava + idām = tavedam
- sakala + udakāṁ = sakalodakāṁ

The following is a half-vowel:

- tava + īkāra = tavalkāra
- sā + eṣā = saṣā
- sā + aindrī = saindrī
- tava + odanāṁ = tavaudanāṁ
- khaṭvā + oghaḥ = khaṭvaughaḥ are thus formed

- vi + asudhiḥ = vyasudhiḥ
- vasu + alaṅkṛtaṁ = vasvalaṅkṛtaṁ
- pīṭṛ + artha = pitrartha
- + upavana = pitrarthopavana
- nai + aka = nāyaka
- lo + aka = lāvaka
- te + iha = ta iha, tayha etc.
- te + atra = te'ṭra
- yah + atra = yo'ṭra
- jale + akajam = jale'kajam

---

1. The text gives only the combined forms. The individual words have also been given here for easy comprehension.
(The following do not undergo any change):

| aho  | +   | ehi  | =   | aho ehi |
| a    | +   | avehi| =   | a avehi |
| i    | +   | indrakam | =   | i indrakam |
| u    | +   | uttiṣṭha | =   | u uttiṣṭha |
| kavi | +   | etau | =   | kavi etau |
| váyu | +   | etau | =   | váyu etau |
| vane | +   | ime  | =   | vane ime |
| amī  | +   | ete  | =   | amī ete |
| yajñabhūte | +   | ehi  | =   | yajñabhūte ehi |
| deva | +   | imannaya | =   | deva imannaya |

6-9. I shall describe now the conjunction of the consonants.

| vák  | +   | yataḥ | =   | vágayaḥ |
| ac   | +   | ekamāṭṛkaḥ | =   | ajekamāṭṛkaḥ |
| śaṭ  | +   | ete   | =   | śaḍete |
| tat  | +   | ime   | =   | tadime |
| vá  | +   | ādi   | =   | vādi (?) |
| vák  | +   | nitiḥ | =   | vāñnitiḥ |
| śaṭ  | +   | mukha | =   | śaṃmukha etc. |
| vák  | +   | manasaṁ | =   | vāṁmanasaṁ |
| vák  | +   | bhágādiḥ | =   | vágbhágādiḥ |
| vák  | +   | śalāṃ | =   | vāksalāṃ |
| tat  | +   | śarīrakam | =   | taccharīrakam |
| tat  | +   | lunāti | =   | tallunāti |
| tat  | +   | caret | =   | taccaret |
| kun  | +   | āste | =   | kuññāste |
| sugan | +   | iha  | =   | sugaṇṇiha |
| bhavān | +   | caran | =   | bhavāṁścaran |
| bhavān | +   | chātro | =   | bhavāṁśchātro |
| bhavān | +   | tikā | =   | bhavāṁśtikā |
| bhavān | +   | takaḥ | =   | bhavāṁśtakaḥ |
| bhavān | +   | tirtha | =   | bhavāṁśtirtha |
| bhavān | +   | stheyān | =   | bhavāṁstheyān |
| bhavān | +   | lekhā | =   | bhavāṁlekhā |
| bhavān | +   | jayaḥ | =   | bhavāṁjayaḥ |
| bhavān | +   | šete | =   | bhavāṁšchete |
| bhavān | +   | ca šete | =   | bhavāṁcašete |
| bhavān | +   | šete | =   | bhavāṁššete |
bhavān + dīnah = bhavāṇdīnah
tvam + bhartā = tvambhartā
tvam + karisyasi = tvāṅkarisyasi etc.

The conjunctions of visarga are known (as follows):

10-11. kaḥ + chindyāt = kaśchindyāt
        kaḥ + caret = kaścaret
        kaḥ + taḥ = kaṭṭaḥ
        kaṭṭaḥ + sthaḥ = kaṭṭhaḥ
        kaḥ + calet = kaścalet

(In the following cases the visarga becomes the upadhāniya):

        kaḥ + khanet = kaḥ khanet
        kaḥ + karoti = kaḥ karoti sma
        kaḥ + paṭhet = kaḥ paṭhet or
        kaḥ + phaletta = kaḥ phaleta

(The following may occur in two forms):

        kaḥ + śvaṣuraḥ = kaśvaṣuraḥ (or)
                      kaḥ śvaṣuraḥ
        kaḥ + sāvaraḥ = kassāvaraḥ or kaḥ sāvaraḥ

(In the following cases there is no change):

        kaḥ + phaletta = kaḥ phaletta
        kaḥ + sayitā = kaḥ sayitā

(The following is an instance of change):

        kaḥ + atra yodhaḥ = ko’tra yodhaḥ

(The visarga is dropped in the following cases)

12-13. kaṭṭaḥ + uttamaḥ = ka uttamaḥ
devāḥ + ete = devā ete
bhōḥ + iha = bhō iha
sodarāḥ + yānti = sodarā yānti
bhago + vṛaja = bhago vṛaja

(In the following the visarga becomes repha (r)):

        supūḥ+sudūḥ+rātriḥ = supūḥ sudūrātriḥ
        vāyuḥ + yāti = vāyuryāti
        punāḥ + nahi = punarnahi
        punāḥ + eti = punareti
The visarga is dropped in the following cases:

\begin{align*}
\text{sa} & + \, \text{yāti+iha} = \text{sa yātiha} \\
\text{eṣa} & + \, \text{yāti} = \text{eṣa yāti} \\
\text{ka} & + \, \text{iśvarāḥ} = \text{ka iśvarāḥ} \\
\text{jyotiḥ} & + \, \text{rūpam} = \text{jyotirūpam}
\end{align*}

(The following are examples of other kinds of union):

\begin{align*}
\text{tava} & + \, \text{chatram} = \text{tavacchatram} \\
\text{mlecchadhīḥ+chidram+ā+chidat} = \text{mlecchadhiśchidramāc-} \\
& \text{chidat}
\end{align*}

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYONE

Perfected forms of inflection in the nouns

Skanda said:

1-3. O Kātyāyana! I shall describe to you the finished forms of inflections. There are two kinds of inflections—\textit{su} (substantives) and \textit{tiṇ} (verbs). The substantives have seven cases. (The inflections) \textit{su}, \textit{au}, \textit{jas} (constitute) the first (case) (Nominative). \textit{Am}, \textit{au}, \textit{jas} (are the inflections of) the second (case) (Accusative). \textit{Tā}, \textit{bhyāṁ}, \textit{bhīs} (are the terminations of) the third (case) (Instrumental). \textit{Ne}, \textit{bhyāṁ}, \textit{bhyas} (constitute) the fourth (case) (Dative). \textit{Yasi}, \textit{bhyāṁ}, \textit{bhyas} are (the inflections of) the fifth (case) (Ablative). \textit{Nas}, \textit{os}, \textit{ām} (are the terminations for) the sixth (case) (Genitive). \textit{Ni}, \textit{os}, \textit{su} (are for) the seventh (case) (Locative). These would be added after the uninflected substantives.

4. The substantives are twofold—ending in vowels and ending in consonants. Each one of this would again be threefold: masculine, feminine and neuter.

5-7. The models of these are given. Those which are not mentioned here (follow those) on account of their strength. (Those ending in vowels are to be declined as the following examples). \textit{Vṛksaḥ} (tree)\textsuperscript{1}, \textit{Sarvah} (all), \textit{Pūrvaḥ} (former), \textit{Prathamaḥ} (first), \textit{Dvitiyakaḥ} (second), \textit{Tṛtiyaḥ} (third), \textit{Khaṇḍapā} (protector of a group), \textit{Vahniḥ} (fire), \textit{Sakhā} (friend), \textit{Patiḥ} (husband), \textit{Aharpaṭiḥ} (Sun), \textit{Paṭuḥ} (clever), \textit{Grāmaṇi} (chief of the village), \textit{Indra} (the lord of the celestials),

\textsuperscript{1} The text gives only the nominative singular forms of the substantives in this chapter.
Khalapūḥ (one who sweeps), Mitrabhūḥ (being a friend), Svabhūḥ (an epithet of Brahmā), Suṣrīḥ (good fortune), Sudhīḥ (a wiseman), Pitā (father), Bhrātā (brother), Nā (a man), Kartā (doer), Kroṣṭu (a jackal), Napṛ (grandson), Surā (intoxicating drink), Rā (Rai means wealth), Gauḥ (cow), Dyauḥ (heaven), Glauḥ (Moon) (are) examples for the masculine (nouns) ending in vowels.

8-12a. (Examples for substantives ending with the consonants) : Suvāk (good expression or speech), Tvāk (skin), Prṣat (a drop of water or any other liquid), Samrāṭ (a paramount sovereign), Janmabhāk (one who has obtained birth), Surāt (a good sovereign), Āpaḥ (water), Marut (Wind), Bhavan (becoming), Dīpyan (shining), Bhavān (you) (polite form), Maghavān (Indra) (prosperous), Piban (drinking), Bhagavān (fortunate, hence denotes the lord), Aghavān (a sinner), Arvān (a horse), Vahnimat (possessing fire), Sarvavit (knower of all things), Supṛt (a good army), Susīmā (good boundary), Kuṇḍi (Kuṇḍin denotes Śiva, holding a bowl), Rājā (king), Śvā (horse), Yuvā (youth), Maghavā (Indra), Pūṣā (Sun), Sukarmā (doer of good deeds), Yajvā (sacrificer), Suvarmā (good armour), Sudharmaṇā (council of gods, court-hall of Indra), Aryamā (Sun), Vṛtrahā (Indra, killer of Vṛtra), Panthā (path), Sukakud (good summit) etc. and Paṇca (five), Praśān (one who is tranquil), Sutān (one who spreads well), Paṇca (five) etc., Sugauḥ (good cow), Surāḥ (one who is wealthy) and Supūḥ (good city), Candramāḥ (Moon), Suva-cāḥ (good speech), Śreyān (excellent), Vidvān (learned), and Uśanas (the preceptor of the demons), Pecivān (one who has cooked), Gauḥ (cow), Anadvān (an ox), Godhuṇ (one who milks a cow), Mitradruḥ (one who is treacherous to a friend), Śvaliṭ (one who licks like a dog).

12b-19. (Substantives) in the feminine (are) : Jāyā (wife), Jarā (old age), Bālā (young girl), Edakā (a ewe), Vṛddhā (old woman), Kṣatriyā (a woman of the Kṣatriya class), Bahurājā (land having many rulers), Bahudāmā (having many garlands) and Bālikā (an young girl), Māyā (illusion), Kaumudagandhā (smelling like a lily), Sarvā (all), Purvā (the preceding one) and Anyā (someone else), Dvitiyā (second one), Tṛtiyā (third one), Buddhī (intellect), Strī (woman), Śrī (Lakṣmī, goddess
of wealth), Nādi (river), Sudhīḥ (wise), Bhavantī (one who becomes), Divyantī (one who shines), Bhātī (one who appears), Bhāntī (one who shines), and Yāntī (one who goes), Śrīvatī (one who hears), Tūdatī (tormenting), Kārṇī (doer), Tūdantī (tormenting), Kurvatī (one who is doing), Mahī (earth), Rudhantī (one who is obstructing), Kriṣṭatī (one who is playing), Dāntī (one who is restrained), Pālayantī (one who is protecting), and Surāṇī (a celestial woman), Gaurī (having white complexion, denotes consort of Śiva), Putravatī (one who is having a son), Nauhī (ship or boat), Vadhūḥ (bride), Devatā (deity) and Bhūḥ (earth). Tisra (three) and Dve (two) (both denoting feminine), Kati (how many), Varśābhūḥ (a female frog), Svasā (sister), Mātā (mother), Varā (excellent), Gauḥ (cow), Nauhī (ship or boat), Vāk (speech), Tvak (skin), Prācī (east), Avācī (south), Tiraścī (the female of an animal or bird), Samīcī (a doe), Udīcī (north), Śarat (autumn), Vidyut (lightning), Sarit (river), Yośī (lady in separation), Agnvit (knower of fire), Sampat (wealth), Drṣat (stone), Yā (who), Eśā (this), Vedavit (knower of the Veda), Saṃvit (knowledge), Bahvī (many), Rājī (queen), Tvayā (by you), Mayā (be me), Simā (boundary), Paṇca (five) etc., Rājī (line or row), Dhūḥ (shaking), Pūḥ (purifying), Diśā (direction), Girā (speech), Cetasāḥ (four), Viduṣī (learned person), Kā (who), Iyarō (this), Dik (direction), Drk (look), Tāḍraś (that kind). These are chief among (the substantives belonging to) the feminine gender. (I shall describe) the chief among (the substantives belonging to) the neuter.

20-22a. Kuṇḍam (a bowl or pit), Sarvam (all), Somapaṁ Dadhi (curd), Vāri (water), Khalapū (that which sweeps), Madhu (honey), Trapu (tin), Bhartṛ, Atibhartṛ, Payaḥ (milk), Prahaḥ (city), Prak (east), Pratyak (?) (backwards), Tiryak (across), Udak (above or nothward), Jagat (world), Jāgrat (awakening state), Śakṛt (excrement), Susampat (good wealth), Sudaṇḍī (good stick), Ahāḥ (day), Kim (what), Idam (this), Sati (six), Sarpīḥ (clarified butter), Śreyah (fortune), Catvāri (four), Adaḥ (that thing). Others are similar to these.

22b-28a. (The inflections of) the first case (Nominative) etc. would come after these uninflected forms. A form of a word which is neither a verbal root (dhātu), nor an affix (pratyaya) is a nominal base (prātipadika). The first case from the nominal
base is employed to denote the subject. The first case (is also employed) in addressing when the agent and the object are mentioned. That which is done (by the agent) is the object (karma). Second case (Accusative) is used in the object. That by which something is done is the instrument (karaṇa). One who does is the agent (karta). When the object is not specified to be the agent through the verbal affix or suffixes of the kṛt and tad-dhita type, the third case (Instrumental) is used in (denoting) the instrument and the agent. The fourth case is employed in sampradāna (to be given). It is said to be sampradāna in which the desire to give is indicated. Apādāna, is that from which something moves away or taken away. The fifth case (Ablative) is used (to denote) apādāna. The sixth case (Genitive) (is used to denote) one’s ownership. The term adhikaraṇa is used in the sense of the base (ādhāra). The seventh case (Locative) (is used) therein.

28b-29a. Singular is used to denote a single thing. Dual comes in the sense of two things. Plural would occur in the (sense of) many. I shall describe the finished forms (now).

29b-32a. (The following are examples for the Nominative): Vṛkṣaḥ (tree), Sūryaḥ (Sun), Ambuvāhaḥ (cloud), Arkaḥ (Sun). The following are the examples for the Vocative): He Ravi (O Sun!), He Dvijātayas (O twiceborns!), Viprau (O Brahmins!). (Then the example for the Accusative): Gajān (the elephants). (Then the examples for the Instrumental): Mahendreṇa (by Mahendra, the lord of the celestials), Yamā-bhyām (by two Yamas—by the twins), Analaiḥ kṛtam (done by Analā, fire plural). Rāmāya (for Rāma), Munivaryābhyyām (for the two excellent sages), Kebhyaḥ (for whom, plural) (are examples for the Dative). Dharmāt (from Dharma), Harau ratiḥ¹ (?!), Śarabhyyām (from the two arrows), Pustakebhyaḥ (from the books) (are illustrations for the Ablative). Arthasya (of the sense), Īśvarayoh (of the two lords), Gatiḥ bālānām (the fate of children) (are for the Genitive). Sajjane pritiḥ (pleased in good people), Harīsayoḥ (in the two hārsas), Kamaleṣu (in the lotuses) (are examples for the Locative). In the same way, the words

1. The reading is obviously wrong.
Kāma (God of love), Maheśa (the great lord) and other (words) should be known like (the word) Vṛkṣa (tree).

32b-36a. Sarve (all), Viśve (all or entire or whole), Sarvasmai (for all), Sarvasmāt (from all) and Katara (who or which of two) are regarded (as similar). Sarvesām (of all), Svam (one's self), Viśvasmin (in the whole). The other forms are like (the word) Vṛkṣa (tree). Similarly Ubhaya (both), Katara (who or which of the two), Katama (who or which of many), Anyatara (one of two) etc. (should be known). Pūrve (all the former), Pūrvāḥ (all the former, feminine), Pūrvasmai (for the former), Pūrvasmāt (from the former), Pūrve (in the former), Pūrvasmin (in the former). The other forms are like that of Sarva. Para (superior), Avara (inferior) as well as Dakṣīṇa (south), Uttara (north), Antara (in between), Aparāḥ (others), Adharāḥ (below) (are to be known) in the same way. Nemāḥ (parts), Prathamaḥ (the first ones), Prathame (in the first one) are like the word Arka (Sun). In the same way (we should have) Caramāḥ (last), Alpa (little), Ardha (half) and the Nema (part) and others.

36b-41a. Dvitiyasmai (or) Dvitiyāya (for the second), Dvitiyasmat (or) Dvitiyakāt (from the second), Dvitiyasmin (or) Dvitiye (in the second) and Tṛtiya (third) like (the word) Arka (Sun). Somapāḥ (a drinker of Soma) and Somapau (two drinkers of Soma) should be known. Go to Somapāḥ (drinkers of Soma) (or) Somapāṁ (a drinker of Soma). Kilālapau (two drinkers of a heavenly drink similar to nectar) and Somapāḥ (drinker of Soma), Somapāḥ (drinkers of Soma), Somape dada (give to a drinker of Soma), Somapābhya (to two drinkers of Soma), Somapābhyaḥ (to many drinkers of Soma), Somapāḥ (drinker of Soma), Somapau (two drinkers of Soma) (belong to) a group. (The words) such as Kilālapāḥ (drinkers of a celestial drink) would be similar. Kaviḥ (poet), Agniḥ (fire) and Arayaḥ (enemies), He kave ! (O poet !), Kavim (the poet, accusative), Agni (two fires, accusative), Tān Harīn (those Hari-s), Sātyakā hṛtam (taken by Sātyaki), Raviḥyān (by two Suns), Raviḥiḥ (by the Suns), Dehi vahnaye yaḥ samāgataḥ (Give to Fire who has come), Agneḥ (of fire), Agnyoḥ (of two fires), Agniṁ (of many fires), Kavau (in the poet), Kavyoḥ (in the two poets) and Kaviṣu (in many poets) (are examples for words ending in ‘i’). Similarly Suṛtīḥ (good path), Abhrāntiḥ (not an error),
Sukirtiḥ (good fame) and Sudhrtiḥ (firmness) (are to be declined).

41b-43a. (Some more examples for words ending in ‘i’): Sakhā (a friend), Sakhāyau (two friends), Sakhāyah (many friends). ‘He sakhe! vraja satpatim’ (O Friend! go to a good master), Sakhāyaṃ (the friend), Sakhāyau (the two friends), Sakhīn (the friends) (are accusative forms). Sakhya gataḥ (gone with the friend). Dada sakhye (give to the friend). Sakhyuḥ (from a friend), Sakhyuḥ (of the friend), Sakhyoh (of the two friends). That rest (are formed like) the forms of Kavi (poet). Patyā (by the master), Patye (for the master), Patyuḥ (from the master), Patyuḥ (of the master), Patyoḥ (of the two masters) are like (the word) Agni (fire).

43b. Dvau (two), Dvau (the two), Dvābhyaṃ (by the two), Dvābhyaṃ (for the two), Dvayoḥ (from the two) and Dvayoḥ (of the two) are in the sense of dual.

44. Trayah (three), Trin (the three), Tribhiḥ (by the three), Tribhyaḥ (for the three), Trayāṇām (of the three) and Trīṣu (in the three) (are) in order. Kati (how many) and Katī (how many). The other plural forms are like Kavi (poet) (in the plural).

45. (The word Ni, leader is declined as follows): Nih (a leader), Niyau (two leaders) and Niyaḥ (many leaders). He nih (O leader!), Niyam (one leader), Niyau (two leaders), Niyaḥ (many leaders). Niyā (by a leader), Nibhyāṃ (by two leaders), Nibhiḥ (by many leaders). Niyā (for a leader), Nibhyah (for many leaders). Niyaṃ (of many leaders), Niyi (in a leader) and Niyoh (in two leaders).

46-48a. Susrīḥ (good fortune), Sudhiḥ (good intellect) etc. Grāmanīḥ (a leader), pūjayedharim (should worship Hari). Grāmānayaḥ (the two chiefs), Grāmānayaḥ (the many chiefs), Grāmānyaṃ (the chief, accusative), Grāmānya (by the chief), Grāmānibhiḥ (by many chiefs), Grāmānyaḥ (of a chief), Grāmānyaṃ (in a chief). Words beginning with Senānī (leader of an army) are similarly (declined). Subhūḥ (good land) and Sabhūvau (two good lands). Svayambhuvahaḥ (self-born), Svayambhuvam (self-born, accusative), Svayambhuvā (by the self-born), Svayambhuvi (in the self-born). Pratibhuvaḥ (bail or surety) etc. (should be formed) similarly.
48b-49. Khalapūḥ (that which sweeps), Khalapvaḥ (the two which sweep), Śreṣṭhaḥ (that are excellent), Khalapvaṁ (that which sweeps, accusative), and Khalapvi (in a sweeper). (The words) beginning with Śarapūḥ would be in the same way. Kroṣṭhā (a jackal) and Kroṣṭhāraḥ (many jackals), Kroṣṭhūn (the jackals, accusative plural), Kroṣṭhunā or Kroṣṭhrā (by a jackal), Kroṣṭhunāṁ (of the jackals), Kroṣṭhāri (in a jackal) are said to be (formed) thus.

50-52a. Pitā (father), Pitaraḥ (two fathers), Pitaraḥ (many fathers), He pitaḥ (O Father!), Pitaraḥ śubhau (O Auspicious fathers!), Pitṛn (the fathers, accusative), Pitṛḥ (from the father), Pitṛḥ (of the father), Pitṛ (of the two fathers), Pitṛnāṁ (of many fathers), Pitari (in the father) are formed thus. In the same way Bhrātā (a brother), Jāmāṭṛ (son-in-law) and others (words) are formed. Then Nṛṇāṁ or Nṛṇāṁ (of the men). Kartā (doer), Kartārau (two doers), Kartṛn (many doers, accusative), Kartṛnāṁ (of many doers) and Kartari (in a doer) are thus (formed). Udgātā (a singer of Vedic hymn), Svasā (sister), Naptṛ (grandson) are known to be like (the word) Pitṛ (father).

52b. Surāḥ (good fortune), Surāyau (dual), Surāyaḥ (plural), Surāyaṁ (accusative), and Surāyi (locative).

53. Gauḥ (a cow), Gāvau (two cows), Gāṁ (accusative), Gāḥ (accusative, plural), Gavā (instrumental), Goḥ (genitive), Gavōḥ (genitive, dual), Gavāṁ (genitive, plural) and Gavi (in a cow). In the same way Dyauḥ (heaven) and Glauḥ (Moon) and the chief masculine words ending in vowels.

54-57a. Suvāk (good speech), Suvācī (nominative dual), Suvācā (instrumental), Suvāgbhyāṁ (instrumental, dual), Suvākṣu (locative, plural). Similarly the directions beginning with (east). Prāṅ (east), Prāṅcī (nominative neuter dual), Prāṅcam (to the east) bho vraja (you go). Prāṅgbhyāṁ (instrumental, dual), Prāṅgbhiḥ (instrumental, plural), Prāṅcām (genitive), Prācī (locative, singular), Prāṁsu and Prāṅkṣu (locative, plural). In the same way Udaṅ or Udici (north), Samyāṅ (well), Pratyāk (western), Samici (a doe), Tiryāṅ (that which moves horizontally), Tiraśca1, Sadhryaṅ (a companion, especially

1. Seems to be Tiraścī, denoting a female of any animal.
husband), Viśvadraṇi (all-pervading) are known to be like the former. Adadryāṇi, Adamuyaṇi, Amumuyaṇi (all meaning going to that) etc. are similar. Adadryośic (one who has gone to that direction) and Amudricaḥ (one who has gone to that direction) and Adadryabhyaṁ are as before.

57b-59a. Tattvātṛ (desirous of truth) (nominative), Tat-tvatṛṣau (dual), Tattvātṛbhyaṁ (with men desirous of Truth) samāgataḥ (one has come together), Tattvātṛṣi (in one desirous of truth), Tattvātṛṣsu (among those desirous of truth). In the same way Kāṣṭha (wood), Taḍa (?) etc. (are formed). Bhiṣak (a physician), Bhiṣagbhyaṁ (by two physicians), Bhiṣaji (locative). (The words) such as Jannabhāk (are) then (similarly declined). Marut (wind), Marudbhyaṁ (by two winds), Maruti (in the wind). In the same way (we have) Śatrujīt (conqueror of an enemy) etc.

59b-61. Bhavān (you, polite form), Bhavantau (dual), Bhavatāṁ (of you, plural), Bhavan (vocative), Bhavati (in you). Mahān (great), Mahāntau (dual), Mahatāṁ (of great people), Bhagavat (fortunate) etc. In the same way Maghavan (Indra), Maghavantau (dual). Agnicit (one who has kept the sacred fire), Agniciti (locative), Agnicitsu (locative, plural). In the same way Anyat (another), Vedavit (one who knows the scriptures), Tattvavit (knower of truth) etc. (We will have) Vedavidāṁ (in locative singular). In the same way Anyat (some other person). One who knows all is Sarvavit.

62-64. (The word Rājan is declined thus): Rājā (king), Rājānau (dual), Rājñah (genitive), Rājni or Rājani (locative), Rājan (vocative). Yajvā (a performer of a sacrifice), Yajvānāḥ (plural) are similar. Kari (an elephant), Daṇḍi (one who holds a stick), Daṇḍinau (dual), Panthāḥ (path), Panthānau (dual), Pathāḥ (plural), Pathibhyāṁ (instrumental, dual) and Pathi (locative) (will) be similar. Manthā (that which churns), Rbhu-ukṣāḥ (nominative plural) (Rbhuukṣāḥ means Indra) and Pathya (wholesome food) etc. (should be known). Pañca (five), Pañca (accusative), Pañcabhiḥ (instrumental). Pratān (one who spreads well), Pratānau (dual), Pratānbhyām (instrumental, dual), Ḫe Pratān (vocative) and Susarmaṇaḥ (vocative, those who are happy). (The following is always plural): Āpaḥ (water) (nominative), Āpaḥ (accusative), Adbhuiḥ (instrumental). In
the same way Prasān (one who is tranquil) and Praṣāni (locative) also.

65-67. Kaḥ (who), Kena (by whom) like Sarva (all). Keṣu (among whom), Ayaṁ (this), Ime (dual), Imān (accusative plural), Anaṇa (by this), Ābhyaṁ (instrumental, dual), Ebhiḥ (instrumental, plural), Asmai (dative singular), Ebhyaḥ (dative plural), Svaṁ (one's own), Asya (genitive), Anayoḥ (genitive, dual), Eṣāṁ (genitive, plural) and Eṣu (locative, plural) would be (formed). Catvāraḥ (four), Caturah (accusative), Caturṇāṁ (genitive), Caturṣu (locative). Sugil (good speech), Sugırṣu (locative, plural), Sudyauḷ (good day), Sudivau (dual), Sudyubhyaṁ (instrumental dual). Viṭ (merchant), Viṣau (dual), Viṣu (locative, plural). Yāḍṛśaḥ (ablative, singular, from which kind of a thing), Yādrobhyaṁ (ablative, dual) Viḍbyaṁ (dual in the third, fourth and fifth cases). Ṣaṭ (six), Ṣaṭ (accusative) Ṣaṇṇaṁ (genitive plural), Ṣaṭṣu (locative, plural).

68-70a. Suvacāḥ (eloquent), Suvacasā (instrumental), Suvacobhyaṁ (instrumental, dual), He Suvaco (vocative), He Uśanāna (Uśanas denotes the preceptor of the demons) (vocative), Uśanā (instrumental), Uśanasi (locative), Purudāṅśa (a goose), Aṇḍhā (a stupid person), He Vidvān (O Learned man !), Vidvān (nominative) Viduṣe namaḥ (obeisance to the learned, dative), Vidvadbhyaṁ (instrumental, dative and ablative, dual), Vidvatsu (locative, plural). Babhūvivān (one that has become). (We have) in the same way, Pecivān (one that cooks), Śreyān (excellent), Śreyāṁsa (nominative, dual), Śreyasaḥ (accusative, plural).

70b-73. The following are the forms of Adas (that): Asau, Amū, Ami (nominative, singular, dual and plural), Amum and Amūn (accusative singular and plural), Amunā, Amībhīḥ (instrumental singular and plural), Amūmsmai (dative), Amusmāt (ablative), Amusya, Amuyoḥ, Amīsāṁ (genitive singular, dual and plural) and Amusmin (locative). Similarly (we have) (the forms of Godhuk, one who milks the cow): A person has come with one who milks the cow. Godhukṣu (locative plural). Thus (we have) other (forms). Mitradruhaḥ (one who is treacherous to a friend), Mitradrugbhyāṁ (dual instrumental), Mitradrugbhīḥ (plural) and Cittadruhaḥ (inimic to the mind).
etc. Svaliṣṭ (one who licks himself), Svalīḍbhyāṁ (instrumental dual), Svalihi (locative). Anaḍvān (nominative of Anaḍuh, a bull), Anaḍutsu (locative plural). These are (the words) ending in the vowels and consonants in the masculine. I shall describe (now) those in the feminine.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYTWO

_Narration of the finished forms of the substantives in the feminine_

_Skanda said:_

1-2. (The following are the forms of feminine nouns ending in ā): Ramā (Lakṣmī, consort of Viṣṇu), Rame, Ramāḥ (the three forms in the nominative) are auspicious. Ramām, Rame, Ramāḥ (the three forms in the accusative), Ramayā, Ramābhyāṁ, Ramābhīḥ (the three forms in the instrumental) (by Ramā) it was made imperishable. Ramāyai, Ramābhyāṁ (are the singular, dual dative). Ramāyāḥ, Ramayōḥ, Ramāṇāḥ (are the three forms in the genitive). Ramāyāṁ and Ramāsu (are the singular and plural forms of the locative). Kalā (fine arts) is similar.

3-4. (The following are also feminine): Jarā (old age), Jarasau or Jare, Jarasāḥ or Jarāḥ (are the forms in the nominative). Jarāṁ or Jarasāṁ (is the form in the accusative singular), Jarāsu (is the locative plural). Similarly (we have) Sarvā and Sarve (all) (in the nominative singular and dual), Sarvasyā (instrumental), give Sarvasyai (dative) (to all). Sarvasyāḥ (ablative), Sarvasyāḥ (and) Sarvayōḥ (genitive singular and dual). The other forms are like that of Rāma. (The following are always plural): Dve (two in the nominative), Dve (in the accusative) and Tisrāḥ (three in the nominative) and Tisrāṅāḥ (in the genitive).

5-8. (The following are examples of substantives of the feminine ending in ‘i’): Buddhīḥ (intellect) (nominative), Buddhīya (instrumental), Buddhaya (dative) and Buddhaḥ (abla-
tive and genitive). (The vocative form of Matī, mind, is) He mate. (The word Muni) will have (the forms) like that of Kavi (poet): Muninām (genitive) (of the sages). (The following are the forms of the substantives of the feminine ending in i) : Nadiḥ, Nadyau (singular and dual in the nominative). Nadiṁ, Nadiḥ (are the singular and plural in the accusative). Nadyā, Nadiḥ (are the singular and plural in the instrumental). Nadyai (is dative singular). Nadyām and Nadiṣu (are the locative singular and plural). Similarly (we have the forms of) Kumārī (a young girl), Jṛmbhaṇī (yawn) etc. Śriḥ (fortune), Śriyau, Śriyaḥ (are the three forms in the nominative). Śriyā (instrumental), Śriyai and Śriye (dative) (are the other forms). The following are the forms of the word Strī (woman) : Strīṁ, Strīyaṁ (in the nominative singular) and Strī or Strīyaḥ (in the plural), Strīyā (instrumental), Strīyai (dative), Strīyāḥ and Strīnām (singular and plural in the genitive) and Strīyām (locative singular). (Similarly) Grāmaṇyā (locative singular). (The forms of words ending in 'u' are) : Dhenvā (by a cow) and Dhenave (dative). (The following are examples for those ending in a) : Jambū (the rose apple), Jambvau (nominative singular and plural), Jambuḥ (accusative singular), Drink the fruits of the Jambu (genitive). Varṣābhavau (is the nominative dual of Varṣābhū, a female frog) and Punarbhavau (nominative dual of Punarbhū, a widow remarried). Māṭṛ (is the accusative plural of Māṭṛ, mother ending in r). Gauḥ (cow), Nauḥ (boat) (are examples of words ending in O).

9-10. (Now we have examples for words ending in consonants) : Vāk (speech) (nominative), Vācā, Vāgbhiḥ (instrumental singular and plural) and Vākṣu (locative plural) and Sragbhyaṁ (instrumental dual) and Sraji, Srajoḥ (locative singular and dual) (for the word Srak (garland). (The forms of the word Vidvat, learned, are) Vidvadbhyāṁ (dual in the instrumental, dative and ablative) and Vidvatsu (locative plural). (The following words ending in t take t—ending) : Bhavati (respect form), Bhavanti (one who is becoming), Divyantī (shining) Bhāṭī (shining), Bhānti (appearing), Tudantī (inflicting pain), Tudatī, Rudatī (crying), Rudhati (obstructing), the Goddess Grhyatī (who is seizing or holding) and Corayantī (one that is stealing).
11-12a. (The following are other examples of nouns ending in \( t \) : Dr\( \vec{s} \)at (stone), Dr\( \vec{s} \)adbhy\( \vec{a} \)m (instrumental, dative and ablative dual), Dr\( \vec{s} \)adi (locative) are the special models. Samit (twig), Samidbhy\( \vec{a} \)m (instrumental, dative and ablative dual), Samidhi (locative) (are other examples). (The following are examples for words ending in \( n \): Sim\( \vec{a} \) (boundary) (nomi-
native), Simni or Simani (locative). D\( \vec{a} \)manibhy\( \vec{a} \)m (instrumental etc. from the word D\( \vec{a} \)man meaning a line or streak). Kakudbhy\( \vec{a} \)m (from Kakud, summit). K\( \vec{a} \) (who) (is a pronoun), Iya\( \vec{m} \) (this) (demonstrative pronoun) and \( \vec{A} \)su (locative plural, in them).

12b-13. (The forms of the word G\( \vec{h} \), speech, are as follows): Girbh\( \vec{y} \)\( \vec{a} \)m (dual in instrumental, dative and ablative), Gir\( \vec{a} \) (instrumental) and Gir\( \vec{s} \)u (locative plural). (The following are also feminine nouns): Subh\( \vec{u} \)h (good land), Sup\( \vec{u} \)h (good city), Pur\( \vec{a} \) (through a city), Puri (in a city). (The following are the forms of dyo, heaven): Dyau\( \vec{h} \), Dyubhy\( \vec{a} \)m (dual, instrumental etc.), Divi (locative), Dy\( \vec{u} \)su (plural). T\( \vec{a} \)d\( \vec{r} \)\( \vec{s} \)y\( \vec{a} \) (by that kind) (instrumental). That kind of direction etc. Y\( \vec{a} \)d\( \vec{r} \)\( \vec{s} \)y\( \vec{a} \)m (in which kind), Y\( \vec{a} \)d\( \vec{r} \)\( \vec{s} \)i (which kind) are similar. Suvacobhy\( \vec{a} \)m (with good words), Suvaca\( \vec{h} \)su (locative). As\( \vec{a} \)u (that, nominative), Am\( \vec{u} \)\( \vec{m} \) (accusative), Am\( \vec{u} \)h (plural), Am\( \vec{u} \)bhi\( \vec{h} \) (instrumental plural), Amuy\( \vec{a} \) (instrumental singular) and Amuyo\( \vec{h} \) (genitive and locative dual) (are the forms of Adas in the feminine).

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYTHREE

The finished forms of substantives in the neuter

Skanda said:

1. (The forms) in the neuter (are as follows) : K\( \vec{m} \), Ke, K\( \vec{a} \)\( \vec{n} \) (the three forms in nominative, meaning what). K\( \vec{m} \), Ke, K\( \vec{a} \)\( \vec{n} \) (are the forms in the accusative). Then (the word) Jalam (water). Sarv\( \vec{a} \)m (all) (nominative), Sarve (nominative, dual), P\( \vec{u} \)rva and other (words), Simap\( \vec{a} \)m (protecting the boundary) (accusative), Simap\( \vec{a} \)ni (accusative, plural).
2. (The words ending in ‘i’ are as follows): Grāmaṇi, Grāmaṇinī, Grāmaṇi and Grāmaṇinī (are the forms in the nominative of Grāmaṇi, leader). Vāri, Varini, Vāriṇī (in the nominative), Varināṁ¹ (in the genitive plural) and Vāriṇī (locative singular) are thus (the forms of Vāri, water).

3. (The word Śuci, pure, has two forms in the dative): Śucaye and Śucine dehi (give). Similarly (the word Mṛdu, soft, has two forms in the instrumental): Mṛduṇe and Mṛduvaye. (The word Trapu, tin has the forms): Trapu (nominative), Trapuṇi (locative singular) and Trapuṇāṁ (genitive plural). Khalapūni (nominative plural) and Khalapvi (locative singular, forms of Khalapū, a sweeper).

4. Kartrā (instrumental), Kartṛne or Kartre (dative) (are the forms of Kartṛ, doer). Atirī (nominative) and Atirināṁ (genitive plural) (are the forms Atirīṇ, one who goes beyond). Abhini, Abhinī (are nominative forms of the word denoting performance). Suvačāṃsi (nominative plural) and Suvākṣu (locative plural) (are from Suvāk, good speech).

5. (The relative pronoun) Yad, yat (who), and pronoun Ime (that), Tat (that) (belong to neuter). Karmāṇi (is the plural of Karma, work). Idam, Ime, Imāni (are the forms of Idam, this). Īdṛk (this kind), Adaḥ, Amuni, Amūni (in the nominative), Amunā (in the instrumental) and Amīṣu (in the locative plural) (are the forms of Adas, that).

6-9. (The forms of Asmad, I, are): Aham, Āvām, Vayam (nominative), Mām, Āvām, Asmān (accusative), Mayā, Āvābhyaṁ, Asmabhīḥ (instrumental) done. Mahyam and Asmabhyaṁ (dative singular and dual), Mat, Āvābhyaṁ, Asmat (ablative). Mama, Āvayoḥ and Asmākaṁ (genitive) ayaṁ putraḥ (This is my, our son). Asmāsu (locative plural). (The forms of Yuṣmad, you, are), : Tvaṁ, Yuvāṁ, Yūyaṁ (nominative) iyire (praise). Tvāṁ, Yuvāṁ, Yuṣmān (accusative), Tvayā and Yuṣmābhīḥ (instrumental, singular and plural) are stated (to be the forms). Tubhyāṁ, Yuvābhyaṁ, Yuṣmabhyaṁ (dative), Tvat, Yuvābhyaṁ, Yuṣmat (ablative), Tava, Yuva-yoh, Yuṣmākāṁ (genitive) and Tvayi, Yuṣmāsu (locative, singular and plural). These are the characteristics of the

¹ Obviously a mistake for Vāriṇāṁ.
language. (The substantives) ending in vowels and consonants have been described.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYFOUR

The relation between a noun and a verb in a sentence

Skanda said:

1. I shall describe the kāraka (the relation that exists between a noun and a verb) together with the significance of the inflection (of nouns). (There) is a village, O Great Arka (Sun)! I salute (lord) Viṣṇu together with Śrī (His consort) here.

2-4. The agent is said to be fivefold: (1) The agent is independent. The composers of the sacred knowledge are respected. (2) The agent gets to that cause when the agent is the doer. The dull headed breaks up himself. The tree cuts itself. (3) The agent expressed is good. The agent not expressed is low. (An example) for the agent not expressed (is): The dharma is being expounded to the pupil. Listen to me! (I shall describe) the seven kinds of objects.

5-8a. (The first one is) the desired object such as “An ascetic pays respect to (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu)”. (The second one is) the object that is not desired, such as “A person jumps over a serpent repeatedly.” “After drinking milk, eat dust” (is an example) for neither desired nor not desired (object of the third kind). (The fourth one consists of) not being told (such as) “The cowherd is milking the cow”. (The next one is) the object of the agent such as “Let the preceptor send the disciple to the village”. (An example for the sixth variety, namely), the object that is expressed, (is) “Worship is made to (lord) Hari for prosperity”. “Make an eulogy to (lord) Hari that yields all (things)” (is an example) for the object that is not expressed, (the seventh variety of object).

8b-9a. The instrument is said to be two kinds—external and internal. A person perceives the form by means of the eye
(in an example for the internal). May a person cut that with a sickle (is an instance of) external.

9b-10. The *sampradāna* (giving) is said to be threefold: (1) *preraka* (sending) a cow to a brahmin, (2) *anumantṛka* (with consent) (such as) "A person gives a servant for the king", (3) *anirākṛtya* (a thing that could not be refused) (such as) "A good person may give flowers to the master."

11. The *apādāna* (that which is being taken away) is said to be twofold: (1) *calan* (moveable): (A person) has fallen from a running horse and *acalan* (immoveable): That devotee of Viṣṇu comes from a village.

12-14a. The *adhikaraṇa* (the base) is fourfold: (1) *vyāpaka* (pervading) just as ghee in curd, (2) *anupālēśika* (juxtaposition) is said (to be the existence of) oil in sesameum for the sake of God, (3) *vaiśrayika* (pertaining to an object) is known (to be) like the monkey may remain on a house (or) a tree, (and) (4) *sāmityaka* (proximate) known (to be) like fish in the water and a lion in a forest. (A fifth variety) is known as *aupacārika* (metaphorical) such as the existence of a hamlet on the (river) Ganges.

14b-17. (Now I shall describe the use of different inflections indicating different senses.) The third or the sixth (case) is known (to be used) when (the intention is) not expressed. (Lord) Viṣṇu is worshipped by people, To be gone by him or of him (are examples). The first case (is used) when the agent is expressed. (Accusative is used to denote object: May a person make obciasance to Hari. The third case (is used to denote) cause (of an action)\(^1\): May one live for the sake of another. The fourth case is expressive of the purpose for which anything is done\(^3\): The water (is) for the three. The fifth case (is indicated) by means of (the words) *pari*, *upa* and *ān* etc.\(^3\) in combination. Outside the village this God was strong before. (Other examples)\(^4\). 'To the east of the village', 'without (lord) Viṣṇu (there is) no emancipation' and 'different from Hari'.

18. There would be either third of fifth case with (the

---

2. See Kale, Higher Skt Gr. 827.
3. It should be *pari*, *upa* and *ān*. See *Pa*. II. 3. 10.
4. See Kale, ib. 840.
words) such as Pṛthak, Vinā etc.\(^1\) : different from the village, without sport (with the word) śri (prosperity) (such as) śriyā (instrumental) and śriyāḥ (ablative).

19. There would be second case when combined with *karmapravacanyas.\(^2\)* The warriors are inferior to Arjuna (and) near the village are said (to be examples).

20. The fourth case is used with (the particles) namaḥ (obeisance), svāhā (ablations), svadhā, svasti (well-being) and vaṣat etc.\(^3\) : Obeisance to the lord and Farewell to thee. (The fourth case) of an abstract noun (formed from a root may be used) to express the sense of the infinitive (of the same root).\(^4\)

21. (The object governed by an infinitive mood not actually used but implied is put in the fourth case such as) (He) goes for cooking (in order to cook) (pākāya). The third case (is used) when accompanied by (the word) saha. The third case (is also employed) to express the cause or motive\(^5\) (or the object or purpose of an action), (to express) some defect in a limb\(^6\) (of the body) or a characteristic attribute\(^7\) (indicative of the existence of a particular state).

22-23a. (The following are illustrations for the use of the third case) : The father went with the son (saha putreṇa); blind of one eye (kāṇo 'ksṇā); He is Hari (apparent) from his club (gadayā); The servant may stay on account of the wealth (arthena). The seventh case (is used) (to denote) the time (of action) and becoming. (The following are the examples) : One would get release (from bondage) when (lord) Viśṇu is propitiating (viṣṇau nate). (He) attained Hari in the spring.

23b-24. (We have the sixth or seventh case in the following instances) : Master of men (or) master among men, lord of men, lord of good people, witness of men (or) witness among

\(^{1}\) See Pa II. 3. 32
\(^{2}\) Prepositions used by themselves and governing nouns are known as *Karmapravacanyas. See Pa. II. 3.8.*
\(^{3}\) See Pa. II. 3. 16.
\(^{4}\) See Pa. II. 3. 15.
\(^{5}\) See Pa. II. 3.
\(^{6}\) Cf. Pa. II. 3.20.
\(^{7}\) See Pa. II. 3. 21.
men, lord among the cows, born among the cows (or) born of the cows, a heir or son of kings.

25. (When the word hetu, cause or object is used in a sentence, that which is the object and the word hetu are put in the genitive)¹ : (A person) dwell for the sake of food. A word or object expressing remembrance (is put in the genitive) (such as): Remembers the mother (mātuḥ), the guardian always. (The genitive is used) in the sense of the subject or the object (of the action denoted by the primary nominal bases) : The splitter of water, your action. The genitive (is) not used with past participles (nīṣṭāḥ)²

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYFIVE

Different kinds of compounds

Skanda said :

1. I shall describe the six kinds of compounds. They are again divided into twentyeight kinds. They are twofold being divided as eternal and non-eternal, those which drop (the suffixes) and those which do not drop.

2-3a. (The following are examples of) eternal (compounds): Kumbhakāraḥ (a potter), hemakāraḥ (goldsmith) etc. Rājñāḥ pumān or rājapumān (a person with royal authority). This also is an eternal compound. Kaṣṭaśritaḥ (kaṣṭena śritaḥ) (joined with difficulty) (is an example of) dropping (the suffix). Kaṇṭhe-kālaḥ etc. (kaṇṭhe-+kālaḥ) (black-necked) (are examples) for not dropping (the suffix).

3b-7. Tatpurūṣa (Determinative compound) is of eight kinds. The first one is that where the words when compounded with substantives are placed first. This is the first (variety) of Tatpurūṣa. Pūrvaḥ Kāyasya when (the compound is) dissolved

2. See Pa. II. 3. 69.
(becomes) purvakāyaḥ (the upper part of the body), Apara-kāyaḥ (lower part of the body), Adharottara-kāyakaḥ (the lower and higher part of the body). Ardham Kaṇāyaḥ (becomes) Ardhaṇaḥ (half of a grain). Bhikṣatūryaṁ (begging alms a fourth time) is also of this type (signifying the whole of which they are parts) (optionally placed first). Āpannajīvikāḥ (āpanno jīvikāṁ) is similar (in the second case). Adharaśritaḥ (adharam āśritaḥ—one who has resorted to a lower person). Varṣambhogyaḥ (or) Varṣabhogyaḥ (to be enjoyed for a year). (An instance of compounding) with (nouns in) the third case: Dhān-yārthaḥ (Dhānyena arthaḥ) (wealth obtained by means of grain). (The noun) would be in the fourth case (when compounded with the word bali) : Viṣṇubaliṁ (Viṣṇave baliḥ). Vṛkabhīṁ (Vṛkāt bhīṁ, fear from a wolf) (is an example for compounding with a noun in) the fifth case. (An example for) sixth case (is) Rājaḥ pumān (an officer of a king) (becoming) Rājapumān. Similarly (we have) Vṛkṣaphalaṁ (the fruit of a tree). The seventh case (is used in the following): This one (is) Āksaśauṇḍaḥ (Ākṣesu saunḍaḥ) (skilled in dice). Ahitaḥ (not beneficial) (is an example) for Negative Tatpurūṣa.

8-12. Karmadhāraya (appositioned compound) is seven-fold. Nilotpala (Nilam ca tad utpalam ca) etc. are known (to be the examples) for compounding the adjective and the noun it qualifies. (1) The qualifying word is placed first or (2) the word that is qualified is placed afterwards. (Words expressive of the persons or things condemned are placed first) : Vaiyākaraṇakaḥṣūciḥ (a bad grammarian) (an example for first kind). Śītōṣṇam (cold and hot) and Dvipadam (two words) (are examples for the second). (3) Expressive of standard of comparison placed as first member : Śaṅkhapāṇḍara (white as the conch) (saṅkhaḥ iva pāṇḍaraḥ). (4) The standard of comparison

1. See Pa. II. 2.1. They are not strictly Genitive Tatpurūṣa. But called by some as Prathamā Tatpurūṣa.
2. See Pa. II. 2.3.
4. See Vārttika under Pa. II. 1. 37.
6. But it is actually six-fold.
placed as the second member: Puruṣavyāghraḥ (a man like a tiger) (puruṣo vyāghraḥ iva). (5) Words of respect placed first: Guṇavrddhiḥ dissolved as guṇaḥ iti vrddhiḥ (elongation). Suhṛd and Subandhu (are examples). (6) The word signifying prominence is placed as the first member (pāda eva padmāḥ = pāda-padmāḥ). Bahuvrihi (attributive compound) is sevenfold. (The following are examples) for the Bahuvrihi having two words: ārūḍhabhavanena naraḥ (A man who has stepped into a house).

13. These brahmans are about ten (ie., nine or eleven). upadaśāḥ (=daśānāṁ samīpe ye santi te) is (an example of Bahuvrihi having the) numeral as the second member. (Examples of Bahnvrihi) having both (the members) as numerals are such as dovitrā (two or three), doyekatraya (two or one or three) men.

14. The particle saha (may be compounded) when it becomes the first member. The tree has been pulled out together with its root (samūla) (is an example). Those having the characteristic of reciprocity: (a battle in which the warriors fight) seizing each other's hair, (keśākeśā) fighting one another with nail (nakhānakhi).

15. (A Bahuvrihi compound may be formed) to denote a direction (in between two directions): daksinapūrvā (the point of direction in between the south and east). A Dvigu (having a number as the first member in a compound) is said to be twofold. It becomes singular (when denoting an aggregate), 'having two peaks' 'having five roots'. It is possible in many ways.

16. A Dvandva (copulative compound) is twofold itaretarayoga and samākāra (the members are treated separately, and an agregate of the things enumerated constituting a complex (idea). (An example for the first is) Rudraviṣṇū (Rudra and Viṣṇu). (An example for the second is) Bherūpataha. (It is always singular.)

17-18. Avayāyāvāva (compound consisting of two members, the first of which is, mostly, an indeclinable) is said to be of two kinds. An example for one having a noun as the first member (is): sākasya mātrā (very little vegetable)=sākaprati. An example for one with the first member as an indeclinable (is): upakumbham (near a pot)and uparathyam (near a chariot). The compounds are
fourfold on account of the prominence (of one member)—that which has the second member prominent and Dvandva, where both (the members) are prominent. Avyayībhāva has the first member prominent and Bahuvrihi (in which the importance lies) externally.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYSIX

The rules governing the formation of taddhita
(secondary nominal bases)

Skanda said:

1-4. I shall describe the three kinds of taddhita; the general type (will be formed) by using the following affixes

lac (la) — āṁsalaḥ (having muscular shoulders); vatsalaḥ (compassionate).

ilac (ila) — phenila (foamy); picchila (slippery).

śe (sa) — lomaśaḥ (hairy, a monkey).

ne (na) — pāmanah (sulphur).

aṇ (a) — prājñā (wise), ārcaka (relating to a worshipper).

urac (ura) — forms dantura (having projecting teeth) from danta (tooth).

ra — madhura (sweet); suśira (for a long time).

(by adding va) Keśava (having beautiful hair) (is formed) similarly.

ya — hiranyāṁ (gold)

va — Mālava (name of a country)

valaci (vala) — rajasvalā (menstruous woman)

iṅ — dhanī (rich); karī and hastī (elephant)

tiṅ (ika) — dhanīka (rich)

vin — payasvī (milky); māyāvī (magician)

yuvuc (yus) — Īrṇāyuḥ (woolen)

5-8. min (mi) — vāgmī (eloquent)

ālac (āla) — (vācāla)

and
āśac — vācāka (eloquent)
ina — phalinaḥ (fruitful); barhiṇaḥ (a peacock); kekl (a peacock)
kan — vṛṇdāraka (venerable or beautiful)
dūc — sītālu = sītam na sahate (unable to endure cold); himālu = himarī na sahate (not able to bear snow)

We would have the form vātula from vāta (by adding) ulac. an (is used to denote) progeny (such as) Vāsiṣṭha, Kaurava.
so'sya vāsakaḥ—Pāṇcālaḥ
tatra vāsah — Māthuraḥ
vetti adhīte cāndrawyākaraṇam—Cāndrakaḥ

9-12. Khaṇ (ka) priyaṅgūnāṁ kṣetram praiyaṅgavinakam
iṅ (i) — Dākṣīṇ (the son of Dakṣa); Dāśarathīḥ (the son of Daśaratha).
kac — Nārāyana
phaṅ — Āśvāyanaḥ
yac — Gārgyaḥ (son of Garga); Vātsyakaḥ (of the family of Vātsyā)
ḍhak (eya) — Vainateya (son of Vinatā, ie., Garuḍa) etc.
crak — Cāṭakerah
ḍhak — Gandheraka
gha (iya) — kṣatriya (born in the race of a ruler)
khā (tna) — kulinaḥ (born of a good family)
nya (ya) — Kauravya (a descendant of Kuru)
yat — mūrdhanya (being in or on the head); mukhya (chief) etc.
— sugandhiḥ (good fragrance)

13. itac (ita) (will be used) for Tāraka group1 (of words) (in the sense of that is obtained or possessed by) such as ‘the sky studded with stars’.

anaṁ (an) — kuṇḍodhnī (a cow with a full udder); puṣpadhanvan (the god of love); sudhanvan (having an excellent bow).

1. See Pa. V. 2. 36
14. cuñcup (cuñcu) — vittacuñcuḥ would be used in the sense of one having wealth.

canap (caṇa) — keśacaṇah (renowned for the hair)
rūpa — paṭarūpa (in the form of a cloth).

15-16 ṯyas — it would be paṭṭyān (cleverer)
tarap (tara) — akṣatara (fairly proficient in dice);
                   pacatitārāḥ1 (cooking fairly well)
tamap (tama) — atātitamāṁśa (wandering excellently);
                   mrḍvītamā (much soft).
kalpap (kalpa) — Indrakalpaḥ (equal to Indra); ardhakal-
pakaḥ (equal to half)
desiya or deśya — rājadesiyaḥ (almost a king)

17. jātiya — Paṭujātiya (belonging to an intelligent group)

madrac (madra) — jānumātram (reaching as far as the knee)
dvayasa — ūrvudvayasa (reaching
         (dvayasa) up to the thigh)
dadhna (dadhna) — ūrvudadhna (reaching upto the thigh)

18. tayap (taya) — paṇcatayāḥ (fivestay)

thak (ika) — dauvārikaḥ (door-keeper)

The general suffixes have been described. (I shall describe now) the secondary affixes known as indeclinables.

19-20. tasil (tas) — yataḥ is formed (in the sense of) from which.

traḥ is said (to form) yatra (where), tatra (there), adhunā (is used in the sense of) at that time, and dān (is used in) idāṃth (now). Dā is used (to form) sarvadā (always) together with sarva. hil (hi) forms tarhi in the sense of that time and karhi, at which time. Ha (is used to form) iha (in the sense of) now.

21-24a. thal (thā) — yathā (when);

tham (tha) — kathāṁ (how).

Let one gather in the eastern direction astāt (il) for pūrva (śabda).

May the leaders move in the front (purastāt). (The word sadya is said (to be used) (in the sense of) same day. Ut (is used) for the previous year and Parut for (the year) preceding

1. See Pa. V. 4.11
2. See ibid.
that Parāri is also (used in the same sense). Aiṣamo (is used in the sense of) this year derived from the word sāmas. Edyavau and Paredyavi would (denote) the next day. Adya means today. Dye is used in combination as Pūrvedyuḥ and Edyuḥ (the previous day).

24b-27. Let one dwell in the southern direction. Dakṣiṇāt and Dakṣiṇādi (in the southern direction). May one dwell in the northern direction: Uttarāt and Uttarādi (in the northern direction). May one dwell above: Upaṁstāt. Riṣṭati and Ṭṛdhvakāt (above) (have similar meaning). By adding suffix ac we have dakṣiṇā. By adding āhi we have dakṣiṇāhi (in the south) vaset (may one dwell). Dha in dvīdhā denotes two ways. When dhīmuṇi is added to eke it becomes ekadhyam (thinking in one form only), Likewise dhāmuṇi is added to dvi we have dvādham (to forms).¹

28-30. The particles which are secondary suffixes have been described. (I shall describe) the secondary affixes which are abstract nouns. Paṭor bhāvali = paṭuttaman (cleverness) (using) (suffix) tvā. Paṭutā is said (to be by using) tālic. By adding iman to prthu (we have) prathimā (extension). Saukhyaman (happiness) is said to be from sukhā (by adding) svaṁ. Syeṣam (theft) (is fromed) (by adding) yat to stena (a thief). The state of being a monkey is kāpeyaṁ. Sainya (army) and pathya (beneficial) are said (to be formed by adding) yau (ya). Āśvaṁ (relating to a horse), kaumārakarm (relating to boyhood) and yaunam (relating to youth) (are from) Ûn (a). Ācāryakarm relating to the preceptor) (is) from kan. The other secondary suffixes are said (to be formed) in the same way.

¹. The next two words are not clear.
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYSEVEN

The formation of the primary nominal bases by adding primary affixes known as unādi, beginning with affix u

Kumāra said:

1-2a. The Uṇādis (a kind of primary nominal affixes) are spoken as pratyayas (suffixes) added to roots. (The word) Kāru (denoting) an artisan (is formed by adding the suffix) uṇ. (The other examples are) jāyuḥ (medicine or physician), māyuḥ (meaning) bile, gomāyuḥ (biles in the cow). These unādis are widely used in the Ayurveda (Indian system of medicine) terminology.

2b-4a. (The other examples are) āyuḥ (life), svādu (sweet), hetu (cause) etc. Kīṃtāruḥ (means) the beard of a corn. Kṛka-vāku denotes a cock. Guru is the master. Maru is (a desert). Śayu is known as a big serpent. Saru is said to be a weapon (sword). Svaru (denotes) the thunderbolt. Trāpu (means) stīsām¹. Phalgu is said (to mean) worthless thing.

4b-6. (The following words) are known (to be derived by adding the corresponding suffixes): grdhṛaḥ (vulture) (from) kran, mandiram (an abode) and timirām (meaning) darkness (from) kīraca, salilām (meaning) water and bhaṇḍila (meaning) auspicious (from) ilac. Budhaḥ (meaning) a learned person (from) kvasu. (The word) tibira (denotes) a concealed position. Oṭāḥ (denotes) a cat (from the suffix) tun. (The words) karaṇaḥ (ear), kāmi (a lustful person), grhaḥ (house), bhaḥ (earth), vāstu (the site of a house) and jāivāṭrhkaḥ (the moon) are known to be unādis because they denote (objects).

7. (The word) anāḍān (a bull) is from (the root) vaḥ (to bear) with dhan. Jīva (life), arṣava (ocean) and auṣṭadha (herb) convey genus. (The word) vahni (fire) is (by adding the suffix) ni, harīṇaḥ (meaning) a deer (from inan) and kāmi (one who is lustful) (denotes) a fit person.

8. Saṅghāta (a collection); varūḍa (mixed caste), saraṇḍa (means) an animal, erāṇḍa (is a kind of) tree; sāma (chant). nirbhara (full).

---

¹. But trāpu denotes tin and stīsām, lead.
9. (The word) sphāram would mean (plenty) ... (The words) cīra (denoting) a bark garment belongs to the same category. (The word) kātara (means) timid. But ugra (means) fierce. Javasa (denotes) grass.

10. Jagat (signifies) the earth and kṛśānu, the lustre of the Sun. Varāvara (means) curled and dhārtta (a wicked person). Catvaram (denotes) a junction of four roads.

11. Civaṣa (is) the dress of a mendicant. Āditya is said to be Mitra (the Sun). (The word) putra (stands for) a son and pīlā, for father. (The words) pṛdāku (denotes) a tiger and a scorpion. Garta (denotes) a hole. Bharata (means) an actor. These are the other uṇādis.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYEIGHT

The completed forms of the verbs after adding the conjugational signs etc.

Kumāra said:

1. I shall describe the terminations (which are added) to the verbs as well as the substitutes in brief. The verbs occur in three forms such as bhāve (impersonal), karmani (passive) and kartarī (active).

2. They are known to be transitive and intransitive in the two padas (Ātmanepada and Parasmaipada) in the Active. In the same way the substitutes in the transitive and intransitive.

3. Lat is the designation for the present tense. Līn is said to be in the sense of the potential (mood) etc. Lōt (is) for benediction and conditional etc. Lān (is the designation) for the past not relating to the present day.

4. Lūn (is the name) for the past (Aorist) and līt for remote past and lat for immediate (first) future. Līn (is used) for benediction and līt in the remaining senses. Lṛṇ would denote the (second) future.

5. (Lṛṇ, conditional) (is used in the sentences) in which the Potential may be used, when the non-performance of action is
implied. The latter nine (are) Āṭmanepada (the result of the action accruing to one’s self) and the former nine (are) Paras-
maipada (the result of the action accruing to another person). Tip, tas and anti (are the terminations of) the prathamapu-
ruṣa.¹

6-7a. Sip, thas and tha (are the terminations of) the madhyama-pruruṣa² and mip, vas and mas (for) the uttamapuruṣa³. Ta, ātām and anta (are) the prathamapuruṣa (terminations) in the Āṭmane-
pada, thās, ātām, dhvan in the madhyama and i, vahi, mahi in the uttama (in the imperfect). Bhū (to be) etc. are known to be the roots.

7b-10a. The following are the important roots belonging to the different conjugations⁴. (The roots) bhū (to be), edh (to prosper), pac (to cook), nand (to rejoice), dhvanm (to perish), sanhs (to praise) (belong to the first conjugation). Pad (to go) (fourth), ad (to eat) (second), sth (to lie down, second), kriḍ (to buy) (first), juhoti (hū to offer in a sacrifice) (third), jahāti (hā to abandon, third), dadhāti (dhū to bear, third), divyati (di to play or to shine, fourth), svapiti (svap to sleep, second), nah (to tie, fourth), swnoti (su, to press out juice, fifth), vas (to dwell), tud (to strike, wound, sixth), mṛṣati (mṛś to touch, sixth), mṛhcati (mṛē to lose, sixth), rudh (to hold up, seventh), bhuj (to enjoy, seventh), tyaj (to abandon, first), and tan (to spread, eighth). (The roots) man (to think), karoṭi (kr, to do), kriḍati (kriḍ, to play), vrṭ (to choose), graḥ (to seize), cor (cur, to steal), pā (to drink and protect), ni (to carry) and arc (to worship) are the important in the tap⁵ and other modifications.

10b-13a. In (the root) bhū (by adding tiṅ, we would have saḥ bhavati (he becomes), tau bhavatāḥ (they two become) and te bhavanti (they all become). (Similarly we have) you become, you two become and you all become and I become, we two be-
come and we all become. (Similarly in the Āṭmanepada), the

1. corresponding to the third person.
2. corresponding to the second person.
3. corresponding to the first person.
4. The roots are divided into ten conjugations known as bhūḍi, adādi, juhopedi, divādi, svādi, tudādi, radhādi, tanādi, kryādi and curādi.
5. tap is the designation of the termination added to the first conjugation.
family prospers, two prosper and (many) prosper. You grow with intellect, (you two) prosper and you all prosper. We two grow with intellect. We all prosper with devotion to (lord) Hari. (He) cooks etc. are as before.

13b-15. One becomes and one enjoys (are examples) for the impersonal forms. The passive (is formed by adding) yak. The desiderative form (of root bhū is) babhūṣati. Thus in the causal (one) meditates on the lord. In the frequentative (we have the form) bobhūyate (Ātmanepada) or bobhōti when yon is dropped (is the form) in the Parasmaipada frequentative. Putriyati (treats like a son) on account of desire for children and thus patakapāyate (utters the sound pata), ghāṣayati (brings about) (are examples) of the desiderative. He causes the figure to be adorned (babhūṣayati) (is the form) in the causal.

16. Bhavet (may become), bhavetāṁ, bhaveyuh, bhaveḥ bhavetaṁ, bhaveta, bhaveyarṁ, bhaveva, bhavema are (the forms in the three persons in the singular, dual and plural) in the Potential (mood) (in the Parasmaipada).

17. Edheta, edheyātāṁ, edheran (grow or prosper) with the mind and prosperity, edhetāḥ, edheyāthāṁ, edhedhvarṁ, edheya, edhevahi, edhemahi (are the forms of the Potential moon in the Ātmanepada).

18-19a. Let it be. Bhavatāṁ, bhavantu, bhavatād or bhava, bhavataṁ, bhavata, bhavāni, bhavāva, bhavāma (are the forms) in the Imperative mood. Edhatāṁ (may one prosper), edhetāṁ, edhantāṁ (in the third person), edhai (in the first person singular) (are the forms of Ātmanepada Imperative). Pacāvahai, pacāmahai (are the forms of Ātmanepada Imperative dual and plural from pac to cook).

19b-20. Abhyanandat (felicitated), apacatāṁ (cooked), apacan (they cooked), apacaḥ (you cooked), abhavataṁ (you two became), abhavata (you all became), apacan (I cooked), apacāva (we two cooked), apacāma (we all cooked) (are the examples for the past (imperfect) in the Parasmaipada). Aidhata, aidhetāṁ (third person singular and dual), aidhadhvarṁ (second person plural), aidhe, aidhāmahi (first person singular and plural) are said to be (the forms in the past tense, Ātmanepada).
21. Abhūt, abhūtām, abhūvan, abhūḥ and abhūvaṁ (are the forms of the root bhū to be or become) in the Aorist. Aidhiṣṭa, Aidhiṣṭāṁ (Men prospered), aidhiṣṭḥāḥ, aidhiṣṭ (are) thus (the forms of the Aorist Ātmanepada).

22. (The root bhū becomes) babhūva, babhūvatuḥ, babhūvuh, babhuvitha, babhūvathuḥ, babhūva, (babhūva), babhūviva and babhūvima (are the forms) in the Perfect tense (in the Parasmaipada).

23. Pece, pécāte, pecire (cooked) and edhāṅcakṛṣe tvam (you prospered), edhāṅcakṛṭhe, pecidhve, pece, pecimahi (are the forms in the Perfect in the Ātmanepada and Periphrastic perfect).

24-25. In the first future (the root bhū has the forms) bhavitā, bhavitārau, bhavitāraḥ (will become) Hara and others. Bhavitāsi, bhavitāsthaḥ; bhavitāsmaḥ vayam (we) (are the other forms). Paktā, paktārau, paktāraḥ (are the forms of the root pac in the first future third person). You will cook (paktāse) good food. Paktādhve, I will cook (paktāhe), paktāsmahi (we will cook) the porridge for lord Hari (are examples for some of the forms of the root pac in the first future Ātmanepada).

26-30. In the benedictive: May there be (bhūyāt) happiness, Hari and Saṅkara bhūyāstām (be benevolent), bhūyāsuḥ they, you bhūyāḥ, you two gods bhūyāstāṁ, you all bhūyāsta, aham bhūyāsāṁ (May I be), bhūyāsaḥ (we all may be) always (happy). Yakṣiṣṭa, edhīṣiyāstām, yakṣirān, edhīṣiṭa, yakṣīvahi, edhīṣīmaḥi (are some of the forms of the roots yaj, to sacrifice and edh to prosper in the Ātmanepada) in the Benedictive. Ayakṣyata, ayakṣeyātām, ayakṣyanta, ayakṣye, ayakṣyethāṁ you two, ayakṣyaḥdham, aidhīṣyāvaha, aidhīṣyāmahi we all (are the forms) in the Conditional mood in the Parasmaipada. 

27. Bhaviṣyati would be (the form) in the second future. Edhīṣyāmahi is similar. In the same way vibhāvavyāyanti, bobbhaviṣyati (frequentative second future) (will become again and again). Ghaṭayet, paṭayet, putriyati, kāmyati (are other forms of nominal verbs and frequentatives).
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYNINE

The finished forms after adding the krt affixes (primary affixes added to verbs)

Kumāra said:

1-3. The kṛts are to be known in all the three forms (such as) the impersonal, passive and active. Ac, lyaṭ (to form neuter abstract nouns by adding na), ktin (ti) (to form feminine abstract nouns), ghaṛi (added to roots ending in consonants), and yuc in the impersonal (are the affixes). (Their examples are) in the ac: vinaya (modesty), utkaraḥ (heap, multitude), prakaraḥ (collection, heap), devaḥ (lord), bhadrāḥ (good), śrīkaraḥ (conferer of prosperity). The form in lyaṭ (is) sobhanam (auspicious), in ktin (ti) (the forms are) vrddhi (increase), stuti (praise) and mati (intellect). (The form) in ghaṛi is bhāva (feeling or state), in yuc—karaṇā (doing action), bhāvanā (bringing into existence) etc. and in the syllable a—(represented) by cikitsā (remedy).

4. Then (the affixes) tavya and antya (forming the words) kartaṃyām, karanyakaṃ (fit to be done), (the affix) yat (to form) deyaṃ (ought to be given) and dhyaṃ (ought to be meditated), in nyat (to form) kāryaṃ (a work or task) and kṛtyakāḥ (work to be done).

5. Kta and other (affixes) are to be known in the active, and some in the impersonal and passive. (A person) has gone to the village. The village has been reached. The preceptor has been embraced by you.

6. Satr (present participle in the Parasmaipada) and śānae (present participle in the Ātmanepada) are bhavan (becoming) and edhamāna (being prosperous). ṛvaḥ and tṛc (are) added to all the roots (to form agents such as) (bhāvakaḥ and bhavitā (feeling or manifestation and that which is about to become).

7. (An example) for ending in kvip (is) Svayambhūḥ (self-originated). Koas (vas) and Kānae (āna) (are the affixes) (of the participles) of the perfect (Parasmaipada and Ātmanepada). Bobhūvivat and pecivat (in the Parasmaipada) and pecanaḥ and āṣaddadhānakaḥ (in the Ātmanepada) (are the examples).
8. *Kumbhakāra* (a potter) etc. would be (formed by adding the affix) an. The *unādis* are known to be in the past. *Vāyuḥ* (wind), *pāyuḥ* (the anus) and *kāru* (artisan) would be (formed from them). These are said to be widely used in the Vedas.

**CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTY**

*The synonyms of group of words denoting the celestial region and the nether world*

_Fire-god said:_

1. I shall describe to you (the synonyms) of heaven etc. of which lord Hari is the indication. Svaḥ, svargaḥ, nākaḥ, tridivaḥ, dyauḥ, triviṣṭapa are synonyms (denoting heaven).

2-3a. Devas, Vṛndārakas and Lekhas (are the names for the celestials). Rudra and others (are) the chief of group of gods. Vidyādharas, Apsaras, Yakṣas, Rakṣas, Gandharvas, Kinnaras, Piśācas, Guhyakas, Siddhas and Bhūtas had celestial origin.

3b. The enemies of the Devas, Asuras and Daityas (born of Diti) (are the names of the demons). Sugataḥ and Tathāgataḥ (denote Buddha).  

4. Brahmā, Ātmabhūḥ (self-born), Surajyeṣṭha (chief of the Devas) (are the synonyms of Brahmā). Viṣṇu, Nārāyaṇa and Hari (are the names of Viṣṇu). Revatiṣa (husband of Revati), Halirāma (Rāma with with plough) (are the words denoting Balarāma) (elder brother of Kṛṣṇa). Kāma, Pañcasāra (having five shafts) and Smara (are the names of God of love).

5. Lakṣmī, Padmālayā (having the lotus as abode), and Padmā (are the names of Goddess Lakṣmī). Sarva (all things), Sarveśvara (lord of all beings), and Śiva (auspicious) (are the

---

*The Purāṇa summarises the Amarakośa in eight chapters. This chapter is an abridgement of the Kāṇḍa I, Svarga-varga 6-79 verses and Pātālavarga 239-347 verses.

1. The founder of Buddhism.*
names of Śiva). Kaparda is his matted hair. Pināka is the bow (of lord Śiva) also known as Ajagava.

6. His attendants are (known as) Pramathas. Mrḍānī (compassionate), Caṇḍikā (fierce) and Ambikā (mother) (are the names of Goddess Pārvatī). Dvaimātura¹ (having two mothers) and Gajāśya (having an elephant face) (are the names of lord Gaṇeśa). Senānī (leader of an army), Agnibhū (fire-born) and Guha (reared in a secret place) (are the names of Skanda).

7. Ākhaṇḍala (breaker), Sunāśira (favourable for the growth of grain), Sūtrāman (guarding well) and Divaspatī (lord of the heaven) (are the names of Indra). Pulomajā (daughter of Puloman, a demon), Śacī (powerful) and Indrāṇī are the names of wife (of Indra).

8. His (Indra's) mansion (is known as) Vaijayanta. Jayanta (victorious) (is the name of) Pākaśasani (son of Pākaśasana, Indra). Airāvata, Abhramātaṅga (elephantine cloud), Airāvana and Abhramuvallabha (mate of the female elephant of the east) (are the names of the elephant of Indra).

9. Hlādinī (that which delights), Vajra, that it not a feminine (word), Kulīsa, Bhidura (neuter words) and Pavi (masculine) (are the words denoting Indra's club). Indra's chariot is called) Vyomayāna and Vīmāna (the vehicle of the sky). (The latter word is) not feminine. Piyūśa, Aṃṛta and Sudhā (denote ambrosia).

10. Sudharmā is the council of gods. Svargaṅgā and Suradīrghikā (note the celestial Ganges). The celestial women such as Urvaśī and others (are denoted by the words) Svarveṣyā and Apsarasah. (Here the latter word is always) feminine and plural.

11-12. Hāhā and Hūhū (are the names of) Gandharvas (semi-divine beings). Agni, Vahni, Dhanaṇḍaya (conqueror of wealth), Jātavedas (knower of all things), Kṛṣṇavartman (whose way is black), Āśrayāśa (consuming everything with which it comes into contact), Pāvaka (purifier), Hiraṇyaretas (having golden seed), Saptārīcis (having seven rays), Śukra (white). Āśuṣuksaṇī (shining forth), Śuci (pure) and Appittam (bile of

¹. having a natural mother and a step-mother.
(are the words denoting fire). Aurva, Vāḍava and Vaḍa-vānala (denote the submarine fire).

13-14. Among the words denoting the flames of fire, Jvāla and Kila (are masculine and feminine), Arcis (feminine and neuter) and Heti and Śikhā (are) feminine. Sphuliṅga and Agni-kaṇa (denote a spark of fire). (These words are used) in all the three (genders). Dharmarāja (lord of virtue), Paretarāṭ (master of the dead), Kāla (the Tiine), Antaka (Destroyer), Daṇḍadhara (Wielder of a staff) and Srāddhadeva (lord of the ancestral rite) (are the synonymns of God of Death). Rākṣasa, Kauṇapa (coming from a corpse), Asrāpa (blood drinker), Kravyāda (flesh eater), Yātudhāna and Nairṛti (are the words denoting a demon).

15. Pracetas, Varuṇa and Pāśi (having a noose) (denote Varuṇa, the upholder of moral laws). Śvasana (who breathes), Sparśana (who touches), Anila, Sadāgati (always moving), Mātariśvan, Prāṇa (life breath), Marut and Samīraṇa (denote wind).

16. Jaya, ṛmbha and tara (denote speed). Laghu, kṣipram, aram, drutam, satvaram, capalam, tūrṇam, avilambitam and āsu (denote haste).


19. Guhyakeśa, Yakṣarāja (chief of Yakṣas), Rājaraja and Dhanādhıpa (lord of riches) (denote Kubera). Kinnara, Kimpuruṣa, Turaṅgavadanā (horse-faced) and Mayu (denote the Kinnaras, a class of semidivine beings).

20. Nidhi and sevadhī (mean treasure). (Both the words are) masculine. Vyoṣa, abhram, puṣkaram, ambaram, dyo, divam, antarikṣam and kham (denote the sky).

21-22a. Kāṭha, ātā and kakubha (denote the direction. Abhyantarā and anantarā mean the interspace (between the heaven and earth). Cakravāla and maṇḍala (mean a range or orb of things). Taḍītvān (having lightning), vārīda (giver of water), megha, stanayitnu (that which makes sound) and balāhaka (stand for cloud). Kādambindi and meghamālā (denote a row of clouds). Stanita and garjita (mean the rumbling of thunder clouds).
22b-23. Śampā, Satahradā, hrādini, airavati, kṣaṇaprabhā, taḍit, saudāmini, vidyut, cañcalā and capalā (denote lightning).

23b-24. Śphūrjatuhū and vajranirghoṣa (mean the peel of thunder). The cessation of rain (is denoted by the word) avagraha. Dhārāsamplāta and āśāra (denote incessant rain). Śikara (is known to be) drops of water (carried by wind). Vṛṣopala and karakaḥ (are the first rain drops falling like a stone). A cloudy day (is known as) durdinam (a bad day).

25. Antardhā, vyāvadhā (feminine), antardhi (masculine), apavāraṇam, apidhānam, tirodhānam, piddhānam, and āchāḍānam (mean concealing or covering).

26-27. (The words) Abja, Jāivātrka, Soma, Glaṅgh, Mṛgāṅka, Kalānidhi, Vidhū and Kumudabandhu (denote the Moon). Bimbha and maṇḍala (are the words denoting the orb of the moon, the former is) feminine (and the latter is used in) all (the genders). A sixteenth digit (of the moon) is kalā. Bhitta, šakala and khaṇḍaka (denote a part). Candrikā, kaumudi and jyotnā (denote the lustre of the moon). Prasāda and prasannatā (denote clear lustre).


29b. Naksatram, rksam, bham, tārā, tārakā and uḍu (denote an asterism). There the last word may also be feminine.

30. Guru, Jīva and Āṅgirasa (are the words standing for Jupiter). Uśanas, Bhārgava and Kāri (denote Venus). Vidhunibāda (afflicting Moon) and Tāma (denote) Rāhu. The rise of the constellations is known to be lagna.

31. Sages such as Marici, Atri and others1 are the seven sages. (They are known collectively as) Citrasikhaṇḍins. Hari- daśva, Bradhna, Pūṣā, Dyumani, Mihiira and Rāvi (denote the Sun).

32-34a. (The halo around the Sun is known as) pariśeṣa, pariḍhi, upaśūryakam and maṇḍalam. (The ray of the Sun is denoted by the words) kiraṇa, usra, mayūkha, aṅśu, garbhsi, ghṛṇi, dhṛṣṭib,

---

1. Āṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu and Vaśiṣṭha are the remaining five.
2. the Amara 210 reads pṛṇi.
bhānu, kara, marici, and didhiti where marici is feminine and masculine (while) didhiti is feminine. (The lustre is denoted by the words) prabhā, ruk, ruci, tuṣṭ, bhā, bhāh, chavi, dyuti, dipti, roci and roci, where the last two are neuter, (while the other words are feminine). (The lustre of the Sun is denoted by the words) prakāta, dyota and atapa.

34b-38a. (The words) kośam, kavośam, mantośam and kadośam (denote little heat). They take neuter when referring to a quality and take all genders as attributes. Similarly (the words) tīgam, tīkṣam and kharām (denoting excessive heat) take neuter or all the genders. (The words) diṣṭa, anehā and kālaka (denote time). (The words) ghasra, dinam and ahas (denote day). Sāyam, sandhyā and pitṛprasūḥ (denote the evening). Pratyūṣas, aharmukham, kalyam, usas and pratyūṣas (denote dawn). The three twilights (are known as) prāhā (morning), aparāhā (evening) are madhyāhna (midday). Night is denoted by the words) tārvari, yāmi and tami. (The night endowed with darkness is) tamisrd and (that with moonlight is) jyotstm. The night together with the preceding and succeeding days (is known as) pakṣipī. The two (words) ardharātri and niṣṭhā (denote midnight). Pradoṣa and rajanimukham (is the period preceding the night).

38b-40. The intervening period between the pratipat (first lunar day) and the fifteenth (lunar day) is parvan. There are two fifteenth (days) at the end of each one of the fortnights. Paurṇamāsi and pūrṇimā (denote the last days of the bright lunar fortnight). (If that full moon is a digit less (it is known as) anumati. If it is full, (it is) rākā. Amāvāsyā, is being near; darśa and sūryendu-saṅgama (union of Sun and Moon) (denote the last days of the dark lunar fortnight). If the moon is perceived (on the new moon day), (it is) sinivāli and if the same (is seen) a digit less, (it is) kuhā.

41-42a. Samvarta, pralaya, kalpa, kṣaya and kalpānta (denote deluge). (The words) kaluṣam, vṛjinam, emah, agham, amhah, duttam and dūṣkṛtam (denote sin). (The words) dharmam, punyam, śreyas, sukṛtam and vṛṣa (denote good deeds). The word dharmam (is used) in the masculine and neuter.

42b-43a. (The words) mut, priti, pramada, harsa, pramada, ñmoda, ñamada, ñandathuññ, ñananda, ārma, sīlam and sukham (denote rejoice).
43b-44a. (The words) svāhāreṣaṁ, sīvaṁ, bhādram, kalyāṇam, maṅgalam, sūbhām, bhāvukam, bhāvikam, bhāvyam, kuśalam and kṣemam (denote only welfare). (There) kṣemam is used in masculine and neuter.

44b. Daivaṁ, diṣṭam, bhāgaḍhayam, bhāgyam, niyati and viḍhi relate to (fruits of) previous birth. (The latter two) are feminine.

45a. Kṣetrajña, ātmaṁ and puruṣa relate to the soul in the body. Pradhānam and prakṛti (relate to the state in which the three qualities are in the same proportion). (The latter is used) in the feminine.


46b-47a. Buddhi, maniṣṭa, dhiṣṭa, dhiḥ, prajñā, śemusti, mati, prakṣa, upalabdhi, cit, saṁvit, pratiṣṭpat, jñāpti and cetanā (denote intellect).

47b-48. The intellect (dhi) which possesses retentive power (is known as) medhā. Saṅkalpa (resolve) is an activity of mind. Carcā (discussion), Saṅkhyā (deliberation) and vicāraṇa (inquiry) (relate to examination of an object by means of knowledge). Vicitraṁ and saṁṣṭaya (relate to doubtful knowledge). Adhyātma (inference), tarka (logical reasoning) and uha (conjecture) (relate to logic). Nirnaya and niṣṭaya mean conclusive knowledge.

49. (The words) mithyāṛṣṭi and nāstikatā (are used to denote) knowledge arising from the argument that the other world does not exist. Bhrānti, mithyāmati and bhrama (mean false [knowledge]). Aṅgikāra, abhyapagama, pratiśraya and samāśraya (denote acceptance).

50-51a. Knowledge relating to liberation from mundane existence (is) jñānam. (When it is used with reference to) architecture and scientific literature, (it is) vijñānam. Mukti, kaivalyam, nirvāṇam, śreyas, niḥśreyasam, amṛtam, mokṣa and apavarga (denote liberation from mundane existence). (The words) ajanānam, avidyā and ahammati (stand for ignorance). (Among these, the last two words are used) in the feminine.

51b-52a. (The word) parimala (is used to denote) fragrance arising from pounding or rubbing which attracts men. That which attracts very much (is known as) āmoda. (The words)
surabhi and ghrāṇatārpaṇa (denote an object possessing good fragrance).

52b-53. (The words) sukla, subhra, suci, sveta, viśada, tyeta, pāṇḍara, avadāta, sila, gaurā, valakṣa, dhavala, arjuna, harina, pāṇḍura and pāṇḍu (denote white). That which is little white (is denoted by the word) dhūṣara.

54. (The words) nila, asita, śyāme, kāla, syāmala and mecca (denote) black. (The words) pīta, gaurā and haridrābhā (denote yellow). (The words) pālāṣa, harita and harit (mean) the green colour.

55. (The words) rohita, lohita and rakta (denote red colour). (The word) sōna (denotes) the colour resembling red lotus. Little redness (is denoted by the word) arva. (The word) pālala (stands for) red mixed with white.

56-57a. Śrōva and kāpīta (denote whitish red). Dhūmara and dhūmala (denote) red and black mixed. Kāḍāra, kapila, pīṅga, pītaṅga, kadru and pīṅgala (denote reddish brown). Citram, kirmtra, kalmāṣa, sabala, eta and and kārburga (denote variegated colours).

57b. (The words) vyāhāra, ukti and lapitam (denotes speech). Apabhramśa (means) a corrupted word.

58. A collection of tirō (verb) and subanta (noun) is a sentence. Or it may be an activity together with the case relation between a noun and a verb. Itihāsa is that which has happened in the past. Purāṇa has five characteristics.¹

59. Ākhyāyikā is a narrative of a past event. Prabandha is an imaginary story. Samāhāra and saṅgraha (denote a collection of stories). Pravahlikā and prahelikā (are involving conjecture).

60. Samasyā is a puzzle that has to be completed. Smṛti is a collection of texts (composed for propagating) religious and moral duties. Ākhyā, āhvā and abhidhāna (denote name). Vṛttā and vṛttānta are said (to denote) narration of worldly course of events.

61. (The words) hūti, ākāraṇā and āhvaṇam (denote calling). Upanyāsa and vāhmukha (mean beginning of a speech). Vivāda and vyavahāra (are used in the sense of disputes relating debts,

¹. These are: creation, secondary creation, royal genealogies, Manu periods and genealogy of gods and sages.
gifts etc.). (The words) prativākyam and uttaram (are used in the sense of reply).

62. Upodgāta and udāhāra (are used to denote the thought relating to accomplishment of a contextual object). Mithyābhīṣamsanam and abhīśaṇa (mean insult or abuse). (The words) yaśas and kirti (denote fame). (The words) praśna, prechā and anuyogaka (mean a query).

63. (The word) āmṛeditam (means) repetition two or three (times). (The words) kutsā, nindā and garhaṇam (denote censure). (The words) abhāsaṇam and ṛāṭa would (mean conversation preceded by mutual call). Pralāpā is meaningless utterance.

64. Anulāpa and muhurabhāsa (mean repeated conversation). Vilāpa and paridevana denote speech preceded by weeping. Vipralāpa and virudhokti (denote mutually contradictory utterances). Samālāpa is conversation between one another.

65. Supralāpa and suvocanam (mean good utterance). Apalāpa and nikhava (mean veiled statement). Ruṣati¹ means inauspicious utterance. Saṅgatam and hrdayaṅgamam (would denote well-constructed sentence).

66. That which is exceedingly sweet is sāntvam. Abaddham and anarthakam would (mean absurd). Niṣṭhuram² and paruṣam (mean harsh utterance). Aṣilam and grāmyam (mean unrefined utterance). The statement which is pleasing and true (is) sūnttam.

67-69. Satyam, tathyatam, riṣam and samyak (would mean truth). (The words) nāda, nisvāna, nivana, ārava, ārava, samrāva and virāva (denote ordinary sound). Marmara (denotes) the sound made by cloth and leaves. (The sound made) by the ornaments (is) śiṅjitam. Nikṣaṇa and kvāna (denote the sound) of a lute. The sound made by birds (is) vāsitam. Kolāhala and kalakala (mean the clear sound made by many). The two (words) gitam and gānam mean the same (namely, a song). Pratiṣrut and pratidhvāna (mean echo), where the former is feminine. (The sounds such as) nisāda (and the like) arise from stringed instruments and throats (of singers).

1. The printed text wrongly reads uṣati.
2. The Purānic text mixes this term and the next. This has been corrected on the basis of Amara.
70-71. A subtle (sound) is kākali. That which is sweet and not explicit is kala. Mandara is a lofty sound. Tāra is a very loud sound. Where there is a resonance and well blending of the (last) three sounds it is said to be ekatāla. Vina, vallaki and vipāñcit (denote lute). That which is known to have seven strings is parivādinti.

72. Vina and other instruments are spread out. Muraja and the like are bound. Vansā (flute) and others have holes. An instrument made of bell-metal and the like is ghanam.

73. Thus there are four kinds of musical instruments having the appellation vāditram and atodyam. Mydaṅga and Muraja (are synonyms). Ankyaḥ, aлингyaḥ and urdhvaka are different kinds of Mydaṅgas.

74-75a. The drum that is sounded (at first) for the sake of fame (is known as) Dhakkā. Bheri and Dundubhi (are synonyms), the former is feminine and the latter masculine. Anaka and Pataka (are synonyms). Jharjhari, Dhingima, Mardala and Panava (are different kinds of percussion instruments). Tāla is the measure of time relating to the performance.

75b. Laya is the equal proportion of the performance and time (relating to music, dance etc.) Tāṇḍavam, nātyam, lāsya and nartanam (are synonyms).

76. Nṛtyam (dance), gitam (singing) and vādyam (instrumental), the three (are known collectively as) tauryātrikam. The king is known as Bhaṭṭāraka and Deva. (The queen) who had been anointed is Devi.

77-81a. Śrīgāra (erotic), vīra (heroic), karuṇa (pathos), adbhuta (wonder), hāṣya (mirth), bhayānaka (frightening), bibhatsa (disgust) and raudra (wrath) are the sentiments. The erotic (is also denoted by the words) śuci and ujjvala. The heroic sentiment (is also known as) utsāhavardhana. Karuṇyam, karuṇā, ghṛṇā, kṛpā, dayā, anukampa and anukrota (denote the sentiment of pathos). Hasa, hāsa and hāsyam (mean the same). Bibhatsa (is also known as) vikṛta. These two are masculine (when denoting the sentiment). Vismaya, adhutam, aścaryam and citram (denote wonder). Bhairavam, dūrṇam, bhīṣanam, bhīṣmam, ghoraṁ, bhitam, bhayānakaṁ,
bhayaṅkaram and pratibhayam (denote frightening). Raudra is ugra (terrible). (These fourteen beginning with abhuta are masculine relating to a sentiment.) (Otherwise they take) the three (genders). Dara, trāsa, bhitiḥ, bhiḥ, sādhvasam and bhayam (mean fear).

81b. The change relating to mind is bhāva. Anubhāva is the expression of the mental change.

82. (The words) garva, abhimāna and ahankāra (denote pride). Māna is elevated thinking. ānādara, paribhava, paribhāva and tiraskriyā (mean disrespect).

83. (The words) vṛiḍā, lajjā, trapā and hri (would mean shyness). The desire for wealth (is) abhidhyānam. (The words) kautūhalam, kautukam, kutukam and kutūhalam (denote curiosity).

84. (The words) vilāsa, bibboka, vibhrāma, lalitam, helā and lilā denoting the behaviour of women are known as ḫava produced from erotic state.

85. (The words) drava, keli, parihāsa, kriḍā and lilā (denote only erotic sport). Kūrdanam (means child’s play). A burst of laughter with a motive (is) acchuritakam. The same, if little, (is known as) smitam.

86. Adho bhuvanam and pāṭālam (denote the nether world). (The words) chidram, svabhram, vapā and śuṣi (denote a hole in general). Garta and avastra (denote) a hole or pit in the earth. (The words) tamisram, timiram and tama (denote darkness).

87. (The words) sarpa, prdākuḥ, bhujaga, dantaśūka and bileśaya (denote a serpent). (The words) viṣam, kṣveḍa and garam (mean poison). (The words) nīrāya and durgati (mean hell). The latter is feminine.

88. (The words) payaḥ, kīlālam, amṛtom, udakam, bhuvanam and vanam (are used in the sense of water). Bhāṅga, taraṅga and ārmi denote waves. Kallola and ullola (denote mighty waves).

89. (The words) prṣanti, bindavaḥ and prṣataḥ (stand for drops of water). (The words) kīlām, rodhas and tira(ka)m (denote banks). That which rises from water is pulinam (sand). (The words) jambala, panka and kardama (mean mire).

90-91. The overflow of floods is (denoted by the words)

1. Amara 409 reads ‘abhidhyā’ meaning desire to covet another’s property.
jalocchvāsāḥ and pravāhāḥ. (The words) kūpakaḥ and vidārakaḥ (are pits made in the dry bed of rivers). Ātara and tarapanyam (are used in the sense of ferry charges). The wooden water-carrier is droni. Kaluṣa and āvila are (used to mean) impure and accha, pure. (The word) gabhitrakam (denotes deep). Agādham (means very deep). (The words) dāṣa and kaivarta (denote a fisherman). Jambūkas (bivalve shells) are oysters in the water.

92. Saugandhika and kalhāra (denote white lotus blossoming in the evening). Indivara is a blue lotus. Utpala and kuvalaya denote blue lotus. Kumuda and kairava (are used to denote) white (lotus).

93. The root of these lotuses (is) śālūka. (The words) padmam and tāmarasam (denote a lotus). Nilotpalam and kuvalayam (denote a lily). The red lotus is known as kokanadam.

94-95. Karahāja and śīphākandam (denote the root of a lotus). Kiṇjalka and kesara mean the filament, not in feminine.1 (The words) khani and ḍakara (denote the place from where the gems are produced). The former is feminine. Pāda and pratyan-taparvata (denote) smaller hills. That which is still nearer to the hill, (is said to be) upatyakā. The earth above the hill (is known as) adhityakā. The groups of words belonging to the heaven and hell have been described. Listen to me! I shall describe words having different meaning.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYONE*

The indeclinables

Fire-god said:

1. (The indeclinable) āt is used in the (following) in the sense of a little, pervading, limit and in combination with verbs. (The particle) ā known as pragrhyā is used in sentences to denote remembrance. (The same with a visarga) (denotes) anger and affliction.

1. After summarising the first Kṣāṇa of Amara, the Purāṇa jumps to the middle of the second Kṣāṇa.

*The Purāṇa summarises in this chapter, from Amara III. pañkti 2814.
2. (The particle) *ku* (is used) in the sense of sin, condemnation and little. *Dhik* (is used in the sense of) disgust and censure. *Ca* (is used) to connect with another, as a collection, union with one another, for connecting mutually independent words with a common word.

3. *Suasti* (is used in the sense of) benediction, well-being and meritorious act. *Ati* (has the sense of) excess and crossing. *Svitt* (is used in the sense of) interrogation and doubt. *Tu* (is used to denote) division and limitation.

4. *Sakrt* (is used in the sense of) together with and once. *Ārāt* (has the sense of) near and far off. (The word) *pascāt* (is used in the sense of) western direction and the end. *Āpi* (has the sense of collection). *Uta* has the sense of option.

5. *Śacvat* (is used in the sense of) repetition and together with. *Sākṣat* (denotes) perception and identity. *Bata* (is used in the following senses): grief, pity, pleasure, surprise and invitation.

6. *Hanta* (is used to express) rejoice, pity, beginning of a sentence and grief. *Prati* is used according to tradition in (the sense of) a representative both as repetition and as indicative etc.

7. *Iti* (is used in the sense of) cause, context, making explicit etc. and conclusion. *Purastāt* (is used to denote) in the east, at first, before and in front of. *Āpi* is also (used in the same sense).

8. *Tāvat* and *tāvat* (are used in the sense of) whole, end, measure and determination. *Atha* (is used to express) auspiciousness, continuity, beginning, query and whole.

9. *Vṛtha* (is used to convey) uselessness and devoid of injunction. *Nānā* (conveys) many and both. *Nu* (expresses) query and option. *Anu* (expresses) succession and resemblance.

10. *Nañu* (is used to indicate) query, determination, permission, pacification and invitation. *Āpi* (is used to denote) censure, collection, query, doubt and conjecture.


12. *Evam* (is used to convey) similarity and such and such a manner. *Nīnam* (is used) in logic and determination. *Joṣam*
(is used to mean) silence and happiness. *Kim* (is used to convey) query and disgust.

13. *Nāma* (is used to mean) making explicit, conjecture, anger, approximation and censure. *Ālam* conveys (the sense of) ornament, satiety, ability and prevention.

14. *Hūm* (is used to convey) doubt and inquiry. *Samayā* (denotes) proximity and middle. *Punaḥ* (conveys) not being the first and difference. *Niḥ* (expresses) certainty and prohibition.

15. *Purāṇa* would (be used to indicate) continuity, long past, nearness and the future. The three (words) *ūrā, īrī* and *urarti* (are used in the sense of) expansion and that which is agreed upon.

16. *Svaḥ* (is used in the sense of) heaven and other world. *Kila* (is used in the sense of) tidings and conjecture. (The word) *khalu* (is used to denote) prohibition, verbal embellishment, desire to know and pacification.¹

17. (The word) *abhitaḥ* (is used in the sense of) proximity, both ways, quickness, whole and facing. *Prāduḥ* (is used to convey) name and explicitness. *Mithaḥ* (denotes) between one another and in secrecy.

18. (The word) *tirah* (is used to denote) disappearance and horizontal. (The particle) *hā* (is used to express) pain, anger and grief. *Ahaha* (is used to denote) surprise and grief. (The particle) *hi* (is used to denote) cause and determination.

19. (The words) *cirāya, cirarāṭrāya, cirasya* and others (are used) in the sense of long time. *Muhuḥ, punah punah, sāvat, abhikṣam and asakṛt* (again and again) have the same (sense).

20. (The words) *sṛāk, jhaṭiti, aṅjasā, ahnāya, sapadī, drāk* and *maṅkṣu* are (used in the sense of) quickness. (The words) *bala-vat, suṣṭhu* and *kimuta* (denote) excessive. *Kim, kimu* and *uta* (are used in the sense of) option.

21. (The particles) *tu, hi, ca, sma, ha* and *vai* (are used) for completing a quarter of a verse. *Su* and *ati* (are used to denote) worship (reverence). *Divā* (is used to denote) at day. *Dosā* and *naktam* (are used in the sense of) night.

22. *Śāci* and *tirah* (are used) in the sense of horizontally. (The words) *pyāt, pāt, aṅga, ha, hai* and *bhoḥ* (are used) in the

¹. The *Purāṇa* reads wrongly *awasara.*
sense of calling a person. Samayā, nikaśā and hiruk (have the sense of proximity).

23. Sahasā (is used in the sense of) unexpected. Purakah, purataḥ and agrataḥ (mean) in front of. Svāḥā, śrauṣṭa, vaṣaṅaḥ, vaṣāt and svadhā (are used) in offering made to the gods.

24. (The words) kiñcita, śat and manāk (are used in the sense of) a little. Pretya and amutra (are used in the sense of) the other world. Yathā and tathā (convey) similarity. Aho and ho (indicate) surprise.

25-26. (The words) tasyāṁ and tasyākam (are used in the sense of) silence. Sadyaḥ and sāpadi (denote) the present moment. Diṣṭyā and samapajoṣam (convey) rejoice. (The words) antare, antarā and antarena (denote) ‘in the middle’. Prasahya means ‘by force’. The two (words) sāmpratam and sthāne (convey the sense) appropriate. Abhisṣam and taśvat (mean) eternally.

27. (The words) nahi, a, no and na (indicate) non-existence. (The words) māsma, mā and alām (are used in the sense of) restraining. Ceti and yadi (are used to denote) alternative. The two (words) addhā and añjasā (are employed to convey) truth.

28. Prāduḥ and avih indicate explicitness. Om, evam and paramam (convey) opinion. (The words) samantataḥ, paritāḥ, sarvataḥ and viśvāk (convey) all around.

29. Kāmam (is used to convey) permission unwillingly granted. An acceptance preceded by jealousy (is indicated by the word) astu. (The word kāmam is) also (used in the same sense). Nanu (indicates) a contrary opinion. Kaccit (indicates) affectionate enquiry.

30. (The words) niḥ samam and duḥ samam (are used to convey) condemned. Yathāsvaṁ and yathāyatham (convey the sense) of appropriate or befitting. Mṛśā and mithyā (indicate) false. Yathārtham and yathātatham denote truth.

31. (The words) evam, tu, purāḥ, vai and vā are expressions (indicating) conclusion. Prāk (conveys) the thing that has taken place already. The two (words) nūnam and avatīyam (are used to indicate) certainty.

32. Sāṃvat (is used to mean) the year. Arvāk (means) below. Ām and evam (convey) approval. Svayam (means) by the
self. Nicaih (means) low. Uccaiḥ (means) great. Prāyah (denotes) a great quantity. Ṣanaiḥ (is used in the sense of) slowly.

33. The word sand (denotes) eternal. Bhaiḥ (conveys the meaning) outside. Sma (indicates) the past. Astam (denotes) invisible. Asti (conveys the sense) of reality. U is an expression of anger. Ûm (indicates) a query. Ayi (is an expression of) pacification.

34. Hūm (is used in) discussion. (The word) uṣā (has the sense of) end of the night. Namaiḥ (conveys) obeisance. Anca (is used) in the sense of again. Duṣtu (is an expression of) censure and susûtu, of praise.

35. Sāyam (conveys the sense) in the evening. (The words) prage and prataḥ (convey the sense) 'in the morning'. Nikasa (conveys the meaning) nearby. (The word) parut (denotes) the last year and parâri, the year before the last. Yati (denotes the current year).

36. Adya (denotes) the present day. (The words) purvedyyah etc. (convey the sense of) the previous day etc. Similarly one should know that (the words uttaredyyah, aparedyyah, adharedyyah, anyedyyah, anyataredyyah and itaredyyah are formed) from uttara (tomorrow), apara (some other), adhara (the previous), anya (some other), anyatara (some other next) and itara (some other).

37. Ubhayadyuḥ and ubhayedyuḥ (convey the sense of) both the days. Paredyavi (means) on the next day. Hyāḥ (denotes) yesterday and svāḥ, the day yet to come next. Paraśvāḥ (denotes) the day after tomorrow.

38. (The words) tadā and tadānim (denote at that time). Yugapat (means) once. Sarvadā and sadā (mean) always. Etaṛhī, samṛati, idānim, adhunā and sāmpratam (mean) the present moment.
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYTWO

Words having many meanings

Fire-god said:

1. (The word) nāka (is used to denote) the sky and heaven. (The word) loka (means) the world and people. Śloka (is used to mean) a verse and fame. Sāyaka (has the meaning) an arrow and sword.

2. Ānaka (denotes) a bheri as well as paṭaha (two kinds of drums). Kalaṅka is a mark as well as a scandal. (The letter) ka in the masculine (is used to denote) wind, Brahmā and the Sun and kam in the neuter (is used to denote) head and water.

3. (The word) pulāka (denotes) empty or bad grain, abridgement and rice-water. (The word) kauśika (is used in the sense of) Mahendra, guggulu (resin got from cow), owl, serpent and alligator.

4. A monkey and a dog (are denoted by the word) śalāvṛka. Mānam is a means of measure. Sarga (is used in the sense of) one’s nature, natural state, relinquishment, decision, chapter and creation.

5. (The word) yoga (is used in the sense of) an armour, means (expedience), contemplation and union. (The word) bhoga (has the meaning of) happiness and enjoying the company of a harlot. The word abja (is used to denote) conch and moon.

6. Karaṭa (denotes) a crow and the cheek of an elephant. Śipiviṣṭa (denotes) a leprous person. (The word) riṣṭa (is used in the sense of) prosperity, good and bad luck and arīṣṭa, good and bad luck.

7. (The word) yuṣṭi (is used in the sense of) a fruit and plenty. (The word) drṣṭi (is used to denote) knowledge, eye and perception. (The word) niṣṭah (has the sense of) accomplishing, non-existence and destruction. (The word) kāṣṭhā (is used to denote) excellence, state and direction.

8. (The words) idā and ila (convey the sense of) a cow, earth and speech. Pragādhām (denotes) much and difficult. The word ṝṛṣṭha (means) capable of and stout.
9. Vyāda (has the meaning) placed in order and firmness. (The word) Kṛṣṇa (denotes) Vyāsa, Arjuna and Hari. Paça (is used to denote) the stake in gambling etc., wages, price and a particular coin.

10. (The word) guṇa (is used in the sense of) the bow-string, quality of a substance, (qualities like) sattva (goodness), bravery and treaty etc. (The word) grāmāṇi (is used to denote) excellent (person) and leader (in a village).

11. Tṛṣṇā (is used to convey) desire and desire to drink. (The word) vipasi (is used to denote) a merchant’s shop. Tikṣṇam (is used to mean) poison, battle and iron in the neuter, but in all the three (genders) when (denoting) sharp-edged.

12. (The word) pramāṇa (is used to mean) cause, limit in the śāstra, extent and the knower. Karaṇa is the excellent means. It is also (used to denote) the sense-organs. (The word) trīṇam (is used to convey) a barren land and a desert.

13. (The word) yantṛ (is used in the sense of) a mahout and a charioteer. (The word) heti (denotes) flame. (The word) śrutam (is used to convey) scriptures and accurate knowledge. Kṛtām (is used to mean) the (first) yuga and enough.

14. Pratīts (is used to mean) well-known and delight. Abhi-jāta (is used to denote) born in a good family and wise. (The word) vivikta (means) pure and devoid of men. Mūrchita (means) stupefied and elevated (prosperous).

15. Artha (conveys the sense) ‘to be expressed’, riches, an object, use and end. Tirtham (expresses the sense of) water tank, scriptures, water courses honoured by sages and preceptor.

16. Kakudāḥ (is used in the sense of) importance, the insignia of a king and a limb of a bull (hump on the shoulder) in the masculine and neuter. The feminine (word) satvāt (conveys the sense of) knowledge, conversation, a disciplined action, battle and name.

17. (The word) upaniṣat (is used in the sense of) dharma and secret doctrine (such as) philosophy. (The word) sarat (has the

1. This line is not in the Amara.
2. The text wrongly reads sūkla instead of sāurya.
3. The printed text wrongly reads svara instead of khara.
4. Vide Amara pankti 2476. The Purāṇa has omitted the other senses: ray of the Sun and weapon.
meaning of) a season and a year. (The word) *padam* (is used in the sense of) endeavour, protection, position, mark, foot and object.

18. (These are used) in all the three (genders): (The word) *svādī* (denotes) favourite and sweet. *Mrūdī* (denotes) not sharp and soft. *Sat* (is used to convey) truth, good people, existence, praiseworthy and respectable.

19. (The word) *vidhi* (is used to denote) an injunction and Brahmā. *Prānidhi* (conveys the meaning of) request and a spy. *Vadhūḥ* (means) wife, son's wife and woman in general. *Sudha* (denotes) plaster (used in temples etc.), nectar and the milk-hedge plant.

20. (The word) *śraddhā* (denotes) respect and desire. *Pāṇḍitaṃmanyaḥ* is one who thinks himself as learned and proud as well. *Brahma-bandhu* (is used in the sense of) censure. *Bhānu* means ray as well as Sun.

21. *Grāvan* (is used to denote) a hill and a stone. (The word) *prthakjana* (denotes) a fool and also a low class man. (The word) *śikharin* (denotes) a tree as well as a mountain. *Tanu* (denotes) the skin and the body.


23. (The word) *niryātana* (is used to denote) revenge, gift and restitution of a deposit. *Vyasanam* (has the sense of) grief, fall and crime due to passion or wrath.

24. Hunting, dice-play, dreaming during the day, accusation, women, intoxication, the triple symphony (dance, music and instrumental music) and strolling about idly are the group of crime arising from passion.

25. Slandering, bravery, offence, hatred, jealousy, extravagance, reprimand and harshness are the eight crimes arising from wrath.

26. *Kauptān* (is used to denote) a wrong deed, secret and organ of generation. *Mayūnām* (is employed in the sense of) relating to union with wife and sexual union. *Pradhānam* (denotes) the supreme spirit and intellect. *Prājñānam* (is used to mean) intellect and mark.

28. *Rātnam* (is used to mean) that which is excellent among its own class. *Lakṣma* (is used to denote) a mark and chief. *Kalāpa* (denotes) an ornament, peacock’s plumes, quiver and a collection.

29. (The word) *tālpa* (is used to denote) bed, an apartment on the roof and woman. *Ḍimba* (is used the mean) a child and a fool. (The word) *stambha* (is used to denote) a pillar of a building and dull. (The word) *sabhā* (is used to convey the meaning of) an assembly and member of a house.

30. *Rasmi* (is) a ray (of light) as well as rein (of horses etc.). (The word) *dharma* (is used to denote) merit and self-control etc. (The word) *lalama* (conveys the meaning of) tail, mark (on the forehead of horses etc.), horse, ornament, prominence and banner.

31. (The word) *pratyaya* (is employed in the sense of) subject to control, oath, knowledge, faith and cause. (The word) *samaya* (is used to convey) an agreement, practice, time, a dogma and knowledge.

32. (The word) *atyaya* (is used to mean) transgression and crime. *Satya* (means) an oath and truth. (The word) *viryam* (is used in the sense of) strength, and greatness. *Rūpyam* (is used to mean) praiseworthy form.

33. *Durodara* (is employed to denote) a gambler and *durodaram* (to denote) the stake in gambling. (The word) *kānīra* (is used to mean) a great forest or a difficult path, in the masculine and neuter.

34. (The word) *hari* (is used to denote) *Yama* (god of death), *Anila* (wind), *Indra* (ruler of the celestials), *Candra* (Moon), *Arka* (Sun), *Viṣṇu* and a lion etc. (The word) *dara* (is employed to mean) a hole and fear, in the masculine and neuter. (The word) *jaṭhara* (means) hard (besides stomach).

35. *Uḍāra* (is used to denote) giver and great. *Itara* (means) different as well as low. *Cūḍā* (denotes) crown and hair. The lock of hair (is called) *mauli*.

36. (The word) *bali* (is used to mean) tax, offering etc. (The word) *balam* (is used to denote) an army and firmness.
(The word) **nivī** (is employed to mean) the knot on the waist garment of a woman and ransom (against the prince etc. held as captive).

37-38a. (The word) **vrṣa** (is used in the following senses): the scrotum (that discharges semen), rat, excellence, good deed and a bull. (The word) **ākārṣa** (is used to denote) dice-play, the die and the board for dice-play. (The word) **akṣam** (means) an organ, and in the masculine, the dice, difference in the measure, dispute and the **vibhitaka** (one of the three myrobalans).

38b. (The word) **uṣṇīṣa** (is used to mean) crown etc.\(^1\) *Karṣū* conveys the sense of a small river.

39. (The word) **adhyākṣa** (means) visible and one who presides over. (The word) **vibhāvasu** denotes the Sun and Fire. (The word) **rasa** (is employed to denote) (the sentiments) such as erotic and others, poison, splendour, qualities (such as sweet, sour etc.), passion and juice.

40. (The word) **varcas** (denotes) feces as well as splendour. (The word) **āga** (denotes) sin and crime. (The word) **chandās** (means) poetry and desire. *Sādhīyān* (is used to denote) good as well as strong. *Vyūha* (means) a collection as well as (strength). (The word) **aḥiḥ** (denotes) *Vṛtra* as well as a serpent\(^2\). Fire, Moon and Sun (are referred to as) *tamonudāḥ* (destroyers of darkness).

---

**CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYTHREE**

*The words denoting earth, city, forest and herbs*

*Fire-god said:*

1. I shall describe the words denoting earth, city, forest, herbs and lion etc. (The following words denote the earth): *bhūḥ*, *anantā*, *kṣamā*, *dhātri*, *kṣmā*, *jyā*, *kuḥ* and *dharitrī*.

---

2. The *Purāṇa* omits this word. Cf. *Amara paṇkti* 2812.
*The Purāṇa summarises Amara kāṇḍas II. 2, II. 3 and II. 5*
2. (The words) mṛt and mṛttikā (denote a piece of earth). Commendable earth (is denoted by the words) mṛtsē and mṛtsnal. (The land space on the earth is denoted by the words) jagat, viṣṭapam, loka, bhuvanam and jagati.

3. (The words), ayanam, vartma, mārga, adhva, paṇthā, padvat, sṛtī, saraṇī, paddhati, padyā, vartani and ekapadi (denote a path).

4-6a. (The words) pūḥ, puri, nagari, pattanam and puṭhabhedanam (denote a town). Sīkāniyam is a big city surrounding big pathways. Sākhānagaram is a suburb of a principal city. The suburb where the harlots dwell is veṣa. Āpana and niṣadyā (denote) the place for selling goods. Viṣṭani and panyavithikā (denote) the market street. Rathyā, pratoli and viṣikhā (denote) the pathways in the interior of a village. Caya and vapram (mean the earth dug up from a moat) in the masculine and neuter.

6b. Prākāra, varana and śāla (denote the surrounding fence set up with poles, thorns etc.). A surrounding fence made up at the border (with bamboo, thorns etc.) (is called) prācinam.

7-8. Bhīti and kudycam (denote a wall). That wall set with bone etc. inside (is known as) edakam. (The words) vāsa, kuṭi, śāla and sabhā (denote the assembly hall). Saṅjavanam and catuḥśalam (is a group of four houses forming a court). Parnaśālā and utaja (not feminine) denote a hermitage. Caityanam and āyatanam (denote a sacrificial hall). Vājīśālā and mandura (denote a stable).

9. The dwelling place of the rich (is) hārmyādi. The place of the gods and kings (is called) prāsāda. (The words) dvāḥ, dvāram and pratthāra (denote a door), where the word dvāḥ is feminine. Vītardi and vedikā (mean a fence).

10-11a. (The words) kapotapaṭikā and viṭaṅkam, respectively masculine and neuter (denote a pigeonhouse made of wood etc.). Kapāṭa and arara are synonyms (meaning a door). Nīṭreni and adhirohiṇi (denote steps made with wood etc. for ascending). Sammārjani and Śodhanī (mean broom-stick). Saṅkara and avakara (denote sweepings).

11b-12. (The words) adri, gotra, giri and grāvā (denote mountains in general). (The words) gahanam, kānanam and vanam (denote a forest). (The words) ārāma and upavanam (denote) an
artificial garden (that has been accomplished). The same that is fit for harem (is called) pramadavanam.

13. (The words) vihī, atīh, ovaśīh, paṅktīh and tretī (denote a row). (The words) lekhāḥ and rājayaḥ (denote lines). A tree (that is seen) with fruits (produced) from flowers (is) vānaspataḥ. A tree (that is seen) with fruits not (produced) from flowers (is) vanaspataḥ.

14. Those which end with fruit-bearing (are known as) oṣadhi-s. (The words) palaśi, druḥ, druṇa and agama (denote a tree). (The words) sthānu, dhruva and saṅku (denote a cut tree). (The word) sthānu is optionally masculine. (The words) praphulla, utphulla and samphulla (mean a flower that has blossomed).

15-16a. (The words) palaśam, chadanaṃ and parnation (denote a leaf). (The words) idhanam, edhaḥ and saṃit, feminine (denote dry wood and grass). Bodhidrūma and coladala (denote the holy fig tree). Dadhiha, grāhi, manmatha, dadhiphala, puṣpaphala and dantaṣātha (denote the woodapple tree).

16b-17. (The words) udumbara, hemadugdha, kovidāra and dvipatraka (denote udumbara). The saṃtapaṇa (tree) (is also known as) viśālatvaka. The kṛtaṇīla (tree is also known as) suvarṇaka, āreṇā, vṛdhigātha, śampāka and cāturaṅga-la.

18. The Jambira (tree is also called) dantaṣātha. The Varuṇa (tree is also called) tiktaṣāka. Punnāga (tree is also called) puruṣa, tuṅga, kesara and devavallabha.

19-20a. Nimbaturu, mandāra and pārijataka (are the other names of) pāribhadra (tree). Vaṇjula and cīrakṛ (are the other names of tiniṣa tree). Pitana and kapiṇa (denote the āmrātaka (tree). (The other names) of madhūka (are) guḍapuspa and madhuruma.

20b. Guḍaphala and svamśi (are the other names of) pilu. Nādeyī is the other name of ambhuvetas.

21. Śīgruḥ, tikṣṇagandhaka, aksīva and mocaka (are the other names of) śobhaṅjana. If this (śobhaṅjana) is red (it is called) madhusigruḥ. Arīṣṭa and phenila are synonyms.

22. Lodhra (is also called) gālava, śabara, tiriṇa, tilva and mārjana. Uddālaka (is also known as) śeluḥ, śleśmātaka, śīta and bahuvāraka.

23. (The other names of) vikaṅkata (are) sruvavṛksa, granthila
and vyāghrapāt. Tinduka (is also called) śphūrjaka and kāla (skandha)². (The terms) nādeyī and bhūmijambuka (denote nāgarāṅga)².

24. Kākatindu and (kāka) piluka are synonyms. Kramuka and paṭṭikākhyā would (denote lohitatalodhra)³. Kumbhi (is also known as) kaīḍarya and kaṭṭhala.

25-26a. Viravyaśa, aruṣkara and ugnimukhi (are the synonyms of) bhallātakti in (all the three genders). Surjaka, pitaśāraka⁴ and asana (are synonyms of) jiva (ka). Sarja and aśvakarna (are synonyms of) sālā.⁵ Arjuna (tree) (is also called) viratara⁶, indradruḥ, and kakubhaḥ.

26b-27. Inghudi (is also known as) tāpasaṭaru. Śālmali (is also known as) mocā. Cirabilva, naktamāla and karaja (are the other names of) karaṇjaka. (Pūtika is also known as) prakirya and pūtikaraja. Markaṭi and aṅgāравallari (are varieties of karaṇja)⁷.

28. Rohi, plīhaṣatru and dāḍimapuṣpaka (are synonyms of) rohitaka. Khadira (is also known as) gāyatri, bālatanaya and dāntadhāvana.

29. Arimeda and viṭkhadira (denote varieties of bad smelling khadira). Kada (denotes) the white khadira. (Eraṇḍa is also called) paṅcāṅgula, vardhamāna, caṅcu and gandharvahastaka.

30-31a. Pīṇḍitaka and maruvaka (are synonyms of madana). Devadāru (is also called) pitadāru, dāru and pūtikāṭham. Priyaṅgu (is also known as) śyāmā, mahilāḥvayā, latā, govandani, gūndrā, phalini and phali.

31b-32a. Ṣonakā (is also known as) maṇḍūkaparṇa, patronā, nāṭa, kaṭvaṅga, tuṭṭuka, syonāka, sukanāṣa, ḍṛṣṭa, dirghavrnta and kuṭānṇaṭa.

32b. Pītadru and sarala (are synonyms). Nicula, ambuja and hijjala (are the synonyms of a kind of reed).

---

2. Cf. ibid. pañkti 724.
3. Cf. ibid. pañkti 730.
5. Cf. Amara pañkti 737. The purānic reading is wrong.
33. Kākodumbarikā and phalgūḥ (are the synonyms of malayā. Ariṣṭa, picumardaka, sarvatobhadra (are synonyms of) nimba. Śirīśa (is also known as) kapitana.

34-35a. Va(ba)ka (is said to be vaijula. (Kapilā is also called as)-picchilā and aguruśimśapā. Jayā, Jayanti and tarkāri (are synonyms of vaijayantikā. Kaṇikā (is also known as) gaṇikārikā, śripaṇam and agnimanta. Vatsaka and girimallikā (are synonyms of kuṭaja).⁴

35b-36. Kālaskandha (is a synonym of) tamāla. Taṇḍultya (is known as) alpamāriṣa. Sinduvāra (is also known as) nirguṇḍi. The same (mallikā) grown in the forest (is known as) āsphoṭa. Yāṭhikā (is also known as) gaṇikā and ambaṣṭhā. Navamālīkā (is also known as) saptalā.

37. Atimukta and punḍraka (are different varieties of kunda).⁶ Kumāri (is also known as) sahā and tarāṇi. Therein?, the red variety is kurabaka and the yellow variety is kurunṭaka.

38. The blue jhinīti (is also known as) bāṇā. (It is also known as dāśi and artagalā.) Jhinīti (in general is known as) saireyaka. If it is red, it is known as kurabaka. If it is yellow, it is known as sahacari (and also as sahačara).

39. Kitava and dhūṛta (are the other names of) dhattāra. Rucaka (is the other name of) mātulunγaka. Samiraṇa, maruvaka, prasthapūpa and phaniqjaka (are the synonyms of jambira).⁹

40-42a. Kūtheraka (is the other name of) paṇṇasa. Vasuka and āsphoṭa (are the synonyms of) arka. Šivamalli and pāṣupata (are synonyms). Vṛndā, vṛkṣādaṇi, jivantikā and vṛkṣaruhā (are the synonyms of the plant that clings to a tree and grows). Guḍucī (has the other names) tantrikā, amṛṭa, somavalli and madhu-parṇī. Mūrvā (is also called) moraṭā, madhūlikā, madhusreṇi, gokarṇī and pīluparṇī.

2. Cf. ibid. pāṇkti 773.
3. Cf. ibid. pāṇkti, 779.
4. Cf. ibid. pāṇkti, 781.
5. The Purāṇa mixes with the previous. Cf. Amara pāṇktis 785 and 789.
42b-43. *Pātha* (is also known as) *āmbaśṭhā, viddhakarnī, pracinā* and *vanatiktikā. Kaṭuh, kaṭumbharā, cakrāṇi and *sakulādani* (are the names of *kaṭurohini*). Ātmaguptā, *pravṛṣaṇi* and *kapikacchu* (are the other names of) *markaṇṭi*.

44. *Āpamārga* (is also known as) *śaikharika, pratyakparṇi and mayūraka. Pahanjkā* and *bhrāmaṇti* (are the other names of) *bhārgi. Dravanti, sambrati* and *vṛṣa* (are synonyms).

45. *Mandūkparṇi, bhaṇḍiri, samaṅgā and kālamesikā* (are synonyms of *maṇjiṣṭhā*). *Rodani, kacchurā, anantā, samudrantā* and *dūrālabhā* (are synonyms of *dhanwayāsa*).

46. *Priniparni, prthakparṇi, kalaśi, dhārani and guhā* (are synonyms). *Nidighikā, spṛṣi, vyāghri, kṣudrā* and *dussparśa* (are synonyms).

47. *Avalguya, somarāji, suvalli, somavallikā, kālamesi, kṛṣṇaphalā* and *pūṭiphalī* (are synonyms of) *vākuci*.

48. *Kanā, uṣañā and upakulyā* (are synonyms). *Śreyasi and gajapippali* (are synonyms). *Cawaykā and caviṅkā* (are synonyms). *Kākaciṇī, guñja* and *kṛṣṇalā* (are synonyms).

49-50. *Viśā, viṣā* and *pratiṣṭā* (are synonyms). *Vanaśyngāta* and *gokṣura* (are synonyms). *Nārāyaṇi* and *śatamūli* (are synonyms). *Kālīyaka, haridrū, dārvi, pacampacā, dāruṣukla* and *haimavati* (are synonyms of *parjani*). *Ugragandhā, saḍgranthā, golomi* and *śataparvika* (are the synonyms of) *vaca*.

51. *Āśphoṭā and girikarnī* (are synonyms). *Simhāsya, vāsaka* and *vṛṣa* (are synonyms). *Madhumikā* (is also called) *misi* and *chatrā. Kokilākṣa* (is also known as) *ikṣura* and *kṣura*.

52. *Viḍaṅga* is known as *kṛmighna* (and is used) in the masculine and neuter. *Vajradru* (is also known as) *snuk, snuhi* and *sudhā*. *Mrdvīkā* and *gostani* (are the other names of) *drākṣā. Balā* and *vālyālakā* (are synonyms).

---

3. Amara pañkī 827 reads haṅjikā.
6. Amara pañkī 852 reads dāru haridrā.
7. ibid. reads parjani.
8. Amara pañkī 859 reads guḍā.
53. Kālā and maṣāravīdalā (are synonyms of black trīṃṇa) Trīṃṇa (is also known as) triputa and trīṃṇa. Madhukam, kīttakam, yaṣṭimadhuṇakam and madhyasṭīka (are synonyms).

54. Ikṣugandhā (is also known as) vidāri, kṣiraśukla and kroṣṭi. Gopi, śyāmā, śārīvā and anantā (are the other names of) utpalāśārīvā.

55. Mocā and rambā (are synonyms of) kadalī. Bhāṇṭāki and duspradharśini (are synonyms). Śulaparṇi (is also called) sthārī and dhruvā. Śṛṇgi and viṣa (are the synonyms of the herb) viṣabha.

56. Gāṅgerukī (is also called) nāgabalā. Muṣa (sa)li and tālamūkā (are synonyms). Paṭolikā (is also known as) jyoṭiṣni and jālā. Ajāśrṇī and viṣānikā (are synonyms).

57. Lāṅgali (is also known as) agnīśikhā. Tāmbūli and nāga- valli (are synonyms). (The fragrant) reṇukā (is also called) harenī and kauntī. Hribera (is also known as) divyānāgaram.¹

58. (The other names of) šaila (are) kālānusāri, vyṛddhā, aṁnapāṣapam and śītasīvam. Murā (is also known as) tālaparṇi, daitya and gandhakuṭi.

59. Śukam and barham (are other names of) granthiparṇam (as well as) baḷā. Tripūṭa and trupī (are the synonyms of sūkṣmaḷā). Śivā and tāmalaki (are synonyms of bhūnyāmalaki). Hanu and haṭṭavālāsvini (are synonyms).

60. Kuṭannaṣam, dāsapuram, vāneyam and paripelavam (are synonyms). Jaṭāmāmsi (is also known as) tapasvini. Spṛkkā (is also called) devi, latā and laṅgu.⁴

61. Karcūraka and drāviḍaka (are synonyms). Gandhamūli is also known as sāṭhī. Vyṛddhadāraka (is also known as) ṇkṣagandhā, chagalantrā and veṭi.

62. Raktaphalā, bimbikā and pīḷaparṇi (are the other names of) tuṇḍikeri. Gāṅgeri, cakrikā⁵ and ambaṭṭhā (are synonyms). Svāṅkaśiri (is also known as) himāvati.

¹ This name is not found in Amara pañkti 892.
² This term is not found in Amara pañkti 913.
³ Cf. Amara pañkti 899.
⁴ The purānic reading latāḥ is obviously wrong.
⁵ Amara pañkti 929 reads cakrikā.
63. Sahasravedhi, cukra and satavedhi (are the other names of) amlavetas. Jivanti (is also known as) jivant and jivā. Bhū(mi)-nimba (is also called) kirātaka.1

64. Kūrcaśrēṣa and madhuraka (are synonyms). Candra, kapī-vyka,2 dadrugha and edagaja are synonyms. Probably varṣabhū and sobaharini are also synonyms (?).

65. Kunandati, nikumbhastrā, yamānī and vārṣikā (are synonyms).3 Laśunam (is also known as) grījanam, arīṣta, mahākanda and rasonaka.

66-67. Badarā and grṛṣi (are synonyms of) vārāhi. Vāyasi (is also known as) kākamāci. Madhurā (is also known as) satapuspā, sitacchatrā, aticchatrā, misi, anākpuṣṭi and kāravi. Sasanā, prasārani, katambhara and bhadrabalā (are synonyms). Kārērā and saṭi (are synonyms).

68. Paṭola is (also known as) kulaka and tiktaka. Kāravella (is also known as) kaṭhillaka. Kūsmāṇḍaka (is otherwise called) karkāru. Karkaṭi (is known as) urvāruḥ and (used) in the feminine.

69. Kaṭutumbi (is also called) ikṣvāku. Indravāruṇi (is also known as) viśālā. (The other names of) sūrāṇa (are) arsogha and kanda. Mustaka and kurwindaka (are synonyms).

70. Veṇu (is also called) varīṣa, tvaksāra, karmāra, maskara and tejana. Chatra, aticchatra, pālagha, mālāṛṇaka and bhūṣṭṛṇa (denote different kinds of jalāṛṇa).

71a. Tala is also called trāṇāja. Pūga (is also called) ghonṭā and kramuka.

71b. Śārdūla4 and dvīpti (are synonyms of) vyāghra (tiger). Haryakṣa, kesari and hari (denote a lion).

72. (The words) kola, potri and varāha would (denote a boar). (The words) koka, thāṃrga and vyka (denote a wolf). Lūtā, úrṇānbha, tantuwīya and markaṭa (denote a spider).

73. Vṛṣčika and sūkakiṭa (scorpion) (are synonyms). Sāraṅga5 and tokaka are synonyms (denoting a cātaka bird). Kykavāku and

---

1. kirātatiṅkta, cf. Amara paṅkti 934.
4. The section on animals begins here.
5. From here begins the listing of synonyms of birds.
tamraciḍa (are synonyms denoting a cock). Pika and kokila (are synonyms denoting a cuckoo).

74. Karaṭa and arisṭa (denote) a crow. Baka and kahva denote a crane. Cakravāka is also known as koka and cakra. Kadamba and kalahamsaka (are synonyms).

75. Patanigkā and putikā (are synonyms denoting different kinds of honey-bees). Dvirepha, puṣpaliṭ, bhṛṅga, saṭpada, bhramara and ali (denote a bee).

76. Keṭi (denotes a peacock). Keṅk (denotes) the sound made by a peacock. (The words) ṣakunti, ṣakuni and dvija (denote a bird). Pakṣati is the base of the wing. It is in the feminine. Caṇcu and troji (denote the beak). Both (the words) are feminine.

77-78. (The words) uḍḍinam and saṇḍinam (denote) the gait (of birds). Kulāya and nīḍam (denote a nest). They are (used) in the masculine and neuter. Peṭi, koṣa and aṇḍa (denote an egg). If less than two, aṇḍa is used in the neuter. (The young one of a bird is denoted by the words) pṛthuka, sāvaka, sīṣu, pota, pāka, arbhaka and ḍimbha. (The following words denote a collection): sandoha, vyūhaka, gaṇa, stoma, ogha, nikara, vrata, nikurambam, kadambakam, saṅghātaḥ, saṅcayaḥ and vrndam. Puṇja, rāṣi and kūṭakam (are used to denote heap of grains).

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYFOUR

Words denoting men and the four classes of men

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the class of men, brahmins, ksatriya-s, vaśya-s and śūdra-s. (The words) naraḥ, pañcajanāḥ, marīyāḥ (denote men). (The words) yoṣīt, yoṣā, abalā and vadhūḥ (denote a woman).

2. A person seeking a lover, going to the place indicated (by the lover) (is called) abhisārikā. (The words) kulaṭā, pumścali and asati (mean a wanton woman). A nude woman (is called) koṭsavī.
3. Kātyāyani is middle-aged, (wears ochre garment and is without husband). One who lives in other's house (is called) saindhuri. (She is independent and proficient in hair dressing etc.).\(^2\)  

\(^2\) Asikni is not old (and serves the harem). Mālini is a woman in her monthly course.

4. Vārastrī, ganikā and veyā (mean a courtezan). Brothers' wives are (mutually known as) yātara-s. Husband's sister (is known as) navānda. (The descendants for seven generations are known as) sapindā-s and sanābhi-s.

5. (Sisters born of the same womb are called) samānodaryah, sodaryah, saggāryah and sahajāh. (The words) sagoitra, bandhava, jñāti, bandhu, svāh and svajana are synonyms (denoting relatives belonging to the same clan).

6. (The words) dampati, jampati, bhāryāpati and jāyāpati (denote the husband and wife). (The outer skin of the embryo is known as) garbhāśaya, jārāyu and ulbam. (The foetus is called) kālau, in the neuter.

7. (The words) garbha and bhrūna are synonyms denoting (the young one in the womb). (The words) kītha, sāndha (are used to denote) a eunuch. Uttānāsāyā and ādhā would (mean a child that sucks milk from the mother's breasts). ābā (boy) (is known to be) mānavaka:

8. (The words) picaṇḍila and hṛhatkukṣi (mean a person having a big belly). (The word) abhraṭa (is used to mean) a natānśika (one having a flat nose). (A naturally deformed person is denoted by the words) vikalāṅga and apogāṇa. (The words) ārogyam (free from illness) would (also be known as) anāmāyam.

9. (A deaf person is denoted by the words) eda and badhira. (The word) gādula (is used to denote) a hunch-back. (The word) kuni (is used to denote) a person having a maimed hand. (The words) kṣaya, śoṣa and yaksma (mean consumption). Pratisyāya and pinaṣa (catarrh) (are synonyms).

10. Kṣut, kṣutam and kṣara (sneezing) (are synonyms). (The word) kṣut is feminine. (The words) kāsa and kṣavatu (meaning cough) are both masculine. Śoṭha (swelling) is also known as

---

1. The purāṇa omits the other characteristics. See Amara pañkṣī 1108.
2. Cf. Amara pañkṣī 1109.
svayathu and ṭophā. Pādasphoṭa (sore on the foot) (is also known as) vipāḍikā.

11. Kīlāsam and sidhmam (scab) are synonyms. Pāma, pāmā and vicarcikā (are used to mean) kacchū (scab). (The words) koṭha, manḍalakam, kṣṭham and svitram (white leprosy) (are synonyms). Arīs (piles) (is also known as) durnāmakam.

12. (The words) ānāha and nibanda (denote suppression of urine and feces). Grahaṭīrak and pravāhikā (denote diarhoea). (The words) bijam, viryam, indriyam and sūkram (mean semen). (The words) palalam, kravyam and ānīṣam (denote flesh).

13. Bukkan and agramāmsam (denote the lotus-shaped flesh in the heart). Hṛdayam and hṛt (heart) are synonyms. Vapā and vasa (denote the marrow of the flesh). The artery on the back of the neck (is known as) manyā. (The words) nādi, dhamani and śīrā (artery) (are synonyms).

14-15. Tilakam and kloma (denote lump of flesh). Masticākam (is the fluid on the fore-head). Dūṣikā (denotes) the rheum of the eyes. Antra (intestine) (is also known as) puritāt. Plihā and gulma (spleen) (are synonyms). (The words) vaswādā (in the masculine) and snāyu (in the feminine) (denote tendon). Kālakhaṇḍam and yakt (are synonyms (denoting liver). Karpara and kapāla (denote skull), kapālam in the neuter. Bones (are in general denoted by the words) kikāsam, kūlyam and asthi.

16. (The word) kaukāla (denotes) skeleton in the body. (The word) kaśeruka (denotes) back-bone. The skull-bone (is called) karoti, in the feminine, (The word) partukā denotes the bones on the sides (of the body).

17. The limbs of the body (are denoted by the words) an-gaṁ, pratika and avayava. (The words) sāriram, varṣma and vibhīra (denote a body). Śrōṇi-phalakam (buttocks) (is also called) kafa (and that word is) masculine. Kaṭi, śrōṇi and kakudmat (hip) (are synonyms).

18. The hinder part of the waist of women (is known as) nitamba, in the neuter. The frontal part is jaghanam. The kūpaka-s (hollows below the loins) are in the nitamba. (The word is used) in the neuter. (The hollows above the loins are called) kukundara-s.

19. The fleshy portions in the hip are called) sphicau (sphic) and kaṭipraoau. (The organ of generation of woman is called)
upastha (because that is near) the two which are to be described now. In the case of women it is (called) bhagam and yoni. Śiśna, medhra, mehanam and ṣepha (denote penis).

20. (The words) picaṇḍa, kuksi, jaṭharam, udaram and tundam (denote belly). Stana and kuca (mean breast). Cūcuka is the tip of breast. (The words) kroḍam and bhujāntaram denote chest. The word kroḍam is not masculine.

21. Skandha, bhujāśiras and amśa denote shoulder. (The junction of shoulder is known as) jatru. (Nail is denoted by the words) punarbhava, kararuha, nakbara and nakha (used) not in feminine.

22. Prādeśika is the span of the thumb and the forefinger. Tālā is the span of the thumb and the middle finger. Gokarna is the span of the thumb and the ring finger. The span of the thumb and the little finger is vitasti measuring twelve finger breadths.

23. The open hand with the fingers extended (is called) capeṭa, pratala and prahasta. Ratni (is the distance) from elbow to the end of closed fist. Aratni (is the distance) from elbow to the end of little finger.

24. Neck with three lines (is called) kambugriyā. (The words) avaṭu, ghāṭa and vrkāṭikā (denote the backside of the union of head and neck). Cibuka (chin) is below the lips, then the two gaṇḍa-s (cheeks), the throat and chin.

25-26. The outer ends of eyes are (called) apāṅga-s. Kaṭākṣa (is used to denote) the look with apāṅga. (The words) cikura, kūntala and vāla (denote hair). (The words) pratikarma, prasādhanam, ākalya, veṣa and nepathyam (denote) beautification. It is perceivable and is produced by union with a play. Cūḍāmaṇi is the crest-jewel. The central gem in a necklace (is called) tārāla.

27. (The ear-ornament is called) karnaṇā and tālapattra. Lambanam or lalantikā (denote) a long necklace. (The words) maṇḍira and nāpura (denote the anklet) on the foot. Kiṭkini and kṣudraghaṇṭikā (denote) a small bell.

28. (The words) dairghyam, āyāma and āroha (are used to denote the length of a cloth etc.). (The words) pariṇāha and viśālā (denote the width). Paṭaccaram (denotes) a rag. Samvyānam (is the cloth worn) on the shoulder.
29. (The words) racanā and parisyanda (denote the arrangement of flowers etc.). (The words) ābhoga and paripūrṇatā (denote the fulfilling of all services). Sanudgaka and samputaka (mean a casket). (The words) pratigraha and patadgraha (mean a spitoon).

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYFIVE

Words relating to the class of brahmins

Fire-god said:

1.3. (Words denoting genealogy are) varāsa, anvavāya, gotram, kulam, abhijana and anvaya. Ācārya is that person who expounds the scriptures. The person who instructs the priests in the sacrifice (is called) vratī, yaṣṭa and yaṃmāna. Upakrama (denotes) the beginning after having known (the course of action). Those having the same preceptors (are called) satir-thyāṁ. The members of an assembly (are called) sabhya-s, sāmadjika-s, sabhāsada and sabhāstāra-s. (The priests who officiate in a sacrifices are known as) rtvija-s and yajaka-s. Adhvaryu is the priest associated with the Yajurveda. Udgaṁ is the priest proficient in the Sāmadeveda and Hotṛ in the Ṛgveda.

4. Cāṣāla is the wooden ring on the top of a sacrificial post. Sthāṇḍilam and caturam are synonyms (denoting the ground made ready for a sacrifice). The transformation that occurs in milk by the addition of curd is known as āmikṣā.

5. Ghee together with curd (is called) prṣadāya. (The words) paramānam and pāyasam (denote cooked rice mixed with milk). The animal that is killed in a sacrifice after being sanctified with formulae (is called) upākṛta.

6. (The words) paramparākam, samanam and proksanam (convey) the sense of killing. (The words) pūjā, namasyā, apaciti, sāparyā, arcā and arhaṇa are synonyms (denoting worship).

7. Varivasya, sūrīṣa, paricaryā and upāsanā (are synonyms meaning mode of worship). (The words) niyama and vratam (signify religious observance). (They are) not feminine. It consists of the meritorious deeds such as fasting and the like.
8. The first injunction is called mukhya. That which in inferior (subordinate) to that (is known as) anukalpa. Kalpa (the texts lying down injunctions) is known as vidhi and krama. Viveka is the power to distinguish between the world and the spirit.

9. The receiving of instruction in the scriptures after purification is known as upākaraṇam. (An ascetic is denoted by the words) bhikṣu, parivrāṭ, karmandī, pārāsari and maskari.

10. (The sages are in general denoted by the words) rṣi-s and satyavraccāḥ. A student who has had the ceremonial bath (is called) snātaka. Those who have conquered the sense-organs (are known as) yatināḥ and yutayaḥ.

11. The daily rite which depends on the body as means (is known as) yama. But niyama is that which depends on external conditions (and is voluntary). The state of brahman (is denoted by the words) brahmabhūyam, brahmatvam and brahmasāyujyam.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYSIX

Words relating to kṣatriyas, vaiśyas and other classes

Fire-god said:

1. (The words denoting the warrior caste are) mūrdhābhiṣi-kta, rājanya, bāhuja, kṣatriya and virāṭ. A king who is respected by the vassals is known as adhīśvara.

2. (A king who holds way over the entire earth is known as) cakravarti and sārvabhauma. A king who is different from the above is a maṇḍaleśvara. (Minister or counsel is known as) maṇtri, dhisaciva and amātya. (The chief counsel is known as) mahāmātra and pradhānaka.

3. A person who attends to disputes (is called) prādvivāka and aṁśadārṣtaka. The man in charge of gold in a royal treasury (is called) bhaurika. (The words) adhyakṣa and adhikṛta are synonyms (denoting a superintendent). The person invested with the charge of the harem (is called) antarvamāsika. (The words) saṇvidalla-s, kaṇcukin-s, sthāpatya-s and saṇvida-s (also denote the same).
4-6a. The words sa (sa) ṇa and varṣavara (denote the servants in the harem, who are eunuchs). (The words) sevaka, arthi and amujivi (denote a servant). A ruler of the region other than one's own is a śrātv (enemy). One who is beyond that region is a mitram (friend). A person beyond that is udāsina (neutral). A king who is in the rear (of a kingdom) is pārṇigrāha.

6b-7. (A spy is denoted by the words) cara, spāḥa and prāṇidihi. The time that is to come is ṭvattī. The present time is known as tatāla and tatātvam. The fruit accruing in future (is called) udarka. (The fear that is caused) by such factors as excessive rains and fire (is) adṛṣṭam. (The fear that is caused) by one's own kingdom or fire (is) dṛṣṭam.

8. (The words) bhadrakumbha and pūryakumbha (are synonyms meaning a pitcher that is full). (A vessel made of gold is called) bhṛṅgāra and kanakālukā. (A rutting elephant is called) prabhūna, garjita and matta. (A particle of water splashed by the trunk of an elephant is called) vamathu and karśikara.

9. A goad is known as sṛṇi, in the feminine and aṅkuśa, in the masculine. (The words) paristoma and kutha (denote) the carpet on the back of an elephant in both (the genders). (A vehicle used by ladies for transport is called) karoṭiratha and pravahanam. The words dolā (palanquin) and preṅkhā (swing) etc. (are used) in the feminine.

10. (The words) ādhoraṇāḥ, hastipakāḥ, hastyārohāḥ and nisādinaḥ (denote mahouts). (Warriors are denoted by the words) bhāṭāḥ, yodhāḥ and yoddhāraḥ. (The words) kaṅcuka and vārana (mean armour). They are not feminine.

11. Śīraṇya (is used to denote) śirāstra (helmet). (The words) tantram, varma and daṁśanam (are used to mean armour). (The words) amukta, pratimukta, pinaddha and apinaddha (are used to mean a person covered by armour).

12-14. An arrangement of army (for the sake of battle) is vyūha. (The words) cakram and anikam (denote an army). It is not feminine. The patti (consists of) an elephant, a chariot, three cavalrymen and five infantry. Three times the constituents of a patti and subsequently in the same way in order would be

1. Amara pāṅkhi. 15 93 reads vārana.
senāmukham, gulma, gaṇa, vāhini, pṛṣṭana, camūh antikini, daśānikini and aksauhiṇi. A bow (is also known as) kodaṇḍa, and śvāsa. The tip (kośi) (of a bow) is known as aṭani.

15. The middle of a bow (is called) lastaka. (The bowstring is called) maurot, jyā, śiṇjini and guna. (The words) pṛṣṭaka, bāṇa, viśkha, ajīṁmaga, khaṇa and ṛṣuga (denote an arrow).

16. (The words) tūṇa, upāsāṇga, tiṇira and niśāṇga (denote a quiver) both in the masculine and feminine. (The words) asi, riṣṭi, niśṭrimśa, karavāla and kṛpāṇa (mean a sword).

17. Tsara is the handle of a sword. Ilī and karavālikā (denote a short sword). The words kūthāra and svadhiti (denote an axe). (The word kūthāra is used in) both (masculine and feminine). (The words) churikā and asiputrikā (denote a knife).

18. Prāsa is known to be kunta (meaning a spear). Sarvala and tomara (mean an iron club) (used) in the masculine and neuter. (Bards who sing praises and wake up in the morning are called vaitālikas and bodhakara-s. Maṅgada-s (are bards in general). Vandin-s and stuti (pāṭhaka-s) (are bards singing in praise of the kings).

19. Samśaptaka-s are those who do not turn back from battle. (The words) patākā, vaijayanti, ketanam and dhvajam (denote a banner). (The word) dhvajam (is used) in the masculine and neuter.

20. (A fight with enthusiasm) I first, I first, (is known as) ahampravikā, in the feminine. Where mutual ego is shown (I am capable) it is known as ahamahamikā.

21. (The words) sakti, parakrama, prāṇa, sauryam, sthāma, saha and balam (denote valour). Mūrcchā, kaśmalam and moha (denote stupefaction). Avamardana and piṇānam (mean devastation of grains etc. by the invading forces).

22. (The words) abhyavaskandanam and abhyāśādanam (mean encountering an enemy by trick), Vījaya and jaya (are synonyms meaning conquest). (The words) nirvāsanam, samjñapanam, māraṇam and pratīghātanam (mean killing).

23. (The words) pañcata, kāladharma, diśānta, pralaya and atyaya would (mean death). (The words) viś, bhūmisṛṅk and vaiśya (denote a tradesman and agriculturist). (The words) vṛtti, varthanam and jīvanam (mean livelihood in general).
24. *Kṛṣi* (agriculture) etc. are to be known (as the means of livelihood of a *vaśya*). (The words) *kustdam* and *vṛddhijivikā* mean existing on interest by lending money. *Uddhāra* (means debt). (The word) *arthaprayoga*¹ (also means *kustda*). *Kaṇiṣa* (denotes) the ear of a corn.

25. *Kimśārū* (denotes) the beard of a corn. *Stamba* (means) a bunch of grass etc. (Paddy etc. are denoted by the words) *dhānyam*, *vṛhi* and *stambakari*. (The minute particles of straw are known as *kaḍaṅgara* and *busam*.

26. Blackgram etc. are grains in the form of pods. Barley and other grains are in the form of beards. (Grains such as *nivāra* are wild grains (*ṭṛṇadhānya*). A winnowing basket is also known *prasphoṭanam*.

27. (A sack made of cloth to carry grains is known as) *syūta* and *praseva*. *Kaṇḍola* and *piṭa* (denote a cotainer made of bamboo etc). *Kaṭa* and *kiliṇjaka* (relate to different varieties of reeds). These are similar. *Rasavati*, *pākasthānam* and *mahānasa* (denote a kitchen).

28. The kitchen superintendent (is called) *paurogava*. (Cooks are denoted by the words) *sūpākara*, *vallava*-s, *ārālika*-s, *āndhasika*-s, *sūda*-s, *audaniaka*-s and *guṇa*-s.

29. (A frying pan is denoted by the word) *ambariṣam*, in the neuter and *bhṛāstra*, in the masculine. (The words) *karka*, *ālu* and *galantikā* (denote a small pitcher). (A big pitcher is called) *aliṇjara* and *maṇiṅka*. *Suṣavi* (is the name of) black cumin seed.

30. (The words) *āraṇāla* and *kulmāśam* (denote a kind of gruel). The words *vāhlika*, *hiṅgu* and *rāmaṭham* (denote asafoetida). (The words) *niṣā*, *haridrā* and *piṭā*, feminine (denote turmeric). (The words) *matsyaṇḍā* and *phāṅiṭam* (mean molasses).

31. Transformed milk (is called) *kūrcikā*. (The words) *cikkaṇam*, *maśṇam* and *snigdham* (denote bland). (Rice parched and flattened is denoted by the words) *prthuka* and *cipiṭaka*. Fried and powdered barley (is called) *dhāṇa*, in the feminine.

32. (The words) *jemanam*, *leha* and *āhāra* (denote food). (The words) *māheyi* and *saurabhi* denote a cow. Those which are yoked (are called) *yugyaḥ*, *prāsaṅgyaḥ* and *śakaṭaḥ*.

¹ Cf. *Amara paṃkti* 1714. The *Purāṇa* while making an extract mixes the two terms.
33. (A cow) that has delivered a calf long time back (is called) vāskayānī, and (one) that has delivered recently (is called) dhenu. (The cow) that is attacked by a bull (for mating) (is called) sandhini. A barren cow (is called) vehat.

34-35. (A person sustaining himself by buying and selling is called) panyājīva and āpanīka. A thing left as trust (is called) upanidhi and the word is masculine. The words vipāṇa and vikrāya (mean sale). The numerals one to eighteen (are to be used) in all the three (genders) and the numerals twenty onwards take only singular always. While counting number two takes the plural. Among them (the numerals) upto ninety are feminine.

36-37. (A unit measuring ten is called a pāṅktī). Successive multiples of a pāṅkti would be hundred, thousand etc. They are measured by tulānguliprasāha. Five guṇa-s (make) one ādyamāśaka. Sixteen (māśa-s) (make) one aksa (otherwise called) kāra. The word is not feminine. Four kāra-s (would make) one palam. An aksa (measure) of gold (is known as) swarna and bista. A pala (measure) of the same (is called) kuruviṣa.

38. One hundred pala-s (make) one tulā. That (word) is feminine. Twenty tulā-s would make one bhāra. (A kāra measure of silver) is called kārṣāpāna or kārṣika. A kāra (measure) of copper (is known as) pana.

39-40a. (The words) dravyam, vittam, svāpateyam, rikhtham, riktham, dhanam and vasu (denote wealth). (The words) riti and ārakāta (denote brass). It is not in the feminine. (The words) tālham and audumbaram (are synonyms of) tāmram (brass). Kālāyasam and aśva (are synonyms of) loha (iron).

40b. (The words) kṣāra and kāca (alkali) (are synonyms). (The words) cañala, rasa, sūta and pārada (are synonyms denoting mercury).

41. The horn of the wild buffalow (is called) gavalam. Trapu and picepam (tin) (are synonyms). Sisakam (denotes lead). (The words) hiṃṭira, abdhikapha (sea-foam) and phena (are

1. tulā is explained below; aṣṭuguli is fingerbreath and one prastha is equal to thirtytwo pala-s explained below.
2. The other equivalents are given in the next verse.
3. The Purāṇa wrongly mixes this word with the previous.
synonyms). (The words) madhucchisṭam and sikthakam (bee-wax) are synonyms.

42. (The words) raṅgam and vaṅgam¹ (denote tin). (The words) picu and tūla (mean cotton). Kunaṭi (dentoes) manaḥsilā (arsenic) (especially the Nepalese variety). Tavakṣāra (nitre) would be (known as) pākya. (The words) tvakṣṭri and vamśaro- canā (denote a medicinal substance got from the bamboo).

43. Vṛṣalāh, jaghanyajāh and śūdrāh (are synonyms) (denoting the fourth class of men). Canḍāla-s and other low caste men (are known as) mixed (castes). Kāru and śilpi (denote the artisan). Their union (with those) of their own caste (is called) srenī, both in (the feminine and masculine).

44. (A painter is denoted by the words) raṅgā-jīva and citrakāra. (A carpenter is denoted by the words) takṣā, vardhaki and tvāṣṭā. (The words) nāḍindama and svarnakāra (denote a goldsmith). (The words) nāpiṭa and antāvasāyī (denote a barber).

45. (A shepherd is denoted by the words) jābāla and ajājīva. (A person living by serving the god is called) devājīva and devala. (Actors are denoted by the words) jāyājīva-s and šailūsa-s. (The words) bhṛtaka and bhṛtibhuk (denote a person living on wages).

46. (A low person is denoted by the words) vivarṇa, pāmarā, nica, prākṛta, prthagjana, nihina, apasada and jālma. (The words) dāsera and ceṭaka (are used to denote) a servant.

47. (The words) paṭu, paṭala and dakaṣa (mean a clever person). Mṛgāyu is known to be lubdhaka (hunter). Canḍāla (low class man) (is also known as) divākātı. (The word) pustam (is used) in (the sense of) plastering.

48. A puppet (made of cloth etc.) is pāncalikā. Any young animal (is known as) varkara. (The words) maṇjūṣā, paṭaka and peṭā (denote a box). (The words) tulya, sādhārana and sama (mean equal or similar). (The word) pratimā would (mean) pratikṣṭi (an image or statue). The brahma and other classes have been described so far.

1. Cf. the previous verse.
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYSEVEN

The class of words dependent on the substantives for their genders

Fire-god said:

1. Listen to me! I shall describe the genders of the substantives in general. (The words) sukṛti, punyavān and dhānya (denote a fortunate person). (A generous person is denoted by the words) mahēccha and mahāśaya.

2. (The words) pravīṇa, niraṇa, abhiṣīna, viṣṇa, niṣṭāta and sīkṣita (a proficient person) (are synonyms). (A very liberal person is denoted by the words) vadaṇya, sthūlalakṣya, dānaśaṇḍa and bahuḍrapada.

3. The words kṛti, kṛtajña and kuṭāla (mean a clever person). (The word) āsaktā (means one drawn towards something). (The words) uḍyukta and utsuka (mean being drawn towards something by one’s own desire). (The words) iḥyā, āḍhyā and pariṇḍha (denote a rich man). Adhibhūḥ, nāyaka and adhipa (mean a master).

4. (A person endowed with fortune is denoted by the words) lakṣmīvān, lakṣmāṇa and śrīla. (The words) svatantra, apārta and svairi (denote an independent person). Khalapū would (mean) bahukara (a sweeper). (The words) tirghāṣūtra and cirakriya (denote a lazy person).

5. Jālma and asamikṣyakārī (mean a person acting without discriminating good and bad). One who is slow in doing things is known as kuṇḍha. (One who is proficient in doing things is) karmaśūra or karmaṭha. (The words) bhakṣaka, ghasmara and admara (denote a gluttonous person).

6. Lolupa (denotes a person having ardent desire). (The words) gardhana and grāhmuh (denote a greedy person). (A modest person is denoted by the words) viniṭa and praśrita. (The

---

*This chapter summarises Amara, kōṇḍa III, pāṅktis 2030 ff.

1. Other words having the same meaning have been wrongly put in the next verse in the Purāṇa.

2. These words should be read with those in verse 2.

3. This word means a grateful person. Probably a mistake for kṛtamukha. Cf. Amara, pāṅkti, 2033.
words) dhṛṣṇuk and viyāta (are synonyms of) dhṛṣṭa (immodest). Nibhṛta¹ and pratibhānvita (denote a person having imagination).

7. (The word) adhira (means a person afflicted by fear, hunger, thirst etc.) . (A cowardly or timid person is denoted by the words) bhtruka and bhiru. (The words) vandāru and abhivādaka (denote a polite or respectful person). (The words) bhāṣṇu, bhaviṣṇu and bhavīta (mean a person desiring to become rich). A knower (is denoted by the words) vidura and vinduka.

8-9a. (The words) matta, sauṇḍa, utkāta and kṣība (denote an intoxicated person). Caṇḍa (means) atyantakopana (extremely short-tempered). Devadrayaṇ is a person adoring a deity. A person serving the world is viśvadrayaṇ. A companion, especially the husband (is denoted by the word) sadhryaṇ. A person serving crookedly (is called) tiryāṇ.

9b-10a. (The two words) vācoyuktipaṭu and vāgmi (denote a logician). A garrulous person (is denoted by the word) vāvadūka. (A person indulging in unrefined talks is denoted by the words) jalpāka, vācāla, vācāpa and bahugarhāvāk.

10b-11. (One who is censured is called) apadhvasta and dhikṛṭa. (The words) klistita and saṁyata (denote a person) bound (with rope etc.). (The words). ravaṇa² and sabdana (denote a person making sound). (The words) nāndivāḍī and nāndikara are synonyms (denoting laudatory singer). (The words) vyasanārta and uparakta (denote a person afflicted by misfortune)³.

12. (The words) vihasta and vyākula are synonyms (meaning a person who does not know what to do on account of grief. (The words) nṛṣamsa, krūra, ghātuka and pāpa (mean a person bent on harming others). Dhūṛta and vaṇcaka (mean a cheat). (The words) mūrkha, vaidheya and vālīṣa (denote a fool).

13. (A miser is denoted by the words) kadarya, kṛpaṇa and kṣudra. (The words) mārgana, yācaka and arthī (mean a beggar). (The word) ahamyu (means) an egoistic person. A person endowed with good fortune (is called) subhanāyuḥ.

14-15a. (The words) kāntam, manoramam and rucyam (are used in the sense of a beautiful thing). A thing that is desired

---

1. Amara, pānkti 2075 reads pragalbha.
2. The Purāṇa wrongly reads eṣārṣa.
3. The next two words repeated from verse 10—obviously a mistake.
(is denoted by the words) *hrdyam* and *abhīṣṭam*. (The words) *asāram* and *phalgu* (mean a worthless thing). (The word, *śūnyam* (means void). (An important thing or person is denoted by the words) *mukhya*, *varya* and *varenya*.1 (The words) *śreyān*, *śreṣṭha* and *puśkala* would (mean the outstanding). (The words) *prāgya*, *agyra*, *agriya* and *agriya* (also mean an important person).

15b-16. (The words) *vaḍram*, *uru* and *vipulam* (mean wide). (The words) *pinam*, *pīva*, *sīhūlam* and *pīvaram* (mean) stout. (The words) *stoka*, *alpa* and *kṣullaka* (are used in the sense of a little). (A minute thing is denoted by the words) *sūkṣmam*, *ṭlakṣṇam*, *debhram*, *krṣam* and *tanu*. (The words) *mātrā* and *kuśī* (in the feminine) and *lava* and *kaṇa* (in the masculine) (have the same sense). (The words) *bhūyīṣṭham*, *puruha* and *puru* (mean plenty).

17. (The words) *akhāṅḍam*, *pūṇam* and *sakalam* (denote the whole). (The words) *upakāṇṭha*, *antika*, *abhita*, *saṁtpa*, *saṁvidha*2 and *abhyāsa* (mean near). (The word) *nedīṣṭham* (means) very near.

18. (The word) *dāviṣṭham* would (mean) very far. (The words) *nistala* and *vartula* (would mean) circular. (The words) *ucca*, *prāṁśu*, *unnata* and *udagra* (mean high). (An eternal thing is denoted by the words) *dhruva*, *nitya* and *saṁtana*.

19. (The words) *āviddham*, *kuṭilam*, *bhugnam*, *velliṭam* and *vakram* (denote the crooked). (An unsteady thing is denoted by the words) *caṅcalam* and *taralam*. (The words) *kathoram*, *jatharam*3 and *drḍham* (mean hard).

20. (The words) *prāṭyagra*, *abhinava*, *nava*, *navina*, *nūtana* and *nava* (mean fresh or new). (The word) *ekatāna* (means) concentrated on a single object. (The word) *uccaṇḍam* (means) quickly.

21. (The words) *uccāvacam* and *naikabhedam* (mean manifold ways). (The word) *sambāḍha* (means a narrow way). *Kalalam* (means a difficult path). (The words) *timitam*, *stimtim* and *klīnnam* (mean wet). (The word) *abhiyoga* (means) abhigraha (an attack).

1. Some of the other words having the same meaning have been given in the Purāṇa in the next verse after a break.
2. The ptd. text of the Purāṇa reads *samidha*.
3. Also spelt as *jaraṭham*. 
22. (The word) *sphāti* (is used to mean) increase. (The word) *prathā* (is used to denote) fame. (The word) *samāhāra* (means) a collection. (The word) *apahāra* (means) *apacaya* (removal). (The words) *vihāra* and *parikrama* (mean movement on foot).

23. (The words) *pratyāhāra* and *upādānam* (are used in the sense of restraining the sense-organs). (The extraction of extraneous objects from the body is denoted by the words) *nirhāra* and *abhyavakarṣanam*. (The words) *vighna*, *antarāya* and *pratyūha* would (mean an obstacle). (The words) *āsya*, *āryanā* and *sthiti* (are used in the sense of a seat).

24. (The words) *sannidhi* and *sannikarṣa* (would mean proximity). (A difficult path is indicated by the words) *sāṅkruma* and *durgasaṅcara*. (The words) *upalambha* and *anubhava* (convey the meaning of experience). (The words) *pratyādeṣa* and *nirākṛti* (are used in the sense of rejection).

25. (The words) *parirambha*, *parīvaṅga*, *saṁśleṣa* and *up-agāthānam* (denote embrace). An inference (is that which is gained) by means of *pakṣa* (subject of a syllogism), *hetu* (reason) and the like. The words *damara* and *viplava* (are used) in (the sense of) frightening an enemy by shouts.

26. The knowledge about an object, that is not perceived, (arising) from the statement is said to be *śabdāṇa*. *Upamāna* (ka) (comparison) would be the cognition arising from seeing the resemblance in a similar (object).

27. *Arthaśāstra* (presumption) would be the knowledge about a different thing which would not exist without (the thing seen) *Abhāva* (non-existence) is the cognition "it is not there" when the counter-correlative is not apprehended on the ground. Thus ends the genders of substantives told by Hari (Viṣṇu) for the sake of knowledge of men.

---

1. This is not found in *Amara*.
2. The printed text wrongly reads *bhramara*.
3. This and other terms of *Nyāya* given here are not found in *Amara*. 
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYEIGHT

Constant dissolution, occasional and total dissolution

Fire-god said:

1-2. The dissolution of beings is of four kinds, such as constant dissolution of all beings (that takes place daily), the dissolution (known as) Brähma, (otherwise known as) naimittika (pralaya), the prakṛta pralaya, occurring at the end of a thousand of four yuga\(^1\) periods and the absolute dissolution (of all beings) by the union of all souls in the supreme soul by means of knowledge.

3-5. I shall describe to you the nature of the naimittika dissolution that occurs at the end of a kalpa\(^2\) period. When the earth (has become) almost depleted at the end of a thousand of four yuga cycles, there would be a severe drought for hundred years. Then (all) the beings would perish. Then (lord) Viṣṇu, the lord of the universe, remaining in the seven rays of the Sun, drinks the waters. The water in the oceans, the earth and the nether world and the like gets dried up.

6-8. Then by the divine power (of lord Viṣṇu), the very same seven rays (of the Sun), nourished by the water, become seven Suns. O Twice-born! They burn the three worlds completely together with the nether world. (The surface of) the earth would (appear) like the back of a tortoise. Then the terrible fire (of dissolution), a manifestation of (lord) Rudra, burns the nether worlds below in association with the breath of the serpent Śeṣa\(^3\). Then the all-pervading (fire) burns the (region) from the nether worlds to the surface of the earth and from there to the heaven.

9-11. Then all the three worlds appear like one blazing mass. Then the inhabitants of the two worlds, oppressed by the terrible heat, ascend to the Maharloka and to the Janaloka from

---

1. The four yugas—kalpa, trētā, dātāra and kali are reckoned as equivalent to 1,728,000, 1,296,000, 864,000 and 432,000 years respectively.

2. One kalpa is equivalent to a day of Brahmā consisting of one thousand yugas.

3. The serpent having thousand hoods on whose body reclines (lord) Viṣṇu.
Maharloka. After the world is burnt (by the God) (assuming) the form of Rudra, there arise clouds of different shapes together with lightning from the breath of (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu). They rain for a hundred years and put down the fire that has arisen.

12-13. When the water rises upto the region of the seven sages (Great Bear), a hundred storms issue from the breath of (the lord) Viṣṇu and disperse those clouds. Then after having drunk the wind lord Hari lies down on that mass of water, having assumed the form of Brahmā, extolled by sea-dwelling persons who have gained supernatural powers and by sages.

14. (Lord) Madhusūdana (slayer of demon Madhu; i.e. Viṣṇu) lies down (on that mass of water) resting in the yogic sleep, which is his divine illusory form, contemplating His own form known as Vāsudeva.

15. He then lies down (in sleep) for a kalpa\(^1\) (period) and after waking up, in the form of Brahmā, He creates. O Twice-born! Then (the universe) lies in an unmanifest state in the Prakṛti for two parārdha\(^2\)-s.

16-19. One place is ten times the other place when expansion is made from one place. Then the eighteenth place would be said to be parārdha. The prākṛta dissolution is known to be twice the parārdha. O Twice-born! When everything is burnt by contact with fire and on account of drought, (it is prākṛta dissolution). The modifications of mahat (one of the principles), (get merged into one) losing their separate existence, and get re-absorbed (into prakṛti) on account of the will of (lord) Kṛṣṇa. Water first swallows the qualities of earth such as smell and the like. Then earth (divested of) its characteristic of smell tends towards dissolution.

20. Then water having the characteristic of taste remains. It is drunk by light. When it is lost, fire glows on.

21. Then wind swallows light together with its characteristic of colour and form. When fire is lost, strong wind blows on.

22. The characteristic of wind, namely touch, is then consumed by ether. O Twice-born! When wind is also lost, ether remains without any sound.

---

1. See p. 1028 fn. 1 above.
2. \(\text{gqual to} \ 100,000,000,000,000,000,000 \text{ years}\).
23. (The characteristic) of ether is sound. Ether (together with its characteristic) is swallowed by Bhūtādi (i.e. Ahaṅkāra or Ego Principle in which the element of Tamas dominates). Ether born of Ego and Bhūtādi are swallowed by Mahat i.e. Buddhī tattva (the first evolute of Prakṛti in Sāňkhya).

24-25. Earth gets merged in water, water in light, light in wind, wind in ether and ether in ego. O Twice-born! that (ego) (gets merged) in the principle of mahat and (the principle of) mahat is swallowed by prakṛti (nature). The prakṛti (consists of two parts) such as manifest and unmanifest. The manifest (part of prakṛti) gets merged in the unmanifest.

26. The puruṣa (primordial being) is pure and is one un-decaying (entity). He is also a part of the Supreme Soul. These prakṛti and puruṣa get merged in the Supreme Soul. There is no determination such as name, species and the like in that lord of all. (That Supreme Soul) is composed only of existence. He is to be known and (is of the form of) knowledge. (All) other souls (are merged) in (such Supreme Soul).

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYNINE

The description of absolute dissolution
and the process of creation

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe absolute dissolution. Absolute dissolution arises from knowledge after having known the sufferings caused by the mind etc. from one's disinclination.

2. The sufferings are of two kinds: physical and mental. The physical sufferings are manifold. O Twice-born! Listen to me! I shall describe them.

3-5. The (individual) soul after having discarded the sensual body enters the womb as a result of (the past) deeds. O Twice-born! this body known as ātivāhika (that is carried forward) is peculiar to men alone. O Twice-born! when the time for death comes the bodies of men are carried away by the
servants of Yama (God of Death) along the path of Yama. O Sage! this is not the case with the other beings. Such a person would wander in heaven and hell like the ghaṭayanastra.\(^1\)

6-7. O Brahmin! This is a land of deeds and is known to bear fruits (of one's actions). Yama (God of Death) is the cause of one's birth. He determines the hell (to which one has to go) on account of the deed. Being awaited by them (men), Yama, makes them get their befitting places (dependent) on their (deeds). The beings which have got ethereal (bodies) reach the (befitting) wombs.

8-9a. A man is led by the messengers of Yama and he sees him (Yama). A pious man is honoured by him and a sinner is beaten. Citragupta\(^2\) informs him the good or bad deed (done) in (every) house.

9b-12a. (The departed soul) dwells in the Ātivāhika (provisional) body and partakes the funeral oblations offered by the relatives. O Knower of virtue! (After the funeral is over) (the soul) rejects that preta body (attained after death) and ascends to another region from that of the preta-s. It dwells (there) experiencing hunger and thirst and partakes the raw offerings (made to it by the relatives). A person does not get release from this newly acquired body without (eating) the funeral oblations. He partakes the ball-offerings there itself.

12b-13a. When the sapindikarana\(^3\) has been done, a (dead) man discards the preta body and gets a sensuous body after one year.

13b-14. Both the bodies are said to be sensuous and designated as inauspicious and auspicious. After having enjoyed by means of the sensuous body, one gets released from the bondage of deeds. Demons devour that body after that.

15. O Twice-born! A person who does sinful deeds, would enjoy (the fruits of good deeds at first) in the heaven. Then he takes a second body of sinners to experience (the fruits of sin).

---

1. A mechanism for drawing water from a well.
2. One of the assistants of Yama who records the virtuous and vicious deeds of men.
3. The rite performed at the end of one year or on the twelfth day after the death of a person to unite the dead with the departed ancestors.
16. After experiencing the fruits of sin one that has enjoyed heaven, is thereafter born in a pure and prosperous family.

17. A person doing pious deeds having (a little of) sin would first experience (the fruits of) the sin and when that body is dissolved would attain a beautiful body.

18. A person gets freed from hell even if a little of past deed still remains. There is no doubt that he would be born as an animal after getting liberated from hell.

19-20. The soul after having entered the womb dwells in the foetus. It gets hard in the second (month). The limbs (grow) in the third (month). Bones, skin and flesh (are formed) in the fourth (month). Hair grows in the fifth (month). Heart (is formed) in the sixth. The soul feels pain in the seventh.

21. Thus (the child) remains in the womb being covered with the placenta and having hands folded above the head. A eunuch stays in the middle (of the abdomen), a female (child) on the left side and a male (child) on the right side.

22. The child stays in the womb facing the back (of the mother). There is no doubt that it (the child) recognises the person in whose (womb) it stays.

23. It knows fully all the incidents of previous life from birth onwards. A person finds a great darkness and (experiences) suffering.

24. In the seventh month it partakes the food eaten by the mother. It becomes extremely restive in the eighth and ninth months.

25. It suffers when there is coition and physical exercise on the part of the mother. It becomes sick when (the mother is) sick, a moment (of agony) appearing as if lasting for a hundred years.

26. It is tormented by the (past) deeds and makes resolutions: "O Brahman! After getting out from the womb I will gain knowledge relating to liberation (from this bondage)."

27. Being pressed down by the wind inside (mother’s) womb, it gets out through the vagina. It gets afflicted in the first month (after birth) and feels pain when touched with the hand.

28. The auditory organs, minor organs and the state of being separate (are produced) in the body from the ether with
(its attribute of) sound. The process of breathing, movement and the feeling of touch are due to the wind.

29. Personality, sense of seeing, heat, celebrity, bile, intellect, colour, strength, shade, splendour and valour arise in the body from fire.

30. Sweat, the organ of taste, moisture, marrow, taste, blood, semen, urine and phlegm and the like are produced in the body from water.

31-33. The sense of smell, hair, nail, weight and firmness of the bones (are) from earth. The delicate organs, skin, flesh, heart, navel, marrow, ordure, fat, moisture and the upper part of the belly are got from the mother. Veins, arteries and semen are got from the father. Lust, anger, fear, joy, the states of being pious and not pious, form, voice, colour and the discharge of urine and the like are due to one's own (state).

34. Ignorance, negligence, idleness, thirst, hunger, infatuation, jealousy, defectiveness, grief, weariness and fear are qualities of tamas (temperament).

35. O Great sage! Lust, anger, valour, desire to do sacrifice, garrulousness, ego and contempt for others are qualities of rājas (temperament).

36. Desire to be righteous, desire for emancipation, extreme devotion to (lord) Keśava (Viṣṇu), compassion and diligence should be termed as arising from sāttviṣka (temperament).

37. A person in whom wind predominates would be fickle, irritable, cowardly, garrulous, yielding to vices of kali (yuga) and dreams of flying in the air.

38. A person in whom bile predominates would be prematurely grey-haired, irritable, very learned, fond of battle and one who sees conflagrations in dream.

39. A person in whom phlegm abounds would be a steadfast friend, constantly enthusiastic, having firm limbs, endowed with wealth and one who perceives water and white colour in dream.

40-41. Serum is the life force in the body of beings. Blood (serves as) the anointment. Flesh causes urination and perspiration. Bones make (the body) firm. Marrow would fill up and increase potency. Semen gives potency. Ojas (virility) is the sustainer of life.
42. Virility is subtler and lesser yellow than semen and flows in the vicinity of heart. There are six parts of the body, viz, two thighs (legs), two hands, head and belly.

43-45. The six external layers of skin are the epidermis, (the layer) that contains blood, the next one that contains features of grace, the fourth one that bears the sacs (storing fluids), the fifth one that is the seat of abscesses and the sixth one that supports life. There are seven sheaths (namely) that which supports flesh, the second one, blood, that which is the prop for liver and spleen, the next one that holds fat and that which supports bone, that which holds marrow, phlegm and feces, situated in the abdomen. The sixth is that which holds bile and (the next one) that holds semen in the region of that sac.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTY

The constituent parts of a body

Fire-god said:

1-2. The auditory organ, skin, the two eyes, tongue, nose, intellect, the five elements and their qualities (such as) sound, touch, colour, taste and smell, the anus, the organ of generation, the two hands, the two feet are the embodiments of sky. Their functions are emission, exhilaration, taking, movement and speech and the like.

3. Five among these are organs of action, five are organs of sense. The five great elements are objects of senses having the mind as that which governs.

4. The soul is unmanifest. The principles are twentyfour. The purusa is the supreme. (The soul exists) just like the fish in the water attached and detached.

5. The qualities sattva, rajas and tamas dwell in the unmanifest (Prakrti). The inner being is the purusa. It is the Supreme brahman, the cause.
6-7. One who knows this Supreme purusa, attains the supreme position. There are seven sacs in the body. The first one is the sac of blood. (The other sacs) are those of phlegm, of undigested food and of bile. The fifth one is that of digestion. The receptacles for wind and urine (are the sixth) and seventh. The uterus is the eighth one in women.

8-9. The sac of digestion gets dilated by bile and the vagina by internal fire. The uterus would resemble lotus and expand during the menstrual period. There it holds semen together with blood. O Sage! semen deposited in the vagina is led to the uterus in course of time.

10. Even during the menstrous period, the vagina would be surrounded by wind, bile and phlegm. It would not get diluted then.

11-12. O Fortunate one! heart, lungs, liver and spleen are formed in due succession. O Knower of virtue! spleen and liver of men are formed from the essence of the serum that gets condensed. Lungs (are formed) from the froth of blood.

13. Blood is then converted into bile and it is then known as taṇḍaka. Heart is formed from the spreading of fat and blood.

14. Intestines of mortals are formed from the spreading of blood and flesh. They should be known as three and a half ṣāla-ś (long) in men.

15. They are three ṣāla-ś (long) in women according to those learned in scriptures. Its rise in passion is said to be from the union of blood and wind.

16. Heart assumes the shape of a lotus from the expansion of phlegm. That cavity hangs down and the soul remains therein.

17. All the feelings which accompany consciousness remain there. Spleen is to its left and liver is on the right.

18-19a. Lungs are on the right side of the (above) lotus. The sense organs are formed from the veins and arteries in the body which carry the phlegm and blood. They are the means to cognise objects.

1. A ṣāla is a measure of length equal to the space between the tips of the fingers of either hand, when the arms are extended.
19b-20. The orb of the eyes is white. It is a paternal element and it owes its origin to the phlegm. The orb is black arising from wind and it is a maternal element. The entire skin is formed from the bile and it is formed from the father as well as the mother.

21-24. The tongue is formed out of flesh, blood and phlegm. The testes are from the marrow, blood, phlegm and fat. One has to know the ten vital places of life in the body (namely) head, heart, navel, throat, tongue, semen, blood, anus, pelvis and ankles. Sinews are said to be sixteen in the two hands, two feet, including four on the back and the neck. The membranes are sixteen from head to foot in the body. Flesh, sinews, arteries and bones are firmly placed around the wrist and ankles separately.

25. There are six brush (-like formations) in the hands, feet, neck and anus as pointed out by men.

26. There are four thread-like flesh formations in the region of the spinal column. There are ninety muscles, which bind them (in their places).

27-28a. There are seven svarā-s (a kind of thin muscles), among which five are on the head, one each in the penis and the tongue. There are sixtythree bones. Together with the minute ones there are sixtyfour in all. The teeth and nails are twenty.

28b-30. Hands, legs and the tips of these are the four places (of bones). Bones are sixty in the fingers, two on the heels, four at the ankles, four at the elbows, the same number on the shanks, two each at the knee, cheek and thighs which arise from the hip and shoulder. One has to know in the same way at the akṣasthāna, shoulder and hip.

31. There are one at the penis, forty-five on the back, and similar number of bones at the neck, collar bones and cheek.

32. The base of these which are two, have their places at the neck, eye, throat, nose and feet. The ribs together with the palate and lumps of flesh are seventytwo.

33. (There are) two temporal bones. There are four (bones) on the skull and the head. There are seventeen bones on the chest. There are two hundred and ten (bones) of the joints.
34. Among the sixty-eight in the arms sixty-one remain distributed. In the neighbourhood are eighty-three (bones). The sinews are nine hundred.

35. (There are) two hundred and thirty (bones) and seventy in the interior. Six hundred go upwards. (The bones) of the arm have been described.

36. The muscles are five hundred. Forty (among them) go upwards. There are four hundred in the arms and sixty in the interval.

37-39. There will be twenty-five more, ten more on the breast, thirteen in the organ of generation and four in the uterus in the case of women. There are thirty lakh veins in the bodies of men. There are also others numbering nine (thousand) and fifty-six thousand. They carry the (vital) fluid, the moisture and the fat inside the body just as the channels (carry water) to the basins (around plants).

40-43. O Great sage! There are seventytwo crores of hair. O Twice-born! Thea ῥijingali measure of marrow, fat, urine, bile and phlegm, feces, blood and fluids are in order one and a half times more than the preceding one respectively. The semen is half aṅjali. The ojas is half of that. Wisemen point out that the menstrual fluid (in women) is four times. Knowing that the body is a mass of dirt and impurity, one should discard and (take interest) in the soul.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYONE

The description of hells

Fire-god said:

1-2. I will describe to you the path (leading) to Yama (i.e. the world of God of Death) which have been pointed out (by the learned). The bodily heat getting intense and diffused by the deranged wind, obstructs the body as well as all the defects. Moreover it breaks the subtle places of life (in the body).

1. A measure of corn.
3-4. The wind excited by cold seeks an aperture (for its movement). The seven apertures are—two eyes, two ears, two nostrils and head. The eighth one is the mouth. Generally the lives of pious men escape through these holes.

5. (The lives) of doers of bad deeds (escape) through the anus and the organ of generation in the lower (region). The lives of yogins get out breaking the head by own will.

6-7. When the time for death has come, when the life force has approached the āpāna, when knowledge has been engulfed by darkness and when the vulnerable spots (in the body) have been surrounded, the life is moved by the wind from the umbilicus. Being affected thus it draws the eight fundamental attributes of vitality (life) within.

8-10. The accomplished beings and celestials witness with their spiritual vision, the exit (of life), the birth and the entry into the uterus. As soon as the life leaves the body it assumes a light body by means of yoga. When one is dead, the ether, wind and lustre go upwards from the body, the water and earth (go downwards) (and get merged in their respective elements). The messengers of Yama lead this light body.

11. The path to the place of God of Death is much dreadful. It extends over (a space of) eighty-six thousand (krośas). Being led thus, it partakes the food and water given by the kinsmen.

12. After having seen the God of Death, being directed by him on the words of Citragupta (the personal assistant of God of Death), a person is taken to the dreadful hells. A virtuous person is lead to the heaven by auspicious path.

13-14a. I shall describe the hells in which the sinners are placed and the sufferings (therein). There are twenty-eight important hells below the earth at the end of the seventh layer of the region covered by dreadful darkness.

14b-18. Ghorā is the name of the first hell. Sughorā is below that. The others are Atighorā, Mahāghorā, Ghorarūpā, the fifth, the sixth known as Taralatārā, the seventh one Bhayānakā, Bhayotkāṭā, Kālārātri, Mahācaṇḍā, Caṇḍā, Kolāhalā, the one known as Pracaṇḍā, Padmā, Narakanāyikā, Padmāvatī, Bhīṣaṇā, Bhīmā, Karālikā, Vikarālā, Mahāvajrā, Trikoṇā.

1. One of the five winds in the body.
Pañcakoṇikā, Sudīrghā, Vartulā, Saptabhūmā, Subhūmikā and Dīptamāyā. The wicked suffer in these.

19. There are five foremost (divisions) among each one of the twenty-eight hells known as Raurava and others numbering one-hundred and forty.

20-22. Tāmisra, Andhatāmisra, Mahāaurava and Raurava, Asipatravana (forest of sword-like leaves), Lohabhāra, Kālasūtra, Mahānaraka, Sañjīvana, Mahāvīci, Tapanā, Sampratāpana, Saṅghāta, Sakākola, Kuḍamala, Pūrimṭtika, Lohaśaṅku and Rjiṣa (are the sub-divisions). Śālmali is the main river.

23. One should know that the hells are governed by dreadful looking serpents. They put the sinners in each one of the hells as well as in many of them.

24. Having their faces resembling cats, owls, frogs and vultures etc., they throw the man in caldrons of oil and then light the fire.

25-28. Some (are put) in frying pans, some in copper vessels, some others in iron caldrons and others among sparks of fire. Some are placed on the tip of pointed pikes. Some are pierced in the hell. Some are thrashed with whips. Some are made to eat molten iron. The men are made to consume dust, excreta, blood, phlegm etc. and made to drink hot wine by the messengers of God of Death. The men are again pierced. They are tortured by mechanical devices and (the bodies are) eaten by crows etc. Hot oil is sprinkled over them and the head is pierced repeatedly.

29-30. Wailing aloud 'Oh! father!', (the men) denounce their (past) deeds. After having reached dreadful hells as a result of censurable great sins, the great sinners are reborn here when the (fruits) of the (past) deeds are exhausted. A killer of a brahmin is born in the womb of a deer, dog, pig and camel.

31. A drunkard (is born in the womb) of a Pukkaśa¹ or Mleccha². A person stealing gold (gets) the state of an insect, worm or locust. A person defiling the bed of his preceptor (attains) the state of a clump of grass.

1. A mixed caste; an offspring of a hunter male and a śūdra woman.
32. A killer of a brahmin would get consumption. A drunkard (would have) dark brown teeth (a dental disease). One who steals gold (would) have bad nails. A person violating the teacher’s bed (would have) a skin disease.

33. A person committing a sin by a particular limb would get that limb affected. A person stealing food would become dyspeptic. A person harming the articulation (of a man) (would be born) dumb.

34. A person stealing grains would have abnormal limbs. A miser (would be born as) having a fetid nose. A person stealing oil would become a bird. An informer would have an offensive breath.

35. A person abducting the wife of another and defiling a brahmin would be born as a brahmarākṣasa (a kind of ghost) in an uninhabited forest.

36. A person stealing gems (attains birth) in a low caste. (One who steals) perfumes (would be born) as the female of the muskrat. One who steals leaves, vegetables (would become) a peacock and one who steals grain (would become) a crow.

37-38a. (A person stealing) a domestic animal, milk, vehicle, fruit, honey, flesh, condiment, clothe or lotus and salt (would respectively be born as) a goat, crow, camel, monkey, fly, vulture, grhakāka (domestic crow), one afflicted by psoriasis and as cricket.

38b-39. Afflictions in mundane existence are said to be of three varieties namely, ādhyātmika (affecting mind and its faculties), ādhibhautika (caused by weapons etc.), and ādhidaivika, due to the planets, fire and gods. Men should nullify them by knowledge, by atonements, vows, making gifts and worship of (lord) Viṣṇu etc.
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTY-TWO

The major and minor religious observances (yama-s and niyama-s)

Fire-god said:

1-2a. I shall describe to you the yoga having eight constituents in order to get free from the sufferings due to mundane existence. Knowledge makes Brahman manifest. There, yoga is the concentration of mind and the withdrawal of the mind (from all other objects). (It is) the highest (union) of the individual soul and the Supreme Brahman.

2b-3. O Brahmin! Non-injury, truthfulness, non-stealing, celibacy and rejection of gifts are known to be the five major observances. These together with the minor observances yield enjoyment and emancipation. Purity, contentment, penance, study of one's own scriptures, worship of God are minor observances.

4-5a. Non-injury means not causing injury to the beings. Non-injury is the foremost virtue. Just as the footsteps of the travellers on foot could be contained in the footstep of an elephant, so also all the virtuous acts are said (to be included) in non-injury.

5b-7a. Injury (would) create anxiety, cause suffering, mental and physical pain (spilling of blood), slandering, great obstruction to beneficial thing, opening of vulnerable parts, denial of happiness, obstruction and killing. Thus it is of ten kinds.

7b-8. Truthfulness is defined as speech that would be extremely beneficial to beings. Speak the truth. Speak what is pleasing. But do not speak the truth that is not pleasing. Do not also tell a lie that would be pleasing. This is the eternal virtue.

9-10. Celibacy is the shunning of sexual enjoyment. It is eightfold. Men declare that sexual enjoyment is eightfold such as remembrance, praise, sport, seeing, talking in secret, resolve, endeavours and the final consummation.

11-12a. Celibacy is at the root of action and an action becomes fruitless otherwise. Even the elders in age and wisdom, such as Vasiṣṭha, Candramas, Śukra, the preceptor of gods (Bṛhaspati), and Pitāmaha (Brahmā) were captivated by women.-
12b-14a. The three kinds of wine are known as gāudī (from molasses), paiṣṭi (from flour) and mādhvī (from honey). The fourth sort of wine is known as woman by which the world has been deluded. One gets intoxicated just after seeing a woman, but one gets intoxicated by wine only after drinking. Since a woman is like wine by being looked at, one should not look at her.

14b-15a. A person who forcibly takes away another’s possession, whatever it may be, would certainly attain the state of lower animals. (Similar would be the result) for eating (stealthily) the butter offered as oblation.

15b-17a. (A mendicant) may accept a loin-cloth as covering, clothing, wallet that prevents cold and a pair of sandals. But one should not covet anything beyond these. Dress etc. are put on (the body) for the sustenance of the body. Body is associated with virtue. Hence it should be protected with care.

17b-18. Purity is said to be twofold—external and internal. External purity is to be maintained by means of earth and water and the internal by cleaning the feelings. One who is pure in both these respects is said to be pure, and not otherwise.

19-20a. Contentment is said to be the feeling of satisfaction with whatever one gets. Penance is the concentration of the mind and senses on a single object. The conquest of senses and mind is said to be the foremost among all virtues. Penance which fulfils all desires is threefold, namely, oral consisting of repetition of sacred formulae etc., mental (consisting of) eschewing desires, and physical (consisting of) the worship of gods etc.

20b-31. The Vedas begin with praṇava (the syllable om) and also end with the praṇava. Praṇava is the entire collection of words. Hence one has to repeat praṇava. (It is composed of) the syllables a, u and m, (the latter) being half a syllabic instant. The three syllabic instants (represent) the three Vedas. The three worlds Bhū etc. are its qualities. (It also represents) the three states such as waking, dreaming and deep sleep. (It is also equated with) the gods Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Maheśvara. (The divine forms) such as Pradyumna, Śrīvāsudeva etc. (have all come) duly from the syllable om. (The praṇava) to which a syllabic instant is not added or that which is bereft of a syllabic
instant or more is not auspicious. One who has learnt the syllable om is a sage and none else. The fourth syllabic instant is endowed with the gandhāri (accent) and is indicated on the head. It is the fourth one, the Supreme Brahman, like the lamp in a pot. One has to contemplate always (that Brahman) resting in the lotus of the heart. Prana is the bow, the individual soul is the arrow and Brahman is said to be its target. It should be known with all assiduity and one should become united like the arrow. This single syllable is Brahman. It is the supreme entity. A person who knows this syllable would get what he wishes (to get). The goddess Gayatri is its metre. The lord within is known to be its sage. The Supreme Soul is its deity. This application would yield enjoyment and prosperity. ‘Bhūh, to the soul of fire’ is (the formula of) the heart. ‘Bhuvah, to the soul of Prajāpati’ is (the formula of) the head. ‘Svaḥ, to the soul of Sun’ is said to be the armour of the tuft. ‘Om bhūr bhuvah svaḥ’ is the armour. ‘To the soul of truth’ (is) the weapon. After having placed (lord) Viṣṇu, one should repeat (this formula) for the sake of enjoyment and emancipation.

32-33. One should offer oblations of sesamum and clarified butter etc. One would obtain all things. A person who repeats the syllable twelve thousand times everyday would have the manifestation of the Supreme Brahman (in front of him) in twelve months. By the repetition (of the syllable) one crore times (one would gain perfections) such as ānimā (subtlety) etc. One would gain the grace of the (goddess of) learning (by repeating this) a lakh times.

34. Sacrificial rites for (lord) Viṣṇu are of three kinds, Vedic, Tāntric and mixed. One should worship (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu), by one of these three methods that is desired.

35. The position which one gains by prostrating flat on the ground like a stick and worshipping (lord Viṣṇu), (he would) not (gain) by means of (performing) hundreds of sacrificial rites.

36. The import of these explained here would become manifest to those great men who have extreme devotion for the god and also for the preceptor as for the god.
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYTHREE

_Description of āsanas (different physical postures) and control of breath_

_Fire-god said:

1-3a. (The term) āsana denotes postures such as the 'lotus' etc. Sitting in that posture one should contemplate the Supreme (Being). After having established oneself firmly in that posture in a pure place which is neither too much raised nor too much lowered, on the skin of an antelope and the _kūta_ (grass), one should concentrate after controlling the mind and the senses. Seated in that posture one should practise _yoga_ for the sake of the purification of the self.

3b-6. The body, head and neck should be held erect and firm without movement and one should look at the tip of the nose. One should not look in any other direction. One should protect the testicles and the penis with the heels, and place (the heels) on the thighs, keep the hands across with effort and place the back of the right palm on the left (palm). After raising the face slowly and holding the mouth forward (one should practise the control of breath). _Prāṇa_ is the wind in one's body and its _āyāma_ is its retention.

7. (Holding and) closing (one of) the nostrils with the finger (exhale and) empty the air from the chest with the other nostril. Because of emptying it is known as _recaka_ (exhalation).

8. Fill the inside with external air like a leather bag till it gets fully filled and remains steady. It is known as _pāraka_ (filling) because of filling to the full.

9. When one neither lets off the air inside nor inhales the air but remains steady like a completely filled pot, (it is called) _kumbhaka_.

10-11. (Again _prāṇāyāma_ is divided into three classes): _Kanyasa_ (the shortest one) is inhaling once for a duration of twelve _mātrā-s_ (moments). _Madhyama_ (the middle one) is inhaling twice lasting for a duration of twenty-four moments. _Uttama_ (the longest) is inhaling thrice lasting for a period of thirty-six

---

1. See verses 3b ff below.
moments. *Uttamottama* (the foremost one) is that which produces sweat, shivering and stiffness.

12-13. One should not tread on untrodden ground. (By doing so) (one would be liable to get) hiccough, breathing (trouble) etc. When the vital air is conquered there would be little defect in the feces, urine etc. (One would gain) health, quick gait, enthusiasm, clarity of voice, grace in strength and colour and the loss of all defects.

14. That (*prāṇāyāma*) which is not accompanied by, muttering (of prayer, divine name etc.) and contemplation (is known as) not impregnated. That which is accompanied (by muttering of ‘om’ etc. is known as) impregnated. An impregnated (*prāṇāyāma*) should be practised foremost for the subjugation of the senses.

15. When the senses are conquered along with the acquisition of knowledge and detachment and one has acquired mastery in *prāṇāyāma*, everything else would then become conquered.

16. The senses are really everything (which leads) to heaven or hell. By controlling them or leaving them unbridled (one would go) to heaven or hell.

17-18. The body is said to be like a chariot and the senses (are) its horses. The mind is said to be the charioteer. *Prāṇāyāma* is known to be the whip. With the reins of knowledge and detachment and by getting rid of illusion, the mind attains steadiness by means of *prāṇāyāma* alone.

19. (The practice of) *prāṇāyāma* (gives) the same benefit that would accrue to a person who drinks drops of water through the tip of a *kuśa* (grass) month after month for whole period of one hundred years.

20. *Pratyāhāra* is said to consist in the withdrawal and restraining of the senses which are ordinarily immersed in the ocean of objects.

21. One should pull up the self by one’s own effort just as a man sinking in the water (is pulled out). (One should cross) the rapid current of the river of enjoyment of objects by resorting to the tree of knowledge.
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYFOUR

Contemplation

Fire-god said:

1. The root dhyāi is known (to be used) in (the sense of) contemplation. A constant meditation on (lord) Viśṇu without digression of mind is said to be contemplation.

2. Contemplation is said to be that power of the soul equal to the thought of the (Supreme) Brahman by means of one’s own will unconditioned by any category.

3. (In other words) contemplation is said to be that thought found to be together with a similar thought resting on an object to be contemplated and which is free from the thought of any other kind.

4. It is said to be contemplation when the mind thinks constantly of a thing that is to be contemplated at any fixed place.

5. A person who discards his body (with his mind) endowed with such contemplation would elevate his family, kinsmen and friends and would become (lord) Hari (Viśṇu).

6. The position which one attains by contemplating (lord) Hari with faith for a moment or half in this manner, could not be got by (performing) all great sacrificial rites.

7. A person who knows the truth should apply himself to (the practice of) yoga, after having known the four (things) such as the contemplator, contemplation, the thing to be contemplated and that which is the benefit of the contemplation.

8-9a. A person would obtain release (from bondage of mundane existence) by practising yoga (and would also gain) eight (kinds of) great powers. (A person who is) endowed with knowledge and detachment, earnestness, forbearance, devotion to (lord) Viśṇu and is always enthusiastic is deemed to be the Supreme Soul after such contemplation.

9b-10a. The Supreme Brahman is both embodied and not embodied. Contemplation is (the constant) thought about that

1. These are the eight miraculous powers such as apīma (becoming minute as an atom) etc.
(lord) Hari. (Lord) Hari, the omniscient and supreme should be known as endowed with parts and without parts.

10b. The benefit of contemplation is the gain of powers such as anîmâ (ability to become minute like an atom) and the like (as well as) emancipation.

11-12a. (Lord) Viṣṇu associates (us) with the fruit and hence one should contemplate the Supreme Lord. One should always think of the lord while moving, standing, sleeping, waking, opening and closing the eyes, whether one is clean or not clean.

12b-14a. After having established (lord) Keśava (Viṣṇu) in the mind residing inside the body one should worship Him as seated on the pedestal of one’s lotus-like heart, by means of the yoga (union) of contemplation. This sacrifice (in the form) of contemplation is supreme, pure and is devoid of all defects. By worshipping thus one gets released (from bondage of existence) and not by external cleanliness and sacrificial rites.

14b. (Because contemplation) is free from the defect of violence, it is the means of purifying the mind.

15-16a. Hence the sacrifice in the form of contemplation is the highest as it yields final beatitude. Hence after having discarded the temporal impure external means such as the sacrificial rite etc., one should intensively practice yoga.

16b-17. First of all one should contemplate in the heart the three qualities, unmanifest, free from any modification and endowed with the objects of enjoyment and (the feeling of) pleasure after having covered (the quality) tamas by means of rajas and then rajas by means of sattva.

18-19a. Then one should first contemplate the three spheres such as black, red and white in order. The Supreme Soul, the twenty fifth principle, that is beyond the limiting adjunct of sattva (quality), should be contemplated. After having discarded the impure thing, pure thing should be thought of.

19b-21. A glorious divine lotus exists above the Supreme Being. It measures twelve inches wide. It is pure, blossomed and white. Its stalk is eight finger-breadths (long). It had its origin from the bulbous root of the navel. The eight petals of the lotus should be known as the eight qualities such as anîmâ. Its pericarp, filament and stalk are knowledge and detachment.
22. Its root is the dharma (characteristic) of (lord) Viṣṇu. Such a lotus should be meditated upon. Its characteristic, namely, knowledge and detachment, is wholly composed of the foremost glory of (lord) Śiva.

23-24a. After having known the lotus posture completely, one would have the end of all miseries. One should meditate on the lord (in the form of) the syllable Om, that is spotless, of the size of a thumb and of the form of the wick of a pure lamp.

24b-25a. Otherwise one should contemplate (the lord) as resembling the form of an asterism, as having the form of a cluster of kadamba (flowers) and illumined by a cluster of rays.

25b-26a. One should contemplate and repeat the syllable Om that is supreme, undecaying (symbolizing) the lord, the principal entity, that transcends the puruṣa and dwells in the lotus (of the heart).

26b-28. (Yogins) want to contemplate on gross things first for making the mind firm. One would be able to get steadiness in (contemplating on) minute things also after gaining firmness (in the above). A stalk ten finger-breadths long is at the root of the navel. A lotus of twelve finger-breadths and having eight petals (is supported) by the stalk. Orbs of sun, moon and fire (are situated) in the pericarp and the filament.

29-32a. (Lord) Viṣṇu having four arms bearing conch, disc, mace and lotus and stationed at the centre of an orb of fire, or (lord) Hari having eight arms bearing a bow, rosary, bracelet, noose and goad etc., and of a golden complexion, white complexion, wearing the śrīvatsa1 (mark on the chest), the kaustubha (gem), a garland of wild flowers and a gold necklace, and shining with ear-ring (in the shape) of a fish (should be contemplated). (He should also be imagined) as wearing a sparkling gem (studded) crown and silk robes and endowed with all kinds of ornaments. Otherwise (one may contemplate a form) of the size of twelve finger-breadths as one would like.

32b. (One should also repeat the formula) "I am Brahman, light, soul, Vāsudeva (name of Viṣṇu, as manifested in the form of Kṛṣṇa), the liberated, Om".

1. The curling hair on the chest.
33. When one has become tired of contemplation, one may repeat the formula. When one has got tired of repetition one may meditate. (Lord) Viṣṇu gets pleased quickly with a person engaged in the repetition (of a formula), contemplation and the like.

34. The merits of (performing) sacrificial rites are not worth even a sixteenth part of the merits of the rites of repeating (a formula). Diseases, calamities and (evil influences of) planets do not approach a person repeating (a formula). One would get the benefit of devotion, liberation and conquest over death by means of the repetition of a formula.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYFIVE

Fixing-up of the mind in the object of contemplation

Fire-god said:

1. Dhāraṇā is the fixing-up of the mind firmly on (the object) to be meditated upon. Like dhyāna (contemplation), it is also twofold according as the object is an embodied or an unembodied form of (lord) Hari.

2. The mind does not get shaken from the object that lies outside. That period for which the mind remains in a state of obsorption in a particular place without being distracted (is known as) dhāraṇā.

3. Dhāraṇā is said to be that period for which the mind remains absorbed (in the contemplation) of god, without deviating from its object.

4. Dhāraṇā has a duration of twelve yāma-s. Twelve dhāraṇā-ś (are equal to) dhyāna. It is said to be samādhi which consists of twelve (such) dhyāna-s.

5. If a person practising dhāraṇā discards his life, he attains supreme position in the heaven after elevating twenty-one (generations of his) family.

1. One yāma is equal to three hours.
6. When a particular part of the body of a yagin gets affected by disease, (the yogin) should fix up the mind on that particular part as though pervaded by the mind.

7-10. (Dhāranā is fourfold namely) āgneyi, vārunī, aisāni and amptāmikā (respectively) belonging to Agni, Varuṇa and Iśāna and (the fourth) of the nature of ambrosia. O Foremost among the twice-born! (In the āgneyi), the sikhā (formula of the tuft) of (lord) Viṣṇu ending with phat should be repeated. The glorious tip of the spear that is cleaved by the nādi-s (arteries) should be pierced with that. O Great sage! The votary should think of all those from the big toe to the skull as surrounded by orbsof rays spread across lower and upper parts (of the body) by excessive lustre. One's own body that has been (conceived mentally as) burnt to ashes should be withdrawn into one's self. O Twice-born! The cold, phlegm etc. and sin get destroyed thereby.

11-15a. (The vārunī dhāranā is explained now). One should think of the head, neck, dhīra (?) and kāra (?) (as existing) in the face bent downwards. Then after conceiving the mind as unbroken and concentrated, the entire earth should be thought as being filled with showers of snow produced by glittering spray. (The mind) should be brought down from the Brahmarandhra¹ to the Mūlādhāra² through the path of suṣumnā³ by means of shaking and as remaining in the orb of the full moon should be flooded with nectar-like water (produced) by contact with snow. A votary who is afflicted by sufferings such as hunger, thirst and the like should bear this vārunī (dhāranā) vigilantly for the sake of pleasure.

15b-20. I have described to you the vārunī dhāranā. Listen to me! (I shall now describe) the aisāni dhāranā. One should contemplate the grace of (lord) Viṣṇu, after having nullified the (airs) prāṇa and apāna⁴ in the lotus, that is verily Brahman, in the sky, until one's thoughts cease. Then one has to repeat the great truth. The lord (should also be contemplated) as pervading

---

1. An aperture in the crown of the head through which the soul is said to escape after the death of a person.
2. A mystical circle above the organs of generation.
3. One of the arteries in the human body.
4. The printed text wrongly reads aprāṇa.
everything, as half moon, supreme, tranquil, without any semblance and unstained. Until a person knows one’s real form through the words of his preceptor the entire unreal world (movable and immovable) appears as real. When that Supreme Principle is realised all the entities from the world to the brahman, the knower, the means of knowledge and the things to be known, the shaking of the lotus in the heart by means of contemplation, repetition, offering oblation, worship etc. and everything, (would appear) like the sweet cakes given by the mother. (The whole thing) may also be done with the formula of (lord) Viṣṇu. I shall describe to you the amṛta-dhāranā (now).

21-22. (In the amṛta-dhāranā the votary) should contemplate a lotus resembling the full moon held in the clenched hand of the votary. (Then the votary) should contemplate with effort a region of the full-moon having the spendour of a lakh moons filled with the waves (of bliss) of (lord) Śiva as situated on the head. (Then he should think of the same as filling) in the lotus of the heart. (Then the votary) should think of his body at its centre. The votary would become free from distress by means of the dhāranās and the like.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYSIX

Deep meditation (samādhi)

Fire-god said:

1. The deep meditation is said to be that contemplation in which the consciousness alone appearing in its spiritual aspect, remains like the ocean of coagulated milk made immobile and ceases to be operative.

2. A ṣogin is said to be in deep meditation if he remains steady in contemplation with the mind deeply absorbed, like fire (kept) in a windless (place).

3-4. He does not hear or smell or see or spit out. Moreover, he does not feel the touch. His mind does not make any
resolve. He does not think and remains like a log of wood without knowing anything. A person who is absorbed in the lord thus is stated to be in deep meditation.

5-10. Just as a lamp remaining in a windless (place) does not shake, this is said to be similar. For a yogin who is in deep meditation, contemplating himself as (lord) Viṣṇu, divine portents occur indicating success. The essential ingredient of the ear gets fallen. There would be pain in the teeth and the limbs. The celestials beseech that yogin with divine pleasures. The kings (approach) him with gift of land. The rich offer wealth. The Veda-s and all other śāstra-s become manifest themselves. He gains mastery over the metres as well as poetry in abundance. Excellent medical recipes, medicinal herbs and all sculpture and other arts become known to him. The virgins of the world of Indra and qualities such as imagination (also come to him). (Lord) Viṣṇu gets pleased with one who discards these as grass.

11-12a. (Such a yogin) endowed with the wealth of powers such as animā (becoming subtle like an atom) etc., after having imparted knowledge to the pupil and after having enjoyed the pleasures as much as desired and after having discarded the body, should abide in his self that is of the form of knowledge, bliss and Brahman.

12b-13. Just as a dirty mirror is not capable of knowing the self (i.e., the reflection of the self), so also the soul experiences pain in the body because it is connected with all (things). A person united with yoga does not experience the pain of all.

14. Just as the single ākāśa (space) becomes distinct in the pot etc., so also the single soul (remains) in many as the Sun (is reflected) in the reservoirs.

15. The Brahman, sky (ether), air, lustre, water and earth, the materials on earth, these worlds, this soul and the movable and immovable (objects) have all (come) from Him.

16-18a. Just as a potter (makes) a pot by the conjunction of clay, rod and the wheel and just as a person building a house makes a house with grass, earth and wood, so also the soul creates itself (its body) in different wombs making use of the materials (five elements) and combining them. (The
soul) gets fettered by its (past) deeds, faults and ignorance by its own will.

18b-21. The (individual) soul is released (from bondage) by means of knowledge. A yogin does not fall sick because of his virtue. Just as a lamp is maintained (to burn) by the combination of the wick, base and oil, (so) (the body) also undergoes changes. The life goes away premature. Like a lamp the soul that is inside the heart, has many rays—white, black, tawny, blue, red, yellow and brown. A person who remains (firm) above all these, pierces the region of the Sun, crosses the world of Brahmā and attains the highest state.

22-23. One reaches the abodes of the celestials by means of the other hundred rays which are situated above. Those rays of different forms which are below have soft lustre. He moves around here by means of them for enjoying (the fruits) of (his past) deeds.

24-25. All the organs of sense, mind, organs of action, ego, the earth etc. (are known as) the kṣetra (‘field’). The unmanifest soul is said to be the knower of the kṣetra. The lord who is in all the beings is existent, non-existent, as well as both existent and non-existent.

26-27a. The intellect has its origin from the unmanifest. Then the ego and the (five elements) sky etc. come into being. They have twenty-one qualities. Sound, touch, colour, taste and smell are their characteristics.

27b-28. That (quality) which rests on a particular thing gets absorbed in that particular thing. Sattva, rajas and tamas are also stated to be its qualities. He wanders like a wheel being possessed by rajas and tamas.

29. The one who is without a beginning and the first is (said to be) the Supreme Being. That which is knowable by means (of knowledge) and the senses is said to be a modification (of that self).

30. The Veda-s, Purāṇa-s, learning, Upaniṣad-s, verses, aphorisms, expositions and all other words are from Him.

31. Those who perform the agnihotra1 rite for progeny,

1. A short rite invoking Fire-god.
pass through the path of the manes, the upavīṭhi and that of (sage) Agastya towards the heaven.

32-35a. Those who are given to charity and are endowed with eight qualities, the eighty-eight thousand sages, who kindle the household fire are born again as the upholders of virtue. They reach the celestial world by the path of the seven sages and the serpents. Only so many sages devoid of all beginnings remain in each one of the places endowed with penance, celibacy, discarding association and learning till all the beings get destroyed.

35b-36a. The study of the Veda-s, sacrificial rites, celibacy, penance, restraint, earnestness, fasting and truth are the causes for (gaining) knowledge of the soul.

36b-40a. All those who adhere to truth have to practise profound meditation in this way only. It should be seen, thought about and heard by the twice-born. Those twice-borns who thus find (the truth) by resorting to the forest and meditation and are endowed with truth and extreme earnestness, will become united with pure white lustre in course of time. Then those people reach the celestial world, the Sun, lightning (and attain) the world of Brahmā. They are not reborn here.

40b-42a. Those men, who gain heaven by means of sacrificial rites, penance and gifts, reach the world of manes, the moon, the sky, air, water and earth through smoke, night, dark fortnight and the daśāṅga (the period when the Sun moves towards the south). They are again born here and again return.

42b-44. Those who do not know the two courses of the soul would become a serpent or a cricket, or a worm or an insect. The individual soul would become immortal by contemplating the Brahman resembling a lamp in the heart. Even a householder who accepts wealth acquired in the right way, remaining steady in knowledge about the truth, getting delighted in (seeing) guests, who performs ancestral rites and speaks truth, would get release (from bondage).
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYSEVEN

Knowledge of Brahman

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the knowledge about Brahman for the sake of getting released from the ignorance of mundane existence. A person gets released (by constantly thinking), "I, this soul, is verily the Supreme Brahman."

2. The body is not the soul because that is perceived like a pot etc. It is known certainly while sleeping and at the time of death that the soul is different from the body.

3. If the body is the soul it should behave like one which does not undergo any change etc. The organs such as the eye and the like are only instruments (of knowledge) and hence are not the soul.

4. The mind and the intellect also are not the soul. They are only instruments like a lamp (for supplying light). The life-breath is also not the soul as (no?) consciousness manifests during deep sleep.

5-6a. The consciousness is not experienced during waking and dreaming (states) because it is mixed up. Since the life-breath devoid of consciousness is known during deep sleep, the soul is not the same as the organs which belong to the soul (as instruments) (and so are not identical with it).

6b-7. The ego is also not the soul because of its non-constancy like the body. This soul which is distinct from the above-mentioned categories remains in the heart of all (beings). (The self) is the seer and enjoyer of all things like a glowing lamp in the night.

8-10a. A sage should contemplate thus at the time of commencing deep meditation: Sky (came) from Brahman, air from sky, fire from air, water from fire, earth from water and the subtle body from that (earth). The quintuplated forms of the five elements came from the free forms of the five elements. After having meditated upon the gross body, one should think of getting absorbed in Brahman.

10b-13. The elements have been quintuplated and the Virâṭ (the first creation of Brahman) is known to be their
effect. This gross body is the product of the ignorance of the soul. Wise men know knowledge through the senses as the waking state. The world has attachment for it. These three are not creation. The effect of the elements which are not quintuplated is said to be the liṅga. The union of the seventeen (categories) is known as the ‘golden egg.’ The body is stated to be the subtle mark of the soul.

14. Dream is the recollection of experience occurring in the waking state. The soul also would resemble it. (The soul that has not been fettered) with the universe (is known as) taijasa.

15. There is one single cause of the two known as the gross and subtle body. The soul, that is knowledge and possessing lustre, is said to be inferred from that.

16-17. It is not sat (existence), not asat (non-existence), not sadasat (existence as well as non-existence). It is neither composed of components, nor devoid of components. It is neither separated, nor not separated. It is both separated and not separated. It is inexplicable and is the creator of bondage and mundane existence. That single Brahman (is obtained) by means of knowledge and is never obtained by means of actions.

18. (The means of the knowledge of the soul) by all means is to control the senses which are the cause of the bondage of the soul. The place of the intellect is deep sleep. It affects the two.

19. This wise soul is known to be the praṇava composed of the three syllables. The syllables a, u and m combined (is the praṇava).

20. It is the witness of all things as ‘I’. It is of the form of consciousness alone in the waking, dreaming and other states. Ignorance and bondage in mundane existence etc. are not its work.

21. It is eternal, pure, free from bondage, truth, bliss and without a second. I am Brahman. I am Brahman. I am the supreme splendour and the ever free Om.

22. I am Brahman, the supreme knowledge—this contemplation destroys the bondage. Brahman is eternal, bliss, truth, knowledge and endless.
23. This soul is the Supreme Brahman. "You are that Brahman." This individual soul is instructed by the preceptor, (to identify himself with Brahman) as "I am Brahman."

24. That Brahman is the Sun. I am that partless being. Om. The knower of Brahman gets freedom from the worthless mundane existence. He would become Brahman.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYEIGHT

Knowledge of Brahman

Fire-god said:

1. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of earth, water and fire. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of wind and sky.

2. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of the primary undertaking. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light bereft of the first creation and the soul.

3. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence devoid of waking place. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of the feeling of universality.

4. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of the syllable 'a'. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence devoid of speech, hands and feet.

5. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of anus and penis. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of ears, skin and eyes.

6. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence bereft of taste and form. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of all smells.

7. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light without tongue and nose. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence bereft of touch and sound.

8. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence bereft of mind and intellect. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of consciousness and ego.
9. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence free from (the vital winds) prāṇa and apāṇa (in the body). I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre bereft of (the vital winds) vṛāṇa and udāṇa (in the body).

10. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of (the vital wind) samāṇa (in the body). I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence devoid of old age and death.

11. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence bereft of grief and ignorance. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light free from hunger and thirst.

12. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of all modifications of sound. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence bereft of the golden egg.

13. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of the dreaming state. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence devoid of luminosity etc.

14. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light free from harm etc. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of knowledge relating to an assembly.

15. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre bereft of inference. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of the qualities such as sattva (goodness) and the like.

16. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence devoid of the feeling of sat and asat (existence and non-existence). I am Brahman, the Supreme Light, bereft of all components.

17. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of difference and non-difference. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of the location of deep sleep.

18. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence free from the feeling of being learned. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light free from the syllables such as ‘ma’.

19. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre free from the means and objects knowledge. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light free from knowledge and knower.

20. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence devoid of being a witness etc. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of effect and cause.

21. I am Brahman devoid of body, organs, mind, intellect,
life-breath and ego. I am Brahman, the fourth state that is free from (the states of) waking, dreaming and deep sleep.

22. (I am) eternal, pure, wise and free, truth, bliss and without a second. I am Brahman, (I am) Brahman endowed with knowledge and absolutely free. Om. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence, deep meditation and the supreme being that confers emancipation.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYNINE

Knowledge of Brahman again

Fire-god said:

1. (The votary) reaches the region of the gods by (performing) sacrificial rites and the region of Virāt by (doing) penance. By renouncing actions (one would gain the place) of Brahmad. By detachment (one would get) absorbed in nature.

2. Liberation is got by means of knowledge. These are known to be the five courses. Detachment is turning away from the feelings of happiness, torment, grief etc.

3. Renunciation is giving up all actions already performed together with those yet to be performed. (By such means) one would get free from the difference of change beginning with the unmanifest and ending with discrimination.

4. Knowledge is said to arise from knowing (the soul) as different from the animate and inanimate things. The Supreme Soul, the Supreme Lord is the sustainer of all things.

5. He is glorified in the Vedas and the philosophical treatises by the name of (lord) Viṣṇu. That lord of the sacrificial rites (known as) Tajñaptīpuruṣa is worshipped by those who are engaged in that.

6. That embodiment of knowledge is perceived by those who have abstained from (doing actions) by means of association with knowledge. That Supreme Being (is referred to) as speech (consisting of the sounds) short, long and protracted etc.
7. O Great sage! The action that is the means of attaining Him is said to be knowledge. The knowledge is said to be two-fold: that which is explained in the Āgama-s and (that which is obtained) from discrimination.

8. The Śabdabrahman (Brahman composed of sound) is an embodiment of the Āgama-s and the Supreme Brahman is the knowledge arising from discrimination. One should know the two Brahmans—the Śabdabrahman and the Supreme Brahman.

9. Learning in the form of the Veda-s and the like (is known as) aparam (not the supreme). The imperishable Brahman is the supreme (learning). This (Brahman) is denoted by the term "Bhagavān" (prosperous) in service, worship and other acts. (The letters of the word mean as follows:)

10. The syllable ‘bha’ has two senses—bhartā (protector) and sambhartā (one who collects or hoards). O Great sage! The letter ‘ga’ (means) the leader, the conveyor and the creator.

11. The word ‘bhaga’ (which is the combination of the letters bha and ga) means the six: the entire wealth, valour, fame, fortune, knowledge and detachment.

12. All the things exist in (lord) Viṣṇu. That Supreme Spirit is threefold. In the same way (the word) Bhagavān (is used) in the case of (lord) Hari and elsewhere as a courtesy.

13. He knows the creation, destruction, the coming and going of the beings, true knowledge and nescience and hence is designated ‘Bhagavān’.

14. The term ‘Bhagavān’ connotes knowledge, power, supreme opulence, strength and splendour in entirety without the bad qualities fit to be avoided.

15-16a. In olden time, Khāṇḍikya Keśidhvaja imparted to (King) Janaka, the yoga (as follows): The seed of the origin through ignorance is twofold: the notion of self in things which are not the self and the notion that self and body are identical.

16b-20. The soul enshrined in the body made of five
elements and engulfed in illusion and darkness entertains the bad thought 'I am this'. In the same way a person (entertains the thought) in the sons, grandsons etc. and their progeny. The learned (entertain) similar notion with respect to the physical bodies of others. A man does work for the welfare of all the bodies (men). But a person (begins to think) that those bodies are different; it becomes a cause for the bondage. This spotless soul is verily of the form of liberation and knowledge. Impiety of the form of painful experience belongs to the prakṛti and not to the soul. Just as water cannot be united with fire and a union is brought about by means of the intervening vessel, (pain and illusion though they do not belong to the soul, appear as though associated with the soul).

21. O Great sage! The sounds such as 'ka' etc. (are said to be) the result of its action. In the same way, the soul uniting with prakṛti, is endowed with the feeling of the self.

22. (The self seems) to enjoy all the bodily attributes. But it is different from them and it is without any modification. The contact (of the mind) with the things is for bondage and one should withdraw his mind from the things of the senses.

23. After having withdrawn it from the things, one should think of (lord) Hari, the one identical with Brahman. O Sage! It leads a person meditating on Brahman to gain the state of Brahman.

24-25a. After due thought (one should strive) by means of one's own effort. (The attraction of Brahman) would be like the magnet (drawing) the iron. It is said to be yoga which is the union of the distinct mental path with Brahman dependent on one's effort.

25b-27a. (The mind) steady in a state of deep meditation, attains the Supreme Brahman. By means of self-control, by withholding the senses from the objects, conquering the winds by doing retention of breath, regulation of breath and subjugating the senses by means of withdrawal of breath, one should make the mind steady in the auspicious repose.

27b-28. Brahman, that is to be resorted to by the mind, is twofold, namely, embodied and not embodied. (The sages) Śanandana and others were endowed with the thought of
being Brahman, while the gods and other created beings (gained elevation) by means of action.

29-32. In the case of the golden egg etc., it is twofold such as due to knowledge and action. The mental activity is said to be threefold. The whole universe is contemplated as Brahman. That knowledge which is of the form of pure existence, beyond the reach of expression, that which does not possess the sense of being different and which could be known by the soul is designated as Brahman. That is the Supreme Form of (lord) Viṣṇu, devoid of form, unborn and indestructible. It is difficult to contemplate at first (the formless). Hence one has to meditate on the embodied form (at first). Such a person would become indistinct from the Supreme Soul by attaining the state of absence of the attitude of possession. (The feeling of) his difference would be due to his ignorance.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY

Knowledge of non-dual Brahman

Fire-god said :

1-5. I shall impart the knowledge of the non-dual Brahman which was expounded by Bharata. He (Bharata) performed penance at Śālagrama (name of a place) worshipping Vāsudeva (Krṣṇa, a manifestation of Viṣṇu) etc. Because of the company of a deer, (the sage) thinking of the deer at the end of his life, became a deer (in the next birth). But because he carried the memories of his past birth even after being born as a deer, (he) discarded his life by means of yoga and regained his self. Having attained identity with the non-dual Brahman, he wandered in the world like an inert thing. An attendant of king Sauvira advised (him) to serve (the king) for wages and led him to the camp. Being prompted by the words of the servant, the wise-man accepted to serve and carried the palanquin in order to destroy (the past deed) of the self. While others (carrying the
palanquin) moved fast, he was lagging behind. Seeing the others moving fast and himself (moving) slow the king said to him:

*The king said:*

6. Are you tired? You have borne my palanquin only for a short distance. You seem to be stout. Are you not able to stand the fatigue?

*The brahmin said:*

7. I am not stout. I have not borne your palanquin. I am neither tired nor fatigued. O King! You are a person to be borne.

8-10. The pair of feet rest on the earth, the two shanks on the pair of feet, the two thighs on the pair of shanks, which in turn are the support for the belly. Then the region of the chest, the two arms and the pair of shoulders are resting on the belly. This palanquin is on the shoulder. What has the feeling of 'mine' done here. This body remaining on the palanquin is beheld as yourself. There (the terms) 'you' and 'I' (are worldly conventions). This may be described in another way.

11-14. O King! I, you and others are being borne by the elements. This congregation of guṇas ('qualities') fallen in the stream of guṇas goes on. O Ruler of earth! These 'qualities' of goodness etc. are bound by the (past) deeds. The karmā (past deed) is acquired by ignorance in all the creations without any exception. The soul is pure, imperishable, calm, devoid of guṇas and superior to parkṛti. Among all the creations, this alone does not have growth or decay. O King! Just as it does not have growth, so it does not also have decay. Hence how is it that you have said 'you are stout'!

15-18. This palanquin is resting on the earth, shank, feet, hip, thigh and belly etc. and similarly on the shoulder. Hence (my) feeling is same as yours. O King! By means of bearing the palanquin (I have become similar) to the other beings. Whether originated from a mountain, other materials or a house or originated from the earth, as the puruṣa (soul) is different from the physical causes. How can there be a big burden to be borne by me? O King! With what material the palanquin has been made, the other worldly things have been made with the
same material. In this respect, yourself, myself and all others have been made similar.

19. After having heard these words, the king held his feet, beseeched him to forgive (and said): "Be pleased. Lay off this palanquin and speak to me who is listening to you. Who are you? For what reason have you come here?"

The brahmin said:

20-21. Listen to me. It is not at all possible to tell you who I am. Everywhere the act of coming is for the sake of enjoying (the fruits of past deeds). Every being reaches a place etc. to enjoy the pleasure or pain arising from (the past) pious or impious (deeds) resting on place etc.

The king said:

22. O Brahmin! How is it not possible to say that I am that person who is here. O Twice-born! It is not wrong (to apply) this word ‘I’ to mean the self.

The brahmin said:

23-28. It is not wrong to use the word ‘I’ to denote the self. But it is fallacious to think and say that a thing that is not the self is the self. When there is a single soul enshrined in all the bodies, it is meaningless to ask who you are and who I am. O King! You, this palanquin, these palanquin bearers going in front, and this world of yours are not said to be existence. Wood (the material for making the palanquin) is got from a tree. O King! Is this palanquin on which you are placed designated as a tree or as wood? A sensible man does not say that the great king is seated on a tree. So also (seeing) you on a log of wood, all do not say that you are on a palanquin. (In reality) the palanquin is a combination of wood in a particular design. O Excellent king! Look at the palanquin in its distinctive feature.

29. A man, a woman, cow, horse, elephant, bird, tree should be known as worldly convention to denote the bodies due to the effect of (the past) deeds.

30. O King! the tongue, teeth, lips and palate say ‘I’.
They are not 'I' because all these are means of making an utterance.

31. For what reasons does speech itself say 'I'? Even then it is false and not proper to say speech is not I.

32. O King! because (limbs such as) the head, anus etc. of men are different from the body, how can I denote them as 'I'?

33. O Excellent king! Only if something different from me exists, it is possible to say 'This is I and that is another'.

34. In fact, there is no difference such as immobile, animal, tree and different bodies etc. These are all the effects of past deeds.

35. O King! A person (designated) as a king and those (designated) as the soldiers of the king, that and other appellations are not real.

36. You are a king to the world, a son to (your) father, a foe to an enemy, husband to (your) wife, father of a son. O King! How shall I call you?

37. O Lord of the earth! Are you this head? Do not the head and belly belong to you? Are not the feet etc. yourself? Or do they not belong to you?

38. You are different from all the constituent parts. O King! Think seriously as to who you are.

After having heard that, the king said to that anchorite brahmin (who was a manifestation of lord) Hari (as follows):

The king said:

39. O Twice-born! Once I endeavoured to ask sage Kapila (to explain to me) what was beneficial (to a man). You are a part of that sage Kapila. You are giver of knowledge on earth for my sake. (Release) the wave of knowledge from the ocean (of knowledge). Impart to me whatever is beneficial to me.

The brahmin said:

40-44. You are again asking (me) what is beneficial. You are not asking about the reality. O King! All those things which are beneficial are unreal. After having propitiated the gods, (men) desire for abundant wealth, desire for sons and for kingdom. O King! What is the benefit? The wise (hold) that the communion with the Supreme Being is the only good. Acts such
as the (performance of) sacrificial rites (would not confer this union). One would not get wealth (by such union). The union of the self with the Supreme Being is said to be the foremost thing. The (Supreme) Soul, which is one, is all-pervading, even, pure, without characteristics, superior to nature, devoid of birth, growth etc., omnipresent and undecaying. It is wholly of the form of supreme knowledge and that lord is not associated with qualities, kinds etc.

45-47. O King! Listen to me! I shall describe to you the dialogue between Nidāgha and Ṛtu. Ṛtu was the son of Brahmā and was a wiseman. Nidāgha, the son of Pulastya, was his disciple. After gaining knowledge from him, (Nidāgha) came to the city and was living there. Once Ṛtu, while walking along the banks of (river) Devikā, thought of him. After one thousand celestial years had passed, (Ṛtu) had gone to see Nidāgha. After doing Vaiśvadeva² (worship) Nidāgha took food and asked him "You have eaten. Have you been satisfied? Is that satisfaction eternal?"

Ṛtu said:

48-55. O Brahmin! A person feeling hungry would get satisfied after eating food. I had no hunger. Why do you ask me about getting satisfied? O Twice-born! Hunger and thirst are said to be the properties of the body and hence do not belong to me. Because you have asked me I shall say that I am always satisfied since I am the (Supreme) Spirit, omnipresent and all-pervasive like the sky. Hence I am the inner self of all the beings. How then can I be restricted to this? I neither go, nor come, nor am confined to a particular place. You are not different from me, nor am I different from yourself. Just as a mud house is strengthened by plastering with mud, so also this body made of earthly (element) (is held fast) by infinitesimal particles of earthly (materials). O Twice-born! I am Ṛtu, your preceptor, come to impart to you wisdom. I have come here and I shall go now as soon as you know the highest truth. You know that there is only one and there is no difference in the entire

1. The text consistently reads Ṛtu; probably a mistake for Ṛbhu.
2. A daily rite to please all gods performed before taking food.
universe. (All the things) are the manifestation of the Supreme Being known as Vāsudeva (name of Kṛṣṇa, manifestation of Viṣṇu).

Ṛtu went again to that city after one thousand years. He said to Nidāgha staying at a lonely place on the outskirts of the city, "Why do you stay at a lonely place?"

Nidāgha said:

56. O Brahmin! There is a strong rumour that the king would go round (the city) to see the beauty of the city. Hence I am staying here.

Ṛtu said:

57-60. Who is a king here and who are the other subjects? O Excellent Twice-born! Tell me this. You are conversant (with these)! O Foremost among twice-borns!"

(Nidāgha said): "He is the king who rides that elephant in rut rising from the peak of the mountain and others are (those) moving around him. O Brahman! That which is under is the elephant and one who is above is the king." Ṛtu asked (again): "Who is the elephant and who is the king?"

Nidāgha said (the same thing again). Ṛtu made Nidāgha to lie crawling on fours and rode him (and said), "I am above like the king and you are below like the elephant."

61-62. Ṛtu said to Nidāgha, "How shall I name you then?" Being told thus Nidāgha prostrated and said, "You are certainly my preceptor. My mind has not been (made free from the dualistic bias by anyone else)." Ṛtu said to Nidāgha, "I had come here to impart to (you) knowledge relating to Brahman. I have shown to you the highest truth, verily the essence, that is one without a second."

The Brahmin said:

63-65. Nidāgha also became converted to non-dualism by the counsel (of Ṛtu). He then perceived all beings without any difference in his own self. He attained liberation by means of knowledge. You will also similarly obtain liberation. You and I and all other beings are (lord) Viṣṇu from whom all has come. Just as the single sky is perceived variedly as yellow, blue etc.,
so also the single soul (is perceived) as separate on account of erroneous perception.

*Fire-god said:*

66. The king gained liberation by means of the knowledge imparted by Bharata. Contemplate that the knowledge of Brahman is the enemy of the tree of ignorance of mundane existence.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND EIGHTYONE

*The essence of the Bhagavadgītā*

*Fire-god said:*

1. I shall describe the essence of the (Bhagavad) gītā, that is foremost among all the gītā-s and which Kṛṣṇa imparted to Arjuna in olden days and which yields enjoyment and emancipation.

*The Lord said:*

2. One should not feel grief-stricken by the thought that the life is extinct or not extinct. The soul within the body is birthless. The soul neither gets old nor dies. It cannot be differentiated. Hence one should discard (the feeling of) grief etc.

3-5a. Brooding on the objects (of senses), man gets attachment for them. From attachment (arises) desire, then (comes) anger and delusion (proceeds) from anger. Confused memory (arises) from delusion and one gets ruined on account of the confusion. Association with bad elements is destroyed by means of association with good elements. The desire for gaining liberation destroys the desire (to enjoy pleasures). By discarding desire one gets firm on his own self. He is said to be a man of steady wisdom.

5b-7a. That which is night to all beings, in that the disciplined man wakes; that in which all beings wake, is night to the sage cognizing (the soul). There is nothing to be done by
him who feels happy in his (own) soul. For him there is no object to acquire by doing (an action); nor is there any (loss) by not doing (an action).

7b-8a. O Mighty-armed! The knower of the truth relating to the nature of guṇas and action knows that guṇas (as senses) merely abide with the guṇas (as objects) and does not get entangled.

8b-9a. By the raft in the form of knowledge one goes beyond all pain. O Arjuna! The fire of knowledge burns all the deeds to ashes.

9b-10a. One who dedicates his deeds to Brahman discarding all attachment, is not stained by sins just as a lotus by water.

10b-12a. A person united to yoga would perceive himself in others and others in his self and would view all as equal. A person fallen from yoga would be born in the house of prosperous and pious persons. O Son! A person doing auspicious things does not suffer.

12b-13a. Verily this divine illusion of mine, consisting of the qualities, is difficult to surmount. Only those who resort to me cross over this illusion.

13b-14a. O Foremost among the Bharatas! Four types of men worship, namely, a man in distress, a man seeking knowledge, a man seeking wealth and a man imbued with wisdom. (Among them) the wiseman (is) ever steadfast.

14b-18. The imperishable is the Supreme Brahman. Its dwelling in the individual body is said to be adhyātman. The offering which causes the origin of beings is called karma. The perishable nature is adhibhūta. The puruṣa (the being) is adhidaivata. I alone am the adhiyajña here in this body, O Best among the embodied! Whoever, at the time of death, remembers me alone, attains oneness with my state without any doubt. A man would attain the same state which he thinks of at the end after discarding the body. Fixing the life-energy in the middle of the eye-brows (a person) reaches me uttering the one-syllabled ‘Om’, the Brahman, and then discarding the life, (and knowing that) (the things) beginning with Brahmag and ending with a tuft of grass are all my magnificence.

19. All glorious and noble beings are known to be a part
of Myself. One who knows that the universe is a manifestation of me, gets released.

20. One who knows the body as the field is said to be kṣetrajña (knower of the field). The knowledge about the field and the knower of the field is deemed by Me (lord) as knowledge.

21-22. The great elements, egoism, intellect, unmanifest (principle), the ten (organs of) senses, one (mind) and the five objects of senses, desire, hatred, pleasure, pain, the aggregate, consciousness and firmness—all these have been described briefly as the kṣetra (field) with its modifications.

23-27. Humility, modesty, non-injury, forbearance, uprightness, serving the preceptor, purity, steadfastness, self-control, not having desire for the objects of senses, absence of egoism, cognizing the evil in birth, death, old age, sickness and pain, non-attachment, non-identification (of the self) with son, wife, home and the like, constant equanimity towards desirable and undesirable happenings, exclusive unwavering devotion to Me (god), resorting to solitary places, distaste for an assembly of men, constancy in knowledge about self, viewing things in accordance with the knowledge of truth—these are declared as knowledge. Ignorance is the opposite of these.

28. I shall describe that which has to be known, by knowing which one enjoys immortality. The Supreme Brahman is without a beginning. It is said to be neither existence, nor non-existence.

29-31. With hands and feet everywhere, with eyes, heads and mouths everywhere and with ears everywhere—(He) remains enveloping all. Shining by the functions of all the senses, (He) is without all the senses. (Although) unattached, (He) is the supporter of all (beings). (Although) devoid of qualities, (He) is the person experiencing them. He is outside and within (all) the beings. He is movable as well as immovable. He is incomprehensible because of his subtlety. He is far and near.

1. The textual reading is wrong. It has been corrected as in BG XIII.12.

2. The textual reading has been corrected on the basis of BG XIII.13.
32-33. He is undivided and yet He seems to be existing in beings as divided. He should be known as the supporter of beings. He devours and is mighty (generator). The light of all lights, He is said to be beyond darkness. (He is) the knowledge, the knowable and the goal of knowledge, remaining in the hearts of all (the beings).

34-35. By means of meditation some behold the self in the self by the self. Others (see the self) by sāṅkhya-yoga (deliberation) and yet others by karma-yoga (action). Still others, not knowing thus, worship (Him) as they have heard from others. They too cross death quickly by their devotion to what they have heard.

36. Knowledge arises from sattva (goodness), greed from rajas and error, delusion and ignorance from tamas.

37. One who simply stands composed (thinking) that the guṇas exist in him and is not shaken (by them) and remains equanimous towards respect and insult, friend and foe, (is said to be) free from guṇas.

38. The imperishable aśvattha (holy fig tree) is said to be having its roots above and branches below. Its leaves are the Veda-s. One who knows it is the knower of the Veda-s.

39. There are two (types of) beings in this world, the divine and the demoniacal. Non-injury etc.¹ and forbearance belong to one born for a divine state.

40. Neither purity, nor (right) conduct belong to one born for a demoniacal state. As anger, greed and sex lead to hell, one should reject the three.

41-42. Sacrificial rites, penance and charity are known to be of three varieties due to the (three) qualities, sattva etc. The food that augments life, purity, strength, health and pleasure (is known to be) sāṭṭvika. The food that is pungent and dry and productive of pain, grief and disease (is) rājasa. The food that is impure, rejected, putrid and tasteless (is said to be) tāmasa.

43. The sacrificial rite is said to be sāṭṭvika if it is performed as laid down without desiring reward. (A sacrifice is) rājasa,

¹. See BG XVI. 2-3 for other characteristics.
if it is (done) for the sake of gaining a fruit. If it is for vanity it is tāmasa.

44. Physical penance is said to be that which is accompanied by faith, sacred formula and the like. Worship of the gods etc. and non-injury etc. are said to be verbal penance.

45. A speech that does not cause excitement, truthfulness, practice of the study of the scriptures of one’s own school and sacred repetition (are said to be austerity of speech). Mental (austerity) consists of purity of disposition, silence and self-control¹.

46-47. The sāttvika austerity (is done) with no desire (for any fruit), the rājasa, with the intention of gaining an object and the tāmasa for harming others. The sāttvika charity is that which is performed at the right place etc. with a sense of duty. Rājasa (charity) is that (performed) with a view to receive in return. It is said to be tāmasa (when performed) at a wrong place and insultingly.

48. "Om tat sat (Om, that and real)" has been declared to be the triple designation of Brahman. Sacrificial rites, charity and such other deeds confer enjoyment and emancipation to men.

49. The threefold fruit of action—disagreeable, agreeable and mixed—accrues after death to a person who does not relinquish (karma) but never to those who renounce.

50-51. The tāmasika action (arises) from an action associated with delusion, the rājasa action from pain, fear etc., and the sāttvika from non-desire. These (following) five are the five causes of an action—the body, the agent, the various instruments such as the senses, the different functions of various sorts and the presiding deity, the fifth.

52-53a. The knowledge that (everything is) one is sāttvika. The knowledge that it is separate is rājasa. That which is contrary to reality is tāmasa. The sāttvika action is without any

1. The text has carelessly abridged BG XVII.15-16.
2. The printed text wrongly reads trividhāḥ for vividhāḥ.
Cf. BG XVIII.14.
desire. The räjasa action is with desire. The tåmasa (action) is from ignorance.

53b-54. A sätavika agent would be equanimous towards success and failure. A räjasa (doer) (would be) deceitful. A tåmasa (doer would be) languid. The understanding at the beginning of an action is sätaviki. That which is only at the time of an action would be räjasi. The contrary (would be) tåmasi.

55-56a. The firmness of mind (towards pleasure and pain etc.) would be sätaviki. The desire (of the mind) for satisfaction is räjasi. Grief etc. is tåmasi. There would be pleasure at the beginning from sattva. The pleasure that comes at the end is räjasa. Pain at the beginning and end is tåmasa.

56b-58. All the beings had their origin from that by which this (universe) has been pervaded. One finds success by worshipping (lord) Viśṇu by one’s action. A person who knows the world from Brahmā to a tuft of grass as (lord) Viśṇu by means of his action, mind and speech in all the states gains success always. The devotee of the lord (would) certainly (be) a bhāgavata.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND EIGHTYTWO

The Yamagītā

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe to you the Yamagītā expounded to Naciketas. It would confer enjoyment and emancipation to the pious desiring emancipation who read and listen to this.

Yama said:

2. Alas! man himself being non-eternal, desires for eternal seats, beds, vehicles, clothes, houses etc. on account of ignorance.

3. It has been said by (the sage) Kapila (in olden days) that always having non-attachment for pleasures and viewing one’s own self (critically) are most excellent for men.

4. (The sage) Pañcaśikha has said that impartiality to
wards all, attitude of non-possession, not being attached (to worldly pleasures) are most excellent for men.

5. Gaṅgāviṣṇu has declared that a true knowledge (of the miseries) of the stages (of life) beginning with that of embryo and including birth, childhood and old age etc. is most excellent for men.

6. Janaka has stated that remedying the pains such as the ādhyātmika (bodily and mental) and the like from the beginning to the end is most excellent for men.

7. Brahmā holds that the most excellent thing for men is to perceive the oneness of the Supreme Being appearing as different (in different beings).

8. Jaigisha has said that the highest good lies in discharging one's duties as laid down in the Rg, Yajur or Sāma (veda) without attachment and with a sense that they have to be done.

9. Devala is said to hold the view that the most excellent thing for men would be to abandon all actions for the sake of the happiness of the self.

10. (Sage) Sanaka has declared that the knowledge (gained) from renunciation of desires leads one to Brahman, the supreme place, and that those who entertain desires (do not get) this knowledge.

11. (Lord) Hari has said that the foremost among the excellent is to transform the actions done with attachment into those of non-attachment. This is verily non-action, the Brahman.

12. The elevated person who has gained knowledge does not become different from Brahman, known as (lord) Viṣṇu, the supreme and indestructible.

13. A person would gain by (doing) austerities whatever he mentally desires such as knowledge of Brahman, knowledge of worldly existence, faith in god, good fortune and a beautiful form.

14. There is nothing to be contemplated equal to (lord) Viṣṇu. There is no austerity superior to fasting. There is no fortune equal to health. There is no river equal to the (river) Gaṅgā.

15-16. There is no kinsman other than (lord) Viṣṇu, the lord of the universe. A person who meditates on (lord) Hari
as (existing) below, above, in front and in the body, senses, mind etc. and passes away would become (lord) Hari. That which is the Brahman, from that all the things (have emanated) and in that all the things exist.

17. (Lord) Viṣṇu dwells in the hearts of all in the form of higher and lower, as un-understandable, indefinable and well-established.

18. Some (people) invoke that lord Viṣṇu as the lord of sacrifices. Some (invoke) Him as (lord) Hari, some as (lord) Hara (Śiva) and some others as Brahmā.

19. Some (invoke) Him by the names of Indra etc. and others as Sun, Moon and as the eternal time. People state that the whole earth, from Brahmā to a tuft of grass, is Viṣṇu.

20-21a. A person who has attained (lord) Viṣṇu, the Supreme Brahman, never returns (to worldly existence). A man may acquire such a state by making great gifts such as gold, bathing in sacred waters, meditation, austerities, worship, wealth and listening to sacred texts.

21b-22. Know the soul as traveller, the body as chariot, intellect as charioteer and mind as reins. The senses are said to be horses and the objects the pasture ground for them.

23-24a. People name the soul united with the mind and senses as the enjoyer. He who is not wise and whose mind is not always associated (with the soul), does not reach the Supreme Brahman and is born in the world.

24b-25a. He who is wise and whose mind is united (with the soul) always, attains the place (of Brahman) and is not born in this world again.

25b-26a. A person who has knowledge as the charioteer and mind as the reins, reaches the end of his journey and (gets) the highest region of (lord) Viṣṇu.

26b-28a. The objects (of senses) are higher than the respective organs; the mind is higher than the objects; the intellect is higher than the mind; the self (is higher) than the intellect and (the principle of) mahat is higher than the self. The un-manifest is higher than the mahat. The Puruṣa (the spirit) is higher than the unmanifest. There is nothing higher than the Supreme Spirit. It is the ultimate end and course.
28b-30. This self hidden in all the bodies does not reveal itself. The subtle one is perceived by men having sharp intellect and subtle vision. A wiseman should restrain his speech in the mind, that knowledge in the self, that knowledge in the great self and place it at the end in the self. After having known the union of Brahman and the self by means of moral duties etc., one would become Brahman.

31-32. Non-injury, truthfulness, non-stealing, celibacy, refraining from receiving gifts (are known) as the *yama*-s (moral abstentions). The *niyama*-s (observances) (are) five—purity, happiness, austerity, study of the *Veda* (of one’s school) and worship of God. The (physical) postures are such as the *padmaka* etc. *Prāṇāyāma* (is) conquest of wind. *Pratyāhāra* is the restraining of the mind in the self.

33. *Dhāraṇā* consists of fixing of the mind on an auspicious object. O Twice-born! It is said to be the *dhāraṇā* by the wise because the mind is steady.

34. The continuous fixing-up of the mind in the same place is known as *dhyāna* (contemplation). *Samādhi* is the state of (having the attitude) “I am Brahman”.

35. Just as the space enclosed by a pitcher becomes one with the sky when the pitcher is destroyed, in the same way the liberated soul becomes Brahman.

36. The individual soul deems itself as Brahman by (means of) knowledge (alone) and not by any other (means). The individual soul gets released from ignorance and its effect and becomes undecaying and immortal.

Fire-god said:

37. O Vasiṣṭha! I have expounded (to you) the *Yamagītā* which yields enjoyment and emancipation to the readers. The eternal union is stated to be the total occupation of the intellect by Brahman (as outlined) in the philosophical thought.
CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND EIGHTYTHREE

The Glorification of the Agnipurana

Fire-god said:

1-4. I have expounded to you the Agneyapurana of the form of Brahma. It with extension and without extension consists of the two vidya-s. The learning consists of the Rg, Yajur, Sama and Atharva (veda). Visnu is the creator of the world. Prosody, phonetics, grammar, lexicon, astronomy, etymology, dharmastra (treatises on religious duties), mimamsa (inquiry), nyaya (logic), science of medicine, archery, science of music and science of statecraft are all (known as par/a) vidya. The other one beyond the Veda-s is lord Hari known as apar/a vidya (that which has nothing superior to it). Highest knowledge is the supreme undecaying thing.

5-6. One who has the feeling that all the things are (the manifestations of lord) Visnu, is not affected by the Kali (era). One would not incur any sin by not performing the great sacrificial rites or not offering the obsequial rites to the manes if he worships (lord) Krsna with devotion. One does not get ruined by intensive contemplation of (lord) Visnu, who is the cause of all things.

7. A person whose mind has been drawn towards the objects arising from defects due to other rituals, gets released from sins, even after doing a sin, by contemplating (lord) Govinda (Kr/sna).

8. It is contemplation where there is Govinda. It is a narrative where there is Kesava. That is an action which is devoted to Him. What is the use of others which are repeatedly spoken about.

9. He is not a father who fails to describe this supreme knowledge spoken by me to the son and he is not a preceptor who fails to impart (this) to his pupil.

10. Oh Twice-born! One could get a son, wife, wealth, prosperity, friends and other things by wandering in this world, but not this knowledge.

1. explained below.
11. What is the use of son and wife? What (comes out of) friend, land and relatives? Such knowledge is the supreme relative, which liberates a person.

12. There are two courses for the beings—divine and demoniac. Constant devotion to (lord) Viṣṇu is divine and the contrary is demoniac.

13. This, which has been expounded to you, is sacred, healthy, praise-worthy, capable of destroying bad dreams, giving pleasure and satisfaction and liberation to men.

14. In whatever houses transcripts of the Āgneyapurāṇa are kept, disturbances never approach them.

15. What is the good of pilgrimages, or making gifts of cows, or sacrificial rites or fasting, when people hear the Āgneya (purāṇa) daily?

16. A person who gives a praṣṭha (measure) of sesamum or a māṣa (weight) of gold, would obtain equal (merit) by listening to one verse of the Agni (Purāṇa).

17. The reading of a chapter of this (Purāṇa) is more commendable than making a gift of a cow. A sin done in the course of a day and night by a person is destroyed by his desire to listen to this (Purāṇa).

18. (The benefit) that would accrue by making a gift of hundred tawny cows at Puṣkara¹ in (the month of) Jyeṣṭha (June-July), that benefit would be obtained by reading the Āgneyapurāṇa.

19. The piety of two kinds—being engaged and being withdrawn—does not become equal to this sacred text of Agnipurāṇa.

20. O Vasiṣṭha! A devoted man would get liberated from all sins by either reading the Agnipurāṇa daily or listening to it.

21-22. Where there is a copy of the Agnipurāṇa, in that house there would not be any difficulty, mishap or fear of theft, or fear of miscarriage of foetus, or possession of children by the spirits. There would not be the fear of the evil spirits and the like, where there is (a copy of) the Agnipurāṇa.

23. By listening to this (purāṇa), a brahmin would become learned in the Veda-s, a kṣatriya (would be) a monarch, a vaśya would gain wealth and a śūdra would get health.

¹ A holy place of pilgrimage in Rajasthan.
24-25. O Brahmin! A devotee of Viṣṇu, having equanimity would get all his afflictions destroyed by reading or listening to the Agnipurāṇa. (Lord) Keśava would destroy all the misfortunes that would be celestial, terrestrial or earthly such as bad dreams, evil incantations and other mishaps (of such a person).

26-28. The reading or listening to the text is more meritorious for a man than performing a sacrificial rite. A person who listens to the sacred Agnipurāṇa in the Hemanta (early winter) after offering worship with perfumes and flowers would get the benefit of (performing) Agnistoma (rite). (A person would get the benefit of performing) the Puṇḍarīka (rite) in Śisira (advanced winter), Asvamedha (rite) in the spring, Vājapeya (rite) in the summer and Rājasūya in the rainy season. (One would get) the benefit (of making a gift) of thousand cows in the autumn by reading this (Purāṇa).

29. O Vasiṣṭha! He who devoutly recites the Agnipurāṇa in front of (lord) Hari, would be deemed as worshipping (lord) Keśava with the rite of knowledge.

30. He who has a book of the Agnipurāṇa in his house would be victorious. In whose house the transcribed (Purāṇa) is worshipped, (that person) has enjoyment and emancipation on his hand.

31. Thus (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu) has expounded to me in days of yore in the form of the destructive fire at the end of the world. The Agneyapurāṇa consists of two sorts of knowledge. O Vasiṣṭha! You would impart to the devotees these two kinds of knowledge.

Vasiṣṭha said:

32-33a. O Vyāsa! I have narrated to you the Agneyapurāṇa, consisting of two sorts of knowledge, obtained from (lord) Viṣṇu, the Supreme Brahman, and as expounded to me by Agni (Fire-god) in the presence of the celestials and sages. It makes everything known.

33b-35a. O Vyāsa! He who reads or listens to or writes or causes to write or causes to listen to or causes to read or worships or carries this Agnipurāṇa, known as the Brahman and expounded by Agni (Fire-god) in days of yore, would be liberated from all sins and would attain heaven after obtaining the desires.
35b-36. After having caused the excellent Purāṇa to be copied, he who gives (the copies) to brahmins, would attain the world of Brahmā and elevate hundreds of his family. He who reads a verse (from this Purāṇa) would become free from the mire of sin.

37-38. Hence, O Vyāsa! This Purāṇa making everything explicit should always be read to the disciples in the company of the sages such as Śuka and others who are desirous of hearing. The Agneya-(purāṇa) read and contemplated would be auspicious and confer enjoyment and emancipation. Obeisance to that Fire-god who has sung the Purāṇa.

Vyāsa said:

39-44a. O Sūta (redactor): This Agneya-(purāṇa) which is of the form of para and aparā vidyā and the supreme position was sung by (sage) Vasiṣṭha in days of yore and it has been expounded to you by me. The fortunate ones would attain a form difficult to get. Those who meditate upon this Agneyapurāṇa, the Brahman, would reach (lord) Hari. Those who seek knowledge (would get) knowledge. Those who wish for kingdom would obtain kingdom. Those without progeny get children. Those without resort would reach a resort. Those who seek fortune and those who desire for liberation get them. Those who transcribe and those who cause it to be transcribed become sinless and gain fortune. O Sūta! Think of the form of the Agneyapurāṇa (expounded) by Śuka, Paila and others. There is no doubt that you would gain enjoyment and emancipation. You recite the Purāṇa to the disciples and devotees.

Sūta said:

44b-47a. I have heard the Agneyapurāṇa with respect by the favour of Vyāsa. The Agni (purāṇa) is a manifestation of the Supreme Brahman. You and other sages such as Śaunaka and others had worshipped lord Hari in the Naimiśa forest. They were steadfast. The Agnipurāṇa is spoken by Agni and conforms to the Vedas. This (Purāṇa) endowed with the two (sorts of) brahma-vidyā confers enjoyment and emancipation.

47b-51. There is nothing richer in substance than this. Nothing is a better friend than this. There is no greater work
than this. There is no better course than this. There is no
greater treatise than this. There is no greater scripture than this.
There is no superior knowledge than this. There is no smṛti
(textbook of piety) than this. No āgama (texts dealing with
worship) is superior to this. No knowledge is greater than this.
No exposition excels this. There is nothing extremely auspicious
excelling this. No philosophic exposition is greater than this.
This is the foremost Purāṇa. There is no object more difficult to
obtain than this on the earth. All the lores have been expounded
in this Purāṇa.

52. All the manifestations (of lord Viṣṇu) such as the fish
and the like, Gītā, Rāmāyāṇa ((epic story of Rāma), Hūrvaṃśa
(Account of the successors of lord Kṛṣṇa), Bhārata (the legend
of the patricidal war between the Kauravas and Pāṇḍavas)
and fresh creation have been described.

53-55. The vaiṣṇava āgama (mode of worship relating to
Viṣṇu) such as worship, initiation and installation (of the idol),
investiture with the sacred thread, the characteristic of the
idols and temples etc. and formulae yielding enjoyment and
emancipation, texts dealing with worship relating to Śaivite
gods and their substance, (the worship) of the goddess and
Sun, different circles, vāstu (relating to the ground), different
types of formulae and secondary creation of the primordial egg
and the like have been sung.

56. The geography of the world with the continents,
mountain ranges and rivers and the greatness of the sacred
places of pilgrimage such as Gayā, Gaṅgā, Prayāga etc. have
been told.

57. The galaxy of stars, astronomy and prognostication for
victory in battle have been described. The different periods of
Manu and the duties of different classes of men have been
explained.

58. Pollutions, purification of things and expiations have
been explained. The duties of kings, the making of gifts and
different kinds of austerities have been described.

59-60. Disputes, appeasing rites, the application (of the
formulae) of the Rgveda etc., the Solar and Lunar dynasties,
archery, medical science, science of music, statecraft, mimāṃsā (inquiry), nyāya (logic), the greatness and number of Purāṇa-s, prosody and grammar have been explained.

61. Poetics, lexicography, phonetics and rules relating to performance of rites have been described. The casual, natural, and absolute destructions have been explained.

62. Vedānta is said to be the knowledge about Brahman and yoga as having eight constituents. The eulogy, greatness of the Purāṇas and the eighteen lores have been expounded.

63. The Rgveda etc. (are known to be) the parāvidyā (that which has something superior to it) and the aparāvidyā (that which has nothing superior to it) is the undecaying Supreme Brahman. The form of Brahman is said to be cosmic and acosmic.

64. This Purāṇa (having an extent) of fifteen thousand (verses)¹ is always read by the celestials in the celestial world as having one hundred crore (verses).

65. Fire-god has sung it here after shortening it for the sake of the welfare of the world. O Sages, Āsaṅkha and others! You know that all the things (are manifestations of) Brahman.

66. One may listen to, cause to be heard, read, cause to be read, transcribe, cause to be transcribed, worship or sing (its glory).

67-68. The king should take effort to honour the reader of this Purāṇa. After having honoured him by (making) gifts of cows, land and gold and the satiating gifts of clothes and ornaments, one would get the fruits of listening to (the recitation of) the Purāṇa. At the end of (the reading of) the Purāṇa, the twice-born must be fed.

69-71. (He who does as above) would become spotless, gain all the riches and attain heaven along with his ancestors. He who gives leaves (paper) for (copying) the book, thread for stitching together the leaves and the cloth for binding would attain heaven. He who gives (the book as a gift) would

1. But this Purāṇa here contains about 8000 verses only.
reach the world of Brahmā. He who has the book in his house does not have the fear due to portents. (Such a person) would get enjoyment and emancipation. You all remember the Āgneyapuṣṭa as a form of the lord. After having been honoured by them (Śaunaka and others) Sūta went away and Śaunaka and others reached (lord) Hari.
INDEX

Abala, a deity, installation of, 172
abdhi, refers to a herb, 407
abdominal disorder, remedy for, 767
abduction, of captives, punishment for, 681
abhāna, a popular saying, 932
abhāva, explanation of the term, 1027
abhaya, one of the postures of the hand, 857
abhaya, one of the Pranita-mudras, 857
Abhijit, an asterism, 385, 388
abhijit, a muhūrta, division of a day, 371
Abhikṛti, classical metre based on, 914
Abhimanyu, son of Arjuna and Subhadra, 751; birth of, 33
Abhimanyu, one of the ten sons of Manu and Nādvān, 42
Abhivyakti, an embellishment of sound and sense, 942
two divisions of, śruti and ākṣepa, 943
further divisions of; sub-divisions of, 943
abscess, commendable remedy to ripen, 756
remedy to open and heal, 756
remedy for, 767
type of food commended when one suffers, 756
abuses, punishment for different kinds of, 675-76
acala, an array; optionally formed, 635
ācamana, sipping of water, 69, 69fn.
ācārya, explanation of the term, 1017
acceptance, words for, 991
actions, need for abandoning, 1074
Acyuta, denoting lord Viṣṇu; propagation of, 50
Acyuta, form of Viṣṇu on Mahendra hill, 842
Acyuta, a sālagrama, 125
Adbhuta, Indra, during the period of ninth Manu, 428
Adbhutopamā, explanation of, 940
adhahpuṣpā, herb, 406
ādhama, a measure, 265
(agni) ādhama, a havyayajña, 86
Adharma, married Hiṁsā, a daughter of Dakṣa, 49
adhibhūta, explanation of the term, 1069
adhidaiyati, explanation of the term, 1069
adhiyakaraṇa, four kinds of; explanation of, 971
a fifth variety of, 971
adhiśvara, significance of the term, 1018
adhyayāmā, explanation of the term, 1069
adhyāvāhanika, a division of property of women, 541
adhyāma, explanation of the term, 1069
adhyāvāhanika, a division of property of women, 541
Ādigaḍāḍhara, name of Viṣṇu, 334
Ādigaḍāḍhara, on the worship of, 343, 344
Āḍināthas, eight, 412
Aditi, wife of Kaśyapa, 8, 85
Aditi, manifested as Devaki, 744
Aditi, worship of, 274, 317
Adityas, (twelve) 45
images of, 314
consecration of, 180
on the worship of, 343
ride the chariot of Sun, 356
adrśa, fear known as, 1019
Adraṣṭanāma, a form of Rudra, 252
Adraṣṭarūpa, a form of Rudra, 252
adyatn, measure of, 313
Agastyā, sage, 15, 24
reason for being called as ‘born of pitcher’, 535
mode of offering libation to, 535-7
should be worshipful, 339
at Gayā, 341
agent, five kinds of, 970
Aghamāraṇa, sage of aghamāraṇa hymn, 437
aghamāraṇa (ṣūkta), 53, 437
efficiency of the repetition of, 482
Aghāsī, worshipped, 414
Aghora, the mantra of the weapons of; six constituents of, 887-91
collection of formulae of; precedes
the appeasing rite for Śiva, 891-92
weapon of; the efficacy of repeating the mantra relating to, 885
weapon of; as an excellent formula, 892
aghorastra, accessory rites relating to, 885
Aghoramukhi, synonym of Kubjikā, 413
aging, tonic for, 769
āgneya, kṛttikā; commended for copulation, 434
Āgneyakalpa, a kalpa period, 733
āgneyakṛcchra, expiation of eating sesame for twelve nights, 483
āgneyamantras, characteristics of and effects of, 802-3
Āgneya (Agni)purāṇa, spoken by Agni, 2
extent of, 733
consists of two kinds of knowledge, 1079
as a form of the lord, 1083
as a form of parā and aparā vidyā, 1080
as the essence of Vedas, 731
the greatness of, 731
greatness of hearing and reading, 491, 492, 1078
merits of having transcripts of, 1078
should be copied and given as a gift in Mārgaśīrṣa, 733
merits of making a copy and giving as a gift, 1079
merits of meditating on, 1080
(See also Agnipurāṇa)
Āgneyi, wife of Īru, 42
āgneyi, one of the dhāraṇas; explanation of, 1050
Agni (fire), synonyms of, 987-8
Agni, progeny of Dhiṣañā of the family of, 43
Agni, birth of Kumāra to, 44
and Svāhā, sons of, 49
direction presided over by, 55
propitiation of, 176
worshipped, 51
image of, 106, 137, 314
agni (three), herb denoted by, 408
Agnibhū, son of King Priyavrata, 322
Agnibhū, sage, 428
Agnidhāra, at Gayā, 344
Agnidhra, ruler of Jambūdvipa, 322
Agnidhrk, a goddess, 133
agnihatra, a haviryajña, 86, 466
included under istsa, 539
Agnipurāṇa, Vasishṭha’s request to the Fish to narrate, 3
extent given as fifteen thousand verses, 1082
abridgement of that in the, celestial region having one hundred crore verses, 1082
as a manifestation of Viśṇu, 731
as a manifestation of the Supreme Brahman, 1080
the matters described in, 1081-1082
is more meritorious than piety, 1078
nothing greater than, 1080-1
merits of reciting the, 1079
the merits of listening to in different seasons, 1078, 1079
(See also Āgneyapurāṇa)
Agniṣṭoma, a somasamsthā, 86, 466, 1079
description of, 64
worshipped, 79
Agniṣṭū, a son of Manu and Nādvalā, 42
Agniṣvattāh, birth of the manes, 49
prayer to, 336
Agnivarca, a disciple of Lomaharṣana, 730
Agnivratī, explanation of, 524
agnyādheya, a haviryajña, 466
agrahāyani, a sacrifice, 466
agrahāyanychiti, a haviryajña, 466
agraṇi, a pākayaṛjña, 86
Ayodhyā, city of, 15
Āhalyā, was married by Śaradvata, 750
Ahamākara, origin of, 40
āhavaniyapada, at Gayā, 339
Ahi, a karaṇa (Nāga), 369
ahi, a variety of serpent; remedy for poison due to, 818
Ahirbudhnya, born to Sati, 45
ahisaṇcāri, an array; a variation of the array bhoga, 634
Aihanāva, son of Devânika; son of, 738
Āhuka, son of Puruvasu; son of, 742
Āhuk, wife of Puruvasu, 742
Āila, Purūrasva; born to Budha, 31
aṅdava, a kind of fire, 205
Aindri, image of, 133
prayer to, 399
Airavata, Indra’s elephant made ruler of elephants, 47
worshipped, 91
aiśāni, one of the dhāraṇas; explanation of, 1050-1
Aiśvara, a Pāṭcaratratantra spoken by Satya, 106
aja, denotes Brahmā, 49
Aja, son of Dilipa; son of, 737
Aja, son of Rāghu, 9
Ajāikapāda, born to Satī, 45
Ajākṣaśva, son of Jānū; son of, 749
Ajāmiḍha, one of the sons of Bṛhat, 749
Ajāmiḍha, had Nilini as wife; son of, 749
Ajāmiḍha, father of Rkṣa; Dhūminī was the wife of, 750
Ajāpā, gāyatrī known as; greatness of, 557-8
Ajāpāla, son of Kāla, 737
Ajīna, son of Havirdhāna and Dhiṣanā, 43
Ajīta, a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 428
form of Viṣṇu at Viṣākhayūpa, 841
Ajītā, goddess, 375
Ajītā, a stone, 269
Ajīnārūpa, a deity; worship of, 414
Ajīyapāḥ, class of manes; prayer to, 336
Akampana, a demon killed by Nila, 22
Akārśaṇa, one of the acts, 403
Akāśagāṇḍa, at Gayā, 341
Akāśāṃśa, goddesses, 375
Akāśarevati, prayer to goddess, 399
akhaṇḍadhvādaśī, mode of practising the vow of, 514-5
Ākhyānīki, characteristics of he metre, 910
Ākhyāyikā, narrative 992
a division of the prose kāvya; characteristics of, 919
Akṛṣṭāśva, one of the two sons of Saṁhatāśva, 737
Akṛṣṭā, son of Śvapadhakaka; son of, 744

the syamantaka was entrusted by Kṛṣṇa to, 743
praised Kṛṣṇa, 27
akṣa, herb denoted by, 407
akṣa, demon prince, 20
Akṣarapaṅkti, a variety of Paṅkti; composition of, 904
Akṣararadā, a goddess, 133
akṣauhini, a unit of army, 33
Akṣaya, a year of the Hindu almanac, 405
Akṣaya, a form of Rudra, 252
Akṣayā, image of, 138
Ākṣepa, a division of Abhivyakti; explanation of; also known as Dhvani, 943
akṣi, herb, 407
Akṣobhyā, image of, 138

Alaghu, a sage born to Vasiṣṭha and Urjā, 49
Alakanandā, a river, 925
alambuṣa, a vein; carries the wind krkara, 556
āliḍha, a posture relating to archery, 133, 645
alliteration, when conceived as charming, 935
Amara, a form of Rudra, 253
amara, an array; reverse of śakaṭa, certain features same as maṇḍala, 685
Amaraṁakṣata, 331
Amarśa, letter denoting, 418
Amarśeśvara, a siddha; worship of, 415
amāvasyā, means near 990
Ambālikā, a daughter of Kāśirāja, 31
Ambariṣa, son of Nābhāga, 736
a son of Vaivasvata Manu; son of, 737
was a devotee of Viṣṇu, 736
ambariṣa, a hell, 532
Ambikā, denotes goddess Durgā, 26, 215
letter denoting, 417
Ambikā, daughter of Kāśirāja, 31,
Ambikāya, a boundary mountain, 352
ambrosia, rise of Dhanvantari with, 6
Ambuja, one of the bandhas, 936
Ambujāśvara, a Rudra, 253
āmikṣā, explanation of, 1017
Amogha, a female divinity, 51
Amoghapada, at Gayā, 341
Āmrītakāśvara, place at Vārānasi, 330
Āmrīṛita, one of the yamakas, 935
amṛta (ambrosia), synonyms of, 987
amṛtā, one of the Praṇītamudrās, 857
Amṛtā, a female energy, 136
Amṛtadārā, characteristics of the metre, 909
amṛtāmudrā, 200
amṛtāmkī, one of the dhāraṇas; explanation of, 1051
amṛтивidyā, description of, 870
Āṅśu, one of the twelve Ādityas, 45
Āṅśumān, son of Asamaṇḍa; son of, 737
Āṅkha (prologue), explanation of; also called Prastāvanā, 922
three divisions of, 922
amulet, protective, 395
Anādīvimala, one of the gods to be worshipped, 412, 415
Ānandra, one of the foremost sons of Viṣṇu, 747
Anagha, different reading for Alaghu, 49fn.
Anala, one of the Vasus, 44
Anala, a boundary mountain, 352
Anamitra, descendant of Dr̥ṣṭa; Śini as born from, 743
Anamitra, son of Nighna; son of, 737
(wrongly given as son of Ananarya)
Ānanda, a guard of the doors to be worshipped, 93
a deity to be worshipped, 414
one of the Pāñcarātra tantras, 106
one of the sons of Medhātithi, 351
anāṅgatrayodāśi, on the practice of the vow of; for god of love, 515-6
Ananta, serpent, 50, 55, 63
image of, 137
propitiation of, 176
worshipped, 414
letter denoting, 418
Balabhadra was a form of, 37
a Rudra, 263
form of Viṣṇu at Saindhava, 842
name of a fālagrāma, 125, 126
son of Vitihotra; son of, 741
anantadvādaśī, on the practice of, 513
Ananarya, son of Kalmāśapāda; son of, 737
Anarka, son of Vatsa; son of, 749
Ānarta, a son of Śaryāti; Kuśasthali as the domain of, 736
son of Viṣṇu; son of, 749
anāśra, a perfection, 257
Anasūyā, wife of sage Atri, 8, 15, 49
anātha, a perfection, 257
ancestral rites, at Gayā, mode of performing, 345-50
anchorite, duties of, 452
Aṇḍita, a division of Viṣṇu, 928
Aṇḍhaka, a demon, reference to his attack on Śiva, 746
killed by Viṣṇu, 745
one of the sons of Sātvata, 742
Aṇḍhakāraka, a son of Dyutimat 352; mountain named after, 352
Aṇḍhakas, a division of Yādavas, 736
Aṇḍhatāmśra, sub-division of a hell, 1039
Aṇḍhra, a country, 387
Aṅga, one of the sons of Ur and Āgneyi, 42
one of the sons of Bali, 747
lineage of, 746-7
son of, 748
country, 640
Aṅgada, son of Vālin, 19, 20, 21
aṅgamantras, details relating to use of, 806
Aṅgāraka, a planet; worship of, 52
Aṅgārakāśvara, at Gayā, 343
Aṅgirā (Aṅgirasa), a year of the Hindu almanac, 404
Aṅgiras, sage, 41, 42fn, 112
married two daughters of Daśa, 44
Aṅgiras, progeny of, 49
Aṅgiras, excellence of progeny of, 45
a law-giver, 455
one of the sons of Īru and Āgneyī, 42
aṅgula, a measure, 107, 119, 140, 261
Anila, one of the Vasus, 44
animals, words denoting different species of, 1012
life periods of certain, 465
Aniruddha, a form of Vāsudeva, 62-91
image of, 130
installation of image of, 172
worship with the mantra of, 68
a fālagrāma, 125, 126
son of Pradyumna, fond of war, 29
fight with Bāṇa, 30
father of Vajra, 37
the Yādavas, Vajra and others as sons of, 745
Anyamopamā, explanation of, 940
Aṇjali, a posture of the hand, 66
a measure, 1037
Aṇka, a type of drama, 921
aṇka, a unit relating to elephant-force in the army, 632
aṇkuśa, one of the postures of the hand, 246, 258, 857
annaprāśana, rite of, 59
anointment, for the preceptor, mode of doing, 74
disciple, 263-4
Antardhāna, a son of Prthu; progeny of, 43
Antikā, a divine mother, 412
Anrta, born to Adharma and Hariśa, 49
Anu, one of the sons of Yayāti and Śarmiṣṭhā, 25, 740
anudāta, a division of the sound, 917
anugraha, the eighth creation, 48
Anugraha, an energy, 112
anugraha-cakra, a mystic diagram conferring grace, 869-70
Anugrahīṣa, letter denoting, 418
Anuvṛtā, one of the sons of Hiriṇya-kāṣipu, 46
anukalpa, that which is inferior to mukhya, 1018
Anumati, one of the sons of Aṅgiras and Śmṛti, 49
anumati, a digit less than the full moon, 990
anurūṣa, an embellishment of word, 932
anurādhā, an asterism, 360, 361, 363, 381, 382, 383, 388, 400
Anuṣṭubh, a metre, 562, 902
tawny coloured; belongs to Gau-
tamagotra, 905
the number of letters in each pāda of
903
Anyasyopamā, explanation of, 941
Āpa, one of the Vasus, 44
apādāna, two kinds of, calam and
acalam, explanation of, 971
Apahnuti, concealment of something
conveying another sense, 944
apāna, functions of, 556
equated with the night, 557
Aparājitā, one of the Rudras, 45
Aparājīta, a goddess, 375
a herb, 410
a stone, 269
characteristics of the metre, 913
Aparāntikā, characteristics of the
metre, 907
Aparavakra, characteristics of the
metre, 910
Aparāvidyā, explanation of, 2-3, 1082
Āpastamba, a law-giver, 455
Apavāhaka, characteristics of the
metre, 914
Apavatsa, one of the deities to be
worshipped, 108, 317
Āpīḍa, characteristics of the metre,
909
appetite, loss of, remedy for, 773
application, that breaks the army of
others, 394
Aprasuta-stotra, explanation of, 943
apsaras, celestial maiden, 356
Aptoryāma, a sacrificial rite, 64, 79,
86
Aquarius—a zodiacal sign, 384, 392
Ārabṛhati, one of the modes; abounds
in trickery, witchcraft, war etc.;
three varieties of, 928
ārānyaka, section of Sāmaveda, 730
Arbuda, a sacred place, 327
archers, the units of army needed to
protect, 653
archery, description of the sciences
of, 645-7
five different kinds of, 645
different postures relating to, 645-7
instructions relating to the use of
bow and arrow, 646-7
details relating to science of, 647-8
preceptor in, 645
time for imparting, 359
Ardhaharmāṇa, one of the bandhas,
936
ardhacandraka, an array; formed
from divisions of vajra, 634
Ardhajalēśvara, letter denoting, 419
Ardhāṅśaka, letter denoting, 418
Ardhanārīśvara, installation of image
of, 172
ārdrā, an asterism, 359, 360, 363, 376,
381, 382, 383, 400
argabhāṇḍa, section on storing grains,
387
Ārhatā (Jaina), reference to Viṣṇu be-
coming an, 38
ari, relating to the letters in the name
of the votary, 390, 391, 895
Aries, a constellation, 378, 384, 385,
392
Arimejaya, one of the sons of Kuru,
750
Ariṣṭa, demon killed by Kṛṣṇa, 27
Ariṣṭā, mother of Gandharvas, 47
Ariṣṭanemin, married the four daugh-
ters of Daksā, 44
progeny of, 45
Arjuna, born to Kunti from god
īndra, 744
birth of, 32
son of, 751
conquest of Kurus by, 33
fought on the words of Kṛṣṇa, 34
commanded the Pāṇḍava forces, 35
fall of, 37
Arjuna: See Kārtavīryārjuna
Arjuna, a tree, 27
a flower, 529
Arka, denotes Sun; worship of, 215,
316
arka, denotes a herb, 406
arka (white), a herb; used in charm,
406
a flower for worshipping lord Harṣa,
529
armoured men, duties of, 613
armours, different kinds of, 649
army, the composition of, 621
words denoting the arrangement
of, 1019
six divisions of, 629
six other divisions of, 630
array for a marching 630
different kinds of arrangement of,
612
defects of, 626-7
number of vulnerable points of an,
633
the mode of attacking an, 634
array(s), different kinds of, 612, 633;
other kinds of, 635
five parts of, 612
seven parts of, 633
three divisions of, 633
Agni Purāṇa

of army; different types of, 630
the king should never be in, 612
king should arrange the army in an,
632
of other kinds of different shapes, 634
structures may be modified by omit-
ting one or two wings, 634
arrow, excellent kind of, 647
characteristic features of, 639
the materials for making, 639
ārśa, a type of marriage, 434
arthā, homa that confers, 53
Arthāntaranyāsa, one of the similari-
ties, 939
explanation of, 941
arthāpatti, explanation of the term, 1027
artha-prakṛti, five divisions of, 922
Arthaśāstra, science of, 3
artisana, words denoting different, 1023
Aruṇa, born to Vinatā, 46
younger brother of Sun, 51
a Paścarātra text, 106
brahmins in Kuśadvipa, 352
Arundhati, progeny of, 44
Aruṇoda, a lake, 325
arvāgbijas, mantras having more
than ten letters and less than twelve,
yield result in old age, 802
arvākrotas, creation known as, 48
Āryā, metre; characteristics of, 906
Ārya, a name of Durgā, 26
Āryagīti, characteristics of the metre,
906
Āryakas, a class of men in Plakṣa-
dvipa, 351
Āryaman, one of the Suns, 43, 136
offering made to, 275
requested to accept offering, 336
Asādharanopama, explanation of, 941
Āṣādha, an asterism, 382
Āṣādha, the four asterisms, 383
Āṣādha, a month, 386
Āṣālī, letter denoting, 419
asahya, a modification of the array
called daṇḍa, 633
array formed by adding two flanks,
634
Asamañjasā, born to Sagara and
Bhānumati by the grace of sage
Aurva, son of, 737
Asamañjas, son of Kambalabarhis,
sons of, 743
Asāmayikatva, a defect of word, 947
Asambādha, characteristics of the
metre, 913
asanghata, an array; description of,
633
āsana, explanation of the term, 1044
asānghata, an array; six units taken
from and combined (for a battle),
634
Āsātpralāpa, a division of Vithi, 928
ascetic, words denoting, 1018
duties of, 452-5
Āśi, a river, 330
Āśidhanya, one of the sixteen sid-
dhas, 414
asipatravana, a forest in hell, 531
subdivision of a hell, 1039
asitā, a lightning, 45fn.
Āśleṣā, an asterism, 359, 360, 363,
376, 381, 382, 385, 388, 400
Āsoka, grove at Laṅkā, 16
Sīta found by Hanumāt at, 19
Āsoka, a minister of King Daśaratha,
11
āsoka, a flower, 529
āsokapuruṣimā, vow on a full-moon
day, 518-9
ass and other animals, mantra for the
removal of poison due to, 819
assault, explanation of the term, 655
assembly, words signifying member
of, 1017
Āṣṭaka, name of Śunaḥsēpa, 749
āṣṭakā, a sacrifice 86, 466
Āstārapaṅkti, a variety of Paṅkti;
composition of, 904
Āṣṭāvakra, a brāhmin, 37
curse on the nymphs made by, 37 fn.
asterisms, letters denoting, 400
words denoting, 989
actions appropriate to, 381
adverse for serving the employer, 360
auspicious for entering a new house,
360
beneficial for undertaking a pilgrim-
age, 360
causing adversity, 360
causing profit, 360
commendable for marriage. 357
commended for copulation, 434
commended for taking harvest grains
inside the house, 361
commended for harvesting grains,
361
diagram of; relating to beginning
a journey, 400
down faced, 381
evil. 381
favourable for a person to return,
382
favourable for seeing a sovereign,
360
fixed, movable and commendable,
381
for constructing a house, 360
forbidden for entering the cow-pen, 361
for hoisting and lowering of banner of Indra, 362
friendly etc., 362
good for agriculture, 361
good for sowing seeds, 361
good for gathering hay, 360
good or bad; combinations of, 380-2
good for taking out the grains, 361
increasing the heap of grains, 361
lateral faced, 381
malignant relating to snake-bite, 808
new purchases prohibited under certain, 359
not commended for grazing the cows, 360
suited for giving or taking or depositing, 360
to be avoided for wearing new clothes, 359
vows relating to different, 520
the names of the presiding deities of, 805
āsthāpana, explanation of, 267
asthma, food for a patient suffering from, 753
Aṣṭi, name of a metre, 905
Aṣṭi, daughter of Jarāsandha and wife of Kaśya, 28
astrology, essence of 372-74; as the lord Hari, 492
aśūnyaśayana, a vow, 498-99
āśura, a type of marriage, 435
āsuras, 34, 35, 38
Aśvalalita, characteristics of the metre, 914
Aśvamedha, a sacrifice, 23, 36, 86, 327, 390, 474, 1079
Aśvapada, one of the varieties of Gomūtrikābandha, 937
aśvattha, tree, 92
Aśvathāman, killed the Pāṇḍava soldiers, 35
survived the Bhārata war, 36
āśvayuji, a sacrificial rite, 86, 466
Aśvāyu, a son of Purūravas, 739
Aśvina, month of, 360
Aśvini, an asterism, 358, 359, 360, 362, 363, 381, 382, 385, 386, 387, 400
is of the shape of a horse, 384
Aśvini Kumāra, birth of Nakula and Sahadeva through, 32
Aśvins, worship of, 180
Aṭala, a nether world, 353
Aṭaladevi, goddess to be invoked, 413
aṭarūṣabhava, a flower, 529
Aṭharvāsūri (Mundakopaniṣad), 1
Aṭharvāsāyani, a branch of sāma-
veda, 730
Aṭharvaveda, an Aparāvidyā, 2
sacred for Soma, 93
use of the hymns of, 707-710
hymns to be recited by the follower of, 287
branches of, 730
assigned on the palms, 64
āṭibāḷā, a herb, 371, 378
Aṭicāṇḍikā, a goddess, 132
Aṭidhṛī, name of a metre, 905
metre based on, 914
atigāṇḍa, an impediment, 383
Aṭighorā, a hell, 1038
Aṭijagati, name of a metre, 905
a metre to be employed in composing a Mahākāvya, 920
metres belonging to the class of, 913
Aṭikāya, demon, 22
āṭikṛcchra, an expiation, 479, 486, 487
explanation of, 494
to be observed three fortnights after death, 488
aṭilohitā, one of the four kinds of lightning, 45 fn.
atimukta, a flower, 329
Atimuktaka, one of the siddhas, 414
Atirātā, a goddess, 230
Atirātra, a sacrifice, 42, 64, 79, 86, 466
Aṭisākvari, name of a metre, 905
used in the Mahākāvya, 920
aṭisāntapanā, an expiation, explanation of, 483
aṭisāya (exaggeration), an embellishment of sense, 939
Aṭisāyokti, explanation of, 941
Aṭithi, son of Kuśa; son of, 738
āṭodyam, a kind of musical instrument, 994
atonements, different kinds of, 474-78, for ascetics, 455
for minor sins, 474-5
(See also expiations)
Āṭreya, a Pāṇcarātra tantra 106
Āṭreya, the infallible composition propounded by, 778
Atri, sage born from Brahmā, 25, 31, 41 42 fn., 738
Atri, a law-giver, 455
progeny of, 31, 49
Dattātreya as son of, 8
bowed to by Rāma, 15
protected the celestials, 746
attachment, actions done with; to be transformed as those of non-attachment, 1074
attendants, the king should choose what type of, 619
Aṭyagniṣṭoma, a sacrifice, 79, 86, 466
Aṭyaṣṭi, name of a metre, 905
Atyuktā, a metre; number of letters in, 905
Aucitya, an embellishment of sound and sense
   explanation of, 942
audārya, a kind of fire, 205
audgātra, priest for Sāmans, 429
audumbra, a tree, 92
auguries, auspicious and inauspicious, 597
   good and bad; known from sounds of animals and birds, 598-600
Aupacārīka, a division of Abhivyakti, explanation of, 943
Aupachandasaka, characteristics of the metre, 907
Aurva, a sage; was pleased by King Sagara, 737
austerities, the gains of doing, 1074
āvāhāni, a posture made with the hands, 898
Avalagita, a division of Vithi, 928
Āvantayayas, one of the five branches of Hāihayas, 741
Avanti, a country, 387
Avantikā, a sacred place, 328, 491
Avapāta, a variety of Ārbaḥati, 928
āvasthya, fire, 399
avastika-khagda, a type of temple, 315
Avasyandita, a division of Vithi, 928
avighnācaturthi, a vow; details relating to, 503
Avijñāta, son of Analà, a Vasu, 44
Avimukta, name of Vārāṇasī, 330
   greatness of, 327
Avipāṣatvatva, a defect of word, 947
Avayayibhāva (compound), two kinds of, examples of, 975
Āyā, a deity, 317
Aydhyā, city, decoration of, 11
   return of the people to, 13
Rāma's return to, 23
   greatness of 328, 491
   destruction of, 387
Āyogava, caste, 430
   duty of, 431
Āyuurveda, science of, 6
Āyus, son of Viśvagāva, 736
Āyus, born from Purūravas, 25, 31
   sons of, 739
Āyuṣmat, a son of Hrada, 46
Babhrut, a form of Rudra, 252
   was born from Devavṛdha; glory of, four sons of, 742
Babhrusetu, son of Gāndhāra; son of, 747
Badarikārāma, a place, 1
Bāhu, son of Vṛka; son of, 737
Bahudāna, a year of the Hindu alma-
   nac, 404
Bāhyāśvā, son of Purujāti; progeny of, 749
Bahūpamā, explanation of, 940
Bahuputra, married two daughters of Dakṣa, 44
   lightnings, as four daughters of, 45
Bahirūpā, one of the Rudras, 45
Bahirūpā, a goddess, 230
Bahirūśva, son of Sundhu; son of, 748
Bahuvrihi (compound), formation of, 975
Bāhya, one of the four sons of, 742
Baka, demon, 32, 32fn
   letter denoting, 419
   a variety of beads belonging to Jyoti class, 894
Bala, one of the seven sons of Suhotra and Girikā, 750
balā, a herb, 371, 378, 407
bālā, a formula consisting of twenty letters, 895
installation of image denoting, 172
Balabhadra, denotes Balarāma; progeny of, 29, 30
   a form of Ananta; returned to original place, 37
   merits of worshipping, 343
Baladeva (Balarāma), married Revati, daughter of Raivata, 736
   Kṛṣṇa entrusted the gem to Akrūra
   in the presence of, 743
bālāgra, a measure, 107
Balāhaka, a boundary mountain, 352
Balākāśva, son of Ajakaśva; son of, 749
Balākehī, image of goddess, 138
Balākhiyās, 60000 in number of the size of a thumb; born to Kratu and Sannatī, 49
Balapramathini, a goddess, .51, 201
Balarāma, one of the sons of Vasudeva and Rohini, 744
   origin of; reasons for being known as Saṅkarṣaṇa, 26fn
   was entrusted to the custody of Nanda, 27
   reached Gomantaka from Mathurā
   28
   killed the demon Pralamba, 30, 30fn
   figure of, 130
   assigned and worshipped, 56
   synonyms of, 986
bālāva, a karaṇa, 362, 369fn
Balavikārini, a goddess, 51, 201
Bālākika, one of the sons of Saṅtanu; sons of, 751
Balī, Indra at the time of eighth Manu, 428
Balī a demon, the story relating to Viṣṇu's manifestation as a dwarf to
subdue, 8, 745
son of Virocana, 8fn;
reference to subdual of, 82
father of Bāna, 29
had hundred sons, 46
to be paid obeisance at Gayā, 341
son of Sutapā; sons of, 747
the name of a temple, 318
Balikā, the spirit possessing the child in the twelfth year; symptoms of the child possessed by; offering and smearing when the child is possessed by, 825
Balotkaṭā, a female deity, 292
Bāna, demon, 29, 30
foremost among the sons of Bali, 46
worshipped, 414
symbol denoting a herb, 406, 407, 408
a flower, 529
bānaliṅga, 300, 301
bandha, relating to a kind of Yamaka, 936
bandhas, eight kinds of; description of, 936
Anuṣṭubh as a metre for most of the, 938
banks, words signifying, 995
banner, words denoting, 1020
erection of, 167-69
length of, 309
presiding deities of, worship of, 284
barbara, a flower, 529
Barhiṣadā, manes, origin of, 49
requested to come, 336
Bāśkala, samhitā given to, 429
one of the sons of Hrada, 46
bath, ingredients for ceremonial, 717
bathing, six kinds of, 436
after illness, asterism for, 358
mantras for, 436-7
procedure for, 53-54
to ward off obstacles, 718-19
known as Maheśvara; promoting the victory of a king, 719-22
benefits of, 764
merits of; with different materials, 552
bathing of deities, mode of, 190-195
different kinds of, 192
to accomplish one's desires, 716
bathing festival, mode of conducting, 186-88
battle, worship for success in, 425
things to be done after gaining victory in; merits of endurance of pain in; the demerits of deserting a, 614
battles, success in; means for gaining, 372
between celestials and demons; twelve in number; details about, 745
battle-axe, different uses of, 651-2
Baudhās, reference to demons becoming, 38
Baudhāyana (tantra), 106
Baudhāyana, Vedas given to, 429
Bava, a karana, 369fn
beads, made of different materials, merits of, 899-900
bees and honey-bees, words denoting, 1013
begging, five kinds of, 453
beings, two kinds of; their characteristics, 1071
bell, used in worship; greatness of, 900
belly, three-fold division of, 930
betel, time suitable for rite of chewing, 338
Bevacakra, to find friendship between two people, 392
bhadra, a variety of horses, 789
Bhadra, a type of temple, 314
characteristics of, 318
bhadrā, a stone, 269
Bhadrā, a female divinity, 51
a river, 325
Bhadra, name of a month, 360
Bhadrābhimā, a goddess, 376
Bhadrādeha, one of the sons of Vasudeva and Devaki, was killed by Kartha, 744
Bhadrakāli, a goddess, 26, 376
Bhadrakānāhrada, a sacred place, 327
Bhadrika, one of the four sons of Śibi, 747
characteristics of the metre, 914
bhadrapada, an asterism, 363, 388
Bhadraratha, son of Haryāngaka; son of, 748
Bhadrasena, one of the sons of Vasudeva and Devaki, was killed by Kartha, 744
Bhadrasenaka, son of Mahimā; son of, 740
Bhadrāśva, son of Rahovādi; ten sons of, 325, 748
country, 322, 325
Viṣṇu as Hayagriva in, 326
a mountain, 325
bhadrāśvā, certain days of lunar fortnight, 362
Bhadravirā, characteristics of the metre, 910
Bhaga, one of the Ādityas, 45
Bhagavadgītā, essence of, 1068-1073
bhagavān, the significance of the term, 1060
Bhāgavatapurāṇa, containing explanation of virtues; to be given as a gift in Proṣṭhapadi, 732
Bhagiratha, son of Dilipa; brought down Ganges from heaven; son of, 737
Bhairava, image of, 138, 314
installation of image of, 172
to be contemplated, 404
located on the body, 414
mantra having the word, 411
Bhairavi, goddess; mantra sacred to, 404
image of, 133
cloth bearing the figure of, 402
Bhajamāna, one of the four sons of Sāvata, 742
four sons of, 742
Bhajamāna, one of the sons of Babhru, 742
father of Vidūratha, 743
Bhallāta, (a superhuman being) 108
worship of, 317
Bhāna, a type of drama, 921
Bhanḍila, an authority in prosody; given as Tāndin in Chandah Sūtra, 904
bhāṅgavidyā, relating to goddess, 395
Bhāṇī, a type of drama, 921
Bhāṇikā, a type of drama, 921
Bhāṇu, mother of Bāhūns, 44
Bāhūnmati, second wife of Sagara, son of, 737
Bāhūnuratha, son of Candragiri; son of, 738
Bāhūns, progeny of Bāhūn, 44
bhāra, one of the postures of the hand, 857
Bharadvāja, son of Brhaspati; was brought to Bharata by Marut gods, performed rituals, 749
saluted by Rāma, 13, 23
saluted by Bharata, 14
Bharāṇi, an asterism, 359, 360, 361, 363, 376, 377, 381, 382, 383, 387, 400
Bharata, reference to penance at Śālagrāma performed by, 1062
birth of, 10
married Māṇḍavi, 11
Kaikēyi's request to make heir apparent, 12
Dāśāratha's words about, 13
brought to Ayodhyā, 14
was urged by Rāma to return to Ayodhyā, 15
revered Rāma after his return from Lāṅka, 23
killed three croses sons of Śailūsa and returned to Rāghava, 24
Bharata, born in the race of Pāru, 31
country called Bhārata after, 323
loss of the sons of, 749
Bhārata, denotes Mahābhārata, 31
story of, 38
Bhārata, country, named after Bharata, 323, 325
Viṣṇu as Kūraśa, 326
Bhārata, a mountain, 324
Bharatāśrama, at Gayā, 344
Bhāratavarṣa, extent of, 350-31
divided into nine parts, 351
Bhāratas, the mighty descendants of Bharata, 749
Bhārati, one of the modes; formulated by Bharata; characteristics of; four components of, 928
Bhārga, son of Pratardana, 749
Bhārgava, denotes Parasūrāma, manifestation of Viṣṇu, 8
goddess earth addressed as related to, 112
Bhārgavi, daughter of Śukra, 112
Bhāṣakarna, demon, 22
Bhāsi, a daughter of Tāmār, 46
bhāskara, signifies a herb, 408
Bhāumā (Mars), 115
worshipped. 316
bhauta, a kind of fire, 205
bhautiki (rite), 86
Bhautya, fourteenth Manu, 428
Bhava, a name of Rudra, 50
a divinity, 292, 412
worship of, 290
Bhava, a mūhūrta, 371
Bhāva (Bhava) a year of Hindu almanac, 404
bhāva, change relating to the mind, 905
Bhāvabhūti, letter denoting, 418
bhavana, a type of temple, 314
Bhāvavṛtta, deity of aghamarsaṇa hymn; identified with Viṣṇu, 437
Bhāveśvara, letter denoting, 254
Bhāvins, a class of people in Puṣkara, 351
Bhaviṣyapurāṇa, had its origin from the Sun; narrated by Śiva to Manu; extent of; should be given as a gift in Pausya, 733
Bhavya, son of Dhrūva, 42
Bhavya, ruled Śāka, 322
Bhaya, son of Adharmara, 49
Bhāyanakā, a hell, 1098
Bhayaṅkari, image of, 198
Bhayotkāṭa, a hell, 1098
bhedāni, a mudrā, 837
Bhelaki, a divinity, 411
Bhelakhi, a sacred syllable known as, 396
Bhida, letter denoting, 419
Bhima, born from Vāta, 32, 32fn
  stayed as a cook at Virāṭa, 33
  Yudhiṣṭhira pacified women in the
  company of, 36
  fall of, 37
  (See also Bhimasena)
Bhima, one of the sons of Kṛṣṇa and
  Satyabhāmā, 744
Bhima, a Rudra, 50
  a guardian deity, 284
  worship of, 290
  propitiation of, 176
Bhimā, a hell, 1038
bhimadvāḍaśi, details relating to the
  practice of, 512
Bhimarathī, son of Jimūta; son of, 742
Bhimarathī, a river, flows from Sahya,
  351
Bhimasena, born of Kunti from god
  Vāyu, 755
  son of Pāṇḍu and Kunti; son of,
  through his wife Hidimba, had
  Ghaṭotkaca as the son, 751
  killed Duryodhana, 35
Bhimasena, son of Rākṣa the second;
  son of, 751
Bhimasena, one of the four sons of
  Jahnun, 750
bhūndipala, uses of, 652
bhīru, a herb, 378
Bhīṣaṇa, one of the ten sons of Hṛdiya,
  713
Bhīṣaṇā, a hell, 1038
Bhīṣaṇi, goddess, 375, 417
Bhīṣaṇi, an evil spirit which possesses
  the child on the second night after
  birth; symptoms of the child posses-
  sed by; offering to appease; unguent
  for the child possessed by, 821
Bhīṣma, son of Śantanu and Gāṅgā,
  751
  as ruling the kingdom after Śan-
  tanu’s death, 31
  killed the soldiers of Pāṇḍavas, 34
  resolve not to fight against eunuchs,
  34fn
Bhīṣmapaṅcaka, mode of practising
  the vow of, 534-35
  explanation of, 534fn, 535
  merits of practising, 532
bhoga, an array; description of, 633
  an array; variations of; five units
  taken from and combined (for
  a battle), 634
  modifications of, 635
Bhogaṇāti, a place, 329, 330
Bhoga, region of; portent affecting, 387
Bhoga, one of the Siddhas, 414
Bhogaṇa, son of Pratikṣetra; son of, 743
Bhogaṇa, one of the five branches of
  Haihayaśa (Yādavas), 736, 741
bhrāmana, auspiciousness of a stone
  called, 641
Bhramaravilasī, characteristics of
  the metre, 912
Bhṛgu, married Khyāti, daughter of
  Dakṣa, 48
  progeny of, 49
  a holy spot, 330
  letter denoting, 419
Bhrūgutuṅga, a holy place, 327
Bhrūgāṇanda, a divinity to be wor-
  shipped, 414
bhrūga, herb, 407
Bhrūga, worship of, 273, 316
bhrūgarāja, a flower, 529
bhrūgarāja, a herb, 378, 405, 406
Bhrūgaṇī, image of, 135
Bhrūṣa, personified, 316
  worship of, 273
Bhū, one of the worlds, 79
bhūḍhara, a type of temple, 315
bhūjaga, herb symbolised by, 406, 407
Bhūjanga, worshipped, 414
Bhūjangapravātā, characteristics of
  the metre, 913
Bhūjangasyāsūṣuta, characteristics of
  the metre, 911
Bhūjangavrīmbhita, characteristics of
  the metre, 914
Bhūjñāgeśa, letter denoting, 419
Bhūloka, (earth) 354
Bhūmitirtha, a sacred place, 327
Bhūri, one of the sons of Bālhiκa, 751
Bhūriśravas, one of the sons of Bālhiκa,
  751
bhūṣaṇa, a type of temple, 315
Bhūtasantāpana, a son of Hiraṇyākṣa,
  46fn
bhūtasarga, creation known as, 48
Bhūtiṣa, letter denoting, 418
Bhūva, one of the worlds, 79
Bhūva, son of Pratihastā, 323
Bhuvanloka, location of, 354
bhīboka, a kind of gesture, 929
bijamantras, on the practice of, 804
  bile, remedy for forty diseases due
to deranged, 774
  remedy to remove excess of, 773
bilva, herb, 407
bilva, flower, 529
bilvamudrā, a posture with hands, 196
bimbamudrā, a posture with hands, 196
Bindukoṭiṣa, a sacred place, 414
bindu, an outcaste, 465
birds, and their gait; words signifying, 1012 - 3
birth, previous; words denoting, 991
birth and death, description of the process of, 1031
black, words denoting, 992
bladder, remedy to remove stone in, 768
Blemishes, relating to poetry; seven kinds of—relating to speaker, denoter and denoted; further divisions of, 946
blindness, excellent remedy for, 778
blood and semen, discharge of; remedy for, 834
blue vitriol, auspiciousness of, 641
Boar, manifestation of Viṣṇu as, 7 ff, 18
the killing of Hiraṇyākṣa by, 745
body, description of the names and formation of constituent parts of, 1034-36
three functions of; to be paid equal attention, 763
as the chariot, 1075
bondage, way to get release from, 464
bones, words signifying the different, 1015
in the body, the description of their number, 1036-37
bow, material for; measure of, 638, 639
the different characteristics relating to, 639
made of bamboo as the most excellent one, 639
excellent kind of, 647
mantra for worshipping, 639
bow-men, task of, 613
bows, should be worshipped before an expedition is begun, 639
bow-string, material for, 638
brahma, a flower that pleases lord Hari, 529
Brahmā, 1, 3 etc.
born from the navel lotus of Viṣṇu, 9, 735, 738
self-originated, 40, 40 fn
synonyms of, 986
as the charioteer of the earth, 746
stopped the celestial war, 739
mind-born sons of; divided into two halves, 41
presiding deity of an element, 271
image of, 190
worship of, 274
worship of golden image of, 498
worshipped by people of Kuśa, 332
worshipped by residents of Puṣkara, 353
brāhma, a type of marriage, 434
Brahmakēśvara, one of the lingas at Gayā, 343
brahmakūrca, expiation of eating handful of fired grain for fifteen days, 483
Brahmajānā, a female divinity, 413
Brahmaloka, name of Satyaloka, 354
brahmamandira, a type of temple, 314
brāhma muhūrta, one should get up in, 436
brahman, unknowable, 464
two kinds of, 1, 1060
identity of soul and Supreme, 34
as the cause of the world as held by Śaivas etc., 949
words denoting state of, 1018
description of the nature of, 1036-7
knowledge relating to, 1057-9
brahman, knowledge relating to mystic; expounded by Bharata, 1063-8
brahmāṇḍa, a great gift, 544
Brahmāṇḍapurāṇa, in which Brahmā describes the greatness of the universe; extent of; should be given as a gift, 734
version followed, 44 fn
Brahmāṇī, one of the eight goddesses, 411, 415
Brahmapada, at Gayā, 339
brahmapāñcika, mantras known as, 874
Brahmapurāṇa, one of the eighteen Purāṇas; narrated by Brahmā to Marici; extent of; to be given as a gift on full-moon day in Vaiśākha 732
as destroying sins, 492
Brahmasaras, at Gayā, 338
Brahmāsāvarṇī, tenth Manu, 428
brahmasilā, relating to linga, 266
Brahmāstra, weapon, 23, 32
Brahmatūṅga, a holy place, 327
brahmatva, related to Atharvan, 429
Brahmavaivartapurāṇa, narrated by Sāvarṇi Manu to sage Nārada; extent of; deals with the history of Rathantara and Boar manifestation of lord Viṣṇu; should be given as a gift in Māgha, 733
Brahmāvarta, a sacred place, 327
Brahmavetāli, a goddess, 424
Brahmavidyā, the formula presided over by Brahmā, 895
Brāhmi, a mother goddess, 139fn
image of, 133
brahmin, code of conduct for, 431
breathing, remedy for trouble in, 890
Brhadaśva, son of Srāvanta, 736
Brhadbhānu, son of. Brhatkarman; son of, 748
Brhadīṣu, one of the five born from Bāhyāśva, 749
Brhadratha, son of Jayadratha; son of, 748
one of the seven sons of Suhotra and Girikā; son of, 750
Brhannalā, Arjuna at Virāṭa as, 33
Brhaspati, a law-giver, 455
Brhaspati, a rite to appease the planets performed by, 740
Brhat, son of Suhotra; son of, 749
Brhatakrā, a kind of bandha, 938
Brhati, a son of Śiśṭi and Suchchāvāya, 42
Brhati, a metre; characteristics of, 902
is made up of one pāda Jagati and three pāda Gāyatrī, 903
black coloured; belongs to Āṅgirasa gotra, 905
sages and gods associated with, 562
different kinds of, 903-4
Brhatkalpa, a kalpa period, 732
Brhatkarman, son of Bhadraratha; son of, 748
Brhatkuksī, goddess ruling over north, 138
Brhatmarat, son of Brhadbhānu; son of, 748
bride, rules relating to choosing of, 434
Buddha, manifestation of Viṣṇu as, 38
figures of, 130
Buddha, story relating to his birth to Soma; 739, son of; saluted, 31, 52
buildings, of different people; parts of;
words denoting, 1006
building sites for different castes; characteristics of, 642
worship of different gods in, 642-3
burst of laughter, word for, 995

Śārdūlavikriḍita class of metres, 909
Cakrābjaka, one of the bandhas; explanation of, 936, 937
Cakrapāṇi, form of Viṣṇu at Kāśmira, 841
cakrārūpa, efficacy of the herb, 378-9
Cakriśanātha, a siddha, 415
Cakṣu, a river, 325
Cākṣuṣa, the sixth Manu, 427
the devas in the period of; born as sons of Kaśyapa, 45
Celestial at the time of the 14th Manu, 428
son of Rīpu and Brhati, 42
one of the foremost sons of Vidūṣa, 747
calamities, due to divine agency; remedial steps for, 625
calling, words denoting, 992
Campa, son of Prthulākṣa; son of, 748
camūmukha, a modification of the array danda, 633
Cāmunḍa, image of, 314
Cāmunḍā, a mother goddess, 139fn
request made to, 397, 399
characteristics of the image of, 134
worshipped, 412, 415
invoked, 416
Cāṇcalā, a spirit seizing the child in the twelfth month: symptoms of child seized by, 824
a monster seizing the child in the fifth year; symptoms of the child seized by; offering to appease; fumigation and bathing when child is seized by, 824
Cāṇcalākṣikā, characteristics of the metre, 912
Cāṇcāśa, son of Mukula; had the twins, 750
Cancer, a constellation, 361, 384, 392
Cāṇḍa, an attendant of Viṣṇu; worshipped, 51, 52
mode of worshipping, 211-12
carved on the door-frame, 115
Cāṇḍa, a goddess, 132, 375, 424
a hell, 1038
Cāṇḍāla, a caste, 430
duties of; rules relating to dress etc., 431
Candanaundubhi, son of Tittiri; son of, 742
Cāṇḍanāyikā, a goddess, 132
Cāṇḍarūpā, a goddess, 132
Cāṇḍavātī, a goddess, 132
Cāṇḍavṛṣṭiprapātaka, a variety of Dāndaka; characteristics of, 914-5
Cāṇḍesvāra, a holy spot at Vārāṇasi, 330
Cāndī, a mother goddess, 139fn
image of, 132
(See also Cāndikā)
a herb, 371, 378
Cāndikā, image of, 106, 132, 139
benefit of establishing, 133
worshipped, 412
Cāndiśa, placing the image of, 106
letter denoting, 419
Cāndogrā, a goddess, 132
Candra, a boundary mountain, 351
Candrā, image of, 138
Candrabhāgā, river; rises from the
Himālaya, 351
Candraloka, son of Sahasrāśva; son
of, 738
Candramā, herb denoted by, 406
Candranāthaka, one of the siddhas, 415
Candraparvata, son of Tārāpiśa;
son of, 738
Candrapūra, one of the siddhas, 414
Candravālī, image of, 138
Candraśāla, characteristics of the
metre, 913
Cāndrāśāna, an expiation, 328, 471,
472, 475, 476, 477, 479, 480,
481, 487, 488
explanation of, 494
to be observed for having done cer-
tain sins, 489
destroyed, 491
merits of practising, 524
Cāṇuṭa, a wrestler killed by Kṛṣṇa,
28
cāpā, a posture of the hands, 857
a modification of the array āṇḍa,
633
Capaḷa, characteristics of the metre
906, 909
Capricorn, a constellation, 384, 392
Carakī, a demoness, 317
worship of, 274, 275, 276
materials for the worship of, 109
Carcikā, a mother goddess, 139fn
Carmanvati, a sacred place (river),
327
carrier, rules relating to, 675
caru, a sacrificial offering, 58
Cāruḍēśa, born to Vasudeva, 744
Cāruhāsini, characteristics of the
metre, 907
Caruka, a type of temple, 314
cāśāla, meaning of the word, 1017
case, that is rejected by another should
not be taken up, 656
cases, the employment of the seven,
960
casket, words denoting, 1017
castes, duties of, 429-31
duties of different, 465-7
words denoting the fourth, 1023

Catakā, a monstress affecting the
child in the fourth year; symptoms
of the child seized by; offering to
appease; fumigation and bathing
when the child is affected by, 824
catarrh, remedy for, 773
Cāṭulādevī, a female divinity, 413
Caturbhūṣa, form of Viṣṇu at Pindā-
ra, 841
cāṭumarśaa, a havir-yajña, 86, 466
the period for observing, 455
Caturthikā, one of the four acts rela-
ting to a marriage, 434
Caturvaiktra, letter denoting, 419
caturvyasita, one of the yamakas, 935
catuspada, a karaṇa, 363, 369
Catuspatra, a variety of bandha, 937
cause, words denoting, 991
word denoting primary, 991
cavalry, functions of; ground suitable
for; three infantry soldiers needed
to fight, 632
the units needed to protect, 653
celestial region, asterisms belonging to,
388
celestial women, words denoting, 987
celibacy, eight kinds of, 1041
censure, words denoting, 993
centipedes, remedy for poison due to,
819
Chala, a division of Vīthi, 928
Chāndasatva, a defect of work, 947
Chandovidhāna, science of, 2
charm, of the shape of the figure of
Garuḍa, efficacy of, 811-14
charms, herbs used in, 405-7
chariot, ground suitable for; to be
protected by elephant (men), 632
chariots, (men on) functions of, 631
chariot-warriors, work of, 613
charities, merits of making, 559
Chāyā, gave birth to Śāvaṁi, Śani,
Tapati and Viśti, 735
an embellishment of word; ex-
planation of; four kinds of, 932
Chedani, a goddess, 424
Chekōktīchāyā, explanation of, 932
chest, five kinds, 930
chest injury, remedy for, 754
child, in the womb of mother; de-
scription of the stages of growth of,
1032
period good for first feeding of, 358
children, of different ages; words
denoting, 1014
remedy for cough, vomiting and
fever of; herbs which would improve
the speech etc. of, 766
child’s play, word for, 995
Index

chin, seven actions of, 929
Cīda, son of Kaśyapa; descendants known as Caidyās, 741
circles, mystic, 375-79
different kinds of, 870
Cīteyu, one of the ten sons of Bhadrāśva, 748
cities, provision of places for different people in, 320-21
vāstu relating to, 320-22
citra, an embellishment of word, 932
Citra, a type of temple, 315
Citrā, an asterism, 339, 360, 361, 363, 381, 385, 387, 400
characteristics of the metre, 907
Citrabhānu, a year of the Hindu calendar, 404
citrāduśkara, a division of objects to be struck by an arrow, 648
Citragupta, presiding deity of place of worship of planets, 467
Citrakāvya, definition of; seven kinds of, 935
Citrakūṭa, name of a place, 841
a sacred spot, 328
Rāma's arrival at the mountain of, 13, 14
Citrālekhā, friend of Uṣū, daughter of Bāna, 30
Citrānga, a form of Rudra, 253
Citrāngada, a Gandharva, 31
son of Śantanu, 31
Citrāpadā, characteristics of the metre, 911
Citraratha, ruler of the Gandharvas, 47
son of Rūṣadgau; son of, 741
son of Dharmaratha; son of, 748
Citrasena, son of Raucya Manu, 428
cloth, words relating to different kinds of, 1016
cloud, words denoting, 988
clouds, words denoting row of, 988
clouds (thunder), words denoting, 988
club, wielding of, 649
Coalescence, explanation of, 944
Colas, origin of, 747
colic, remedy for, 768, 776
intestinal, remedy for, 766
colours, words denoting different, 902
words denoting mixed, 992
commander(s), duties of, 630
instructions for, 633
comic sentiment, origin of, 923
four-fold; description of, 931
compositions, of different kinds such as Gomūtriṇa, 996
compounds; divided as eternal and noneternal; examples of; six kinds of; divided into 28 kinds, 973
four-fold classification of; on account of prominence of one member, 975-76
concealing, words denoting, 989
Conceit, origin of, 923
conch-shell, a variety of, stated to be auspicious, 641
conciliation, a political expedient, 627
two kinds of, 587
four kinds of, 627-8
method of employing, 628
conduct, codes of, 436-39, 463-65
towards different people, 618
five kinds of codes of, 465
conjecture, word for, 991
conjurations, the important roots belonging to the ten, 982
conjuring, a political expedient, 627
consecration, commendable time for, 361
of the doors of the temple, 164-69
304-5
of the idol, 152-55
of an image, 96ff, 283-84
of the images of gods, 180-83
materials used in, 150-51
mode of doing, 110-113
of pitchers, 149-51
preliminary, 155-60
of tanks and ponds, 173-78
of a temple, 307-8
of umbrella etc.; mantras for, 725-28
constellations, the things they denote, 338
constipation, a decoction that is a remedy for, 775
consumption, remedy for, 767, 776
contemplation, of different kinds, 1046-1049
explanation of the term; benefit of practice of; mode of, 1046
contextual object, words denoting thought related to, 993
continents, names of, 323
extent and description of, 351-3
contrivance, explanation of, 945
conventional, a variety of excellence of sense; explanation of, 945
conversation, words denoting, 993
word denoting mutual, 993
cooked rice mixed with milk, words denoting, 1017
coral, auspiciousness of, 641
coronation of a king; mode of performing, 566-68
sacred syllables for, 569-73
asterism good for, 360
corrupted word, term denoting, 992
cough, remedy for, 830
remedy for five kinds of, 772
cough and other ailments, remedy for 773

counsel, five kinds of; the type of persons with whom the king can have, 624-5

things which would break a secret, 625


counsels, words denoting chief, 1018

counter-suit, could be made when, 656


countries, different kinds of; based on landscape, 758

country, description of a prosperous, 620


courses, for beings; two kinds of, 1078
courtiers, the qualities of and selection of; should be neutral, 656

cows, of different kinds; words denoting, 1021-22
elixir for, 801

excellence of the six items got from, 798

food that yields more milk from, 801

fumigation against evil planets for, 801

a great gift of thousand, 544
greatness of, 798, 799, 800

mantras for the protection of, 835

merits of making gift of different numbers of, 547

nourishing food for calves of, 801

propitiatory rites preceding the worship of, 801-2

the purificatory item got from, 799

oil that removes biliousness of, 800

prescription for joining broken bones of, 800

pain in the ears of, 800

wounds of, 801

remedy for deranged phlegm of, 800

diseases affecting the horns of, 800
diseases of digestive organs etc. of, 800

diseases of the flesh of, 800
dysentery of, 800

heartaches and stomachache etc. of, 800

pain in the teeth of, 800

stiffness of, 800

swelling of the belly of, 835

toothache and diseases of mouth and tongue, 800

creating dissent, one of the means to be employed by the king, 587

creation, description of, 39-41

process of, 1030


primary, 48-50

secondary, description of, 45-48

of the world, 39

cremation, cases when not done, 451

crystal, a gem; is said to be suspicious, 641

Cūḍākṛti, one of the saṁskāras, 59

Cūlikā, characteristics of the metre, 907

curiosity, words signifying, 995

Cūrṇaka, a division of prose Kāvyas, 918

Cyavana, son of Suhotra, 750

Cyuta, a kind of Citrākāva, 935

deinition of, 936

Cyutadatta, a kind of Citrākāva, 935

definition of, 936

Dadhī, an ocean, 324

Dadhimaṇḍodaka, ocean, 352

Dadhimukha, monkey guarding honey-garden, 20

Dadhimukhya, a class of men at Kuṣadvipa, 352

Dadhivāhana, was born from An̄ga, 748

Dadhivaktra, a monkey, 21

Dāhala, a country, 387
dainandini, the creation known as, 49

Daitya, to be worshipped, 317
daityas, defeated the devas, 38

Daityasūdana, form of Viṣṇu at Prabhāsa, 841

Dākini, a goddess; worshipped, 415

Dakṣa, born to Pracetas and Māriṣā, 43 made the ruler of Prajāpati, 47

Khyāti and others married the daughters of, 48

Sati discarded her life on account of wrath of, 50

one of the guards of the doors; to be worshipped, 99

letter denoting, 419

a law-giver, 455

Dakṣasāvarṇī, ninth Manu, 428
dakṣināgmpada, at Gayā, 339
damanaka, investiture of fibres of, 225-26

Daminaḥ, a class of men at Kuṣadvipa, 352 fn

Dāmodara, a name of Viṣṇu, 65

form of Viṣṇu at Raivataka, 842

a Śālagrāma, 125

Dānastrāla, a goddess, 375

Dānavas, progeny of Danu, 47

Dāña, one of the three sons of Dhundhumāra, 736

the name of a temple, 318

one of the bandhas, 936

explanation of, 937

daṇḍa, an array; description of; other arrays which are modifications of
dead, recipes which would revive, 772
dearth, the process of, 1037-8
medicines which would conquer, 779
medicine that overcomes premature, 778-9
debt(s), definition of, 634
discharge of; asterism governing, 358
rules relating to, 639-61
deception, a political expedient, 587, 627
deeds, merits of good, 451
need for performing virtuous, 901
defect, of meaning is twofold—general
and particular, 947
Dehadhrī, propitiation of, 176
deities, names and worship of female,
292
presiding over the asterisms, lunar
days etc., 805
worship of, 806
presiding over different things, 542
sacred bathing of, 716-7
deliberation, word denoting, 991
deluge, words denoting, 990
demon, words denoting, 986, 988
deposit, definition of the term; rules
relating to, 661
Depth, explanation of the composition
known as 945
depth, words denoting different, 996
desires, renunciation of; praise of
knowledge gained by, 107
Deva, form of Viṣṇu at Raivataka, 841
one of the deities to be located in
the body, 414
Devabhoga, one of the siddhas, 414
devadatta, a life-force, 257
carried by the vein hulu, 556
functions of, 557
Devadevasa, form of Viṣṇu on the
Sahya mountain, 842
Devadūti, a spirit possessing the
child in the eleventh year; symptoms of the child possessed by;
offering and fumigation when the
child is possessed by, 825
Devahūti, wife of Kardama; progeny
of, 41, 41 fn
Devaka, son of Āhuka; sons of; dau-
grters of, 742
Devaki, one of the daughters of
Devaka; married by Vasudeva, 26,
26 fn, 742
as a manifestation of Aditi, 744
was worshipped by Kṛṣṇa, 28
Devakṛṣṇa, son of Devarāta; son of,
742
Devakūta, a boundary mountain, 325
Devala, exposition made by, 1074
son of Pratyūṣa, 44
devala, a caste, 430
Devamidhuṣa, born in the line of Dhṛṣṭa, 743
Devānika, son of Sudhanvā; son of, 738
Devāntaka, a demon, 22
Devāpī, one of the sons of Śantanu, 751
Devarata, one of the sons of Viśvāmitra, 749
Devarāta, son of Karabhā; son of, 742
Devārha, one of the ten sons of Hṛdika; son of, 743
devaś, the battle between asuras and, 34, 35, 38
benefit of worship of, 40
Devavān, son of Rudra Sāvarṇi Manu, 428
son of Devaka, 742
Devavara, a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 428
Devavarnini, first wife of Viśravas, 24 fn
Devavrata, 333 (See Dharmavratā)
Devāvṛdhā, one of the four sons of Sātvata; son of, 742
Devāvṛt, mountain, 352
Devayānī, daughter of Śukra; was married by Yayāti, 25, 25 fn., 740
Devi, signification of the term 994
Devikā, a river, 526
a holy place, 327
Devivrata, explanation of, 523
Dhairya, son of Jyoṭismat, 332
Dhamani, image of; governs the north, 138
dhananiyā, a life-force, 237
carried by the vein śāṅkhini, 556
functions of, 557
Dhananiyā, a divinity worshipped in the east, 316
dhanisṭhā, an asterism, 359, 360, 361, 363, 376, 381, 382, 385, 388
dhanuḥ pakṣa, an array; characteristics of, 633
Dhanus, a constellation, 367, 368 fn.
Dhanvantari, a form of Viṣṇu, 6
was born from Dirghatamas; son of, 749
science of medicine propounded to Sūruṭa by, 751ff
Dhanya, a class of men in Kraunca-dvipa, 352
dhanyāka, a herb, 407
Dhara, one of the Vasus, 44
dhāranā, definition of, 454
explanation of the term, 1076
(see also retention)
dhāraṇī, a stone, 269
Dhārikā, a female deity, 292
Dhārīṇī, daughter of the manes and Svadha, 49
dharma, a puruṣārtha protected by Viṣṇu, 23
Vibhiṣaṇa was deep-rooted in, 24
Bhirasma's discourse on, 36
the homa that bestows, 53
Dharma, alternate reading for Dhara, 44 fn
Dharma, married ten daughters of Dakṣa, 44
Dharma, god of virtue, 32, 332
worshipped, 51
worship of, 286
son of Gāndhāra; son of, 747
dharmadrona, a hymn, 349
Dharmaneitra, son of Haihaya; son of, 740
Dharmapāla, a minister of King Daśaratha, 11
Dharmarāja, denotes Yudhiṣṭhīra, 33, 37
Dharmarānya, a sacred spot at Gayā, 337
Dharmaratha, son of Diviratha; son of, 748
dharmas, the origin of heretics devoid of Vedic, 38
Dharmasāstra, science of, 2
Dharmasāvarṇi, eleventh Manu, 428
Dharmatīrtha, a holy place, 327
Dharmavati, wife of Dharma, 332
Dharmavratā, daughter of Dharma; married by Marici, 332
Marici's curse on, 333
Dharmsa, a divinity worshipped, 108
Dharma, one of the ten sons of Bhadrāśva, 748
Dharmopamā, explanation of, 940
Dhārṣṭaka, race of; was from Dhṛṣṭa, one of the sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 736
Dhātā, a form of Rudra, 252
a year of the Hindu calendar, 404
Dhātaki, son of Savana, 353
Dhār, one of the Adityas, 45, 136
worship of, 176
saluted, 50, 50 fn
adored, 88
Dhātṛ, a celestial; son of Bhṛgu and Khyāti, 49
dhātri, herb, 407
Dhātri, a female deity, 292
dhattūra, black; herb, 406
Dhaumakalpa, a kalpa period, 733
Dhaumya, sage, 33
Dhāvani, a monstress afflicting the
child in the sixth year; symptoms of the child afflicted by; offering to appease; fumigation and bathing when the child in afflicted by, 824 Dhenu, one of the varieties of Gomatrikā-bandha, 937 dhenu, a posture of the hand, 196, 205, 208, 273 Dhenuka, a demon, 27 Dhenukā, a forest, 344 Dhenumat, son of Jyotiṣmat, 352 Dhenumapa, at Gayā, 344 dhenuvrata, mode of practising, 522 Dhīmān, son of Mahāvīrya, 323 Dhīṣanā, of the family of Agni; progeny of, 43 Dhṛṣṭu, son of Kuhura; son of, 742 Dhṛṣṭa, one of the eight sons of Vaivāsvata Manu, 735 One of the sons of Asamaṇjas; two wives of, 743 Dhṛṣṭadyumna, son of Drupada; son of, 750 fate of army headed by, 35 Dhṛṣṭaka, son of Kunti; son of, 742 Dhṛṣṭaketa, son of Dhṛṣṭadyumna, 750 Dhṛṣṭokta, one of the sons of Kārttavīrya, 741 Dhṛṣṭaketa, son of Dakṣasāvarṇi Manu, 428 Dhṛtarāṣṭra, begot by Kṛṣṇa Dvaitipāyana through the wife of Vicitravīryaka, 751 born to Ambikā, 31 Pāṇḍavas’ destruction of the sons of, 34 resorted to the forest after the war, 36 beads belonging to Jyoti class, 894 Dḥṛti, a form of Hari, 91 son of Dhṛṣṭu; son of, 742 wife of Nandi, 739 name of a metre, 903 Dḥrītimān, a son of Purūravas, 739 Dhruva, son of Uttānapāda and Suniti, 41 story of, 41 fn as a celestial star, 42 Dhruva, one of the Vasus, 44 one of the seven sons of Medhātiṣṭhī; after whom the country was named, 351 dhūli, auspiciousness of gem called, 641 Dhumini, wife of Ajamidha, 750 Dhūmra, a monkey, 21 Dhūmrāka, a demon killed by Hanumāt, 22 Dhūmravāraṇa, a name of the elephant-faced god, 866 Dhundhu, a demon killed by Kuvalāśva, 736 Dhundhumāra, name of Kuvalāśva as he killed the demon Dhundhu; the three sons of, 736 Dhuni, son of Yuyudhāna alias Saṭyaki; son of, 743 dhustura, a flower for worshipping lord Hara, 529 Dhvani, alternate reading for Muni, 44 fn stated as identical with any one of the figures like Akṣepa, 943, 944 dvārakā, denotes the entry of the Sun in one of the signs, 362 dhvāna, definition of, 454 explanation of the term 1076 diabetes, remedy for, 753 diamond, a gem, 640 auspiciousness of and qualities of a good, 641 diarrhoea, excellent remedies for, 754, 767 diction, four kinds of, 927 digestion, remedy that stimulates, 778 digestive power, remedy to restore, 775 dik, herb denoted by, 406, 407 Dilipa, son of Aṁśumān; son of, 737 son of Raghu; son of, 737 Dima, a type of drama, 921 dipaka, a perfection, 237 Dipani, letter denoting, 417 Diptā, a female divinity; worshipped, 51 Diptamāyā, a hell, 1039 Diptikāraṇa, a Rudra, 254 Diptimān, a sage, 428 Diptimati, a female deity, 292 direction, words denoting, 968 Dirghabahu, son of Aja; son of, 737 Dirghatamas, son of Kaśi (Kauśika?); son of, 749 disc, uses of, 651 disciple, qualities of, 804 anointment of, 263-4 discussion, word denoting, 991 diseases, different kinds of, 83 words denoting different; words denoting persons free from illness, 1014-15 four kinds of; description of; remedies for; making gifts to get rid of, 757 mental; hymn on Viṣṇu for, 758 excessive eating as cause of, 760 of children; remedies for, 766 general remedies for all, 769 forty kinds of, due to deranged bile; twenty kinds of, due to deranged phlegm, remedy for eighty kinds of; due to deranged wind, 774
caused by planets, remedy for, 829
disgust, origin of the sentiment, 923
sentiment of; is twofold; arises from
aversion, 932
dispute, explanation of the matters
for, 654-55
dispute, the preliminary procedures
relating to; before taking up for
discussion; termed as miscellaneous;
being annoyed contrary to codes
is a matter for, 656
disputes, words denoting discussions
relating to, 992
four steps relating to; eighteen kinds
of and one hundred divisions of;
should be examined by the king,
656
qualifications of witnesses, 661-2
relating to boundaries; procedures
for solving, 670-71
disrespect, words meaning, 995
dissension, a political expedient, 627
three kinds of; means of employing,
628
as a means to win an enemy, 631
dissolutions, of four kinds; description
of, 1028-9
description of the absolute, 1030
Diti, wife of Kaśyapa; progeny of, 45
mother of the demons, 7 fn
lost her offspring and propitiated
Kaśyapa, 47
worship of, 274
worshipped, 317
Divaspati, Indra during the period
of the thirteenth Manu, 428
Divijāta, a son of Purūravas, 739
divine edifice, general characteristics
of, 313-16
Diviratha, was the next king after
Dadhivāhana; son of, 748
Divodāsa, popular name of Hemarātha;
son of one of the progeny of
Caṇḍāsa, 749
progeny of, 750
Divyā, a goddess, 375-376
Dodhaka, characteristics of the metre,
912
dog, remedy for poison due to, 820
dog-bite, remedy for poison due to, 756
Dohini, letter denoting, 418
dramas, names of twentyseven types of;
two courses of characteristics of;
means of attaining threefold end
of life; thirtytwo components of,
explanation of opening in, 922
dramatic representation, four ways of;
explanation of, 930
Draupadi, (Aśvatthāma) a sage, 428
survived the Mahābhārata battle, 36
Draupadi, married by the Pāṇḍavas,
32, 751
stayed in the forest with Pāṇḍavas, 33
Aśvatthāma's destruction of the
sons of, 35
fall of, 37
Dravarasa, son of Madhu; son of, 742
Drāviḍi, characteristics of, 934
Draviṇa, son of Dhara, 44
dṛṇha, a division of objects to be
struck by an arrow, 648
dṛṇhaka, a modification of the array
called daṇḍa, 633
array formed by adding wings
and flanks, 634
Drṛharatha, son of Navaratha; son
of, 742
Drṛhāśva, one of the three sons of
Dhundhumāra; the two sons of,
736
Drṛhāyas, a son of Purūravas, 739
dreams, significance of, 595-6
recollect, the experience in
the waking state, 1056
drinks, not intoxicating, 487
Drona, conferred weapons on Arjuna,
32
Arjuna's apathy to fight on seeing,
34
description of the fight of, 35
Drauṇi as son of, 36
a boundary mountain, 352
dropsy, remedy for, 752-3
Drṣadvatī, wife of Uśīnara, 747
dṛṣṭam, fear known as, 1019
Drūṣya, one of the three sons of
Yaśāti and Devayāni, 740
Drūhyu, son of Yaśāti and Śarmiṣṭhā,
25
son of Gāndhāra, 747
Druma, son of Havya, 352
drunkenness, remedy for distemper
due to, 754
Drupada, son of Prṣata; son of, 750
on whose words Sikhandi showered
arrows on Bhīṣma, 34
Droṇa's shower of arrows on, 35
drupadā, hymn, 437
drupadāt, a hymn, 562
Drutamadhyā, characteristics of the
metre, 910
Drutavilambita, characteristics of the
metre, 912
Dugdha, an ocean, 324
Duḥkha, born to Vedanā, 49
Duḥṣāsana, brother of Duryodhana;
directed the dice-play, 33
Dundubhi, demon slain by Vālin, 17,
17fn
son of Dyutimāt, 352
a year of the Hindu almanac, 405
a boundary mountain, 351, 352
dundubhi, a type of temple, 315
durdhara, a hell, 532
Durdama, one of the sons of Vasudeva and Rohini, 744
durdina, denotes a bad day, 989
Durgä, the other names of, 26
day of getting up, 362
image of, 132
outlines on cloth of the form of, 402
worshipped, 50, 52
investiture of sacred thread for image of, 215
benefits of propitiating, 404
Durgasena, son of Bhadrasenaka; son of, 740
durjaya, an array; a modification of the array maṇḍala; has eight army units, 634
an array; made up of four valayas, 635
Durjaya, son of Ananta, 741
Durjaya, image of, 138
Durmallikā, a kind of drama, 921
Durmati, a year of the Hindu almanac, 403
Durmukha, a year of the Hindu almanac, 405
Durmukhi, a goddess, 375
dūrvā, a kind of grass, 94
Durvāsas, son of Atri and Anasūyā; 49
curse on celestials by, 5
Duryodhana, son of Dṛtarāṣṭra and Gāndhāri, 31
Karna became a dependent on, 32
refuses to give half the kingdom, 33
going for battle at Kurukṣetra, 34
army of, 35
seen by Yudhiṣṭhira on the way to heaven, 38
Dūṣaṇa, demon, 16
commander of Khara; was killed by Rāma, 16 fn
Duṣkara, an embellishment of word, 932
a kind of Yamaka; three kinds of;
explanations of, 936
duṣkara, a division of objects to be struck by an arrow, 648
Duṣṭacandaññikā, a female divinity, 411
Duṣyanta, son of Marutta; son of, 747
one of the four sons of Tarṣuṣrodha; wife of; son of, 749
Dūti, a female divinity, 411
duties, as laid down in the Vedas; excellence of, 1074
Dvādaśātman, a Śalagṛama, 126
Dvaiḍyāenas, Rgveda as the authority for, 790
Dvairatha, a son of Jyotishmat, 332
Dvandva (compound), two kinds of—
itaretarayoga and samāhāra; examples of, 975
dvāpara, a yuga; division of Veda at the end of, 429
Dvāravati, city founded by Raivata, 736
a sacred spot, 327
made as his capital by Kṛṣṇa, 28
Kṛṣṇa's return to, 743
Aniruddha brought to Śoṇitapura by Uśā from, 30
solutation to the fortunes of, 50
repetition of the name of Kṛṣṇa at, 841
was flooded by ocean, 37
dvidvādaśa, denotes the second and twelfth houses, 357
Dvigu (compound), having a number as the first member, 975
Dvimīḍha, one of the three sons of Brhat, 749
Dvimūrdhan, one of the sons of Hiranyākṣa, 46
Dviraṇḍaka, letter denoting, 419
dvisthūṇa, an array; characteristics of, 633
Dvivid, a monkey that accompanied Rāma for the battle at Laṅkā, 21
killed by Kṛṣṇa as he avenged the death of Naraka, 30, 30 fn
Dwarf, Viṣṇu's manifestation as; as son of Kaśyapa, and Aditi, 745
alms sought from Bali by, 8
obeisance made to, 82, 83
characteristics of the image of, 129
dysentery, medicine for, 752
infantile; remedy for, 766
remedy for; remedy for long standing, 768
of acute nature; remedy for, 777
accompanied by swelling; remedy for, 777
Dyuti, wife of Viḥāvasu, 738-9
dyūta, a flower, 529
Dyutimān, ruled Krauṣṭa, 322
Dyutimat, a boundary mountain; son of, 352
ear, pain in; remedy for, 755
bleeding of; remedy for 766
ear-ache, remedy to remove, 777
earth, extent of, 353
and parts of, words denoting, 1005-6
best suited for installation of an
image, 267
a great gift, 544
merits of and mode of making, 555-6
saluted, 50

eclipse, merits of making a gift at the
time of, 362
Ekacakra, city, Pandavas stay at, 32,
32 fn
Ekadamsra, a name of the elephant-
face god, 190
ekadanjin, an ascetic, 454
Ekadanta, one of the eight forms of
Ganapati, 865
Ekanetra, a Rudra, 263
letter denoting, 419
Ekangri, a guardian deity, 284
Ekapada, letter denoting, 419
Ekadraksha, a Rudra, 263
Ekavira, mode of worship of Gauri
according to, 897
ekoddista, ceremony, 459
mode of performing, 348
Elegance, relating to Guṇa; explanation
of, 945

elephant, words denoting things re-
lating to, 1019
ground suitable for, 632

elephant (golden) and horse, a great
gift, 544
elephantiasis, remedy for, 768

elephants, men mounted on; func-
tions of, 631
needed to protect a chariot, 632
three cavalry (men) to be em-
ployed to fight with, 632

elephants, characteristics of; treatment
of their diseases, 781-83
having commendable qualities to
be possessed, 781
diseases of the legs of, 782
remedy for all sorts of disorders of,
782
remedy for colics of, 783
constipation of, 781
dysentery of, 782
earache of, 782
fainting of, 781
the fevers of, 781
worms in the intestines of, 782
jaundice of, 781
the disease known as ‘kaṭu’ of, 782
loss of appetite of, 782
injuries of, 783
stiffness of neck of, 782
shivering of, 782
the enlargement of spleen of, 782
numbness of trunk of, 782
removal of excess wind in the
bodies of, 781
proprietary rites for curing the
ailments of, 795-98
anointment for, 783
anointment for headache of, 781

bed for, 783
excellent collyrium for, 783
cooling agent for the eyes of, 783
for sharpening the eyesight of, 783
dried barley for deranged humours
of, 783
kind of food good for, 783
incense which makes them victori-
ous in battle, 783
milk as a drink for emaciation due
to rutting in, 783
nails of; cutting of; should be bathed
with oil once in a month, 783
prescription that increases the
strength of, 783
medicine for drinking in the case
of retention of urine of, 782
excellent drink for wounds of, 782
elevated thinking, word signifying, 995
embellishment, of senses; eight kinds
of, 939
of both sound and sense; six varieties
of, 942-44
embellishments, word, meaning and
both; of words, nine kinds of; ad-
ding beauty to poetry; three kinds
of, 932
embryo, words relating to, 1014
emerald, a gem, 640
qualities of a good, 641
emetic, commended in the case of
hemorrhage, 752
the best, 757
decocation which would, serve as, 769
a decocotion that serves as a good, 778
emotions, eight transient, 924-6
inter-dependent on sentiment, 924
empire, seven constituents of, 585
employer, has the option to pay an
employee for overtime, 674
endeavour, the five kinds of, 922
enemies, three kinds of, 605
opportune moments to win on the
sides of an array; means to win,
631
enemy, definition of an; ways to
conquer an, 627
in one’s own soil or another’s soil;
means to win, 631
enmity, five kinds of, 623
epics, merits of making a gift of, 735
epilepsy, remedy for long standing, 773
remedies for, 829
erandamunda herb, 407
erotic, origin of the sentiment; two-
fold; subdivided into two; four-
fold divisions of a division of, aids of,
931
erotic sport, words denoting, 995
eternally, words denoting, 988
eunuch, words which are used in the sense of, 1014
euphonic combinations, examples of, 954-57
evening, words denoting, 990
events, preliminary and later; the strength of, 657
evidences, in a lawsuit, 657
fine for false, 663
excellence, adds charm to poetry; exists in two forms, 944
of word; seven kinds of, 944
of sense; six varieties of, 945
of words and sense; six varieties of, 946
excess, words denoting, 988
excitant, two kinds of; supportive; the influence of the emotions associated with; the nature of enhancing, 926
of women are twelve, 927
exercise, rules relating to doing, 764
exertion, of the body regarded as gestures of the body, 928
expedients, six kinds of, 606-8
the seven political, 627
expedition, definition of, 607
instructions relating to military, 594
propitious periods for undertaking, 604
expiations, different kinds of; subtle kinds of, 482-3
different kinds of, 485
destroying sins, 490
for association with sinners, 478-82
for discontinuing the worship of gods, 490-92
factors to be examined before laying down, 486
expression, two forms of natural form of, 939
extraneous matter, detection of, 268, 269
eye, remedy for all diseases of; whiteness in; remedy for; ointment for external part of, 755
eye-brow, sevenfold movement of, 929
eyesight, prescription that strengthens, 778
due to deranged wind; remedy for 772
due to deranged wind and bile; remedy for, 772
due to tumour; remedy for, 774
fever and other ailments, decoction of herbs for, 772
fever with other ailments, remedy for, 773, 774
fevers, remedy for all, 772
fevers and other ailments, remedy for, 774
fine arts, sixty-four varieties of; two divisions of, 926
fines, different kinds of; for different offences, 589-93, 676-79, 681
for various offences, 682-3
fire, as the best sweating agent, 757
a prescription which would enable one to walk on, 770
fire, spark of; words denoting, 988
sphere of; asterisms belonging to, 387
words denoting flames of, 988
words denoting submarine, 988
Fire (god), 60, 215
mode of installation of, 205-11
Fish, Viṣṇu's manifestation as, 3 ff., 9, 129
image of, 116
fisherman, words denoting, 996
fistula, remedy for, 775
ointment for wounds in, ointment which arrests its spread, 767, 768
flagstaff, material for making; length of, 308
consecration of, 308-11
floods, words denoting overflow of, 995
flowers, eight kinds of gestures referred to as; eight different things as seat etc. referred to as, 530
words which mean arrangement of, 1017
food, two parts: one getting secreted and the other getting absorbed, 758
forest, words which mean, 1006
formula, for conquering the three worlds, 396-7
for success in battle, 397-400
formulae, presided over by different gods, and their characteristics, 895
having more than five letters fruitful always, 802
fort, defects of, 626
fortress, to be built on hills, 620
forts, construction of, 576-7
the situation of; the six kinds of, 620
fragrance, word for; word for attractive, 991
word denoting object having good, 992

Friday, for first feeding of a child, 358
for first shave of a child, 359
should not enter the cow-pen on, 361
causes death with certain asterisms, 376
causes afflictions with certain asteri-

sma, 377
inauspicious if coincides with sec-

ond day, 381
Rāhu rules in the east on, 409
friend, the three gains got through a,
621
friends, four kinds of, 621
friendship, qualities of men with
whom king should make; means
of acquiring, 621
fright, origin of the sentiment, 924
fruits, asterism for eating, 358
fruits of action, three, 1072
fumigation, herbs used in, 583-4

fundamental principles, worship of,
291

Gabhastika, a name of the Sun, 136
Gabhastimān, one of the territory,
350
Gabhastimata, a nether world, 353
Gadā, a demon killed by Viśṇu, 334
gadā (mace), used for acts such as
āhata etc., 651
gadā (mace), methods of using of, 652
gadā, a posture, 857

a type of temple, 315

Gadādhara, form of Viśṇu at Gayā,
841
killed Heti and other demons, 334
merits of worshipping, 397
Gadāloka, sacred place at Gayā, 340,
341
Gadāprakāṣālana, sacred place, 340
Gādhi, Indra; was born from Kuśika;
son and daughter of, 749
Gadini, a goddess, 376
Gagana, a deity assigned on the body,
414
Gaganananda deva, worshipped, 414
Gagananandana, a deity, 413
gahana, a posture relating to the riding
of horses, 787
gaja, a type of temple, 315
Gajavakra, an appellation of ele-

phant-faced god, 190,865
galaganda, a disease; remedy for, 766
Galanḍa, letter denoting the divinity,
419
Gālava, a Pāṃcarātra tantra, 106
Gamanopama, explanation of, 941
Gambhirya, an excellence of word;

(see also depth), 944
gambling, different types, 655
rules relating to, 675
evil results of, 627
Gaṇa, worship of, 197
obeisance to, 51
Gaṇacchandhas, description of, 905
Gaṇādhapa, one of the eight forms of
Gaṇapatī, 190, 865
Gaṇakṛīḍa, one of the names of
Gaṇeśa, 190
Gaṇanāyaka, one of the names of
Gaṇeśa, 190
Gaṇapati, elephant-faced god to be
worshipped, 190
different names of, 877
of the form of praṇava, 412
mode of worship of, 876-78
Gaṇapati, eight forms of; worship of,
865-66
Gaṇas, worshipped, 51
ganās, relating to metres, explanation
of, 906
Gaṇḍa, a division of Vīthi, 928
gandā, an adverse period, explanation
of, 382
period of, 383
gandhamālā, a disease, remedy for, 766
gandānta, an adverse period, des-
cription of, 382
Gandhamādana, a monkey, 21
a mountain, 324, 325
a forest, 325
Gaṇdhāra, son of Gandira, sons of,
the descendants of, 747
Gaṇḍhāras, origin of, 747
Gaṇḍhārī, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa,
744
one of the two wives of Dhrṣṭa, 743
wife of Dhrṣṭarāṣṭra, 31
accompanied her husband to the
forest, 36
Gaṇḍhārī, a vein, carries the wind
udāna, functions of, 556
Gandharva, located in a square for
worship, 108
worshipped, 316
Gandharva, the science of, 3
a territory, 350
gandharva, a type of marriage, 435
Gandharvas, born to Ariṣṭa, 47
names of, 987
Citraratha made the ruler of, 47
Kṛṣṇa married the daughter of, 28
milking of the cow in the company
of, 43
ride on the chariot of the Sun, 356
prayer to destroy evil forces of, 84
gandhārasyaka, a gem (?), 641
Gandharvā, spirit possessing the
child in the seventeenth year, symptoms of the child possessed by, offering to appease, 826
Gāṇḍāra, son of Varūtha, son of, 747
Gāṇḍiva the bow got from Fire-god, 32
Gandhivrītta, a division of prose kāvyā, 918
Gaṇēśa, other names of, 190, 987
establishment of image of, 116
mode of worshipping, 189-90
obeisance to, 1
Gaṇēśvara, one of the eight forms of Gaṇapati, 865
Gaṅgā (Gaṅgēś), words denoting celestial, 987
brought down from heavens by Bhagiratha, 737
had Bhīṣma as the son from Saṅtanu, 31, 751
sacred, 350, 491
excellence of, 1074
greatness of, 328-29
greatness of its confluence with Sarasvatī, 327
greatness of its confluence with Gomati, 328
always meritorious, 436
greatness of land adjacent to, 329, 330
water at the time of eclipse getting the sanctity of, 362
purifies the bather, 331
purifies one by mere remembrance, 355
Viṣṇu to be contemplated at the confluence of the river with the ocean, 841
worship of, 197
adored, 50, 88
worshipped, 51
Gaṅgādvāra (Haridvāra), not easily accessible, 330
Gaṅgāviṣṇu, exposition made by, 1074
gañjā, said to be auspicious, 641
gara, an astral combination (kaṇa), 363, 369fn
Garbha, one of the five sons of Viṭatha, 749
Garbhādhāna, a rite, 59, 71, 86, 95, 112
garden, words for, 1006-7
Gārgya, a Pāñcarātatantra, 106
gārhapatyapada, at Gaṇa, 339
garuda, an array, 612
Garuda, born from Viṇatā and Kaśyapa, 46, 63fn
was made as the chief of the birds, 47
Kṛṣṇa as riding, 28, 30
installation of the image of, 173
benefit of worshipping, 343
worshipped, 51 (See also Vainateya)
Garudamaṇḍapa, a shed in a temple, 115
Garudapurāṇa, narrated by lord Viṣṇu in the Tārkṣakalpa, describes the birth of Garuḍa from the Universal Egg, should be given as a gift, 734
Gāruḍi, name of a herb, efficacy of, 378
garumān, a type of temple, 315
Gaṅgā, definition of the metre, 915
Gaṭra, one of the sons of Vasiṣṭha and Urjā, 49
Gauḍiyā, a variety of diction, characteristics of, 927
Gaurī (Pārvatī), renounced by Śiva, 6
seen by Uṣā as sporting with Śiva, 29
image of, 139
installation of image of, 172, 302-3
at Gaṇā, benefit of worship of, 343
to be worshipped, 133
different modes of worship of, 896-99
adored, 1, 51, 52
characteristics of the metre, 913
gaurinavamivrata, mode of practising, 509-10
Gautama, a law-giver, 435
Gāvākṣa, a monkey, 21
Gaya, given as one of the sons of, Īrṇa and Āgneyi, but Śibi according to Viṣṇupurāṇa, 42
a demon, legend relating to, 332-35
son of Dhiṣanā of the family of Agni, 43
a son of Sudyumna, ruled over all the quarters, 735
one of the five sons of Viṭatha, 749
son of Nakta, 323
a monkey, 21
Gaya, a sacred place, 350, 491
ruled by Gaya (Gayāpuri’), 735
extent of, 334
Brahmā’s curse on the brahmans at, 338
mode of pilgrimage to, 335-44
mode of performing śrāddha at, 345-50
Janārdana as ancestors at, 342
merits of performing ancestral rites at, 335
significance and greatness of, 332-35
Gadādhara to be contemplated at, 841
sacredness of image of Brahmā at, 106
Gayaśekāra, at Gayā, obeisance made to 339
Gayānābhi, at Gayā, one should offer pīṇḍa at, 342
Gayāśīras, at Gayā, 337, 342
extent of, 338
Gāyatrī, a metre, 562
number of letters in, 902
the number of letters in a quarter of, 902-3
white coloured, belongs to Agni-
veṣṭagotra, 905
appropriate time for recital of, 916
mantra, name of the gods presiding
over the letters of the colours
associated with, 560-1
mode of reciting, the greatness of,
559-63
use of, 87, 87fn
should be recited, 437
destroys sins when repetition is
made, 491
merits of doing oblations with, 561
explanation of, 563-4
that is known as ajāpā, 557-8
mantra personified as goddess,
white in complexion, born in
the Kātyāyani gotra, 561
letter denoting, 418

gem, in the serpents, auspiciousness of,
561

Geminī, commendable for marriage
when ruled over by certain asterisms,
357
relating to worship of Viṣṇu, 361
good for agriculture, 361,
a special designation of, presence
of Sun in, 362
time taken by the Sun to cross, 384
friendly with Sagittarius, 392

gems, words denoting the place of
origin of, 996
eight kinds of, 283
characteristics of, 640-641
good characteristics of, 641
asterisms suitable for wearing, 359
to be worn by a king, 640
genealogy, words which mean, 1017
germ (in a play), explanation of, 922
gestures, eight kinds of, 530
twelve kinds of, explanation of
five of, 928-9

Ghana, a Rudra, 254
Ghanāntasthā, a female energy, 136
Ghanāyus, a son of Purūravas, 739
Ghanā, a female divinity, 375
ghanṭā, one of the postures of the hand,
857
Ghanṭādevī, a female divinity, 379
Ghanṭākarṇa, image of, 135
Ghanṭāli, an evil spirit which possesses
a child on the third night after
birth, 821
symptoms of the child possessed by,
offering to appease, unguent for
the child possessed by, 821
Ghāṭakacakra, a mystic diagram to
know victory etc., 388-9
Ghaṭotkaca, son of Bhimasena and
Hiḍimbā, 751
Ghora, a form of Rudra, 253
located and worshipped, 292
ghorā, signifies the entry of the Sun in
one of the constellations, 362
Ghorā, a female divinity, worshipped,
375
located on the left tooth, 417
a hell, 1038
Ghorarūpā, a hell, 1038
Ghoṣa, born to Dharma and Lambā,
44
Ghṛḍrikā, one of the daughters of
Tāmrā, 46
Ghrta, son of Dharma, son of, 747
Ghrtyeyu, one of the ten sons of,
Bhadraśva, 748
Ghrṭoda, an ocean surrounding the
Kuśadvipa, 352
gift, a political expedient, three kinds
of, 627
five kinds of, 628
mode of making, 544
suitability of a person to receive, 541
injunctions on the recipient of, 542
to be made to poor and greedy for
winning them, 629
efficacy of making a, 463
becomes futile if made expecting
return, 541
gift of a cow, mode of making and
merits of, 545-46
merits of giving cows as, 547
offering grains as a best, 544
of earth, merits and mode of making,
555-6

gifts, sixteen great, 544-46
different kinds of, merits of giving,
546-52
proportionate to one’s possession, 546
as a means to be employed by the
king, 587
which confer the desired fruits, 552-55
rules relating to making, 538, 539-43
certain rules relating to making, 549
rules relating to accepting, 543
common procedures in making all,
543
the words to be said while making,
543
mode of making, for different
yugas, 543
greatness of making different kinds
of, 544
merits of making, 491, 538, 541, 542
merits of making different kinds of, 556
merits of giving on certain days, 550
meritorious than performing sacrifices, 551
girdle, time for tying of, 359
Girikā, queen of Suhotra, propitiated
Vasiṣṭha and had seven sons, 750
girikariṇikā, flower not to be used in
worship, 529
a herb, 371
girivajra, auspiciousness of, 641
Giti, characteristics of the metre, 906
Gityāryā, characteristics of the metre, 907
glance, three-fold, divided into thirty-
six kinds, 929
goad, words for, 1019
Gobhiṇu, son of Varga, son of, 747
goblins, worshipped, 50
remedy for defects due to, 756
gocarmā, (a measure of surface)
merits of making a gift of, 547
Godāvari, flows from Sahya, 351
Janasrāna on the banks of, 15
greatness of, 328
sacredness of, 350
goddesses, names of different, 420-23
images of, 132-35, 138-39
mode of worship of, 23-4
godhikā, an array, consists of five
units of army, 634
God of Death, synonyms of, 988
gods, forms of, represented by the
vowels and consonants, 873-74
worship of different, 273-75, 952-3
consecration of the images of, 180-83
merits of worshipping different such as Rudra, Viṣṇu etc., 900
gods and goddesses, comprising the
part of a mantra relating to Brahmā, 420
comprising the part of mantra relating to Viṣṇu, 420-21
comprising the part of mantra relating to Śiva, 421-22
installation of images of, 171-3
goitre, a remedy to be used as an
unguent in, 776
gokarna, a flower, 529
gokṣurakā, a herb, 407
Gokula, a place, 27
Gomantaka, a place, 28
Gomati, river, confluence with Gaṅgā
327, 328
Gomatividyā, a sacred formula, efficacy of repeating the, 799
repeated as an atonement, 475
gomeda, a gem, said to be auspicious, 641
Gomedha, a boundary mountain, 351
Gomukhi, a spirit possessing the
child in the third month, symptoms of a child possessed by, offering to appease, bathing the child possessed by, 823
gomūtrikā, an array, a variation of
array called bhoga, 634,
an array, modification of bhoga, 635
Gomūtrikā, one of the bandhas, two
kinds of, description of, 936-7
bandhas, composed in all the metres, 938
gonasas, serpents known as, 807
treatment of poison due to, 818
good deeds, words denoting, 990
good people, commendable acts of, 617-8
Gopāla, beads belonging to Jyoti
class, 894
Gopiśvara, form of Viṣṇu to be con-
templated on the shore of Sindhu
ocean, 842
Gopacāra, at Gayā, 341
gorakṣa, a herb, 406
gosava, a sacrifice, 474
Goṣṭhi, a type of drama, 921
gout, of acute nature, an extraction
of oil of herbs as a remedy for, 775
remedy for, 755, 767
Govardhana, a mountain, 841
govatadvādaśi, mode of practising
the vow of, 512
Govinda, a name of Viṣṇu, 65
characteristics of the form of, 128
auspicious day for making an image of, 215
saluted by Indra, 27
govindadvādaśi, mode of practising the
vow of, 512
govisāṇamudrā, a posture of the hands, 196
govrata, definition of the austerity
termed as, 799
graceful, a mode, explanation of, 933-4
graha, herbs denoted by, 406, 407
grāhāni, one of the prāṇita mudrās, 857
grāhyakaṇṭakapāyana, a posture
relating to riding of horses, 787
grains, eight kinds of, 283
words denoting, and related things, 1021
guidelines for storing and selling, 386-7
grāmaṇi, ride the chariot of Sun, 356
grammatical incorrectness, a defect of word, 947
Grāmyatva, a defect of word, 947
Granthika, beads belonging to the Śiva class, 894
grazing, rules relating to, 671-72
Grdhresvara, at Gayā, to be worshipped, 342
Grdhvakūta, at Gayā, balls of rice to be offered at, 342
Grdhavāta, at Gayā, balls of rice to be offered, 342
green, words denoting, 992
greying of hair, herbs to be used as sternutatory to arrest, 774
gṛharāja, a type of temple, 314
grief, need to discard, 1068
group of gods, words denoting, 986
ground, period within which ownership can be claimed, 657
Grtsapati, one of the two sons of Kapila, brahmins, warriors and tradesmen as descendants of, 749
guardian deities, names and worship of, 284
guḍapāka, a hell, 532
Gūḍārtha, a defect, 944
guḍavrata, merit of practising, 523
guḍucī, a herb, 371, 407
Guha, image of, 106
hunter chief entertained Rāma, 13
Guhvakubjikā, a goddess, 423
Guhyaśaktini, a female divinity, 416
Gulma, one of the siddhas, 414
gumphanā, an embellishment of word, 932
explanation of, three kinds of, 933
gunas, in poetry, the place of, 944
(see also excellence)
Gupta, a kind of Citrakāvya, definition of, 935
Gurjara, (region of), 387
guru, an array, description of, 633
Gutikā, beads belonging to the Savitṛa class, 894
haemoptysis, cause of, 760
haemorrhage, medicines for, 752
remedies which arrest, 776-777
Haihaya, one of the sons of Satajit, son of, 740
Haihayas, descendants of Tālajaṅha, 741
hālāhala, poison, 5
a deadly poison, Viśṇu's tenth manifestation referred to, as for the conquest of; took the poison from Mahēśvara, 746
Halamukhi, characteristics of the metre, 911
Haliśaka, a type of drama 921
Hanśa, beads belonging to Śikhā clars, 894
hamsa, a type of temple, 315
haṁsa bija, mantra, efficacy of locating, 889
Hamsādhiḥka, a monstress possessing the newly born child on the fifth night, symptoms of child possessed by, unguent for the child possessed by, offering to appease, 821
Harisaruta, characteristics of the metre, 911
Harisaritṛtha, at Gayā, 344
hand, employed in two ways—folded and unfolded, thirteen actions of the folded, twenty-four actions of the unfolded, 930
Hanūmat, Rāma taken to Sugriva by, 17
searched the southern direction, 18
crossed the ocean, 19
words spoken to Śitā by, 20
accompanied Rāma to Lāṅkā, 21
killed Dhūmrakṣa, 22
bore Laksmaṇa to Nikumbhāla, 22
brought Śitā to Rāma as directed, 23
figure of, 137
accomplishes all acts, 379
Hara, poison retained by Śiva, 5
one of the eleven forms of Śiva, 45
made as lord of the goblins, 47
letter denoting 418 (See Śiva), harem, words denoting superintend-ent of, 1018
Hari, a manifestation of Viśṇu, 428
manifestation in four forms, 10
form of Viśṇu on Govardhana, 841
different forms of, 47
to be contemplated at Śālagrāma, 841
cause of creation etc. 39
showing the feminine form to Śiva, 6
reference to fight with Śiva, 30
conferred supreme position on Dhrūva, 41
manifested with four hands before being born as Kṛṣṇa, 26
day of waking of, 361
installation of image of, 172
Kṛṣṇa referred to as, 28, 31, 36
sages conducting a sacrifice to, 1
mantra referred to as, 28, 31, 36
name of, 52, 56
to be contemplated, 37
should be adored, 61, 67, 68
remembered, 58
uttering the name of, 71, 73
meditation on, 53, 55
worship of, 75ff
a female divinity to be invoked, 91
haridrā, a herb, 407
Haridvāra, a sacred spot, 327
Haribhā, form of Viṣṇu, 131
Harināplutā, characteristics of the metre, 910
Harinī, characteristics of the metre, 913
hariṇī, a nerve, 316
Harisaila, a boundary mountain, 352
Harissandra, son of Satyarathe; son of, 737
a place at Vārānasi, 330
Harita, a celestial at the time of the 12th Manu, 428
a country, 352
haritā, a herb, 372
Hārita, a law-giver, 455
haritaki, a herb, 407
Havis, one of the sons of Rukmavaca, 741
Haviṣya, a sage, 428
Havā, sons of, 352
Havavāha, (fire) to be worshipped, 316
hay, asterisms good for gathering of, 360
Haya, one of the sons of Satajit, 740
Hayagriva, form of Viṣṇu, 326
image of, 115
Śālagrama called, 125
a demon killed by Viṣṇu, 4
Hayagrīvesa, prayer to, 82
Hayānanā, a female divinity; image of, 138
Hayasirā, daughter of Vṛṣarpan, 46
Hayasiras, form of Viṣṇu, 131
Hayasirasāntantra, a Pāñcaratrāgama, 105, 117 fn. (samhiṭā)
Hayāsya, image of; installation of, 172
head, thirteen ways of movement of; diseases relating to; sternutatory for, 929
Harivarṣa, a mountain, 324
Naśadha given by Priyavarta to, 322
harsh, a mode; explanation of, 933-4
Haryāṅgaka, son of Campa; son of, 748
Haryāśva, one of the two sons of Dṛdhāśva, 736
son of, 757
Hasta, an asterism, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 363, 381, 382, 385, 387, 400
haste, words denoting, 988
hasticchaśya, definition of, 463
hastijīvā, an occult nerve, 253
carries the wind vyāna; functions of, 536
Hastināpura, a city, 37
Jayanta to be worshipped at, 841
Hātaka, a male divinity worshipped, 310
hāva, the collective word for behaviour of women, 995
Havirdhāna, son of Antardhāna and Śikhaṇḍinī; sons of, 43
haviryajña, one of the domestic sacrifices, 7 kinds of, 86, 466
head, ointment for, 755
remedy for fall of hair from, 834
headache, remedy to remove, 777
health, no fortune equal to, 1074
heart, location of, 760
heart, disease, purgatives to be given for, 754
heat, words denoting excessive and little heat, 990
heaven, synonyms of, 986
heaven and earth, interspace between; words denoting, 988
hell, words denoting, 995
hells, the names of different, 1038-39
the nature of different, 530-32
hemajīvha, rite called, 86
hemākṣa, rite called, 86
Hemakūta, country, 322
location of, 324
Hemalamba, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
hemāṅga, rite called, 86
Hemaparvata, mountain, 350
Hemaratha, son of Ketumān; well known as Divodāsa, 749
Hemaśaila, a boundary mountain, 352
hemasūtraka, rite called, 86
herbs, eight kinds of, 283
symbolical numbers denoting, 406
hot and cold, the two kinds of strength of, 762
tastes and qualities of, three flavours of, 761, 762
general rule for making a decoction of, 762
purpose for which used, 406
used in charms, medicines etc., 405-8
which give good complexion, 763
which would subjugate the partner, 833
which would bring happiness and prosperity to the married couple, 833
that should be used for getting a son, 834
heroes, four kinds of; four different kinds of; the three minor companions of, 926
heroic, origin of the sentiment, 929
threefold; accomplished by enthusiasm, 931-2
heroinces, different types of, 926
Hetu, a demon, 334
hetu (cause), an embellishment of senses, 939
explanation of; produced in two ways, 942
Hetuka, a guardian deity, 284
hiccough (hiccup), remedy for, 753, 754, 773, 830
Hidimba, wife of Bhimasena, 751
hill, word denoting; word denoting earth near and above, 996
Hima, country, 322
life in, 323
Himādrī, (Himalaya) 350
Himalayas, mountain, 37 fn., 351
Himavān, location of, 324
Himavat, (Himalaya) 47, 50
Hirās, wife of Adharma; progeny of, 49
Hiranvat, son of Agnidhra; region given to, 322
Hiraṇyā, a female divinity, 230
Hiraṇyagarbha, denotes Brahmā, 40
creation made by, 40 fn
hiraṇyagarbha, a great gift, 544
Hiraṇyaka, a mountain, 324
Hiraṇyakaśipu, a demon; born to Kaśyapa and Diti, 45
brother of Hiraṇyākṣa, 7, 7 fn.
performed penance at Śripurva, 331
reference to his destruction of Viṣṇu, 745
sons of, 26
becoming embryo in the womb of Devala, 26fn
the four sons of, 46
Hiraṇyākṣa, a demon; son of Kaśyapa and Diti, 45
killed by Viṣṇu in his manifestation as a boar, 7, 7 fn, 745
five sons of, 46
progeny mixed with that of Danu in the text, 46 fn
hiraṇyākṣa, a rite, 86
hiraṇyamitra, a rite, 86
hiraṇyānga, a rite, 86
hiraṇyānghri, a rite, 86
hiraṇyapāni, a rite, 86
Hiraṇyaroṇaka, son of Parjanya Prajāpati, 48
hiraṇyāsya, a rite, 86
hiraṇyavarnā, a hymn, 436, 562
hiraṇyavat, a rite, 86
hole, words signifying, 995
horses, four varieties of; methods to train, 789
four different varieties of; such as brahmin etc., 789
certain kinds of gait of, 788-89
auspicious physical features of, 790
inauspicious features of, 790
having certain physical features to be avoided, 789-90
rider should make good the bad qualities in, 785
management of; treatment of the diseases of, 784-89
taming of, 788
means of control, 788
instructions relating to keeping of vicious, 794
four political expediency relating to; and appropriate time for using them, 786
qualities of men expert in handling, 786
preparatory steps before riding, 785
asterisms and seasons commendable for first ride on, 784
seasons forbidden for riding, 784
ability without instruction to ride on, 784
names of different postures relating to riding, 787
instructions relating to riding of, 786-7
instructions relating to riding in the morning and evening, 786
places unsuitable for riding on, 784 should not be whipped soon after mounting, 786
should not be whipped at improper places, 784
concurrence of a person not knowing how to manage a, 786
praise of a person who knows both the good and bad qualities of, 786
food for different breeds of, 788
the food and the quantity of food to be given for, 793-4
drinks for, 792
instructions relating to bathing of, 793
substitute drinks during different seasons for, 793
consecration and location of gods on the bodies of, 784-5
characteristics of, treatment of the diseases of, 789-94
propitiatory rites for curing the ailments of, 794-5
bitten by flies; remedies for, 788
a curative for harassing cough of, 791
emetics for all kinds of diarrhoea of, 791
an oily emetic that makes com-
fortable, 791
remedy for dysentery of, 790-1
remedy for eye diseases of, 792
a potion that removes the fatigue
of, 791
remedy for haemoptysis of, 792
remedies for deranged humours of,
793, 794
remedy for itching of, 792
afflicted by fever should first be
treated with water, 791
remedy for pain due to whipping
of, 792
prescription to remove pain in the
stomach of, 790
beneficial remedy for paralysis of the
tongue of, 792
remedy for swelling due to stiff-
throat of, 791
ointment for swollen (limbs) of,
791
remedy for ulcers of, 792
remedy for passing of blood in urine
of, 791
remedy for a wound of the tendon
or of an ear etc. of, 792
horse (golden), a great gift, 544
horse (golden) and chariot, a great
gift, 544
horticulture, science of, 764-5
hotra, priest for Ṛks, 429
house, good time for building, 360
good asterisms for entering the new,
360
months good for entering, 360
householder, duties of, 431-32
houses, the trees which should be
grown around, 643
Hrada, son of Hrāda, 46
Hṛāda, one of the sons of Hiranyak-
āśipu, 46
Hṛimkāri, a female divinity, 424
Hṛlika, son of Bhoja; ten sons of, 743
Hṛṣikeśa, a form of Viṣṇu, 65
form of Viṣṇu at Kubjāmra, 841
at Gayā worshipped, 343
invocation to, 52, 82
huhu, a vein; carries the wind
devadatta, 556
humility, as cause of statesmanship,
617
need for practising, 618
humours, the qualities of the three,
759
get increased or abated in the dif-
ferent seasons, 759
characteristics of men having in
excess one of the three, 1033
the nature of people having in
excess one kind of, 760
get increased or abated according
to the quality of the food, 759
as capable of coursing through the
entire body, 760
cause and symptoms of the deran-
gement of different, 760
the defects due to, 758
certain practices which would re-
move each one of the three, 764
remedies for diseases due to derange-
ment of, 761
Huṁkāra, one of the Yoganis; image of,
138
Hutahavyāvāha, one of the sons of
Dhara, 44
Hutāśā, one of the Yoganis; image of,
138

Ibhūya (Gaṇeśa), worship of the
image of, 215
Itchā, a female divinity, 292
Idā, a female energy, 136
idā, a vein; carries the wind prāṇa;
functions of, 536
established on the left side of the
body, 557
idol, conservation of, 152-55
ignorance, words denoting, 991
Ihāmṛga, a type of drama, 921
Ikṣu, an ocean, 324
Ikṣvāku, one of the eight sons of
Vaivasvata Manu, 9, 735
descendants of family of, 738
Ilā, one of the Yoganis; image of,
138
Ilā, daughter of Manu; later changed
as a male, 735
Ilāvṛta, Meru given by Agnidhra to,
322
Ilāvṛta, a mountain, 324
ilusions, different kinds of, 629
image, consecration of, 283-94
preliminary, consecration of, 155-6
image of Śiva, installation of, 294-302
image of Vāsudeva, installation of, 161-
64
images, renovation of decayed, 1843
pedestals of, 123
impartiality, commended, 1073-4
impure, words denoting, 996
impurities, five kinds of general, 947
incantations, description of, 409-11
of five kinds, 896
of different kinds; appropriate
period for practising, 896
effects of evil; means of getting
relief from, 843-5
incessant rain, words denoting, 989
incident, as the body of the drama
two varieties of, 922
indeclinables, the different meanings
of the various, 996-1000
Indication, explanation of; five kinds
of, 943
indifference, a political expedient, 587,
627
explanation of, 629
indigestion, remedy for, 776
Indra, synonyms of, 987
the word Parjanya denotes, 40
name of the mansion of, 987
words denoting the club of, 987
name of the chariot of, 987
brought the chariot for Yudhisthira, 38
name of the charioteer of, 22 fn
Diti's desire to get a vanquisher of,
47 fn
Indrajit as the conqueror of, 24
revived the monkeys, 23
conquest of Kṛṣṇa over, 28
Arjuna's obstruction of rain caused
by, 32
Maruts as allies of, 47
festivities for, 27
day of waking of, 361
restored to status by Rāja, 740
kingdom restored by Viṣṇu to, 745
Viṣṇu worshipped by residents of the
world of, 37
praised the goddess, 26
praise of Śrī made by, 49
Indra, image of, 137
pervades the limbs, 65
worship of the image of, 215
obeisance made to, 1
worshipped, 51, 52, 66
offering made to, 274
herb denoted by, 406
herbs made use of by, denotes the
asterism Pūrvāśāha, 407
Indradvipa, one of the territories in
Bhārata, 350
Indradyumna, son of Tejas, 323
Indrajit, a demon; Hanūmat searched
the house of, 19
Rāma and Lākṣaṇa fainted on
account of the weapon used by;
was killed by Lākṣaṇa, 22
known so on account of the con-
quest of Indra, 24
Indrāni, other names of, 987
image of; worshipped on the mar-
rriage day, 435
one of the goddesses, 415
indrāni, a herb, 371
a herb worn on the body for pro-
tection, 378
Indrapramiti, Ṛgveda imparted to, 429
Indravajrā, characteristics of the
metre, 912
Indravajrā, mixed varieties are for-
med from, 912
Indravati, characteristics of the
metre, 912
Indu, one of the female energies, 136
infantry, functions of; ground sui-
table for; to protect each foot of
elephant (men), 632
infants, recipes for the diseases of,
820-826
inference, word for, 991
inflammation, of the glands of the
neck; remedy for, 776
of anus; remedy to remove pain in,
777
inflections, two kinds of—sup and tin,
957
use of the different, 971-73
Īṅguḍi, a tree, 13
initiation, mode of performing, 67-74
purificatory, 235-37
that secures nirvāṇa, 257-62
of principles, 262-3
injury, ten kinds of, 1041
inquiry, word denoting, 991
insanity, five causes for, 826
remedy for removal of, 773
insects, remedy for venom due to all,
819-20
installation, of the deity, 87ff
installation, five kinds of, 266
of deities, 116-118
of an image; five divisions of, 147-49
of images presiding over five ele-
ments, 271
of a linga, 278-83
suitable period for, 278-9
of the image of Gaurī, 302-3
of the image of Śiva, 266-72, 294-
302
of the image of Sun-god, 303-4
of an image of Vāsudeva, 161-64
instrument, two kinds of—external
and internal, 970-71
insult, words denoting, 993
intellct, words denoting; retentive
power of; word for, 991
interest, rules relating to period of, 673
intoxication, remedy for removal of,
773
investiture of, fibres of damana, 225-
26
investiture of sacred thread, for the
deity, 87ff
time for, 359
for all gods, 100-101
for Viṣṇu, 98 ff
invocation, that routs the enemy, 394-5
Irâ, grass and other things as production of, 46
Iśa, propitiation of, 176
worshipped, 316
Iśa, a herb denoted by, 407
Iśśana, a name denoting Rudra, 50
worshipped, 51
a form of Siva worshipped, 51
worship of the image of, 116
Iśāni, worshipped, 317
iṣṭa, explanation of, 539
Iśvāra, presiding deity of an element, 271
Iśvāra (Śiva), adored, 1
Iśvāra, a year of the Hindu Calendar, 404
iśvāra, a herb denoted by, 406
iśvāri, name of a herb, 378
itch, dry spreading 755; remedy for, 769
iṭhāśa, definition of the term, 992
Jagati, a metre, 902, 905
white coloured; belongs to Vāsiṣṭhagotra, 905
the number of letters in a quarter of, 903
appropriate time for recital of, 916
metres belonging to the class of, 912
Jagatipaṇkti, composition of, 904
Jagatprabhu, form of Viśṇu at Vimala, 841-2
Jaghanacapalā, characteristics of the metre, 906
Jāhmavī, (river Ganges) crossed by Rāma, 13
image of, 133
Jahnu, son of Ajamiḍha and Keśiṇī; son of, 749
names of the four sons of, 750
Jaigṛṣavaya, exposition made by, 1074
Jaimini, disciple of Vyāsa, 429
Jājali, represents a branch of Atharvaveda, 730
Jala, an ocean, 324
Jālābandha, one of the varieties of Gomūtrikā bandha, 937
Jalada, son of Hayṛa, 352
Jaladhara, a boundary mountain, 352
Jālandhara (region of), 387
Jālandhara, mountain, 412, 414
Jalaśayin, form of Viśṇu at Nandā, 842
Jalodhaṭagati, characteristics of the metre, 912
Jamadagni, Viśṇu’s manifestation as Bhāṛgava, son of, 8, 9
conquered by Rāma, 11
Jāmadagnyaka, image of, 115
Jāmbavat, name of a person who accompanied Rāma, 21
killed the lion that killed Prasena, 743
Jāmbavati, daughter of Jāmbavân, 743
one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
birth of Sāmba to Kṛṣṇa and, 29
Yādavas dressed up Sāmba, son of, 36 fn
Jambha, a demon, 6, 317
Jambha, a demon; offering made to, 109, 275
Jambī, a river, 324
jambī, a tree, 324
jambī, fruit; dvīpa gaining the name on account of, 324
Jambūdvipa, one of the seven continents, 323
given by Priyavrata to Agnīdhra, 322
location of, 324
an appellation on account of jambī fruits, 324
extent of, 351
division of, 322
jāmitra, the seventh sign of the zodiac, 388
Janaka, king of Mithilā, 10
exposition made by, 1074
Jānaki (Sītā), married by Rāma, 11
Rāma’s search of, 17
monkeys sent in directions other than the south could not find, 18
words spoken by Hanūmat to, 19
Rāma’s reaction on seeing the jewel as if he has seen, 20
Āṅgada’s advice to Rāvaṇa to return, 21
Janaloka, distance of, 354
Janamejaya, son of Puraṇjiyaya; son of, 747
son of Puru, son of, 748
a descendant of Parikṣit, son of, 750
Jānārāma, epiteth of Viśṇu, 84
form of Viśṇu at Kubjāmra, 841
at Gayā, 337
a sālagrāma, 125
Jana, one of the worlds; worshipped, 79
Janasthāna, on the banks of river Godāvarī; Rāma’s stay at, 15
janma, one of the tārābalas, 359
Janmāṣṭami, merits of practising, 506
Jantu, son of Puruhūta, son of, 742
son of Somaka, son of, 750
japā, a flower, benefit of worshipping with, 529
Japyeśvara, at Vārānasi, 330
Jarāsandha, son of Sambhava, son of, 750
Mathurā was besieged by, 28
Jārukhya, one of the sons of Vasudeva, and Devaki; was killed by Karṇa, 744
Jarā, one of the progeny of Mṛtyu, 49
Jāta, a posture relating to archery, 646
posture advocated, 646
Jātadevā, a spirit possessing the child in the eighth year, symptoms of a child possessed by, offering to appease, bathing and fumigation for child possessed by, 825
Jaṭādhara, form of Viṣṇu on Ganges, 841
Jātakarma, rite after the birth of a child, 432
done for purification, 481
as a Vedic rite, 59
oblation made for purification with, 71
a rite to be performed, 86
Jāṭiyu, a vulture wounded by Rāvana, 16
told Rāma about Rāvana's abduction of Sītā; death of, 17
words spoken by Śampāti, brother of, 18
Jaṭāhara, a boundary mountain, 325, 326
Jāti, a division of Padya; characteristics of, 919
jāti, greatness of the herb, 378
jaundice, remedy for removal of, 767
javānīkā, one of the herbs, 407
Jaya, a year of the Hindu almanac, 405
one of the eight forms of Gaṇapati, 865
form of Viṣṇu at Jayanti, 841
jaya, a pitcher, 270
Jaya, one of the female divinities, 51, 375
one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
jayā, a stone, 269
a nerve, 316
Jayacakra, a diagram for finding victory; description of, 389-90
Jayadeva, a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
Jayadhvaja, one of the sons of Kārttivirya; was great among Āvantsyas; son of, 741
Jayadratha, son of Bṛhātmavat; son of, 748
Jayanta, a male divinity, 107
worship of, 273
form of Viṣṇu at Hastināpura, 841
a minister of king Daśaratha, 11
Jayanti, letter denoting, 417
image of, 138
name of a place, 841
Jayantikā, a female divinity, image of, 138
Jejovati, a female divinity, 424
Jimūta, son of Vyoma, son of, 742
a country, 352
a variety of Daṇḍaka; formation of, 915
Jiraka, a herb, 407
Jiva, denotes Jupiter, worshipped, 52
Jānā, a female divinity, 292
—letter denoting, 418
Jānāmundrā, a posture made with the hands, 73
Jānāsāgara, one of the Pāñcarātra āgamas, 106
Jṛmbhana, a missile, 30
judges, swerving from codes are punishable, fine for swearing double that of a quarrel, 656
junctures, the five kinds of, importance of, 922
Jupiter, words denoting, 989
image of, 137
is contemplated as yellow, 828
chariot of, 356
distance of Mars and Saturn from, 354
letter presided over by, 374
characteristic of a person born in the house of, 392
period (years) of influence of, 363, 393
the part of a day presided over by, 381
a period called mahājājāśṭi on the basis of location of, 362
occupying certain constellations should be avoided for building houses, 360
not recommended for marriage when set or retrograde or transiting, 357
not commended for Upanayana when set, 359
in the tenth house to be avoided, 384
in the second and seventh houses indicate happiness, 383
gives success, 377
justice, its four feet, four places and four means; eight parts of; three sources of; two sorts of statements for; two parties of; two kinds of issues for, 653
administration of, 653-58
jvala, an occult nerve, 316
jvalagardahaka, a disease, 84, 84fn.
jvalini, one of the prajna-mudras, 857
Jvara, personified and worshipped, 292
Jyamagha, one of the sons of Rukma-kavaca; a hen-pecked husband; names of the wife and son of, 741
Jyestha, month of, 360, 362, 386
Jyesthaa, a female divinity, 51, 201, 292, 374, 412, 413
an asterism, 358, 360, 361, 362, 363, 381, 382, 385, 388, 400
jyesthaasaman, a hymn; a pañktipavana should know, 349
Jyoti, one of the four kinds of rosary beads; the four divisions of, 894 characteristics of the metre, 907
jyotirasa, a gem (?), 641
Jyotisa, science of, 336-63
four lightnings according to, 45fn
Jyotismat, ruled Kusa, 322
names of the sons of, 352
Jyotismati (Jagati), a metre; composition of, 904
Jyotisoma, a sacrifice, 64fn
Jyotsna, a female divinity, 292
Kabandha, a demon killed by Rama, 17
Kaca, Suka’s curse on, 25fn
Kaccha, a region; installation should not be done by men from, 106
kacchapa, one of the treasures, 111
Kadamba, a tree, 324
a flower, 529
Kadrur, progeny of, 46
Kaikasi, wife of Visravas; progeny of, 24, 24fn
Kaikeya, one of the four sons of Sibi, 747
Kaikhyi, birth of Bharata to, 10
was informed about the coronation of Rama by, 11, 12
Dasaratha’s words to, 13
reproached by Bharata, 14
was paid respects by Rama, 23
Kailasa, mountain, 325
kailasa, a class of temple; circular shaped, 314
the temples belonging to the class of 315
Kaka, beads belonging to Jyoti class, 894
kakapada, an array; consists of four units of army, 634
Kakaalata, at Gaya, 341
Kaki, a daughter of Tamra, 46
Kakini, a female divinity, 415
Kakoli, a evil spirit which possesses a newly born child on the fourth night, symptoms of the child possessed by; offering to appease; ungent for the child possessed by, 821
Kakub, a variety of Usnik; the number of letters in each pada of, 903
Kakudmat, a boundary mountain, 352
Kakudmati, composition of the metre, 904
Kakudmin, an alias of Raivata, 736
Kakushta, born in the line of Iksubhaka, 9
from Vikusha, 736
Kalaa, a female divinity, 52
kalaa, a measure, 134
Kala, death; Drona compared with, 35
a guardian deity, 284
son of Dhruta, 44
son of Dirghabhama, 737
Kala, a monstrous seizing the child in the ninth year; symptoms of child seized by; offering to appease, 825
kaladhya, one of the kinds of mantras of Siva, 873
description of, 875
Kalaharmi, a spirit possessing the child in the tenth year; symptoms of the child possessed by; offering to appease; fumigation when the child is affected by, 825
Kalaika, presiding deity of place of worship of planets, 467
Kalaikaa, one of the daughters of Vaisvanara, 46
Kalaikanti, a female divinity, 202
Kalaikantri, a female divinity; image of, 138
Kalanabha, one of the sons of Hiranyaka, 46fn
Kalanala, a divinity; worshipped, 414
son of Sabhanara; son of, 747
Kalanjara, mountain; sacredness of, 328, 349
Kalapa, division of poetry called, 919
nature of; employs Kasiiki vrata, 920
Kalara, night of destruction, 13fn
personified as a divinity; offering made to, 395
a hell, 1038
Kalasa, a type of temple, 315
Kalasamihaka, a Rudra, 255
Kalasutra, sub-division of a hell, 532, 1039
Kalavikarinii, a female divinity, 51
Kalavikarinii, a goddess, 201
Kalayavana, a demon, 28, 28fn
Kalayukti, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
Kālaśa, a linga, 343
Kāli, repetition of the name of the goddess, 411
worshipped, 51, 201
name of Śatyavati, wife of Śantanu, 751
Kālikā, a river; greatness of confluence of, 328
Kālināga, country of; asterisms indicating destruction of, 387
installation rite should not be done by one born in, 106
one of the sons of Bali, 747
Kāliyuga, Śiva as presiding over all the regions of, 337
conduct of the people at the end of, 108
Kalki, Viṣṇu's manifestation as, 38, 39
figure of, 130
Kalmāśapāda, son of Śrutasvarṇa; son of, 737
Kalpa, science of, 2
Kalpa(s), significance of the term, 1018
manifestations of Viṣṇu, innumerable in the different, 39, 39fn
reference to Bāna's propitiation of the goddess in the previous, 46
dissolution at the end of, 3
Kalpalata, a great gift, 544
Kalpaśa, a great gift, 544
Kalpaśvatā, mode of practising the vow of, 522
Kalyāṇa, a form of Rudra, 253
Kāma (god of love), synonyms of, 986
Kāma, Pradyumna identified with, reborn as Pradyumna, 29, 29fn
one of the siddhas, 414
kāma, one of the puruṣārthas protected by Rāma, 23
mantra which bestows, 53
Kāmadhenu, divine cow in the possession of Jamadagni, 9
water on earth identified with, 337
Kāmadhenu, golden, a great gift, 544
Kamalā, a female divinity; worshipped, 413, 414
Kāmāṅgadāvīni, Kubjikā addressed as, 413
Kāmarūpa, augury foreboding destruction of, 387
installation should not be done by those born in, 106
a mountain; worshipped, 412, 414
kāmarūpa, see anaṃgatayodāsī
Kambalabarhiṣ, one of the sons of Babhrū, 742
son of Devarṣa; son of, 743
Kambalabarhiṣ, son of Marutta; son of, 741
Kāma, the eldest among the sons of Ugrasena, 742
the destruction of the children of Devaki by, 26, 26fn
reference to killing of Pralamba, an asura friend of, 30fn
attempts made to kill Kṛṣṇa by, 27
Śambara as a companion of, 29fn
was killed by Kṛṣṇa, 28
Kanaka, son of Durgama; sons of, 740
Kanakā, a female divinity; worshipped, 230
Kanakeśa, at Gayā, 339
Kanakhala, a sacred place; glory of, 327
location of, 336
kāñcanārā, flower not to be used in worship, 529
Kāñci, installation should not be done by those born in, 106
kāñciyamaka, one of the Yamakas, 935
Kandarpa, god of love; worshipped, 109
Kandarpānātha, a male divinity; worshipped, 415
Kandu, a sage, 43
Kāṇka, Yudhiṣṭhira disguised as, 33
a boundary mountain, 352
kaṅkola, given as an offering, 94
Kāṅku, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742
kāntā, a herb, 372
a nerve, 316
kaṇṭa, herb, 407
Kaṇṭi, a form of Hari, 91
an embellishment of sound and sense; explanation of, 942
Kaṇṭotpiḍā, characteristics of the metre, 913
Kaṇva, son of Pratiratha; son of, 748
Kāṇvas, a branch of Yajurvedins, 429
Kāṇvāśrama, glory of, 327
Kāṇvi, a branch of Yajurveda, 730
Kanyā, a constellation, 367
(See also Virgo)
kanyādāna, one of the four acts relating to a marriage, 434
kanyasa, a variety of prāṇayāma, 1044
Kapālamocana, a sacred place, 328
Kapālin one of the seven (Rudras), 45
Kapālinī, a female divinity; worship of; letter denoting, 417
Kaparda, matted hair of Śiva, 987
Kapardinī, benefit of worshipping, 343
Kapardin, one of the eleven forms of (Rudra), 45
Kapila, form of Viṣṇu on the banks of the eastern ocean, 841
enunciation made by, 1073
a class of men in the Śāmaladvipa, 332
one of the sons of Jyotismat, 352
one of the three sons of Dhundhumāra, 736
two sons of, 749
Kapilā, a female energy, 136, 424
at Gayā, 341
a class of cow; mode of worshipping, 212-14
kapilā, one of the lightnings, 45fn
Kāpila, a Pāṇcarātra āgama, 106
Kapota, beads belonging to the Śiva class, 894
Kapotaromā, son of Dhiṣṭi; son of, 742
kara, a measure, 107
kāraka, explanation of the term, 970
Kārakabhrāṇa, an impurity, 947
karāla, a hell, 532
Karāli, a goddess; worshipped, 375, 413, 416, 424
karāli, a mudrā, 857
Karālikā, a hell, 1038
Karālin, a guardian deity, 284
Karambhaka, son of Śakunti, son of, 742
Karana, a measure of time; correction for, 369, 369fn
Karandham, son of Traiśāni; son of, 747
Karāṇikini, image of, 138
Karatoyā, a river, 328
karavīra, a flower, 529
Karaviraka, one of the sons of Kanaka, 740
Kardama, Prajāpati, father of Śaṅkhapād, 47
two daughters of, 41, 41fn
Kramapādika given in Agnipuruṣa instead of, 49fn
Kardamāla, at Gayā, 342
Karka, a serpent; image of, 137
Karkari, a water jar, 68
Karkaśāṇī, an array; consists of three units of army, 634
Karkaṭaka, a constellation 367, 368
(See also Cancer)
karkaṭi, a herb, 406
a flower; not to be used for Śiva, 529
karketana, a gem, 641
Karkoṭaka, one of the eight chief serpents, 415
the number of heads of, 807
Karmadhārāya (compound), seven kinds of; examples of, 974-75
Karṇa, born of Kunti; became a dependent of Duryodhana, 32
aided Duryodhana in his dice play, 33
killed the warriors of Pāṇḍavas and was killed by Arjuna, 35
son of Viṣvajit; son of, 748
a type of drama, 921
Karṇāditya, at Gayā; worshipped, 339
Karṇamoṭani, goddess; incantation of, 375
Karṇanti, characteristics of, 934
karṇavedha, time for, 359
karṇikāra, a flower, 529
karṇa, a measure, 408
kārṣika, a weight, 209
Kārtavīryārjuna, son of Kṛtavira greatness of, 740, 741
had thousand arms and was valorous, 8
the names of five foremost among hundred sons of, 741
Jamadagni killed by the sons of, 9
Kārttika, benefit of purchasing grains in the month of, 386
Kārttikavrata, for Viṣṇu; mode of practising, 522-3
Kārttikeya, name of Kumāra, as he was son of Kṛttikā, 44
benefit of offering homa to, 339
benefit of worshipping, 343
Karūṣa, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 735
Karūṣas, were born from Karūṣa; were of warrior caste, 736
kāśa, a flower, 529
Kaseru, one of the nine territories, 350
an advice to stay at, 390
Paunḍraka as the ruler of, 28fn
Kāśi, a sacred place, 491, 841
Kāśīrāja, Sutanu as daughter of, 28fn
Ambikā and Ambālikā as daughters of, 31
kaśmala, a hell, 532
Kāśmirā, name of a region, 387, 841
installation not to be done by those born in, 106
Kaṣṭātva, a defect of a word, 947
Kaśyapa, a sage, son of Marici, 9, 735
married thirteen daughters of Dakṣa, 44
father of Sun, 735
progeny of (through Diti), 7fn, 45
Rudras as sons of Śurabhi and, 44fn
Danu's propitiation of for offspring, 47
Garuḍa born to Vinatā and, 63fn
Pulomā and Kālakā as wives of, 46
earth given by Paraśurāma to, 9
goddess earth addressed as related to, 112
Viṣṇu's manifestation as a dwarf as a son of Aditi and, 745
manifested as Vasudeva, 744
his view relating to a metre, 913
Kathā, a division of the prose kāvya; characteristics of, 919
Kathāṅikā, a division of the prose kāvya; definition of, 919
Kathi, a branch of Yajurveda, 730
Kathodghāta, a division of Āmukha; explanation of, 922
Katumukha, one of the sons of Viśvāmitra, 749
Kāṭiśa, letter denoting, 418
kauṭukandā, a herb, 372
Kāṭyāyana, sage, 345
śraddha rite as narrated by a law-giver, 455
kāulava, a karana, 362, 369fn
Kauśeṣa, a male divinity, 413
Kauli, prayer made to goddess, 413
Kauḷiśāṅnātha, a male divinity, 413
Kauṃāra, the ninth creation known as, 48
Kauṃāri, a mother goddess, 139fn, 411, 415
prayed, 379, 399
image of, 133
Kau-modakī, a mace, 128
kaumudavrata, mode of practising and merits of, 524, 537
to be practised in the bright fortnight of āśvayujī, 537
Kauntali, characteristics of, 934
Kaunti, characteristics of, 934
Kauravas, origin of, 31
Kauśalyā, Rāma's birth from Daśaratha and, 10
was informed by Rāma about the coronation, 11
bowed to by Rāma before leaving for the forest, 13
Daśaratha's narration of the past curse on him to, 14
was saluted by Rāma after returning from the forest, 23
one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
Kauśika, one of the sons of Vidarbha; son of, 741
one of the two sons of Kapila, 749
Kauśikī, one of the modes, 928
Kauṣṭubha, gem, 6, 51, 55, 63, 99
Kauṭhumā, a branch of Śāmaveda, 730
Kauṭsa, sage for the hymn citram devānām, 563
Kāverī, a river; greatness of, 328
installation should not be done by those born in the region near, 106
river, confluence with Narmadā, 331
Kavi, one of the sons of Manu and Nādvalā, 42
Kāvyā, a type of drama, 921
kāvya, definition of; three kinds of; definition of prose; three divisions of, 918
five divisions of prose, 919
Kedāra, one of the holy places, 330
a linga; benefit of worshipping, 343
Keralas, origin of, 747
Kesaracala, group of mountains, 325, 325fn
have abodes of gods, 326
Keśari, a monkey that accompanied Rāma to Lanka, 21
a boundary mountain, 352
Keśava, a name of Viṣṇu, 65
characteristics of the form of, 127
killed the demon Hayagriva, 4
form of Viṣṇu at Mathurā, 841
Keśi, a demon in the form of a horse; killed by Kṛṣṇa, 27
Keśini, wife of Ajamīḍha, 749
Ketaki, a flower, 529
not to be used for worshipping Śiva, 530
Ketu, form of, 137
the form that is to be contemplated, 828
chariot of, 356
worshipped, 52
Ketumāla, a mountain, 325
a country, 325
Viṣṇu as Varāha in, 326
Western countries given by Agni-drha to, 322
Ketumān, son of Dhanvantari; son of, 749
Ketumāt, son of Rajas; was made the protector of waters, 48
Khadga, a male divinity; worshipped, 414
khadga, a posture, 857
Khadjgadeva, one of the siddhas, 414
Khadjgeśa, letter denoting, 419
khadira, a tree, 407
khalkāra, a posture of the horse, 787
khamalankītra, one of the kinds of mantras of Śiva, 873
description of, 875
Khandaṅkathā, a division of prose kāvya; contained in the Kathā in the catuṣpadī, 919
Khandaṅava a forest, 32
Khandaṅkīya, a king of Mithilā, 1060
Khāñja, characteristics of the metre, 911
Khara, demon brother of Śūrpaṇakhā; ruled Janasthāna, 15, 15fn
a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
Khasa, Yākṣas and demons born from, 47
khātaka, an array formed by modification of daṅga, 634
Khaṭi, a place worthy to be seen, 640
Khaṭṭara, a place worthy to be seen, 640
khavṛkṣa, a type of temple, 315
Khecarā, a goddess, 424
Khecari, a goddess, 424
Khīṁkhiṅi, a female divinity to be worshipped, 412
Khyātī, one of the sons of Čuru and Āgni, 42
a daughter of Dakṣa; married Bṛāgu, 48
progeny of, 49
Kicaka, brother-in-law of Virāṭa; was killed by Bhīmasena, 33, 33fn
kilakiṅcita, a kind of gesture, 929
killer, definition of, 485
killing, definition of, 485
words denoting, 1017
Kimpuruṣa, Hemakīṭa was given by Agnideva to, 322
characteristics of the region called, 323
country; no misery in, 326
a mountain, 324
kinnāuka a flower, 529
Kindama, a sage; cursed Pāṇḍu, 32fn
king, words denoting, 994
mode of performing the coronation of, 566-68
should be endowed with modesty, 617
the qualities of, 619
the seven qualities of, 683
code of righteous conduct for, 588
vices of, 627
vices which should be avoided by a, 626
aggregate of six things to be given up by, 617
compared to the sun, moon etc., 588
strategies to be employed by, 606-7
the six expedients used by, 607-8
general duties of, 579-81, 584-6
duties of, 619, 621-22
daily duties of, 608-9
duties in the harem, 581-82
should protect himself and the kingdom, 622
should protect the people, 674
means of protecting, 577
guidelines for employing men of good conduct and ability by, 573-5
to make treaties with whom, 623
twelve circles of friends and enemies relating to, 605, 622
details relating to payment of share of gains to, 674
the four obligatory acts of; relating to wealth, 617
should worship those who carry banners and weapons, 639
when should a battle be begun by, 623-624
the sixteen kinds of war to be avoided by a, 623
rites preceding the march of, 609-12
kingdom, the seven constituents of, 605, 618
sovereignty as the most important means for, 619
kings, rites to be performed in a year by, 722-25
kinnaras, synonyms of, 988
image of, 137
Kintughna, a karaṇa, 363, 369
Kirti, a female energy; worshipped, 90
wife of Jayanta, 739
Kirtimān, one of the sons of Vasudeva and Devaki; killed by Kaśīva, 744
Kiṣkindhā, Sugriva made ruler of, 17, 18
a place; form of Viṣṇu to be worshipped at, 841
kitchen, words related to, 1021
knots, on the sacred thread, names of; number of, 216
knowledge, word for, 991
relating to science; word for, 991
relating to unreality of world; words for, 991
doubtful; words referring to, 991
false; words denoting, 991
conclusive; words for, 991
two kinds of—parā and aparā, 2
the foremost, 455
relating to Brahman; the greatness of, 1059
the different virtues considered as, 1070
state of persons who had gained, 1074
as means for realizing the identity of soul and Brahman, 1076
merits of gaining, 1077
Kodraka, a boundary mountain, 352
Kolāhala, a demon; was subdued by Viṣṇu in his eleventh manifestation, 745, 746
Kolāhala, a hell, 1038
Kolas, origin of, 747
Kolbagiri, a sacred place, 328
Komalatva (softness), an excellence of, 945
Krodana, installation not to be done by people born in, 106
augury indicating the destruction of, 387
Kosa, contains elegant verses of great poets, 920-21
two divisions of, 921
Kosala, installation should not be done by people born in, 106
augury indicating the destruction of, 387
Kotacakra, mode of drawing etc, 383-6
kotihoma, mantras and materials for; mode of performing; merits of performing, 426
Kotisa, at Kototirtha; worshipped, 341
worshipped, 414
Kotitirtha, a sacred spot, 327, 330
Kotitirtha, at Gayā, 341
offering to be made at, 344
Kraca, a hell, 532
Krama, a form of Rudra, 252
Kramapadika, son of Pulaha and Kramā, 49
Kranti, a female divinity, 91
Kratha, one of the sons of Vidadha; son of, 741
Krathana, a monkey that accompanied Rama to Laksā, 21
Kratu, a sage; a mind-born son of Brahma, 41, 42
Bālakhilyas were born from, 49
one of the sons of Uru and Agneyi, 42
Krauca, a continent, 323
given to Dyutimān by Priyavrata, 322
rulers of; ocean around, 352
a mountain, 352
Krauncapada, characteristics of the metre, 914
Krauncapāda, at Gayā, 342
Kraushtuki, an authority in prosody, 903
Krccha, an expiation; explanation of, 482
an atonement for eating food from certain people, 471
for officiating as priest for degraded person, 479
for mendicants, 481
period of observance for kings and others, 486
to be observed at the six-monthly rite, 488
to be observed for having committed sins, 489
as a means of testing one's strength, 533
krccha candrayaṇa, an expiation, 477
krccha santāpana, an expiation, 477
krccrhātkrccha, an expiation, 479
explanation of, 482, 799
Kriya, a female divinity, 292, 424
Kriyabhramsa, an impurity, 947
Kriyasakti, letter denoting, 418
kṛkara, a life-force carried by the vein alambusā, 556
functions of, 557
Kṛmi, one of the four sons of Bhajamana, 742
wife of Uśinara, 747
son of Kṛmi and Uśinara, 747
Kṛmila, one of the five kings born from Bāhyāśva, 749
Krodha, born from Mrtyu, 49
Krodha, animals were born from, 46
Krodhana, a year of the Hindu Calendar, 405
Krodhanā, image of, 138
Krodhisā, letter signifying, 419
Kroṣṭu, one of the sons of Yadu, 740
the race of; in whose race Lord Hari himself was born, 741
son of, 741
Kṛpa, one of those who survived in the (Bhārata) battle, 36
one of the pairs born from Satyadhṛk, 750
Kṛpanā, image of, 138
Kṛpi, one of the pairs born from Satyadhṛk, 750
Kṛṣāśva, the celestial weapons as the progeny of, 45
Kṛṣeyu, one of the ten sons of Bhadrāśva, 748
Kṛṣṇa, manifestation of Viṣṇu as, 25-31
appeared for the destruction of demons, 745
born to Vasudeva and Devaki to remove oppression on the earth, 26, 744
entrusted to Nanda by Vasudeva, 27
reference to Pralamba approaching, 30
fnn
came to Gomantaka from Mathura, 28
destruction of Kālayavana by, 28
story relating to Aśṭāvakra's blessings on the nymphs to become wives of, 37
some names among the sixteen thousand wives of, 744
married Satyabhāmā, 743
the genealogy of, 25, 29, 744
killed Šatadhanu and recovered the
gem and entrusted to Akrūra, 743
recovered the syamantaka gem
from Jámbván and married
Jámbavati, son of, 743, 744
exoneration of, 743
story relating to Aniruddha, grand-
son of, 30
story of Bhārata, describing the
greatness of, 31
became the charioteer of Arjuna, 32
birth of a son to Subhadrā, sister
of, 33
encouraged Arjuna to fight, 34
survived the Mahābhārata war, 36
in whose absence the chariot etc. of
the Pándavas were lost, 37
the mark on the chest of, 51
letters denoting, 63
name of the conch of, 63 fn
form of Viṣṇu, 841
name to be repeated at Dvārakā, one
of those assigned on the body in
worship, 414
Kṛṣṇa, one of the six sons of Dhiṣanā, 43
Kṛṣṇa, one of the sons of Kārtavirya,
741
Kṛṣṇa, a class of men in the Śālmalas
Dvipa, 352
Kṛṣṇā, one of the female divinities
invoked, 230
Kṛṣṇā, a flower, 529
Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana, begetting sons
through the wife of Vicitraviryaka,
751
Kṛṣṇāṣṭami, mode of practising the
vow of, 507-8
Kṛṣṇaveṇi, a river; flows from Sahya,
351
Kṛṣṇa, an attendant of Śiva, 201
Kṛṣṭāgni, one of the sons of Kānaka,
740
Kṛṣṭamālā, river; flows from Malayā,
351
story relating to Manu’s libation
at, 3
kṛṣṭamāla, a herb, 407
kṛṣṭānja, a herb, 406
Kṛṣṇānta, god of death; worshipped,
316
Kṛṣṇaujas, one of the sons of Kānaka,
740
Kṛṣṭavarman, one of the ten sons of
Hṛdika, 743
Kṛṣṭavarman, one of those who survived
after the Bhārata war, 36
Kṛṣṭavirya, one of the sons of Kānaka;
son of, 740
Kṛṣṭavratā, a disciple of Lomahārṣana,
730
Kṛṣṭayuga, repeats in a cyclic order, 39
worshipped, 50
creation of Manu relating to, 323
Kṛṣṭeyu, one of the ten sons of
Bhadrāśva, 748
Kṛṣṇi, son of Lomapāda, 741
name of a metre, 905
classical metres based on, 914
kṛts, the primary affixes added to
verbs, 985-6
Kṛṣṭikā, asterism; belongs to the
sphere of fire, 387
an asterism; mother of Kārttikeya,
44
commended for first feeding of the
child, 358
commendable for sowing seed, 361
occurring on a Saturday as auspici-
ous, 377
not to wear new clothes on, 359
misery caused by Sūn’s presence in,
363
categorised as evil, 381
located in the east in kṛtacakra, 385
located in the third column in the
diagram to find period for
journey, 400
Kṛṣṭivāsas, image of, 138-9
Kṛṣṇa, letter denoting, 419
Kṣamā, wife of Pulahā; progeny of, 49
image of, 135
Kṣamā, an energy, 292
kṣapaṇaka (mantra), description of,
875
Kṣāra, an ocean, 351
kṣāra, a medicine, 407
kṣatriya, synonyms of, 1018
kṣaya, one of the kinds of mantras of
Śiva, 873
Kṣayā, image of, 138
Kṣema, one of the sons of Medhā-
tithi, 351
kṣema, one of the tārābalas, 359
Kṣemā, image of, 138
Kṣemaka, son of Anarka; son of, 749
Kṣemakāri, a goddess, 424
Kṣemaṅkari, image of, 135
Kṣemānyā, a name of Durgā, 26
kṣetra, things denoted by the term,
1070
kṣetrajña, meaning of the term, 1070
Kṣetra, son of Svāhāya, 743
Kṣīrābdhi, ocean around Śākadvipa,
352
kṣīri, a herb, 371
kṣīroda, an ocean, 351
Kṣobhani, a goddess, 424
Kṣudra, a Rudra, 254
Kubera, lord of wealth; son of
Viṣravas, 24
synonyms of, 988
was made king of kings, 47
image of, 137
propitiation of, 176
worshipped, 51
kubjakka, a flower, 529
Kubjáma, a sacred place, 327
greatness of Ḥṛṣikesa to be contemplated at, 841
Kubjikā, goddess; 411ff
mode of worship of, preliminaries for worship of, 412
mode of worship of, 413
mode of contemplation of, 416
worship of the sandals of, 415
a charm in a cloth may have the outlines of, 402
Kuǧamala, sub-division of a hell, 1039
Kuhū, a son of Aṅgiras and Śmṛti, 49
wife of Haviṣmān, 739
kuhū, denotes the moon a digit less on the new moon day, 990
an occult nerve, 257
Kuhura, one of the sons of Babhrū; son of, 742
Kuksi, a daughter of Kardama and Devahūti, 41
kukṣi, a modification of the array daṇḍa, 633
Kulaka, division of poetry called, 919
has many couples, 920
Kuḷatā, a female divinity; mode of worship of, 412
Kulavāgīśi, goddess Kubjikā addressed as, 413
Kuleshvari, female divinity; contemplated, 404
Kulīka, one of the eight chief serpents; the number of heads of, 807
presides over the junctions of periods; duration of the rule of, 808
assigned on the cars in the worship of Kubjikā, 415
Kumāra, denotes Skanda born of Agni in a clump of reeds, 44
Kumāra, son of Havya, 352
Kumāra, river; rises from Śuktimat, 351
Kumāraṇakoṭi, a sacred place; greatness of, 327
Kumāralalitā, characteristics of the metre, 911
kumāri, a herb, 406
Kumbha, a demon; Hanūmat searched for Śitā in the house of, 19
killed by Raṁa, 22
Kumbha, a constellation; correction for, 367
victory or death indicated by, 377
Kumbha, name of a pitcher, 270
Kumbha, a posture made with the hands, 187, 899
Kumbhaka, a variety of prāṇāyāma; reason for its name as, 557
Kumbhakaraṇa, a demon; Hanūmat searched for Śitā in the house of, 19
was always sleeping, 24
battle of; killed by Raṁa, 22
Kumbhakāraṇī, a spirit afflicting the child in the ninth month; symptoms of child affected by; offering to appease, 823
Kumbhāṇḍa, a minister of Bāṇa, 30
Kumuda, worshipped, 51
Kumuda, a divinity assigned on the body, 414
Kumuda, a deity presiding over the banner, 148
worshipped, 284
Kumuda, a gate-keeper; adored, 93
Kumuda, a boundary mountain, 352
kumuda, one of the treasures, 111
Kumudākṣa, a deity presiding over the banner, 148
worshipped, 284
Kuṇḍalakṣmi, goddess Lakṣmi at the middle of sacrificial pit, 95
kuṇḍalini, nature and location of, 558
Kuṇḍi, a goddess, 133
Kuni, a son of Manu and Nāḍvalā, 42 fn
Kunti, son of Kratha, 741
son of, 742
Kunti, wife of Pāṇḍu, 744
sons of, 751
birth of Yudhiṣṭhira, Karna and others to, 32
went to the forest after the Bhārata war, 36
Kuranīgaṇa, one of the siddhas; worshipped, 415
kūrčha, used for worship, 94
Kūrma, form of Viṣṇu, 326
saluted, 50
śālagrama representing, 125
kūrma, a life-force carried by the vein Yaśā, 556
functions of, 557
a posture, 55
Kūrmacakra, to find the victory etc., description of, 370
Kūrmaka, letter denoting, 419
Kūrmapūrāṇa, narrated in connection with the story of Indradyumna; narrated by tortoise form of lord Viṣṇu; extent of; should be given as a gift, 734
Kuru, name of a king, 322
born in the family of Aila Purūravas, 31
son of Saṃvaraṇa; migrated from Prayāga and founded kingdom of Kurukṣetra; the four sons of, 750
Kuru, a country on the western part, 322, 351
Kuru, Uttara, a mountain, location of, 324
Kuru, Uttara, a country; river Bhadrā passes through, 325
Kurukṣetra, one of the sacred places, 491
five pits made by Paraśurāma at, 9 armies of Pāṇḍavas and Kauravas met at, 34
greatness of, 350
greatness of even the dust particles of, 327
liberation conferred by stay at, 335 certain men and species of beings born as brahmins at, 349
auspiciousness of image of Brahmā at the centre of, 106
Vāmana form of Viṣṇu worshipped at, 841
Kurus (Kauravas), enmity between Pāṇḍavas and, 32
Kurus, recognised the Pāṇḍavas in the Virāta, 33
description of the battle between Pāṇḍavas and, 34
Kurus, a class of men in Plākṣadvipa, 351
Kurus, country; location of, 323
Viṣṇu as Matsya in, 326
Kuruvinda, nature of rubies got from, 641
Kuśa, born to Sītā in the hermitage of Vālmiki, 24
born in the family (of Rāghus) as son of Rāma; son of, 738
Kuśa, one of the seven sons of Suhotra and Girikā, 750
Kuśa, a continent, 323
given by Priyavrata to Jyotiśmān, 323
rulers of, 352
kuśa (grass), Vena was killed by the sages, with, 42, 42fn
the name Prācinabarhis associated with, 43
used in worship, 58, 67, 68, 94, 95
Kuśa, a flower, 529
Kuśāgra, born from Brhadṛatha; son of, 750
Kuśāla, country ruled by a son of Dvūtimat, 352
Kuśāla, one of the siddhas, 414
Kuśasthali, as the domain of Anarta; kingdom of; got by Raivata, 736
Kuśēśaya, a boundary mountain, 352
Kuśika, son of Balākāśva; son of, 749
Kuśottara, son of Havya, 352
Kūśmāṇḍa, an attendant of Śiva; image of, 135
worship of, 310
kūśmāṇḍa, a flower, 529
not to be used in worship, 530
kuṣṭha, a herb, 372
Kusumamālā, letter denoting, 418
Kusunavicitrā, characteristics of the metre, 912
Kusumitalatavellitā, characteristics of the metre, 914
kuṭaja, a flower; not to be used in worship, 529
not to be used for Śiva, 529
Kuṭikā, beads belonging to the Savitrap class, 894
Kuṭilā, beads belonging to Śīkhā class, 894
Kuṭṭala, a hell, 531
Kuvalāśva, son of Brhadaśva; got the name Dhundhumāra, 736
Kuvalayāpiḍa, a demon, 27
Iagna, denotes the rise of a constellation, 989
lagūda, uses of, 652
laḷāluṅkā, a herb, 406
lakṣahōma, mode of performing, 425-6
Lakṣmaṇa, born to Sūmitrā, 10
married Urmilā, 11
accompanied Rāma to the forest, 13
cut the nose of Śūrpaṇakhā, 15
Sitā’s words to; Rāma’s words to, 28
comforted Rāma, 17
Hanūmat recounting to Sītā the story of Rāma and, 19
killed Indrajit, 22
reference to killing of the demons by, 19
Lakṣmaṇa, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
Lakṣmī, consort of Nārāyaṇa (Viṣṇu), 49, 738
synonyms of, 986
origin and greatness of, 6
characteristics of the image of, 131, 133
characteristics of certain forms of Viṣṇu in the company of, 131
installation of image of, 169-70
worshipped, 51, 52, 197
mode of worship of, 19, 849-51
lakṣmī, a nerve, 316
Lakṣmīnārayaṇa, a śālagrāma, 125
Laktā, image of, 138
Lalanā, a spirit seizing the child in
the fifth month; symptoms of the child seized by; offering to appease, 823
Lālasā, image of, 138
Lalita, characteristics of the metre, 909
Lalita, a kind of gesture, 929
Lalitā, another name of Gauri, 133
characteristics of the image of, 189
Lalitā, daughter of king of Vidarbha, 526
Lālītya, an excellence of word 944
(See also smoothness)
Lambā, wife of Dharma; progeny of, 44
Lambaka, a division of prose kāvyas, 919
Lambakukṣi, a name of Gāneśa, 190
Lambana, a son of Jyotismat, 352
Lambodara, one of the eight forms of Gaṇapati, 865
Lambodari, letter denoting, 417
Lāṅgali, letter denoting, 419
language, explanation of abusive, 655
Laṅkā, Sūraṇākhā's arrival at;
Śitā carried by Rāvaṇa to 16
Sampāti's words about Śitā's presence
at, 19
Hanūmān's search for Śitā at, 19
burning of city of, 20
Vibhiṣaṇa anointed as ruler of, 21
entrusted by Rāma to Vibhiṣaṇa, 23
goddess addressed as builder of
bridge to, 379
lapis lazuli, a gem, 640
qualities of excellent variety of, 641
Laṣas, the names of towns given to, 315
Lāṭiyā, a variety of diction; characteristics of, 927
Lauhiyā, a sacred place, 328
Lava, born in the family (of Rāghu)
as son of Rāma, 738
born to Śitā in the hermitage of
Vālmiki, 24
Lavali, characteristics of the metre, 909
Lavana, an ocean, 324
Lavana, a demon killed by Śatrughna,
24
law codes, stronger than sciences of
wealth, 657
procedure if there is conflict between
two, 657
laws, code of, 455-7
laws, code of criminal, 588-93
law-suit, rests on the witnesses, 654
as protecting the four institutions
of life, 654
as encompassing four persons, 654
the four items accomplished by
means of, 654
eight accessories of, 654
two other causes of; the six things
associated with each one of the
two, 654
the three evidences in, 657
laya, explanation of, 994
Lāyā, image of, 138
layers, of the skin; description of, 1034
lead, auspiciousness of, 641
leg, diseases of; remedy for, 769
Leo, a fixed sign; acts of fixed nature
to be done in, 384
the time taken by the Sun to cross,
384
rite to determine the sex of the
child to be done in, 357
building of a house to be avoided
when Jupiter is in, 360
the day of getting up of Īndra when
Sun is in, 361
banner of Īndra to be lowered in,
362
friendly with Gemini as also Libra,
392
leprosy, remedy for, 753, 767, 773-4,
779
letters, are either sixtythree or sixty-
four; classification of, 915
origin of, 916
division into five groups on the
basis of place of articulation etc.,
916
places of articulation of, 916, 917
merits or demerits of sticking to or
shifting the places of articulation
of, 916
instructions in using the, 916, 917
in the name of a votary; the four-
fold classification of, effects of, 895
in the name, as aid to prognosti-
cation, 409
indicating victory and prosperity,
376
group of; denoting the planets, 378
libation, mode of offering, 535-37
merits of offering, 450-51
liberation, words denoting, 991
got by means of knowledge, 1059
Libra, a constellation commendable
for marriage when Sun is in, 357
known as the waking day of Hari
if Sun is in, 361
time taken by Sun to traverse, 384
friendly with Aries, 392
lightning, words denoting, 989
Likhita, a law-giver, 455
likhyā, a measure, 107
Līlā, image of, 138
lily, words denoting, 996
limb, words denoting the different,
1015
Index

eight kinds of; associated with exertion, 929
liṅga (s), different varieties, dimensions of, 141-145
movable variety, mode of fixing, 301-302
classified into groups of; on the basis of doorway etc., 142
description of, 143
made of earth; merits of worshipping, 142, 901
movable, 321
characteristics of, 139-41
measurement of eyes proportionate to, 288
mode of installation of, 172, 278-82, 295, 296, 297, 960
rites relating to installation of, 289-90
old or broken; repair of, 311-13
mode of worshipping, 299
benefits of worshipping different, 142, 900
contemplation of; as in one's own body, 60
liṅga, a posture made with the hands, 218, 229, 297, 898
Liṅgapūrāṇa, in the Āgneya-kalpa; extent of, 733
contains description of virtues by lord Śiva in the form of fiery liṅga, 733
merits of making a gift in Phālguna, 733
Lion, manifestation of Viṣṇu, 9
lip, lower; six actions of, 929
līpta, a measure of time, 370
loan, rates of interest relating to, 658
loan-bond, rules relating to writing of, 663-4
lōdha, a herb, 372
logical reasoning, word for, 991
Loha, name of a demon, 639
cut by lord Viṣṇu, 639-40
Loha, a hell, 532
Lohabhāra, subdivision of a hell, 1039
Lohaśanu, subdivision of a hell, 1039
Lohita, a divinity; letter denoting, 419
Lohita, a country known by the name of a son of Vāpunmān, 352
Lokabhāvanā, form of Viṣṇu at Nepāla, 841
Lokākula, a place; Ripuhara to be worshipped at, 841
Lokaloka, a peak; extension of, 353
lokana, a posture relating to riding horses, 787
lokotīcchāya, that which follows the proverb, 932
Lolupā, a female divinity; image of, 138
Lomahāraṇa, got the Vedic lore from Vyāsa; disciples of, 730
Lomapāda, one of the sons of Vidarbha; son of, 741
Lomapāda, son of Satyaratha; son of, 748
long life, a mixture that would give, 756
prescription to get, 777
lotus, words denoting different kinds of, 996
words denoting the root of, 996
worship of gods in, 79fn
efficacy of worshipping with, 529
merits of worshipping lord Hari with, 529
diagram of; for daily worship etc.,...
Lunar race, description of, 738-40
lunar days, the names of the presiding deities of, 803
lustre, words denoting, 989, 990
lute, words denoting different kinds of, 994
machine, uses of, 652
madanadvādaśi, mode of practising the vow of, 512
Mādhava, a name of Viṣṇu, 65
characteristics of the form of, 128
Mādhavi, characteristics of, 934
Madhu, Viṣṇu as the killer of the demon, 55
Madhu, son of Devaksetra; son of, 742
Madhuhara, a name of Viṣṇu, 65
madhuparka, offered at the time of worship, 55
madhurā vyṭṭi, explanation of, 933
madhu ṛks, recitation of; as a pathktpāvana, 349
Mādhurya (tranquility) an excellence of sense, 945
Madhusūdana, Viṣṇu as the destroyer of demon Madhu, 746
form of Viṣṇu on Mandara, 841
to be contemplated everywhere, 842
Madhusravas, at Gayā, pinda to be offered at, 344
Madhyā, a metre; number of letters in, 905
Madhyadeśa, location of, 351
Madhya Jyoti, composition of the metre, 904
Mādhya kaṭhi, a branch of Yajurveda, 730
madhyama, a variety of prāṇyāma, 1044
Mādhyaṇḍini, a branch of Yajurveda, 790
Mādri, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
Mādri, one of the two wives of Dhṛṣṭa; progeny of, 743
Mādri, other wife of Pāṇḍu, 32, 744
progeny of, 751
death of Pāṇḍu while having union with, 32
Magha, a class of men at Śākadvipa, 352
Magadha, a class of men at the Śākadvipa, 352
Māgadha, a forest; the name Vaikuṇṭha to be repeated at, 842
māgadha (s), a caste, origin of, 42, 430
duty of, 431
Maghā, an asterism known as down-faced, 381
comprises the sphere of wind, 387
comprises the sphere of fire, 387
effect of Sun's transit in, 363
harvest of grains to be done in, 361
auspicious for administering medicine, 358
known as blunted; its effect relating to journey, 382
not commendable for attending on the employer, 360
not commendable for wearing new clothes, 359
affliction caused by its occurrence on a Tuesday, 376
fatality indicated by its conjunction with Saturday and full moon, 377
Māgha, a month; a commendable day for first shave in, 359
benefit of purchasing food grains in, 387
inauspicious for first entry into a house, 360
Mahābāhu, one of the sons of Hiranyakṣa, 46fn
Mahābhadrā, a lake in the Jambudvipa, 325
Mahābhairava, obeisance to, 379
Mahābhārata, story of, 34ff
mode of honouring a person reciting, 734
mode of making gifts after the recitation of, 734
mahābhūtaghaṭa, a great gift, 544
Mahābja, a serpent; image of, 137
Mahābodhi, tree at Gayā; merits of worshipping, 338
Mahābhṛati, constitution of; another name of, 904
Mahācandā, a hell, 1038
Mahācapalā, characteristics of the metre, 906
Mahādeva, a form of Rudra, 50
favour extended to Sati by, 45
worship of, 290
Mahāghorā, a hell, 1038
Mahājvāla, a hell, 532
mahājyaisthi, the presence of Jupiter and Moon in the asterism Jyeṣṭha, 362
Mahākāla, image of, 135
letter denoting, 419
to be worshipped, 51, 197, 283
Mahākāli, a female energy; colour of, 136
letter denoting, 417
contemplation on, 413
mahākāli, a medicinal plant, 378
Mahākāvyya, characteristics of poetry called, 919-20
Mahākoti, at Gayā; piṇḍa to be offered at, 342
Mahākotī, a goddess, 375
Mahākrūrā, a yogini; image of, 138
Mahāksobhakārīṇi, Kubjikā addressed as, 413
Mahālakṣmi, characteristic features of the form of, 134
worshipped, 52, 415
benefit of the worship of, 343
Mahālaya, a holy spot at Vārāṇasi, 330
Mahāmanas, son of Mahāśāla; son of, 747
Mahāmāri, goddess; image of, 401
a formula affecting enemies; description of, 401-2
Mahāmāyā, cloth containing the figure of, 402
Mahāmohā, one of the gods to be located and worshipped, 292
mahāmudrā, a posture with the hands, 200
Mahānābhā, one of the sons of Hiranyakṣa, 46fn
Mahānadi, river at Gayā; bathing in, 341
Phalgutirtha on, 337
Mahānānā, image of, 138
Mahānanta, worshipped, 414
Mahānarakṣa, sub-division of a hell, 1039
mahānīla, a kind of sapphire, 640
Mahānta, son of Dhīmān, 323
Mahāpadma (Mahāmbuja), one of the eight chief serpents; the number of heads of, 807
forms the eyebrows of the goddess, 415
mahāpadma, a type of temple, 315
a treasure, 111, 269
mahāparāka, an expiation; explanation of 494
Mahāpārśva, a demon killed by Rāma, 22
Mahāpuṣtipravardhanā, a goddess staying in a particular circle, 376
Mahāramyas, images of, 135
Mahāraurava, sub-division of a hell, 531, 1039
Maharoka, distance of, 354
worshipped, 79
Mahāśāla, son of Janamejaya; son of, 747
mahāsāntapana, an expiation, explanation of, 482, 494, 799
Mahāśenā, letter denoting, 419
Mahat, origin of, 40, 48
Mahātāla, a nether world, 353
Mahātāmisra, a hell, 531
Mahātāmra, a hell, 532
Mahāvajrā, a hell, 1038
Mahāvīci, sub-division of a hell, 531, 1039
Mahāvīrya, a form of Rudra, 253
Mahāvīrya, son of Virāt, 323
Mahāvīta, son of Savana, 353
Mahāyoga, form of Viṣṇu at Kāśī, 841
form of Viṣṇu at Śrālagrāma, 841
Mahendra, a name of the elephant-faced god, 190, 866
Mahendra, lord Indra; worship of 176
offering of gems made to, 273
Mahendra, mountain in Bhāratavarṣa, 350
rivers originating from, 351
Parasurāma’s final stay at, 9
Mahendrā, a female energy; to be worshipped, 91
Mahendrā, hill the name of Acyuta to be repeated at, 482
Mahendra, a divinity worshipped, 414
Mahendra, one of the eight goddesses, 412
Mahēśvara, worship of, 290
Krṣṇa’s conquest of the fever related to, 30
Mahēśvarī (Mahēṣī), one of the eight goddesses, 139fn, 399, 411, 415
Mahīdhara, offering made to, 109
Mahimā, son of Sainhana; son of, 740
Mahimān, son of Janamejaya, 750
Mahipāla, beads belonging to the Śiva class, 894
Mahiṣa, a boundary mountain, 352
Mahodara, one of the forms of Gānapati, 190, 865
Mahodara, a demon killed by Rāma, 22
mahodarī, denotes the entry of the Sun in one of the signs, 362
Maināka, a mountain; rise of, 19
Mainḍa, “a monkey; accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
whose brother Dhīvīda was killed by Balarāma, 30fn
Maithila, denotes King Janaka, 10
Maitra, a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
Maitra = Anurādhā
Maitrāyaṇī, a branch of Yajurveda, 730
Maitreya, priest of king of Sauvira, 526
Maitreya, son of Divodāsa; son of, 750
Maitriśi, one of the goddesses, 413
Makara, a constellation; correction for 367
(See also Capricorn)
makara, a treasure, 111, 269
makara, an array; a variation of the array called bhoga, 634
Makarakṣa, a demon killed by Rāma, 22
Mālā, characteristics of the metre, 913
mālāmantras, have more than twenty letters; yield results in youth, 802
on the practice of, 804
mālati, a flower, 529
Malaya, mountain, 350, 351
Malayagiri, as a sacred place, 328
mālāyamaka, one of the yamakas, 935
Mālinī, characteristics of the metre, 913
Mālinīmantra, rite relating to, 418-9
mallikā, a herb, 371, 378
a flower, 529
Mālopaṃa, explanation of, 940
Mālyavat, mountain, 325
Rāma’s stay on, 18
manahsilā, used as an unguent, 372
Mānasa, a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 428
Mānasa, one of the sons of Vāyuḥmat; denotes also the country ruled by him, 352
Mānasa, as an excellent place, 330
Mānasa, a boundary mountain, 353
Mānasa, a lake, 325, 349
Manasya, son of Mahānta, 323
Manasyu, son of Prācinavān; son of, 748
Mānava, a missile, 10
Māṅavakārikīta, characteristics of the metre, 911
manda, a variety of horses, 789
mandā, a name of the entry of the Sun in one of the signs, 362
Mandaga, a class of men in the Śākadvipa, 352
Mandākini, river; as excellent, 328
Rāma’s stay on the banks of, 14
mandākini, a name of the entry of the Sun in one of the signs, 362
Mandākrānta, characteristics of the metre, 913-4
mandala, an array; description of, 633
an array; two units from and combined (for a battle), 634
an array; modifications of, 634
some variations of, 635
certain features of amara same as, 635
mandala, a posture relating to archery, 645
mandala, baked flour, 108
mandaleśvara, meaning of the word, 1018
mandali, a class of serpents based on excess of one hunour, 807
MANDARA, a boundary mountain, 324, 352
made as the churning rod to churn the ocean, 3, 745
the name Madhusūdana to be repeated at, 841
mandara, a type of temple, 314
mandāra, a flower; used in the worship of Viṣṇu, 99
used in the worship of Śiva, 101, 529
Māndāvī, married by Bharata, 11
Mandēhā, a class of men in the Kusādvipa, 352fn
Māndhātṛ, son of Yuvanāśva; sons of, 737
father of Mucukunda, 28fn
mandira, a type of temple, 314
Maṅgalā, benefit of worshipping the goddess, 343
maṅgalā, a stone, 269
Maṅgupanikāra, characteristics of the metre, 913
maṇika, a class of temple; oval-sha-
ped; the temples belonging to the class of, 315
Maṇivaka, son of Havaya, 352
Maṇjari, characteristics of the metre, 909
maṇjīṣṭhā, used for making an unguent, 372
Maṇjuṣa, a hell, 532
Man-lion, form of Viṣṇu, 129
Manmatha, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
Manohara, wife of Dhara; sons of, 44
Manojava, different reading for Pra-
java, 44fn
Manomani, a female divinity; wor-
shipped, 51
Manomana, a form of Rudra, 253
Manomani, a goddess; an envoy of goddess Tvaritā, 424
Manonuga, one of the sons of Dyutimat, 352
manoramā, a nerve, 316
manoṭathadvādaśa, mode of practi-
sing the vow of, 512
MANTHARĀ, an attendant of Kaikeyi, 11
words of, 12
Mantra, a form of Rudra, 253
mantra, eight-syllabled, 53, 56
known as ari; destructive nature of, 803
which accomplishes all the desires, 830
for conquest of evil influences of paṇa, 835
propitiation of the letters compos-
ing a; benefit accruing from, 835-836
of five syllables sacred to Śiva;
mode of worship with, 837-40
mantras, forming base of all mantras, 373
different kinds of, 266, 283, 358, 416-
19, 832-35
their nomenclature, 802-806
narration of different kinds of;
effects of, 872-3
for worship; description of, 50
collection of; the five parts of, 830
different kinds; application of,
863-64
classification as āneya and saumya, 802
should begin with praṇava, 805
the six accessory acts relating to,
403-4
instructions relating to repetition of,
805
to be repeated facing east or looking
downwards, 805
means of acquiring perfection in and
the efficacy of, 804
whose letters are governed by
baneful asterisms to be avoided, 803
number of repetitions of; inversely
proportional with the number of letters in, 804
sleeping and waking states relating to, 803
method to find the auspiciousness of,
265
which remove the baneful influences
of planets, 826-30
eight kinds of benevolent, 874
for making offering to the spirits, 826
relating to six kinds of acts such as
paralysing, 871-2
that would stupefy the three worlds,
845-9
three parts of; relating to the three
gods, 420
relating to worship of different gods,
864-65
of Śiva; different kinds of, 873-75
relative merits of different methods
of repetition of, 805
Manu, the term denoting the period
of, 39fn
—Svāyambhuva as the first, 41fn
creation of, 322-23
born to Cākṣuṣa and Puṣkariṇī;
progeny of, 42
—Vaivasvata; born to Sun and
Saṃjhā, 735
words spoken to the Fish by, 4
—a law-giver, 455
—herb denoted by the term, 406, 407
Manus, names of different, 427-9
reign in a day of Brahṇa, 429
periods of different, 427-9
names of Indra and the sages during
the periods of, 427-9
Manvantaras, periods of Manu, 39fn
manifestations of Viṣṇu innumerable in, 39
Mārgaśīrṣa, month; increased return
of certain food articles in, 386
marica, a herb, 407
Mārica, a demon; tufted by Rāma's
missile, 10
words spoken to Rāvaṇa by, 16
imitated the voice of Rāma and
cried aloud, 16fn
Marici, a sage; mind-born son of
Brahṇa, 9, 41, 42fn, 735
Kasyapa born from, 9
had Paunamāsā through Sambhūti,
49
worship of, 108, 274, 275, 317
Māriṣa, daughter of Kaṇḍu and
Pramlocā; offered by Soma to Picatcas, 43
mark, words denoting, 989
Mārkaṇḍeya, born to Mṛkaṇḍu and
Vedaśrā, 49
imported knowledge to Vajra, 30
Mārkaṇḍeyapurāṇa, contains discussion
on righteousness; extent of, 732
to be given as a gift in Kārttika, 732
Mārkaṇḍeyasvara, at Gayā; worshipped,
342
marriage(s), four kinds of acts relating
to, 434
rules relating to, 434-36
eight kinds of, 434-5
time for performing, 357
commendable constellations and
planets for, 435
asterisms commendable for, 435
prohibited periods for performance
of, 435
Mars, distance of, 354
chariot of, 356
period (years) of influence of, 363,
393
presides over a part of day, 381
letter presided over by, 374
the effect of occupying the second
house by, 383
confers good in the (tenth house),
384
indicates defeat if battle is begun
when it leaves its asterism, 386
bad luck indicated by, 400
causes riot, 377
days which are to be avoided
if associated with, 410
is for victory, 389
nature of person born in the house
of, 392
image of, 137
the form of that is to be contemplated, 828
Mārtaṇḍa (Sun), the day for the
installation of, 87
Marut, Maruts came into being from,
44
Māruta, Wind-god; worship of, 274
Māruti (Hanumāt), crossing of the
ocean by, 19
words spoken to Rāvaṇa by, 20
Rāma and Lakṣmāna were made
secure when the mountain was
brought by 22
attacked Rāvaṇa, 23
Maruts, were born from Marut, 44
Vāsava was made the chief of, 47
brought Bharadvāja to Bharata, 749
Maruttia, son of Tītikṣu; son of,
741
—son of Karandham; son of, 747
maruvaka, leaves, 529
masi, oil of, 372
māsika, ceremony; parāka to be observed
at the time of, 498
massaging, method of; benefits of,
763-4
Mātali, charioteer of Indra, 22, 22fn
Matāṅga, at Gayā, 338, 343
Matāṅgaśrama at Gayā, 337
Matāṅgavāpi, at Goyā, 397
Matāṅgēśa, at, Gayā; worshipped, 337
Mathurā, Lavaṇa killed by Śatrughna
at, 24
Krṣṇa rode a chariot and reached, 27
Krṣṇa came to Gomantaka leaving,
28
Keśava to be worshipped at, 841
Matināra, one of the ten sons of
Bhadrāśva; the three sons of, 748
Mātrāsakam, characteristics of the
metre, 907
mātrikā-mantras, denote the monosyl-
labic words; deities governing, 952
Agni Purāṇa

Matsya, form of Viṣṇu, 326
—name of a śālagrāma, 125

Matsyākāli, one of the seven sons of Subhota and Girikā, 750

Matsya-purāṇa, narrated by lord Viṣṇu in the form of a fish to Manu, 4, 734
should be given as a gift at the time of the equinox, 734

Mattā, characteristics of the metre, 912

Mattākridā, characteristics of the metre, 914

Mattamaṣyūra, characteristics of the metre, 913

Mattoktikhāya, explanation of, 932
mature, a mode; explanation of, 933, 934

Maturity, explanation of, 945

Maukulyas, were descendants of Mukula, 750

Māyā, a female energy, 292, 417
—wife of Bhaya, 49
māyā (mantra), denotes certain group of letters, 888
no divisions in, 895

Māyāvati, Rati born as; maid of Śambara; married Pradyumna, 29, 29fn

Mayūrasāriṇi, characteristics of the metre, 912
mayūrasikā, a herb, 406

Māyāvin, son of Dundubhi, 17fn
means, seven kinds of, 587
measures, table of, 1022

Medhā, a female divinity; worshipped, 52
—one of the sons of Priyavrata, 322
Medhātithi, ruled Plāka, 322
names of the sons of, 322, 351
son of Kaṇva, 748
medicine, asterism good for taking, 358
dosage of; the factors to be noted in deciding, 762

medicines, falling under six heads and accomplishing two kinds of effects, 770
—conferring longevity and curing diseases, 778-80

meditation, on Brahma; mode of practising, 1055-6

Meghanāda, was born from Rāvaṇa, 24

Meghanāda, image of, 138

Meghapālaka, one of the seven sons of Nāhuṣa, 740

memory, herb for improving, 779
men, different classes of, words denoting, 1013
having different deformities or abnormalities; words for, 1014
mounted on elephants, work of, 613

Menā, a daughter of the manes and Svaḍhā, 49
mental change, word denoting, 995

Meru, mountain; extent of, 324
—is in the shape of a lotus, 325
—a region, 322

Ṛṣabha was born to Nābhī through, 923

Meru, a type of temple, 314

Mercury (a planet), distance of, 354
chariot of, 356
period (years) of influence of, 363, 393

presides over a part of day, 381
the form that is to be contemplated of, 137, 828
gives realisation of desire, 977
letter presided over by, 374
characteristics of a person born in the house of, 392
good for truce, 389
occupying second house confers good, 383

beneficial in the twelfth, 384
indicates defeat in battle begun when it is leaving its asterism, 386
merudāna, ten kinds of, mode of making, 544-5
twelve varieties of, 553-5
mode of offerer (goddess), 554

Mesa, a constellation; letter denoting, 419
correction for, 367
causes victory if full and death otherwise, 377
good and bad effects of planets in, 383

meṣaśṛṅgi, a herb, 406
messenger, qualification of; three types of, 625
metals and chemicals, words denoting, 1022-3

metres, Vedic; rules relating to, 902
having different numbers of pādas, 903
of other kinds formed from Utkṛṣṭa, 905

the gotras of; the deities of, 905
colours of different, 905
classical, 905
the three divisions of, 908
characteristics of equal, 908
calculating the number of half-equal 908
on the calculation of the number of unequal, 908
classical, based on Vedic metre Abhikṛṣṭa, 914
Index

based on Atikṛti, 914
based on Kṛti, 914
classical; based on Prakṛti, 914
classical; based on Vedic metre Saṅkṛti, 914
classical; based on Vedic metre Utkṛti, 914
classical; based on Vedic metre Vīkṛti, 914
tabular representation of, 915
to be employed in a Mahākāvya, 920
midnight, words denoting, 990
military expedition, instructions relating to, 594
Mimāṃsā, science of, 2
Mina, correction for 367
(See also Capricorn)
letter denoting, 419
mind, words denoting, 991
mind, two divisions of exertions of; one of them relating to men divided further into eight, 927
as the reins, 1075
minerals, eight kinds of, 283
minister, words denoting, 1018
ministers, qualities of, 619
how the king should examine the worthiness of, 619-20
defects of, 626
mire, words denoting, 995
miscarriage, in women; remedy for arresting, 777
miseries, true knowledge about; commended, 1074
Mithuna, a constellation; correction for 367
(See also Gemini)
Mitra, one of the twelve Ādityas; son of Kaśyapa, 45
as one of the names of Sun, 136
—a divinity to be worshipped, 317
worship of, 274
—one of the Ādināthas, 412
mitra, one of the tārābalas, 359
Mitradevi, one of the daughters of Devaka; married by Vāsudeva, 742
mittram, explanation of, 1019
Mitravinda, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
Mitrayu, a disciple of Lomaharṣana, 730
mocaka, a perfection, 257
Modāki, son of Havya, 352
mode, fourfold; uneven in the actions of a drama, 928
modes (vr̥tti), five kinds of; produced by repetition of a single letter, 933
Mohā, an energy, 292
mohalatā, a herb, 406
mohini, a herb, used for subjugation, 372
Mohopamā, explanation of, 940
mokṣa, one of the puruṣārthas, 33
mokṣaṇī, one of the prāṇitamudrās, 837
Monday, rite of chewing betel leaf to be done on, 358
first shave commended on, 359
one should not do agriculture on, 361
inauspicious nature of eleventh day falling on, 381
month, lunar, solar and astral, 495
Moon, only one in the world, 376
synonyms of, 989
orb of; words denoting, 989
lustre of; words denoting, 989
sixteenth digit of; words denoting, 989
distance of, 354
period (years) of, 363
influence of, 393
periods over a part of a day, 381
form of, 137
appeases defeat, 377
benefits caused by different positions of, 383, 384
death caused by investiture of thread when Moon has set, 359
its presence in asterism jyeṣṭhā known as mahājayaṣṭhi, 362
when holes are noticed in the disc of, 387
eclipse of the head known by the presence of, 388
characteristic of a person born in the house of, 392
ceremonies to be done when it is pure, 362
moon-stone, a gem, 641
moral observance, five kinds of, 454
mortgage, rules relating to different types of, 660-1
moṣṭana, a posture relating to riding horses, 787
mountains, words denoting, 1006
myḍāṅga, synonym for; different kinds of, 994
Myḍava, a division of Viśi, 928
Mrīga, a divinity; worshipped, 108, 316, 317
mrīga, a variety of horses, 789
Mrṛṣiṇa, one of the fixed asterisms, 381
comprises the sphere of wind, 387
location in a diagram, 385
located in the second column in a diagram, 400
an asterism; good for discharging
debt, 358
commendable to begin the con-
struction of a house, 360
good for harvesting grains, 361
good for taking harvested grains
inside the house, 361
mahājayaśṭhi caused by, 362
effect of Sun’s transit in, 363
commended for all acts, 381
Mr̥gayādha, one of the eleven forms
of Rudra, 45
Mr̥kanī, son of Vidhātṛ; son of, 49
Mr̥tyu, father of Suniṭhā, 42fn
—born to Bhaya and Māyā, 49
—an energy, 292
mr̥tyu, one of the groups of letters, 390
to be rejected in all undertakings,
391
Mr̥tyusjaya, a form of Śiva; mode of
worship of, 899
worshipped, 374
mr̥tyusjaya, a formula known as; de-
scription of, 395
Mucikunda, son of Manḍhāṛt, 28, 737
obtained a boon of long sleep, 28fn
mudgara, uses of, 652
mudrā(s), posture of the hands for
worship, 53
different kinds—formation of, 66-67
for worship of Sun, 196
—an embellishment of word, 932
explanation of, 932
Mudrāsphoṭa, one of the siddhas, 414
Muhūrtā, Muhūrtas were born from,
44
Muhūrtas, born from Muhūrtā, 44
muhūrtas, different names of, 371
Mukhanaṇḍi, a female force, 84
Mukhapūrvikā, characteristics of the
metro, 906
mukhavyāvatana, an action of the
horse while moving, 788
Mukhya, a divinity worshipped, 317
offering made to, 274
mukhya, denotes first injunction, 1018
Mukhyā, a division of Abhivyakti, 943
Mukhyaka, one of the sons of Bali, 747
mukhyasarga, the fourth creation, 48
Muktaka, division of poetry called, 919
consists of single verses, 920
describes different incidents, 920
Muktakesi, a monstrous possessing
the newly born child on the seventh
night, 822
symptoms of child possessed by, 822
material for fumigation when pos-
sessed by, 822
ungscent for the child afflicted by,
822
Mukula, one of the five born from
Bāhyāśva, 749
Caṇcasā as son of, 750
whose descendants were known as
Maukulyas and were brahmins,
750
Mukūtā, the female spirit possessing
the child two months old; symp-
toms of the child possessed by,
822
offering and fumigation to appease,
823
Mūla, an asterism; belongs to the
watery region, 388
marriage is commendable in, 357
discharge of debt to be done in, 338
commendable for beginning the
construction of a house, 360
good for doing agriculture, 361
good for harvest of grains, 361
commended for all acts, 381
one of the blunted asterisms, 382
misery caused by Sun’s transit in,
363
has face downward, 381
location in koṭacakra for forecast,
385
occupies the first column in a dia-
gram, 400
mūlagaurivrata, for Goddess Laksṇi,
500-2
mūlakrcchra, an expiation, 483
mūlamantra, bathing of the deity
done with, 53
mundane existence, three kinds of
afflictions in, 1040
Munḍapṛṣṭha, at Gayā, 336-7, 338
worshipped, 342
Munḍikā, a spirit possessing the
child in the fifteenth year; symptoms
of the child possessed by, 823
Muni, the nymhs were born from, 47
one of the sons of Dyutimata, 352
one of the sons of Āpa, 44
muni, herb denoted by the word, 406,
407
munipuṣpa, a flower, 529
munīja, a lake in Jambudvīpa, 325
Munjakeśa, represents a branch of
Athravaveda, 730
Munjavatā, an excellent spot, 328
Muraja, one of the bandhas; explana-
tion of, 946
murder, without witness; precau-
tionary steps for passing judgement,
676
musall, a herb, 371, 378
musical instruments, four kinds of,
994
words denoting different, 994
mustard, used in a paste to give success against enemy, 372
Muṣṭika, a wrestler killed by Kṛṣṇa, 28
muṣṭimudrā, a posture of hands used in worship, 96
mystical diagrams of different kinds; for worship, 879-83
mystic syllables, used in consecration, 111

Nabha, son of Nala; son of, 738
Nabhīga, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 735
had two sons who were vaiśyas and became brahmins later, 736
—son of Bhagiratha; son of, 737
Nābhi, was given country Hina by his father Agnidhra, 322
Rṣabhā born to Meru and, 323
Nāciketa, fire; merits of worshipping thrice a day, 349
nādi-s, the three being present in the goddess, 374
(See also veins)
Nadvalā, wife of Manu; ten sons of, 42
Naga, a hill at Gayā; excellence of, 337
Nāga, image of, 106
investiture of sacred thread for; to be done, 215
nāgara, a vital wind, 253
a life-force carried by the vein pṛthā, 556
functions of, 557
Nāgadvipa, one of the nine territories, 350
nāgāḥ, herb denoted by the word, 406
nāgakarṇa, a flower, 529
Nāgānanda, sandals of; should be worshipped, 414
Nāgapāsā, weapon used by Indrajit to bind Hanumāt, 20
nāgapuspa, used as an unguent to control others, 372
Nāgas, Vāsuki was made the ruler of, 47
Nāgāstra, weapon used by Indrajit, 22
(See also Nāgapāsā)
Nāgavitthi, was born from Yāmi, 44
Nāgêsvarī, location of the letter represented by, 417
Nāgigāyatri, the number of letters in the three feet of, 903
Nāgnajīti, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
Nagodbheda, greatness of the sacred place of, 527
Nahuṣa, son of Ayu, 25, 31
one of the sons of Ayus; seven sons of, 989
Naigameya, brother of Kumāra, 44
Naimiṣa, Saunaka and other sages at, 1
a sacred place, 491
merits of, 328
naimittika, one of the three kinds of creation, 48
ceremony should be done, 98
Naimittiki, a division of Abhivyakti, 943
Nairṛta, propitiation of, 176
worshipped, 51
Naiṣadha, a country, 322
naiṣṭhika brahma-cārī, should stay with the preceptor till death, 433
Nakṣatra-Yoga, constants, 365-6
Nakta, son of Pṛthu and father of Gaya, 323
Nakula, born to Mādri and Pāṇḍu, 744, 751
son of 751
fell on the way of the march, 37
born through Asvinikumāra, 32
Nakulīśa, letter denoting, 419
Nala, a monkey; building of a bridge in the ocean by, 21
accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
—son of Niṣadha; son of, 738
—a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
Nalā, a goddess, 424
Nalakībara, son of Kubera, 90
Nālikā, a division of Vīthi, 928
Nāmā, location of the letter denoting, 417
nāmadvādaśi, merits of practising the vow of, 512
nāmakarana, one of the Vedic rites to be performed, 59
namakāra, use of the term, 403
name, words denoting, 992
Nanda, a cowherd chief; Balarāma and Kṛṣṇa left in the custody of, 27
nanda, one of the treasures, 111
Nandā, a place; Jalaśāyin to be worshipped at, 842
nandā, name of a stone, 269
—a nerve, 316
nandaka, description of the sword called, 639
Nandana, a guard of the door; to be worshipped, 93
—a year of the Hindu Calendar, 405
—a forest, 325
Nandartāpa, worshipped, 414
nandāsaptami, a vow; details relating to, 505
Nandi (n), conquered by Tārksya, 30
worship of, 197, 283
to be worshipped, 51
Nandigrāma, Bharata’s return to, 15
Rāma’s arrival at, 23
nandika, a type of temple, 314
Agni Purāṇa

greatness of, 327, 331, 350
purifies by mere sight, 331
Śrīyaḥ pati to be contemplated on,
842
nasal diseases, beneficial remedy for,
755
Nāṭaka, a type of drama, 921
Nāṭhaka, one of those worshipped, 414
Nāṭikā, a type of drama, 921
Nāṭyarāsaka, a type of drama, 921
Nāṭyecā (Śiva), image of, 314
Navamālini, characteristics of the
meire, 913
Navaratha, son of Bhimaratha; son
of, 742
navaśrāddha, the rites after the death
of a person, 488
Navavyūha, a śālāgrāma, 126
navavyūhārcana, for Viṣṇu, 527-28
nayana, herb denoted by the word,
406
neck, nine actions of, 929
Nepāla, a place, 841
nerves, names of the ten, 316
nether world, words denoting, 995
nether worlds, extent of; names of, 353
netra, a herb, 407
— a measure, 124
nevā, another name of Asāmayikatva,
947
Nīcrt, composition of the metre, 904
nidhana, one of the tārābalas, 359
Nidhṛti, son of Dhruṭaka; son of, 742
night, words denoting, 990
— endowed with darkness; word
denoting, 990
— with moonlight; word denoting, 990
Nighna, son of Anaranya; son of, 737
son of Anamitra; sons of, 743
Nikṛti, daughter of Adharma and
Hīṃsa, 49
Nikumbila, a place where Indrajit was
doing hōma, 22
Nikumbha, a demon killed by Rāma,
22
son of Haryāśva; son of, 737
Nila, a monkey; accompanied Rāma
to Lāṅkā, 21
killed Akampana and Prahasta, 22
Nila (Nilācalā), mountain; was given
by Agnīdhra to Ramya, 322
— a varṣa-parvata on the north, 324
as a boundary, 325
Nilakaṇṭha (Śiva), reason for being
called so, 5
Nilāmbarā, a female energy; colour of,
136
Nilānjika, one of the sons of Yādu, 740
nimba, herb, 407
flower not to be used in worship, 530

Nandin, a mūhūrta; deeds to be done
in, 571
Nandiśa, image of, 135
nandivardhana, a type of temple, 314
Nara, son of Gaya, 323
— son of Uśinara and Narā, 747
Narā, wife of Uśinara, 747
Naracakra, to find failure etc., 389
Nārada, story of Rāmāyaṇa described
by Vālmiki to, 9
Vālmiki’s composition of Rāmāyaṇa
after hearing from, 25
Krṣṇa’s action after hearing from,
30
methods of worship of Viṣṇu as told
by, 50
—a boundary mountain, 351
Nähradiya, a Pāñcarātra āgama, 106
Nārādyaśpurāṇa, narrated by Nārada;
extent of; to be given as a gift in
Āśīva, 732
Naraka, demon; Krṣṇa as killer of, 28
the story relating to Dvīvida,
friend of, 30 fn
called Rauraka, Vedanā as wife of,
49
Narakanāyikā, a hell, 1038
Nara-Nārāyaṇa, prayer to cleanse the
votary, 85
Narāntaka, a demon killed by Rāma, 22
Narasimha, man-lion form of Viṣṇu
to kill Hiranyakaśipu, 7
basic syllables of; used for con-
sacroration, 67
obeisance made to, 62
an image of, 130
benefit of worshipping, 343
outlines of; on a cloth, 402
(See also Narśinha)
Nārasimha, a Pāñcarātra āgama, 106
Nārāyaṇa, one of the names of Viṣṇu,
65
the reason for being called as, 40
image of, 130
characteristics of the form of, 128
basic syllable ending with, 67, 68
mantra used in religious rite, 53
obeisance made to, 62
benefit of worshipping, 343
— syllable of; for food offering, 68
Śālāgrāma denoting, 125
Nārāyaṇiyaka, a Pāñcarātra āgama,
106
Nārāyaṇa, location of the letters
denoting, 416
Narisyantya, one of the eight sons of
Vaivasvata Manu, 735
Narmadā, wife of Purukutsa, 737
Narmadā, (river) flows from Vindhya,
351
Index

Nimi, one of the four sons of, 742
nipa, a flower, 529
Nirāhārā, a spirit possessing the
child in the seventh month; symp-
toms of the child seized by;
offering to appease, 823
Niraṇjanākāra, a Rudra, 254
Nirmohā, a sage, 428
Niryti, image of, 137
Nirucchāśa, a hell, 531
nirūdhapāsubandhaka, a haviryaṅa, 
466
Nirukta (etymology), science of, 2
niśā, a herb; used to make an unguent, 
372
Nīṣadha, mountain; location of, 324, 
325, 326
son of Atithi; son of, 738
Nīśānātha, worship of the sandals of, 
414
Nīṣātha, son of Balarāma and Revati, 
29
Nīṣcarā, a sage at the time of the 
eleventh Manu, 428
Nīṣayopamā, explanation of, 940
Nīṣīrā, at Gayā, 342
niśkala, one of the kinds of mantras 
of Śiva, 873
description of, 875
Nīṣkampā, a goddess, 376
Nīṣkubha, salutations made to, 52
Nīssvara, different reading for Nīscarā, 
428n
Nīṣṭhā, an energy, 292
Nīṣṭhurā, a goddess staying in the cir-
cle of smell, 376
name uttered in worship of Śiva, 202
Nīśumbha, a demon; gained favour 
from Brahmā and was later killed 
by the goddess, 26 fn
Nītalā, a nether world, 353
nitya, one of the three kinds of crea-
tion, 48
explanation of, 49
nivātakavaca, a term denoting the 
progeny of Prahrāda, 46
niyama, relating to a kind of yamaka, 
936
explanation of the term, 1017
niyamas, five kinds of, 1076
Nīyaṇopamā, explanation of, 940
nominal bases, examples of forms 
after inflection of, 960-66
primary; formation of, 980-81
non-attachment, for pleasures; com-
mented, 1074
noose, materials for the thread of, 
649
method of using, 649
eleven ways of manipulating a, 651
five ways of casting a, 651
nose, bleeding of; remedy for, 766
six actions of, 929
nouns, inflections in, 957
Nṛga, son of Uśīnara and Nṛgā, 747
Nṛgā, queen of Uśīnara, 747
Nṛsiṁha, image of, 115
mantra for the worship of, 117
(See also Narasimha)
sālagrāma designated as, 125
Nṛhari, installation of the image of, 
179
Nyagrodha, one of the sons of 
Ugrasena, 742
Nyānusāriṇī, a metre; composition 
of; different name of, 903
nyāsa, in the worship, 90
Nyāya, science of, 3
Oath, when prescribed, 657
objects, seven kinds of, 970
as the pasture ground, 1075
oblation, mode of doing, 92ff, 467
observances, different kinds of, 1041
Oceans, surrounding the continents, 
324
a great gift of (seven) 544
Odhra, region of; Puruṣottama to be 
worshipped at, 842
Odiśa, an Adinātha, 412
offences, of different kinds, fine for, 
676-79, 681
offering to god, mode of making, 107-
110
officiating priest, injunctions for, 680
oil, as an excellent diuretic, 757
old age, remedies to rejuvenate in, 
769-70
Om, syllable of; consecration to be 
done with, 58
oblation begun with, 59
as the first term in the different 
formulae, 62
repeated with different formulae, 
72
omens, known from birds, 600-603
ordeal, five kinds of divine, 664
instituted for great offences, 664
of five kinds instituted for different 
persons, 664
procedure relating to, 664-6
ornaments, of different kinds; words 
denoting, 1016
oysters, word for, 996
Padačaturūrdhvam, characteristics of, 
909
Pādādi-yamaka, one of the yamakas, 
935
Pādakṛcchra, an expiation, 483
to be observed at the annual ceremony, 488

Pādākulkāka, characteristics of the metre, 907

Pādanicṛt, a variety of Gāyatrī, 903

pādāntayamaka, one of the yamakas, 935

Padapaṅkti, a variety of Paṅkti; composition of, 904

Padma, a deity; located on the body, 414

— one of the eight chief serpents; the number of heads of, 807

forms the eyebrow of the goddess, 415

image of, 137

—beads belonging to Śikhā class, 894

padma, an array; a variation of manḍala, 635

— a type of temple, 315

— a treasure, 88, 111, 269

padma (m), a posture made with the hands, 196, 857, 898

Padmā, a hell, 1038

padmaka, a posture of sitting, 454, 1076

(See also padmāsana)

padmahastaka, measure, 107

Padmanāba, one of the names of Viṣṇu, 65

Padmapuruṣa, extent of: to be given as a gift in Jyeṣṭha, 732

padmāsana, a posture of sitting, 70

(See also padmaka)

Padmāvatī, a hell, 1038

Padmīni, a goddess; invoked, 112

padmīni, a treasure, 111

Padya, definition of; two divisions of 919

(See also poetry)

Paila, disciple of Vyāsa, 429

paid respect to Vyāsa, 1

— son of Ruṣadratha; son of, 747

pains, such as ādhyātmika; need for remedying, 1074

Paippalāda, disciples of Sumantu, 429

paishāca, a type of marriage, 435

pāka (ripeness), an excellence of word and sense; explanation of; four kinds of, 946

Pākayedajīna, a domestic sacrifice, 475

Pākayedajīnas, the seven kinds of, 86

pakṣa, the herb denoted by the word, 406

pakṣiṇi, night with preceding and succeeding days, 990

pala, a measure, 408

—a measure of time, 370

Pālīta, one of the sons of Prthu, 43

pallava, explanation of, 403

Pampā lake, Rāma's arrival and stay at, 17

Panasa, a monkey; accompanied Rāma to Lāṅkā, 21

Paṇava, characteristics of the metre, 912

Paṇcabrahman, six formulae; accessories to, 890-891

one of the forms of; worshipped, 51

paṇcabhadra, remedies known as, 772

paṇcadhanus, son of Śrījaśaya; son of 750

paṇcagavya (five things got from a cow), efficacy of taking, 488

as a purificatory for stealing, 489

Paṇcajana, a demon conquered by Kṛṣṇa, 28

Paṇcayanya, letters for the worship of, 63

Paṇcika, one of the seven sons of Nahuṣa, 740

Paṇcakonikā, a hell, 1039

Paṇcāla, a country, 351

the visit of the Pāndavas to, 32

Paṇcālas, killed by Aśvathāman, 35

—the five kings known as, 749

Paṇcāli, a variety of diction; characteristics of, 927

paṇcāṁṛta, offered in the course of worship, 98

Paṇcāṅga (Almanac), 364-69

Paṇcāntaka, letter denoting, 419

Paṇcarātra, the names of the different texts of, 105

reference to śrīhāvidyā in one of the, 117fn

Paṇcaśikha, exposition made by, 1073-4

paṇcatiktaka, remedy known as, 774

Paṇcavāṭi, on the banks of river Godāvari, Rāma's stay at, 15

Pāṇḍavas, collective term for the sons of Pāṇḍu, 751

taken as the instrumental cause for Viṣṇu's manifestation, 31, 37

escape from the lac house, 32

stay at Ekacakra, 32fn

were recognised by the Kurus after the death of Kīcaka, 33

Śikhandi became commander of the, 34

Aśvathāman's destruction of the sleeping army of, 35

the five; as the survivors of the battle, 36

worshipped lord Viṣṇu, 335

ascendence to heaven of, 36-38

Pāṇḍu, begot by Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana through the wife of Viṣṇu Brahma; son of, 31, 751

married Kunti; sons of, 32, 744

Mādri was the other wife of, 744
path, words having the sense of, 1006
path of action, two kinds of, 453
pāṭhā, a herb, 410
pathos, origin of the sentiment, 924
three kinds of, 931
Pathyā, a variety of the Ārṣyā metre;
number of gaṇas in, 906
characteristics of the metre, 908
Pathyāpaṅkī, composition of, 904
Pathyāvāktra, characteristics of the
metre, 908
patrakṛchra, an expiation, 483
paṭitiśa, uses of, 652
paunarnavī, a herb, 407
Paunḍraka, conquered by Kṛṣṇa, 28
story relating to, 28f
Paunrāmāsā, son of Marici and Sam-
bhūti, 49
Pāuṣa, month of; auspicious to enter
a house in, 360
Pauṣkara, a Pāncaśrātra āgama, 106
pauṣṇa, explanation of the period
known as, 835
Pāvaka, son of Agni and Svāhā, 49
was made the king of Vasus, 47
Pavamāṇa, son of Agni and Svāhā, 49
pavamāṇi, a hymn, 562
pāvanti, a flower, 529
pavilions, building of different kinds
of, 178-80, 318
pavitra, of darbha grass, 58
Payoṣṇi or Payoṣnikā, a river that
flows from Śāhya, 351
as a bestower of fruits, 328
payovrata, mode of practising, 522
pearl(s), a kind of gem, 640
from oysters are pure, 641
other excellent kinds of, 641
pedestal, characteristics of, 146
pedestals of images, characteristics of,
123-24
peel of thunder, words denoting, 989
percussion instruments, different kinds
of, 994
perfections, eight kinds of, 257
perfumes, mode of preparation of;
eight acts in, 582-3
periods of the day, good or bad, 383-4
phalacaturḍaśī, on the practice of, 517
phalakṛchra, an expiation, 483
Phalguṇāṇḍi, at Gayā; obeisance paid
to, 343
Phalguṇa, benefit of purchasing per-
fumes in the month of, 387
—denotes Arjuna; fallen on the way
of march, 37
Phalguṇi, an asterism known as
blunted, 382
(Pūrva) phalguṇi, as asterism; loca-
tion in Koṭacakra, 385
Phalguṭirtha, at Gayā; merits of
bathing at, 337
Gayāśiras has been made the hermi-
tage at, 338
Phalgyāśa, at Gayā; obeisance made to,
343
phāṇi, a class of serpents based on
excess of one humour, 807
—herb denoted by the word, 406
Phanirāhu, a method to find the
results of a battle, 380
Phanirāhu, the effect of its position
in various directions, 409
phaniśvara, diagram of, 400
phat, use of the term, 403
Phāṭkāri, a goddess, 424
—a monstrosity possessing the newly
born child on the sixth night;
symptoms of child possessed by;
offering to appease, 821
unguent for child possessed by,
822
Phetkāri, letter denoting goddess, 418
phlegm, remedy for the removal of
excess of, 775
remedy for twenty kinds of diseas-
es due to deranged, 774
phlegm and wind, a purgative for
deranged, 775
phonetics, description of, 915-17
physician, fine for giving wrong med-
cal treatment, 679
physiognomy of men, indications of,
635-7
piety, two kinds of; not equal to
Agnipūrṇa, 1078
piles, beneficial remedies for, 754
remedy for, 767, 776
pilgrimage, benefits of, 326
Pilipiccha, a demon, 317
Pilipīni, a demon; appeasing off-
ering to, 109
offering made to, 275
plu, auspiciousness of, 641
Pināka, bow of Śiva, 987
piṇḍa (?), auspiciousness of a gem
called, 641
Piṇḍāraka, a great place, 327
Caturbāhu to be worshipped at, 841
Piṅgakṣi, image of, 138
Piṅgala, an attendant of Sun, 136,
195
—a divinity; to be worshipped, 414
—a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
Piṅgalā, affecting the child in the
fourth month; symptoms of the child
afflicted by, 823
Piṅgalā, a vein; carries the wind apāna,
functions of, 556
is established on the right side of the body, 557
Piṅgalācakra, description of, 377
Pinākī, a divinity worshipped, 414
letter denoting, 419
Pipīlikā, a goddess, 376
Pipīlikāmadhyamā, composition of the metre, 904
pippala, a tree, 324
Pippalāda, represents a branch of Atharvaveda, 730
pippali, a herb, 407
Pitācī, image of, 138
Pisces, the time taken by the Sun to transit, 384
the rite to determine the sex of a child to be done in, 357
the first feeding of the child to be done in, 358
friendly with Virgo, 392
Pitātāsa, image of, 138
Pīta, a class of men at Śālmala, 352
pitā, name of a lightning, 45fn
pitchers, of different kinds; words denoting, 1019
consecration of, 149-51
worship of different, 277
Pītras, worship of 317
pits, in the dry bed of rivers; words for, 996
place and time, the role of, 923
plaintiff, to be examined first, 657
Plakṣa, a continent, 323
about the people of, 351
given by Priyavrata to Medhātithi, 322
the rulers of and the oceans surrounding, 351
plakṣa, a tree, 47, 92
planets, metals for making images of, 461
propitiatory rite for, 461-2
offerings for, 462
mantras for propitiating, 462
three kinds of propitiation of, 467
propitiatory rite for, 467-70
benefits of propitiation of, 469-70
effect of presence in nativity sign, 393
character of an infant known from, 392-3
good or bad depending on the positions of, 383-4
symptoms of those possessed by evil influences of, 827
plants, medicinal, 378
of different kinds; words which mean, 1008-12
Plava, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
pleasure, proceeds from conceit, 923
ploughman, injunctions for, 680
ploughs (five), a great gift, 544
poet, the five items to be indicated by, 922
creator with reference to poetry, 924
poetic convention, definition of; two kinds of; further divisions of, 949
poetry, different kinds of, 919
the nature of matter treated in, 920
poison (s), words denoting, 995
two kinds of, 811
the three pungents which as a drink or unguent or collyrium would remove, 817-18
use of white pepper and sīrīṣa flower against, 818
of different kinds; remedy for, 818-9
remedy for removal of all, 773
of different kinds; effective remedy for, 756
the different remedies against, 577-818
due to an ass etc.; mantra for the removal of, 819
due to gonasa and other snakes; treatment of, 818-20
due to a scorpion; remedy for, 819
due to a spider etc.; remedy for, 819
remedial mantra for the removal of, 817-18
mantra to be recited to destroy the vegetable, 820
due to a dog; remedy for, 820
due to sixteen kinds of rats; remedy for, 819
twenty ways of treatment for, 819
polestar, location etc. of, 355
Svargaloka as lying between the Sun and, 354
pollution, instances when there is no, 443
periods for different kinds of, 444-50
different kinds of, 444-50
pollution and purification, 440-44
portents, relating to images, 711
foreshadowing the death of the king, 712-3
appearing rites for 710-713
worship of gods to destroy the effects of, 713-16
possession, desire for; referred to as due to ignorance, 1073
Prabhā, one of the wives of the Sun, 735
—wife of Sagara; bore sixty sons, 737
—wife of Prabhākara, 739
Prabhākara, a son of Jyotismat, 352
prabandha, imaginary story, 992
prabhānjana, a vital wind, 253
Prabhāsa, a sacred place, 350
Daityaśītadana to be contemplated at, 841
Hāri (as Kṛṣṇa) discarded his body at, 37
greatness of, 327, 491
—at Gayā; merits of offering piṇḍa at the pretakunḍa at, 342
—one of the eight Vasus, 44
Prabhāsesā, at Gayā; obeisance to be made to, 342
Prabhāta, born to Sun and Prabhā, 735
Prabhava, a Rudra, 254
—a guard, 93
—a year of the Hindu calendar, 404
—a type of temple, 314
Prabhāvati, a female divinity; worshipped, 52
Prabodhāni, a female energy; invoked, 136
Prabhu, a form of Rudra, 252
Pracandā, a male divinity; figure carved on the door-frame, 115
Pracandā, a goddess, 132
—a hell, 1038
Pracandogrā, image of, 138
Pracetās, (lord of waters) worship of, 273
—name of the sons of Prācinabharis, 43
—son of Vidūṣa; names of foremost among hundred sons of, 747
Prācinabharis, son of Dhīṣaṇā; sons of, 43
Prācinavān, son of Janaśējaya; son of, 748
Pracītā, a variety of Daṇḍaka, 915
Prācyavṛtti, characteristics of the metre, 507
pradāra, a modification of the array called daṇḍa, 633
—a disease of women; remedy for, 777
pradāraka, an array; formed by two wings to daṇḍa, 634
Pradhāna, a son of Dyutiman, 352
Pradhānam, significance of, 991
pradoṣa, period preceding night, 990
prāḍdvīkā, meaning of the word, 1018
Pradyumna, one of the sons of Kṛṣṇa and Rukminī, 744
son of; wife of, 745
story relating to, 29, 29fn
accompanied Kṛṣṇa, 30
image of, 190
worship of; formulae relating to, 62
worship with the basic syllable of, 68
worshipped, 91

Agni Purāṇa

a śāladrāma, characteristics of, 125
marks of six discs on, 125
Praghasa, a demon killed by Rāma, 22
Praharanakālita, characteristics of the metre, 913
Praharṣaṇi, a female energy, 136
Praharṣiṇi, characteristics of the metre, 913
Prahasana, a type of drama, 921
a component of the mode Bhāratī; ridicules the ascetics and he like, 928
Prahasta, a demon killed by Nila, 22
Prahelikā, a kind of citrakāvyā; definition of, 935
Prabl(r)āda, son of Hiranyaṅkaśipu; story of, 7fn
a devotee of Viṣṇu, 46
made the king by Viṣṇu, 47, 745
story relating to Bali, grandson of, 8fn
a Pāñcarātra āgama, 106
Prajāpati, creation of time etc. by, 40
sage for the vyāhṛtis (of Gāyatri), 562
name of a metre; number of letters in, 902
Prajāpati (Prajotpati), a year of the Hindu calendar, 404
Prajāpati, Dakṣa made the king of, 47
prājāpata, an expiation; eating food once a day for three days, 483
explanation of, 494
for having eaten garlic etc., 472
for doing an act of an outcaste, 476
for the fourth class for purification, 479
for having caused the death of a cow, 487
for having taken urine, excreta etc., 488
for drinking wine and eating flesh, 488
destroys sin, 491
merits of practising, 524
a rite performed before becoming an ascetic, 452
a type of marriage, 434-5
beads belonging to the Śiva class, 894
Prakaraṇa, a type of drama, 921
Prakṛṣṇaka, a division of Kośa, 921
prāktasarga, explanation of, 48
prakṛti, relating to a state of being, 991
Prakṛti, Viṣṇu’s entry into, 39
classical metres based on, 914
Pralamba, a demon killed by Balarāma, 30
story relating to, 30 fn
Pralayāntikā, image of, 138
Pramāṇi, characteristics of the metre, 908
Pramardini, a female energy, 136
Pramāthī, a year of the Hindu Calendar, 404
Pramitākṣarā, characteristics of the metre, 913
Pramlocā, mother of Māriṣā, 43
Pramoda, a year of the Hindu calendar, 404
Pramodaka, one of the two sons of Dr̥dhaśva, 736
Pṛāṃśu, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 735
prāṇa, a life force carried by the vein idā; functions of, 556
equated with the day, 557
Pṛāṇa, a son of Dhara and Manohara, 44
—son of Dhātra, 49
pranava, explanation of the significance and greatness of, 1042-3
the first syllable, 559
precedes all the mystic syllables, 52
a formula; no divisions in, 895
equated with the soul, 1056
Gaṇapati as representing, 412
equated with lord Śiva, 374
used for consecrating a child, 60
used in worship, 415
repeated, 63
destroys sins, 491
prāṇavāhīni, a nerve, 316
prāṇāyāma, two kinds of, 454, 557
meaning of the term, 1076
(agarbha) three kinds of, 454
(sagarbha) three kinds of, 454
different varieties of; merits of practising, 1044
as an atonement, 455
as dispersing sins, 487
pratā, a vessel, 58, 94
five mudrās known as, 857
shown in worship, 857, 869
Prāpaṇcā, image of, 138
Prapitāmaha, a linga, 343
Prāpīti, one of the two wives of Kaṁsa, 28
prāsa, a weapon that is cast off, 645
Prāśāda (lucidity), an excellence of word and sense; explanation of, 946
prāśāda, significance of the mantra known as; three kinds of, 558
description, 874
with parts and without parts, 874-75
no division in, 895
Prāśanta, a form of Rudra, 252
prāśara, a kind of citrākāvyā; definition of, 935
Prāśastā (praiseworthiness), an excellence of word and sense; explanation of, 946
Prāśasti, an embellishment of sound and sense; explanation of; two kinds, 942
Prasenaka, son of Nighaṇa; was killed by a lion, 743
Prasiddhavimala, one of the vimalas, 412
Prastāra, son of Pratīhāra, 323
Prastārapaṅkī, a variety of Paṅkī, composition of, 904
Prastāvanā, another name of Āmukha, 922
—a component of the mode Bhārati, 928
prastha, a measure, 93, 1078
Prasthāna, a type of drama, 921
Pratardana, son of Divodāsa; two sons of, 749
Prathamā, a goddess, 375
Pratīhāra, son of, 323
Pratīhāra, son of Pratīhāra; sons of, 323
Pratiṣṭhātra, son of Śami; son of, 743
pratiloma, relating to caste, 430
Pratīpa, son of Bhūmasena; son of, 751
prātīpadika, explanation of the term, 956
Pratiratha, one of the three sons of Matināra; son of, 748
pratistha, a modification of the array daṇḍa; characteristics of, 633
Pratisthā, a metre; number of letters in, 903
Pratiṣṭhā (gāyatri), characteristics of, 903
Pratiṣṭhāna, a place; described as the mule of Brahma, 329
got by Sudhyumna; given to Purūravas, 735
Prativindhya, son of Yudhiṣṭhira and Draupadi, 751
Pratoda, a hell, 532
Pratyaggra, one of the seven sons of Suhotra and Girikā, 750
pratyāhāra, explanation of the term, 1045
significance of the word, 1076
to be done only by those who repeat mantras, 454
pratyāhāras, the fourteen notations in grammar; explanation of, 953
pratyālīḍhā, a posture relating to archery, 645
Pratyāpiḍa, characteristics of the metre, 909
pratyāri, one of the tārābalas, 359
Pratyûṣa, one of the Vasus; father of Devala, 44
Prauḍhi (maturity), an excellence of sense, 945
Pravira, one of the four sons of Tarnusrodha, 749
Pravṛttaka, characteristics of the metre, 907
   a division of Āmukha; explanation of, 922
Prayāga, a sacred place, 350
greatness of, 328, 329-30
destroys sins, 491
Rāma’s arrival at, 13
Bharata’s visit to, 14
Prayoga, a deity; location of, 414
Prayogāṭiṣaya, a division of Āmukha; explanation of, 922
preceptor, characteristics of, 80+
should be respected, 618
preceptors, word denoting persons having same, 1017
Premokti, a variety of Praśasti, 942
Prekhnana, a type of drama, 921
present time, words signifying, 1019
presiding deities of elements, location and worship of, 290-91
presiding deity, worship of, 316-19
presiding deity of a ground, mode of worshipping, 272-6
Pretasīlā, at Gayā; merits of offering piṅḍa at, 342
pride, words denoting, 995
priests, associated with different Vedas; words denoting, 1017
priests, officiating, words denoting, 1017
principles, initiation in, 262-3
Pṛiti, mother of Dattoli, 49
worshipped, 90
priyā, a nerve, 316
priyāṅgu, a herb, 372
Priyavrata, son of Śvāvambhuva Manu and Śatarūpā, 41
   sons of; performed penance and attained god, 322
prokṣaṇi, a vessel, 58, 95
properties, division of, procedure relating to, 666-70
   of a dead man; rules relating to payment to heirs, 680
property, code of law relating to disputes about, 657-8
   enjoyment and possession as valid relating to, 657-8
   rules relating to sale of, 672
   mortgaged; disputes relating to, 657
   stolen; rules relating to, 672-73
   of women; six kinds of, 541
prosody, rules of, 901-2
   relating to Vedic metres, 902
prostration, merits of, 1043
prṣadājya, explanation of the word, 1017
Pṛṣadhra, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 735
   became a śūdra on account of killing the cow of his preceptor, 736
Pṛṣara, son of Jantu; son of, 750
Pṛthā, denotes Kuntī; accompanied Dhṛtarāṣṭra and Gāndhārī to the forest, 36
Pṛthā, a vein; carries the wind nāga, 556
Pṛthu, son of Vena, 42
Pṛthu, installed as the ruler, 47
   two righteous sons of, 43
   —son of Vibhu, 323
   —son of Suyodhana, 736
Pṛthudarbh, one of the four sons of Śibi, 747
Pṛthulākṣa, son of Lomapāda; son of, 748
Pṛthurukmaka, one of the sons of Rukmakavaca, 741
Pṛthusena, son of Vṛṣasena, 748
Pṛthuśrava, foremost among the sons of Śaśabindu; son of, 741
Pṛthividhara, a type of temple, 315
Pṛthvi, characteristics of the metre, 913
Pṛthvidhara, a god; worshipped, 317
Pṛthvisamānā, mantra, 442
public service, qualities of those in, 674
pukkasa, a caste, 430
pulaka, a gem, 641
Pulaha, a sage; a mind-born son of Brahmadevi, 41, 41fn;
   sons of, 49
   father of Viśravas, 24
Pulastya, a sage; a mind-born son of Brahmadevi, 41, 41fn
   father of Dattoli, 49
pulmonary consumption, commendable food during, 753
Pulumā, a daughter of Vaiśvānara, 46
Puloman, son of Danu and father of Śaci, 46
purūṣavāna, one of the rites, 59
   the time for performing, 86, 95
purarnavā, a herb; used as an unguent, 372
Punarukta (tautology), an impurity, 947
   two kinds of, 948
   sub-divisions of, 948
Punarvasu, an asterism; has the face lateral, 381
comprises the sphere of wind, 387
its location in Koçacakra, 385
commended for all acts, 381
commendable for imparting archery, 359
commendable for taking harvested grains inside the house, 361
misery caused by the transit of Sun in 363
should not enter the cow-pen in, 361
—son of Candana-dundubhi; wife and son of, 742
Puñḍarika, a deity presiding over the banner, 148
—worship of, 284
—a rite, 1079
—son of Nabha; son of, 738
—mountain, 352
—a measure, 551
Puñḍarikākṣa, a form of Viṣṇu at Puṣkara, 841
—a formula known as, 55
Puṣṇḍra, one of the sons of Bali, 747
punishment, one of the means to be employed by the king, 587
a political expedient, 627
two kinds of, 606
three kinds of, 628
two different kinds of, 628
for abuses; varies according to the order of castes, 676
pupil, obligation to the preceptor, 673
nine-fold function of 929
pūraka, a variety of prāṇayāma; reason for its name as, 557
purāṇa, defined as having five characteristics, 992
Purāṇas, eighteen in number, 2, 730
as a form of Hari, 492
as an Aparāvīdyā, 2
the names of eleven Rudras in, 45fn
merits of making a gift of, 735
Puraṇājaya, son of Śrījaya; son of, 747
Puraśa, one of the three sons of Matināra, 748
Purastād Bhṛati, composition of, 903
Purastād Jyotiṣ, composition of, 904
pure, word denoting, 996
things which are, 440
purgative, the herb that is the best, 757
decotion of herbs to be given as, 769
a decoction to be given as, 775
greasy barley water as; a different combination known as nārāca as, 778
purification for different pollutions, 441 ...

for travellers for eating food, 480
mode of, 82 ff
of the principle of establishment, 248-52
of the principle of peace, 254-57
of remnant materials, 480
of scriptural knowledge, 252-54
of things, 439-40
purificatory rites, their number and names, 85ff
forty-eight names of, 466
purity, two kinds—external and internal, 1042
Pūrṇa, a mountain, 414
pūrṇa, a pitcher, 270
pūrṇā, a stone, 269
Pūrṇagiri, a mountain, 412
pūrṇimā, fifteenth day of lunar fortnight, 990
letter denoting, 417
Pūrojava, son of Anila, 44
Purovasu, son of Babhrusetu, 747
pūrṭadharma, explanation of, 539
Pūru, one of the sons of Manu and Nāḍvalā, 42
—one of the sons of Yayāti, and Devāyāni, 25, 31, 740
Janamejaya was born to, 748
one of the founders of a dynasty, 740
lineage of, 748-51
Puruhūța, son of Dravarasa; son of, 742
Purujiṭā, was born from Śānti; son of, 749
Purukutsa, son of Māndhāṭrī; wife of; sons of, 737
Purunīḍha, one of the three sons of Brhat, 749
Pūrūravas, born to Budha and Ilā, 733, 739
born from Soma; father of Āyu, 25
enjoyed the company of Urvaśī, 739
practised Yoga and reached the world of Gandharvas; eight sons of, 739
divided one fire into three, 739
Puruṣa, form of Viṣṇu at Puruṣavatā, 841
Puruṣa (soul), Viṣṇu’s entry in, 39
Puruṣasūkta, hymn; offering of water made with, 437
repetition of; as remover of sins, 482
Puruṣavatā, a place; the name of Puruṣa to be repeated at, 841
Puruṣottama, form of Viṣṇu in the region of Oḍhra, 842
—a śālagrāma, 126
Puruṣottama (Puri), a sacred place, 491
merits of doing Śrāddha at, 350
Pūrvabhādrapāda, an asterism; belongs to the sphere of fire, 387
location in koṭācakra, 385
represented by letters, 400
associated with increase of grain, 361
causing death, 377
Pūrvapahāgumī, an asterism; belongs to the sphere of fire, 387
location of letters representing, 400 commendable for doing agriculture, 361
associated with increase of grains, 361
profitable, 376
misery caused by, 363
Pūrvas, the three asterisms; associated with increase of grains, 361
medicine to be administered in, 358
commended for copulation, 434
adversity caused by purchase of goods in, 359
an employer should not be attended to in, 360
Pūrvāśaḍha, an asterism; belongs to the watery region, 388
location of letter representing, 400 commendable for sowing seeds, 361
associated with increase of grains, 361
misery caused by transit of Sun in, 363
affliction caused by, 377
pūṣa, an occult nerve, 253
Pūṣaṇ, one of the Adityas; as son of Kaśyapa, 45
to be worshipped, 316
worshipped with fried grains, 108
Pūṣkara, a class of men in Krauṇcadvīpa, 352
Pūṣkara, narration of duties of castes, by, 429
—a continent given to Savana, by Priyavrata, 322, 323
ruler of, 353
—a holy spot, 327
Pūḍarikākṣa to be contemplated at, 841
destroy s sins, 491
benefit of making a gift at, 1078
—son of Bharata, 24
—a class of men in Krauṇcadvīpa, 352
Pūṣkariṇī, at Gayā; balls of rice to be offered at, 342
daughter of Vīraṇa Prajāpati; wife of Cākṣuṣa, 42
Pūṣpadanta, door keeper, 108
worship of, 273, 317
Pūṣpanandaka, a pitcher, 270
Pūṣpaka, chariot, 23
—a class of temple, 314
rectangle-shaped, 314
nine temples belonging to the class of, 314
Pūṣpārkṛṣṇa, an expiation; explanation of, 483
Pūṣpavat, a boundary mountain, 352
Pūṣpitāgrāḥ, characteristics of the metre, 911
to be employed in a Mahākāvya, 920
Pūspotkaṭā, wife of Viśravas, 24
Puṣṭi, wife of Dhatā, 739
worshipped, 91
Puṣṭi, nourishment; worshipped, 51
Puṣṭihara, a goddess, 376
Puṣṭikā, a female divinity; worshipped, 52
Puṣya, month; profit gained by purchase of perfume in, 387
—asterism; belongs to the sphere of fire, 387
has a firm look, 382
located in koṭācakra, 385
location of the letter representing, 400
benefit of wearing a herb in, 410
rite to determine the sex to be performed in, 357
karnaavedha to be done in, 359
good for eating new fruits and food, 358
commended for all acts, 381
misery caused by transit of Sun in, 363
Puṣṭa, characteristics of the metre, 912
Puṭanā, a demoness; sent by Kamśa to kill Kṛṣṇa, 27
Puṭanā, exercises her influence during the day, 826
letter denoting, 417
holds sway over the north-east, 138
symptoms of a child possessed by, 822
a monster taking possession of the child that is one month old, 822
material for the child possessed by, 822
material for fumigation when possessed by, 822
offering for seven days to appease, 822
prayer to boyhood form of Viṣṇu to destroy evil forces like, 84
worshipped by offering meat etc., 109
offering of meat etc. to, 274
to be worshipped, 317
Pūtimrtika, sub-division of a hell, 1039
Pūtivaktra, a hell, 532
putrañjiva, a herb, 406

Qualitative, a kind of Abhivyakti, 943
qualities, eight kinds of, 466
characteristics associated with the
three, 1033
needed for gaining fortune, 617
query, words standing for, 993

Rāga (tint), an excellence of word
and sense; explanation of, 946
Rāghava, words spoken by after
hearing Daśaratha's words, 11
Hanûmat's words to Sitā to show, 20
Aṅgada's words to Rāvaṇa to return
Sitā to, 21
Bharata's visit to, 24
the words of praise spoken by the
sages to, 24
form of Viṣṇu at Citrakūṭa, 841
(See also Rāma)
Raghu, son of Kauktusha, 9
—son of Anamitra; son of, 737
—one of the sons of Yadu, 740
Rāgini, image of, 138
Rahovādi, son of Satyāvī; son of, 748
Rāhu, words denoting, 989
born to Śimhikā and Viśrācī, 45
drinking of the nectar in the guise
of the Moon by, 6
form of, 137
chariot of, 356
period (years) of influence of, 363,
393
presides over one-sixteenth part
of day, 381
description of its rule on a day, 409
two kinds of eclipses caused by, 988
head denoted by the asterism occu-
pied by, 380
worshipped, 52
contemplated as resembling char-
coal, 828
merits of making a gift when the
Sun is eclipsed by, 362
predictions based on the position
of, 410
in tenth house confers good, 384
good or bad luck indicated by, 400
fright caused by the aspect of, 378
fatality indicated by, 389
indicates misery by presence in the
seventh house, 383
Rāhucakrā, procedure for writing,
370-71
description of, 377-78
Raivata, one of the eleven forms of
Rudra, 45
—the fifth Manu, 427
—son of Reva; known as Kakudmin;
an account of; performed penance
on the Sumeru Mountain and
reached lord Viṣṇu; founded
Dvāravatī (Dvārakā), 736
—a boundary mountain, 352
Raivataka, a place; Deva worshipped
at, 841
Dāmodara worshipped at, 842
Raja, son of Vasītha and Urjā, 49
—son of Viraja and father of Satyajit,
323
Rājagrha, a place; merits of, 328
rājamaya, auspicious nature of the
gem called, 641
rajani, a herb; used as an unguent,
372
rājapaṭṭa, an inferior kind of diamond;
said to be auspicious, 641
Rajas, father of Ketumati, 48
Rājasa, a form of god; letter denoting,
419
rājas, denotes the entry of the Sun in
a sign, 362
Rājasāya, a sacrifice, 33, 42, 1079
Rājeyas, name of the one hundred
sons of Rājī, 739
Rājī, one of the sons of Āyus; hundred
sons of, 739
got a boon from lord Viṣṇu and
killed the demons, 739-40
whose sons usurped the kingdom
of Indra, 740
Rājī, salutations made to, 52
rājila, a class of serpents, 807
Rājī, daughter of Raivata: one of the
wives of the Sun, 735
Rākā, a son of Aṅgiras and Smṛti, 49
rākā, the full moon is called, 990
Rākini, a goddess; worshipped, 415
Rākṣa (Nairṇṛta), worshipped, 51
Rākṣasa, a year of the Hindu calendar,
405
rākṣasa, a type of marriage, 435
Rākṣasi, a spirit afflicting the child
in the eleventh month; symptoms
of the child afflicted by, 824
image of, 138
Raktā, invoked in worship, 230
Raktacandikā, invoked as the eyes
in the worship of Kubjikā, 411
Raktākṣa, a year of the Hindu
calendar, 405
Raktāksi, image of, 138
Rāma, manifestation of Viṣṇu as, 9-25
foremost of Raghu, 738
eldest son of Daśaratha, 738
birth of, 10
married Sitā, 11
conquest of Paraśurāma by, 11
proposal for coronation of, 11
Kaikēyi's request to send him to forest, 12
Daśaratha's words to, 13
Bharata's meeting with; arrival at Daṇḍaka, 15
Khara, Dūṣaṇa and other demons killed by, 16
lamented and searched for Sitā, 17
befriended Sugrīva, 17
was assured by Sugrīva of help to get back Sitā, 18
Sugrīva's meeting with, 18
signet ring of, 18
Hanūmat recounting the story of, 19
crossing the ocean by, 21
fainting of, 22
killing of Rāvaṇa by, 23, 738
rescue of Sitā etc. by, 23
ruled at Ayodhyā, 738
image of, 115, 129
to be contemplated on every mountain, 482
salutations made to, 82
benefit of worshipping, 343
ethics narrated by, 617-18
Rāma (Paraśurāma), 9
Rāma, See Balarāma
Ramaṇa, a son of Dhara and Manoharā, 44
Rāmatirtha, at Gayā; balls of rice to be offered to, 342
Rāmāyaṇa, story of, 9
composed by Vālmikī after hearing from Nārada, 25
Rambhā, a monkey; accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
Rambhā, as a form of Gauri, 133
Rāmeśa, a linga at Gayā; benefits of worshipping, 343
Ramya, Nilācāla given by Agnīdhra to, 322
Ramya, characteristics of the metre, 912
Ramyaka, a mountain, 324
Rāṇāśva, one of the two sons of Samhātāśva; son of, 737
randhra, herb denoted by, 407
range of things, words denoting, 988
Rāṅgīlānanda, to be worshipped, 414
raṇjani, a flower, 529
rasāb, herb denoted by, 406
Rāṣāka, a type of drama, 921
Rāṣṭrapāla, one of the sons of Ugra-
sena, 742
Rāṣṭrāvardhana, a minister of King Daśaratha, 11
rathānu, a measure, 107
Rathodhāta, characteristics of the metre, 912
Rāti, invoked, 91
propitiation of, 176
reborn as Māyāvati, story of 29, 29fn
ratnadhenu, a great gift, 544
Ratnasundari, worshipped in the worship of Kubjikā, 412
rats, poisons due to sixteen kinds; remedy for, 819
Raucya, thirteenth Manu, 428
Raudra (Raudri), a year of Hindu calendar, 405
—ā muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
Raudraka, propitiation of, 176
Raudri, a female energy, 51
one of three forms of Uma, 374
a comparison of goddess Tvaritā, 424
as an old goddess, 412
characteristics of, 375
worshipped, 51, 201, 413
to be worshipped, 412
Raurava, had a son Duṣkha through Vedanā, 49
Raurava, a hell, 531
sub-division of hells, 1039
Rāvana, Viṣṇu's manifestation to kill, 10
son of Viśravas and Kaikasī, 24
the king of Laṅkā, 15fn
Śūrpaṇakhā's visit to; abduction of Sitā by, 16
requesting Sitā to marry him, 19
reference to Jaṣṭīyu wounded by, 18
battle with Rāma and fall of, 23
search for Sitā by Hanīmat in the house of, 19
Hanīmat's words to and anger of, 20
was intent on killing Āṅgada, 21
Kumbhakaraṇa's words to, 22
killed by Rāma, 738
—ā muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
Ravi, as a name of the Sun, 136
—herb denoted by, 406
recipes, which would revive dead, 772
reconditeness, a defect of word; five kinds of, 947
red, words denoting different shades of, 902
regal power, three kinds of, 629
rejoice, words denoting, 990
relatives, words denoting different kinds of, 1014
religious observance, words denoting, 1017
remedies, five groups of; the characteristics of, 763
renovation of decayed images, 184
Rēṣukhayā, one of the sons of Śatajīt, 740
Rēnukā, Bhārgava as son of, 8
renunciation, explanation of the term, 1059
greatness of, 464
repetition, word meaning, 993
of a word; two kinds of, 935
compounded, 935
of a sentence, 935
reply, words signifying, 993
respiration, nine actions of, 929
retention, explanation of the term, 1049
four kinds of; explanation of, 1050
Reva, Raivata alias Kakudmin was the eldest among the hundred sons of, 736
Revā, a river; greatness of, 328
Revanta, son of Sun and Rājī, 735
Revanta, merits of worshipping, 343
Revati, a female force, 84
image of, 138
goddess invoked, 399
worshipped in the wind-circle, 375
daughter of Raivata; given in marriage to Baladeva, 736
wife of Balabhadra; sons of, 29
beloved of lord Viṣṇu, 746
—an asterism; has its face lateral, 381
belongs to the watery region, 388
location in koṭacakra, 385
location in a diagram, 400
marriage commendable in, 357
profit caused by things bought in, 360
sowing seeds gains fortune in, 361
new fruits and food to be eaten in, 358
wearing of gems commendable in, 359
misery caused by Sun’s transit in, 363
reward, for soldiers after victory; proportionate to the task accomplished, 632
Rgveda, authority for the Dvai-pāyana, 730
hymns to be recited by the followers of, 287
two divisions of, 730
number of hymns of the bhārmaṇas of, 730
application of the mantras of, 683-695
—as a manifestation of lord Viṣṇu, 356
as an Aparāvidyā, 2
saluted, 50
assigned on the hand, 64
ornament for Indra, 93
Rgvedā, a Yogī; image of, 138
rheumatic pain, in general and in the hip; remedy for, 775
rheumatic patients, commendable medicines for, 734
rheumatism, remedy for, 775
righteousness, ten characteristics of, 434
riktā days, good for commencement of study, 339
Ripra, one of the sons of Śīṣṭi and Succhāyā, 42
Ripu, had the son Cākṣuṣa through Brhati, 42
Ripuhara, form of Viṣṇu at Lokākula, 841
Ripuṇjayā, form of Viṣṇu at Virajā, 841
—one of the sons of Śīṣṭi and Succhāyā, 42
rite, strengthening, 410-11
rites, different kinds of, 379
Rjiṣa, sub-division of a hell, 1039
Rk, hymns; creation of, 40
Rkṣa, born to Ajamiḍha and Dhūmin; son of, 750
Rkṣa (the second), son of Vidūratha; son of, 750, 751
rkaṇāyaka, a type of temple, 315
Rkṣeyu, one of the ten sons of Bhadrāśva, 748
Rnāmokṣa, at Gaya; merits of bathing in, 342
rocanā, a herb, 372
rocika, a perfection, 257
Rodani, a monstress affecting the child on the tenth day after birth; symptoms of the child possessed by; offering and fumigation to appease; the unguent to besmear on the child possessed by, 822
—a monstress seizing the child in the third year; symptoms of the child seized by; offering to appease; fumigation when the child is seized by, 824
rodhaka, explanation of, 403
rodhamudrā, 308
Rohiṇī, one of the fixed asterisms, 581
one of the blunted asterisms, 381
location in koṭaçakra, 385
location of the letter denoting, 400
reason for unusual commotion in, 388
a combination caused by the presence of Sun in, 362
new fruits and food should be taken in, 358
commendable for marriage, 357
commended for copulation, 434
good for the first feeding of the child, 358
good for commencing construction of a house, 360
not good for entering the cow-pen, 361
mystery caused by Sun's presence in, 363
wife of Vasudeva; the birth of Balarāma to, 26, 26fn., 744
Rohitāśva, son of Hariścandra; son of, 737
roots, paste of; to make the woman deliver the child comfortably, 834
rosary, the presiding deity of the thread of, 899
rosary beads, four different kinds of; each subdivided into four; benefits of wearing and using for counting, 894
row, words which mean, 1007
royal fan, characteristics of, 638
royal priest, qualities of, 619
Ṛṣabha, a constellation; correction for, 367
(See also Taurus)
—son of Nābhi and Meru, 329
—son of Svāhyā; son of, 743
Ṛṣabha (hills), as a sacred place, 328
Ṛṣabhagajīvilasītam, characteristics of the metre, 913
Ṛṣi, region known as, 640
Ṛṣāmātika, mountain; kingdom restored to Sugriva by Rāma at, 17-18
Ṛṭadhāma, Īndra during the period of the 12th Manu, 428
ṛtvāṇa, herb denoted by, 406
Ṛtus, story relating to his disciple Nidāgha, 1066f
ṛtu, herb denoted by, 408
Ṛtupārṇa, son of Śrutāyū; son of, 737
ṛtviṇaḥ, ṛtvik, herb denoted by, 406
ruby, a gem, 640
characteristics of, 641
said to be auspicious, 641
rucaka, a herb, 407
Rucirā, characteristics of the metre, 913
rudantikā, a herb, 406
rudhirākṣa, said to be suspicious, 641
Rudhirādgāri, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
Rudra, creation of, 40
as a son of Sātī, 45
being known so because of birth from wailing Brahmā, 49
protection sought by, 50
herb denoted by, 406, 407
the five constituents of worship of, 814-15
the sage, metre and deity for the hymns for, 815-16
the order of recitation of different hymns of, 815
presiding deity of an element, 271
worship of, 274, 290
denoting Śiva as destructive fire; as a form of Viṣṇu, 2
the feminine form of Viṣṇu seen by, 6
Rudrācāmūṇḍa, a goddess of dancing; image of, 194
Rudracandā, a goddess; worshipped, 132
Rudracarcikā, a goddess, image of, 134
rudrahina, a pavilion relating to the presiding deity, 318
rudrājāta, a herb, 406
rudrākṣa, excellence of, 900
Rudrapāda, at Gayā; merits of touching, 338
Rudrasaṅgrāhi, a goddess; image of, 138
Rudras, as a creation of the sages, 41
names of eight, 263
eleven names of, 44, 44fn., 45fn.
fourteen names of, 254-55
25 different forms of, 252-3
names of different, 249
numerous, 45
consecration of, 180
Rudra, a siddha, 414
Rudresa, a liṅga, 343
Rudra Sāvarṇi, the twelfth Manu, 428
Rukmakavaca, son of Kambalabarhiṣa; foremost among fifty sons of, 741
Ruknavati, characteristics of the metre, 912
Rukmeṣu, one of the sons of Rukmakavaca, 741
Rukmikūḍa, at Gayā, 341
Rukmin, one of the wifes of Krṣṇa, 28, 744
birth of Pradyumna to, 29
had many forms together with Krṣṇa, 31
Rūṣakarṇi, a goddess; image of, 138
Rūmā, entrusted to Sugriva by Rāma, 17
Rūpaka, explanation of; when it may be called Upamā, 941
Rūpakam, one of the similarities, 939
Rūpavardhana, a form of Rudra, 252
Rūr, a demon; slayer of, 999
Rūsadgu, son of Svāhā; son of, 741
Ruṣadṛatha, son of Titikṣu; son of, 747
Śadbabhedha, a weapon, 14
Śadbabrahman, one of the two brahman; explanation of the term, 1060
Śabdaka, one of those worshipped in the worship of Kubjikā, 414
Śābdam, explanation of the term, 1027
Śabhānara, one of the foremost sons of Vidūṣa; son of, 747
Śaci, daughter of Puloman, 46
saciṣyāga, one of the four acts relating to a marriage, 434
sacred formulas, conferring prosperity and having medicinal effect; description of, 770-72
sacred spots, greatness of, 326-8
sacred thread, made of different material for the different castes, 433
investiture of, 221-24
mode of investiture of, 215-21
knots on, 216
sacrifices, seven domestic, 466
sacrificial ground, words denoting, 1017
sacrificial pit, mode of constructing, 56-61
sacrificial rites, of three kinds, 1043
classified as sāttvika, rājasa and tāmasa, 1071-72
Sādāśiva, presiding deity of an element, 271
identified with letter kṣa, 254
worshipped in the worship of Kubjikā, 414
Sādāśivā, a goddess worshipped in the worship of Tvaritā, 424
śaḍaṣṭaka, position of planets, 337
śādhaka, one of the tārābalas, 359
Sādhāni, letter denoting, 417
śādhyā, relating to letter in worship, 990, 391, 403
relating to the letters in the name of the votary, 895
Sādhyā, Sādhyās were born to, 44
sādhyamantras, become fruitful by repetitions, worship etc, 803
Sādhyās, born to Sādhyā, 44
consecration of the images of, 180
sadabhaya, a pavilion, 318
śādṛṣyam (similarity), an embellishment of senses, 939
Sadyojāta, letter denoting, 418
saffron, used as an unguent, 372
Sagara, son of Bāhu; two wives of; sons of; whose sons were burnt by sage Kapila, 737
sages, general term for, 1018
names of the seven prominent referred to as Citraśikhāṇḍin, 989-
Sagitarius, the time taken by the Sun to traverse, 384
friendly with Gemini, 392
Sahadeva, son of Somadatta; son of, 750
—son of Jarāsandha; son of, 750
—born to Māḍri and Pāṇḍu, 744, 751
born through the grace of Aśvinikumāra, 32
fell on the way of march, 37
son of, 751
sahadeva, a herb, 372
sahadevi, a herb used as an unguent, 372
offers good protection, 378
used in a charm, 405-6
sāhāsa, denotes fine; three kinds of, 588-89
Sahasrajit, eldest son of Yadu, 740
Sahasrārṇa, a name of the Sun, 136
Sahasrāśva, son of Ahināśva; son of, 738
Sahiṣṇu, one of the sons of Pulaha and Kṣamā, 49
Sahokti, one of the similarities, 939
explanation of, 941
Sahya, mountain, 350
rivers flowing from, 351
Devadevesa to be worshipped, 842
Sahyādri, a sacred mountain, 328
śaila, herb denoted by, 406, 407, 408
Śailuṣa, a Gandharva; sons of, 24
Sairihhikeyas, Rāhu and others; progeny of Sīthihikā, 45
Saindhava, a forest, 842
saindhava, a herb, 407
Sairandhri, Draupadi as, 33
Saitava, an authority in prosody, 913
Śaka, one of the seven continents, 323
given by Priyavrata to Bhavya, 322
rulers of, 352
about the people of, 351
sakala, one of the kinds of mantras of Śiva, 873
Śaka, son of Nariṣyanta, one of the sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 736
śakaṭa, an array; a variation of the array called bhoga, 634
an array of the shape of a cart, 635
Śākha, younger brother of Kumāra, 44
image of, 134
Śākini, a goddess; to be worshipped, 415
Śākini-s, image of, 135
Śakra (Indra), was given the worlds by Viṣṇu, 8
abandoning of the festivity of, 27
birth of Arjuna by the grace of, 32
Maruts as the allies of, 47
praised Lakṣmi, 49
salutation made to the face of, 51
worshipped, 316
one of the twelve Ādityas, 45
Śakrajīt (Indrajīt), 20
śākta, a method of locating mantras, 416
Śakti, a guardian deity, 50
salutation made to, 52
worshipped, 284
śākta, a posture of the hands, 857
Śaktidīkṣā, initiation to be performed, 73
śakuna, an astral combination, 363
Śakuni, a son of Hiranyākṣa, 46, 46fn
—assisted Duryodhana in dice play, 33
—an impeding force; prayer to Kṛṣṇa
to destroy, 84
—karaṇa on fourteenth day of dark
fortnight, 369
Śakuntalā, wife of Duṣyanta, 749
Śakunti, son of Drḍhara; son of,
742
Śakvari, name of a metre, 905
Mahākāvya should be composed in
the metre, 920
Śala, one of the sons of Bāllhika, 751
Śālagrama, a sacred place, 350, 491
Mahāyoga to be contemplated at,
841
Hari to be contemplated at, 841
resorted to by Rṣabha, 323
merits of, 328
śālagrama, characteristics of, 124-
126
three kinds of worship of, 126
mode of worshipping, 126
śālagrama, a type of temple, 314
Śālihotra, science of horses expounded
by, 789
Śālini, characteristics of the metre,
912
Śālmaḷa, a continent, 323
given by Priyavrata to Vapūṣmān,
322
extent of and rulers of, 352
Śālmaḷa, a hell, 532
Śālmaḷi, main river in the hell, 1039
śālmaḷiya, flower not to be used in
worship, 529
Śalya, fought for a day and was killed
by Yudhīṣṭhira, 35
śamādhī, definition of, 454
explanation of, 943, 1076
explanation of the mode of practis-
ing, 1051
benefits of practising, 1052
śamam (evenness), an embellishment
of sense, 939
Śāmān, hymns; creation of, 40
samāna, a life-force carried by the
vein suṣumnā; functions of, 556
Śāmānī, characteristics of the metre,
908
samapada, relating to archery, 645
samasaptaka, position of planets,
happiness indicated by, 357
Śāmasokti, brevity of expression, 943
Śamasyā, a puzzle, 992
a kind of Citrakāvya, 935
definition of, 936
Śamavakāra, a type of drama, 921
samāvara, a rite to be performed, 95
Śāmaveda, as an Aparāvidyā, 2
two branches of, 730
division of, 429
three kinds of songs of, 730
extent of, 730
hymns to be recited by a follower of,
287
use of the hymns of, 704-7
the śrīśūkta of, 710
sacred for water god, 93
Śamaya, a Rudra, 254
Śamayavimala, to be worshipped,
412, 415
Śāmayikatvam (conventional), an ex-
cellence of sense, 945
Śāmanta, son of Jāmbavati from Kṛṣṇa,
29, 744
curse of the sages on, 36fn
Śambara, a son of Hiranyākṣa, 46
—demon; Daśaratha's battle with,
12fn
—a companion of Kaṭhisa, 29
—story relating to, 29fn
Śambarā, image of, 138
Śambhava, one of the guards of door;
worshipped, 93
son of Urja; son of, 750
Śambhava, a method of locating
mantras, 416
sambhavāyaniya, details relating to
the vow of, 520-1
Śambhu, denotes Śiva; reference to
Kāma made bodiless by, 29
Śati born again and becoming wife
of, 50
investiture of sacred thread for, 215
one of the Rudras, 45, 252
—wife of Dhrūva and mother of
Śīṣṭi and Bhavya, 42
Śambhūta, son of Purukutsa; son of,
737
Śambhūti, wife of Marici; progeny of,
49
Śambhana, son of Dharmanetra; son
of, 740
Śambhārī, a goddess, 375
sāṃhāramudrā, 198, 211, 212, 237, 238, 239
Sāṃhārīkā, letter denoting, 417
Sāṃhārīrūmudrā, 236
Sāṃhataśva, son of Nikumbha; two sons of, 737
Śāmi, one of the five sons of Śoṇāśva; son of, 743
Śaṁjñā, daughter of Tvaṣṭr; one of the wives of the Sun; gave birth to Vaivasvata Manu and the Aśvina, 735
sampat, one of the tārābalas, 359
Sampātī, eagle brother of Jāṭāyu; words spoken to the monkeys by, 18
words spoken to Hanumāt and others by, 19
sampradāna (giving), three kinds of; explanation of, 971
sampāptidvādaśi, on the practice of, 513
Samvatāpana, sub-division of a hell, 1039
sampūṣṭa, relating to a mantra, 403
Samrāt, daughter of Kardama and Devabhūti, 41
samsargayamaka (samudga?), one of the Yakmas, 935
Samsārayopamā, explanation of, 940
Samuccayopamā, explanation of, 940
Samudra, father of Savarnā, 43
samudra, a treasure, 269
Saṁvaraṇa, son of Rkṣa; son of, 730
Saṁvarta, a law-giver, 455
Saṁvarta, one of those worshipped in the worship of Kubjikā, 414
letter denoting, 419
Saṁvidhāna (contrivance), an excellence of sense, 945
Saṁvyāti, son of Bahuvidha; son of, 748
Saṁvyogavimāla, one of the Vimalas; worshipped, 412
Saṁvyuktahalapāṅkti, name of a gift, 547
Sanaka, a sage; dwells in Janaloka, 354
expositions made by, 1074
Sanatkumāra, creation of, 40, 48
Kumāra identified with, 44
sand, word for, 995
sandal, red; as an unquenct, 372
sandhya, a flower, 529
Sandhyāvala, as an excellent place, 330
Śaṁḍīṭyā, a Pāṇcaratragama, 106
Śaṇḍipani, guru of Kṛṣṇa, 28
Saṅghāta, sub-division of a hell, 1039
Saṅgraha, collection of stories, 992
Saṅgrahana, a posture relating to riding horses, 787
 Śani, worshipped 52,
Śanicakra, to find victory; drawing of, 370
Saṅjaya, a modification of the array danda, 633
Saṅjivana, sub-division of a hell, 1039
Saṅjivani, letter denoting, 417
Saṅkalpa, progeny of, 44
Saṅkara (Śiva), fight between Hari and, 30
installation of image of, 172
worshipped in the worship of Kubjikā, 414
Saṅkari, image of, 133
Saṅkarsana, denotes Balarāma, 26 fn
as a form of Viṣṇu, 62
installation of image of, 172
as a deity presiding over the banner, 148
worship with the basic syllable of, 68
worshipped, 91
—ā śālagrama, 124, 125
Śaṅkha, a law-giver, 455
—a serpent, image of, 137
śaṅkha, a type of temple, 315
—a treasure, 88, 111, 269
—one of the postures of the hand, 857
Saṅkhadvāra, a place, 841
Saṅkhakūta, group of mountains, 325, 325 fn
Saṅkhapād, son of Kardama Prajāpati; made ruler of the south, 47
Saṅkhapāla, one of the eight chief serpents, the number of heads of, 807
Saṅkhiṇī, form of Viṣṇu at Saṅkhadvāra, 841
Saṅkhīṇī, an occult nerve, 257
carries the wind dhanañjaya, 556
Saṅkhya, creation according to, 39fn
saṅkrīṇa, a variety of horses, 789
Saṅkrīti, classical metres based on, 914
Saṅkṣepa, an embellishment of sound and sense; explanation of, 942
Saṅkṣipta, a variety of Arābhaṭī, 928
Saṅku, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742
Saṅkukarna, worship of, 284
Saṅkumati, gāyatri, composition of the metre, 904
Saṅkurāya, one of the sons of Danu, 46
Saṅkuśirāḥ, different reading for Saṅkurāya, 46fn
Sannateyu, one of the ten sons of Bhadrāśva, 748
Sannati, wife of Kratu; progeny of, 49
Śánta, a son of Āpa, 44
Śántā, a nerve, 316
Śantabhaya, a son of Medhātithi, 351
Śantanu, born in the race of Bharata son of Pratipa; 31
sōn of; through Gaṅgā and Kāli (Satyavati), 751
sāntapana, an expiration; explanation of, 482, 494
for having stolen things, 476
for having drunk polluted water, 480, 487
Santati, different reading for Sannati, 49fn
Śánti, Indra at the time of the 10th Manu, 428
—a female energy; worshipped, 91
—born to Ajamīdha and Nilini, 749
sāpiṇḍikaraṇa, rite; mode of performing, 348-9
to be performed for women, 442, 460
sapphire, a gem, 640
qualities of a good, 641
sapta, herb denoted by, 407
Saptabhūmā, a hell, 1039
Saptarātra, religious texts, 105
Sapṭārcis, worship of, 285
śaka, a posture of the hands, 837
a flower, 529
śāra, a ray of the Sun, 195
Śārā, image of, 138
Śarabha, a monkey that accompanied Rāma to Lāṅkā, 21
Śarabhaṅga, sage saluted by Rāma, 15
entered the fire in the presence of Rāma, 15fn
Śārābhāṣṭa, a mūhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
Śaradvata, married Ahlayā, and had a son, 750
Śaradvipa, future birth of cakravākas in, 349
Śārāṇa, one of the sons of Vasudeva and Rohini, 744
śarapuṇḍhikā, a herb, 410
Śarāṣṭruha, a variety of bandha, 937
Śārāṣṭvakalpa, a kalpa period, 732
śārāṣṭvakavatāra, mode of practising, 524
Śarāvatī (goddess), saluted, 1
the term used in a formula, 52
image of, 131, 183
worship of, 197
benefit of worshipping, 343
—river, 327
—confluence of Ganges with, 327
Śaravatī, river at Gayā, 344
Śārātha, beads belonging to the Savitras class, 894
Saraṅgī, a river, Daśāratha's funeral rites done on the banks of, 14
Śarīrā, letter denoting, 417
Śarmiṣṭhā, daughter of Vṛṣaparvan, 23, 46, 740
was the second wife of Yayāti, 25, 740
story relating to Devayāni's curse on, 25fn
Śārṅga, worshipped, 52, 88
Śrūgadharin, form of Viṣṇu at Daṇḍaka, 842
Sarpa, a form of Rudra, 43
sarpa, a constellation; adversity caused by purchase of things in, 359
sarpacāra, array; modification of bhoga, 635
sarpākṣi, used as an unguent, 372
sarpāsya, a modification of the array daṇḍa, 633
Sarpī, an ocean, 324
sarpya, herb denoted by, 407
Śarva, a name of Rudra, 50
worship of, 290
sārvabhauma, significance of the word, 1018
Sarvabhavodbhava, a form of Rudra, 252
Sarvabhūtadamanī, a female energy; worshipped, 51
Sarvadā (Śarvari), a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
Sarvadhātri, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
Sarvajit, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
Sarvajñā, image of, 138
Sarvajñāvimala, one of the Vimalas, 412
—worshipped, 415
Sārvakāmada, letter denoting, 419
Sarvakarmā, son of Kaṁṣāspāda; son of, 737
Sarvanetra, a deity presiding over the banner, 145
worship of, 284
Sarvapāparahā, form of Viṣṇu on Vindhya mountain, 842
Sarvatobhadra, a mystical diagram, 879-80
worship of Hari in, 75fn
—a type of temple, 314
—one of the bandhas; description of; 936
three kinds of, 937
—an array, 612, 630
modification of maṇḍala, 634
has opening on all sides, 634
formation optional, 635
Sarvatomukhi, an energy, established, 304
worshipped, 51
Satravatā, son of Dharmāśāvarṇī
Manu, 428
Śarvatā, one of the eight sons of
Vaivasvata Manu, 735, 736
two sons of, 736
—one of the seven sons of Nahuṣa, 740
Śaśabindu, son of Citrāratha; a great
monarch; a devotee of Viṣṇu;
had ten thousand sons, 741
śās, herb denoted by, 406
Śaśiva, a form of Rudra, 252
Śaśthā, worshipped, 412
Śaśthī, one of the Ādināthas, 412
Śaṭābhīṣak, a movable asterism, 381
a blunted asterism, 382
an asterism; profit caused by pur-
chase in, 360
for increasing the grains, 361
misery caused by Śun's transition,
363
location of letter representing, 400
Śatadhanu, was killed by Kṛṣṇa, 743
Śatadhanvā, one of the ten sons of
Hṛḍiāka, 743
Śatadūmna, a son of Manu and
Naḍvalā, 42
Śaṭāṇḍaṅkī, a variety of Paṅktī, 904
Śatajit, one of the sons of Yadu; three
sons of, 740
śatamūli, a herb, 407
Śatānandā, a sage, 10
son of Śaradvata and Ahalyā, 750
son of, 750
Śatānīka, son of Nakula and Draupadi,
751
śatapūṣpi, a herb, 407
Śatarūpā, two sons of, 41
Śatasrīgā, hermitage of, 32
Śatātapā, a law-giver, 453
śatātārā, an asterism; located in
Koṇacakra, 385
śatāvari, a herb, 371
Śatāyus, a son of Purūravas, 739
Satī, gave up her life; born as
daughter of Himavān, 50
—a nerve, 316
—an excellence of word, 944
Śatobhratī, name of Mahābrhatī
according to Bhaṇḍila, 904
Śatrajit, son of Nighna; got the Syam-
antaka from Sun god; Syamantaka
gem returned by Kṛṣṇa to; was
killed by Śatadhanu, 743
śatru, explanation of, 1019
Śatrughna, birth of, 10
married Śrutakṛitra, 11
was brought to the city along with
Bharata, 14
killed Lavaṇa, 24
Śatrujit, one of the five sons of Śoṇāśva,
743
Śaṭṭaka, a type of drama, 921
sāṭtvika, one of the qualities, 48
Saturday, tripūṣkara caused by, 362
prosperity caused by Kṛttikā occur-
ing on, 377
inauspiciousness of seventh day on,
381
rule of Rāhu lies at south-east on,
409
Saturn, distance of, 354
chariot of, 356
period (years) of influence of, 363,
393
presides over a part of day, 381
the letter presided over by, 374
image of, 37
contemplated as dark, 828
confers good in sixth place, 383
brings good in tenth place, 384
victory indicated by, 393
begets defeat, 377
fatality indicated by, 389
bad luck indicated by, 400
Śāvata, son of Jantu; four sons of;
a good Yādava king, 742
Śāvati, one of the modes, 928
Satya, a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 428
—Aiśvara, an āgama, spoken by, 106
—one of the sons of Priyavrata, 322
—a world; worshipped, 79
—personified; worshipped, 316
Śatyā, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
Śatyabhāmā, daughter of Śatrajit;
married by Kṛṣṇa, 743, 744
was devoted to Kṛṣṇa, 744
return of Kṛṣṇa in the company of,
28
Śatyadevi, one of the daughters of
Devaka; married by Vasudeva, 742
Śatyaḍhṛī, son of Śatānandā; pro-
geny of, 750
Śatyahita, son of Vṛṣabha; son of, 750
Śatyaḷī, son of Raja, 323
Śatyaka, son of Śīni, 743
Śatyaketu, son of Sukumāra, 749
Śatyaki, son of Śatyaka; also known as
Yuyudhāna, 743
survived the Bhārata war, 36
Śatyaloka, distance of; residents of,
354
Śatyananda, sandals of; worshipped,
414
Śatyarātha, son of Satyavrata; son of,
737
son of Citraratha; son of, 748
Śatyavāk, one of the sons of Manu
and Naḍvalā, 42
beads; the four divisions of, 894
a mūhūrtā; deeds to be done in, 371
Sāvitrī, letter denoting, 418
located for worship, 317
worship of, 274
name of a new-moon day conferring benefits, 519
sāvitritmantra, as purifying from sin, 479
Scorpio, time taken by the Sun to transit, 384
friendly with other constellations, 392
scorpion, remedy for poison due to, 819
scorpion-bite, remedy for, 756
seasons, two divisions of; the different tastes getting increased in, 759
seat of a king, characteristics of, 638
self, the subtle nature of, 1076
self, golden image of; merits of giving as gift of, 548
selling, words denoting, 1022
senility, remedy which arrests, 756
sense(s), compared to an elephant, 617
as the horses, 1075
embellishment of, 939
description of, 42
sentence, definition of, 992
that is well-constructed; word for, 993
sentiments, importance of; interdependent on emotion, 924
the names of, 994
words denoting different, 994-5
exhibited by moods; origin of, 923-4
four self-developed ones, 924
serpent, words standing for, 995
serpent bites, four kinds of, 808
at certain places described as inauspicious, 808-9
auspicious and inauspicious sounds and objects seen relating to, 809
description of auspicious-inauspicious type of messengers conveying news about, 809
the poison due to; the way in which spreads, 810
the treatment with mystic formulae for, 811, 814
serpents, the different species of, 807
seven factors such as the nature etc. of, 807
the names of eight chief; classified into groups, 807
three classes of, 807
having hoods bear different signs, 807
four divisions of, 807
the names of the different teeth of, 807
details relating to impregnation, laying of eggs etc. by, 807-8
seven among the eight preside over the days of the week, 808
servant, words denoting, 1019
the qualities marking the king's, 621
servants, of the king, code of conduct for, 575-6
the qualities of, 620-21
Śeṣa, one of the eight chief serpents the number of heads of, 807
born from Kadrū, 46
Viṣṇu as, 333
the word Ananta denoting, 63fn
worship of, 273, 317
worshipped, 108
śeṣa, an array; marked by rows of elephants, 634
Sevācakra, indicating gain or loss, 390-91
Sevyā, name of the wife of Jyāmāgha, 741
sheaths, description of the seven, 1034
shellac, as an aungent, 372
shyness, words denoting, 995
Śibi, a son of Hrada, 46
different reading for Gaya, 42fn
the four sons of, 747
Śibikāveśma, a type of temple, 314
sickness, a general remedy to remove, 769
siddha, letters falling into the group of, 390
relating to the letters in the name of the votary, 895
as fruitful, 391
Siddha (vimala), worshipped, 415
Siddhacāmunḍā, image of, 135
siddhacaturśka, four siddhas, 415
Siddhakoṭiśvara, worshipped, 414
siddhamantras, become fruitful by mere repetition, 803
Siddhartha, a minister of King Daśaratha, 11
—a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
siddhārtha, a herb, 407
siddhas, names of, 414
Siddhārma, a place; Rāma's stay at, 10
Siddhayogēśvari, image of, 135
Siddheśvara, a liṅga, 348
sides, five actions of, 930
Śīkha, a goddess, 417
—one of the four kinds of rosary beads; the four divisions of, 894
—characteristics of the metre, 907, 911
śīkha, a herb, 372
Śikhaṇḍi, son of Drupada, 34fn
fought on the side of the Pāṇḍavas, 34
Śikhaṇḍin, a Rudra, 263
Śikhaṇḍini, later transformed to a male form, 34fn
wife of Antārāhāna, 43
Śikhariṇi, characteristics of the metre, 913
Śikhi, letter denoting, 419
Śikhivāhini, a goddess; location of the letter denoting, 417
Śikhivās, group of mountains, 325, 325fn
Śiksā (phonetics), science of, 2
Śilpaka, a type of drama, 921
simantnonayana, a rite, 59, 86, 95
Śīna, a constellation; correction for 367
(See also Leo)
sīnha-homa, performance of, 118
sīnha-karṇa, a position relating to archery, 648
sīnha-vidyā, ceremony known as, 117
Śīnhikā, a demoness, daughter of Kaśyapa and Diti, 45
killed by Hanūmā, 19
Śīnḥonnatā, the name of Vasanta-tilaka according to sage Kaśyapa, 913
similarity, explanation of; is four-fold, 939
Śīnāpā, tree in the Asoka grove, 19
Śi (Śi)ṁśapāyaṇa, a disciple of Lomaharṣana, 730
sin, words denoting, 990
sins, major types, 471-74
—the consequential births for different, 1039-40
hymn which destroys, 483-5
Śindhu, region of, indication of the destruction of the inhabitants of, 387
—ocean; name of Gopīśvara to be repeated at, 842
—a river, 24
as yielding all fruits, 327
Śindhudvipa, a sage for the hymn āpohi śthā, 562
—son of Ambariṣa; son of, 737
śindhu-vāraka, a herb, 407
Śīni, one of the sons of Bāhṛhu, 742
—descendant of Dhaṛṭa; 743
Śīni, was born from Anamitra; son of, 743
Śinivālī, wife of Kardama, 738-9
—a son of Aṅgiras and Śrīm, 49
sinivālī, the new-moon day if the moon is perceived, 980
sinivālī, caturdāśi, 360
śīpā, a herb, 407
śiṛṣa, flower not to be used in worship, 529
Śīśāra, a son of Dhara, 44
one of the sons of Medhātithi, 351
Śīṣṭi, son of Dhruva and Sambhu;
son of, 42
śīśucandrāyaṇa, an expiation; explanation of, 482
śīṣuka (śīśucandrāyaṇa), an expiation for eating certain things, 488
Śīṣuvaktā, image of, 138
Sītā, daughter of Janaka, 10
wife of Rāma, 738
Rāma was asked to observe vows
along with, 11
crossed the river Jāhnavi, 13
Śūrpanākhā’s words to Rāvana
relating to, 15
abduction of, 16
search ordered by Sugriva for, 18
Jāṭāyu gave his life for, 18
seen by Hanumāt, 19
crest-jewel given to Hanumāt by,
20
Vibhiṣaṇa’s advice to Rāvana, 21
Kumbhakarṇa’s words to Rāvana
relating to, 22
Rāvana’s intention to kill, 22
brought back after purification, 23
birth of Kuśa and Lava to, 24
rule of son of Sītā, 25
merit of worshipping, 343
— a river, 325
śītalerecha, an expiation; explanation of, 482, 799
Sītāmbha, a lake, 325
Śītoda, a lake, 325
Śīva, synonyms of, 965-7
— a form of Rudra, 252, 254
Viṣṇu as the refuge of, 746
name of attendants of, 987
Bāṇa considered as a son of; words spoken to Bāṇa by, 29
words spoken by Viṣṇu to, 30
image of; meditation on, 202
installation of image of, 172
mode of worshipping, 197-204, 837-40
worship of, 274
a sacred formula of, 837
eight kinds of mantras of, 873
appeasing rite for, 891-94
to be contemplated at every quadrangle, 842
a deity located in the body, 414
— herb denoted by, 406
— a son of Medhātithi, 351
— the name of a temple, 318
— one of four kinds of rosary beads;
the four divisions of, 894
Śīva, one of the kinds of mantras of Śīva, 873
Śivā, worshipped, 51
location of the letter representing, 417
śivākhyā, a pavilion, 318
śivarātrivrata, description of, 517-8
śivāśraya, a pavilion, 318
Śivottama, a Rudra, 263
Skanda, synonyms of, 987
conquered by Tārksya and others, 30
obsequies made to, 1
worshipped, 51
image of, 134, 314
placing of the image of, 116
worship of the image of, 215
offering made to, 274, 275
Skandapurāṇa, narrated by lord
Skanda; on the virtues of Tatpurusa-
kalpa; extent of; should be given as a gift, 733
śakandaśaṣṭhi, a vow; details relating to, 504
Skandavikāta a demon, 317
Skandhogrivi (Bṛhatī), name of Nyaṇ-
skārīṇī according to Krauṣṭuki, 903
skin, defects of; remedy for, 767
sky, words denoting 988
slave, rules relating to making free a, 673
Śleṣa, a variety of guṇa relating to
word, 944
(See also coalescence)
sling, uses of, 652
Ślokāyani, represents a branch of
Atharvaveda, 730
Smara, worship of the image of, 215
smoothness, explanation of, 945
smṛti, collection of texts relating to
religious duties, 992
Smṛti, wife of Aṅgiras, 49
snake-bite, remedy for 756
(See also serpent bite)
śmātaka, denotes a person who had the
ceremonial bath, 1018
Snehā, a class of men at Kuśadvipa,
352fn
snow, words denoting, 989
snuhī, a herb, 406
society, everyone should strive for
the welfare of, 674
śoḍaśa, herb denoted by, 407
śoḍaśi, a somaṣārahstā, 64, 79, 86, 466
śoḍhāṇyāsa, three kinds of, 416
soft, a mode; explanation of, 933, 934
Softness, explanation of, 945
Soka, born from Mṛtyu, 49
solar race, description of the genealogy
of, 735-38
solar region, worshipped, 50
soldiers, methods of fight by; to be
rewarded suitably after the victory, 632
Soma, born from Brahmā, 25
given as born from Atri, 31, 738
born to Atri and Anasūyā, 49
married 27 daughters of Dakṣa, 44
performance of Rājasūya by, 738
the supremacy gained by, 739
the wives of the celestials, and sages
deserted their husbands and
served, 738-39
seduced Tārā, wife of Bṛhaspati,
739
the king of planet; words spoken
to progenitors by, 43
worship of, 274
worshipped, 52
requested to come, 336
—one of the eight Vasus; father of
Varā, 44
Somadatta, son of Pañcadhanus; son
of, 750
—one of the sons of Bāhīka, 751
—one of the sons of Santanu, 751
Somaka, a boundary mountain, 351
son of Sahadeva; son of, 750
Somakunda, at Gayā, 341
Somanātha, a liṅga, 343
greatness of, 327
Somapa, son of Maitreyya, 750
somasarāhśās, the seven kinds of, 466
thousands of, 86
Someśa, letter denoting, 419
worshipped, 100
Śoṇā, a river, 841
as excellent, 328
Śoṇāśva, one of the two sons of Śūra;
sons of, 743
Śoṇitapura, city, 29
Sopamā, worshipped, 412
sore-mouth, remedy for, 768
soul, words denoting, 991
that is liberated becoming one
with Brahmā explained, 1076
as the traveller, 1075
sound, words standing for ordinary,
993
sounds, three divisions of, 917
words denoting different kinds of,
993-4
spear, uses of, 651
speech, twelve kinds of exertions of,
927
preceded by weeping; words denot-
ing, 993
words denoting, 992
words signifying beginning of, 992
spheres, different kinds of, 387-8
śphurāṇa, denoting a division of time,
370
spiders, remedy for poison due to,
756, 819
spies, characteristics of, 625
(evil) spirits, possessing the newly
born child from the first day on-
wards; the names of different, 820-26
spiritual initiation, removing bondage,
238-43
for emancipation, 243-48
four kinds of, 227
mode of, 226-35
spittoon, words denoting, 1017
spleen, enlargement of; remedy for,
752, 767, 769
splendidness (Ojas), abundance of
compounds, 945
spy, words denoting, 1019
śrāddha, mode of performing, 457-61
merits of doing on different day,
349, 350
Śrāddhadeva, the seventh Manu, 427-
8
Srāgḍharā, characteristics of the metre,
914
Srāgvinī, characteristics of the metre,
913
Śrāma, a son of Āpa, 44
śraud (rite), to be performed, 86
Śravāṇa, an asterism having firm look,
382
the rite to determine the sex of
the child to be done in, 357
auspicious for administering medi-
cine, 358
new fruits and food to be eaten in,
358
good for gathering hay, 360
money is deposited or articles taken
back in, 360
not commendable for tonsure and
other rites, 359
cow-pen should not be entered in,
361
misery caused by Sun's transit in,
363
located in Koṭacakra, 385
located in a diagram, 400
Śravaṇa, benefit of oil purchased in
the month of, 386
śravaṇadvādaśi, rules relating to the
practice of, 513-14
śravaṇa, a sacrifice, 86, 466
Śravānti, son of Yuvanāśva; had
Śravantikā as capital, 736
Śravantikā, a city in the east: was the
capital of Śravanta, 736
Śrī, became the consort of Viṣṇu, 49
located on the body, 414
hymn in praise of, 615-16
mentioned as a form of Hari, 91
worshipped, 1, 51, 52, 63
Śrīcandrādevī, a goddess, 413
Śrīdāṇḍī, a spirit possessing the child on the eighth night after birth; symptoms of child possessed by; offering to appease; materials for fumigation and besmearing when the child is possessed by, 822
Śridevi, one of the daughters of Devaka; married by Vasudeva, 742
Śrīdhara, a name of Viṣṇu, 65
contained in a formula, 52
image of, 115
name of a śālagrāma, 125
Śrījādita, a type of drama, 921
Śrījaya, a type of temple, 315
characteristics of the temples of the class of, 318
Śrīkaṇṭha, a Rudra, 263
letter denoting, 418
— a type of temple, 315
Śrīkaṇṭhanātha, worshipped, 413, 414
Śrīkṛṣcra, an expiration, 483
Śrīmahākāla, worshipped, 414
Śrīmukha, a year of the Hindu calendar, 404
Śrīparvata, one of the eight holy spots, 330
as sacred, 328, 350
significance and greatness of, 391
Śrīprāśna, a Pāṇcārātrāgama, 106
Śrīsamayakoṭiṣa, worshipped, 414
Śrīvatsa, worshipped, 51, 52, 55, 63
— a type of temple, 314
842
Śrīyānpati, form of Viṣṇu on Narmada, 842
Śrīyagaberapura, a place; Rāma's arrival at, 13
Bharata's visit to, 14
as an excellent spot, 328
Śrīyagājakā, an array; formation optional, 635
Śrīygi, a varṣaparvata, 324
Śrīyjaya, son of Kālayanā; son of, 747
—one of the five born from Bāhyāśva, 749
— son of, 750
Śrīti, a minister of King Dāśaratha, 11
śrūk, a ladle, 58
Śrutadevi, one of the daughters of Devaka; married by Vasudeva, 742
Śrutakarmaka, son of Uḍāpi, 750
Śrutakirti, son of Arjuna and Draupadi, 751
— married by Śatrughna, 11
Śrutasena, one of the four sons of Jahnī, 750
— son of Bhimasena and Draupadi, 751
Śrutavarmā, son of Sahadeva and Draupadi, 751
Śrutāyu, son of Sindhudvipa; son of, 737
— son of Bhāmūrātha, 738
Śruti, a division of Abhivyakti, 943
śruva, a ladle, 58
śṭhālī, a vessel, 94
śṭhālipakā, a rite, 86fn
Śthaṇḍileyu, one of the ten sons of Bhadrāśva, 748
Śthaṇu, letter denoting, 418
śṭhāpana, explanation of, 267
śṭhāpanimudrā, a posture of the hand, 202
Śthirā, a goddess, 376
śṭhitasthāpana, explanation of, 267
śṭhūṇākāraṇa, a modification of the array daṇḍa, 633
śṭhūṇāpakṣa, an array; characteristics of, 633
stone slabs (in temples), mode of placing 276-7
strategem, one of the means to be employed by a king, 587
strength, prescription for gaining, 777
student, duties of, 432-33
study, commencement of; time for, 359
conclusion of; time for rite relating to, 359
Stuti, a variety of Praśasti, 942
Śubha, one of the siddhas, 414
subhadra, a pitcher, 270
Subhadrā, daughter of Vasudeva, 744
wife of Arjuna, 751
birth of Abhimanyu to, 33
as a goddess, 376
merit of worshipping, 343
subhadra, a nerve, 316
Subhadrikā, a goddess, 376
subhaghā, a herb, 372
Subhakṛt, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
Subhūmikā, a hell, 1039
subjects, five sources of dangers for, 622
substantives, the inflections of the seven cases of, 957
two kinds of—ending in vowels and ending in consonants; again divided into three, 957
examples for the two varieties, 957-58
in the feminine; examples for, 958-59
example for those in the neuter, 959
in the feminine; examples of finished forms of, 966-68
in the neuter; examples of finished forms of, 968-70
different kinds of, 1024-7
success, the marks of, 625
Succhâyā, wife of Siṣṭi, 42
Śuci, born from Agni and Svāhā, 49
—a daughter of Tāmrā, 46
—different reading for Kavi, 42fn
—Indra at the time of the 14th Manu, 428
sūcī, a kind of arrangement of the army,
—a modification of the array daṇḍa, 633
sūcivyūha, an array, 612
Sudanistrā, one of the sons of Asamau-
jas, 743
Sudarsāna, the disc of lord Viṣṇu, 827
installation of, 179
worshipped, 63, 84
—a śālagrāma, 125
Sudarsāna, a herb, 378
Śuddhavirādārśabha, characteristics of metre, 910
Śuddhavirāṭ, characteristics of the metre, 911-2
Śuddhodana, Viṣṇu’s manifestation as son of, 38
Sudhanu, one of the sons of Kuru, 750
Sudhanvā, son of Sambīṭa; son of, 737
—son of Puṇḍarika; son of, 738
—son of Satyahita; son of, 750
—one of the sons of Kuru; son of, 750
Sudhanvaka, son of Akrūra, 744
Sudhanvan, water-god known as, 93
became the regent of the east, 47
Sudharmā, name of the council of gods, 987
Sudirghā, a hell, 1039
Sudyumna, a son of Manu and Naḍvalā, 42
—name of Ilā after she changed sex, 735
—the three sons of, 735
sufferings, two kinds of; explanation of, 1030
sugandha, a flower that pleases lord Hari, 529
sugatidvādaśi, on the practice of, 513
Sughorā, a hell, 1038
Sugriva, Rāma advised by Jaṭāyu to meet; met by Rāma, 17
Lakṣmana’s words to, 18
reference to his becoming a friend of Rāma, 19
consolated Rāma, 21
accompanied Rāma to Lankā, 21
(a) cut the nose of Kumbhakarṇa, 22
reference to Dvivida, counsellor of, 30fn
as a door-keeper, 108
worship of, 273, 317
Sugrivā, a daughter of Tāmrā, 46
Sumitrā, saluted by Rāma, 23
Suhotra, one of the five sons of Vitatha, 749
Suhotra, son of Sudhanvā; son of;
seven other sons of, 750
Girikā was the queen of, 750
Suhotraka, name of Atharvaveda, 93
Śuka, paying respects to Vyāsa, 1
Sukalā, a goddess, 413
Sukanya, a son of Śaryāti, 736
Sukarmā, a part of Sāmadeva given to, 429
Suketu, one of the five sons of Vitatha, 749
Sukha, a celestial, 428
sukha, a ray of the Sun, 195
Sukhodaya, a son of Medhātithi, 351
Śukla, a year of the Hindu calendar, 404
Śukra, preceptor of the demons, 8,
41fn, 740
story relating to Devayāni, daughter of, 25fn
daughter of; invoked, 112
—planet worshipped, 52
—a son of Dhiṣanā, 43
—a sage; son of Vasistha and Urjā, 49
śukra, an array; description of, 633
Śukrādevikā, letter denoting, 418
Śuksetra, son of Brahmasāvanī Manu, 428
—the name of a temple, 318
Śūkṣma, a Rudra, 255, 263
Śūkṣmā, a female divinity, worshipped, 51
śukti, a weight, 209
Śuktimat, a mountain, 350, 351
Sukumāra, son of Havya, 352
Sukumāraka, son of Anarta; son of, 749
Sukumārikā, spirit exercising her influence the whole year, 826
Śūli, the name of a temple, 318
Śulin, worship of the image of, 215
Sumālin, father of Kaikaśi, 24fn
Sumanā, a boundary mountain, 351
Sumanas, a son of Agneyi, 42
Sumantu, a minister of King Dāsāratha, 11
(left back by Rāma, 13
Sumantu, a disciple of Vyāsa; a part of Sāmadeva given to; divided Atharvaveda, 429
represents a branch of Atharvaveda, 730
sumatadvāḍāśī, mode of practising the vow of, 513
Sumati, a disciple of Lomaharṣaṇa, 730
—son of Bharata, 323
Śumbha, a demon; killed by the goddess Durgā, 26, 26fn
Sumeru, a mountain where Raivata performed penance, 736
Sumitra, born to Gāndhāri and Dhṛṣṭa, 743
Sumitrā, birth of Śatrughna to, 10
Sumukha, a deity presiding over the banner, 145
worship of, 284
Sumukhi, consort of Skanda; image of, 134
a goddess worshipped, 375
Sumuṣṭīka, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742
Sun, synonyms of, 989
only one, 376
as a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 356
born from Marici, 9
born from Kaśyapa, 735
three wives of, 735
(planet) distance of, 354
the extent of the chariots of; the horses etc. of, 355
celestials who ride the chariot of, 355
words denoting the lustre of, 990
words denoting halo around, 989
words denoting the ray of, 989-90
image of, 136
contemplating the form of, 827
mantras for, 423
mode of worshipping, 195-97
mode of worship of, 830-32
worshipped by people of Śaṅkādvipa, 352
worship of, 51
worship of the weapons of, 52
eclipse of, 388
period (years) of influence of, 363
presides over a part of a day, 381
effect of stay in one’s birth-star, 363
effect of stay in certain asterisms, 363
effects of transit in some karaṇas, 363
way to find strength of, 380
no influence on war, 377
qualities of a person indicated by, 392
consecration to be done in a particular position of, 361
benefit of transit in some karaṇas, 362
gains indicated by, 384
gains of position etc. indicated by, 393
marriage not commendable in particular position of, 357
adverse effect of entry in certain astral combinations, 362-3
death caused by the position in Aries, 378
misery indicated by, 383
epidemics indicated by certain things in the disc of, 387
fatality indicated by its presence in an asterism, 389
bad luck indicated by, 400
Sun, Viṣṇu made as the lord of, 47
Śunaḥsīpa, also known as Aṣṭaka; was the other son of Viśvāmitra, 749
Sunāman, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742
sunanda, a pitcher, 270
Sunday, rite for determining the sex of the child to be done on, 337
rite of chewing betel leaf to be done on, 358
first shave of a child commended on, 359
profit caused by purchase made on, 360
evacuation of a tank etc. to be avoided on, 360
cows should not be grazed on, 361
a special combination caused by, 362
inauspiciousness of twelfth day occurring on, 381
the rule of Rāhu on, 409
Sundhu, son of Vitamaya; son of, 748
Sunithā, daughter of Mṛtyu; wife of Aṅga, 42
Suniti, wife of Uttānapāda, 41
sun-stone, a gem, 641
śunthi, a herb, 407
śūnya, one of the kinds of mantras of Śiva, 873
description of, 875
Supārśva, a mountain, 324, 325
supernatural events, relating to the three worlds, 711
Suprabha, a form of Rudra, 252
a country, 352
Suprabhā, a mountain in the south, 18
a goddess; worshipped, 230
daughter of Svarbhānu, 46
suprabhā, a nerve, 316
Suprasiddhā, image of, 138
supratistiṣṭha, a modification of the array danda; characteristics contrary to, 633
Supratiṣṭhā, number of letters in the metre 905
Supratiṣṭhita, a deity presiding over the banner, 145
worship of, 284
Supreme Being, praise of perception of one's oneness with, 1074
Supreme Brahman, nature of 923, 1070-1
identified with knowledge, 1060
declared as the thing to be known, 1070
Supreme spirit, as the highest, 1075
water known as nārāḥ because of its creation by, 40
Surā, an ocean, 324
surā, explanation of, 487
Śūra, one of the sons of Kārtavirya, 741
—son of Vidyāratha; son of, 743
Vasudeva and others born to, 744
Surabhi, birth of eleven Rudras to Kasyapa and, 44, 44fn
cows, buffaloes were born from, 46
divine cow; worshipped, 213
surācāndrāyaṇa, an expiation; explanation of, 482
Sūrānātha, sandal of; worshipped, 414
Surāpi, one of the daughters of Devaka; married by Vasudeva, 742
Surasā, mother of the serpents, 46
Śūrasena, one of the sons of Kārtavirya, 741
Suratha, son of Janamejaya; son of, 750
—one of the four sons of Jahn, 750
surety, for a loan; details relating to, 660
Suroda, an ocean, 352
Śūrpanakha, a demoness 15
sister of Rāvaṇa, 15, 15fn, 24
Śūrpāraka, a place, 640
an excellent place, 328
Suruci, wife of Uttānapāda; birth of Uttama from, 41
Śūrya, a name of the Sun, 136
herb denoted by, 406
installation of image of, 172
Suśabdatā, Gāmbhirya called by some as, 945
Suśena, a monkey that accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
Susenaka, first child of Vasudeva and Devaki, 744
Suśenaka, a guard of the doors; worshipped, 93
susiddha, relating to the letters in the name of the votary, 390, 391, 803, 895
Suśilā, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
Suśkarevati, a goddess, 375
Suśmīnāḥ, a class of men at Kuṣadvipa, 332fn
Suśrūta, compositions declared as conferring boons by, 778
Sushirā, a goddess; worshipped, 412
Suśumnā, as a female energy, 136
—at Gayā; piñḍa to be offered at, 342
Suśumnā, an artery, 54
—carries the wind samāna; functions of, 556
is established in the middle of the body, 557
Sūta, as an interlocutor, 42
—a caste; origin of, 430
duty of, 431
Sutala, a nether world, 8, 353
Sutanu, daughter of Kāśirāja and wife of Vasudeva, 28fn
Sutanū, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742
Sutapā, clan of celestials in the period of the 8th Manu, 428
—son of Paila; son of, 747
Sutapāḥ, a sage; son of Vasiṣṭha and Urjā, 49
Sutikṣṇa, a sage; paid respect by Rāma, 15, 15fn
Sutramanā, a celestial, 428
Suvadanā, characteristics of the metre, 914
Suvarna, an excellent place, 327
Suvāsya, one of the sons of Asamauja, 743
Suvela, mountains; Laṅkā seen by Rāma from, 21
Suvrata, son of Usīnara and Drṣadvati, 747
Suyajīśaka, son of Pṛthuśrava; son of, 741
Suyodhana, son of Kakutstha, 736
denotes Durvodhana, 33, 35
Svadhā, mother of Menā and Dhārini, 49
Svadhṛti, propitiation of, 176
Śvādūdaka, ocean around Puṣkara, 353
Śvāgatā, characteristics of the metre, 912
Śvāhā, wife of Agni; sons of, 49
—son of Vṛjiniyān; son of, 741
Śvāhya, son of Yugandhara; was invincible; sons of, 743
Śvaphalka(ka), son of Rṣabha; 743
son of, 744
Svarā, composition of the metre, 904
Svarbhānu, mother of Suprabhā, 46
—a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
Svargadvāra, at Gayā, 341
Svargaloka, location of, 354
Svargānanda, worshipped, 414
Svargatīrvrata, on the eighth lunar
day, ancodocte etc. relating to, 508-9
śvarita, a division of sound, 917
śvarjiti, a sacrifice, 474
Śvarocīṣa, the second Manu, 427
Śvārodvayacakra, success in battle
known from, 370, 375
śvarūpam (natural form), one of the
kinds of embellishment of sense, 939
Śvāsīva, a Rudra, 254
śvastika, a type of temple, 315
a posture relating to archery, 646
Śvātī, a movable asterism, 381
has a firm look, 382
comprises the sphere of wind, 387
commendable for marriage, 357
good for administering medicine,
358
archery to be imparted in, 359
commendable for construction of
a house, 360
one should do agriculture in, 361
banner of Indra to be hoisted in, 362
an employer should not be attend-
ed upon on, 360
one should not enter the cow-pen
in, 361
misery caused by Sun's presence
in, 363
location in the Koṭacakra, 385
located in a diaram, 400
Śvayambhū, denotes Brahmā, 40, 40fn
Śvāyambhuva, the first Manu; pro-
geny of, 427
genealogy of, 41, 41fn, 41-45
method of worship of Viṣṇu as
done by, 50
—ā Pāñcaratrāgama, 106
Śvayyājātas, one of the five branches
of Haihayas, 741
śvayahvara, of Draupadi, 32
Śveta, letter denoting, 419
—a country, 352
—a parvata, 324
—a muhūrta; deeds to be done in,
371
Śveta kalpa, a kalpa period, 732
śvetākara, a herb, 371
śvetavāraṇa, country, 322
Śvetavāhana, one of the two sons of
Śūra, 743
sweet, a mode; explanation for, 933
swelling, herbal remedy for 753-4
decotion of herbs which removes,
769
remedy for, 776
sword, a weapon, fifty inches long
as the excellent one; 645
commendable qualities of; certain
rules relating to the use of;
certain colours as not auspicious;
the characteristics of, 640
mode of wearing, 649
thirtytwo kinds of employment of,
651
uses of, 652
Śyāma, a boundary mountain, 352
śyāmāka, a grain used in worship, 94
śyena, a modification of the array
danda, 633
Śyeni, a daughter of Tāmrā, 46
—characteristics of the metre, 912
syllables, use of different kinds of, 378
taddhita, bases, rules governing the
formation of, 976-79
tagara, a flower, 529
—a herb, 372
taijasa, evolution of, 40
Tailapāka, a hell, 531
taitila, a karaṇa, 362, 369fn
Taittirīya, a branch of Yajurveda, 730
Takṣa, son of Bharata, 24
Takṣa (ka), one of the eight chief
serpents; the number of heads of, 807
born from Kadrū, 46
made as the king of serpents, 47
image of, 137
Kubjikā worshipped having, 415
tāla, an unguent, 372
a measure, 119 etc.
explanation of the term, 994
Tālajāṅgha, son of Jayadhvaṇja; the
five branches of Haihayas formed
by the sons of, 741
Tālajāṅghikā, image of, 138
Tālavāna, made secure by Kṛṣṇa, 27
tamāla, a flower, 529
Tamasā river, Rāma's halt on the
banks of, 13
Tāmasa, the fourth Manu, 427
tāmasa, evolution of, 40, 40fn
eighth creation having the quality
of, 48
Tāmi, an energy, 292
Tāmāśīraka, a hell, 531, 1039
Tāmāra, daughters of, 46
Tāmravāraṇa, a territory, 350
Tāmsuroidha, one of the three sons
of Matināra, 748
four sons of, 749
tāṇḍavam, synonyms of, 994
Tandrinātha, worshipped, 414
tank, excavation of; good day for 360,
tank, asterisms good for construction
of, 765
tanks and ponds, consecration of, 173-78
tanmátras, creation of, 48, 48f
Tantras, application as per, 62
Tanumadhýā, characteristics of the
metre, 911
Tapana, a name of the Sun, 136
   —sub-division of a hell, 1039
Tápâni, image of, 138
Tapas, a world; worshipped, 79
   —a sage, 428
Tápasi, a spirit seizing the child in
the tenth month; symptoms of the
child seized by, 823
   offering to appease, 823-4
Tapasvin, a son of Manu and Naḍvalá,
42
Tápi, a river, flows from Sahya, 351
   merits of, 328
Tapoloka, distance of, 354
   (See also Tapas)
Taptárkrchra, an expiation; explanation
of, 482, 799
   to be practised for eating food
during pollution, 471
   for having eaten offering intended
for the dead, 472
   to be practised for certain pollution,
480
   to be observed for having caused
dearth, 487
Tára, a monkey; accompanied Ráma
to Lánkä, 21
Tárá, entrusted with Sugriva, 17
   —wife of Bhrşpati; seduced by Soma;
restored to Bhrašpati; was found
pregnant and was directed to
shed the child, 739
   —letter denoting, 418
   image of, 138
   tárábala, indication to find, 359
Táráçakra, indicating friendship; descrip-
tion of, 391
Tárákámaya, battle involving the
celestials on account of Soma, 739
   Viṣṇu’s role in, 745
Tarálá, image of, 138
Taralatára, a hell, 1038
Táraña, a year of the Hindu calendar,
405
Tárápiḍa, son of Candráläka; son of,
738
Tárkṣya, eagle chief, 22
   Nandi and others conquered by, 30
   as destroyer of enemies etc., 394
   worshipped, 52
   —a Páñcarátrágama, 106
Tárkṣycakra, description of, 394
Tarupa, son of Tridhanva; son of, 737
taruṇi, milk of; used as an unguent,
372
tastes, the different; as having origi-
nated from moon and fire, 761
Tára, characteristics of the metre, 912
Táśaká, a demoness; killed by Ráma, 10
Tátpuruṣa (compound), eight kinds
of; examples of, 973-74
Taurus, a fixed sign, 384
   agriculture to be done in, 361
   a special combination caused by,
362
   has enmity with Scorpion, 392
Táuryatrikam, a collective term, 994
   teeth, measure to strengthen, 755
Tejas, born from Sumati, 323
   temples, preparing the ground for,
105-107
   construction of, 113-115
   benefits of constructing, 101-105,901
   merits of causing the construction
of, 551
   divisions based on installation of
deities, 267
   measurement of the stone slabs for,
269
   common features of, 318
   five classes of, 314
   names of; containing rooms facing
different directions, 318
   the location of different chambers
in, 318-19
   location in cities, 321
   to be protected by the king, 577
   tenses and moods, grammatical con-
notation for, 981-2
   formation of; examples for, 982-4
   termination, for the verbs, 981
   terror, sentiment of; accomplishing
factor of, 932
   thief, apprehension of, 681
   thigh, stiffness of; remedy for, 754
   thirst, pills to remove, 754
   herbs which remove, 768
   remedy for removal of, 773
   throat-affections, remedy for 768
Thursday, profitable nature of, 376
   chewing of betel leaf to be done on,
358
   kañnavedha to be done on, 359
   agriculture to be done on, 361
   inauspiciousness of sixth day falling
on, 381
Ráhu lies at the south on, 409
Tiladvádaśi, details relating to the
practice and merits of, 512, 513
Tilaka, a flower, 529
   time, words denoting, 990
   words denoting different periods
of time, 1000
   reckoning, 364
Timira, a flower, 529
trees, and parts of, different categories of, words which stand for, 1007-8
mode of planting, 188-89
the directions good for planting;
the asterisms auspicious for, 764
planting and nurturing; planting and watering of; to be planted in
such a way as to be fed by rivers etc.; the minimum distance
between, 643
method to make them bear more fruits, 765
bearing fruits; protection of, 644
Tretā, an attendant of Śiva, 201
Tretāyuga, creation relating to, 323
tri, herb denoted by, 407
tridāṅḍin, an ascetic, 454
Tridāsa, a Rudra, 255
tridaśa, herb denoted by, 406
Tridaśeśvara, a Rudra, 254
Tridhanvā, son of Sudhanvā; son of, 737
Trikoṇa, a hell, 1038
trikōṇa, marriage of girls not to be done in, 357
Trīkūta, group of mountains, 19, 325, 325fn
Trīmata, a division of Vithi, 928
Trīmūrtā, a Rudra, 263
Trīmūrti, letter denoting, 418
trine, prosperity in married life indicated by, 357
Tripurā, the names of gods and goddesses to be worshipped in the
worship of, 866-8
mode of worship of goddess, 866
salutation made to, 52
Tripurāghna, a guardian deity, 284
worshipped, 343
tripuṣkara, combination called, 362, 382
trirātravāra, for lord Viṣṇu; mode
and merits of practising, 522
Trisāṇā, a river; originating from Mahendra, 351
Triśīras, a demon 16
commander of Khara, was killed by Rāma, 16fn, 22
Triṣṭubh, a metre, 562, 902
the number of letters in a quarter of, 903
red coloured; belongs to Kauśikagotra, 905
appropriate time for the recital of,
916
a metre to be employed in a
Mahākāvya, 920
Triśūla, the name of a temple, 318
trimūla, a posture, 857
trisūparṇa, a rā, 349
Trayayajvara, located in connection with consecration, 292
Trivikrama, a form of Viṣṇu, 65, 82
—name of Viṣṇu on Yamuna, 841
—characteristics of, 125
trivistāpa, a class of temple; octagonal shaped, 314
—temples belonging to the class of, 315
Trojaṇa, a type of drama, 921
Trṣṇā, born from Mṛtyu, 49
—truth, words denoting, 993
—trust, definition of, 654
Tryambaka, a form of Rudra, 45
Tuesday, writing a formula for subjugation on, 358
—gain indicated, 376
—unfavourable for marriage, 357
—to be avoided for commencing first study, 359
—to be avoided for the excavation of a tank, 360
—inauspiciousness of sixth day occurring on, 381
—a special combination caused by, 362
Rāhu lies at the south-east on, 409
Tulā, a constellation; correction for 367
(See also Libra)
tulāpuruṣa, a great gift, 544
Tumburu, image of, 133
tumours, in the abdomen; remedy for the destruction of, 776
Tuṅgabhadra, a river, 328
Tuṁanāthaka, worshipped, 413
Turvasu, one of the sons of Yayāti and Devayāni, 25, 740
—father of Varga, 747
Tuṣita, the names of Devas in the Cākṣuṣa manvantara, 45
Tuṣṭi, a female divinity; invoked, 91
—worshipped, 52
Tvarītā, goddess; mode of worship of, 423-4, 852-54
—mantras relating to the worship of, 424, 868-69
—spell relating to, 854-57
—secret mantra relating to, 424
—location of the basic mantras of, 858-861
—companions of, 424
—addressed, 52
Tvarita mantra, benefit of knowing, 863
Tvāṣṭā, son of Manasya, 323
Tvāṣṭ, one of the Rudras, 45
—one of the Ādityas, 45, 136
twlight, words denoting the three, 990
Ucaśīṛavas, was made the ruler of horses, 47
—to be adored, 51
ucchvās, a division of time, 370
—a division of the prose kavyas, 919
ucchvasana, an action relating to the riding on horses, 788
udāna, a life-force carried by the vein gāndhāri, 556
functions of, 557
Udāpi, son of Sahadeva; son of, 750
Udārata, an excellence of word, 944
(See also splendidness)
Udārata, (elegance) an excellence of sense, 945
Udárka, son of Nidhṛti; son of, 742
—udárka, explanation of the term, 1019
—udāśina, significance of the term, 1019
—udāta, a division of sound, 917
Udaya, a boundary mountain, 352
—ubhava, one of the seven sons of Nahuṣa, 740
—ubhavamadr, 204, 236, 237, 246, 247, 248, 255, 258, 259, 260, 286
—ubhida, a son of Jyotirmat, 352
—Uddharinī, the name of Vasantatilaka according to Saitava, 913
—Uddiyāna, a mountain, 412, 414
—udgāti, characteristics of the metre, 909
—Udghāṭaka, a division of Vithi, 928
—Udgitha, son of Prathārti, 323
—udiyavrtti, characteristics of the metre, 907
Udu līya jātvedasam, a hymn, 563
Ugra, Rudra was variously called as, 50
—propitiation of, 176, 290
Ugri, a female deity, 292
Ugracand, a goddess, 132
Ugragandha, a hell, 532
Ugrasena, a Yādava, 30
—son of Ahuka, 742
—nine sons of; Karṣa as the eldest, 742
—one of the four sons of Jahnu, 750
—tha, section of Sāmaveda, 730
Uktā, a metre; number of letters in, 905
Uktha, a somasarısthā, 79, 86, 466
—uktha, section of Sāmaveda, 730
—uktī, an embellishment of word, 932
—explanation of; six kinds of, 933
—ulcers, good remedy for, 768
Ullāpyaka, a type of drama, 921
Ulmuka, a son of Balabhadra and Revati, 29
Umā, consort of; propitiated by Bāna, 46
Umākānta, letter denoting, 419
umāvṛata, merits of practising, 525
umbrella, characteristics of royal, 638
a brahmin’s, characteristics of, 638
umesāvrata, should be practised by women, 525
unconsciousness, remedy for removal of, 773
unguents, for bathing, 372
Universe, extent of, 353-56
unmatta, flower not to be used in worship, 529
Upacitrā, characteristics of the metre, 907
Upacitraka, characteristics of the metre, 910
Upadānavi, daughter of Vṛśaparvan, 46
Upadeva, son of Devaka, 742
Upagiti, characteristics of the metre, 906
upākaraṇan, explanation of the term, 1018
upakrama, explanation of the word, 1017
upākṛta, denotes an animal killed and sanctified, 1017
Upamā, explanation of, 939
two kinds of—compounding or not compounding; further divisions of, 939-40
eighteen kinds of, 940
another classification into five kinds, 941
upamāna, explanation of the term, 1027
upanayana, to be done in the eighth year for a brahmin, 432
to be done in the eleventh year for the warrior class, 432
to be done in the twelfth year for tradesman, 432-3
should never be done after sixteenth year, 433
Upanīṣads, adoration with, 99
Upariṣṭād Bhṛati, composition of, 903
Upariṣṭājyotih, composition of the metre, 904
Upasthitā, characteristics of the metre, 912
Upasthitapracupita, characteristics of the metre, 909
Upendra, requested for protection, 128
Upendravāra, characteristics of the metre, 912
Urddhvabahū, a son of Vasiṣṭha and Uṛjā, 49
ūrdhva-gāmi, a perfection, 257
ūrdhva-grāhi, a monster possessing the newly born child on the ninth day; symptoms of the child possessed by; materials for fumigation and besmearing when the child is possessed by, 822
ūrdhva-āṅga, an array; formed from divisions of vajra, 634
ūrdhvasrotas, creation of, 48
urinary ailment, remedy for, 767
urinary defects, remedy for, 766
urine, painful discharge of; remedy for, 754, 768
Uṛja, son of Sudhanvā; son of, 750
Uṛjā, wife of Vasiṣṭha, 49
Urmilā, married by Lakṣmana, 11
Urobrhati (metre), name of Nyaṅkusādrīṇī according to Yāska, 903
Uṛṣa Major, asterism denoting the seven sages, 354, 355
Uru, son of Bhauya Manu, 428
Ūru, sons of, 42
Urvarūpa, different reading for Kramapādika, 49fn
Urvaśī, a nymph, 330
her love for Pururavas, 739
Uṣā, daughter of Bāna, 29
accompanied Aniruddha to Dwārakā, 30
Uṣānas, praised Dhruva, 41
—known also as Sukrācārya, 41fn
—a law-giver, 455
—son of Śuyajñaka; son of, 741
Uṣīnara, son of Mahāmanas; wives of; sons of, 747
Uṣṇa, a country ruled by a son of Dyutimat, 352
Uṣṇik, a metre, 562, 902
two varieties of;—pura and para;
number of letters in the pāda of, 903
the number of letters in, 903
has variegated colour; belongs to Kāśyapagotra, 905
uṣṇīṣa, a type of temple, 315
Utkala, name of a country, 733
—a son of Sudyumna; ruled over Utkala, 735
Utkalikā, a division of prose kāvya, 918
Utkṛṣṭi, number of letters in the metre, 905
Utkṛṣṭi, classical metres based on the Vedic metre, 914
Utkura, a son of Hiranyākṣa, 46fn
Utpala, a whirlpool, 842
upta, auspiciousness of a gem called, 641
utprekṣā (fancy), an embellishment of senses, 939

- explanation of, 941

uṭsādana, the syllables used for the act of, 403

Uttama, the third Manu, 427

—son of Uttānapāda and Suruci, 41

—one of the seven sons of Nāhuṣa, 740

uttama, a variety of prāṇāyāma, 1044

uttamottama, a variety of prāṇāyāma, 1045

Uttānapāda, sons of, 41

uttara, a pitcher, 270

Uttarā, daughter of King Virāṭa;

—wife of Abhimanyu, 33

—whose embryo survived as Parikṣit, 36

uttara, the three asterisms known as, 360, 381, 385

—commended for copulation, 434

Uttarā, an asterism; forms the watery region, 388

—commendable for marriage, 357

—commendable for imparting science of archery, 359

—to enter a (new) house, 360

—to take grains into the house in, 361

—misery caused by Sun’s transit in, 363

Uttarabhādrapada, an asterism; a thing cannot be recovered if it is lost in, 382

location in a diagram, 400

Uttaramānasā, at Gayā; bathing at, 336

—one should go to Phalgunirtha after visiting, 337

Uttarāpatha, region of, 387

Uttaraphālguni, an asterism; comprises the sphere of wind, 387

—new clothes should not be worn in, 359

—location in Koṭacakra, 385

—located in a diagram, 400

—Arjuna’s name related to his birth in, 37 fn

Uttarāśādha, as asterism; located in Koṭacakra, 385

—indication of unusual commotion in, 388

utterance, words signifying contradictory, 993

—word denoting sweet, 993

—words denoting unrefined, 993

—that is meaningless; word denoting, 993

—words denoting good, 993

—words denoting absurd, 993

—word signifying inauspicious, 993

—words denoting harsh, 993

utthāpana, explanation of, 267

vācā, a herb, 407

—used as an unguent, 372

Vadvāmukhi, image of, 138

Vādi, different reading for Pālita, 43 fn

Vāditram, one of the kinds of musical instrument, 994

Vāgīśvari, goddess of speech; mode of worship of, 878

— invocation of, 246

Vāgveṇi, a division of Vithi, 928n

Vahni, adored, 1

vahni, a herb, 407

vahnayāḥ, herb denoted by, 406

Vāhlīka, region of, 387

Vaibhava, a Pāncarātrāgama, 106

Vaibhrāja, a forest, 325

—a boundary mountain, 351

Vaidarbhī, wife of Pradyumna, 745

—a variety of diction; characteristics of, 927

Vaidheka, a caste; duties of, 431

vaidṛta, an obstacle; journey or battle to be avoided in, 383

Vaidya, science of; Viṣṇu as the cause of, 3

Vaidyuta, a country, 332

Vaijayanta, name of the mansion of Indra, 987

Vaiṅārikas, creation of, 40, 40 fn

—as the third creation, 48

Vaiṅkṛtasarga, explanation of, 48

Vaiṅkunṭha, a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 428

—form of Viṣṇu at Māgadha forest, 842

—image installation of, 172

—abode of Viṣṇu, 82

—name of a śālagrama, 125

Vainateya, letters representing, 63

—weapons of; adored, 66

Vairāja, a class of temple; square shaped; nine temples belonging to the class of, 314

Vairāja Prajāpati, father of Sudhavan, 47

Vairājas, presiding deities of Tapoloka, 354

Vairohya, son of Ānarta, 736

Vaiśākha, month of; multiplication of things brought in, 386

—relating to Uṣā’s dream, 29

vaiśākha, a posture relating to archery, 645

—advocated, 646

Vaiśampāyana, disciple of Vyāsa, 429

—a branch of Yajurveda, 730

vaiṣṇava, the formulae relating to Viṣṇu, 895
Agni Purāṇa

Vaiśnava purāṇa, narrated by Parāśara; based on accounts in Varāha-kalpa; merits of making a gift of, 732

Vaiśnavi, a mother goddess, 139fn invoked, 399
to be worshipped, 412, 415
vaiśnavi, a rite, 86
denotes asterism śravana
Vaiśravaṇa (Kubera), made as the king of kings, 47
the great fig tree to be contemplated, 842

Vaiśravaṇi, image of Kubera, 116
vaiśvadeva, offering made to all gods, 539

Vaiśvadevi, characteristics of the metre, 913

Vaiśvānara, the two daughters of, 46
vaiśya, words relating to the activities of, 1020-21

Vaitāliya, characteristics of the metre, 906

Vaitāṇḍya, a son of Āpa, 44
Vaitarini, river at Gayā, 342

Vaivasvata Manu, was born from Sun, 9
eight sons of; at Ayodhya, 735
penance of, 3

Vaivasvata manvantara, devas becoming Adityas in, 45

Vaivasvati, explanation of, 463

Vājapeya (ka), a somasamsthā, 86, 466

Vājapeya, a somasamsthā, 86, 466
certain practices relating to, 398
benefit of performing, 1079
located on the body, 64
worshipped, 79

Vājasaneyas, a branch of Yajurveda, 429

Vājasaneya Veda, only 15 sections would exist in Kaliyuga, 38

Vajra, son of Aniruddha, 30, 745
was installed in the kingdom, 37
vajra, an adverse period; to be avoided, 383
—a type of temple, 315
—an array; arrangement of army in, 612
to be made when there is fear on the sides, 630
arrays formed from divisions of, 634
vajra (mace), uses of, 652

Vajradeha, a form of Rudra, 252

Vajrakavāśa, a hell, 532

Vajrākṣa, an array; formation optional, 635

Vajrakubjini, goddess Kubjikā invoked, 413
vajranāśikā, a line drawn known as, 57

Vajraśastraka, a hell, 532

Vajraśrīkhāla, a goddess, 410

Vajravastika, a type of temple, 315
vajratiṣṇa, a mudrā, 857

Vajrini, a goddess located on the face, 416

vākavāka, an embellishment of word, 932
explanation of; two kinds of, 933
Vakratuṇḍa, one of the forms of Gaṇapati, 190, 868
vakula, a flower, 529

Vaktra, characteristics of the metre, 908
a metre to be employed in a Mahākāya, 920

Vākyārthopamā, explanation of, 941
valabhi, a type of temple, 314
valaya, a type of temple, 315
valaya, a modification of the array danda, 633
an array formed by union of two dandas, 635
durjaya made up of four, 635
Vālin, brother of Sugriva; killed by Rāma, 17

Vālmiki, sage, story of Rāmāyaṇa narrated by Nārada to, 9
composed the Rāmāyaṇa, 25, 738
birth of Kuśa and Lava at the hermitage of, 24

Vāmā, as female energy; as one of the three forms of Umā, 374
located, 292
worshipped, 51, 201, 413

Vāmadeva, a form of Rudra, 252

Vāmana, a name of Viṣṇu, 65
a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 428
form of Viṣṇu at Kurukṣetra, 841
a deity presiding over the banner, 148
as an excellent place, 328
worship of, 284
merits of worshipping, 343
image of, 115
installation of image of, 172
name of Śaṅkogrāma, 125

mountain, 352

Vāmanapurāṇa, narration of story of Viṣṇu relating to Dhaumakalpa in, 733
extent of, 733
should be given as a gift during autumnal equinox, 734

Vaiśnāpatrpatita, characteristics of the metre, 913

Vaiśnāpūra, one of the siddhas, 414

Vaiśnāstha, characteristics of the metre, 912

Vanamāla, form of Viṣṇu at Kiṣkindhā, 841
Index

Vānaraka, at Gayā, 341
Vānari, a spirit seizing the child in the sixteenth year, 825
symptoms of the child seized by
offering to appease, 826
Vānavāsikā, characteristics of the metre, 907, 934
Vandani, a formation made with fingers, 66
Vāṅga, one of the sons of Bali, 747
a place, 640
Vanija, a karaṇa, 869fn
famine indicated by Sun’s transit in, 363
vanik, an astral combination, 363
Vāṇiśa, letter denoting, 419
Vapu, a division of Kasā, 921
Vapuṣmān, ruled Śālmala, 322
names of sons of, 352
varada, a posture of the hands, 857
Varāha, form of Viṣṇu at Vardhamāna, 841
Viṣṇu resides at Ketumāla as, 326
salluted, 62
worshipped, 343
image of, 115, 131
śālagrāma denoting, 125
a posture of the hands, 67
Varāhalalpa, a period, 4, 732
Varāha-purāṇa, narrated by lord Viṣṇu, dealing with the account of boar form; extent of; merits of making a gift of it in Caitra, 733
Vārāhi, a mother goddess, 139fn
invoked, 399
image of, 133
worshipped, 412, 415
name of a metre; the number of letters in the pādas of, 903
vārāhi, a herb, 371, 378
Varaṇa, a river at Vārāṇasi, 330
Varapradā, image of, 138
Vārāṇasi, location and greatness of, 330-1
an excellent sacred place, 327, 350
Vāra-ūthi, correction, 365
Varcā, son of Soma, 44
Vardhamāna, a variety of metre; the number of letters in each pāda of, 903
characteristics of, 910
—name of a place, 841
Vardhanī, a water jar used in worship, 68, 94
worshipped, 99
—a type of temple, 315
Varga, son of Turvasa; son of, 747
Varṣa, an-Ādinātha, 412
Varsaketu, son of Kṣemaka; son of, 749
varṣavratas, vows, relating to rainy season, 525
Vartulā, a hell, 1039
Varuṇa, one of the Ādityas, 45
a name of Sun, 136
Varuṇa, words denoting, 988
made as the king of water, 47
image of, 137
installation of image of, 173
consecration of image of, 174-77
meditation of, 286
propitiation of, 176, 317
meditated upon, 89
temple of, 106
—a territory, 350
—a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
vāruṇa, denotes Śatābhishak, 360
Vāruṇi, a goddess; origin of, 5
vāruṇi, one of the dhāraṇas; explanation of, 1050
Varūthra, son of Duṣyanta; son of, 747
Vāśa, a deity; worshipped, 414
vāsaka, a herb, 407
Vasantatilaka, characteristics of the metre; differently called by others, 913
Vāsaraṇa, a sacred place, 330
vaṣaṭ, use of the term, 403
Vāsava, Indra; made the ruler of Maruts, 47
Vāsava, denotes the asterism Jyeṣṭha
vasavaḥ, herb denoted by, 406
Vasiṣṭha, one of the sages; creation of, 41
an interlocutor, 2, 3
Daśaratha’s request to arrange for Rāma’s coronation, 11
Bharata brought to the city by, 14
salluted by Rāma, 15, 23
progeny of; through his wife Urjā, 49
goddess earth addressed as born of, 112
as one of the seven asterisms having Dhrūva in font, 42fn
merits of contemplating as a form of god, 842
one of the sages who protected the celestials in the battle, 746
hymn addressed to Śiva by, 564-65
a law-giver, 435
Vasiṣṭha, a Pañcarātrāgama, 106
Vasiṣṭheśa, at Gayā; obeisance and offering of pīṇḍa to, 342
Vāṣṭu, deity worshipped, 50, 51
Vāṣṭu, relating to cities, 320-22
Vastūpamā, explanation of, 940
vāṣṭupūjā, performed by Rāma, 14
Vastūthāpana, a variety of Arabhaṭi, 928
Vasu, a son of Purūravas, 739
—wife of Mārica Kaśyapa, 739
Vasus as born from, 44
vasu, merits of use of herb denoted by, 408
Vasudevā, born to Śūra, 744
a manifestation of Kaśyapa, 744
wife of; sons of, 744
others of, 744
birth of Kṛṣṇa to Devaki; wife of, 26
story relating to, 26, 26fn
Kṛṣṇa entrusted to Nanda by, 27
worshipped by Kṛṣṇa, 28
Vāsudeva, as a form of Hari, 91
the foremost among the Yādavas, 25
Jarāsandha referred to as the despirer of, 28
as leading the Yādavas, 736
Paunḍraka asserting as the real, 28fn
seen by Yudhīṣṭhira on the way to heaven, 38
image of, 115, 130
characteristics of the image of, 118-23
installation of an image of, 161-64
located on the thumbs, 56
obeisance made to, 1
worshipped, 50, 71
refers to Viṣṇu; worshipped by Rāma, 23
characteristics of formulae relating to, 62
recitation of mantra relating to, 53
use of basic syllable of, 67, 68
oblations made to, 73
—a śālagrāma, 124, 125
Vāsuki, one of the eight chief serpents; the number of heads of, 807
born from Kadrū, 46
made the ruler of Nāgas, 47
was used as the rope while churning the ocean, 5, 745
as a garland on the neck of goddess Kubijā, 415
—a sacred spot; as being present at Prayāga, 330
Vasuloka, Bhīma waiting on the bed of arrows to reach, 34
vasumati, a nerve, 316
Vasus, a class of semi-divine beings, 44fn
born from Vasu, 44
the names of the eight, 44
Pāvaka made as the king of, 47
directed Bhīma to wait to reach
Vasuloka, 34
mode of consecration of, 180
vaṭa, a tree, 92, 324
Vāta, Wind god; birth of Bhima from, 32
—the name of a temple, 318
Vāṭeśa, an excellent place, 328
Vātorni, characteristics of the metre, 912
Vatsa, son of Pratardana; son of, 749
Vatsablūmi, son of Vatsaka, 749
vatsaka, father of Vatsabhūmi, 749
Vāṭu, a form of Rudra, 252
Vāṭuka, obeisance made to, 414
a form of Gaṇapati, 412
Vava, an astral combination, 363
Vāyavi, a spirit possessing the child in the thirteenth year; symptoms of child possessed by; offering to appease; bathing and fumigation when the child is possessed by, 825
Vāyavilīya-purāṇa, narrated by Vāyu relating incidents of Śveta kalpa; extent of; to be copied and given as a gift in Śrāvṇa, 732
vāyavya, denotes the asterism svāti; commended for copulation, 434
vāyavyakṛcchra, expiation of; eating handful of food everyday for a month, 483
Vāyu, image of, 106, 137
propitiation of, 176
contemplation on, 286
syllables of; used for purification, 60
worshipped by inhabitants of Śālmala, 352
Vāyutirtha, at Gayā, 341
Vāyuvēgā, location of letter denoting the goddess, 417
image of, 138
Veda, efficacy of herb denoted by, 470, 408
vedāḥ, denotes a herb, 406
Vedānā, sons of, 49
Vedānta, is knowledge about Brahma, 1082
Vedas, goddess as the source of, 26
the number of hymns of all, 730
division of at the end of dvāpara, 429
the different recensions of, 730-31
Hayagrīva a demon killed by Viṣṇu to rescue, 4
reference to those who had become Baudhās abandoning, 38
adored, 50
Vedaśīrā, wife of Mṛkaṇḍu, 49
Vedhā, a goddess, 292
Vedic study, period for commencing and cessation of, 456
Index

Vegavatī, characteristics of the metre, 910
vehicle, words for, 1019
veins, convey the ten life-forces, 556-7
    number 72000; the names of ten
prominent, 556
Vena, son of Anga and Sunithā, 42
    birth of Anga when his right hand
was charred, 42fn
story relating to, 42
venereal disease, remedy for, 774
venom, due to all insects; remedy for,
    819-20
due to centipedes; remedy for, 819
    (See also poison)
Venus, words denoting, 989
distance of; from Mars, 354
distance of; from Mercury, 354
chariot of, 356
letters presided over by, 374
period (years) of influence of, 363, 393
presides over a part of a day, 381
gives mental happiness, 377
confers good occupying first house, 383
confers good occupying the second
    or third house, 383
indicates happiness occupying the
    seventh house, 383
auspicious occupying the ninth
    house, 384
confers gain in the tenth house, 384
beneficial in the twelfth house, 384
plenty of wealth etc., in the period
    of, 393
marriage not commended when set,
    337
investiture of sacred thread not
    commended when set, 359
building of a house should be
    avoided when set or transition,
    360
defeat indicated by movement from
    its own asterism, 386
image of, 137
contemplated as white, 828
verbs, three forms of bhāva, karmanī
    and kartari, 981
transitive and intransitive; the two
other forms of, 981
primary affixes added to, 985-6
Vetāla, beads belonging to Śikhā
    class, 894
vibhadra, a pitcher, 270
Vibhava, a year of the Hindu calendar,
    404
vibhāvanā (imagination), an embellish-
    ment of versel, 939
    explanation of, 941-2
Vibhīṣaṇa, a demon; Hanumāt searching
    the house of, 19
prevented Rāvaṇa from killing
    Hanumāt, 20
anointed as the ruler of Laṅkā, 21
was on the side of Rāma, 22
Laṅkā entrusted by Rāma to, 23
became deep-rooted in dharmā, 24
invoked for destroying evil demons, 84
Vibhu, son of Prastāra, 323
    —son of Varṣaketu; son of, 749
Vibhūti, a female divinity; worshipped,
    51
vibhūti, a nerve, 316
Vicitrakeśa, an attendant of Śiva, 201
Vicitravirya (ka), son of Śantanu and
    Kāli (Satyavatī), 31, 751
Ambikā and Ambalikā became
    wives of; died on account of
    consumption, 31
Vidālā, image of, 138
Vidālākṣī, consort of Skanda, 134
vidaṅga, a herb, 407
Vidarbhā, son of Jyāmagha; sons of,
    741
Vidarbhā, king of; benefit gained by
    giving a lamp by the wife of, 526
vidarbhā, explanation and use of the
    term, 403
Vidārī, a demoness; worshipped with
    red lotuses, 109
word with lotus flowers offered to,
    274
worshipped outside, 317
viddharka, to be avoided in a mar-
    riage, 357
Vidhātṛ, son of Brahmā, 50fn
father of Mr̥kaṇḍu, 49
adored, 50, 88
Vidhātri, a female deity, located, 292
Vidruma, a boundary mountain, 352
Vidura, begot by Kṛṣṇa Daipāyana
    through the wife of Vicitravirya,
    731
was burnt by forest fire, 36
honoured Kṛṣṇa, 33
Viduratha, son of Udāraka; also known
    as Daśārha; son of, 742
    —chief among the chariotiers; son o
    Bhajamāna; son of, 743
    —son of Suratha; son of, 750
Viduṣa, son of Gṛṇta; son of, 747
Vidyā, a goddess; worshipped, 413
Vidyādharas, image of, 137
Vidyākotiśvara, worshipped, 414
Vidyāś, two kinds of—para and aparā;
    explanation of, 1077
Lord Viṣṇu is of the form of two, 491
Vidyēśvaras, the names of the eight,
    875
attended by, 131
vimalā, a nerve, 316
Vimalas, five names of, 415
vimāna, a type of temple, 314
Vīnaśāna, as meritorious, 327
Vinātā, a monkey; accompanied
Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
Vinātā, mother of Aruṇā and Garuḍa,
46
mother of Garuḍa, 63fn
Vinatāśva, a son of Śudyuṣma; ruled
over the western part of the earth,
735
Vināyaka, conquered by Tārkṣya, 30
image of, 134
installation of image of, 172
mode of worshipping of, 865
merits of worshipping, 343
Vināyakā, letter denoting, 417
Vindhya, a mountain, 350, 842
Narmadā and other rivers flow
from, 351
Vīpāmā, one of the sons of Ayus, 739
Viparītākhyānīkā, characteristics of
the metre, 910
Viparītopamā, explanation of, 940
Vipaṇa, a division of Viṭhī, 928
vipat, one of the tārābalas, 359
Vipracitī, married Śiṁhikā, 45
Vipula, a mountain, 324
Vipulā, characteristics of the metre,
906, 909
Vira, one of the four sons of Tāṁṣu-
rothra, 749
— one of the seven sons of Suḥotra and
Girikā, 750
Virabhadrā, image of, 135, 139
Viraja, son of Sāvarṇī Manu, 428
Virajā, son of Tvaṣṭrā, 323
— a place, 841
Viraka, one of the four sons of Śībi,
747
Virakataka, one of the siddhas, 414
Viraṇa Prajāpati, father of Viṇī, 42
Viras, the name of the formulae of
Rudra, 895
Virāṣana, a posture, 473, 482
Virasena, a guard of the door; to be
worshipped, 93
Virāt, son of Nara, 323
— metre; the number of letters in a
quarter of, 903
composition of the metre, 904
Virāṭa, country, 33
king of, 33fn
drowned in the ocean of arrows of
Droṇa, 35
Virāt gāyatrī, the number of letters in
the pāda of, 903
Viravakra, an array, 630
Virgo, friendly with Scorpion, 392
  has dual nature, 384
  one should do agriculture in, 361
  goddess Durgā is awakened when
  Sun enters, 362
  time taken by Sun to transit, 384
Vīrīṃśas, a class of men in the Plāśa-
dvīpa, 351
Vīrīṇḍa, daughter of Viṇaśa Prajāpati;
  also known as Puṣkarīṇi, 42
Virocana, son of Praharāda, 46
  father of Bāli, 86f, 46
    -- a mūhūra; deeds to be done in, 371
virodha (contradiction), an embel-
lishment of sense, 939
  explanation of, 942
Virodhī, a year of the Hindu calendar,
  405
virtues, eight kinds of, 86
  ten kinds of, 493
  of religious students, 617
Vīrupākṣa, a demon; killed by Rāma,
  22
Vīrupākṣi, a goddess dwelling in the
  essence, 375
Viśākha, younger brother of Kumāra,
  44
Viśākha identified with Skanda, 134
Viśākhā, an asterism; belongs to the
  sphere of fire, 387
  down-faced, 381
  known as Tripūṣkara, 382
  grains increased if a formula is
    written and placed in, 361
  an employer should not be attended
    upon in, 360
  misery caused by Sun's transit in,
    363
  assigned in the south-west, 385
  location of, 400
Viśākhatūpā, a place, 841
Viśāla, a prince, 339
  -- a type of temple, 314
  -- a modification of the array daṇḍa,
    633
Viśālā, at Gayā, 339, 342
  -- a nerve, 316
Viśālakṣī, image of, 138
Viśāndhi, an impurity, 947
  two kinds of, 948
Viśeśaka, division of poetry called, 919
  definition of the kāvya known as,
    920
Viśeśokti, explanation of, 941
Viśkambha, the part of which to be
  avoided, 383
Viśloka, characteristics of the metre,
  907
Viṣṇu, synonyms of, 986
  the different names of, 65
Śrī as the consort of, 49
Brahmā was born from the navel
  lotus of, 9, 31
identical with brahman, 355
as the cause of the universe, 356
as the refuge of Śiva, 746
Guruḍa as the vehicle of, 51
Pracīnabarhis conferred status of
  progenitor by, 43
Dhruva's steadfast devotion to, 41f
manifestation as a Fish, 2, 3ff
  killed Hayagriva, a demon, 4
  tortoise form of, 2, 5ff
manifestation as a boar, 7ff
Prahṛāda as a staunch devotee of, 46
  the first war assuming the form of
    a man-lion, 745
manifestation as Rāma, 9ff
Rāma praised by Indra and others
  as; worshipped by Rāma, 23
meditative sleep cast on the sons of
  Hiraṇyakasipu by, 26
manifestation as Kṛṣṇa, 25-31
removed the oppression of the de-
  mons on earth, 36
Yādava women referred to as the
  wives of, 37
manifestation as Buddha, 38
manifestation as Kalki, 38
manifestation as Vyāsa and divisions
  of Vedas etc., 730
kings etc. as manifestations of, 746
  the different manifestations of; and
    the battles in which he partici-
      pated, 745
manifestations innumerable, 39
  past manifestations of, 428
  greatness of; knowing the objects of
    world as manifestations of, 1077
  different forms of, 82
  characteristics of the form of, 128
  characteristics of the different forms
    of, 129-31
as being present in all the beings,
  1075
invoked differently by different men,
  1075
the Purāṇa dealing with the eternal
  form of, 3
reference to Garuḍa, vehicle of, 30
  presiding deity of an element, 271
  image of, 130
installation of the image of, 172
  to be meditated, 55, 58
  to be contemplated at the conflu-
    ence of Ganges with the ocean,
    841
adoration of different forms of, 127-
  29
propitiation of, 176
worship of the disc, gem etc., of, 63
adoration of the weapons of, 66
reference to Bhishma as contemplating on, 35
assignment of, 69
purification of fire of and boiling food intended for, 59
placing on head the hand of, 61
primordial form dissolved in fire, 73
mode of worshipping, 50-53
mode of worshipping in nine compartments, 527-28
mantra for the seat and image of, 52
meditation on man-lion form of, 53
salutations made to, 50, 62
meditated, 68
worshipped in a circular altar, 70
merits of worshipping, 71
as the greatest kinsman, merits of meditating on, 1074
greatness of a person who has attained, 1075
the qualification of a person who attains the place of, 1075
merits of contemplation on, 1077
merits of worshipping, 644, 731
the greatness of, 731
the greatness of fiftyone names of, 840-42
hymn on; destroys all sins, 483-5
a hymn that destroys evil addressed to, 728-29
śālagrāma representing, 125
—a name of the Sun, 136
devas born as one of the Ādityas as, 45
made as the lord of Suns, 47
—a law-giver, 455
Viṣṇuḍāsaka, one of the sons of Vasudeva and Devaki; was killed by Karṣa, 744
viṣṇukrānta, a herb used as a paste, 372
used as a charm, 406
Viṣṇumādvrata, explanation of, 525
Viṣṇupada, at Gayā; merits of doing ancestral rite at, 339
Viṣṇuvrata, details relating to, 499-500
Viṣṇuvāsas, father of Kalki, 38
viśokā, an occult nerve, 316
viśokadvādaśi, on the practice of, 512
Viśravas, son of Pulastya; wives and progeny of, 24
Viṣṭi, a karaṇa, explanation of, 369fn
adverse effect of Sun's entry in, 363
viṣṭirāhu, description of, 410
Viśva, tantra spoken by, 106
Viśvā, mother of Viśvedevas, 44
viśvacakra, a great gift, 544
Viśvagāśva, son of Prthu, 736
Viśvajit, son of Brhadhratha; son of, 748
Viśvakarman (celestial architect), was born from Kaśyapa and Prabhā, 44
made a mace for Viṣṇu, 334
image of, 137
the sculptor should be imagined by the priest as, 118
Viśvakṣena, form of Viṣṇu; characteristics of, 131
to be worshipped, 61
worshipped, 66, 100
merits of worshipping, 51
carving of staff similar to that of, 115
Viśvāmitra (sage), son of Gāḍhī; sons of, 749
respected on account of his glory, 10
one of those who protected the sages in battle, 746
Viśvārūcā, a female energy placed at the end of a petal; colour of, 136
Viśvarūpā, one of the Rudras, 45
form of Viṣṇu; characteristics of the image of, 131
installation of the image of, 172
Viśvarūpikā, image of, 138
Viśvedevas, born to Viśvā and Kaśyapa, 44
mode of consecration of the image of, 180
invoked at the time of śrāddha, 346
one of the siddhas, 414
Viśveśvara, form of Viṣṇu on river Śonā, 841
Vitala, a nether world, 353
vitality, the things which give, 756
Vitamaya, son of Manasyu; son of, 748
Viṭānaka, characteristics of the metre, 908
Vitatha, worshipped, 316
born to Bharata after performance of rituals by Bharadvāja; five sons of, 749
Vithi, a type of drama, 921
thirteen sub-divisions of, 928
a component of the mode Bhārati, 928
Vithithora, Ananta was the son of, 741
Vithithoras, one of the five branches of Haithayas, 741
Vivasvat, one of the Ādityas, 45
a god to be worshipped, 317
worship of, 274
viveka, denotes power to distinguish, 1018
vomiting, beneficial drinks during, 754
oil boiled with herbs to be used for bathing to remedy, 774
vow, of giving a gift of lamp, 525-6
of fasting; mode of practising and merits of, 533-34
on the eleventh day; merits of, 532
rules relating to the practice of, 493, 538
certain regulations relating to, 497
ten virtues to be practised during, 493
eight things which do not vitiate a vow, 496
resolutions relating to, 496-7
to be observed on the first lunar day, 497-8
to be observed on the second lunar day, 498-500
to be observed on the third lunar day, 500-3
to be observed on the fourth lunar day, 503
to be observed on the fifth lunar day for the serpents, 504
to be observed on the sixth day, 504
to be observed on the seventh lunar day for the sun, 504-5
to be observed on the eighth lunar day; for lord Kṛṣṇa, 505-6, 507-8
to be observed on the ninth lunar day for goddess Durgā, 509-10
to be observed on the tenth lunar day; merits of, 510-11
to be practised on the eleventh day for lord Viṣṇu, 511
to be practised on the twelfth lunar day, 512-3
to be practised on the thirteenth lunar day, 515-6
to be practised on the fourteenth lunar day for lord Śiva, 516-7
relating to week days, 519-20
relating to different asterisms, 520-21
that are practised on certain days, 522-3
to be performed in different months, 523-4
relating to different seasons, 524-25
merits of practising, 591, 538
expiation for breaking, 496
Vṛṣa, one of the sons of Dhiśanā, 43
Vṛṣajā, names of sections of Kośa, 921
vrata, as a penance, 492-3
vratabandha, one of the Vedic rites, 59
vṛddha, formulae having up to 300 letters, 895
Vṛddhaka, a fierce force; prayer made for protection from, 84
Vṛddharevati, a terrible force; prayer made for protection from, 84
Vṛddhasārman, one of the sons of Ayuṣ, 739
Vṛjinivān, son of Kroṣṭu; son of, 741
Vṛka, son of Rohitāśva; son of, 737
Vṛkala, a son of Śiṣti and Suchāyā, 42
Vṛkatejasa, a son of Śiṣti and Suchāyā, 42
Vṛkodara, denotes Bhimasena,
Vṛṇḍāvana, Kṛṣṇa's visit to, 27
Vṛntā, characteristics of the metre, 912
Vṛṣa, Indra at the time of the 11th Manu, 428
Vṛṣa (Viṣa), a year of the Hindu calendar, 404
Vṛṣabha, son of Kuśāgra; son of, 750
vṛṣabha, a type of temple, 315
Vṛṣākapi, one of the Rudras, 45
Vṛṣaparvan, father of Sarmiśṭhā, 25, 740
daughters of, 46
Vṛṣasena, son of Karna; son of, 748
Vṛśčika, vikala correction for, 367
(See also Scorpion)
Vṛṣṇi, one of the four sons of Sātvata, 742
Vṛṣṇis, a division of Yādava, 736
Vṛṣṭi, one of the four sons of, 742
Vṛtra, a demon, killed by lord Viṣṇu in his ninth manifestation in the form of a foam, 743, 746
Vṛtreśa, a siddha to be worshipped, 415
Vṛṭṭa, characteristics of the metre, 914
Vṛṭṭa, a division of Padya; characteristics of, 919
Vṛṭṭas, three divisions of, 919
vṛtti, see modes
Vṛyādi, born from Mṛtyu, 49
vyāghata, an adverse period to be avoided, 383
Vṛyāhāra, a division of Vithi, 928
vyāhṛtis of gāyatri, name of the sage associated with, 562
Vṛyākaraṇa (grammar), as an Aparāvidyā, 2
Vṛyāla, a variety of Daṇḍaka; formation of, 915
Vṛyāna, a vital wind, 253
carried by the vein Hastijīvā, 556
functions of, 557
vyantarās, a variety of serpents; have mixed marks born at an unspecified time, 807
Vṛyāsa, as a manifestation of lord Viṣṇu, 730
divided the Vedic hymns and Upaṇiṣads into recensions, 730
as an interlocutor, 1
birth of Dhṛtarāṣṭra from, 31
consoled Arjuna, 37
a law-giver, 455
Vṛyastasambandhatā, an impurity, 947
vyatipata, an obstacle to be avoided, 383
Vyairikopama, explanation of, 940
Vyayoga, a type of drama, 921
Vyoma, worshipped, 316
Vyoma, son of Videgratha; son of, 742
Vyuhas, the names of the eight, 65

wages, commensurate with work, 675
war, when one should begin a, 623
warriors, the duties of different kinds of, 613
wasting diseases, food that gives strength in, 754
water, as a form of Visu, 173
words used in the sense of, 995
word denoting drops of, 989, 995
asterisms belonging to regions of, 388
relative merits of bathing in different kinds of, 436
cold, as the best astringent, 757
waves, words denoting, 995
wealth, words denoting, 1022
word representing desire for, 995
three kinds of acquisition of, 541
should be acquired by rightful means, 617
period within which one can claim his ownership of, 657
weapons, of different kinds; words denoting, 1020
two kinds of— weapons and missiles, 645
two kinds of— those cast off and those retained, 645
two divisions of— curved and concave, 645
the gradations in the use of, 645
should be worshipped before an expedition is made, 639
should be washed before use, 647
propitiatory rites for, 983-85

Wednesday, discharge of debt to be made on, 358
the first shave of a child is commended on, 359
harvested grains to be taken into the house on, 361
loss brought by Ardra occurring on, 376
inauspicious nature of third day occurring on, 381
Rahu lies at the north on, 409
week days, the names of the presiding deities of, 805
weight, different measures of, 588
welfare, words denoting, 991
white, words denoting, 992
white, word denoting little, 992
wind, words denoting, 988
sphere of; asterisms belonging to, 387
that is deranged; remedy for, 756
remedy for eighty kinds of diseases due to deranged, 774
remedy for the removal of excess of, 775
wind and bile, remedy for deranged, 776
wine, three kinds of; women mentioned as the fourth, 1042
winning, different means for, 629
witnesses, lawsuit depending on, 654
codes relating to, 656-7
qualifications and rules relating to, 661-2
when considered as false, 663
of the plaintiff should be heard first, 657
women, words which denote, 1013
words denoting different, 1014
words denoting the parts of body of, 1016
characteristic features of, 637-8
when allowed to re-marry, 434
when declared as pure and impure, 463
three divisions of property of, 541
results of the defect of association with, 627
nature of treatment after delivery of, 756
wonder, origin of the sentiment, 924
wooden water-carrier, word denoting, 996

words, having many meaning, 1001-1005
denoting conjunctural stories, 992
division of, 918
repetition of; two kinds of— single letter or many letters, 933
two kinds of defects of, 947
denoting celestial region and nether world; synonyms of, 986ff
of threat; fine relating to, 676
mono-syllabic; their meaning, 950-52
world, Brahman as the cause of; Pradhana as the cause of, 949
worldly events, words denoting, 992
worms, remedy which destroys, 755, 776
remedy to remove all, 766
worship, words denoting, 1017
words denoting mode of, 1017
mode of, 54-56
of deities, mode of, 190-95
five constituents of, 836
of Visu and other gods, 50-53
Index

relating to forms such as Vāsudeva, 62-66
in different diagrams of the shape of a lotus, circle etc., 880-83
of gods in sixtyfour squares, 272ff
in eightyone squares, 275
of Hari in Sarvatobhadra, 75-78
of different gods in a lotus figure, 79-81
for success in battle, 425
different flowers used in, 528-29
withered and broken flowers not to be used in, 529
merits of, 538
of gods: expiations for discontinuing, 490-2
worshippers, of lord; four types of, 1069
wound, a paste that heals, 775
healing medicine for, 768
wounds, a paste for cleaning, 774.
due to afflicted arteries, 775
parasites of; juice that destroys, 775
a decoction for cleaning, 774-5
wrath, sentiment of; origin of, 923
three-fold; factors accomplishing, 931
wrestling, modes of, 652-3

Yādavas, belong to the race of Yadu, 25
counted as eighty thousand; were protected by Krṣṇa, 745
rise of innumerable, 31
Krṣṇa's father made ruler of, 28
Kālayavana, as a foe of, 28f
Krṣṇa's amusement at Dvārakā with, 30
destruction of, 36, 37
legend relating to destruction of, 36f
Arjuna's performance of obsequies of, 37

Yadu, one of the sons of Yayāti and Devayāni, 740
founder of a dynasty, 740
Yādavas came in the race of, 25
five sons of, 740
one of the seven sons of Suhotra and Girikā, 750

Yajamāna, explanation of the term; synonyms of, 1017

Yajñadatta, an ascetic youth killed by Dāsaratha, 14

Yajñavarāha, form taken by Viṣṇu, 7
Yajñavalkya, as a priest of Kalki, 38
branches of Yajurveda founded by, 429
— a law-giver, 455

Yajur hymns, creation of, 40

Yajurveda, an Aparāvidyā, 2
branches of, 730
division into four of, 429
division into seven of, 429
number of hymns of, 730
auspicious for Yama, 93
the hymns to be recited by a follower of, 287
use of the hymns of, 695-704
the hymns of; which confer fortune, 710
assigned on the fingers, 64
Yākini, a goddess, 415
Yakṣa, image of, 106
Yakṣa, born from Khasā, 47
Krṣṇa married the daughter of, 28
prayer made for protection from, 84
Yakṣini, a monster possessing the child in the fourteenth year; symptoms of child possessed by; offering to appease; bathing when the child is possessed by, 825
Yakṣman, worshipped, 317
Yama, born to Sun and Sāṅjñā, 735
also called Dharma; Yudhiṣṭhīra as born due to the grace of, 32
domain enlarged due to Bhārata war, 35
made the king of manes, 47
Krṣṇa was worshipped by, 28
image of, 106, 137, 314
investiture of sacred thread for the image of, 215
contemplation of, 286
requested to come, 336
propitiation of, 176
worshipped, 51, 55
praise of, 403-4
asterism of, 384
— name of celestials during the period of Svāyambhuva Manu, 427
— a law-giver, 455
— a muhurtā; deeds to be done in, 371
— denotes daily rites, 1018
Yamaka, explanation of; two kinds of
— contiguous and non-contiguous, 934
— further divisions of, 934
ten prominent kinds of, 935
Yāmala, a method of locating mantras, 416
— mode of worship of Gaurī according to, 897
Yamagītā, narration of; consists of exposition made by Kapila and others, 1073-76
Yamajihva, a guardian deity, 284
image of, 138
worship of, 273
Yamas, description of, 1076
Yamasūryaka, the name of a temple, 318
Yāmi, Nāgavīthi born from, 44
Yamunā, the spirit afflicting the child in the eighth month; the symptoms of child seized by, 823
—the spirit possessing the child in the seventh year, 824
symptoms of the child possessed by, 824-5
offering to appease, 825
bathing and fumigation for child possessed by, 825
— born to Rājā and Sun, 735
— river; Kṛṣṇa's conquest of Kāliya in, 27
was dragged by Pralamba, 30
flowing at Prayāga, 329
region of; indication for the destruction of, 387
image of, 133
worship of, 197
worshipped, 51, 88
Trivikrama to be contemplated at, 841
Yāmya, denotes the asterism Bharāṇi, medicine to be administered in, 358
imparting the science of archery to be done in, 359
yāṣā, a vein; carries the wind Kūrma, 556
Yāska, an authority on metrics, 903
Yaśodā, lord Hari as a child taken by Vasudeva to, 26
in the custody of Nanda, the husband of, 27
Yaśodharā, one of the daughters of Devaka; married by Vasudeva, 742
Yaśovati, a nerve, 316
Yaśata, a monstress affecting the child in the second year; symptoms of the child affected by; offering to appease; bathing and other practices for child affected by, 824
Yathaśaṅkhyā (relative enumeration), an excellence of word and sense; explanation of, 946
Yatī, one of the seven sons of Nahuṣa; even as boy contemplated on Viṣṇu and attained him, 740
explanation of, 911
yatīcāndrāyaṇa, an expiation; explanation of, 482
yatīs, significance of the term, 1018
Yaugiki, an excellence of word, 944
yava, a measure, 107, 123, 140
Yā vadārthātā, an embellishment of sound and sense, 942
explanation of, 942-3
Yavamadhyā, composition of the metre, 904
yavamadhāyatā, a measure, 107
yavamātī, characteristics of the metre, 911
Yavanās, Kālayavana as the king of, 28fn
Yavinara, one of the five born from Bāhyāśva, 749
Yayāti, one of the seven sons of Nahuṣa, 25, 31, 740
rescued Devayāni and married her, 25fn
married Devayāni the daughter of Śukra, 740
married also Śarmiṣṭhā, daughter of Vṛṣaparva, 740
had two sons through Devayāni and three sons through Śarmiṣṭhā, 740
years, cycle of; results indicated by names of, 404-5
yellow, words denoting, 992
Yoga, one of the five factors in the almanac; correction for, 368, 369
division of time; good or bad known from names, 371
—and its constituents; explanation of, 1041
has eight constituents, 1082
— relating to a mantra, 403
Yoginis, image of, 138
Yogīśavimala, worshipped, 415
yogarasya, an array; two wings in the array danda, 634
yoni, a posture made with the hands, 95, 898
Yuddhamuṣṭi, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742
Yudhājit, uncle of Bharata, 11
born to Mādri and Dhṛṣṭa, 743
Yudhiṣṭhira, born to Pāṇḍu and Kuntī from god Dharma, 32, 744, 751
son of, 751
was defeated by Duryodhana in dice, 33
Kṛṣṇa's directive to fight with Duryodhana, 33
army of, going to Kurukṣetra, 34
killed Śalya, 35
became a king after the war, 36
set on his final journey, 37
Yuga(s), extent of, 39fn
creation takes place in every, 45
salutation made to 50
— herb denoted by, 406
Yugandhara, son of Dhunī; son of, 743
Yūka, a measure, 207
yukti, an embellishment of word, 932
explanation of; six kinds of, 933
yukṣa, a hymn, 437
yūthi, yūthikā, a herb, 371, 378
yūthikā, a flower, 529
Yuva, a year of the Hindu calendar, 404
Yuvaṇāśva, son of Āyus, 736
—son of Raṇāśva; son of, 737

Yuyudhāna, another name of Sātyaki, 743
Zodiacal signs, movable; fixed and dual; their influence on the days; the time taken by the Sun to traverse, 384